

imageRUNNER
ADVANCE DX
C7780i/C7770i/C7765i

INSTALLATION
MANUAL



Canon

November 8, 2021
Rev. 2

Important Notices

Application

This manual has been issued by Canon Inc. for qualified persons to learn technical theory, installation, maintenance, and repair of products.

This manual covers all localities where the products are sold. For this reason, there may be information in this manual that does not apply to your locality.

Following "Trademarks" and "Copyright" are not applicable if they are not supported by laws and regulations in the country or region that this document and products are used in.

Corrections

This manual may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors due to improvements or changes in products.

When changes occur in applicable products or in the contents of this manual, Canon will release technical information as the need arises. In the event of major changes in the contents of this manual over a long or short period, Canon will issue a new edition of this manual.

Trademarks

- The Bluetooth word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Canon is under license.
- Mopria®, the Mopria® Logo and the Mopria® Alliance logo are registered trademarks and service marks of Mopria Alliance, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Unauthorized use is strictly prohibited.
- Apple, AppleTalk, Bonjour, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch, Mac, OS X and Safari are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows Vista, Windows Server, Internet Explorer, Microsoft Edge, Excel and PowerPoint are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Google Cloud Print, Google Chrome and Android are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Google Inc.
- iHQC™ compression technology by I.R.I.S., copyright 2007-2015, All Rights Reserved.
- PDF-iHQC™, XPS-iHQC™ technology by I.R.I.S., copyright 2007-2015, All rights Reserved.
- Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.
- Adobe is a registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Command WorkStation, EFI, Fiery, FreeForm, Spot-On, and WebTools are trademarks of Electronics For Imaging, Inc. and/or its wholly owned subsidiaries in the U.S. and/or certain other countries.
- TORX® is a registered trademark of Acument Intellectual Properties, LLC in the United States.
- Matrox is a registered trademark of Matrox Corporation in the Canada.
- Other product names and other names in this document are generally registered trademarks or trademarks of the companies.

Copyright

The copyright of this document belongs to Canon Inc. This document may not be copied, reproduced or translated into another language, in whole or in part, without the prior consent of Canon Inc.

Copyright CANON INC. 2021

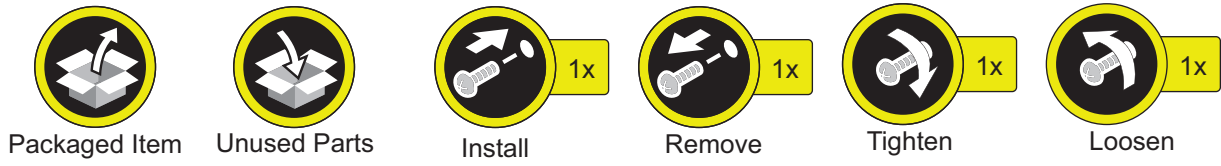
Caution

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Symbols

The frequently-performed operations are described with symbols in this procedure.

Screw



Harness (Common for Guides and Clamps)

Connector

Power Cord



Power



Contents

Safety Precautions	1
Toner Safety.....	2
About Toner.....	2
Handling Adhered Toner.....	2
Points to Note at Installation.....	2
Checking the Installation Environment.....	2
Points to Note Before Servicing.....	2
Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation.....	3
Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power.....	3
Checking the Installation Space.....	4
illustrations.....	5
Description on the parts included in the package	5
1. Product Lineup	6
Image Reading System Options.....	7
Host Machine Options	8
Option Combination Table.....	10
Paper Feed / Paper Output Options	11
2. Host Machine	13
Checking Before Installation	14
Checking the Power Supply.....	14
Points to Note at Installation.....	14
Points to Note When Moving This Host Machine.....	14
Host Machine Installation Procedure.....	14
Installation Procedure.....	16
Unpacking.....	16
Checking the Contents.....	23
Installing the Scanner	26
Installing the Buffer Path Unit (Only Models with the Buffer Path Unit Included as Standard) (for US and EUR).....	35
Installing the Fixing Feed Assembly.....	44
Installing the Process Unit (for Color).....	48
Installing the Developing Assembly (for Black).....	59
Other Installations.....	69
Installing the Noise Reduction Cover.....	71
Securing the Host Machine.....	74
Preparing Connection of the Main Power.....	74
Turning ON the Main Power Switch.....	76
Installing the Toner Container.....	76
Host Machine Settings (Starting Setup Guide).....	77
Registration of Installation Date Information.....	77
Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjustment).....	78
Auto Correct Color Tone Settings (Register Correction Pattern).....	79
Installing the Reader Assembly.....	79

Deck Settings.....	80
Cassette Settings.....	82
Image Position Adjustment (Printer).....	83
Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF).....	100
Checking the Network Connection.....	110
Network Troubleshooting.....	111
Installing the IC Card Reader.....	112
Operation when using uniFLOW Online.....	117
When Relocating the Machine.....	118
When moving the machine to another floor.....	118
When moving the machine by truck.....	123
3. Image Reading System Options.....	133
Printer Cover-H2.....	134
Points to Note before Installation.....	134
Checking the Contents.....	134
Installation Outline Drawing.....	134
Installation Procedure.....	135
Operation Check.....	158
Reader Heater-P1.....	160
Checking the Contents.....	160
Installation Outline Drawing.....	160
Installation Procedure.....	161
4. Host Machine Options.....	181
NFC Kit-E1/E2.....	182
Checking the Contents.....	182
Installation Outline Drawing.....	182
Installation Procedure.....	183
Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE.....	201
Checking the Contents.....	201
Installation Outline Drawing.....	201
Installation Procedure.....	202
Setting after Installation.....	209
Numeric Keypad-A1/A2.....	211
Points to Note before Installation.....	211
Checking the Contents.....	211
Installation Outline Drawing.....	212
Installation Procedure.....	212
Copy Card Reader-F1.....	221
Points to Note at Installation.....	221
Checking the Contents.....	221
Installation Outline Drawing.....	222
Installation Procedure.....	223
Checking after Installation.....	238
Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1	240
Points to Note at Installation.....	240
Checking the Contents.....	240
Installation Outline Drawing.....	241

Installation Procedure.....	242
Utility Tray-B1.....	250
Points to Note at Installation.....	250
Checking the Contents.....	250
Installation Outline Drawing.....	250
Installation Procedure.....	251
Voice Operation Kit-D1.....	257
Points to Note at Installation.....	257
Checking the Contents.....	257
Installation Outline Drawing.....	258
Installation Procedure.....	258
Checking after Installation.....	270
Operation Check.....	270
Voice Guidance Kit-G1.....	271
Points to Note at Installation.....	271
Checking the Contents.....	271
Installation Outline Drawing.....	272
Installation Procedure.....	272
Checking after Installation.....	283
Operation Check.....	283
Super G3 FAX Board-AS1.....	285
Product Name.....	285
Points to Note at Installation.....	285
Checking the Contents.....	286
Installation Outline Drawing.....	287
Installation Procedure.....	287
Checking the Operation.....	292
Super G3 FAX Board-AS2.....	294
Product Name.....	294
Points to Note at Installation.....	294
Checking the Contents.....	294
Installation Outline Drawing.....	295
Installation Procedure.....	295
Checking the Operation.....	299
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1.....	300
Product Name.....	300
Points to Note at Installation.....	300
Checking the Contents.....	301
Installation Outline Drawing.....	303
Installation Procedure.....	303
Checking the Operation.....	319
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2.....	321
Product Name.....	321
Points to Note at Installation.....	321
Checking the Contents.....	322
Installation Outline Drawing.....	323
Installation Procedure.....	324
Checking the Operation.....	338
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1.....	340
Product Name.....	340
Points to Note at Installation.....	340

Checking the Contents.....	341
Installation Outline Drawing.....	342
Installation Procedure.....	342
Checking the Operation.....	348
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2.....	350
Product Name.....	350
Points to Note at Installation.....	350
Checking the Contents.....	351
Installation Outline Drawing.....	352
Installation Procedure.....	352
Checking the Operation.....	358
HDD-related Option.....	360
Pre-checks.....	360
Removing the HDD (Preparation).....	361
[TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB).....	364
[TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit.....	369
[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit.....	380
Upright Control Panel-J1.....	393
Checking the Contents.....	393
Installation Outline Drawing.....	394
Installation Procedure.....	395
imagePASS-N2 V1.1.....	431
The IP addresses for communication between the host machine and equipment are set automatically....	431
Securing space for installation.....	431
Check When Connecting the Power Plug to an Outlet.....	431
Installation Outline Drawing.....	431
Checking the Contents.....	432
Installation Procedure.....	433
Setting after Installation	447

5. Paper Feed Options..... 452

Cassette Heater Unit-38.....	453
Product Name.....	453
Checking the Contents.....	453
Installation Outline Drawing.....	453
Installation Procedure.....	453
Paper Deck Unit-E1.....	462
Checking before Installation.....	462
Unpacking Procedure.....	462
Checking the Contents.....	463
Installation Procedure.....	464
Checking after Installation.....	484
Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1.....	490
Checking before Installation.....	490
Checking the Supplied Parts.....	490
Installation Procedure.....	491
Checking after Installation.....	505
POD Deck Lite-C1.....	506
Checking before Installation.....	506
Unpacking.....	506

Checking the Contents..... 507

Installation Procedure..... 509

Disposal Parts..... 529

Paper Positioning Check/Adjustment Procedure..... 529

Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1..... 534

 Checking the Parts to be Installed..... 534

 Removing from the Host Machine..... 534

 Installation Procedure..... 536

Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1..... 543

 Checking before Installation..... 543

 Unpacking..... 544

 Checking the Contents..... 550

 Installation Procedure..... 552

 Checking after Installation..... 587

 Paper Positioning Check / Adjustment Procedure..... 587

 Gap adjustment of the Deck Cover..... 592

Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit-A1..... 594

 Points to Note at Installation..... 594

 Checking the Contents..... 594

 Installation Procedure 594

Paper Deck Heater Unit for Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1..... 629

 Checking the Parts to be Installed..... 629

 Installation Procedure..... 629

6. Paper Output Options..... 638

Buffer Pass Unit-M1..... 639

 Product Name..... 639

 Checking the Contents..... 639

 Installation Procedure..... 640

Document Insertion Unit-N1..... 651

 Checking before Installation..... 651

 Unpacking Procedure..... 652

 Checking the Contents..... 654

 Installation Outline Drawing..... 656

 Installation Procedure 657

 Adjustment..... 671

 Checking after Installation..... 679

Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1..... 681

 Pre-checks..... 681

 Unpacking..... 681

 Checking the Contents..... 685

 Installation Procedure..... 685

Paper Folding Unit-J1..... 704

 Checking before Installation..... 704

 Unpacking..... 704

 Checking the Contents..... 714

 Installation Procedure 716

 Adjustment..... 730

 Checking after Installation..... 742

Document Insertion Unit-Q1, Document Insertion/Folding Unit-K1..... 744

Checking Before Installation.....	744
Unpacking.....	744
Checking the Contents.....	752
Installation Procedure	753
Checking after Installation.....	771
Adjusting the Height and Tilt.....	772
Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1.....	787
Checking before Installation.....	787
Unpacking.....	789
Checking the Contents.....	791
Installation Procedure.....	792
Affixing the Labels.....	802
Making Adjustments.....	805
Making Checks After Completion of Installation Work.....	819
Detach this Equipment from the Upstream Connection Machine.....	821
2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1.....	823
Checking Before Installation.....	823
Unpacking Procedure.....	823
Checking the Contents.....	825
Installation Procedure.....	825
Disposal Parts Check.....	840
Operation Check.....	840
Adjusting the Output Level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor.....	841
Checking and Adjusting the Punch Hole Position.....	842
Finisher Jogger Kit-A1.....	846
Checking Before Installation.....	846
Unpacking Procedure.....	846
Checking the Contents.....	847
Installation Procedure.....	848
Checking after Installation.....	856
Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1.....	858
Checking Before Installation.....	858
Unpacking.....	859
Checking the Contents.....	869
Installation Procedure	869
Adjustment.....	889
Checking after Installation.....	895
Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1.....	897
Checking before Installation.....	897
Unpacking and Checking the Contents.....	897
Installation Procedure	898
Adjustment.....	919
Operation Check.....	920
Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1.....	921
Checking before Installation.....	921
Checking the Supplied Parts	921
Installation Procedure	922
Operation Check.....	941
Revision.....	942

Safety Precautions

Toner Safety.....	2
Points to Note at Installation.....	2

Toner Safety

About Toner

Toner is a nontoxic matter composed of plastic, iron and a trace of pigments.

CAUTION:

Never throw toner in flames to avoid explosion.

Handling Adhered Toner

- Use dry tissue paper to wipe off toner adhered to skin or clothes and wash in water.
- Never use warm water for cleaning up toner to prevent toner particles from being gelated to soak into fibers permanently.
- Toner particles are reactive with vinyl polymers. Avoid contacting these materials.

Points to Note at Installation

Checking the Installation Environment

1. The environment of the installation site must be in the range as shown below. Avoid installation near the faucet, water boiler, humidifier or refrigerator.
Guaranteed range for operation/image Temperature: 10.0 to 30.0 deg C, Humidity: 20 to 80%
2. The machine must not be installed near a source of fire or in an area subject to dust or ammonium gas.
If the area is exposed to direct rays of the sun, provide curtains to the window.
3. Be sure to provide adequate ventilation of the room to keep the work environment comfortable. Room odor can be bothering when running the machine for a long time in a poorly-ventilated room although the ozone amount generated while running this equipment does not harm human health.

Points to Note Before Servicing

- At servicing, be sure to turn OFF the power source according to the specified steps and disconnect the power plug.
- Be sure to disconnect the power plug on a regular basis and remove dust and dirt accumulated around the outlet with dry cloth.

CAUTION:

Leaving the power plug connected for a long time in an environment having a lot of dust, moisture, or oily smoke will cause a fire. (Because dust accumulated in the surrounding area will absorb moisture and cause an insulation failure)

- Be careful not to be injured by burrs of edges, sharp corners or protrusions.

CAUTION:

Hazardous area such as corners, edges, springs and other sharp sections may be remaining on products. Always be aware of the presence of hazardous area to avoid injury caused by contacting and/or striking those area, by not over-concentrating on service work.

Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
 - If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.
- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

Points to Note When Turning ON/OFF the Main Power

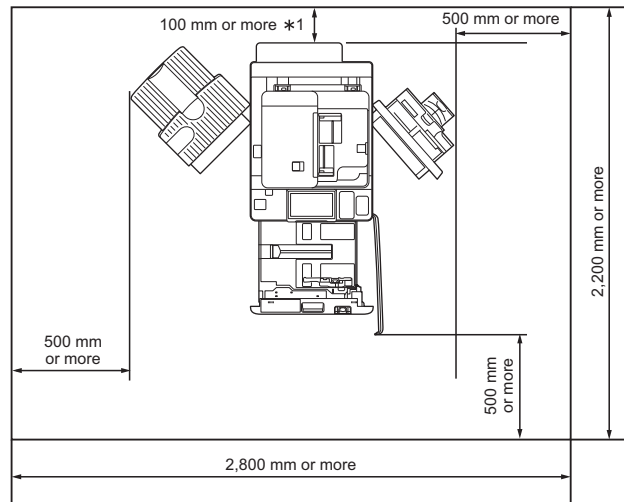
The following message is displayed.

1. **When a message prompting to turn OFF and then ON the main power appears, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.**
2. **If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Checking the Installation Space

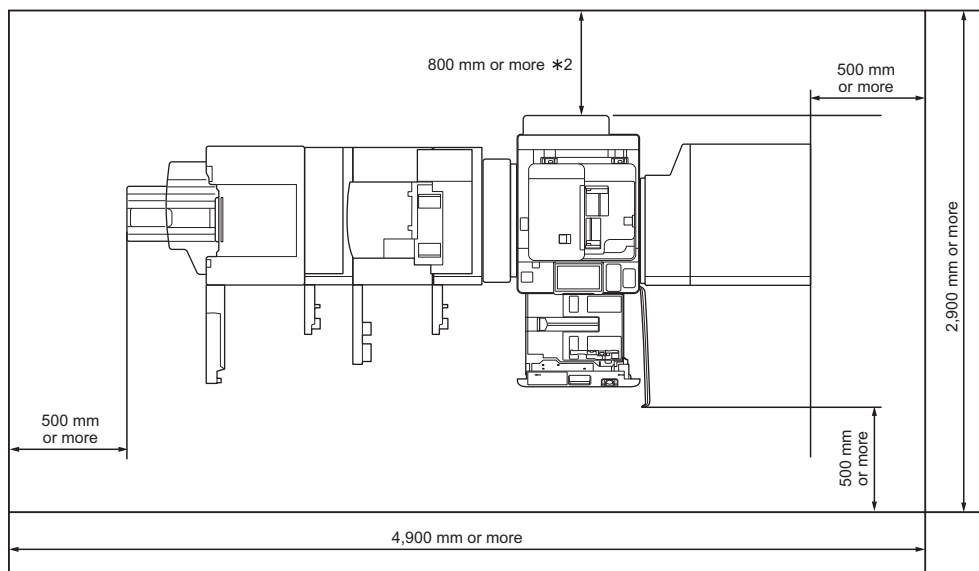
1. Be sure that the feet of the machine are properly set. In addition, be sure to keep the machine horizontal.
2. Be sure to keep 100 mm or more distance from the wall to make enough room for performing the operation.
 - When the Copy Tray-R2 is installed



NOTE:

*1 Make sure to provide at least 800 mm of space if you attach one or more of the following: Paper Folding Unit-J1, Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1, Document Insertion Unit-N1, or Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1.

- When the Booklet Finisher-X1 + Paper Folding Unit-J1 + Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1 + Document Insertion Unit-N1 + Buffer Path Unit-M1 + Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1 are installed



NOTE:

*2 Make sure to provide at least 100 mm of space if none of the Paper Folding Unit-J1, Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1, Document Insertion Unit-N1, or Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1 is attached.

3. Install the machine in a well-ventilated location.

In a location with a mixture of multiple host machines, be sure to install the machine where the air exhausted from other machines will not directly enter the machine.
Do not install the machine in the immediate vicinity of any air inlet for room ventilation.

illustrations

Although pictures or illustrations used for explanation may differ from the actual things, the procedure is the same.

Description on the parts included in the package

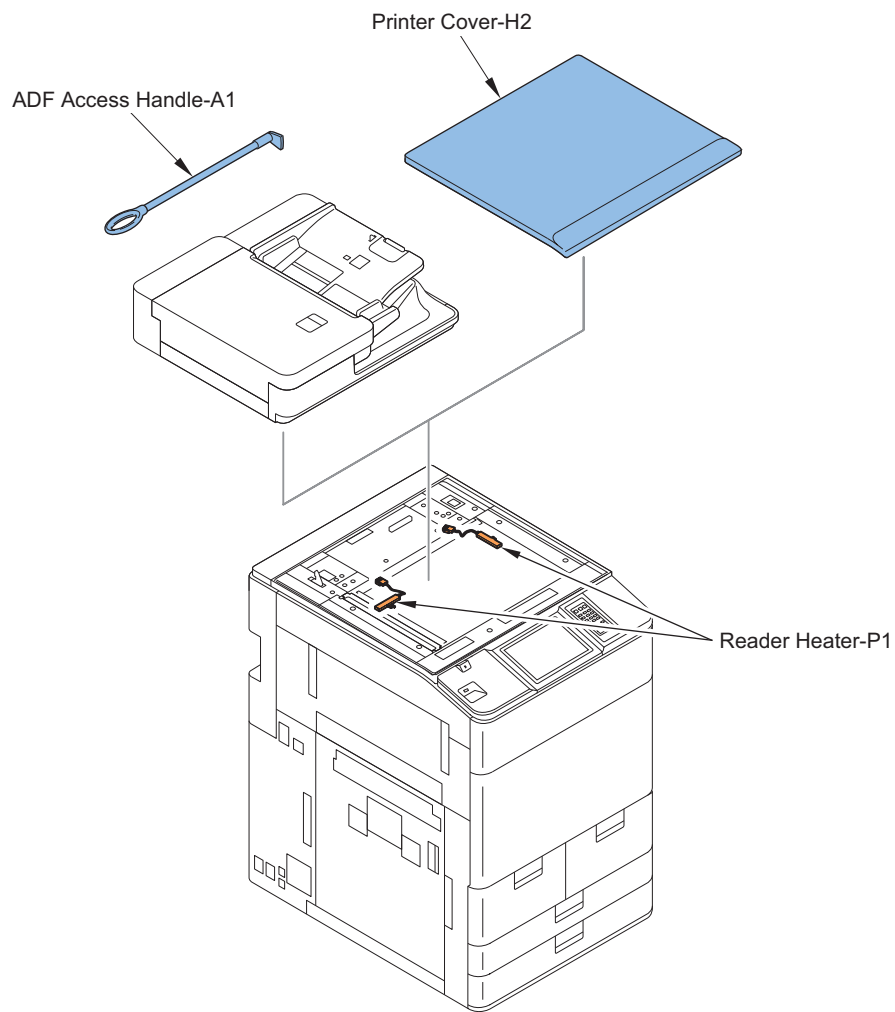
The parts with a diagonal line in the contents list will not be used.



Product Lineup

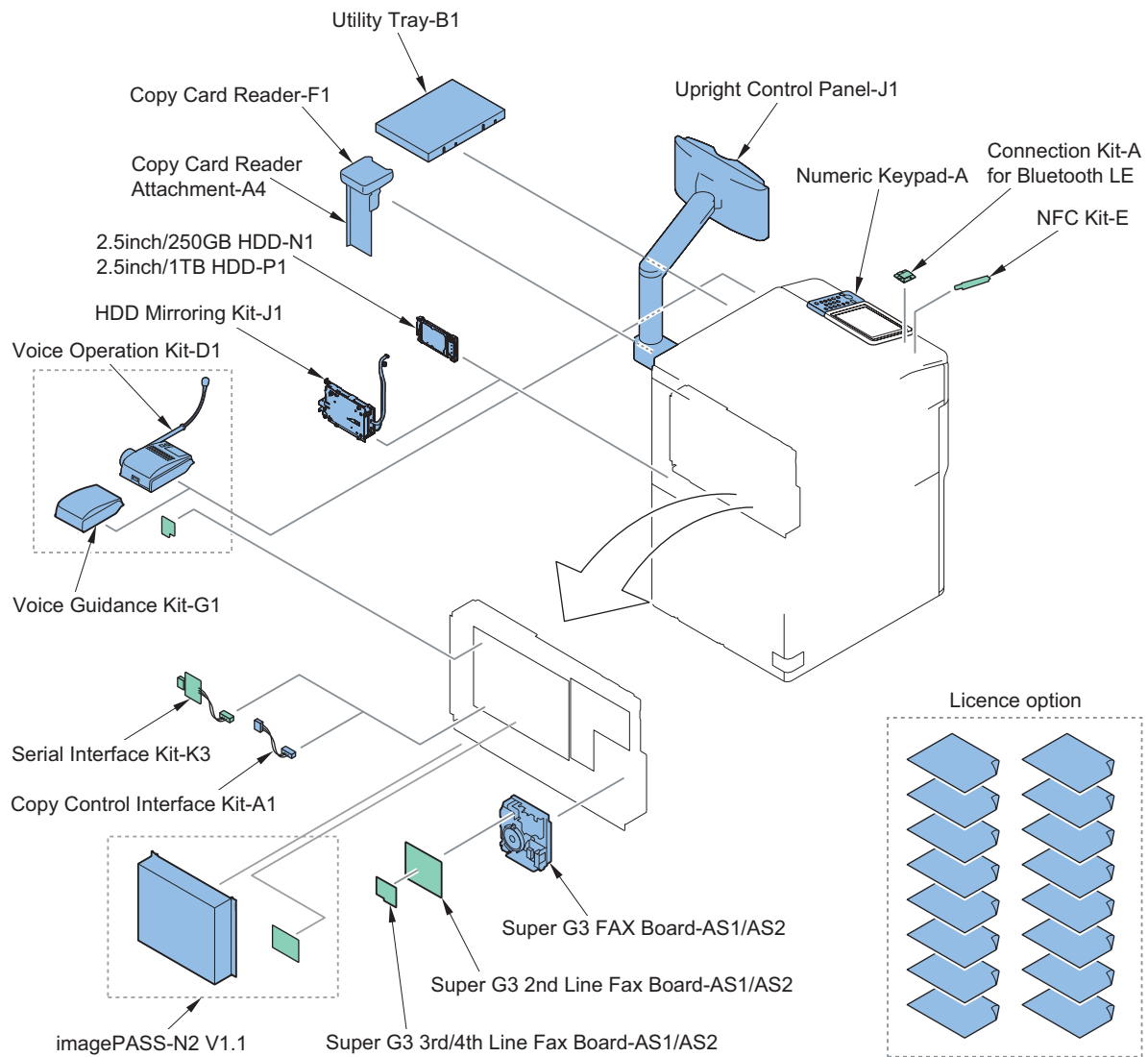
Image Reading System Options.....	7
Host Machine Options	8
Paper Feed / Paper Output Options ..	11

Image Reading System Options



Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.	Reference
Printer Cover-H2	Cannot be installed with the DADF.	"Printer Cover-H2" on page 134
ADF Access Handle-A1	It is the handle to support opening and closing the Feeder.	
Reader Heater-P1	Option for Reader Unit	"Reader Heater-P1" on page 160

Host Machine Options



Hardware product

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.	Reference
Upright Control Panel-J1		"Upright Control Panel-J1" on page 393
Numeric Keypad-A1/A2		"Numeric Keypad-A1/A2" on page 211
NFC Kit-E1/E2		"NFC Kit-E1/E2" on page 182
Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE		"Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE" on page 201
Super G3 FAX Board-AS1		"Super G3 FAX Board-AS1" on page 285
Super G3 FAX Board-AS2		"Super G3 FAX Board-AS2" on page 294
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1	Super G3 FAX Board is required.	"Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1" on page 300
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2	Super G3 FAX Board is required.	"Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2" on page 321
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1	Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board is required.	"Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1" on page 340
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2	Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board is required.	"Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2" on page 350
imagePASS-N2 V1.1		"imagePASS-N2 V1.1" on page 431

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.	Reference
Copy Control Interface Kit-A1	Required when the coin manager is connected. Using with Copy Card Reader and Serial Interface Kit is not available.	"Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 " on page 240
Serial Interface Kit-K3	Required when the coin manager is connected. Using with Copy Card Reader and Copy Control Interface Kit is not available.	
Voice Operation Kit-D1	Using with Utility Tray and Voice Guidance Kit is not available.	"Voice Operation Kit-D1" on page 257
Voice Guidance Kit-G1	Using with Utility Tray and Voice Operation Kit is not available.	"Voice Guidance Kit-G1" on page 271
HDD Mirroring Kit-J1	When performing mirroring, either the 2.5inch/250GB HDD or the 2.5inch/1TB HDD is required.	"HDD-related Option" on page 360
2.5inch/250GB HDD-N1	This is used when the mirroring function is used with HDD Mirroring Kit.	
2.5inch/1TB HDD-P1		
Copy Card Reader-F1	Copy Card Reader Attachment Kit is required. Using with Serial Interface Kit and Copy Control Interface Kit is not available.	"Copy Card Reader-F1" on page 221
Copy Card Reader Attachment-A4	Required when the Copy Card Reader is connected.	
Utility Tray-B1	Using with Voice Guidance Kit and Voice Operation Kit is not available.	"Utility Tray-B1" on page 250

License Products

At the time of installation, obtain the license number.

Then, enter the obtained license number from the Control Panel of the machine. The applicable functions are enabled.

There is no physically required installation.

Product name	Condition
Remote Fax Kit-A1	
IP FAX Expansion Kit-B1	Using with Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board or Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board is not available.
PCL Printer Kit-CG1	
PCL Asian Font Set-A1	
PCL International Font Set-A1	
PS Printer Kit-BF1	
Barcode Printing Kit-D1	
Productivity Package Web Activate	
Fiery Compose	
Fiery Impose	
Fiery Impose and Compose	
Open I/F Board Kit-E1	
Picture Login-A1	

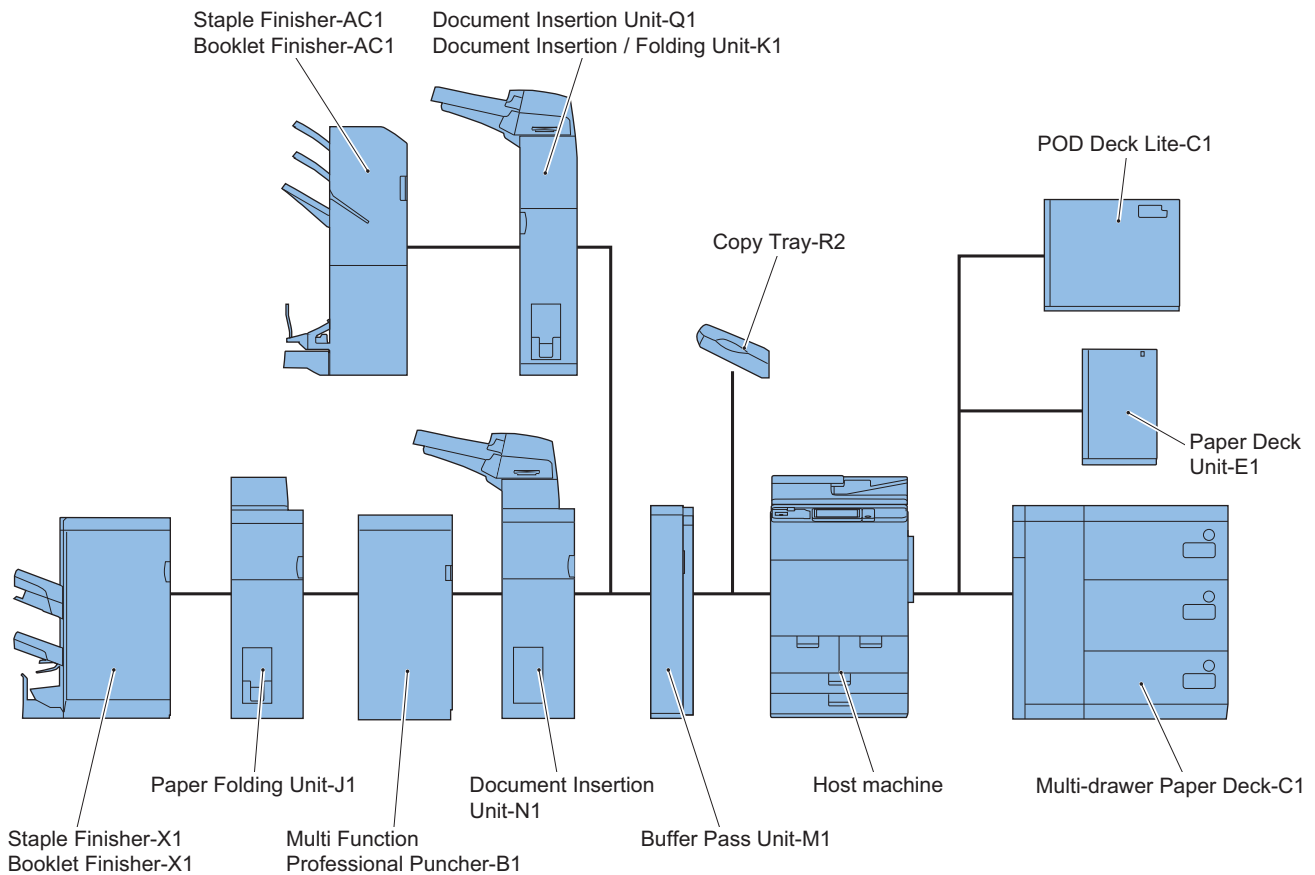
Option Combination Table

The following table shows the combination of small options installed on the right side of the host machine.
 Before installing the options described in the table, refer to the table shown below to check the combination.
 When the Multi-drawer Paper Deck is installed, the following options cannot be used together with it.

	Utility Tray	Voice Operation Kit	Voice Guidance Kit	Copy Card Reader
Utility Tray	-	No	No	Yes
Voice Operation Kit	No	-	No	Yes
Voice Guidance Kit	No	No	-	Yes
Copy Card Reader	Yes	Yes	Yes	-

Yes: installation is available, No: installation is not available

Paper Feed / Paper Output Options



Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.	Reference
Host machine		
Tab Feeding Attachment-F1	Option for Deck of Host machine	
Envelope Feeder Attachment-F1	Option for Cassette of Host machine	
Cassette Heater Unit-38	Option for Cassette of Host machine	"Cassette Heater Unit-38" on page 453
POD Deck Lite-C1	Using with Paper Deck Unit and Multi-drawer Paper Deck is not available.	"POD Deck Lite-C1" on page 506
Envelope Feeder Attachment-G1	Option for POD Deck Lite	
Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1	Option for POD Deck Lite	"Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1" on page 534
Paper Deck Unit-E1	Using with POD Deck Lite and Multi-drawer Paper Deck is not available.	"Paper Deck Unit-E1" on page 462
Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1	Option for Paper Deck Unit	"Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1" on page 490
Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1	Using with Paper Deck Unit and Multi-drawer Paper Deck is not available.	"Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1" on page 543
Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit-A1	Option for Multi-drawer Paper Deck	"Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit-A1" on page 594
Paper Deck Heater Unit for Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1	Option for Multi-drawer Paper Deck	"Paper Deck Heater Unit for Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1" on page 629
Copy Tray-R2	Using with delivery-related options is not available.	
Buffer Pass Unit-M1	Necessary when a finisher is connected	"Buffer Pass Unit-M1" on page 639
Document Insertion Unit-Q1	Necessary when a finisher is connected Using with Document Insertion / Folding Unit-K1 is not available.	"Document Insertion Unit-Q1, Document Insertion/Folding Unit-K1" on page 744
Document Insertion / Folding Unit-K1	Necessary when a finisher is connected Using with Document Insertion Unit-Q1 is not available.	

Product name	Required options, conditions, etc.	Reference
Staple Finisher-AC1	Using with Booklet Finisher-AC1 is not available.	"Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1" on page 787
Booklet Finisher-AC1	Using with Staple Finisher-AC1 is not available.	
2/3 Hole Puncher Unit-A1	Booklet Finisher-AC1, Staple Finisher-AC1 options	"2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1" on page 823
2/4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1		
4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1		
Finisher Jogger Kit-A1	Booklet Finisher-AC1, Staple Finisher-AC1 options	"Finisher Jogger Kit-A1" on page 846
Document Insertion Unit-N1	Necessary when a finisher is connected	"Document Insertion Unit-N1" on page 651
Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1	Necessary when a finisher is connected.	"Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1" on page 681
Paper Folding Unit-J1	Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher is required at the downstream side.	"Paper Folding Unit-J1" on page 704
Staple Finisher-X1	Using with Booklet Finisher-X1 is not available.	"Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1" on page 858
Booklet Finisher-X1	Using with Staple Finisher-X1 is not available.	
Puncher Unit-BF1	Booklet Finisher-X1/Staple Finisher-X1 options	"Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1" on page 897
Puncher Unit-BG1		
Puncher Unit-BH1		
Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1	Booklet Finisher-X1/Staple Finisher-X1 options	"Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1" on page 921



Host Machine

Checking Before Installation	14
Installation Procedure.....	16
When Relocating the Machine.....	118

Checking Before Installation

Following shows requirements for the installation site.

Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in the machine to the user's site.

Checking the Power Supply

1. Be sure to connect the power plug exclusively to an outlet that compiles with the following.

- USA
C7780i : 208 +/-10%, 60Hz, 12A
C7770i/C7765i : 120-127V +/-10%, 60Hz, 16A
- EUR/Asia/Oceania/Korea
C7780i/C7780 : 220-240V +/-10%, 50/60Hz, 11A
C7770i/C7770/C7765i/C7765 : 220-240V +/-10%, 50/60Hz, 10A
- China
C7780 : 220-240V +/-10%, 50/60Hz, 11A
C7770/C7765 : 220-240V +/-10%, 50/60Hz, 10A
- Taiwan
C7780i : 110V-120V +/-10%, 60Hz, 10A+14A
C7770i : 110V-120V +/-10%, 60Hz, 9A+11A

2. Be sure to install this machine near an outlet so that the power plug can be disconnected right away in case of emergency, and do not put anything around the power plug.

Points to Note at Installation

When installing this machine, note the following points.

1. When the machine is moved from a cold location to a warm location, condensation may occur, resulting in water drops on the metal surfaces.

Use of the host machine when there is condensation may result in image failure.

After moving the machine from a cold location to a warm location, leave it unpacked for at least 2 hours or more to let it warm up to room temperature before installation.

2. Be sure to work with 4 or more people when installing it.

CAUTION:

Be sure to first complete the installation of the host machine only, and then perform checking after power-on.

Points to Note When Moving This Host Machine

- When moving this host machine after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps.
If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
- Keep the fixation members and screws that were removed during unpacking or installation as they may be used to transport the machine for relocation or repair.

Host Machine Installation Procedure

1. Checking before Installation
2. Unpacking
3. Checking the Contents
4. Installing the Scanner

5. Installing the Buffer Path Unit (only models with the Buffer Path Unit included as standard) (for US and EUR)**NOTE:**

In the case of installing the Printer Cover, install it before installing the Buffer Path Unit for better installation efficiency.

- 6. Installing the Fixing Feed Assembly**
- 7. Installing the Process Unit (for Color)**
- 8. Installing the Developing Assembly (for Black)**
- 9. Other Installations**
- 10. Installing the Noise Reduction Cover**
- 11. Securing the Host Machine**
- 12. Preparing Connection of the Main Power**
- 13. Turning ON the Main Power Switch**
- 14. Installing the Toner Container**
- 15. Host Machine Settings (Starting Setup Guide)**
- 16. Registration of Installation Date Information**
- 17. Auto Gradation Adjustment (Full Adjust)**
- 18. Auto Correct Color Tone Settings (Register Correction Pattern)**
- 19. Installing the Reader Assembly**
- 20. Deck Settings**
- 21. Cassette Settings**
- 22. Image Position Adjustment (Printer)**
- 23. Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF)**
- 24. Checking the Network Connection**
- 25. Network Troubleshooting**
- 26. Installing the IC Card Reader**

NOTE:

When installing the IC Card Reader and the Numeric Keypad at the same time, be sure to install the Numeric Keypad first.

27. Operation when using uniFLOW Online

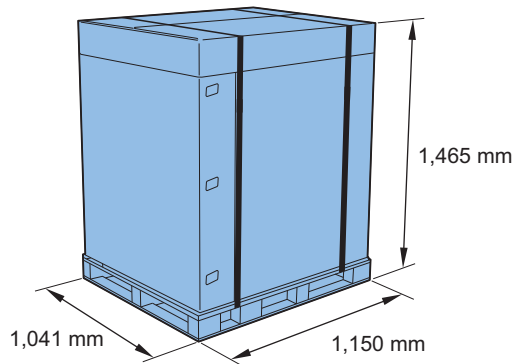
Installation Procedure

Unpacking

■ Checking the Unpacking Space

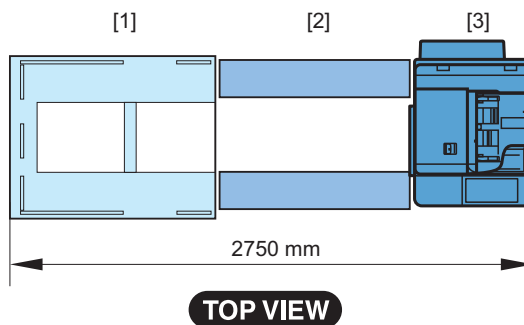
The dimensions shown in the figure below are the minimum space required. Thus it is desirable to secure more space for the work than shown in the figure below.

- 1. The dimensions of the host machine and transportation container are as shown in the figure below.**
Secure the space for unpacking before work.



- 2. The following space is needed when the machine is lifted down from pallet.**

- [1] Pallet
- [2] Slope Plate
- [3] Host Machine



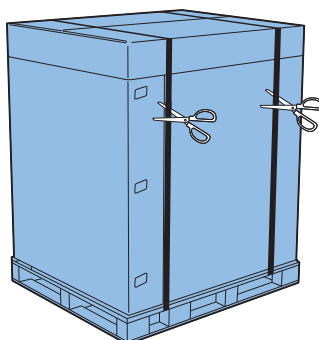
■ Unpacking Procedure

CAUTION:

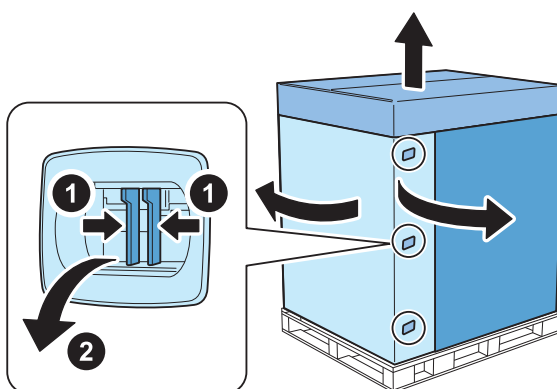
- The weight of the host machine is up to approx. 251 kg. For safety, carefully perform transport and installation.
- Be sure to work with 4 or more people when installing it.



1. Cut the polyester packing band.



2. Unpack the host machine.



3. Remove the tapes securing the host machine and the box containing the parts that come with the machine, and then lift down the box from the pallet.

CAUTION:

Be careful not to drop the box containing the parts that come with the machine when removing the tapes.

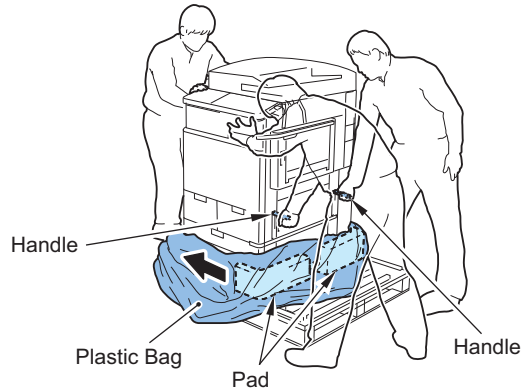


4. Pull down the plastic bag to the bottom.

-
5. Hold the handle on the right side of the host machine, and remove the pads while lifting up the host machine. When performing this work, move the plastic bag in the direction of the arrow.

⚠ CAUTION:

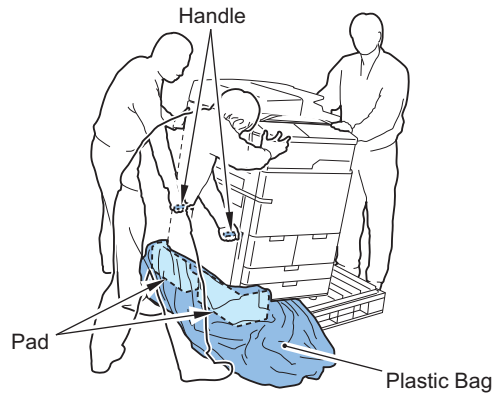
Be careful not to lift the host machine too high because the balance may be lost.



-
6. Hold the handle on the left side of the host machine, and remove the pads and the plastic bag while lifting up the host machine.

⚠ CAUTION:

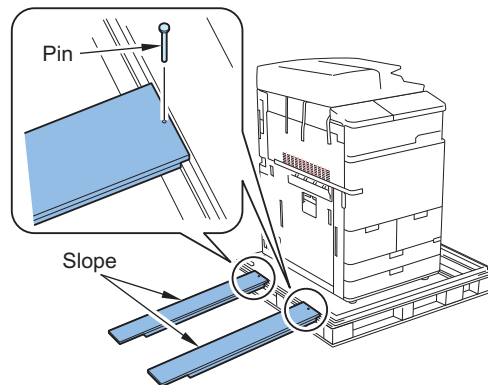
Be careful not to lift the host machine too high because the balance may be lost.



-
7. Take out the 2 Slope Plates stored on the right side of the pallet, and remove the 2 pins taped to the backside of the Slope Plate.



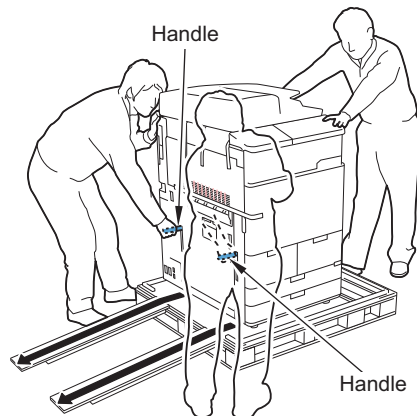
8. After turning the 2 Slope Plates over and installing them as shown in the figure, align the pin holes in the pallet with those in the Slope Plates, and insert the 2 pins.



9. Hold the handle on the left side of the host machine, and while supporting its corners, align the casters with the center of each Slope Plate. Then, bring the host machine down slowly.

⚠ CAUTION:

Be sure not to let the casters drop off the Slope Plates.



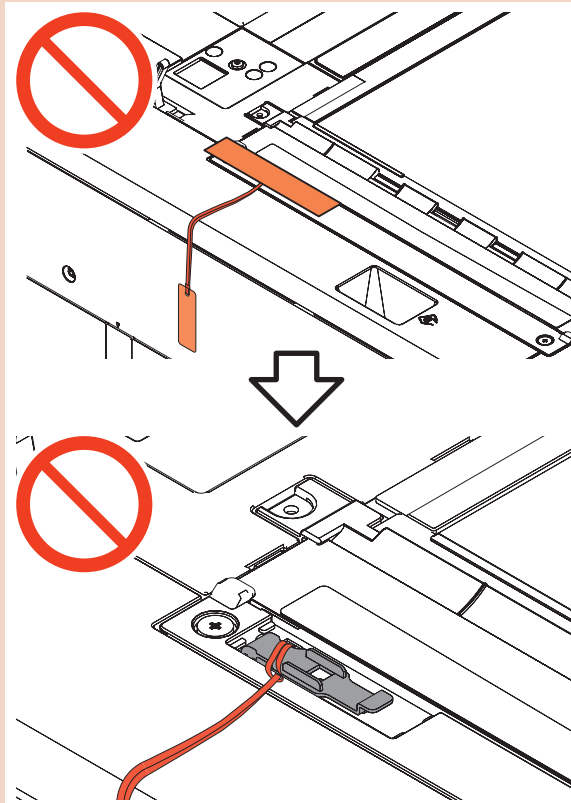


10. Remove tapes on the exterior surface of the host machine.

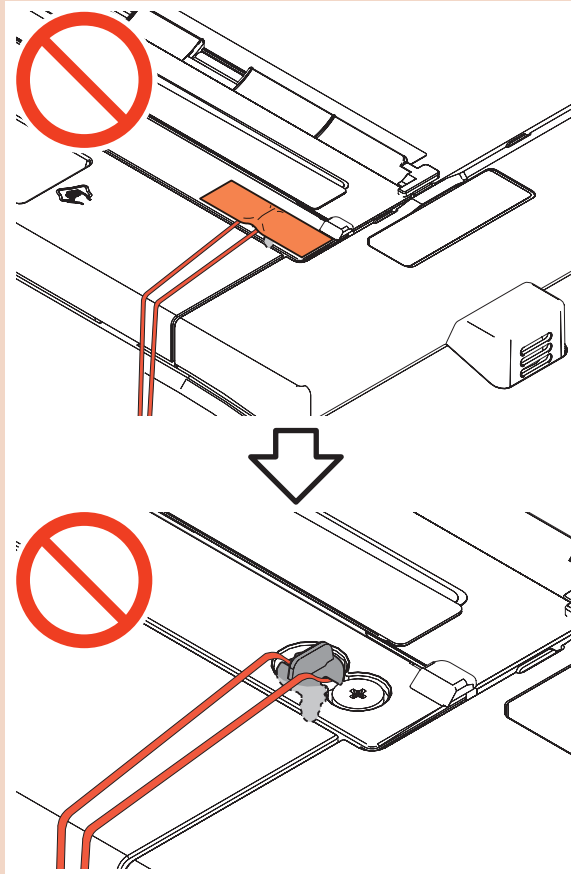
CAUTION:

Do not remove the Scanner Fixation Member until you proceed to [“Installing the Scanner”](#) on page 26.

< Rear side >



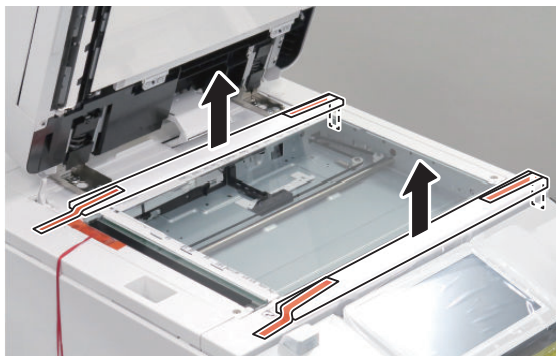
< Front side >



11. Open the DADF and remove tapes on the exterior surface of the host machine.

NOTE:

Remove the Scanner Fixation Member and the Scanner Fixation Screw when you proceed to "Installing the Scanner" on page 26.



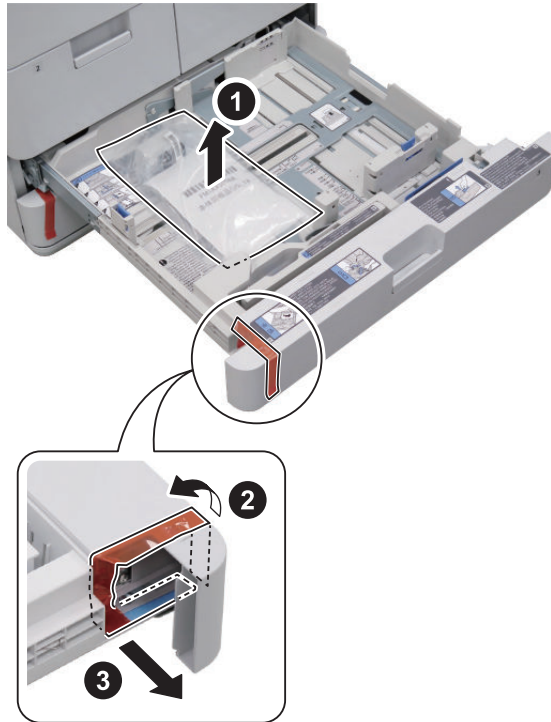
12. Close the DADF.



13. Pull out the Cassette 3.



14. Take out its contents and remove the tape and Fixation Member.



15. Return the Cassette 3 to its original position.







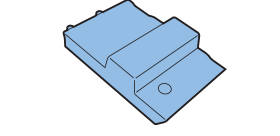


16. Remove the tape and Fixation Member from the Cassette 4.

● Checking the Contents

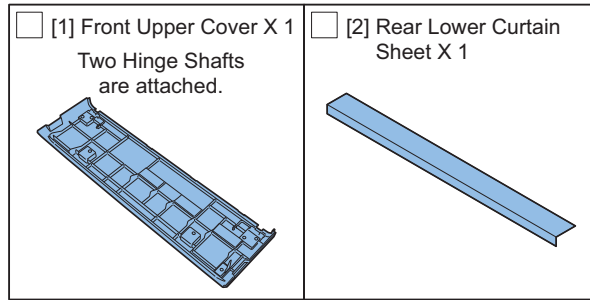
■ Accessory Box 1

CAUTION:

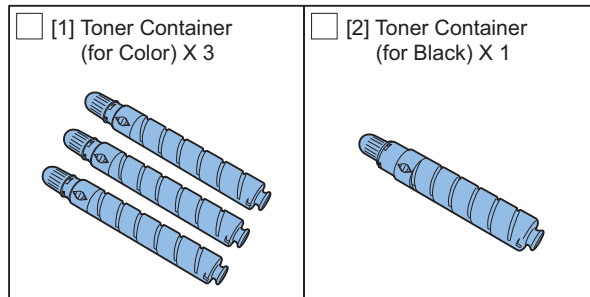
Do not open the Filters [5] and [6] until just before installation.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Developing Assembly (for Color) X 3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Developing Assembly (for Black) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Drum Unit (for Color) X 3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Noise Reduction Cover X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] UFP Filter X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ozone Filter X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] ITB Inner Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Handle Cover X 6 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Service Book Holder X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) X 2  <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (Binding; M4x10) X 1 

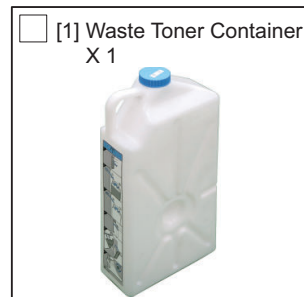
■ Accessory Box 2



■ Toner Container (for KR, CN)



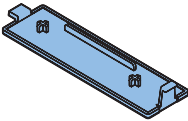
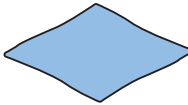

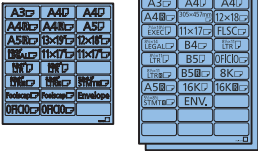


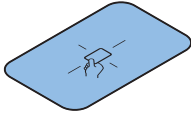
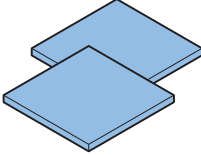
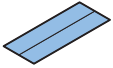


■ Waste Toner Container (for EUR)



■ Others

NOTE:

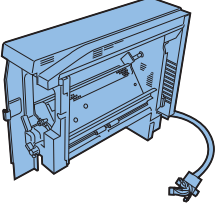
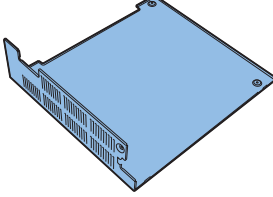
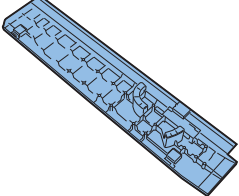
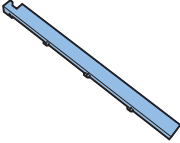
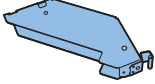
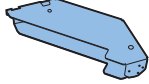


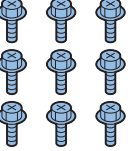


- [3] to [5] : Number of labels attached to the sheet varies according to location/area.
- [6] : Give this to the user as the user may affix it if necessary (See the User's Guide for the procedure).
- [9] : Use this if necessary when installing the IC Card Reader.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Reader Left Upper Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Cleaning Cloth X1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Paper Size Labels (for Deck) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Paper Size Labels (for Deck) USA X 1 EUR X 1 Asia X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Copy Prohibition Label USA X 1 EUR X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Control Panel Language Label X 1 Only for Korea 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] IC Card Reader Sheet X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Cushion X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Double-sided Tape X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Wire Saddle X 1  <input type="checkbox"/> [11] Rubber Cap X 1 

< Others >

- Including guides

■ Buffer Path Unit (Only Models with the Buffer Path Unit Included as Standard) (for US and EUR)

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Buffer Path Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Buffer Left Lower Cover X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Buffer Front Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Delivery Outlet Upper X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Cover Support Plate (Front) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cover Support Plate (Rear) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Connecting Harness Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Hinge Shaft X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) X 9 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (P Tightening; M4x10) X 1 
	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Wire Saddle X 1 

● Installing the Scanner

NOTE:

- Because the Scanner Fixation Member will be needed when moving the machine, be sure to keep it in a safe place.
- When moving the machine, be sure to execute following service mode (Lv.2), remove the Reader Left Upper, and then install the Scanner Fixation Member. (For details, refer to "When Relocating the Machine".)

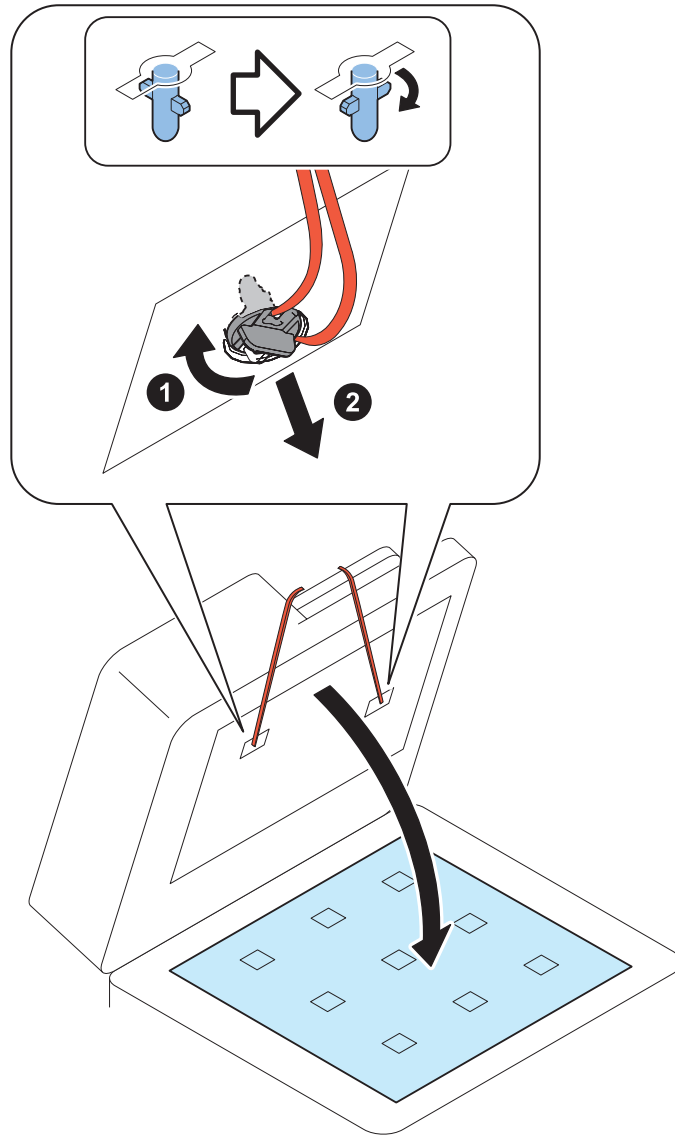
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > RD-SHPOS



1. Open the ADF.



2.

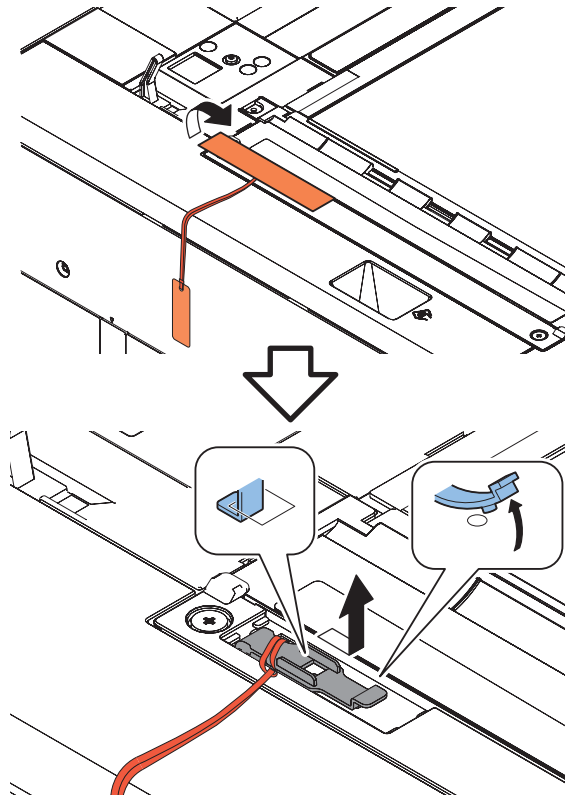




3. Peel the tape off and remove the Scanner Fixation Member (rear side).

NOTE:

Be sure to keep the Scanner Fixation Member in a safe place for moving the machine.

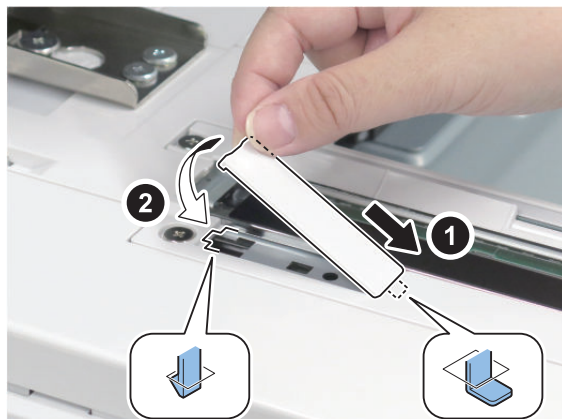
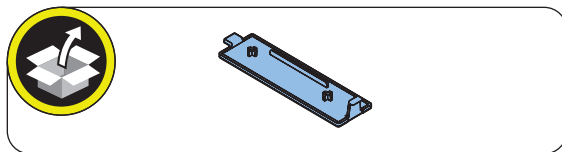


NOTE:

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 8.



4. Install the Reader Left Upper Cover.

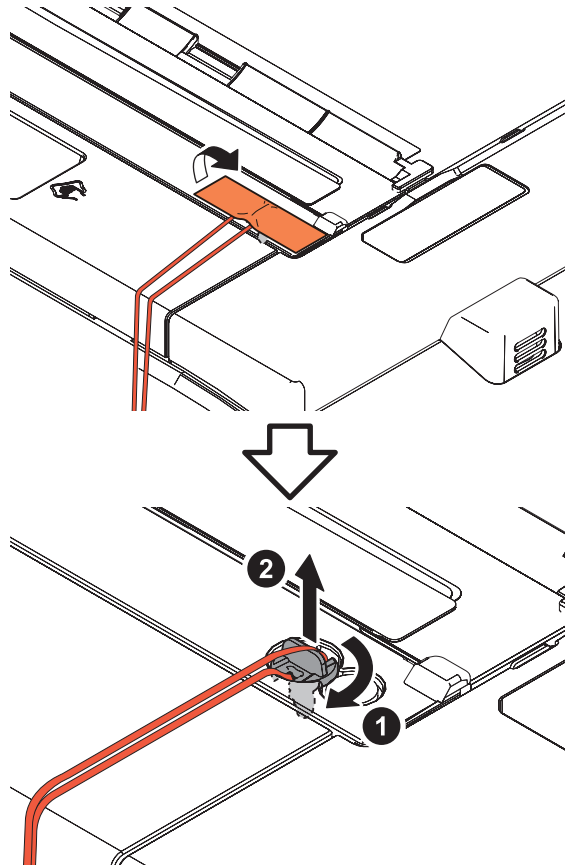




5. Peel the tape off and remove the Scanner Fixation Member (front side).

NOTE:

Be sure to keep the Scanner Fixation Member in a safe place for moving the machine.

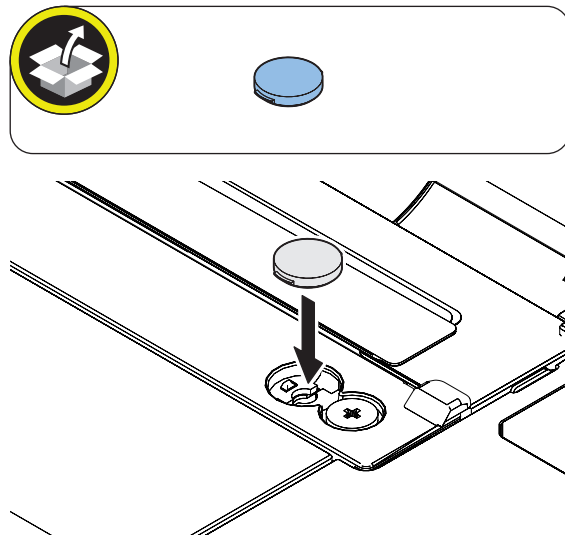


NOTE:

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 10.

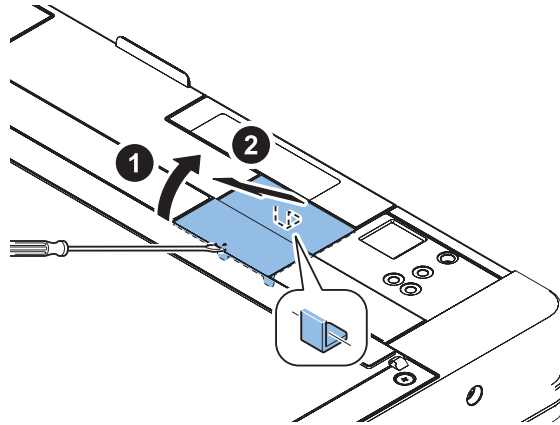


6. Install the Rubber Cap.





7. Remove the Maintenance Cover (Upper).

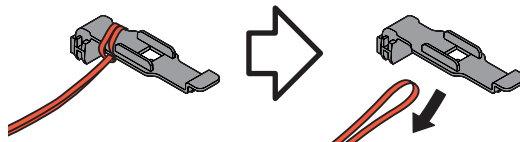


NOTE:

The removed Scanner Fixation Member will be stored in step 9.

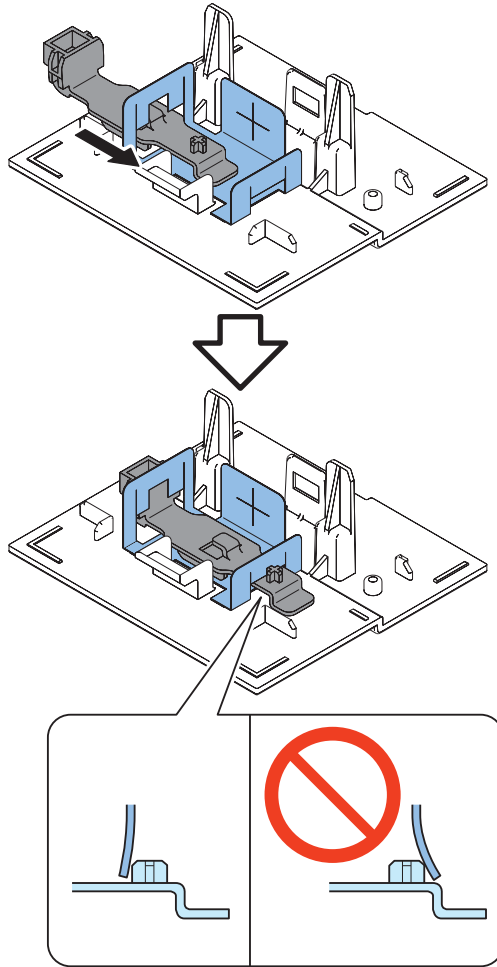


8. Remove the strap with a tag from the removed Scanner Fixation Member.

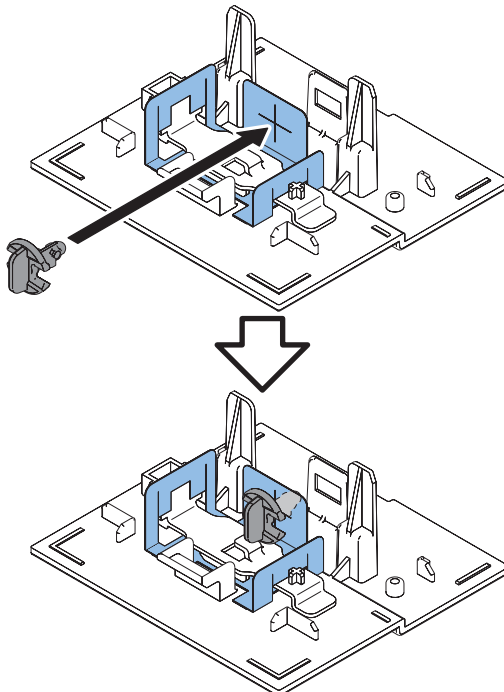




9. Store the Scanner Fixation Member.

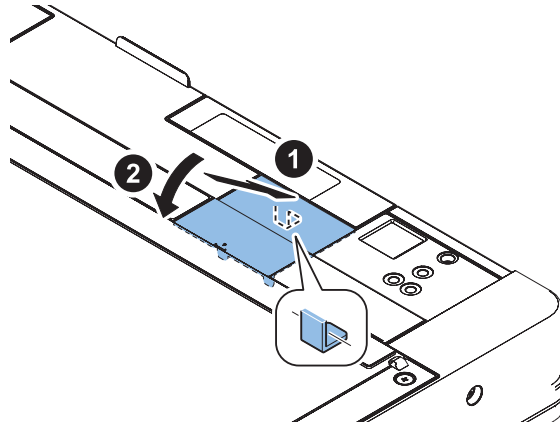


10. Store the Scanner Fixation Member.

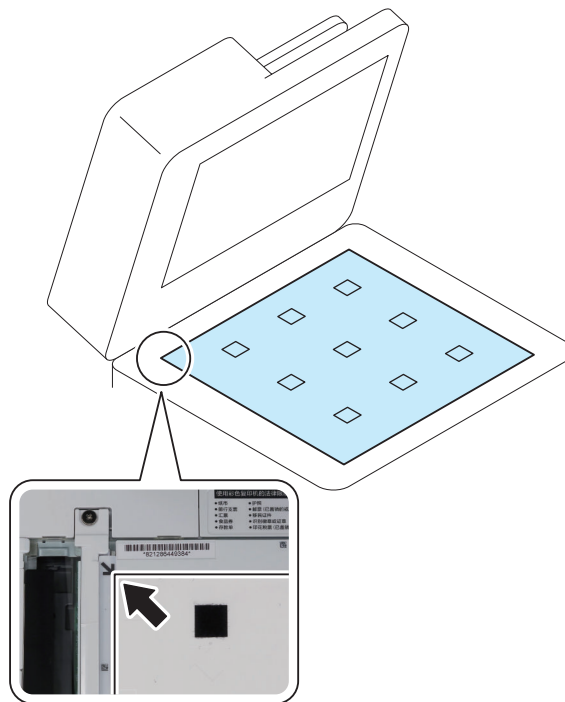




11. Install the Maintenance Cover (Upper).

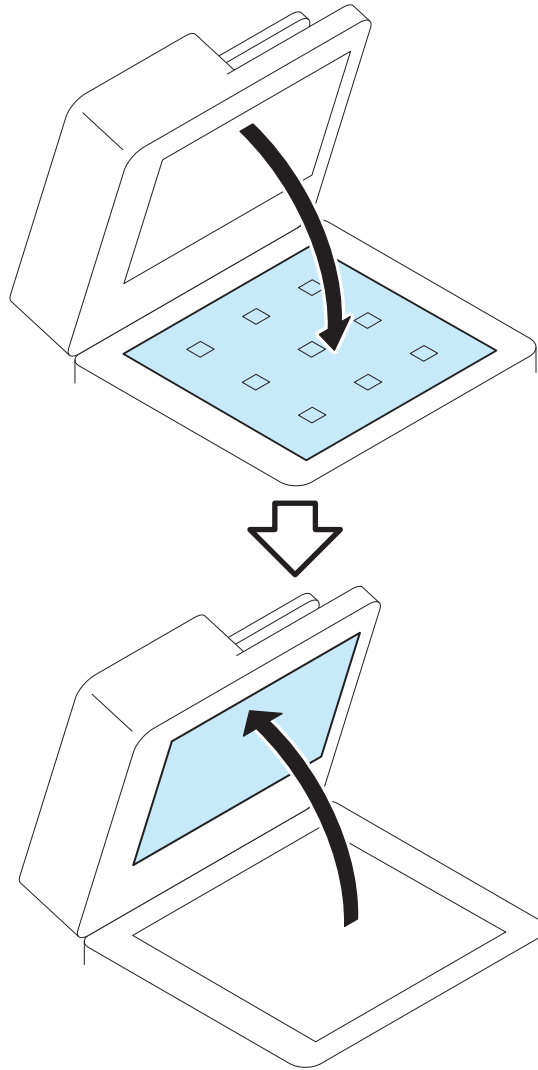


12.





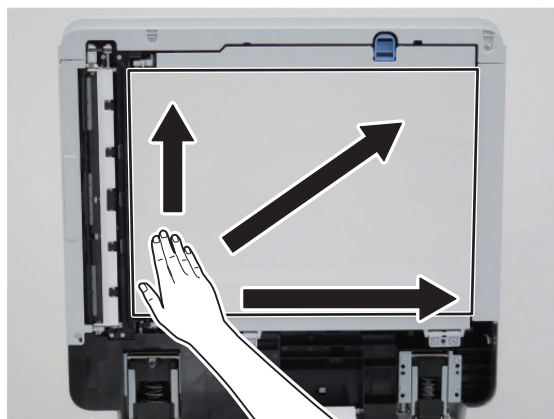
13.



14.

CAUTION:

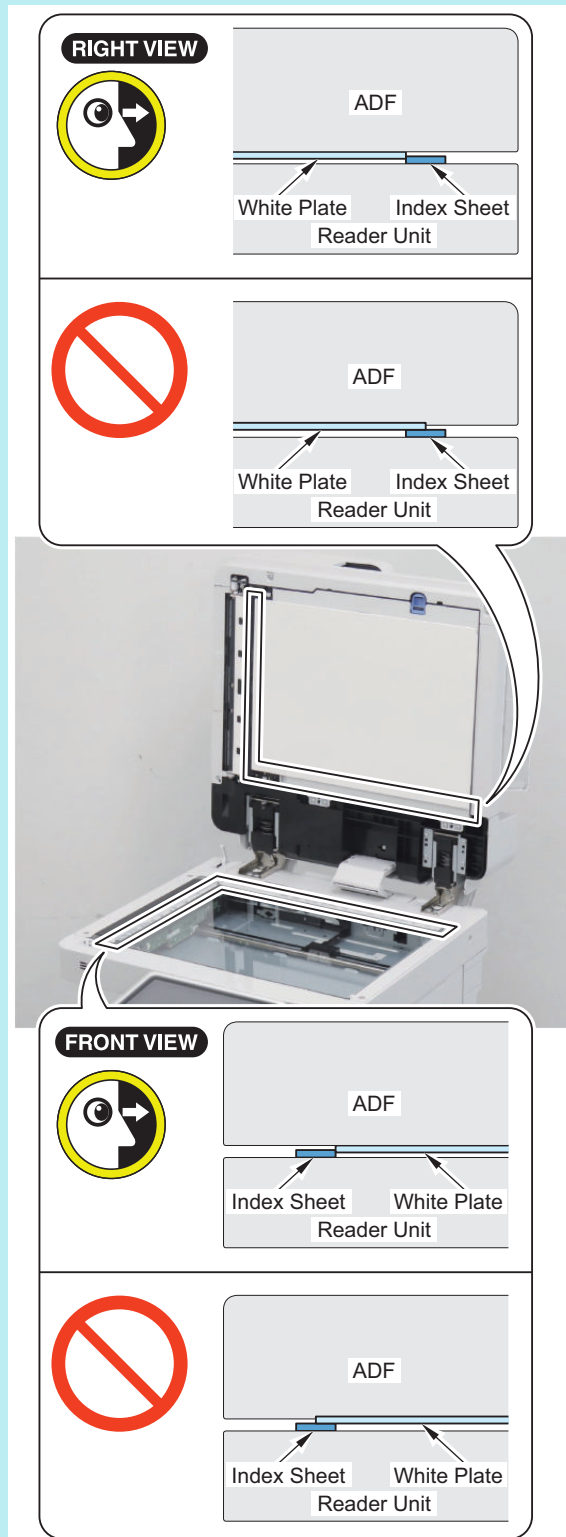
If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



15. Close the ADF.

NOTE:

- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.



● Installing the Buffer Path Unit (Only Models with the Buffer Path Unit Included as Standard) (for US and EUR)

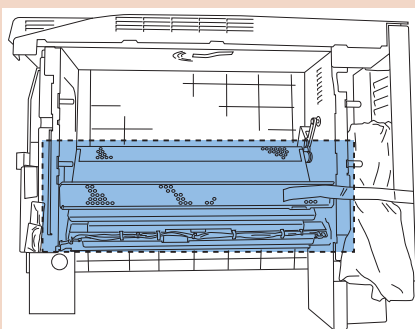
NOTE:

In the case of installing the Printer Cover or the IC Card Reader Box, install it before installing the Buffer Path Unit for better installation efficiency.

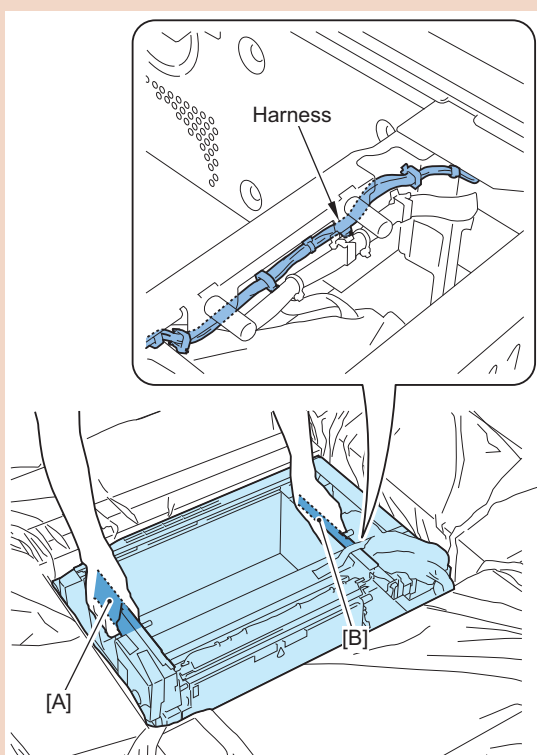
■ Unpacking

CAUTION:

- Be sure to open the plastic bag before starting the work. Holding the Buffer Path Unit without removing the plastic bag may cause slipping.
- Do not hold the area inside the dotted line of the figure; otherwise the Paper Path Guide may be deformed.



- Be sure to hold the frame [A] and the frame [B] of the Buffer Path Unit. Be sure to avoid the harness when holding the frame [B]; otherwise the harness may get damaged.

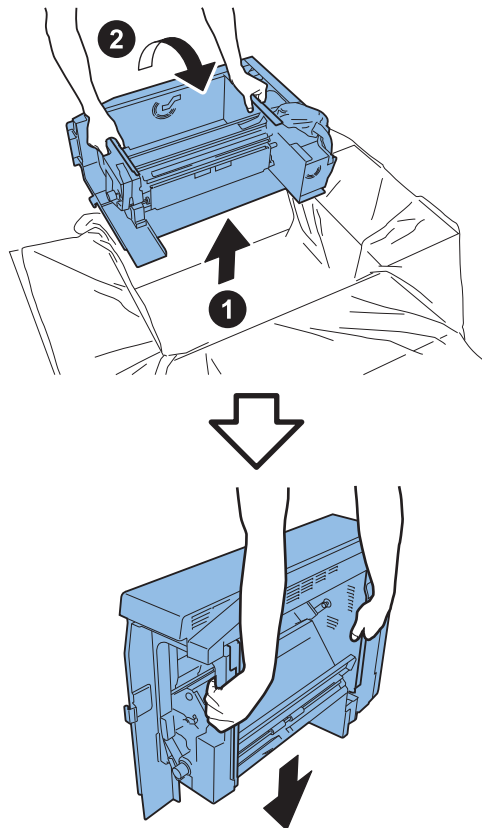
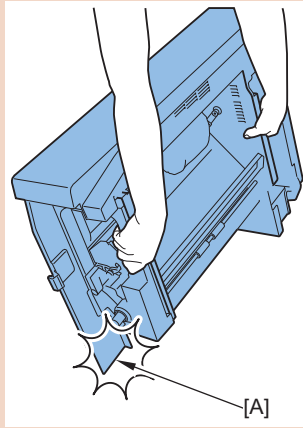




1. Lift the Buffer Path Unit directly upward and place the Buffer Path Unit with its bottom side down.

CAUTION:

Do not move it using the [A] part as the fulcrum nor place the unit on the floor while being tilted; otherwise the [A] part may be deformed.



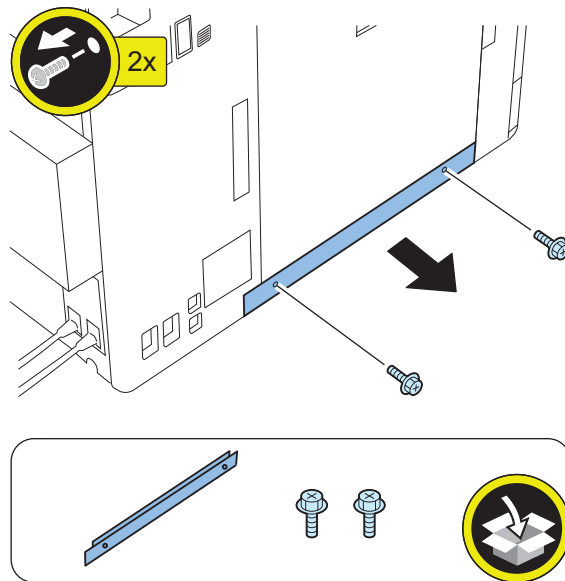
2. Remove the tapes.

■ Installing the Buffer Path Unit



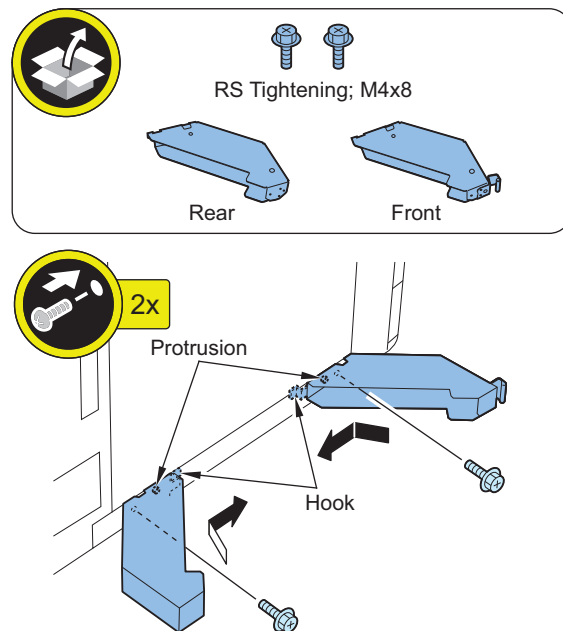
1. Remove the Left Lower Cover 1 (the removed parts will not be used).

- 2 Screws



2. Install the Cover Support Plate (Front and Rear).

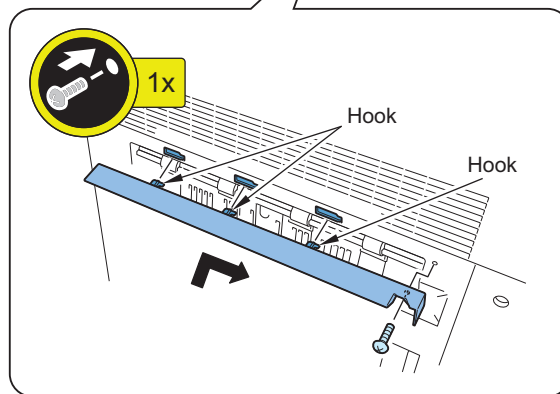
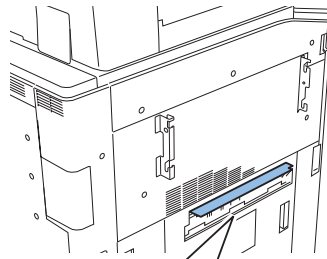
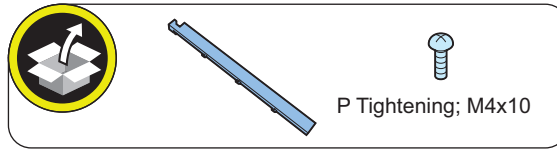
- 1 Hook each
- 1 Protrusion each
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)





3. Install the Delivery Outlet Upper Guide to the hole on the Reverse Door Cover.

- 3 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M4x10)



CAUTION:

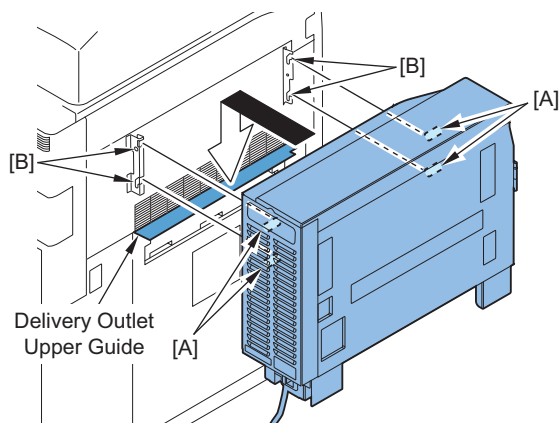
Before installing the Buffer Path Unit to the host machine, check that the Jam Removal Lever is in the location indicated in the figure.



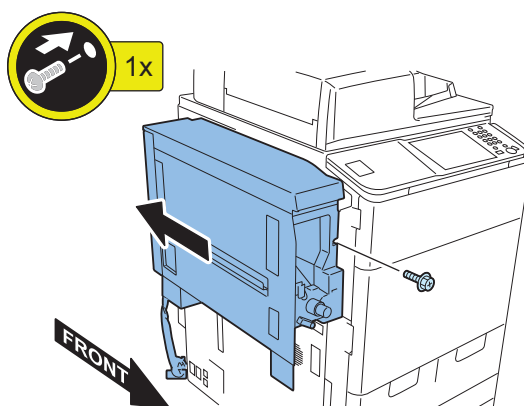
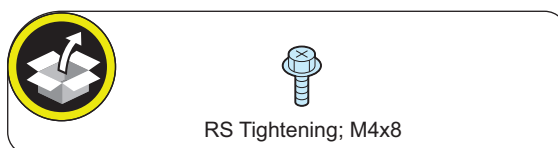
-
4. Hook the 4 shafts [A] of the Buffer Path Unit to the 4 U-shaped grooves [B] of the Buffer Mounting Plate to install the unit.

CAUTION:

Be careful not to come into contact with the Delivery Outlet Upper Guide.



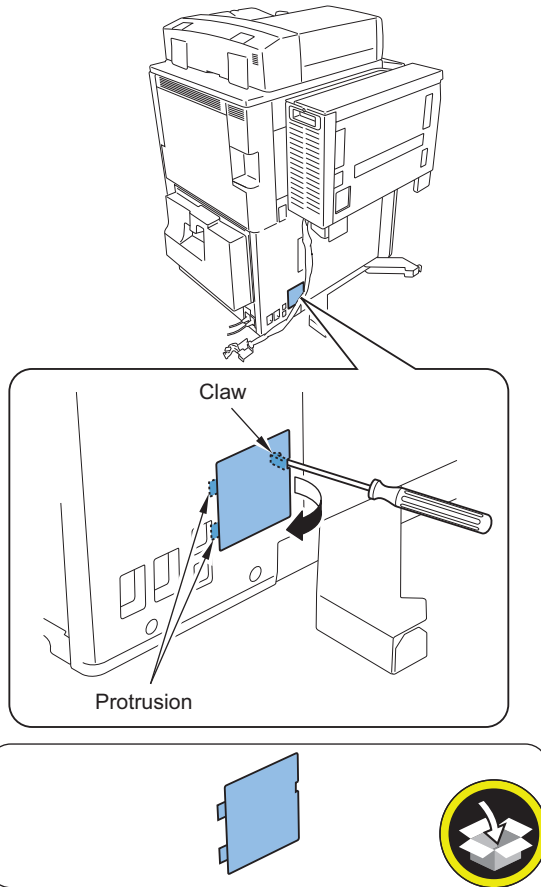
-
5. Move the Buffer Path Unit in the direction of the arrow, and secure it while it is pushed against the Buffer Mounting Plate (Front).
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)



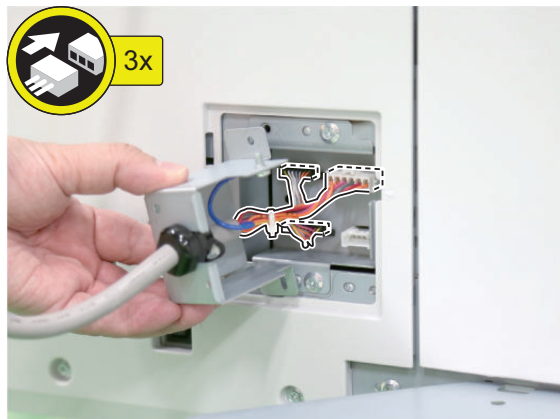


6. Insert the flat-blade screwdriver to remove the Connector Cover (the removed Connector Cover will not be used).

- 1 Claw
- 2 Protrusions



7. Connect the 3 connectors.



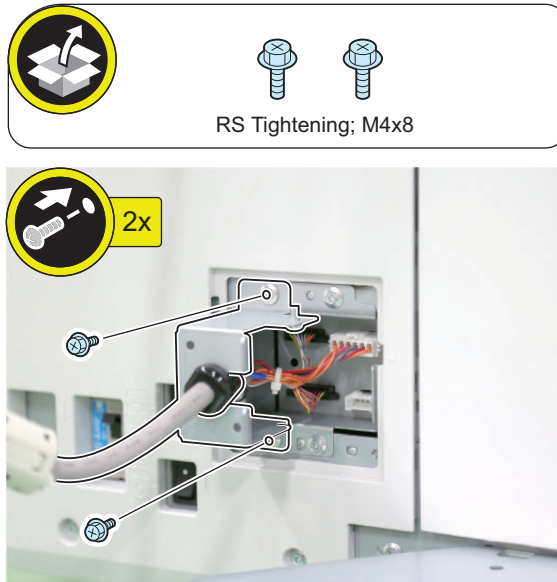


8. Secure the Connecting Harness Stopping Plate.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

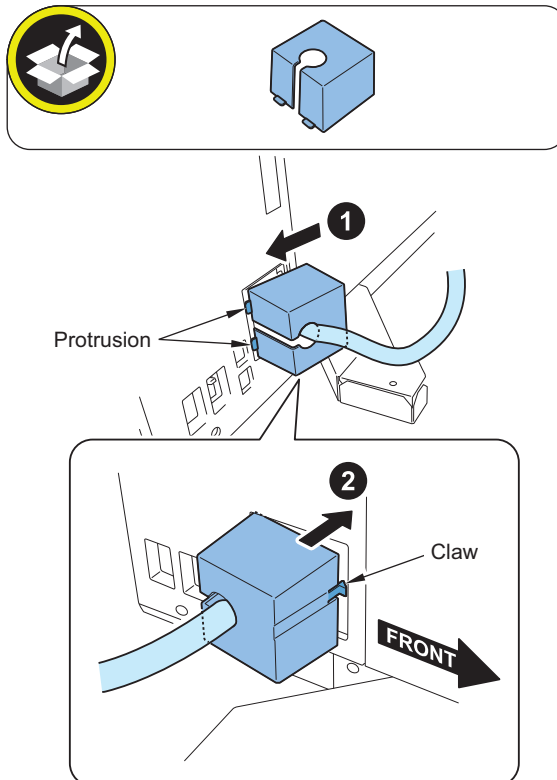
NOTE:

Be careful not to trap the cables with the Connecting Harness Cover.



9. Put the Buffer Cable through the groove of the Connecting Harness Cover, and install the Connecting Harness Cover to the host machine.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Claw



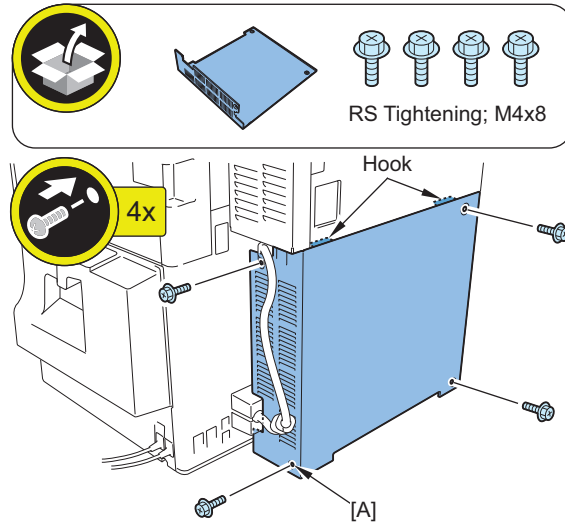


10. Install the Buffer Left Lower Cover.

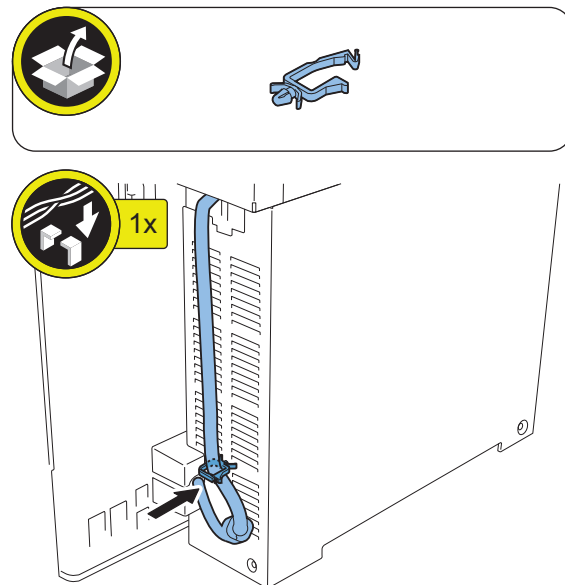
- 2 Hooks
- 4 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

NOTE:

When connecting to the downstream equipment, secure the Shunt Cable together at the [A] part.

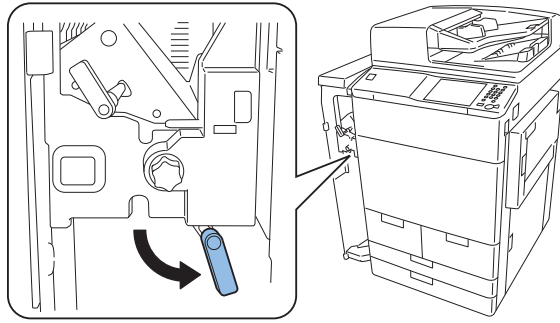


11. Install a Wire Saddle and secure the Buffer Cable with it.

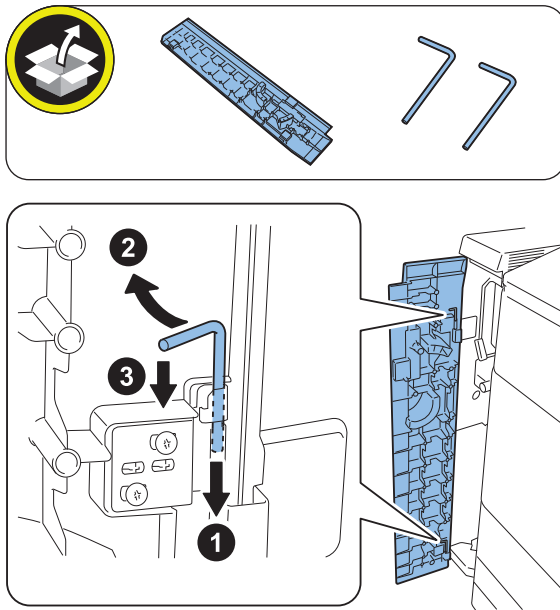




12. Turn the Jam Removal Lever to the right side to allow paper feed.



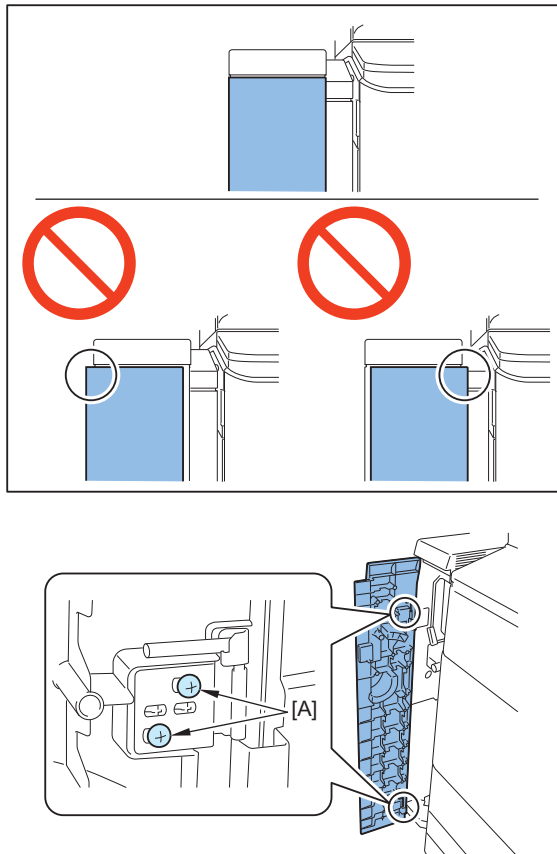
13. Align the 2 hinge positions of the Buffer Front Cover with those of the Buffer Path Unit, and insert the hinge shafts in the direction of the arrow.



14. Close the Buffer Front Cover.



15. If the Buffer Front Cover is not aligned when viewed from the front side, loosen the 2 screws [A], adjust the left and right positions of the Buffer Front Cover, and then tighten the screws again.



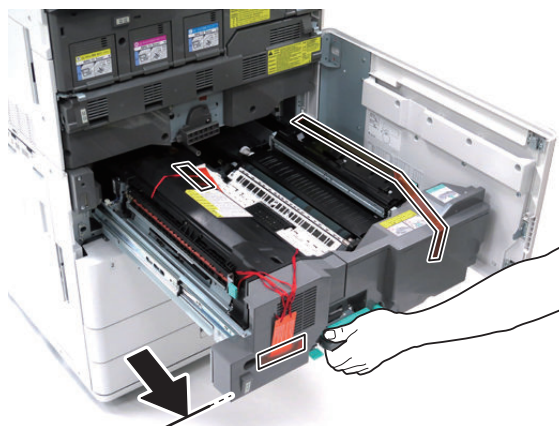
● Installing the Fixing Feed Assembly



1. Open the Front Cover.



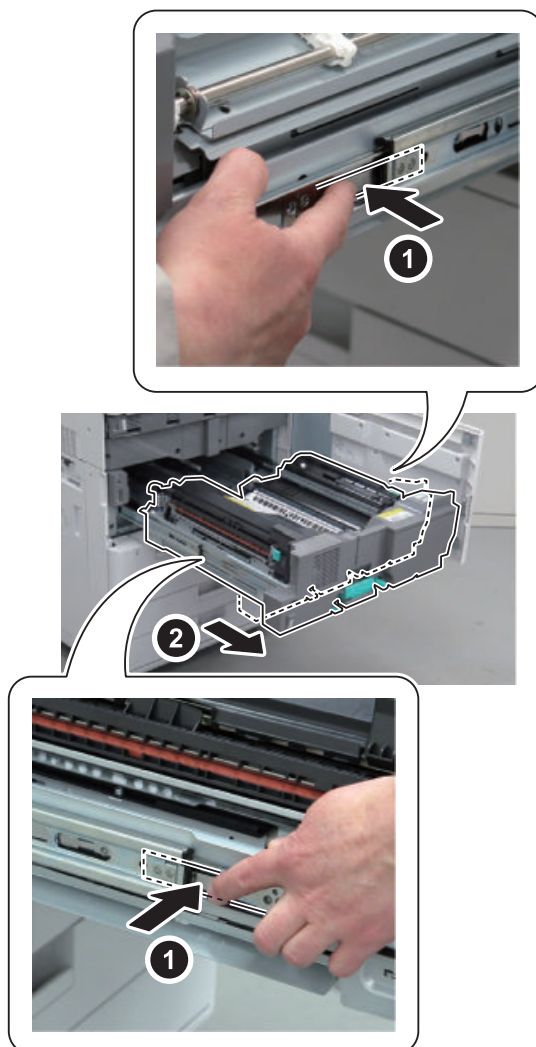
2. Pull out the Fixing Feed Unit and remove the tape.



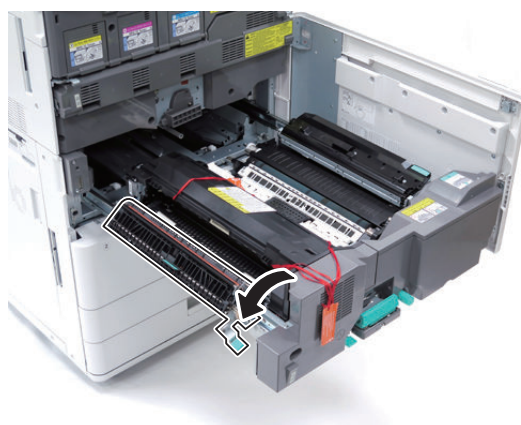
- 3. Press the 2 Lock Springs at both ends of the rail to release the locks, and pull the Fixing Feed Unit all the way out again.

CAUTION:

Do not release the Lock Springs at both ends of the rail on the rear side to prevent the frame of the Fixing Feed Unit from coming off.



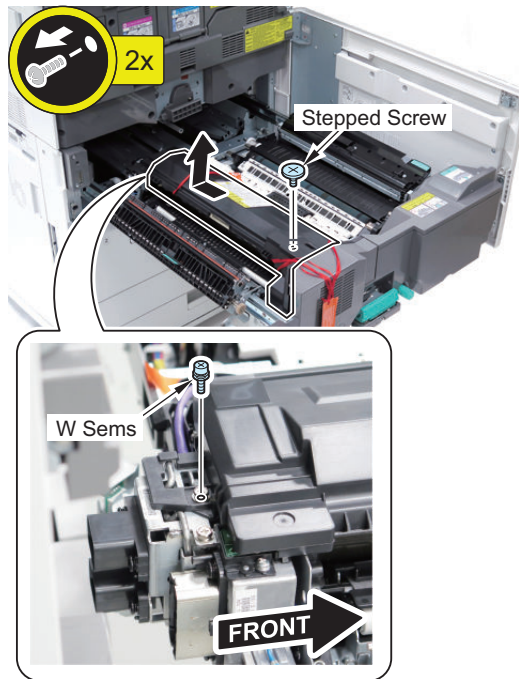
- 4. Open the Inner Delivery Unit.



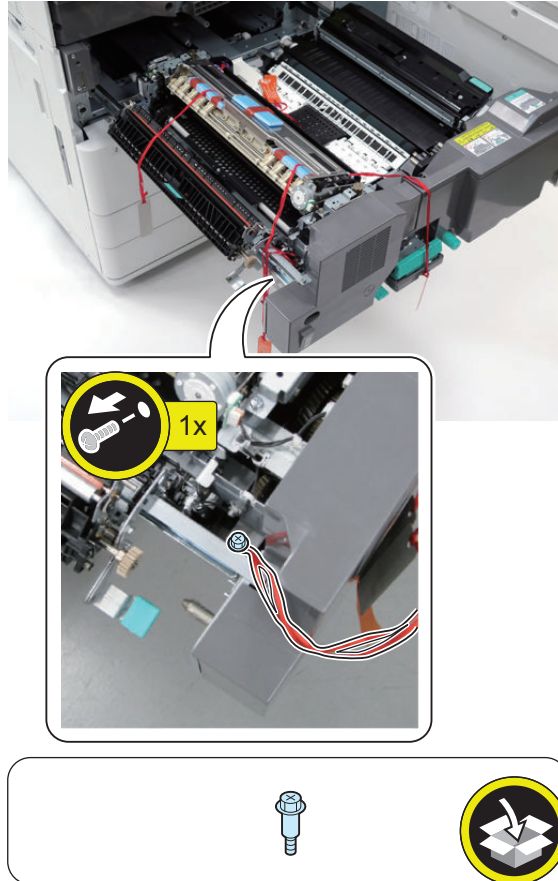


5. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover.

- 1 Stepped Screw (Flat Head) (The removed screw will be used in step 8.)
- 1 Screw (W Sems) (The removed screw will be used in step 8.)

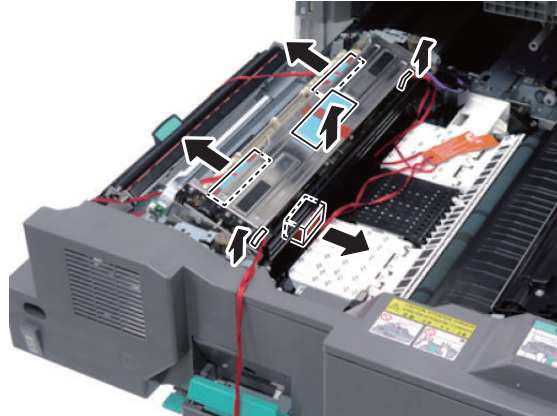


6. Remove the Stepped Screw with the tag. (The removed screw will not be used.)



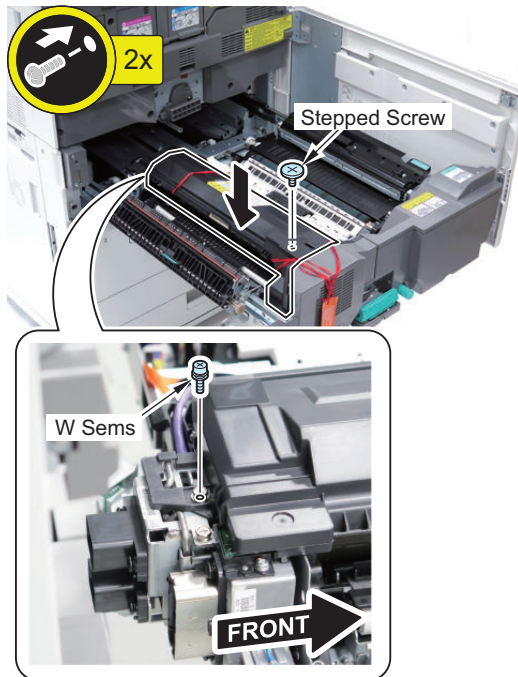


7. Remove the 6 Fixation Members.



8. Install the Fixing Upper Cover.

- 1 Stepped Screw (the screw removed in step 5)
- 1 Screw (W Sems) (the screw removed in step 5)

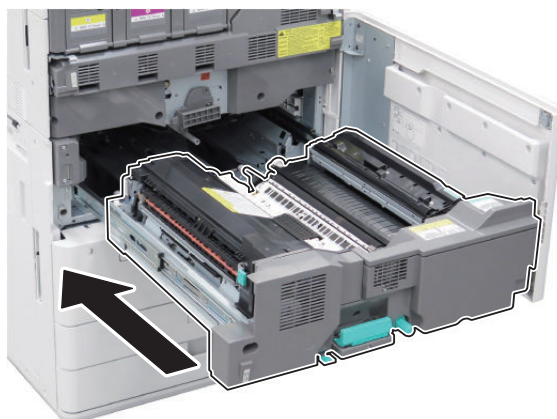


9. Close the Inner Delivery Unit.





10. Put the Fixing Feed Unit back in the host machine.



● Installing the Process Unit (for Color)

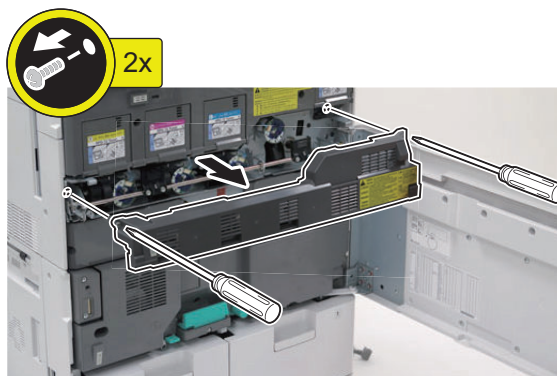


1. Remove the Process Unit Front Cover.

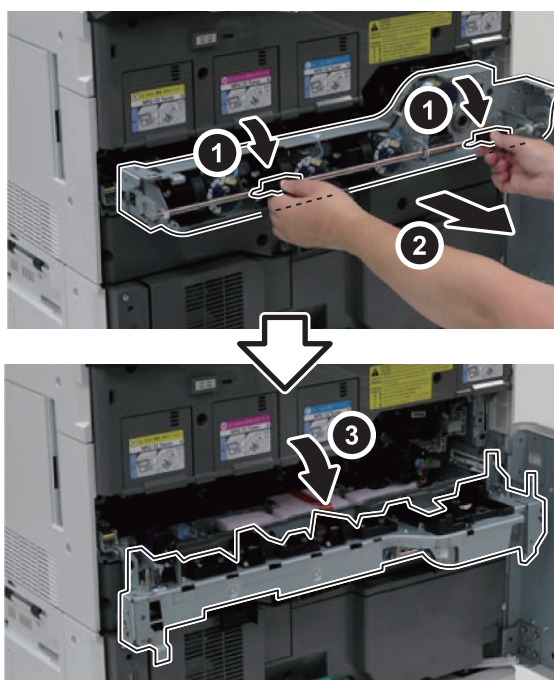
- 2 Screws

NOTE:

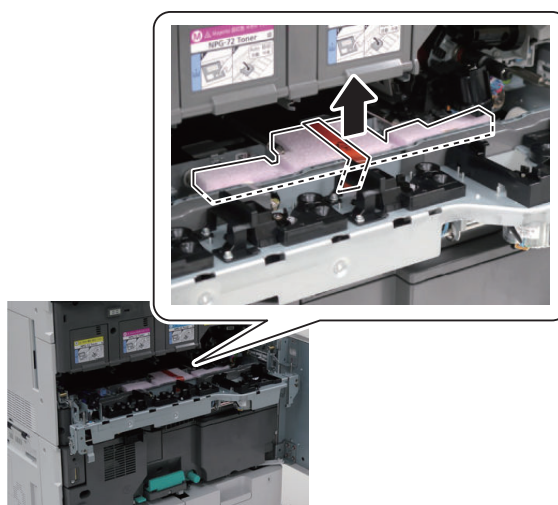
It is designed that the 2 screws do not come off from the cover.



-
2. Turn the 2 levers of the Process Unit Inner Cover to the front side, then pull out toward the front side, and open the Process Unit Inner Cover.



-
3. Remove the tape and the ITB Fixation Member.

**NOTE:**

The following procedures are described with yellow as an example, but the procedure for magenta and cyan is same.

-
4. Take out the Developing Assembly from the packaging box.

CAUTION:

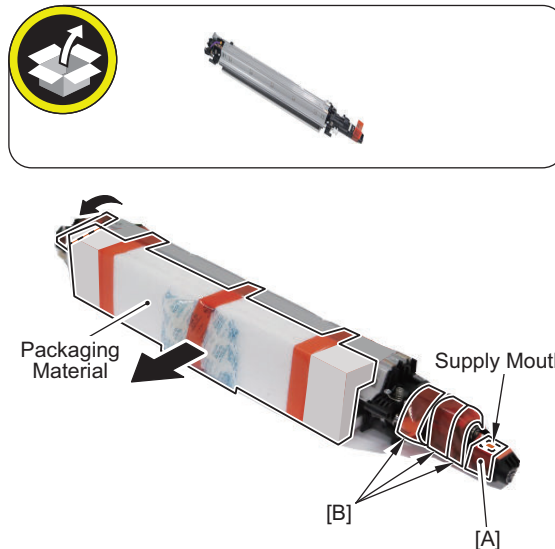
- A Developing Assembly (for color use) is specified with color.
- Be sure that there is no foreign matter (metal pieces in particular) on your hand when touching the Developing Assembly. (If any foreign matters attach to the sleeve of the Developing Assembly, it may cause image failure.)
- Do not tilt or strongly shake the Developing Assembly, but be sure to hold it in a horizontal state. Toner scattering or image failure (image loss, etc) may occur.



5. Unpack the Developing Assembly, and remove the tape and packaging material.

CAUTION:

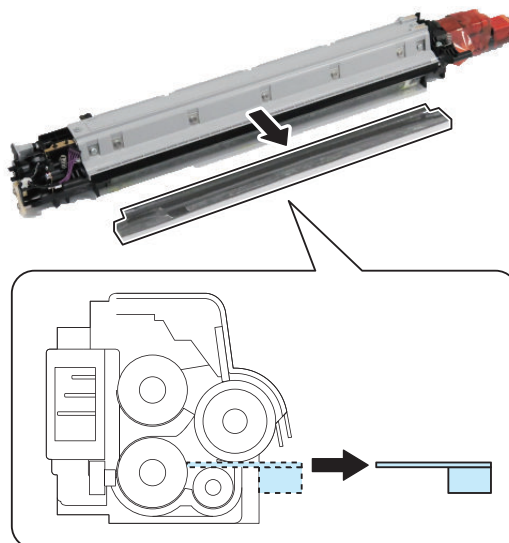
- Do not remove the tape [A] of the Supply Mouth until just before installing it in the host machine.
- Do not remove 3 tapes [B].
- Because the 3 tapes [B] secure the roller in place to prevent it from moving when the Sleeve Seal is removed, be sure to remove the 3 tapes [B] after the Sleeve Seal.
- When removing the packaging material, pay attention not to allow the Sleeve Seal (which is to be removed in the next step) also to be removed.
- After unpacking, do not work with the Supply Mouth facing down to avoid any risk of toner spilling out.



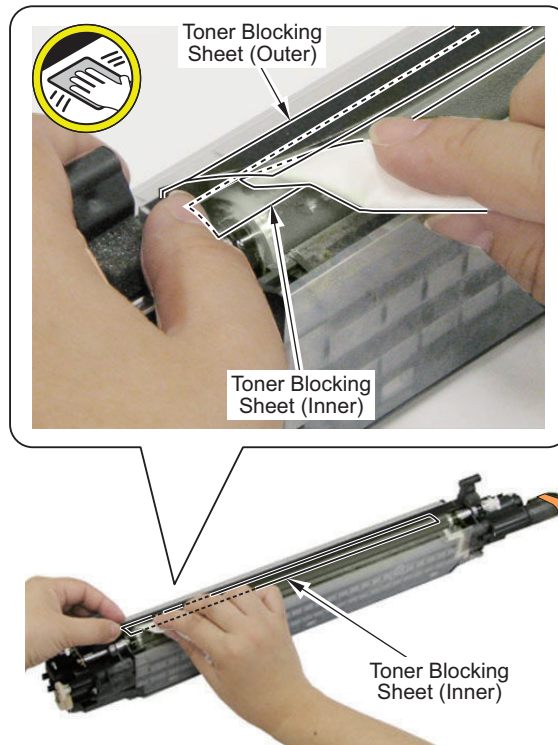
6. Slowly remove the Sleeve Seal from the Developing Assembly.

CAUTION:

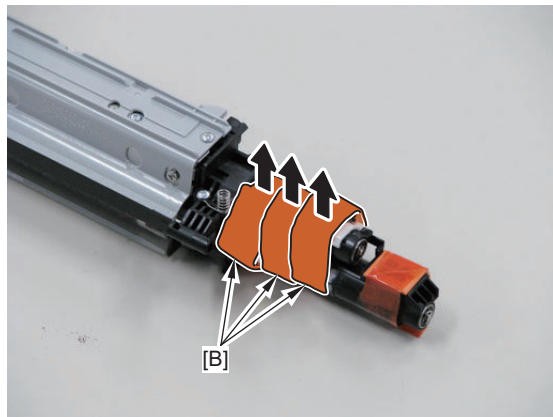
When removing the Sleeve Seal, be careful not to make any crease in the seal. Otherwise, the Toner Blocking Sheet may be caught and damaged by the crease.



-
- 7. Check that there is no developer scattered on the Toner Blocking Sheet (Inner) inside the Toner Blocking Sheet (Outer). If it is scattered, clean with dry lint-free paper.



-
- 8. Remove 3 tapes [B] securing the roller.





9. Make the coupling of the Sleeve rotate a full turn or 1.5 turns in the direction of the arrow.

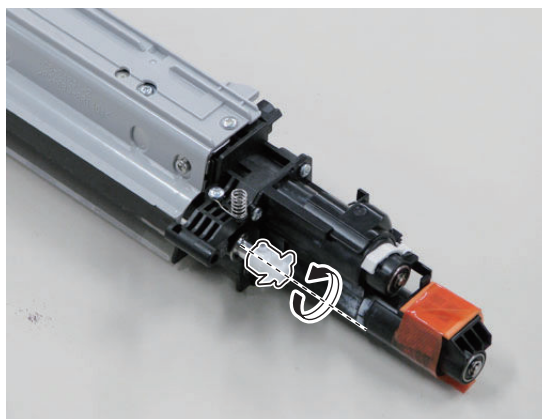
CAUTION:

Do not turn the Developing Sleeve in the reverse direction.

By rotating it in the reverse direction, toner clots on the Sleeve may damage the Toner Blocking Sheet.

NOTE:

Toner clots are removed by turning the sleeve in the direction of the arrow.



10. Take out the Drum Unit from the packaging box.

CAUTION:

A Drum Unit (for color use) is specified with color.



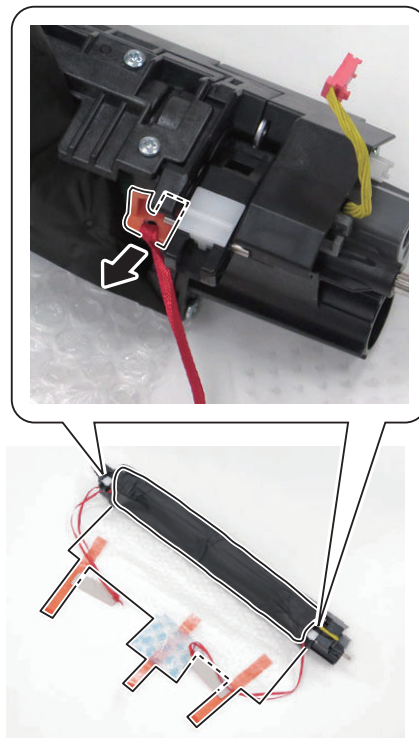
11. Unpack the Drum Unit, and remove the tape and packaging material.

CAUTION:

- Do not touch the Photosensitive Drum.
- During work, do not remove the Protection Sheet from the Drum Unit.

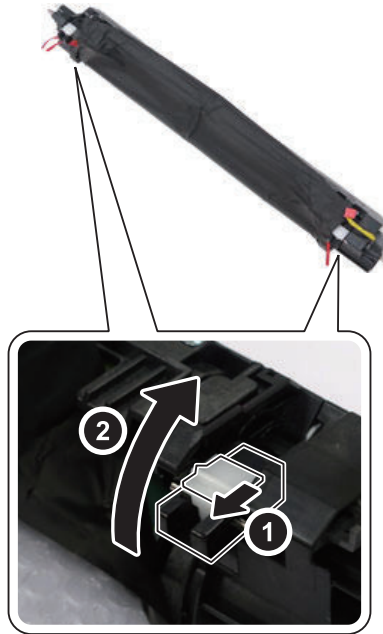


12. Pull the 2 spacers in the direction of the arrow to remove them from the Drum Unit.





13. Release the lock of the Fixation Lever of the Drum Unit to lift up the Fixation Lever.



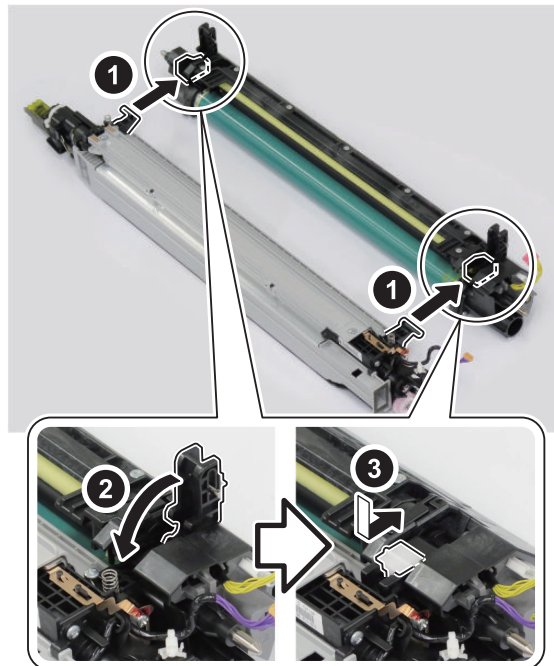
14. Remove the Protection Sheet of the Drum Unit.



15. Insert the 2 protrusions of the Developing Assembly into the Drum Unit to assemble the Developing Assembly and the Drum Unit. Turn the Fixation Lever in the direction of the arrow, secure the 2 locks and assemble the Process Unit.

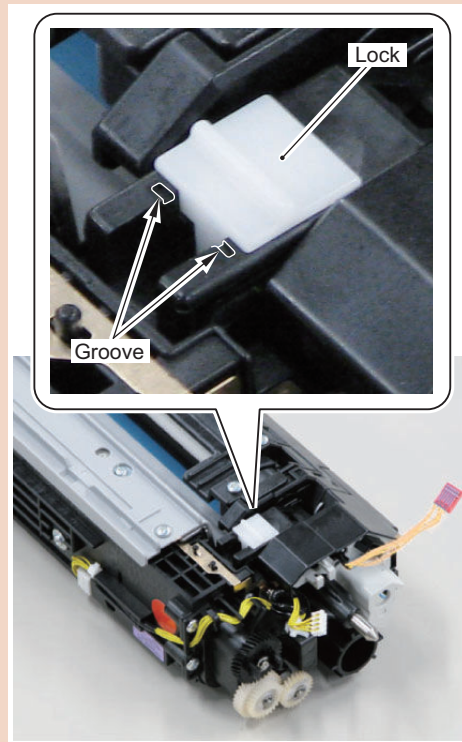
CAUTION:

- When assembling, be sure to that the color is correct.
- When assembling, be sure to place the Protection Sheet or paper.

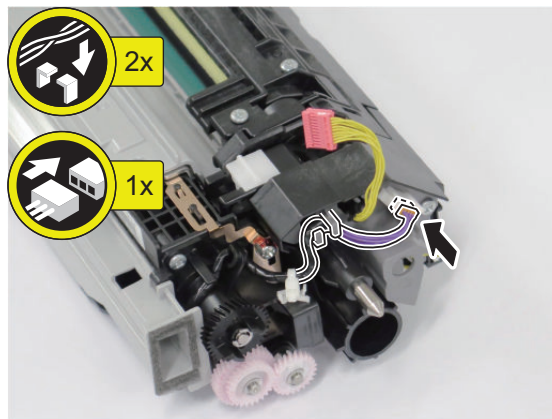


CAUTION:

Check to see whether the lock is securely in place or the grooves as shown in the figure are visible. If the lock is not completely secure when the Process Unit is introduced into the host machine, it may not be possible to remove it from the host machine.



16. Secure the harness with the Harness Guides, and connect the connector.

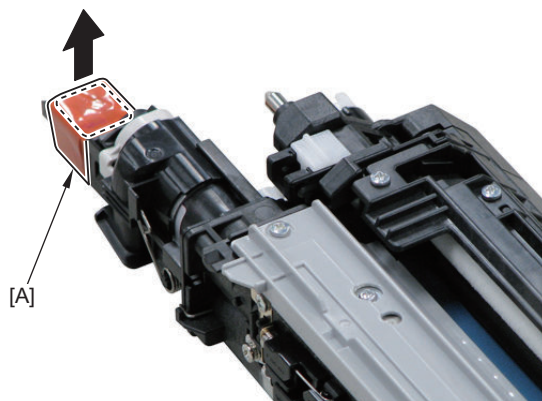




17. Remove the tape [A] and the packaging material of the Supply Mouth.

CAUTION:

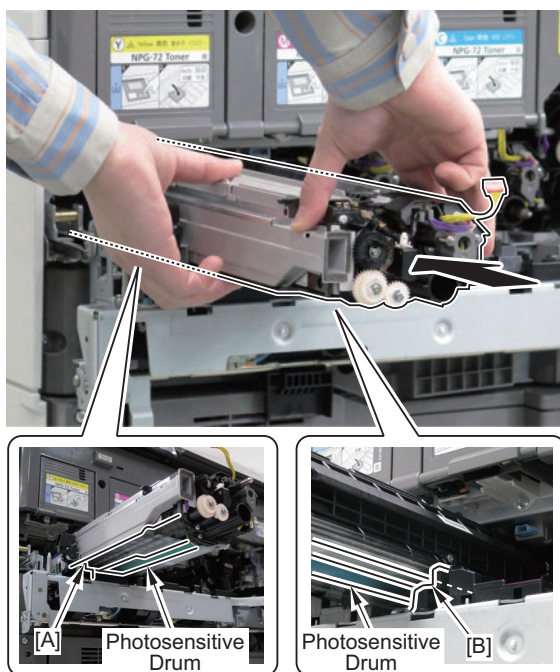
Be sure to remove the packaging material of the Supply Mouth.



18. Hold the front upper part and the left side face of the Process Unit as shown in the figure and place the left side face of the Process Unit on the guide [A] of the Process Unit Inner Cover. Align the lower right side of the Process Unit with the guide [B] of the Process Unit Inner Cover, and push the unit in horizontally.

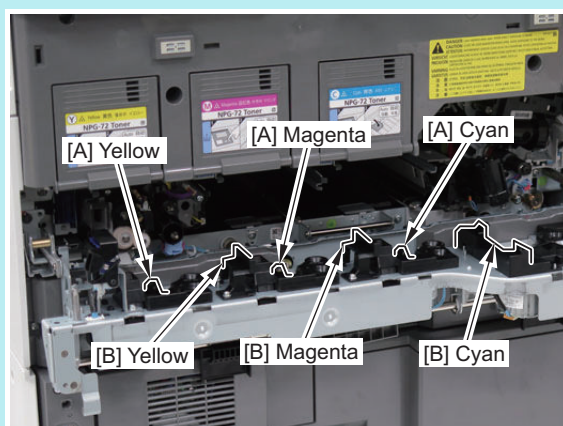
CAUTION:

When inserting the Process Unit, do not touch the Photosensitive Drum at the bottom.

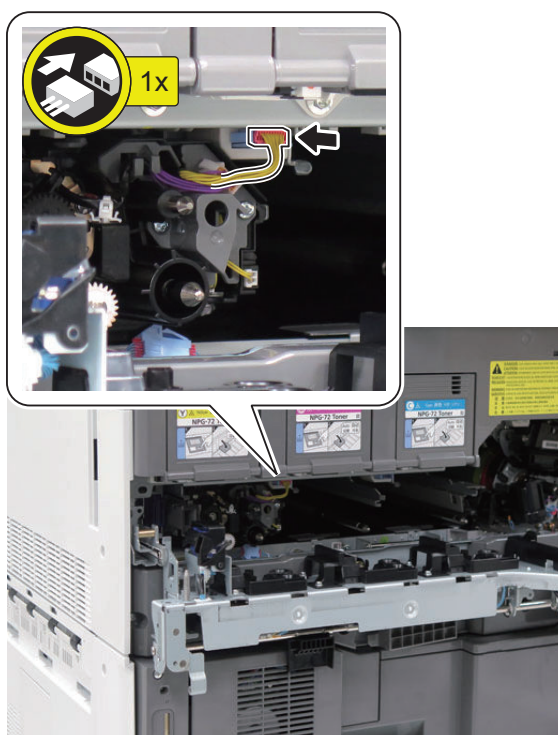


NOTE:

- The positions of the guides [A] and [B] of the Process Unit Inner Cover differ among the Process Units (yellow), (magenta), and (cyan). The figure below shows the positions of the guides [A] and [B].



- While holding the Process Unit with both hands, insert about 2/3 of it, and then push the handle of the Process Unit with your finger as shown in the figure to insert all the way until it stops.

**19. Connect the connector.**



20. Repeat steps 4 to 19 to install the magenta and cyan Process Units in the same way.

CAUTION:

Be sure that the color is correct.

Installing the Developing Assembly (for Black)



1. Take out the Developing Assembly (for black) from the packaging box.

CAUTION:

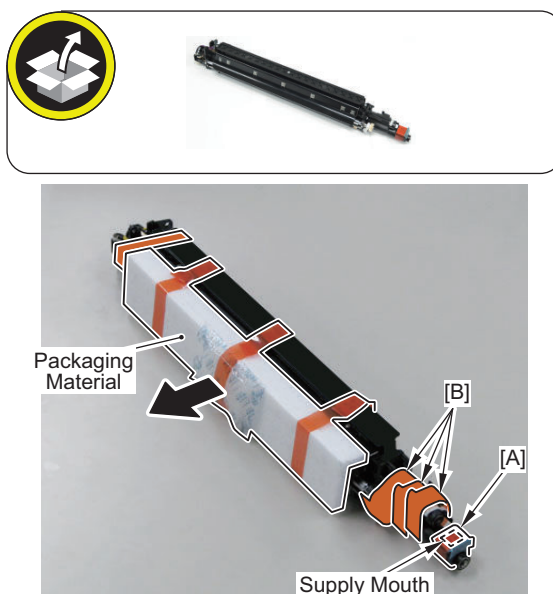
- Be sure that there is no foreign matter (metal pieces in particular) on your hand when touching the Developing Assembly. (If any foreign matters attach to the sleeve of the Developing Assembly, it may cause image failure.)
- Do not tilt or strongly shake the Developing Assembly, but be sure to hold it in a horizontal state (otherwise, toner scattering or image failure (image loss, etc) may occur).



2. Unpack the Developing Assembly (for black), and remove the packaging material.

CAUTION:

- Do not remove the tape [A] of the Supply Mouth until just before installing it in the host machine.
- Do not remove 3 tapes [B].
- Because the 3 tapes [B] secure the roller in place to prevent it from moving when the Sleeve Seal is removed, be sure to remove the 3 tapes [B] after the Sleeve Seal.
- When removing the packaging material, pay attention not to allow the Sleeve Seal (which is to be removed in the next step) also to be removed.
- After unpacking, do not work with the Supply Mouth facing down to avoid any risk of toner spilling out.

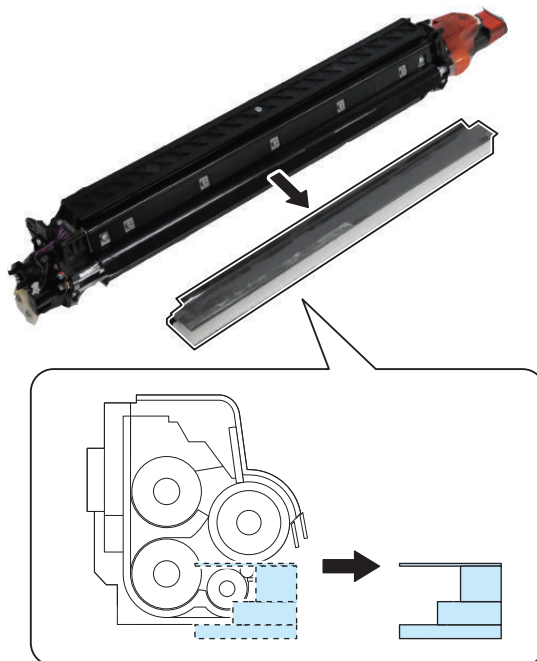




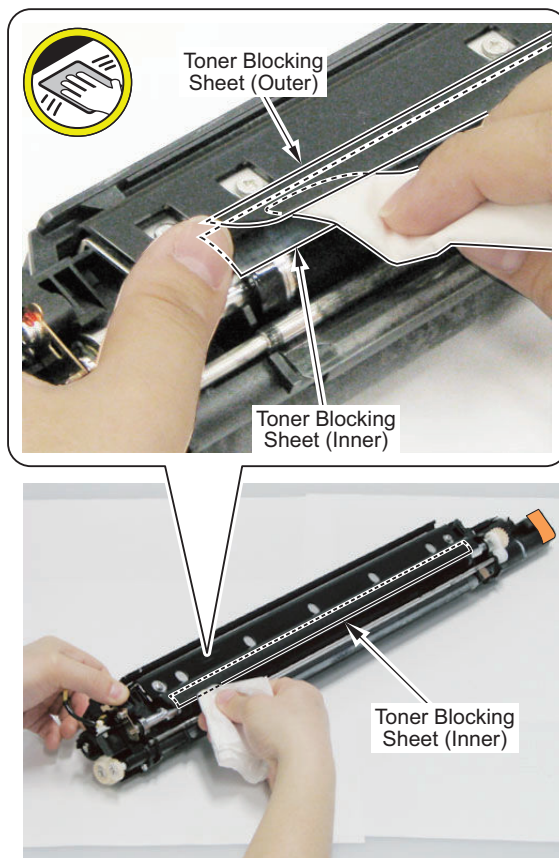
3. Remove the Sleeve Seal from the Developing Assembly (for black).

CAUTION:

When removing the Sleeve Seal, be careful not to make any crease in the seal. Otherwise, the Toner Blocking Sheet may be caught and damaged by the crease.

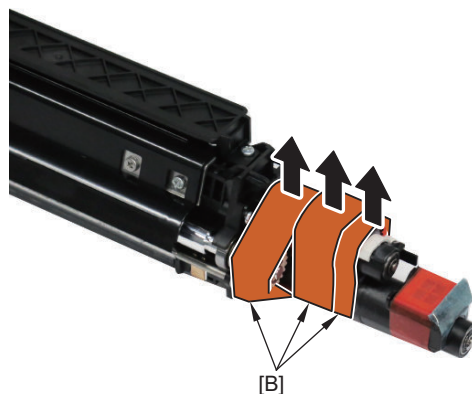


4. Check that there is no developer scattered on the Toner Blocking Sheet (Inner) inside the Toner Blocking Sheet (Outer). If it is scattered, clean with dry lint-free paper.





5. Remove 3 tapes [B] securing the roller.



6. Rotate the gear of the Sleeve fully or 1.5 turns at most in the direction of the arrow.

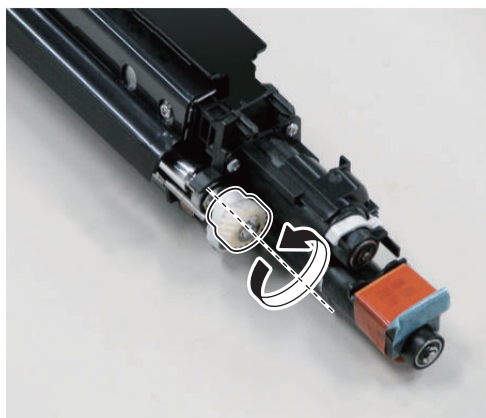
CAUTION:

Do not turn the Developing Sleeve in the reverse direction.

By rotating it in the reverse direction, toner clots on the Sleeve may damage the Toner Blocking Sheet.

NOTE:

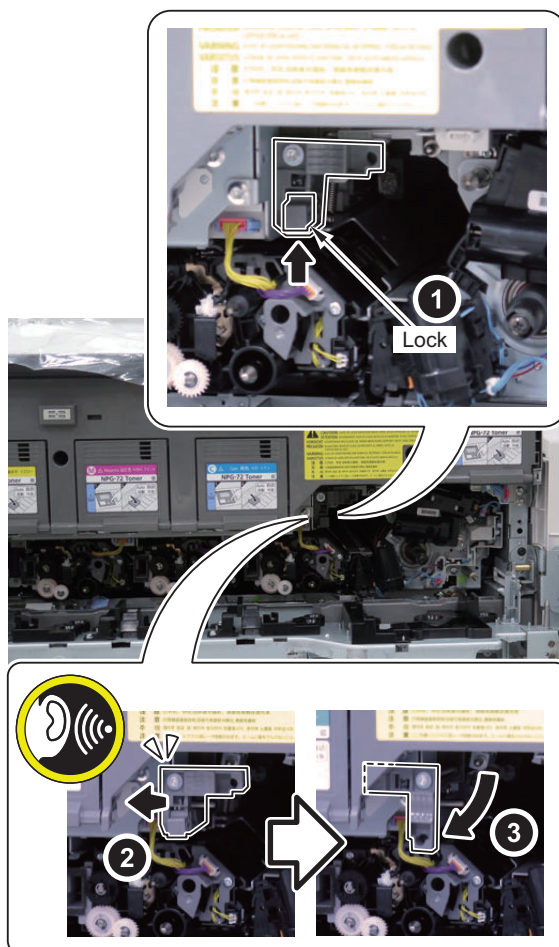
Toner clots are removed by turning the sleeve in the direction of the arrow.





7. Release the Developing Assembly Pressure Lever.

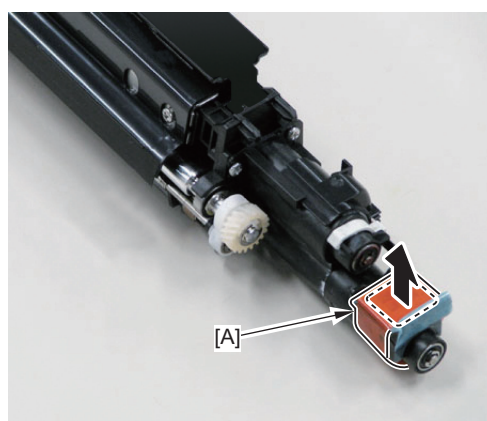
1. Move the lock of the Developing Assembly Pressure Lever in the direction of the arrow to release the fixation.
2. Pull out the Developing Assembly Pressure Lever to the front side until it stops and release the pressure.
3. Turn the Developing Assembly Pressure Lever in the direction of the arrow.



8. Remove the tape [A] and the packaging material of the Supply Mouth.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the packaging material of the Supply Mouth.

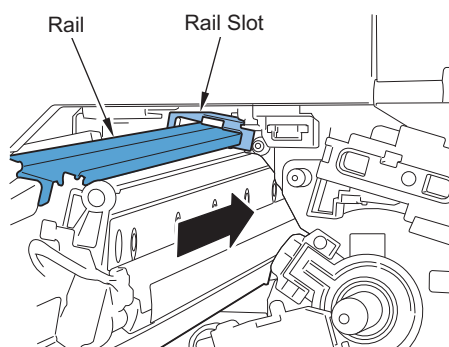
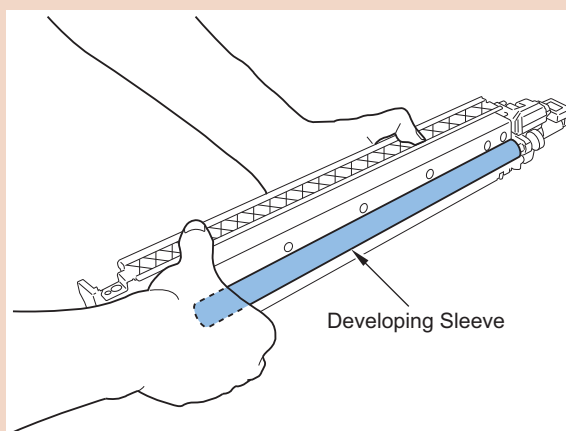




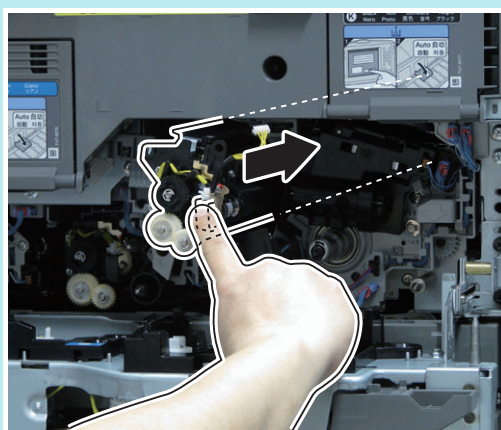
9. Hold the front right side face and the left side face of the Developing Assembly (for black), align the rail part of the Developing Assembly (for black) with the rail slot of the host machine, and then push the assembly in horizontally.

CAUTION:

When sliding the Developing Assembly (for black) inside, do not touch the Developing Sleeve.

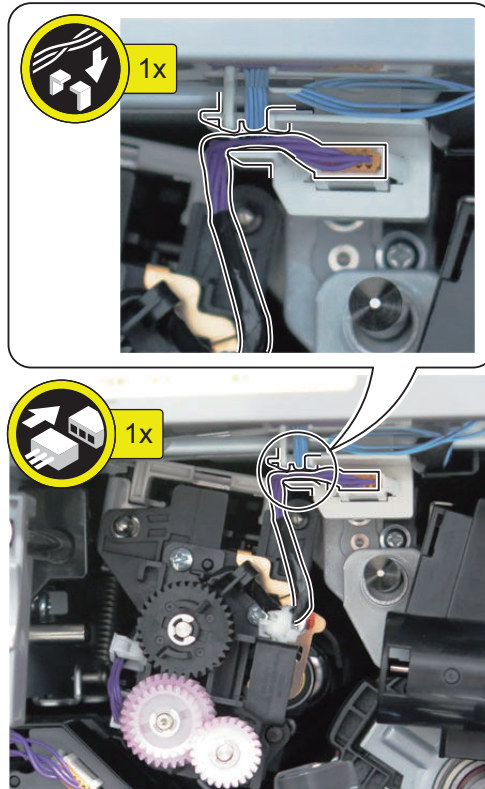
**NOTE:**

While holding the Developing Assembly (for black) with both hands, insert about 2/3 of it, and then push the handle of the Black Developing Assembly with your finger as shown in the figure to insert all the way until it stops.

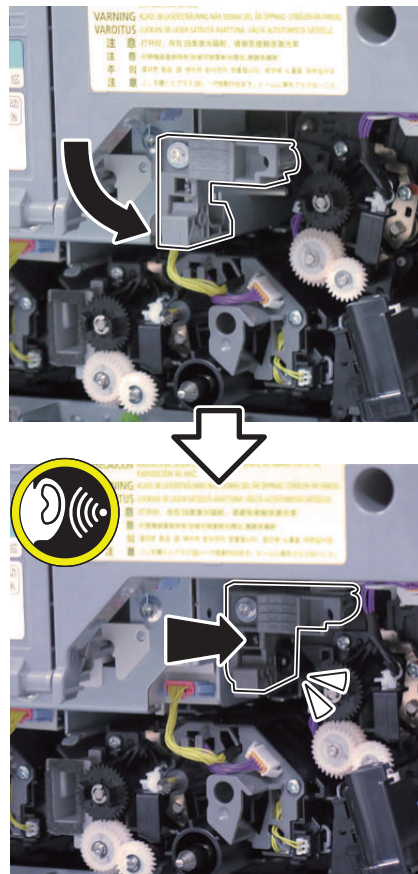




10. Secure the harness with the Harness Guides, and connect the connector.



11. Turn the Developing Assembly Pressure Lever in the direction of the arrow, and push it in to apply pressure.





12. Closing the Process Unit Inner Cover

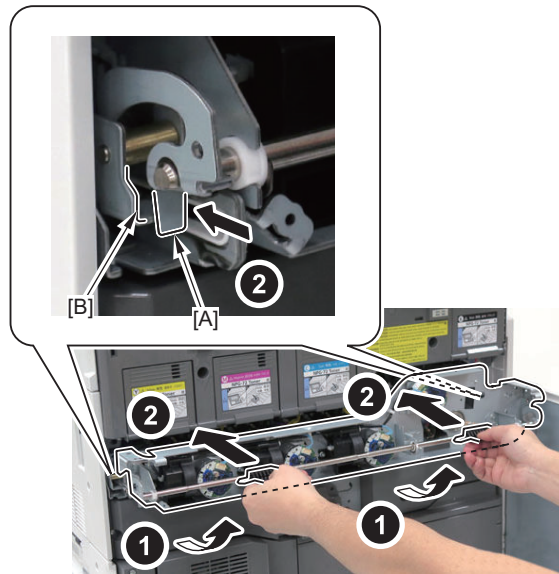
When closing the Process Unit Inner Cover, go through the following steps 12-1 to 12-3.



12-1. Hold the 2 levers and lift up the levers and Process Unit Inner Cover to the horizontal level.



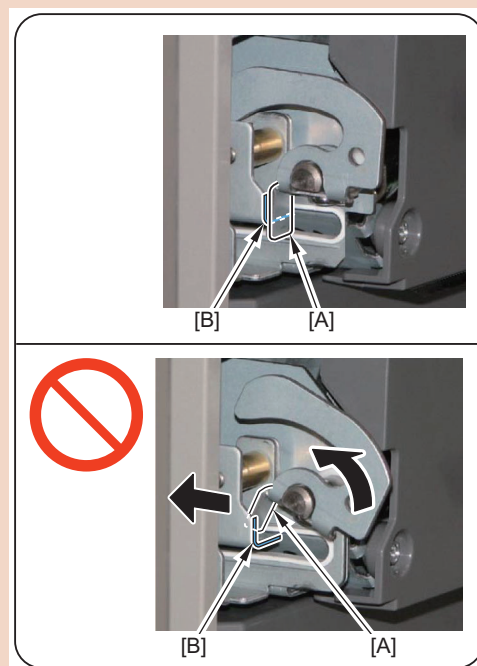
12-2. While keeping the Process Unit Inner Cover Levers horizontal, push the Process Unit Inner Cover to the rear side. Then, push the 2 Stopper Plates [A] of the right and left hooks of the Process Unit Inner Cover to the end faces [B] of the Hinge Shaft Holder on the right and left sides of the host machine.



CAUTION:

If the Process Unit Inner Cover is pushed to the rear side without keeping the levers horizontal, the 2 Stopper Plates [A] of the hooks run over the inside of the Hinge Shaft Holder [B] on the right and left sides of the host machine.

Furthermore, if the Process Unit Inner Cover is pushed to the rear side under this condition, or if the levers are raised at a 90-degree angle and the Process Unit Inner Cover is closed, the Release Arm inside the Process Unit Inner Cover may be damaged.

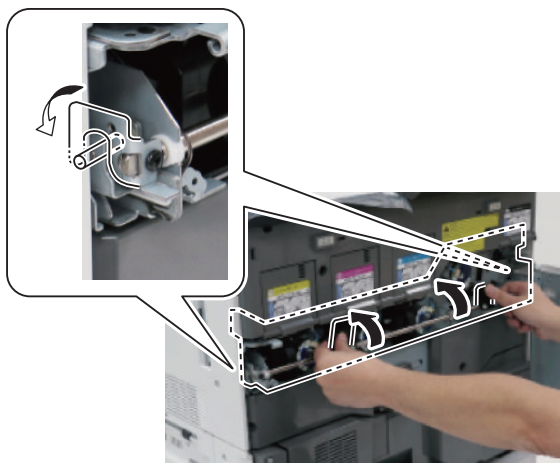




12-3. Raise the levers at a 90-degree angle further and close the Process Unit Inner Cover.

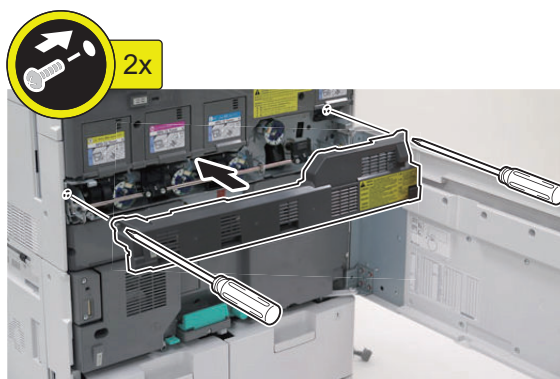
NOTE:

The 2 hooks (right and left) of the Process Unit Inner Cover are hooked to the Hinge Shaft on the right and left sides of the host machine to lock.



13. Install the Process Unit Front Cover you removed.

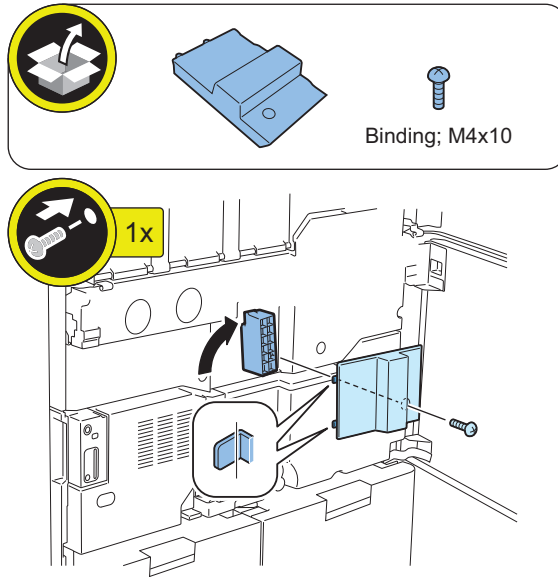
- 2 Screws



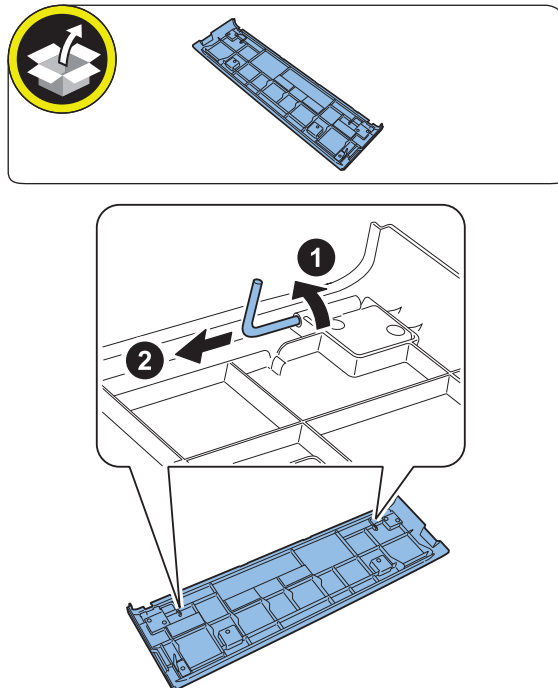


14. Turn the ITB Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to apply pressure, and install the ITB Inner Cover.

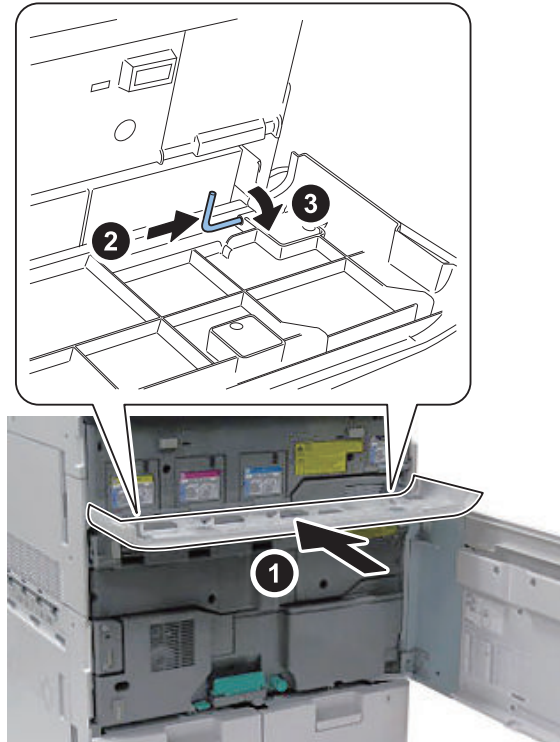
- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)



15. Turn the 2 Hinge Shafts of the Front Upper Cover in the direction of the arrow to remove.



-
- 16. Align the right and left hinge holes on the Front Upper Cover with the host machine, insert the hinge shaft in the direction of the arrow and rotate it, and then install the Front Upper Cover.



-
- 17. Close the Front Upper Cover and Front Cover.

Other Installations

■ Handle Cover

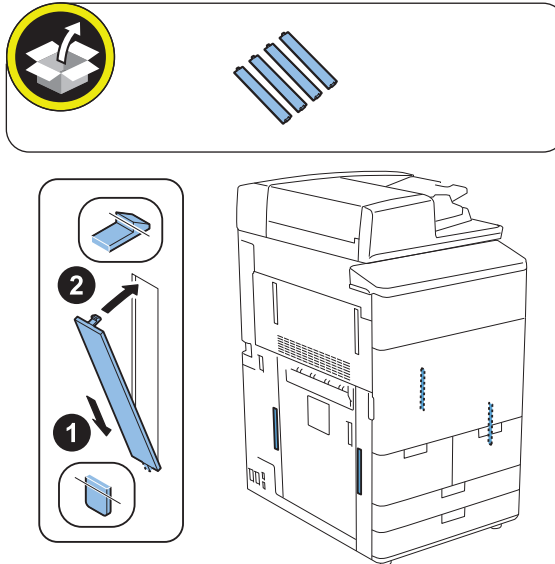


1. Install the Handle Covers.

- 1 Protrusion for each
- 1 Claw for each

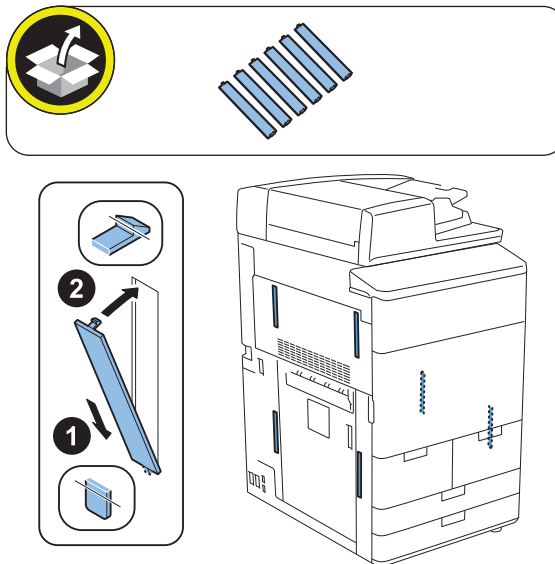
< In the case of model with Buffer Path Unit >

- 4 Handle Covers



< In the case of model without Buffer Path Unit >

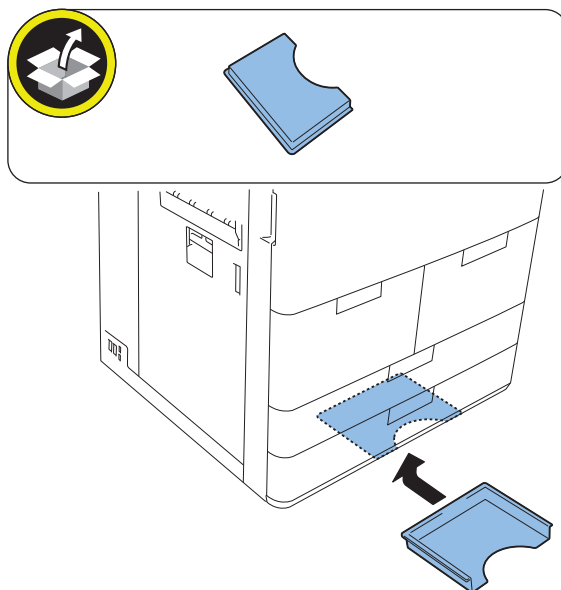
- 6 Handle Covers



■ Service Book Holder



1. Remove the release paper on the back side of the Service Book Holder, and affix the holder on the Base Plate of the host machine.



■ Rear Lower Curtain Sheet

CAUTION:

Be sure to install it after moving the machine to the installation site.

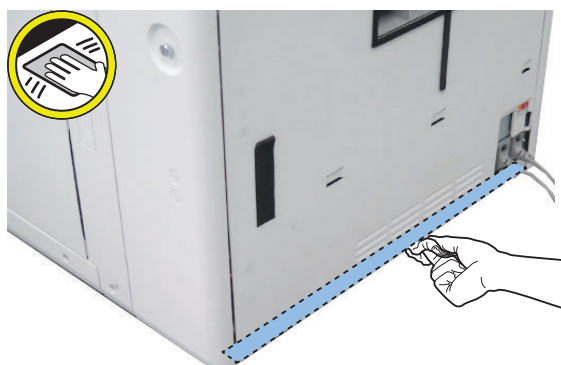
The host machine can be moved at least back and forth even after it has been installed.



1. Move the host machine to the installation site.



2. Clean the area to affix the Rear Lower Curtain Sheet with alcohol, etc.



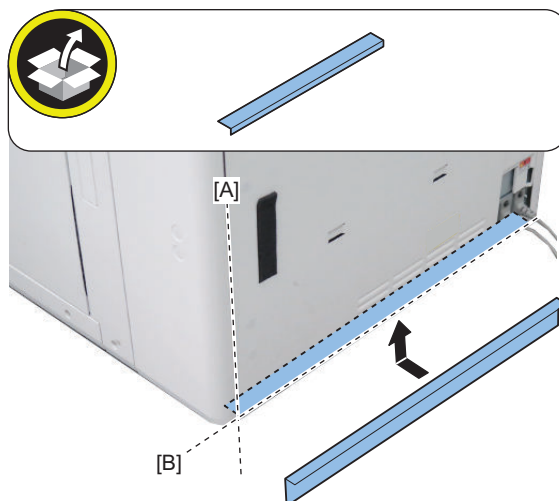


3. Affix the Rear Lower Curtain Sheet.

NOTE:

Standard for affixing them

- Align the sheet with the left edge [A] of the Rear Lower Cover.
- Align the sheet with the edge [B] of the bent part of the Rear Lower Cover.



● Installing the Noise Reduction Cover

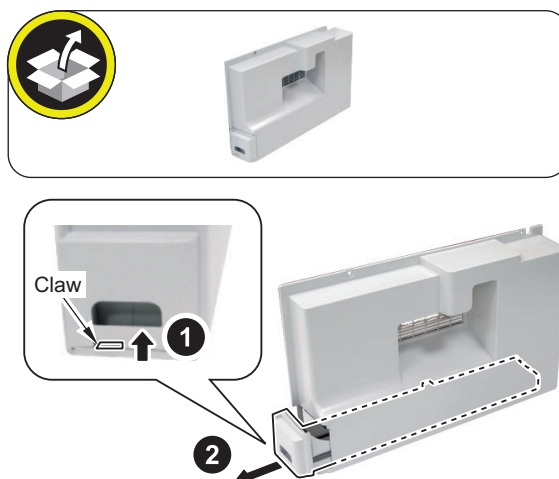
CAUTION:

Do not open the Filters until just before installation.



1. Remove the Filter Case from the Noise Reduction Cover.

- 1 Claw



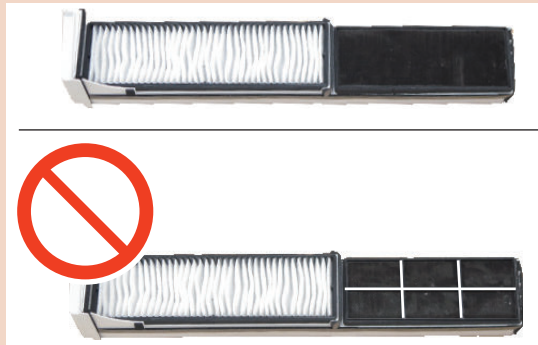
2. Open the 2 Filters.



3. Install the 2 Filters to the Filter Case.

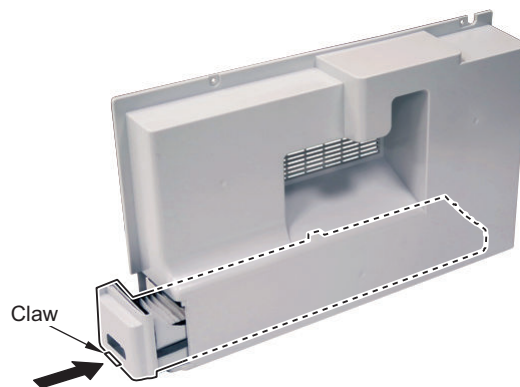
CAUTION:

Be sure that the filter is installed in the correct direction.



4. Install the Filter Case to the Noise Reduction Cover.

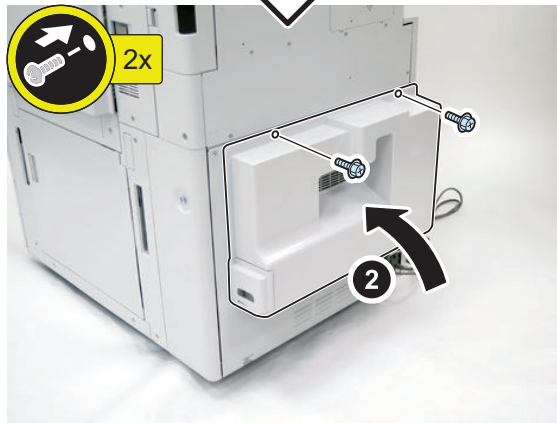
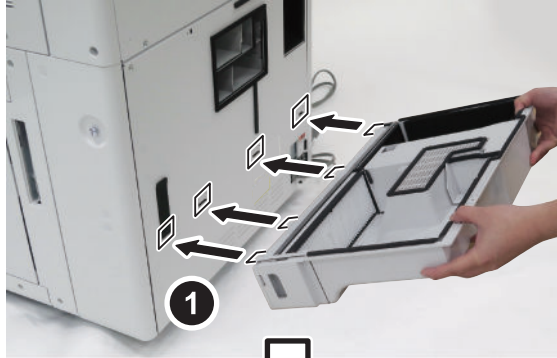
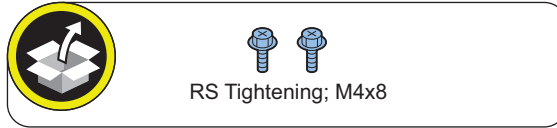
- 1 Claw





5. Install the Noise Reduction Cover.

- 4 Protrusions
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)



Securing the Host Machine

-
1. Determine the installation position of the host machine, and rotate the 4 adjusters by hand until they are in close contact with the floor.

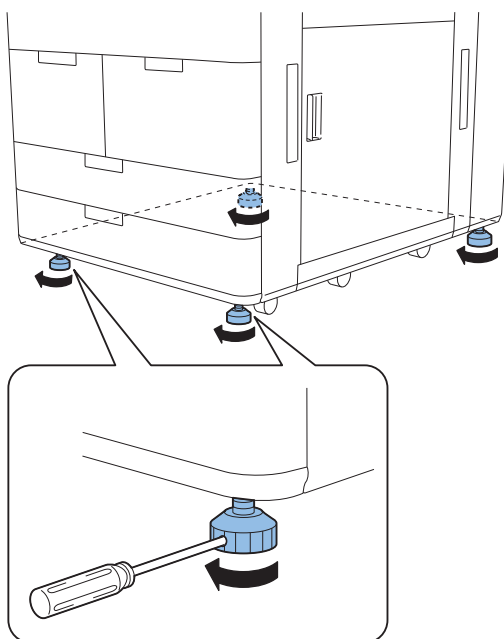
NOTE:

If they cannot be rotated by hand, use a screwdriver to loosen so they can be rotated by hand.

2. Move the adjusters in the direction of the arrow using a screwdriver, and secure them.

NOTE:

Securing of the adjuster is not for earthquake resistance.



Preparing Connection of the Main Power

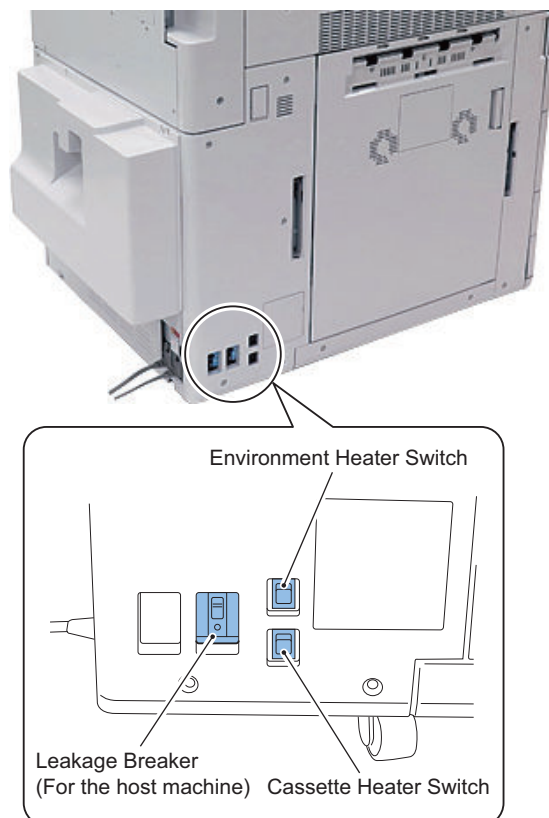
-
1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.

**2. Check that the Leakage Breaker is ON.**

Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch and Cassette Heater Switch in accordance with the installation environment.

NOTE:

- Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch if the installation environment is a high humidity environment or a low temperature environment (the Drum Heater is turned ON regardless of the Main Power Switch).
- Turn ON the Cassette Heater Switch if the installation environment is a high temperature and high humidity environment.



Turning ON the Main Power Switch

CAUTION:

Since the automatic adjustment of the ADF reading position will be executed when the main power is turned ON for the first time, remove all objects on the copyboard glass and close the ADF.



1. Remove the Protection Sheet on the Control Panel.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

When the main power is turned ON, the ITB neutral position adjustment (service mode > COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INIT-ITB) is automatically executed. Therefore, it is not necessary to manually execute the service mode.

- Do not open the cover or turn OFF the power during the automatic adjustment.
- Since color displacement correction is included in this adjustment, it is not necessary to separately execute it in service mode.

3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of the host machine.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message prompting the user to update the version.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Installing the Toner Container



1. Open the Front Upper Cover, only after the toner container replacement screen has appeared on UI.
2. The Replacement Cover opens automatically.

NOTE:

Disregard the screen that includes the message "Replace the toner cartridge.", as the Toner Containers are not yet loaded at the time of initial installation.

3. Shake the Toner Container approx. 10 times.
4. Rotate and remove the Protection Cap of the Toner Container.
5. Set a new Toner Container and close the Replacement Cover.
6. Repeat steps 3 to 5 to install the Toner Containers of other colors in the same manner.

CAUTION:

Be sure that the color is correct.

7. Close the Front Upper Cover.

NOTE:

Toner supply starts automatically when the Front Upper Cover is closed.

Host Machine Settings (Starting Setup Guide)

The Setup Guide screen appears when the Toner Container is installed after the host machine is installed. Follow the instructions displayed on the Touch Panel Display to configure the settings of the host machine.

CAUTION:

- Some of the settings can be skipped without entering the command. To configure skipped settings, configure the settings one by one after exiting Setup Guide.
- The Setup Guide can be started again from [Settings/Registration]. ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide])
- If the host machine is turned OFF during the registration using the Setup Guide, the Setup Guide is automatically started by turning ON the host machine.
- Once registration using the Setup Guide is completed, the Setup Guide is not automatically started by turning ON the host machine.

CAUTION:

- Register the information of paper loaded during installation of the host machine. Be sure to register the correct paper type. Especially in the case of special paper types such as heavy paper, registering a wrong paper type may result in image failure, soiled Fixing Assembly, or paper wraparound, requiring repair by a service technician.
- Refer to "Deck Settings" on page 80 and "Cassette Settings" on page 82 for how to set papers.

Informing the System Administrator That Installation Is Complete

When the installation is completed, ask the system administrator to change the password. Also ask the system administrator to keep the changed password in a safeplace to prevent leakage.

Registration of Installation Date Information

CAUTION:

Be sure that [Date/Time Settings] is completed. (There are items in Setup Guide.)



1. Enter the following service mode, and execute "Batch Set Installation Date Info".

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INSTDTST

NOTE:

- Year, month, day, hour, and minute can be edited individually in the following service modes.
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-Y
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-M
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-D
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-H
COPIER > OPTION > USER > INSTDT-N
- The default value of each service mode is "0".
- When "0" is set for each service mode, "Device Installation Date" on the counter report will be blank.

2. Exit service mode.

3. Output the counter report, and check that the installation date information is registered.

- [Counter/Device Information] key > [Print List] > [Yes]

```

2017 08/30 WED 09:40
*****
*** Counter Report ***
*****
Device Installation Date 2017/08/09 07:56
Counter Check Date 2017/08/30 09:40
Model IR-ADV
Serial Number UXH00938
  
```

Auto Adjust Gradation (Full Adjustment)

CAUTION:

If the gradation performance is wrong on outputting the image, set [Initialize When Using Full Adjust] and perform the Auto Adjust Gradation again.

Execute the Auto Adjust Gradation to the following 3 modes: [Plain], [Heavy 1], and [Heavy 2 - 7].

However, when using 2 or more types of paper, it is necessary to execute all the modes corresponding to the types of paper.

CAUTION:

When using paper type to which Auto Adjust Gradation is not executed, image failure or damage on the host machine may occur.



1. Place paper to be corrected in the paper source.

CAUTION:

Be sure to select the correct paper type/weight, as the toner and fixing conditions are adjusted according to the paper type.

2. Clean the Copyboard Glass surface of the host machine.

3. Log in as a system manager.

Factory default password is as follows.

- System administration division ID : Administrator
- System administration password : 7654321

NOTE:

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > [Adjust Image Quality] > [Auto Adjust Gradation].

5. Display the heavy paper mode of Auto Adjust Gradation.

Change the setting of [Adjustment Level] to [By Paper Type Group], and then press [OK].

6. Select [Initialize When Using Full Adjust] and select [ON], and press [OK]. (The color of the button changes to orange.)

CAUTION:

If the gradation performance is wrong on outputting the image, set [Initialize When Using Full Adjust] and perform the Auto Adjust Gradation.

7. Press [Full Adjust].

8. Select the paper source for test print, and press [OK].

9. Press [Start Printing]. (Test page is output)

10. After that, follow the instructions on the screen to read the test page.

Auto Correct Color Tone Settings (Register Correction Pattern)



1. Log in as a system manager.

Factory default password is as follows.

- System administration division ID : Administrator
- System administration password : 7654321

NOTE:

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

2. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > [Adjust Image Quality] > [Auto Correct Color Tone Settings] > [Register Correction Pattern], and press [Yes].

CAUTION:

It is required that Auto Gradation Adjustment has been executed.

3. Select the destination for registration, and press [Next].

4. Select the paper which is used by the user and press [Next].

CAUTION:

- Select the paper used for Auto Gradation Adjustment.
- If paper has been registered for Auto Gradation Adjustment, select the registered paper.

5. Select the paper source where paper which is used by the user is loaded and press [OK].

6. Press [Start Printing].

7. Set the output image on the Copyboard and press [Start Scanning].

8. If there are 2 or more papers which either was used for auto gradation adjustment or has been registered, repeat steps 2 to 7 as necessary.

At that time, be sure to register each paper to different destination. (Up to 4 papers can be registered.)

Installing the Reader Assembly

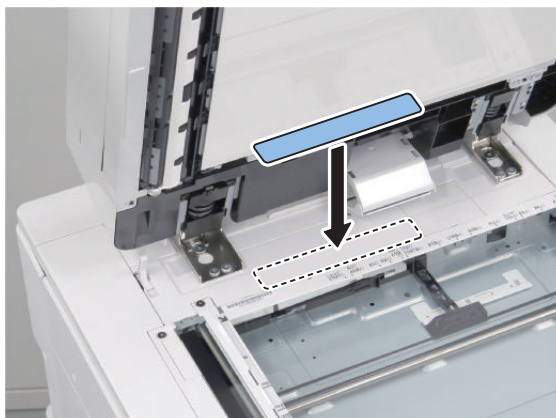
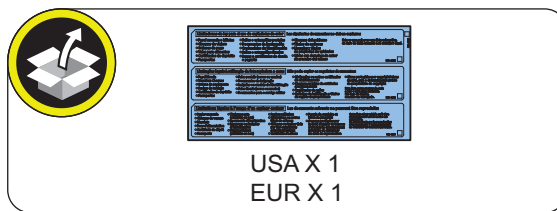
■ Affixing the Labels on the Reader Assembly



1. Open the DADF.



2. Affix the Copy Prohibition Label of the appropriate language at the places shown in the figure below.

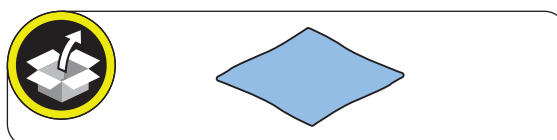


3. Close the DADF.

■ Storing the Cleaning Cloth



1. Place the Cleaning Cloth in the space shown in the figure.



● Deck Settings

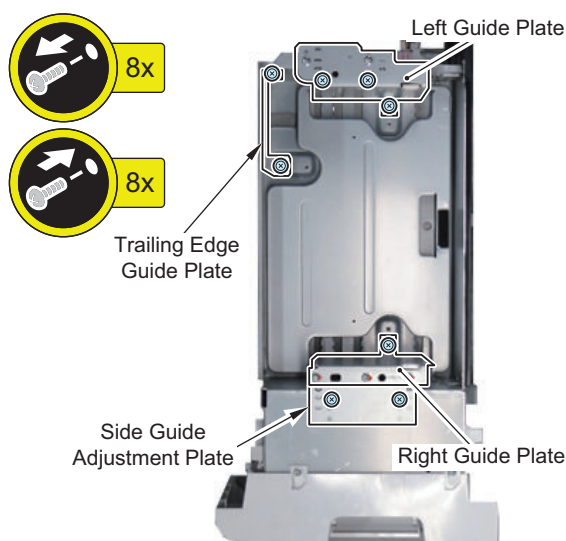


1. Open the Front Cover.

2. Pull out the Left and Right Decks.



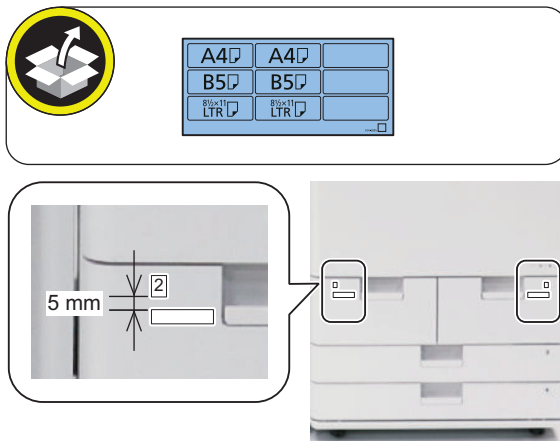
3. Remove the 8 screws of the Trailing Edge Guide Plate, Left Guide Plate, Right Guide Plate, and the Side Guide Adjustment Plate, and move the Guide Plates to the positions according to the size requested by the user.



4. Load paper of the size set for the Left and Right Deck, and push in the deck.
5. Close the Front Cover.



6. Affix Paper Size Labels (for Deck) according to the paper size. Align the Paper Size Label with the left edge of the Cassette Number Label, and affix it approx. 5 mm away from the Cassette Number Label.



NOTE:
If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

7. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the pickup location where the paper is loaded, and then press [Set].

3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

NOTE:

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the detailed settings screen.

If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, perform the following works after Setup Guide ends.

8. When the size has been changed, register the paper size for the Left and Right Deck in the service mode.

Right Deck :

COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C1

Left Deck :

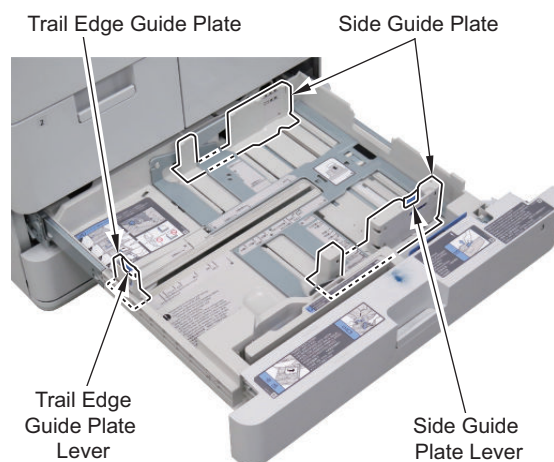
COPIER > OPTION > CST > P-SZ-C2

9. Exit service mode.

Cassette Settings



1. Pull out the cassette towards the front.
2. Move the Side Guide Plate and the Trailing Edge Guide Plate by holding their levers according to the size requested by the user.



3. Load paper, and push in the cassette.
4. Perform steps 1 to 3 for the other cassette in the same way.

NOTE:

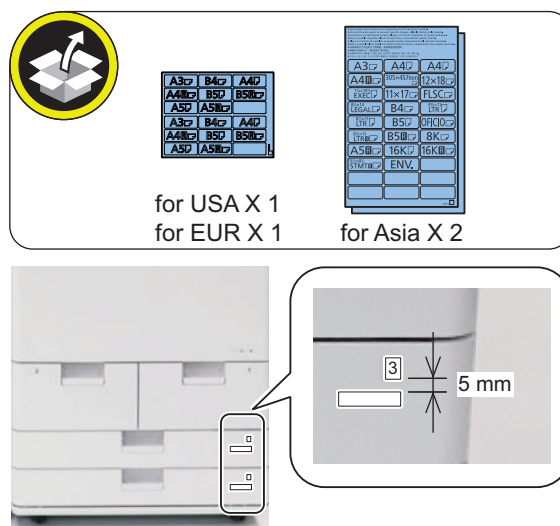
The paper size settings are recognized automatically.

**5. Affix the Paper Size Labels (for Cassette) according to the paper size.**

Align the Paper Size Label with the right edge of the Cassette Number Label, and affix it approx. 5 mm away from the Cassette Number Label.

NOTE:

- Be sure to check with the user whether or not to affix the Paper Size Label, and then affix it at the recommended position.
- Keep the Paper Size Labels as they will be used when changing the paper size.

**NOTE:**

If Setup Guide is running, skip this procedure.

6. Register the type of paper loaded in the paper source.

1. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Paper Settings] > [Paper Settings].
2. Select the pickup location where the paper is loaded, and then press [Set].
3. Select the paper type same as that of the loaded paper, and press [OK] > [OK].

NOTE:

If the corresponding paper type is not displayed on the simple settings screen, press [Detailed Settings] and make a selection on the [Detailed Settings] screen.

If the type of loaded paper is not displayed on the detailed settings screen, you can register it.

Image Position Adjustment (Printer)

Check that each image position is within the specified range in accordance with check procedure. If it is out of the specified range, make an adjustment in accordance with adjustment procedure for each item.

■ Adjustment Procedure

CAUTION:

- The test print used for adjustment must be magenta halftone image.
- In the case of 2-sided output, the first side is printed on the lower side and the second side is printed on the upper side.
- In the case of halftone images delivered facedown, the leading edge of the formed image comes to the trailing edge side with respect to the feed direction at the time of output. Be sure to pay attention to the leading edge and the trailing edge during measurement.



1. Set the service mode as follows and output the test print.

<1st side> Each paper source

```
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y = 0
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-C = 0
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Bk = 0
COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 1/2/3/4/5
COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 0
```

<2nd side> Cassette 3

```
COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y = 0
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-C = 0
COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Bk = 0
COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 3
COPIER > TEST > PG > 2-SIDE = 1
```

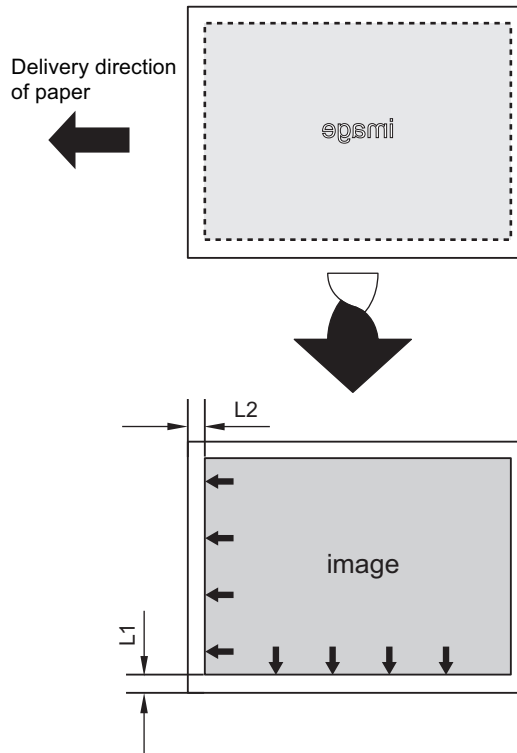
□

2. Check that the output image meets the standard.

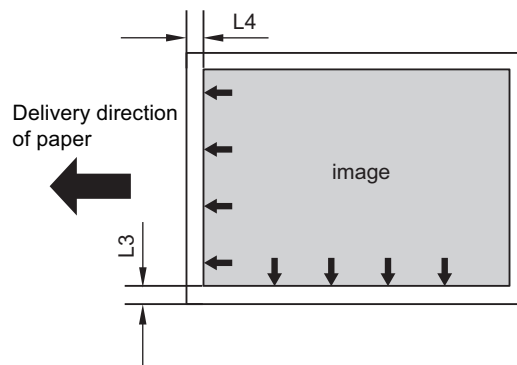
<Standard values>

Adjustment Items	Standard Values	Paper Source	Paper Size
Left Edge Margin (1st side: Mechanical adjustment)	L1: 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm	1, 2	User requested size
		3, 4, Multi-purpose tray	A3 or 11x17
Leading Edge Margin (1st side: Software adjustment)	L2: 4.0 +1.5/-1.0 mm	3	
Left Edge Margin (2nd side: Software adjustment)	L3: 2.5 +/- 2.0 mm	3	

<1st side>



<2nd side>



□

3. If outside of standard, perform the adjustment by following the adjustment step for each item.

■ Left Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side: Mechanical Adjustment)

CAUTION:

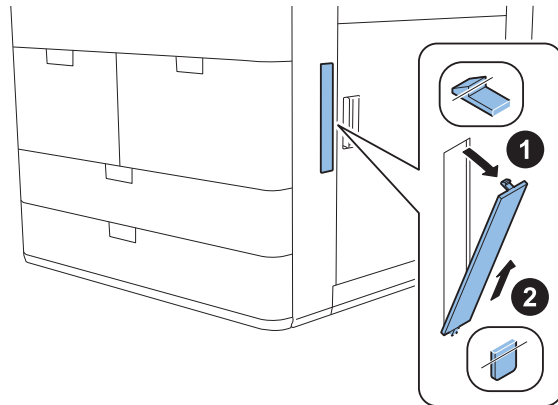
Perform the mechanical adjustment for the left edge margin adjustment (1st side) but do not adjust by service mode.

● Adjustment of the Right Deck



1. Remove the Handle Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Protrusion



2. Pull out the Right Deck.

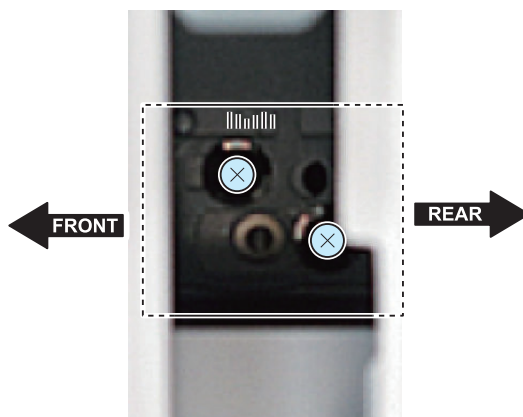


3. Raise the handle, and check the position of the scale marked above the screws.

4. Loosen the 2 screws of the Hook Support Plate.



-
5. According to the scale with which the position was checked in step 3, adjust the position of the Hook Support Plate.
- If the left edge margin is big, move the Hook Support Plate to the rear.
 - If the left edge margin is small, move the Hook Support Plate to the front.

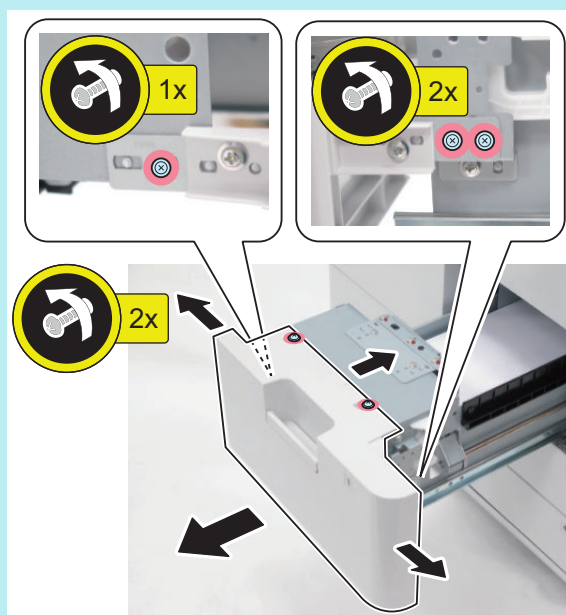


-
6. Tighten the 2 screws you loosened.
7. Close the Right Deck.
8. Output a test print from the Right Deck, and check that the left edge margin L1 is within 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.
9. Install the Handle Cover.

NOTE:

If you are concerned with alignment of the Right Deck Cover, perform the following steps to adjust the position of the Right Deck Cover as necessary.

1. Loosen the 5 screws, and adjust the position of the Right Deck Cover using the scale as reference.
2. Tighten the 5 screws you loosened.



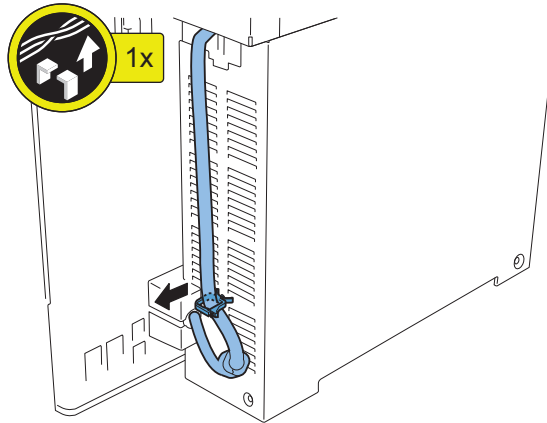
• Adjustment of the Left Deck

NOTE:

When the Buffer Path Unit is installed, perform steps 1 and 2.

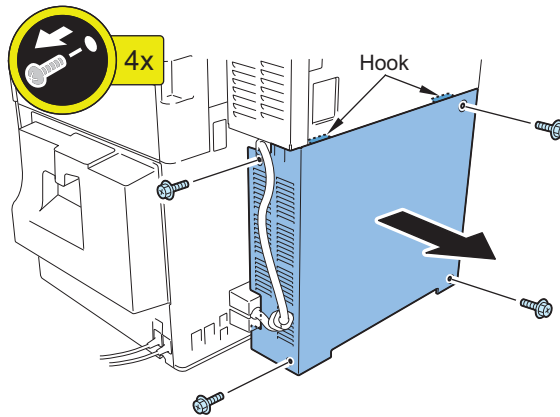


1. Free the Buffer Cable from the Wire Saddle.



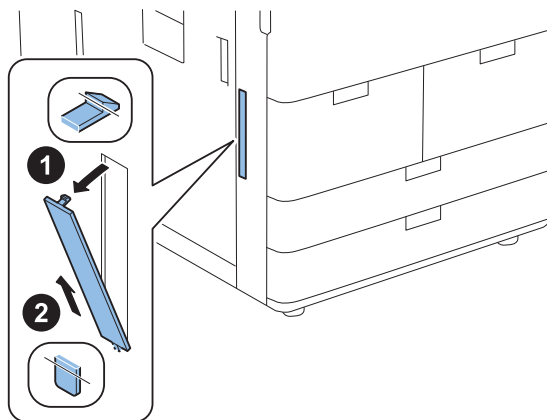
2. Remove the Buffer Left Lower Cover.

- 4 Screws
- 2 Hooks



3. Remove the Handle Cover.

- 1 Claw
- 1 Protrusion



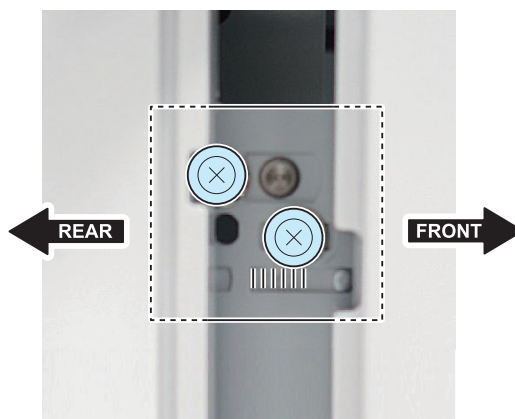
4. Pull out the Left Deck.



5. Raise the handle, and check the position of the scale marked below the screws.
6. Loosen the 2 screws of the Hook Support Plate.



7. According to the scale with which the position was checked in step 5, adjust the position of the Hook Support Plate.
 - If the left edge margin is big, move the Hook Support Plate to the rear.
 - If the left edge margin is small, move the Hook Support Plate to the front.



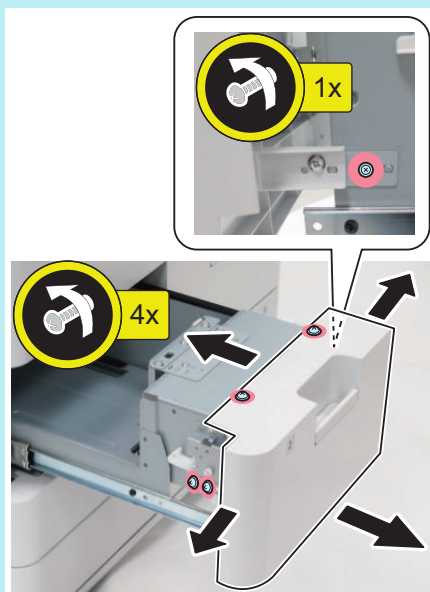
8. Tighten the loosened 2 screws.
9. Close the Left Deck.
10. Output a test print from the Left Deck, and check that the left edge margin L1 is within 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.
11. Install the Handle Cover.
12. Install the Buffer Left Lower Cover (4 screws). (When the Buffer Path Unit is installed)

13. Secure the Buffer Cable in place using the Wire Saddle. (When the Buffer Path Unit is installed)

NOTE:

If you are concerned with alignment of the Left Deck Cover, perform the following steps to adjust the position of the Left Deck Cover as necessary.

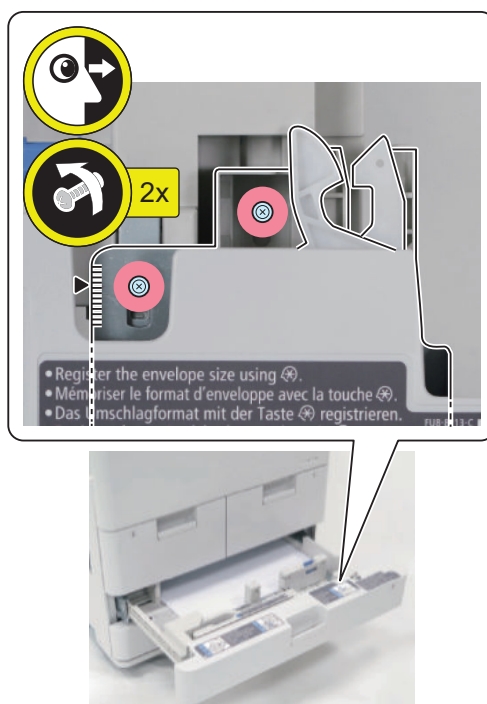
1. Loosen the 5 screws, and adjust the position of the Left Deck Cover using the scale as reference.
2. Tighten the 5 screws you loosened.



• Adjustment of the Cassettes 3 and 4



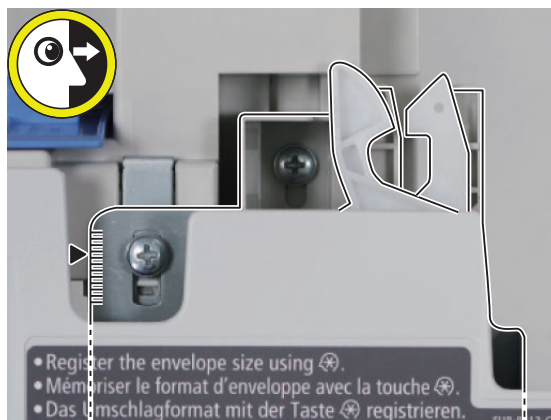
1. Pull out the Cassette.
2. Check the position of the scale of the Cassette Lock Unit.
3. Loosen the 2 screws of the Cassette Lock Unit.



-
4. **According to the scale with which the position was checked in step 2, adjust the position of the Cassette Lock Unit.**
- If the left edge margin is big, move the Cassette Lock Unit to the front.
 - If the left edge margin is small, move the Cassette Lock Unit to the rear.

CAUTION:

Be careful not to move a cassette too much; otherwise, it may not be able to be installed in the host machine.



-
5. **Tighten the loosened 2 screws.**
6. **Return the cassette to the original position.**
7. **Output a test print from the adjusted cassette, and check that the left edge margin L1 is within 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.**

CAUTION:

When performing adjustment of the cassette, perform the following "[< Cassette Pull-in Check >](#)" on page 92.

● Adjustment of the Multi-purpose Tray

-
1. **Open the Multi-purpose Tray.**
2. **Loosen the screw, and adjust the position of the tray using the scale as reference.**
- If the left edge margin is small, move the tray to the front.
 - If the left edge margin is big, move the tray to the rear.





3. Tighten the 1 screw you loosened.
4. Output a test print from the Multi-purpose Tray, and check that the left edge margin L1 is 2.5 +/- 1.5 mm.

● < Cassette Pull-in Check >



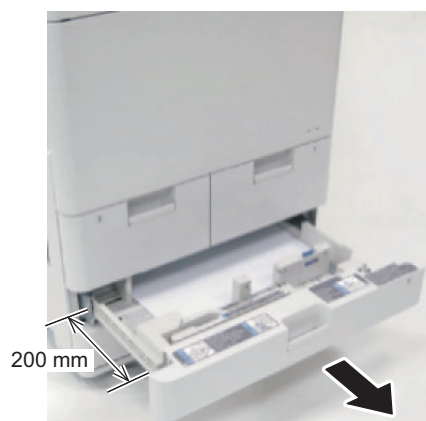
1. If the Buffer Path Unit is installed, open the Buffer Front Cover.



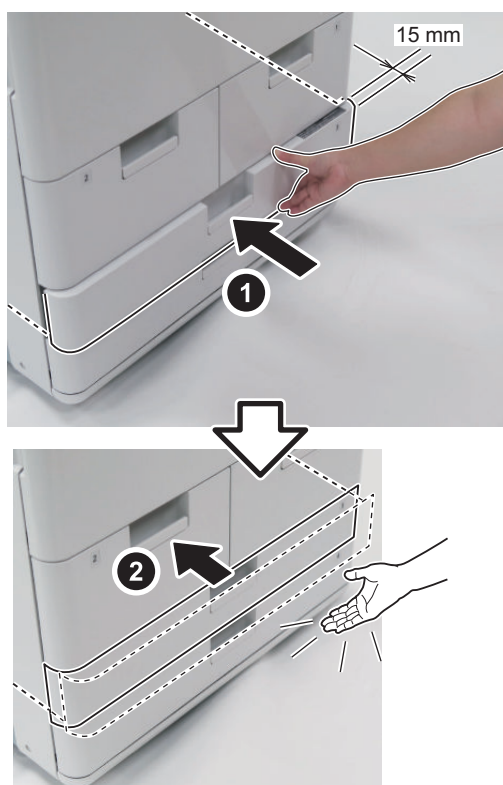
2. Pull out the cassette 200 mm or more.

CAUTION:

The pull-in mechanism is activated by opening the cassette 200 mm or more.



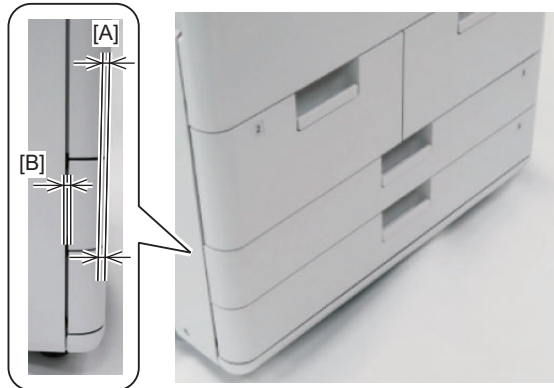
3. Push back the cassette until it is 15 mm from the Front Cover of the host machine, and let go of the cassette.



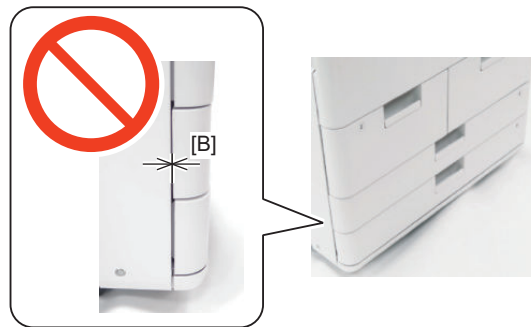
< Appropriate (No need for adjustment) >

The latch is locked, and the level difference [A] and the gap [B] between the Cassette Front Cover and other external covers are within the appropriate ranges when viewed from the left side. Adjustment is not necessary.

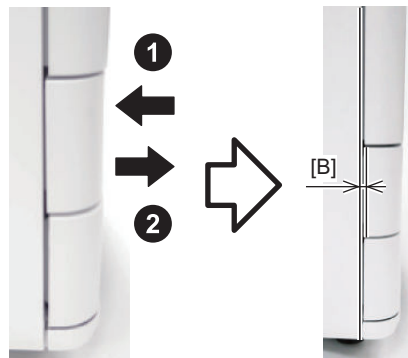
- The level difference [A] between the cassette and other covers (the Front Cover and other Cassette Front Covers) on the front side should be 2 mm or less.
- The gap [B] from the cover on the rear side should be 4 to 5 mm.

**< Halfway closed >**

The cassette has been excessively pulled in. The gap from other external covers is eliminated by further pushing the cassette in this situation, but adjustment is needed from a functional point of view.



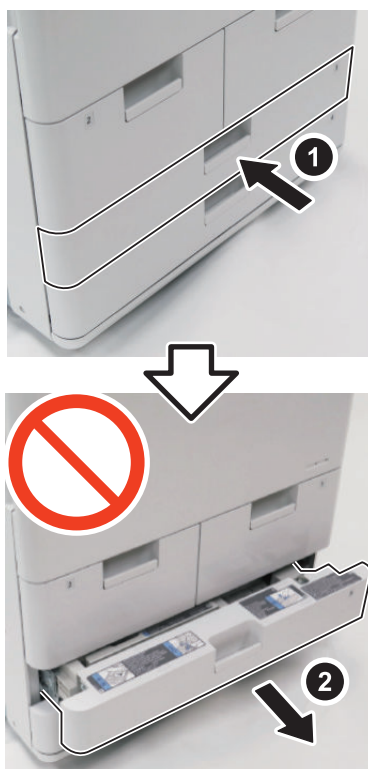
By further pushing the cassette in this situation, a gap [B] is generated between the cassette and the cover on the rear side. Measure and write down the gap [B].



Perform [“Adjusting the Cassette Front Cover”](#) on page 94, and then perform [“Adjusting the Pull-in Guide”](#) on page 95 as needed.

< Latch Not Locking >

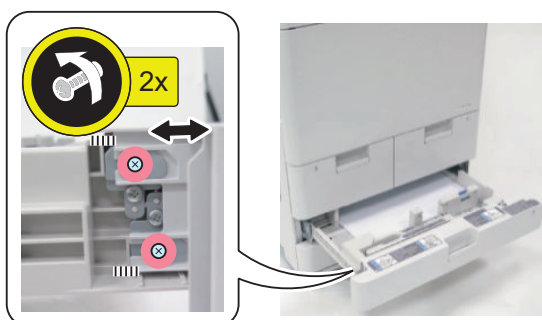
The cassette has not been pulled in enough. The cassette is not latched and comes out. Perform [“Adjusting the Pull-in Guide”](#) on page 95.

**Adjusting the Cassette Front Cover**

-
1. Pull out the Cassette.
 2. Loosen the 2 adjustment screws on the left side, and move the Cassette Front Cover as needed using the 2 scales as reference until the gap [B] from the cover on the rear side you wrote down changes to a value within the appropriate range.

NOTE:

The appropriate range of the gap is normally 4 to 5 mm, but if the cover does not close properly, adjust the gap to 5 mm in case the cover is halfway closed.

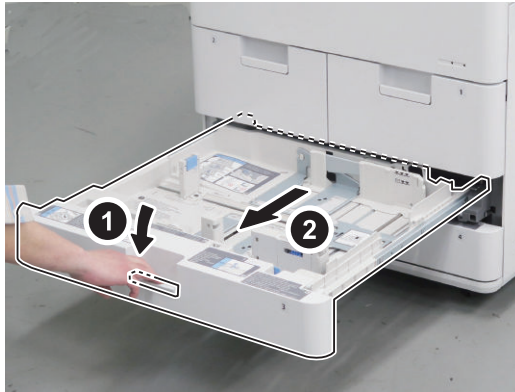


-
3. Tighten the 2 adjustment screws you loosened.
 4. Check the level difference again. If the difference is still out of the appropriate range, perform [“Adjusting the Pull-in Guide”](#) on page 95.

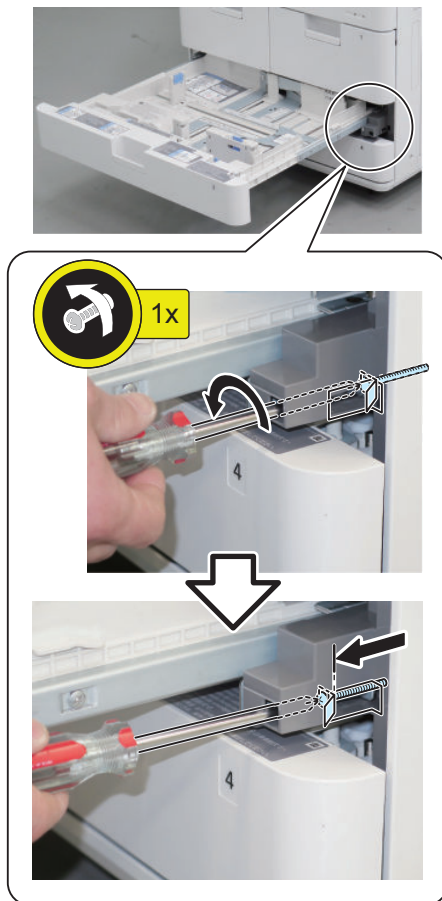
Adjusting the Pull-in Guide



1. Pull the Open/Close Lever, and pull out the Cassette 3.

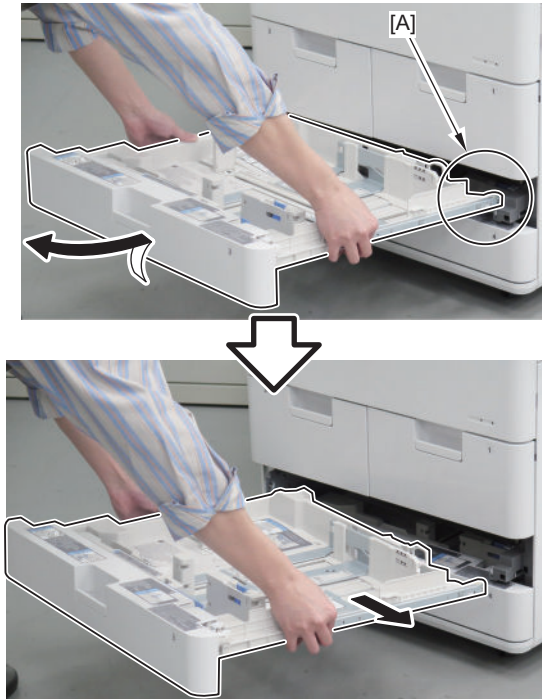


2. Loosen the screw until the stopper touches the front side.





3. Pull out the right side [A] of the cassette while lifting the front side, move it to the right, and remove the Cassette 3.



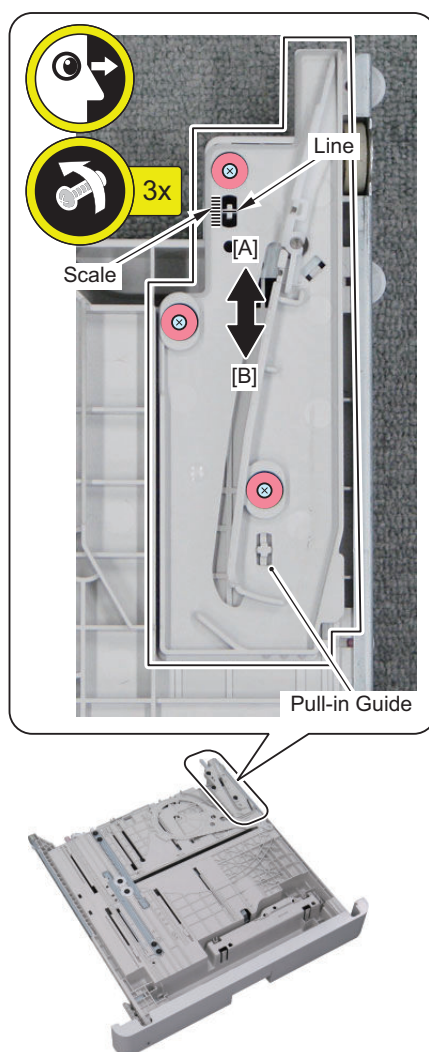


4. Loosen the 3 adjustment screws on the rear side of the cassette. Using the scale and the boss line as reference, move the position of the Pull-in Guide for 1 division of the scale.

NOTE:

Check the initial position on the scale (because the position at the time of shipment is not always at the center).

- In the case of a semi-closed cassette: Move the Pull-in Guide for 1 division of the scale upward (toward the rear side [A] of the host machine) so that the amount the cassette is pulled in is reduced.
- In the case of latch not locking: Move the Pull-in Guide for 1 division of the scale downward (toward the front side [B] of the host machine) so that the amount the cassette is pulled in is increased.



5. Tighten the 3 adjustment screws you loosened.

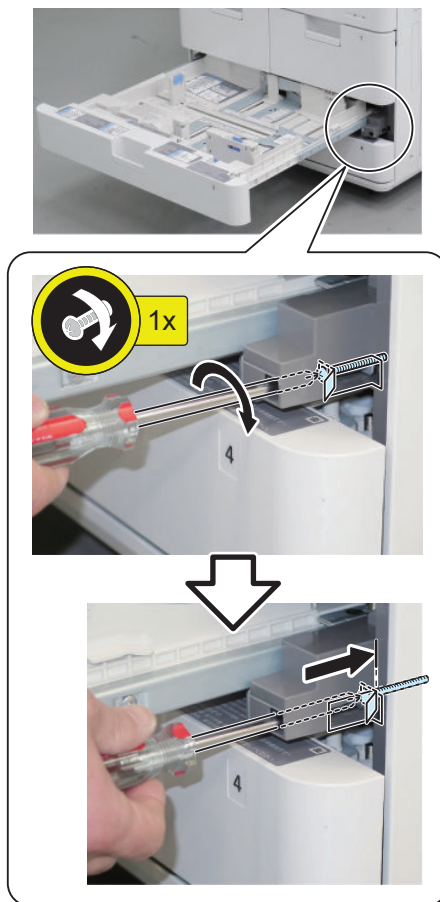


6. Install the Cassette 3 by aligning the triangle mark of the rail on the left side with the triangle mark of the cassette, and putting the roller [B] of the cassette in the [A] part of the rail on the right side.





7. Tighten the screw you loosened in step 2.



8. Check the level difference again, and adjust until position becomes appropriate.

■ Leading Edge Margin Adjustment (1st side: Software Adjustment)

NOTE:

When the leading edge margin for the Cassette 3 is adjusted, the adjustment is applied to all paper sources.



1. Adjust the image position in the service mode.

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > REGIST

NOTE:

Setting range : -50 to 50 (0.1 mm per increment)

When the setting value is increased by 1, the leading edge margin is increased by 0.1 mm.

2. Output a test print from the Cassette 3, and check that the leading edge margin L2 is within 4.0 +1.5/ -1.0 mm.
3. If the service mode setting value has been changed, write down the new adjustment value on the service label.
4. Exit service mode.

■ Left Edge Margin Adjustment (2nd side: Software Adjustment)

NOTE:

When the left edge margin (2nd side) for the Cassette 3 is adjusted, the adjustment is applied to all paper sources.



1. **Adjust the image position of the 2nd side in the service mode.**

COPIER > ADJUST > FEED-ADJ > ADJ-REFE

NOTE:

Setting range : -100 to 100 (0.1 mm per increment)

When the setting value is increased by 1, the left edge margin is increased by 0.1 mm.

2. **Output a test print (2-sided) from the Cassette 3, and check that the left edge margin L3 is within 2.5 +/- 2.0 mm.**

3. **If the service mode setting value has been changed, write down the new adjustment value on the service label.**

4. **Exit service mode.**

● Image Position Adjustment (Single Pass ADF)

■ Checking the Skew

Check the image at ADF stream reading with using the "Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment". If any adjustments have been made, perform all of the following "Adjustment Procedure". If it is confirmed that there is no problem, proceed to "Network Connectivity Check".

1. Adjustment of the White Plate
2. Height Adjustment
3. Light intensity adjustment
4. Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)
5. White Level Adjustment
6. Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

NOTE:

Even if the above adjustment is performed, if a fixed skew or image shift occurs, the image is manually adjusted according to the state of the printed image

- Adjustment of leading edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.1mm
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2 (back side)
- Adjustment of the left edge margin of the scanned image for the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.1mm
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-L2 (back side)
- Angle correction of the corrected image Amount of Change per:0.01 degree
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-ROT2 (back side)
- Parallelogram correction amount for corrected image Amount of Change per:0.01 degree
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR1 (front side)
FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-PAR2 (back side)

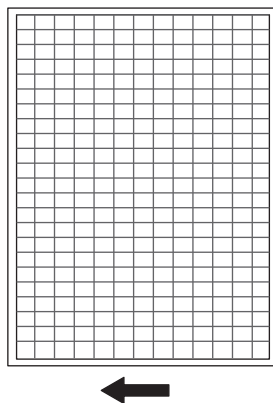
Refer to the following Service Manual

- Adjustment > Original Feed System (Single Pass ADF) > Skew Adjustment (at Stream Scanning of Originals)

● Creating the Test Charts for Image Position Adjustment

CAUTION:

Create the test charts for image position adjustment after completing adjustments on the printer side.

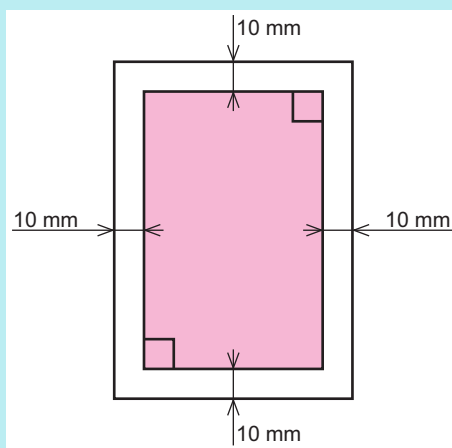


1. After setting the service modes as follows, press the Start key to output the test chart.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 6
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = To set the Pickup Cassette for test print output.

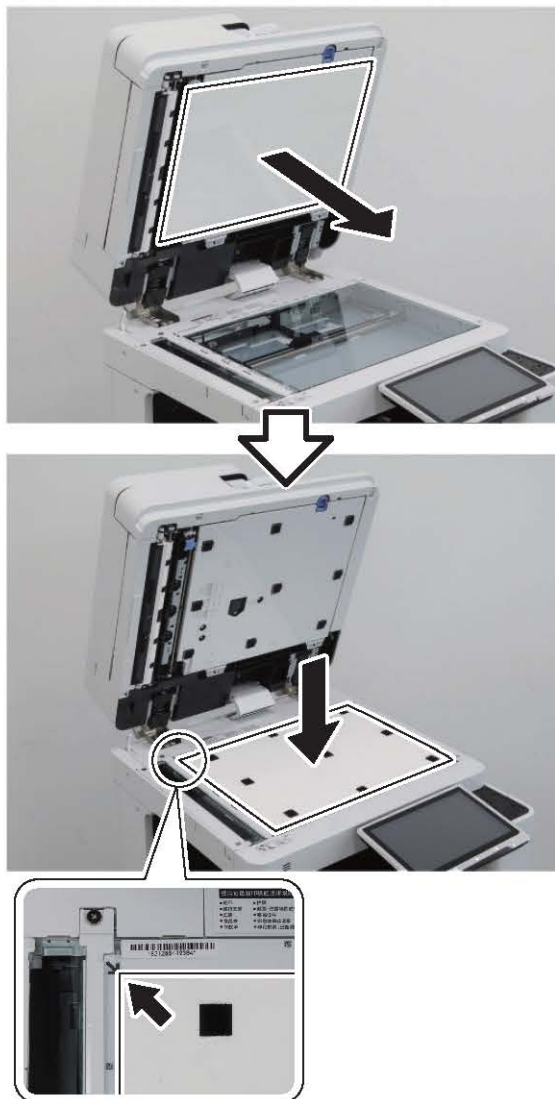
NOTE:

- If the specified test chart cannot be output, draw a test chart on A3 or LDR paper with a rectangle whose four corners are 10 mm smaller than the paper.
- To draw characters and marks so that you can see the direction of the copied image.

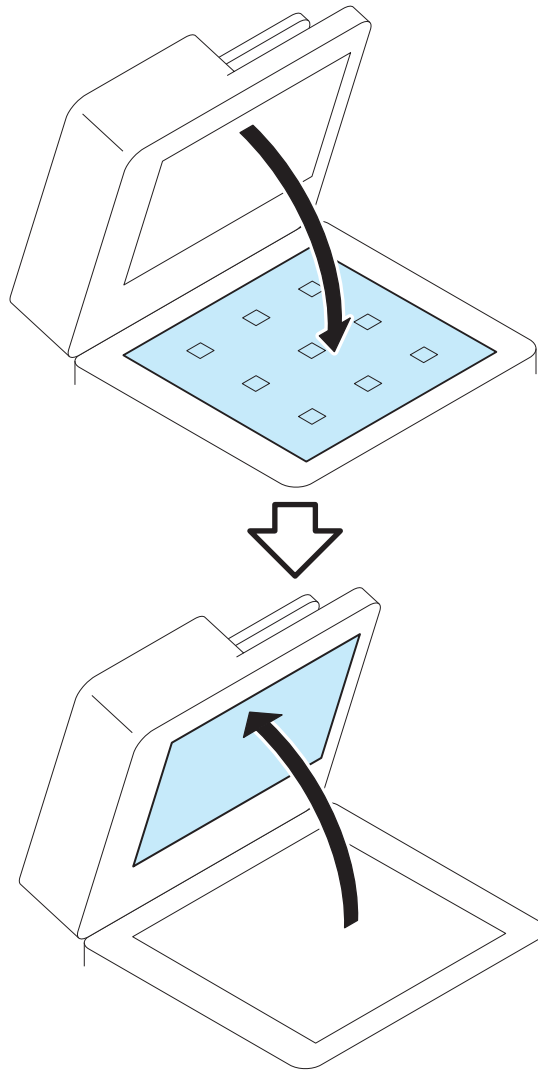


• Adjustment of the White Plate

□
1.



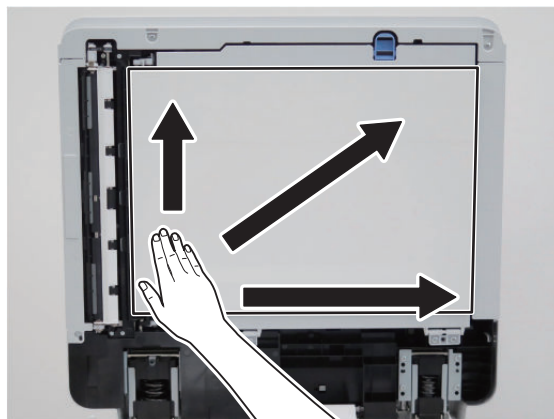
□
2.



□
3.

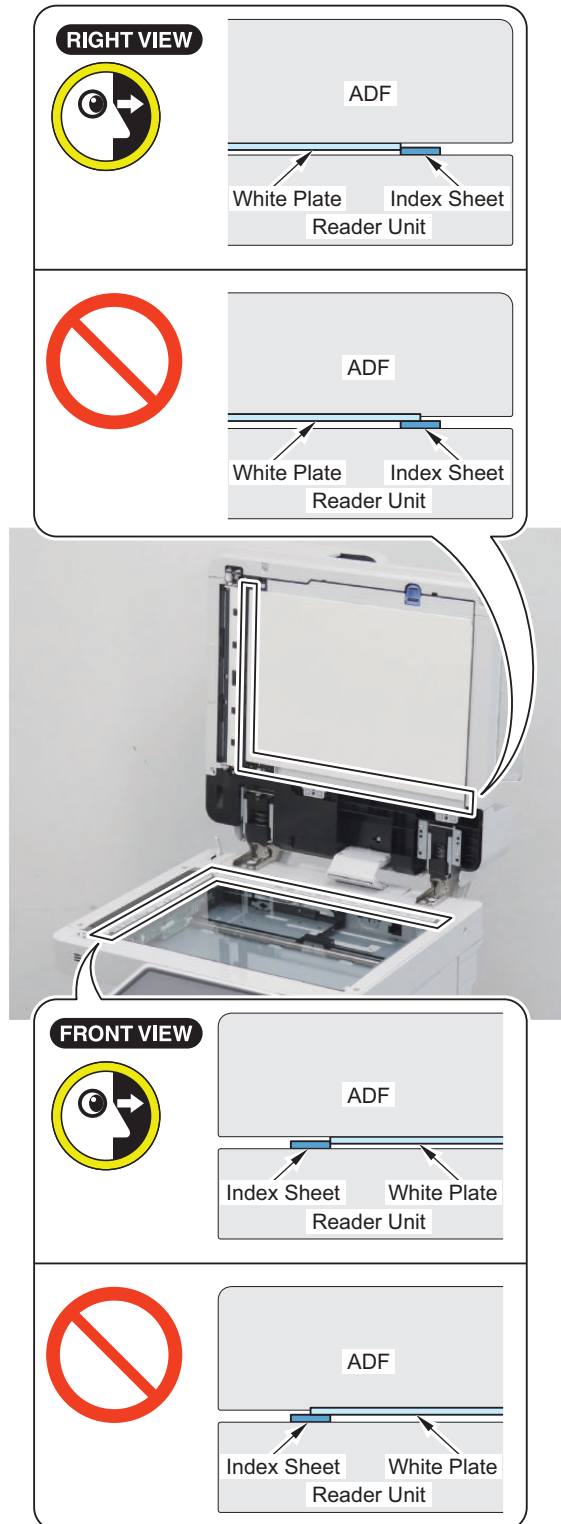
CAUTION:

If the White Plate is pressed downward, it is placed on the Index Sheet, so be sure to press it upward.



□
4.**NOTE:**


- Be sure that there is no gap (for reference, 0.3 mm or less) between the White Plate and the Index Sheet.
- Check that the White Plate is not placed on the Index Sheet.



• Checking the Height

Height Check Sheet Preparation or Creation

1. Prepare the check sheet used for height adjustment.

 Height check sheet

NOTE:

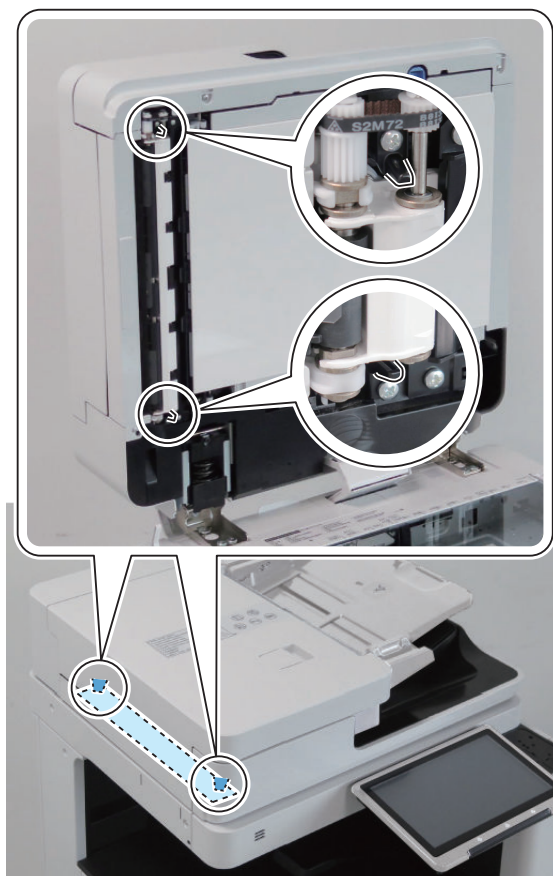
Points to Note when Creating the Check Sheet

- Output with A4 (paper size) or LTR (paper size).
- Use plain paper 1 to 3 (64 to 105 g/m²) (Paper Type).

Height Adjustment

Checking the Height

-
1. Check that the 2 Height Adjustment Bosses at the left front side and the left rear side are in contact with the Stream Reading Glass.



2. If they are not in contact, perform the height adjustment.
If it cannot be visually checked, perform "Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss".

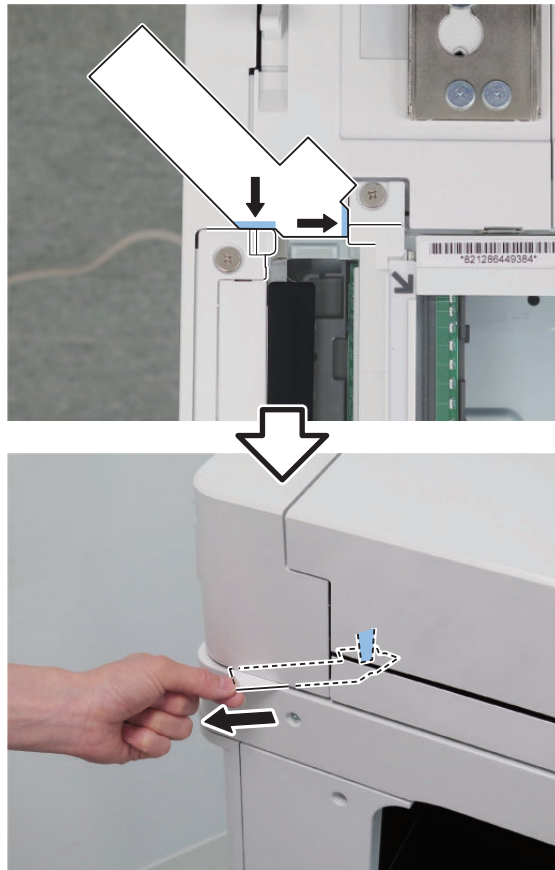
Checking the Height of the Height Adjustment Boss

- 1. Put a sheet of paper on the place where the protrusions touch the Stream Reading Glass, and check whether there is any resistance of the paper when closing the ADF.

<The Left Front Side>



<The Left Rear Side>



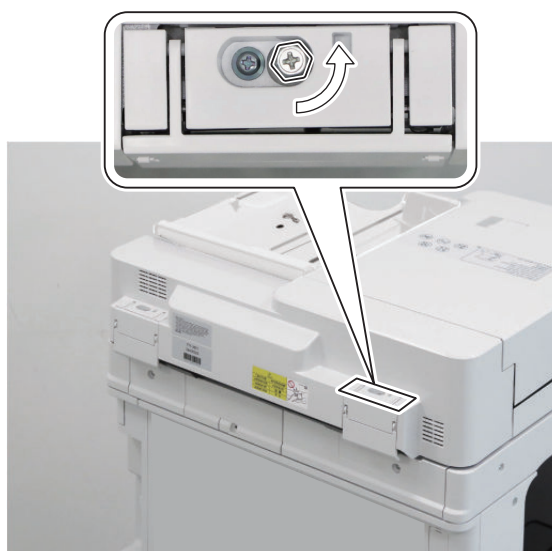
2. If there is no resistance, perform the height adjustment.

Height Adjustment Procedure

-
- Adjust by turning the Fixation Screw on the upper side of Hinge.
 - If both front and rear side (or only front side) are not installed properly: Turn the Right Hinge Fixation Screw clockwise (black arrow) to correctly locate it at the front.



- If the rear side is not installed properly: Turn the Left Hinge Fixation Screw counterclockwise (white arrow).



- Open th ADF fully and close the ADF and then, Check the height again and see if it is at an appropriate height.

• Light intensity adjustment

NOTE:

- This mode automatically performs adjustment.
- If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, check that PCB and each connector are properly connected.

□

- Execute the following service mode with the ADF closed.
COPIER >FUNCTION >CCD > LMPADJ

• Automatic Adjustment of the Stream Reading Position (Automatic Adjustment of the Reading Position at ADF Reading)

NOTE:

- If the DADF is opened during adjustment, restart the adjustment.
- Enter the value after adjustment on the Service Label (on the back of the Reader Front Cover or Printer Front Cover). The adjustment result is reflected to COPIER > ADJUST > ADJ-XY > STRD-POS.



1. Execute the following service mode.

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > STRD-POS

NOTE:

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

• White Level Adjustment



1. Place a sheet of blank A4 or LTR size paper on the Copyboard Glass and close the ADF.

CAUTION:

When executing the white level adjustment using paper with smaller width, adjustment may not be executed properly.

2. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL1

3. Remove the blank paper from the Copyboard Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.

4. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL2

5. Place the blank paper on the Copyboard Glass again and close the ADF.

6. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL3

7. Remove the blank paper from the Copy Board Glass, and place it on the Document Pickup Tray of ADF.

8. Execute the service mode item.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CCD > DF-WLVL4

• Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

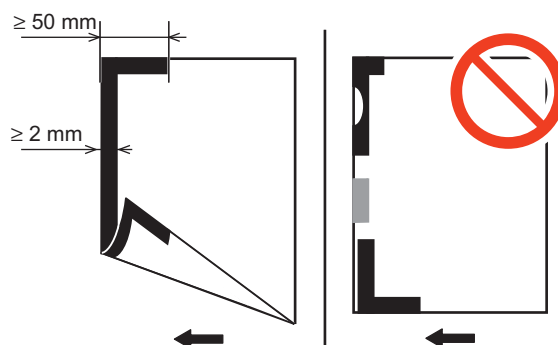
Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment

NOTE:

If the chart in the following state is used, skew detection may not be possible and correction may not be possible.

- The painted part is not long enough.
- The painted part is chipped.
- The color is light.
- The edges are not painted.
- Broken/torn/chipped.
- Translucent, thin paper manuscript is used.
- The area painted black is not dry enough.

1. Use a chart of a service parts of a Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment, or using A4 or LTR paper, the leading edge and the side edge of the front/back side in the feeding direction are painted black with magic, and a chart for Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is prepared.



2. Set the value of the service mode to "0" below.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 = 0

NOTE:

- The ADJ-T2/L2/ROT2 is an item for manually fine-adjusting the skew in the case that a deviation remains in the position of the back image to which the skew is automatically corrected after the Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment.
- "0" is the value at the time of shipment from the factory. By resetting to the initial state, there is no unintended deviation due to manual correction with respect to the back surface image in which skew correction is automatically performed, so that a constant accuracy is guaranteed.

3. Set the document tray so that the black-painted portion becomes the leading edge in the feeding direction.

4. Automatic Front/Back Side Difference Correction Adjustment is performed in the following service mode.

- FEEDER > FUNCTION > ADJ-SKW

NOTE:

If "NG" is displayed after executing this mode, execute "Right Angle Adjustment (Slant Adjustment)" on the service manual.

5. Write the adjusted values below on the service label.

- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DT
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DL
- FEEDER > ADJUST > ADJ-DROT

● Checking the Network Connection

■ Overview

If the user's network environment is TCP/IP, use the Ping function to check that the network setting is properly performed.

■ Checking the Network Connection

CAUTION:

Be sure to use the network cable with Category 5e or higher. In addition, a sealed type (STP cable) is recommended. When using the non-sealed type (UTP cable), it may influence the surrounding electronic equipments via network cable.

1. Turn OFF the main power switch.
2. Connect the network cable to the machine, and turn ON the main power switch.

3. Inform the system administrator at the installation site that the installation of the machine has been completed, and ask to specify the network settings.

NOTE:

Network settings can be made only when logged in as an administrator.

The default password is indicated below.

- System Manager ID: Administrator
- System PIN: 7654321

CAUTION:

To specify the network settings, it is required to turn ON the following Initial Settings/Registration items.

- [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Confirm Network Connection Set. Changes.]
- [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 Settings] > [Use IPv4]

4. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

■ Using the Ping Command

1. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 Settings] > [PING command].
2. Enter the IP address using the Control Panel Numeric Keypad, and press "Start" key.
 - When Ping succeeded, "Response from the host." is displayed.
 - When Ping failed, "No response from the host." is displayed.

■ Checking by the Remote Host Address

Using the remote host address to execute Ping can check whether connection to the network is enabled or not.

Remote host address: IP address of PC terminal connected/running on TCP/IP network environment that connects to this equipment.

1. Inform the system administrator about checking of the network connection using Ping.
2. Confirm the remote host address with the system administrator.
3. Enter the remote host address to Ping.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - The network is not properly connected if the message say "No response from the host", therefore, execute the following troubleshooting.

Network Troubleshooting

■ Checking Connection of the Network Cable

To check whether the network cable is properly connected to the LAN Port.

■ Operation Procedure Using Ping

1. Ask the network administrator at the user's site to write down the IP address of the PC that is connected to the network.
2. [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address of the PC with the numeric keypad and press Execute key.
 - The network is properly connected if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", check the following.

■ Checking the Network Setting of the Host Machine

Check if the IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct.

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [IP address setting]; and write down the address in the IP address field.
2. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address.
 - The IP address specified in the Host Machine is correct if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If "No response from the host." is displayed, check if the IP address information set for the system administrator is correct.

NOTE:

When setting the address by manually input, set the Subnet Mask by following the instruction of the administrator.

■ Checking Network Function on the Main Controller

Perform checking by the loopback address.

1. Select the following: [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [TCP/IP Settings] > [IPv4 settings] > [Ping Command]; and enter the IP address, "127.0.0.1" with the numeric keypad and enter Execute key.
 - The network function of the Main Controller is working properly if the message say "Response from the host".
 - If the message say "No response from the host", the network function of the Main Controller is faulty.
2. Replace with a Main Controller that works properly, and then check connection.

● Installing the IC Card Reader

NOTE:

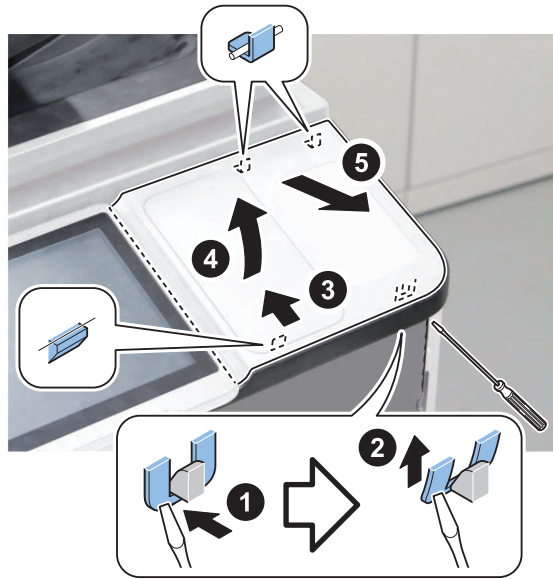
- When installing the IC Card Reader, the IC Card Reader (sales company's option) is required.
- Use the shorter cable of the IC Card Reader.
- When installing the IC Card Reader and Numeric Keypad at the same time, install the Numeric Keypad first.

1. If the main power switch of the host machine is ON, turn it OFF.

2.



□
3.



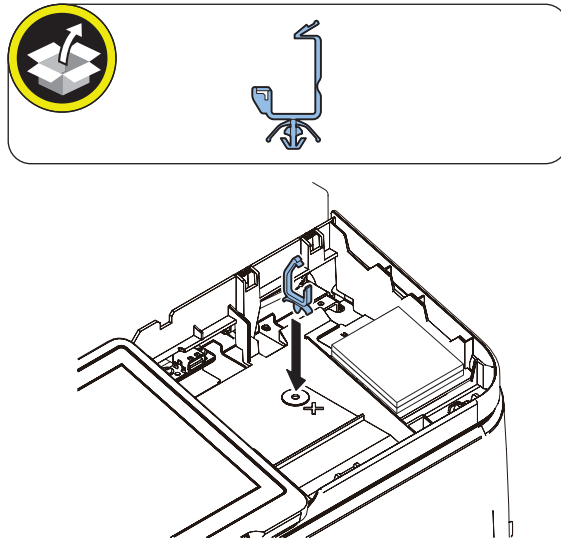
□
4.

NOTE:

Be sure to change the number of cushions according to the thickness of the Card Reader.
If it makes the Control Panel Upper Right Cover difficult to install, using one or no cushions is allowed.



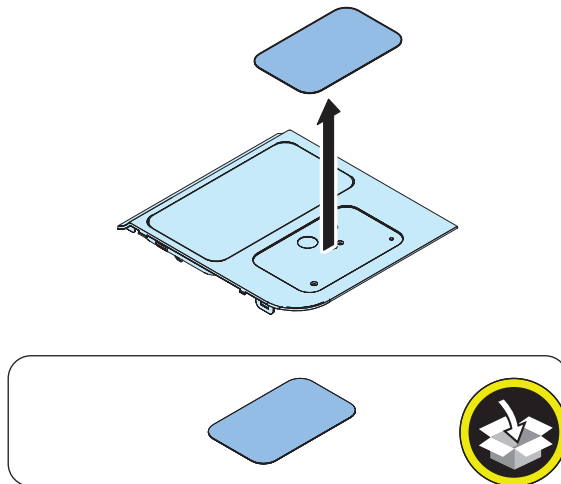
□
5.



□
6.

NOTE:

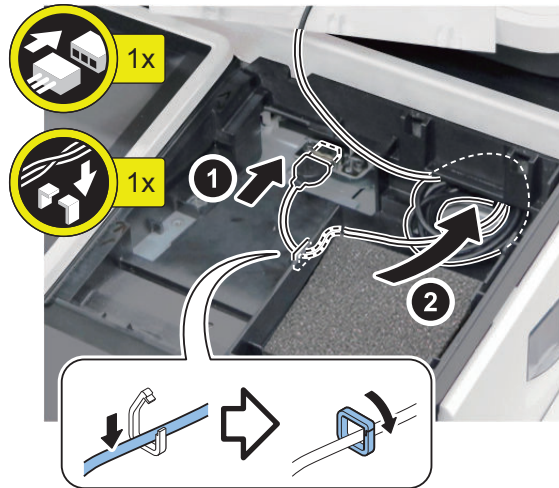
If any paste is remaining on the removed surface, clean with alcohol (to prevent the non-level surface from forming when affixing the Device Port Sheet).



□
7.

NOTE:

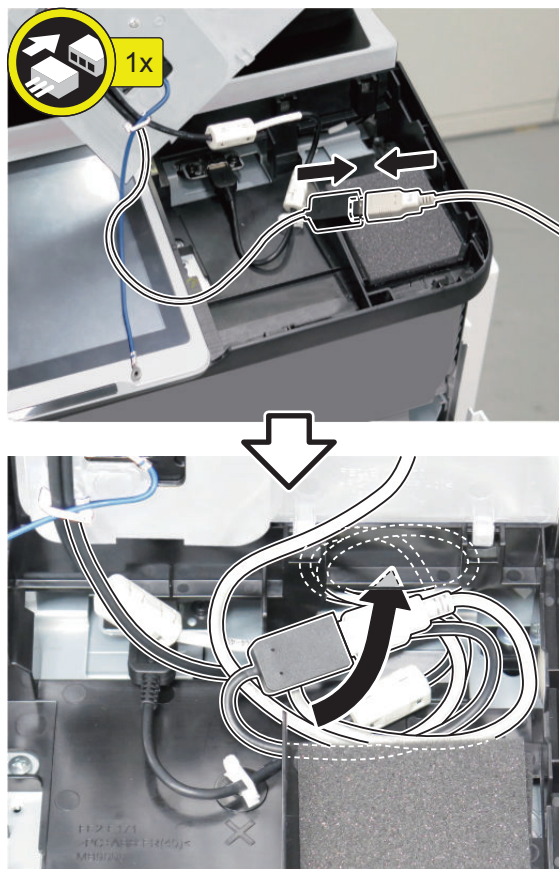
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



< When installing with the Numeric Keypad at the same time >

NOTE:

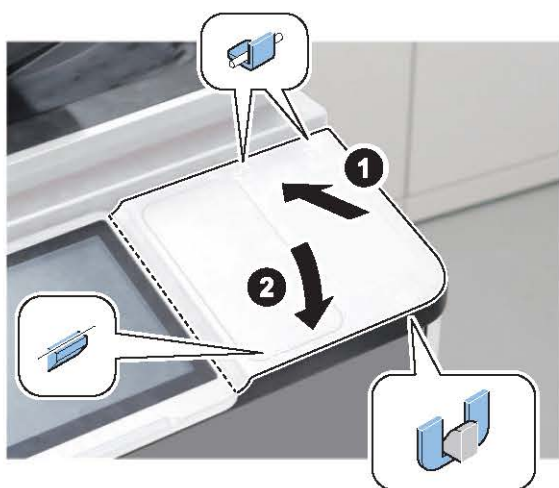
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



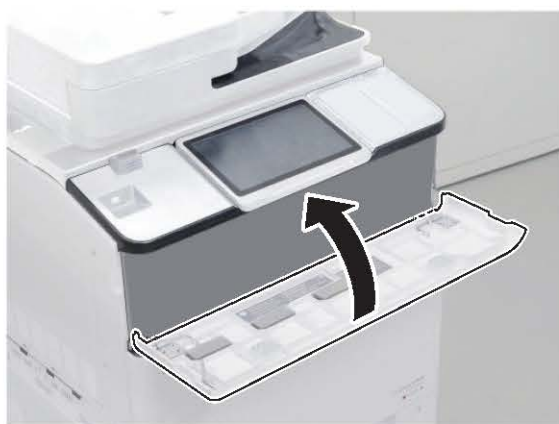
□
8.



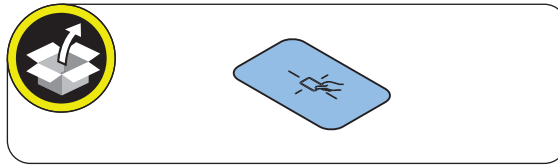
□
9.



□
10.



□
11.



□
12. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

13. Turn ON the main power switch.

Operation when using uniFLOW Online

When using uniFLOW Online*, follow the setup procedures on the uniFLOW* Online First Steps Guide (http://www.nt-ware.com/uFO_FS).

* China version of "uniFLOW" is called "mdsFLOW".

When Relocating the Machine

NOTE:

If packing materials such as fixing material which were removed on the installation are not available, it is recommended to use cushioning materials that matches to them.

When moving the machine to another floor

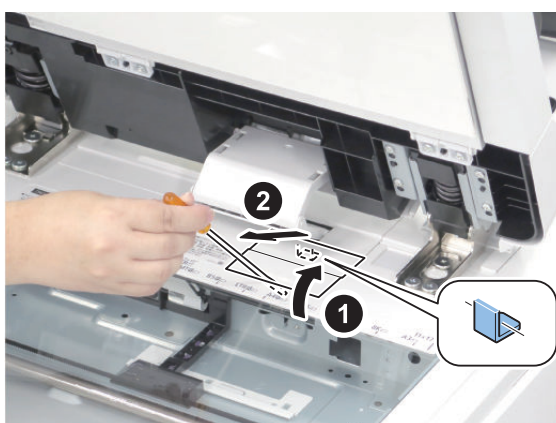
If you need to relocate the machine (move to another floor, etc) after installation, be sure to perform the following work in advance.

-
- 1. **From the following service mode (Lv.2), move the Scanner Unit to the position to secure.**
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > RD-SHPOS
-
- 2. **With all the covers of the host machine closed, execute the service mode (Lv.2) for putting the Fixing Film Unit into a nip-pressure-for-envelope state.**
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > FX-HPRS

CAUTION:

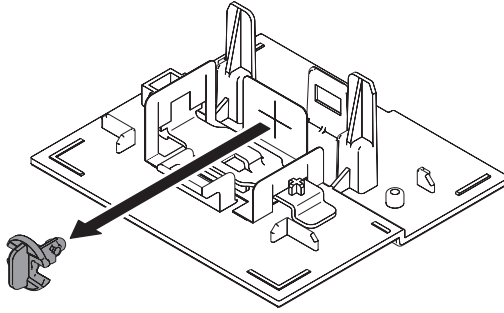
After execution of this service mode, do not open the covers until the Main Power Switch is turned OFF.

-
- 3. **Turn OFF the main power switch.**
- 4. **Check that the control panel display and the main power lamp are OFF, and then disconnect the power plug.**
-
- 5. **Remove the options.**
-
- 6. **Open the DADF, and remove the Maintenance Cover (Upper).**

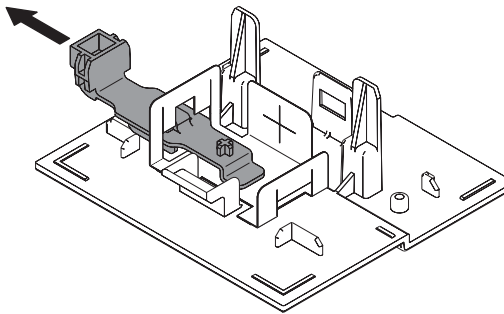




7. Remove the Scanner Fixation Member from the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



8. Remove the Scanner Fixation Member from the Maintenance Cover (Upper).

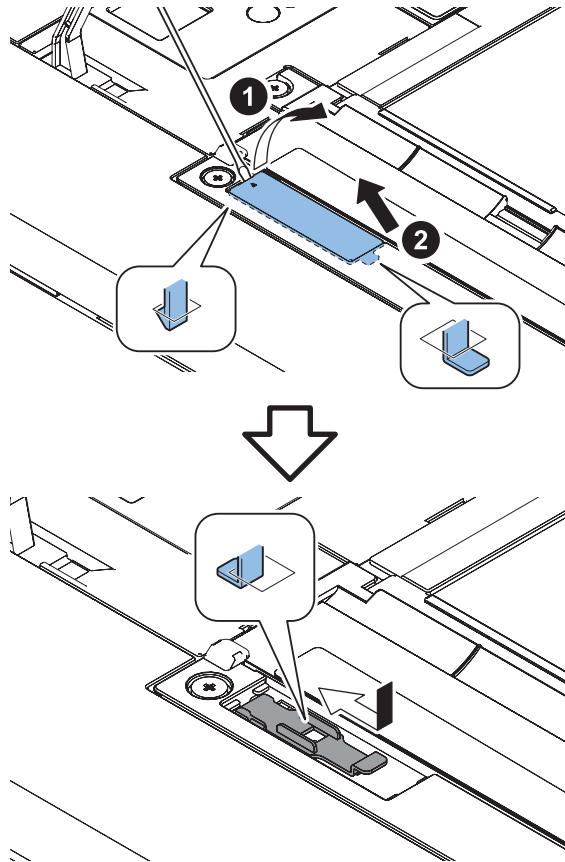




9. Remove the Reader Left Upper Cover and install the Scanner Fixation Member.

NOTE:

Make sure to keep the Reader Left Upper Cover as it will be used again.

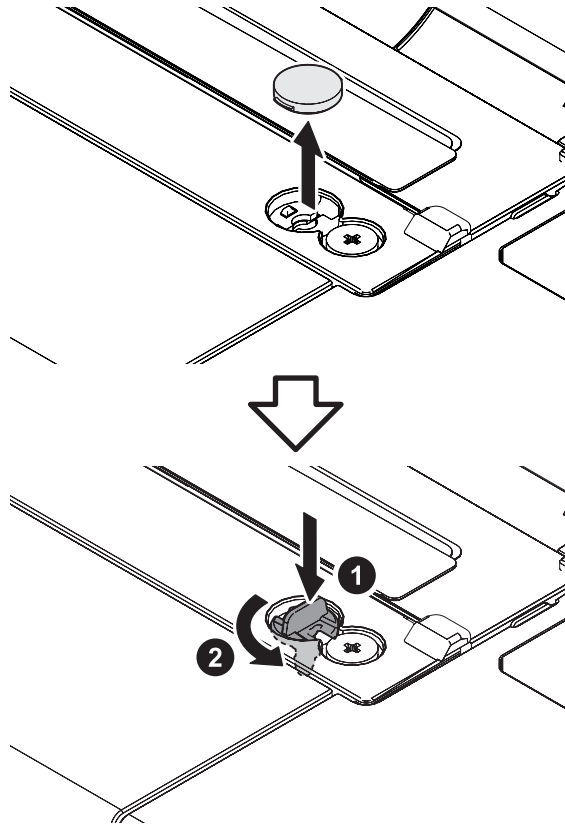




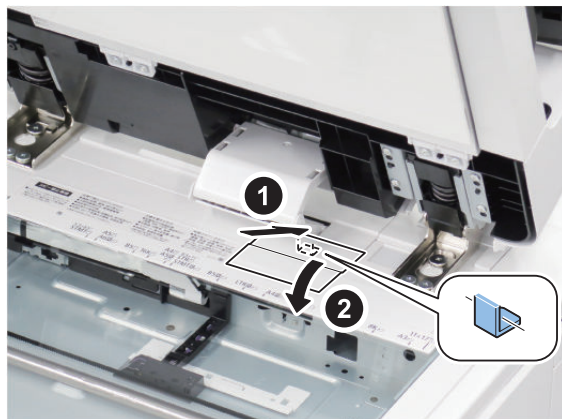
10. Remove the Rubber Cap and install the Scanner Fixation Member.

NOTE:

Make sure to keep the Rubber Cap as it will be used again.

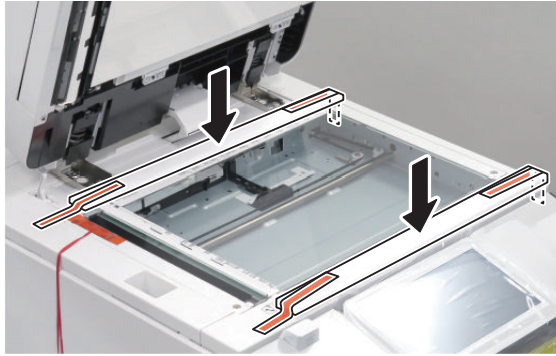


11. Install the Maintenance Cover (Upper).





12. Install the Packing Materials that were removed during installation.

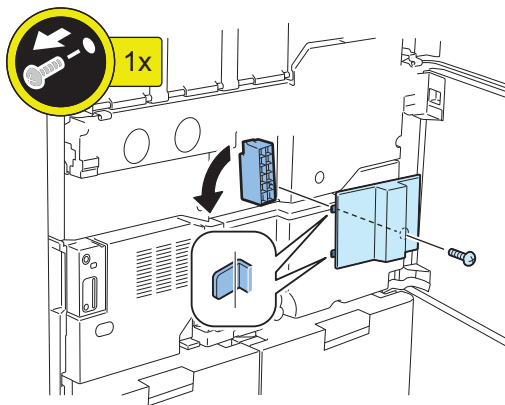


13. Open the Front Cover.



14. Remove the ITB Inner Cover, and turn the ITB Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to release the pressure.

- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions



15. Close the Front Cover.



16. Lower lifters inside the Pickup Decks and cassettes.

1. Pull out all Pickup Decks and cassettes.
2. Confirm that lifters are lowered and close all Pickup Decks and cassettes.

CAUTION:

- Make sure to turn the Main Power OFF and then perform these procedures. If the Main Power is ON, lifters may rise again after closing Pickup Decks and cassettes.
- If the machine is moved with lifters raised, the Lifter Drive Gear may be damaged due to the shaking.



17. Lift the host machine off the floor by turning the 4 adjusters with a screwdriver.



18. When moving the machine, grasp the Handles and move the host machine.

NOTE:

Be careful not to hit the arm of the Upright Control Panel when moving the machine. (If the Upright Control Panel (option) is installed.)



19. At reinstallation after moving the machine, remove the installed packaging material.



20. In the reverse order of the steps 6 to 11, remove the Scanner Fixation Member, and put the Reader Left Upper Cover, the Rubber Cap, and the Maintenance Cover (Upper) back into their original positions.



21. Put the ITB Pressure Release Lever back to the original position to apply pressure and install the ITB Inner Cover. (1 Screw)



22. After turning ON the power, execute ITB neutral position adjustment from the following service mode.

COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INIT-ITB



23. From the following service mode, execute auto registration (image position correction control).

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X



24. Perform image position adjustment and confirm that there is no abnormality in the image.

- [“Image Position Adjustment \(Printer\)” on page 83](#)
- [“Image Position Adjustment \(Single Pass ADF\)” on page 100](#)

When moving the machine by truck

If you need to relocate the machine after installation by truck or other means of transportation, be sure to perform the following work in advance.



1. From the following service mode (Lv.2), move the Scanner Unit to the position to secure.

COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-R > RD-SHPOS



2. Turn OFF the main power switch.

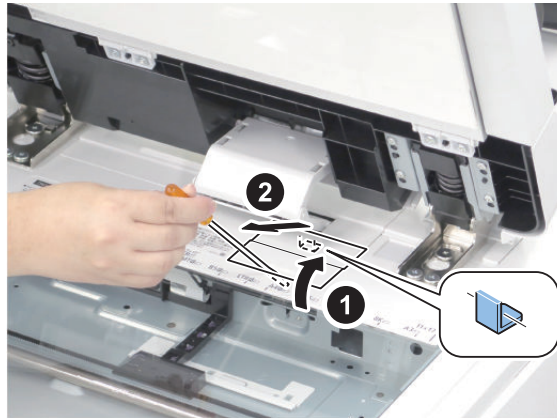
3. Check that the control panel display and the main power lamp are OFF, and then disconnect the power plug.



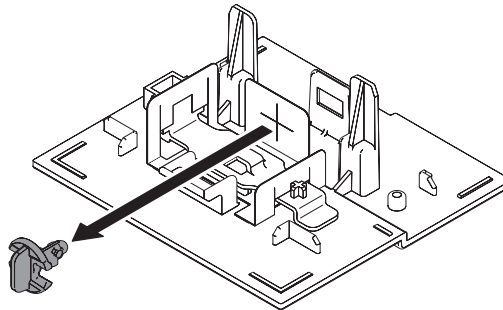
4. Remove the options.



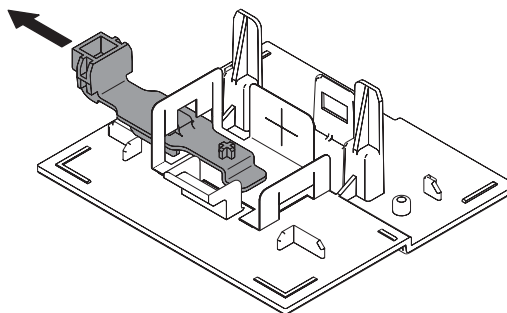
5. Open the DADF, and remove the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



6. Remove the Scanner Fixation Member from the Maintenance Cover (Upper).



7. Remove the Scanner Fixation Member from the Maintenance Cover (Upper).

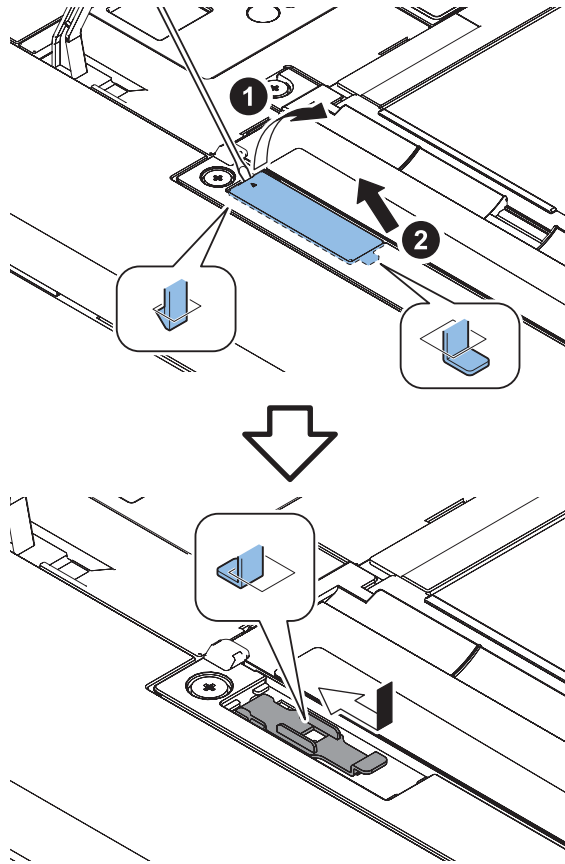




8. Remove the Reader Left Upper Cover and install the Scanner Fixation Member.

NOTE:

Make sure to keep the Reader Left Upper Cover as it will be used again.

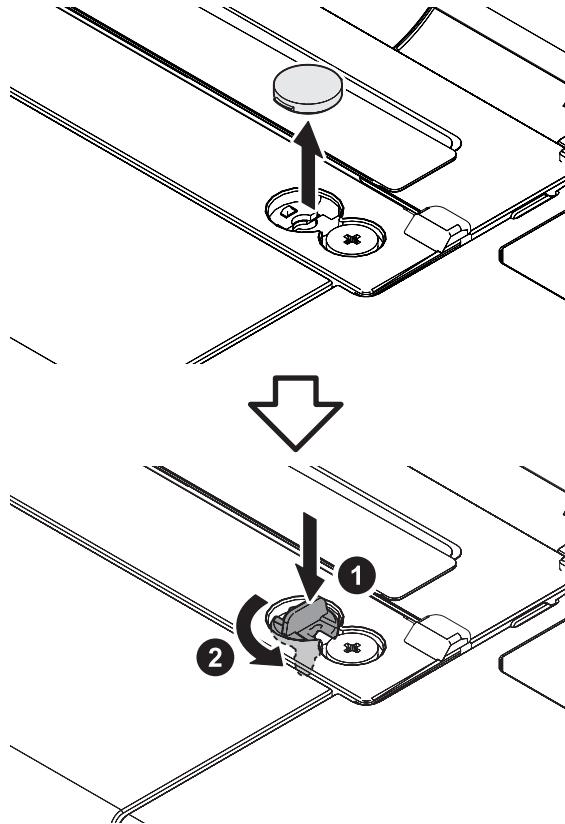




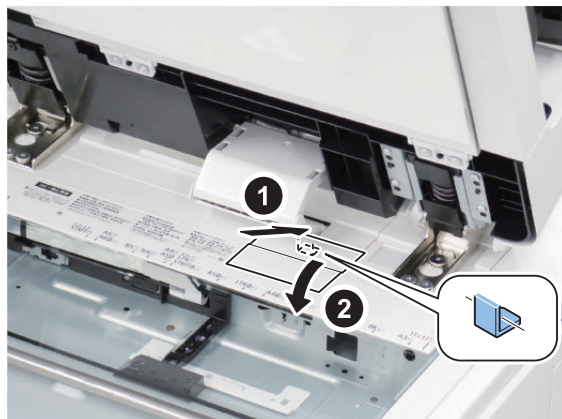
9. Remove the Rubber Cap and install the Scanner Fixation Member.

NOTE:

Make sure to keep the Rubber Cap as it will be used again.

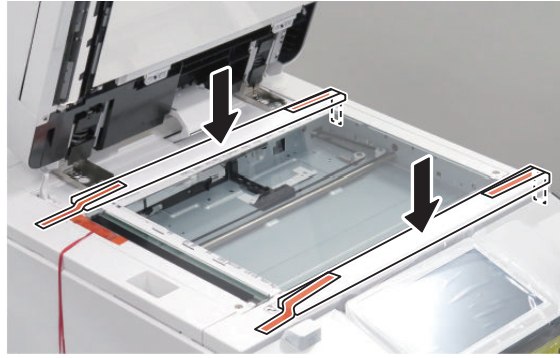


10. Install the Maintenance Cover (Upper).





11. Install the Packing Materials that were removed during installation.

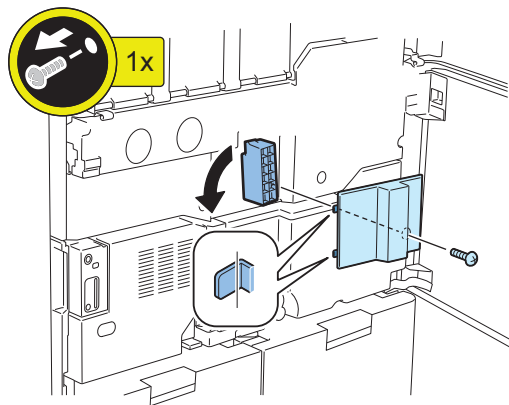


12. Open the Front Cover.



13. Remove the ITB Inner Cover, and turn the ITB Pressure Release Lever in the direction of the arrow to release the pressure.

- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions



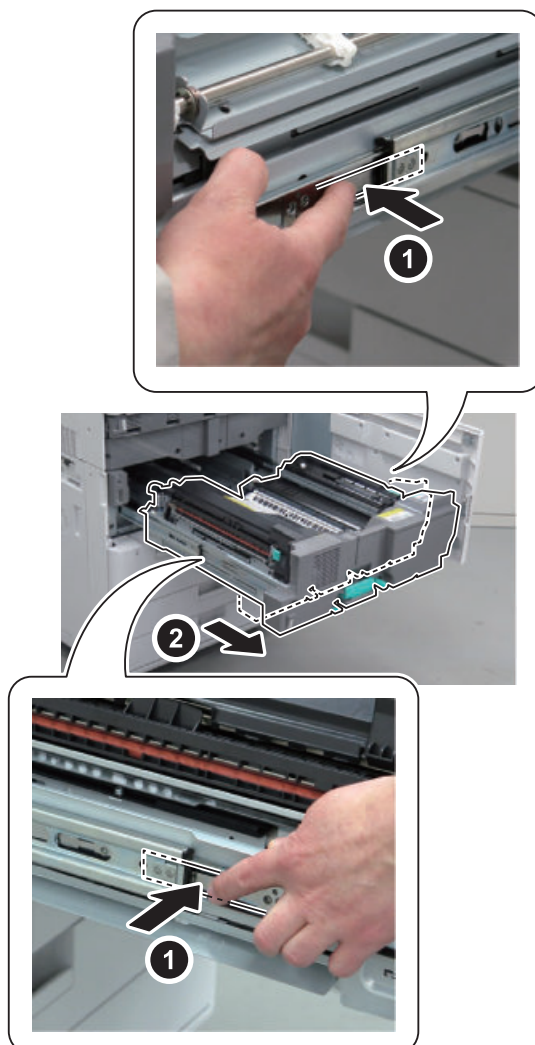
CAUTION:

If this equipment will be moved in simplified packaging using a truck, it is desirable to perform the following steps 14 to 27. It is recommended to attach the Fixation Members that were removed during installation.

-
14. Push the 2 Lock Springs of the Rails (both sides) to release the lock and further pull out the Fixing Feed Unit until it stops.

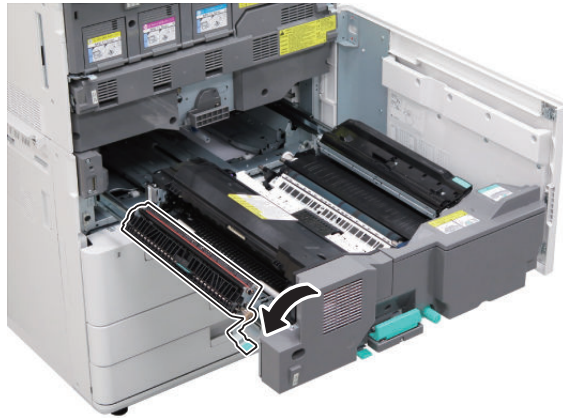
CAUTION:

Do not release the Lock Springs at the rear side of the Rails (both sides); otherwise the Frame of the Fixing Feed Unit can be off.



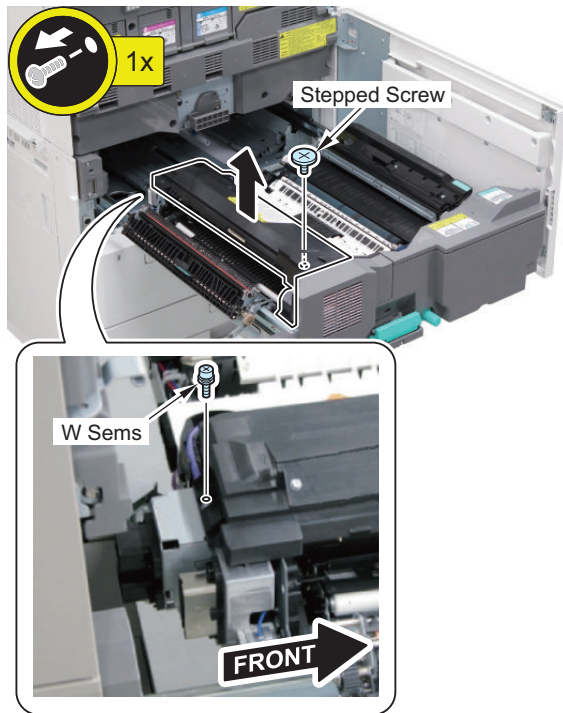


15. Open the Inner Delivery Unit.



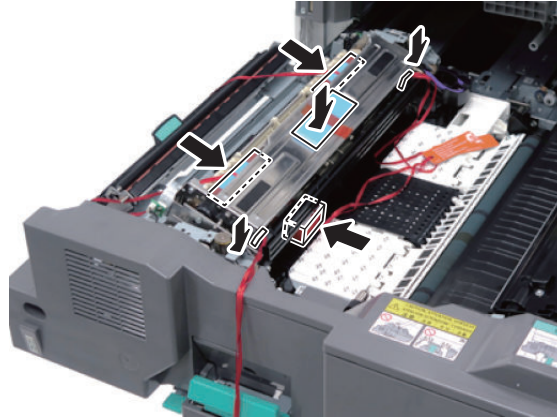
16. Remove the Fixing Upper Cover.

- 1 Stepped Screw
- 1 Screw (W Sems)

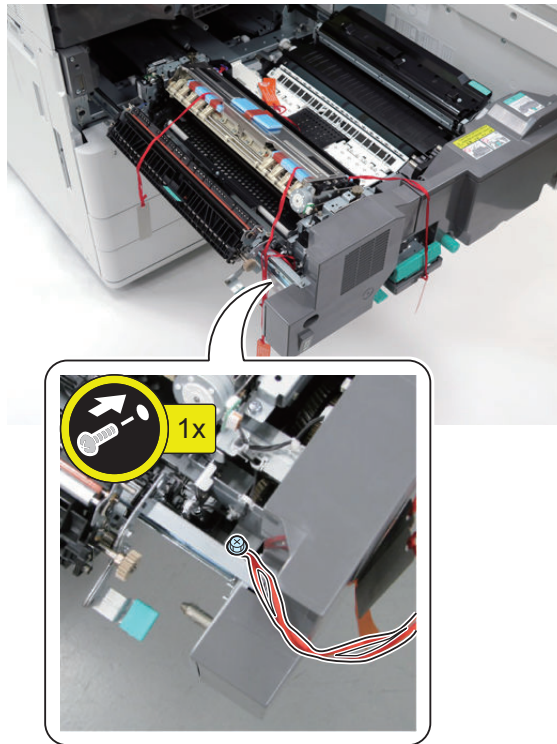




17. Install the 6 Fixing Members that were removed during installation.



18. Install the Stepped Screw (M3x18.5) that was removed during installation.

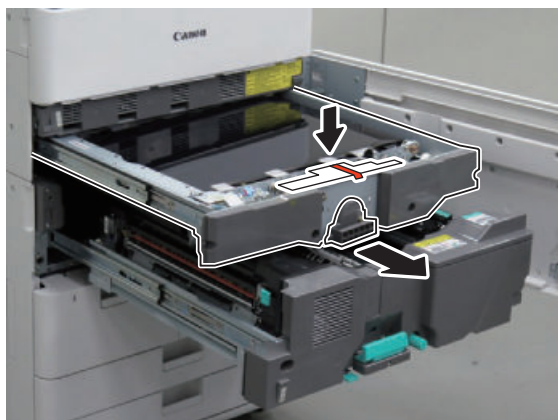


19. Remove the 2 screws of the ITB Frame.





20. Hold the handle to pull out the ITB Unit.
21. Install the Fixing Members that were removed during installation.



22. Close the ITB Unit.
23. Install the 2 screws of the ITB Frame.
24. Install the Fixing Upper Cover. (2 Screws)
25. Close the Inner Delivery Unit.

NOTE:

If any tag is attached to the Fixation Member, move it to outside the cover and secure by tape.

26. Close the Fixing Feed Unit.
27. Close the Front Cover.



28. Lower lifters inside the Pickup Decks and cassettes.
1. Pull out all Pickup Decks and cassettes.
 2. Confirm that lifters are lowered and close all Pickup Decks and cassettes.

CAUTION:

- Make sure to turn the Main Power OFF and then perform these procedures. If the Main Power is ON, lifters may rise again after closing Pickup Decks and cassettes.
- If the machine is moved with lifters raised, the Lifter Drive Gear may be damaged due to the shaking.



29. Lift the host machine off the floor by turning the 4 adjusters with a screwdriver.
30. When moving the machine, grasp the Handles and move the host machine.

CAUTION:

- Be careful not to hit the arm of the Upright Control Panel when moving the machine. (If the Upright Control Panel (option) is installed.)
- It is preferable to remove and pack the Upright Control Panel in a package box to move the machine. (If the Upright Control Panel (option) is installed.)
- When moving by a truck, it is recommended to tape and secure all movable locations (all doors and Upright Control Panel Arm).

-
- 31. At reinstallation after moving the machine, remove the installed Fixing Members and Stepped Screw.**
-
- 32. In the reverse order of the steps 5 to 10, remove the Scanner Fixation Member, and put the Reader Left Upper Cover, the Rubber Cap, and the Maintenance Cover (Upper) back into their original positions.**
-
- 33. Put the ITB Pressure Release Lever back to the original position to apply pressure and install the ITB Inner Cover. (1 Screw)**
-
- 34. After turning ON the power, execute ITB neutral position adjustment from the following service mode.**
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > INIT-ITB
-
- 35. From the following service mode, execute auto registration (image position correction control).**
COPIER > FUNCTION > MISC-P > AT-IMG-X
-
- 36. Perform image position adjustment and confirm that there is no abnormality in the image.**
- [“Image Position Adjustment \(Printer\)” on page 83](#)
 - [“Image Position Adjustment \(Single Pass ADF\)” on page 100](#)



Image Reading System Options

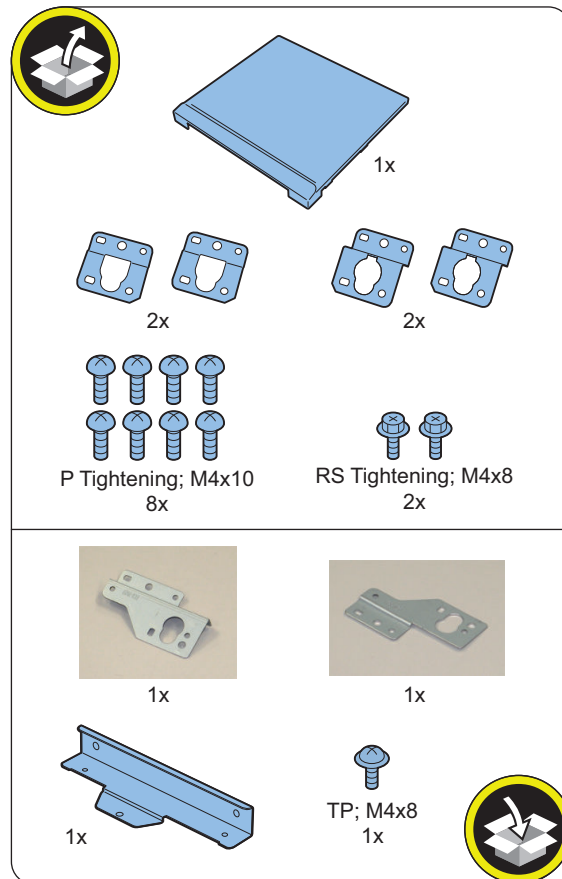
Printer Cover-H2.....	134
Reader Heater-P1.....	160

Printer Cover-H2

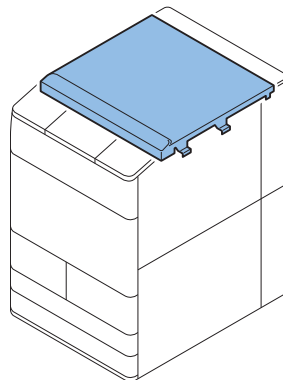
Points to Note before Installation

- After installation of the Printer Cover, be sure to change the setting of the following service mode to "0" before turning OFF the power of the host machine. Otherwise, an error may occur when turning ON the power.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR
- When delivery system options are installed, be sure to disconnect them from the host machine.
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing

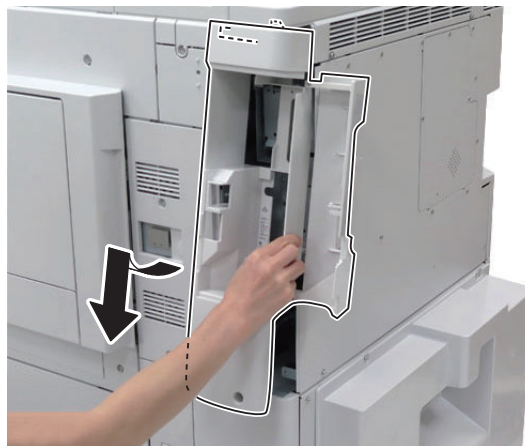
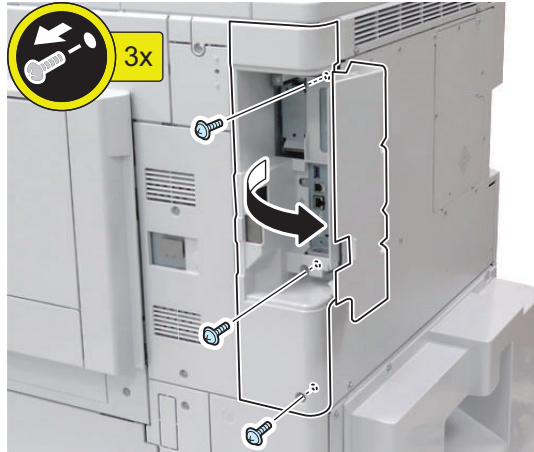


Installation Procedure

■ Removing the Covers

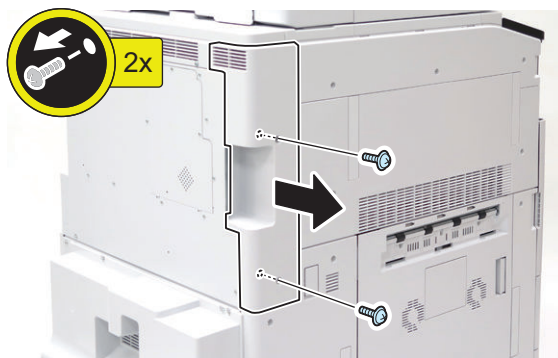
□

1.

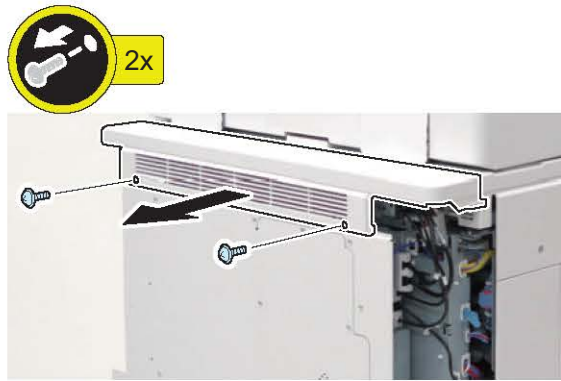


□

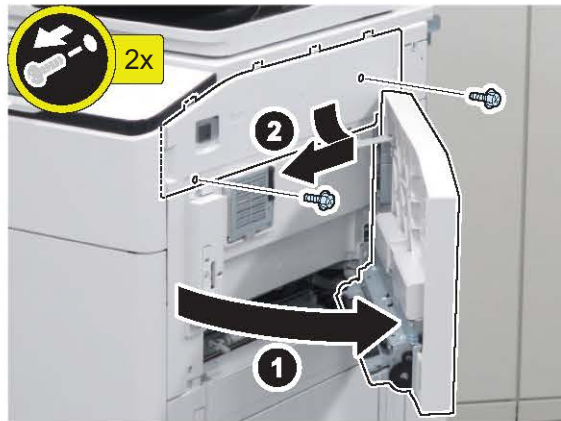
2.



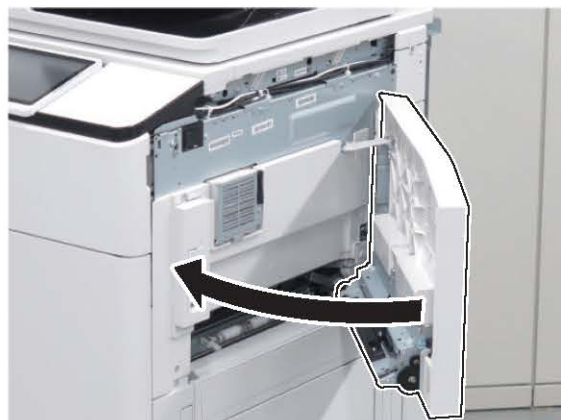
□
3.



□
4.

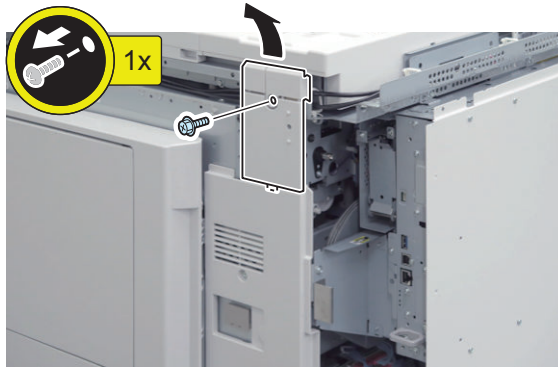


□
5.

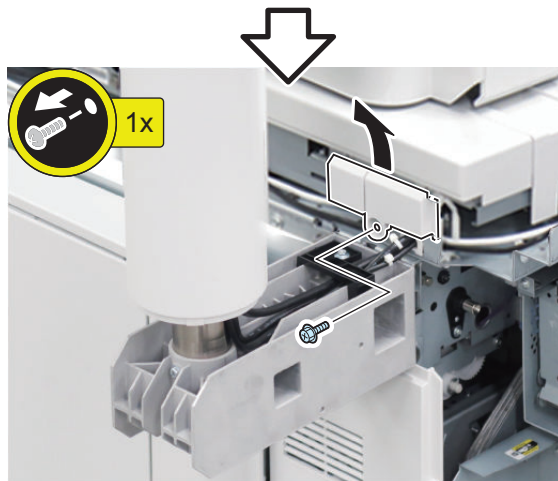
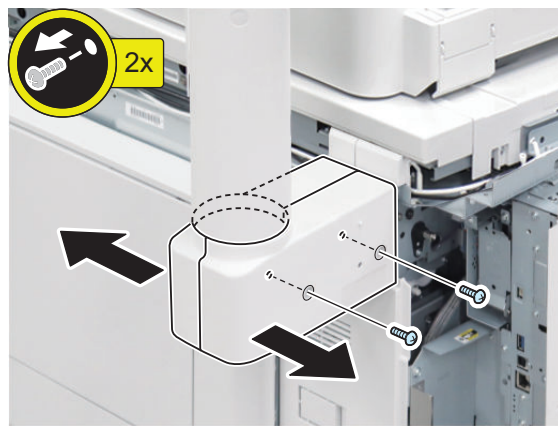


□
6.

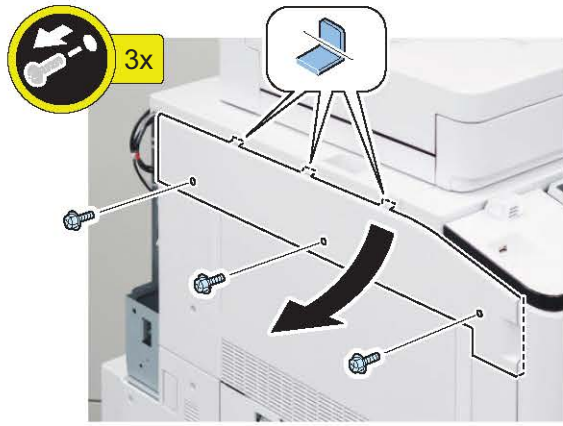
< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >



< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >



□
7.

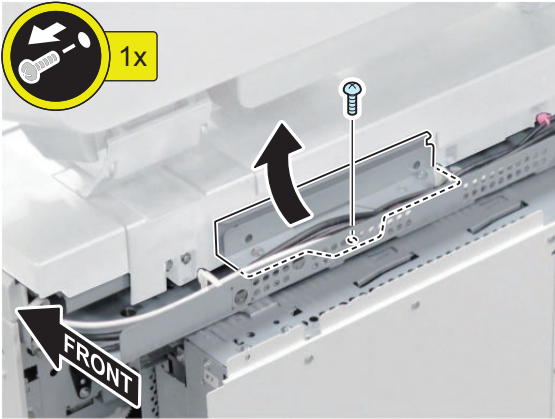


■ Removing the ADF

□
1.

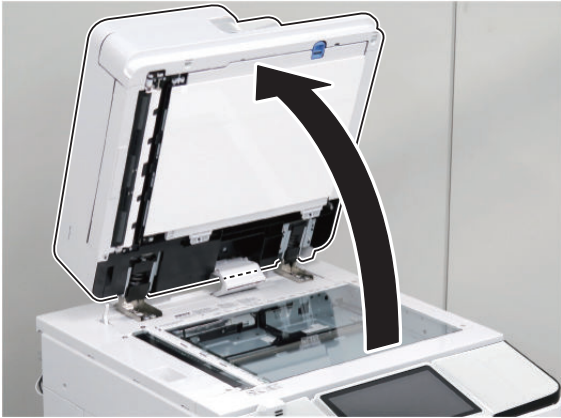


□
2.



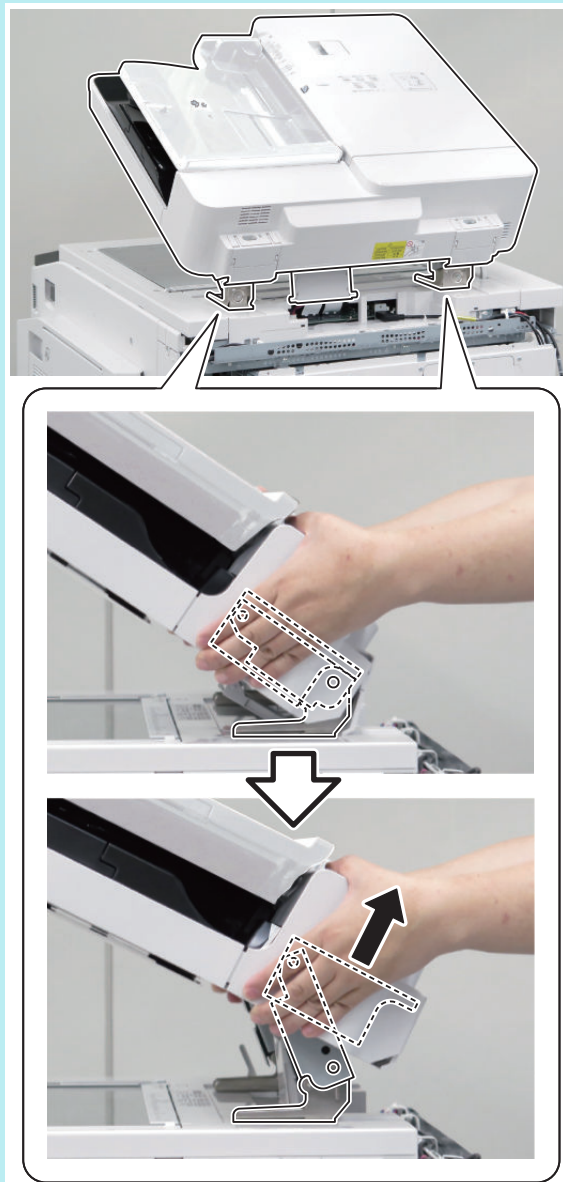
NOTE:
Removed parts will be used in step 6 of "Installing the Printer Cover".

□
3.

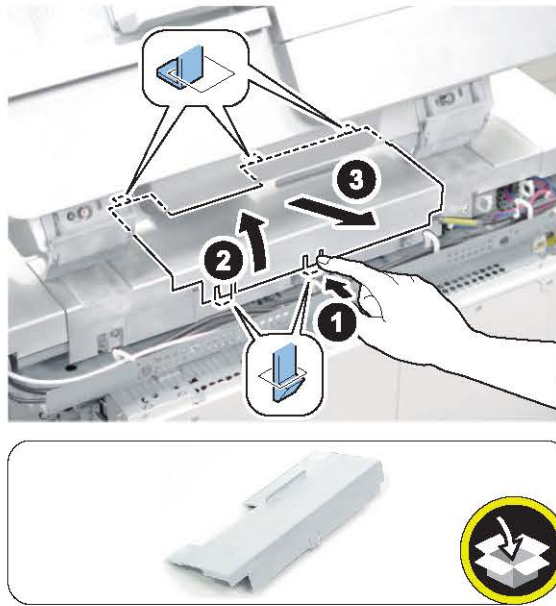


NOTE:

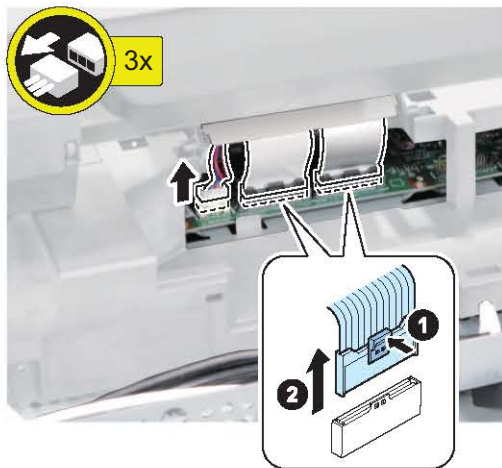
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy.
The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



□
4.



□
5.

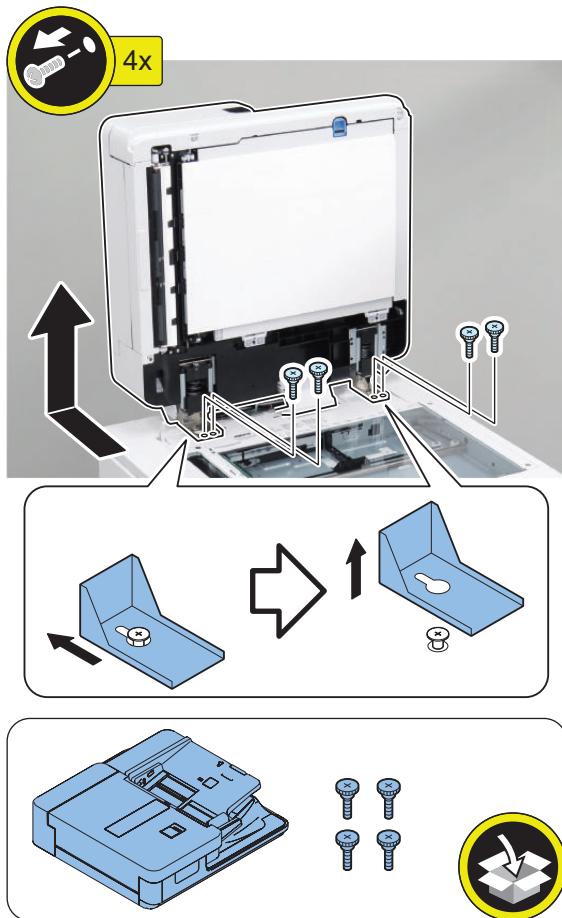


□
6.



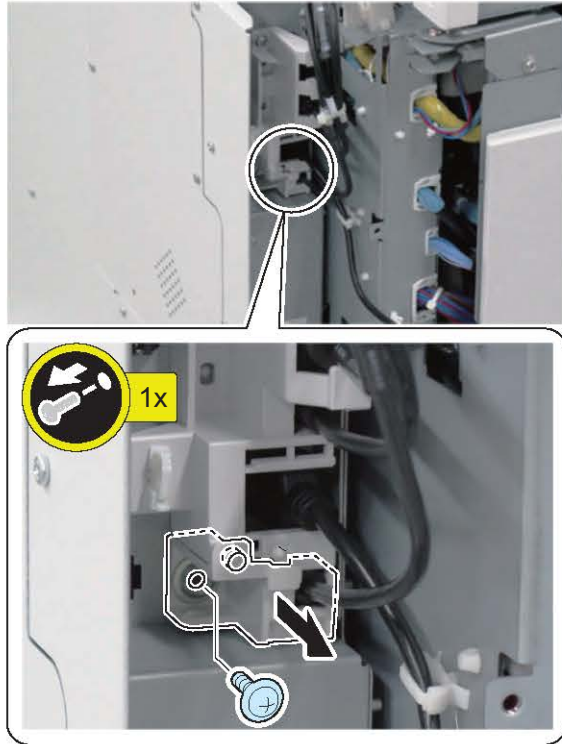
□
7.

⚠ CAUTION:
Be careful not to drop the ADF.

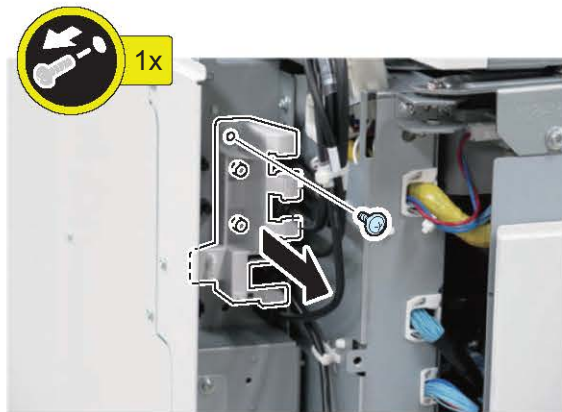


■ Removing the Reader Unit

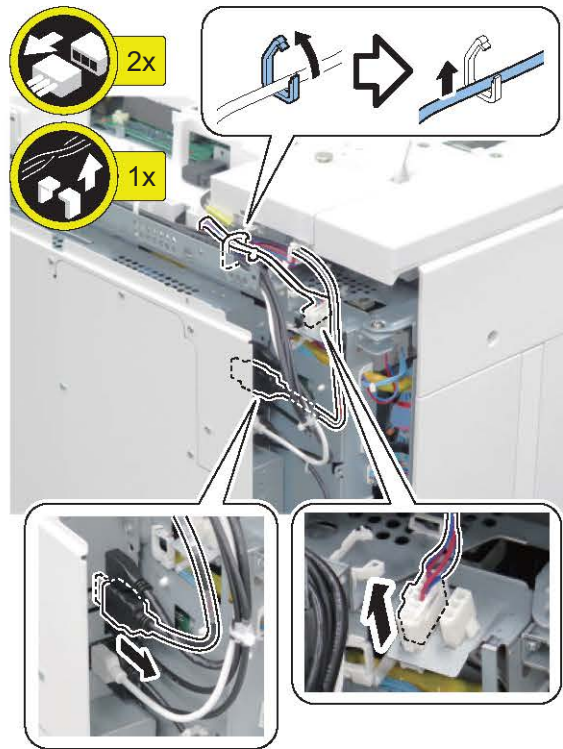
□
1.



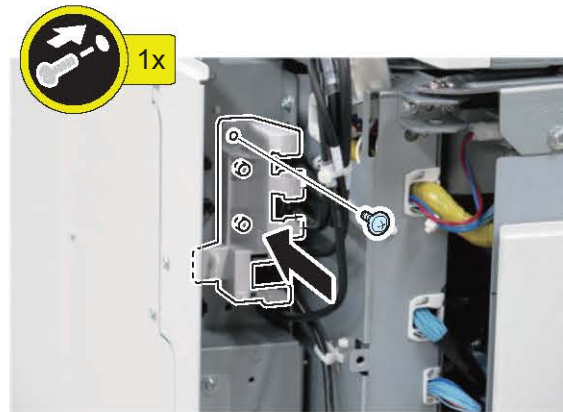
□
2.



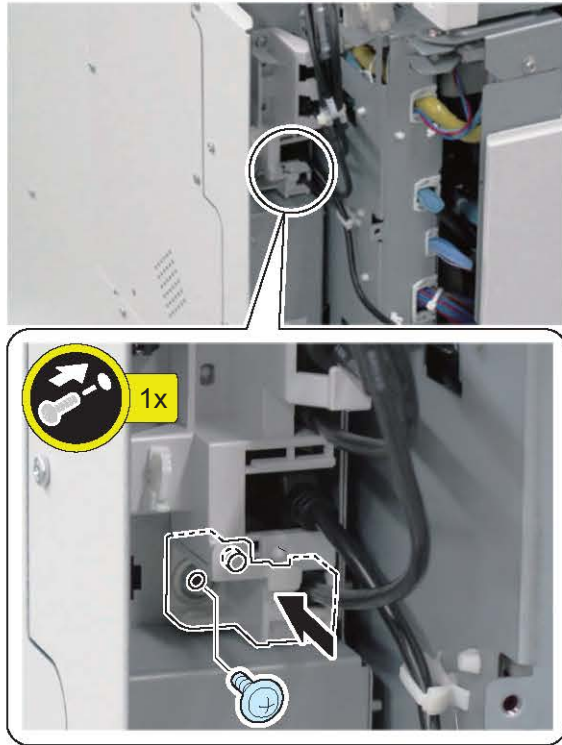
□
3.



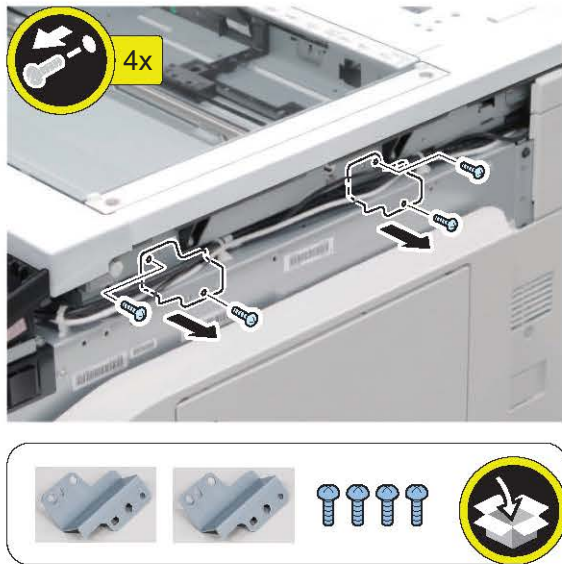
□
4.



□
5.



□
6.



□
7.



NOTE:
Removed 2 screws will be used in step 4 of "Installing the Printer Cover".

□
8.



■ Installing the Printer Cover

□
1.

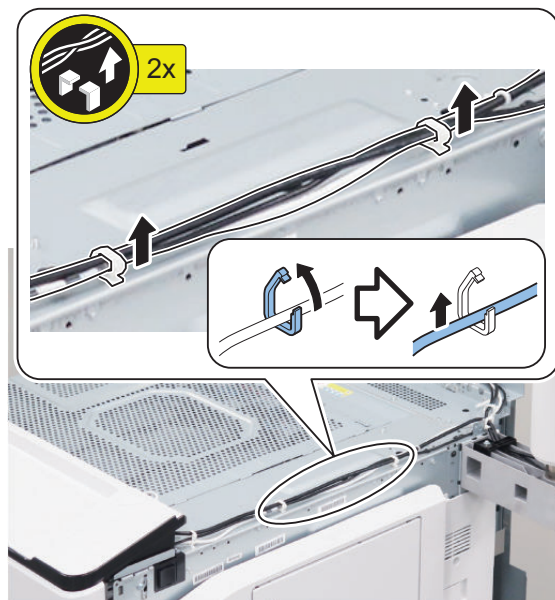
NOTE:

In order to make it easy to install the Reader Fixation Plate R, untie the two parts shown in the figure and loosen the cable.

< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >

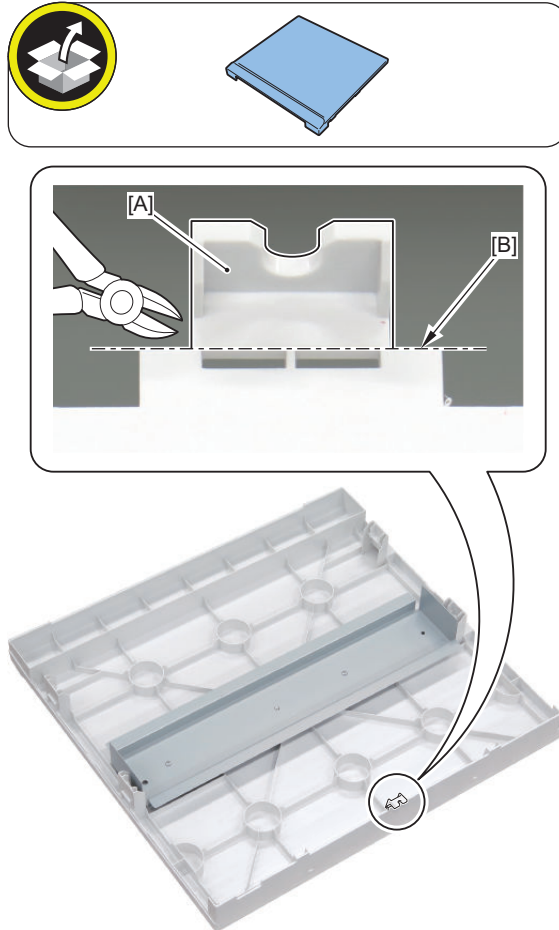


< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >

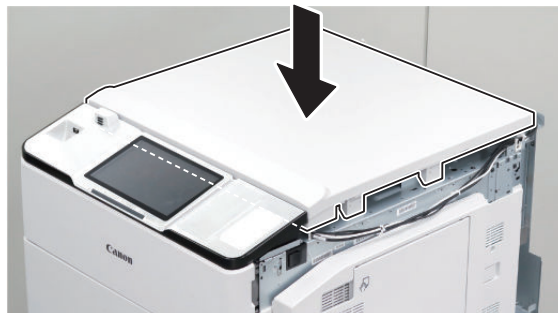


□
2.**NOTE:**

- Cut off the [A] part of the Printer Cover with nippers by using the edge part [B] as a guide.
- Be sure not to make burrs.

□
3.**CAUTION:**

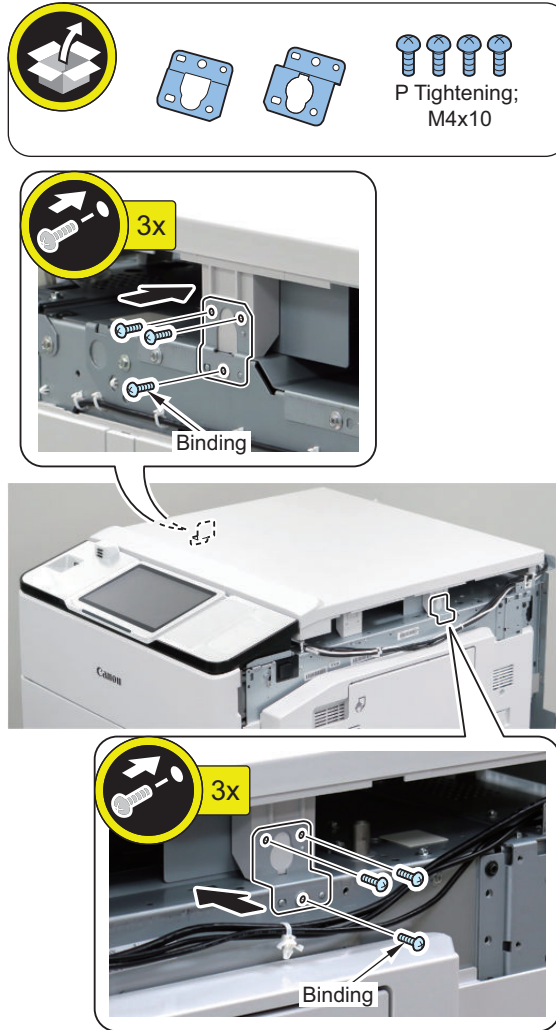
When placing the Printer Cover, be careful not to trap cables on the rear side of the host machine.



□
4.

NOTE:
Use 2 binding screws removed in step 7 of "Removing the Reader Unit".

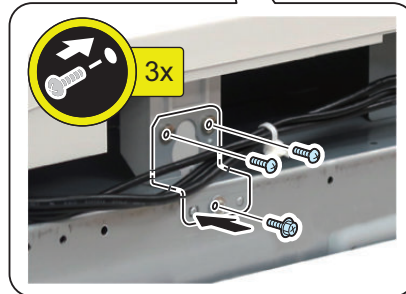
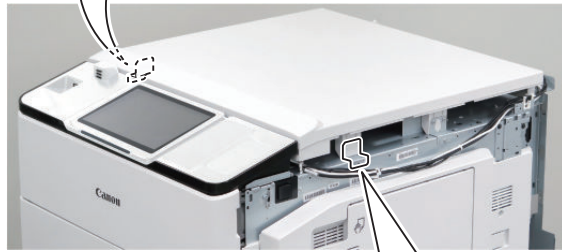
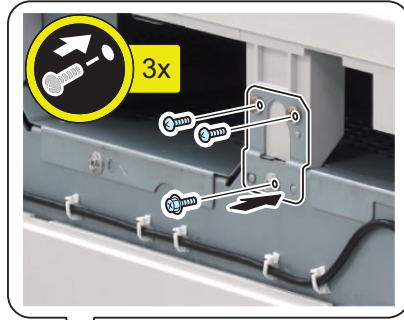
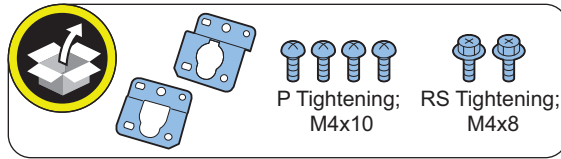
CAUTION:
Be careful not to trap cables on the right side of the host machine at installation.



□
5.

CAUTION:

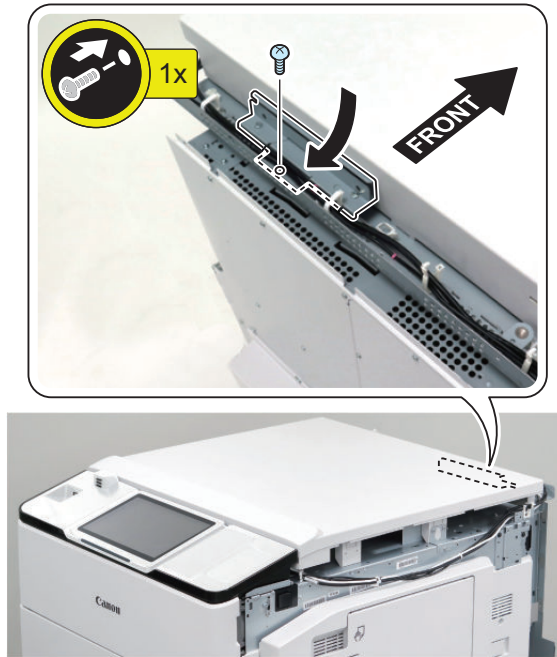
Be careful not to trap cables on the right side of the host machine at installation.



□
6.

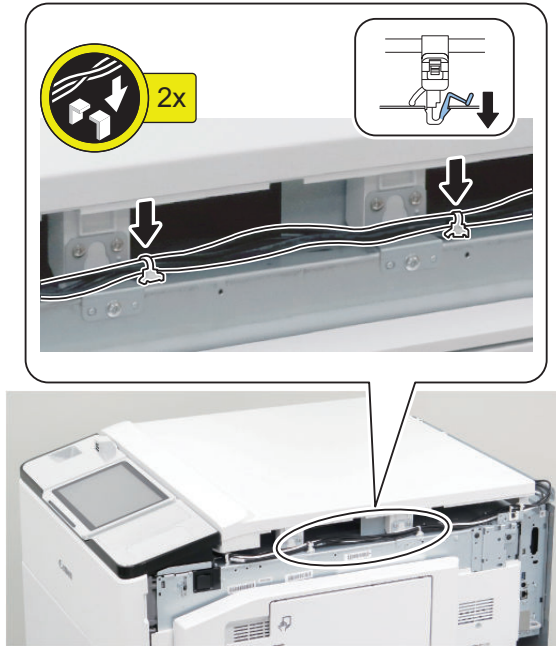
NOTE:
Use parts removed in step 2 of "Removing the ADF".

CAUTION:
Be careful not to trap cables on the rear side of the host machine at installation.

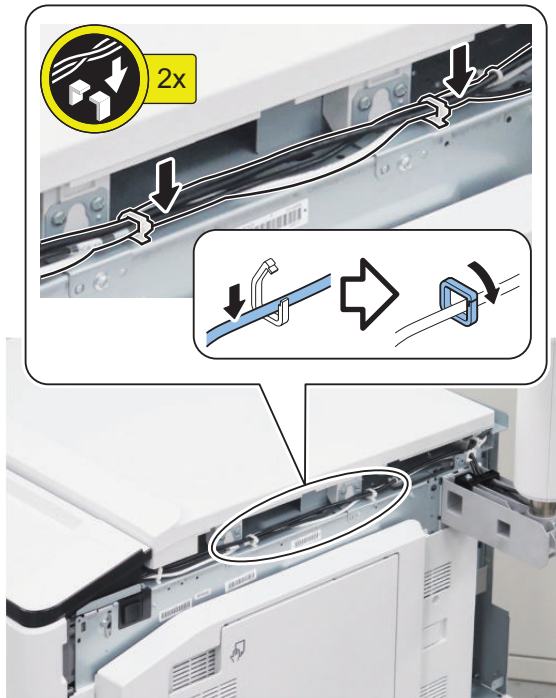


□
7.

< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >



< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >



■ Installing the Covers

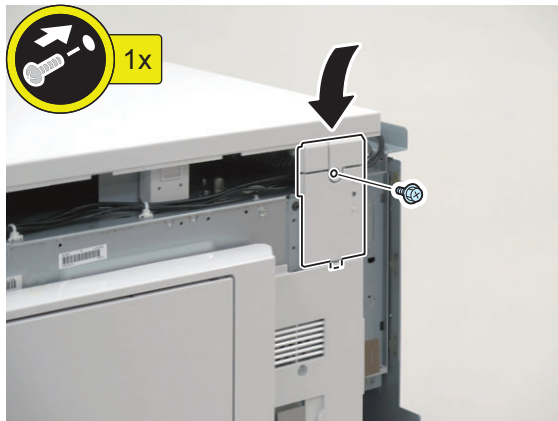
□

1.

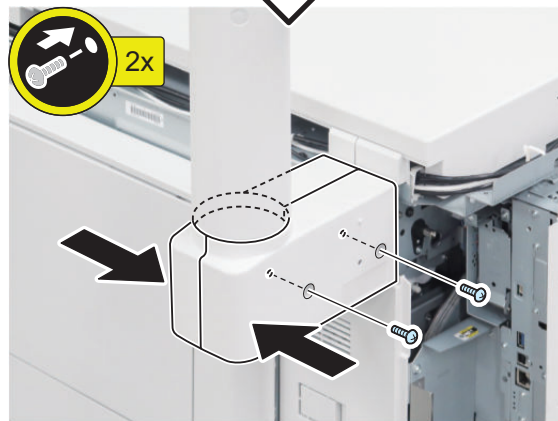
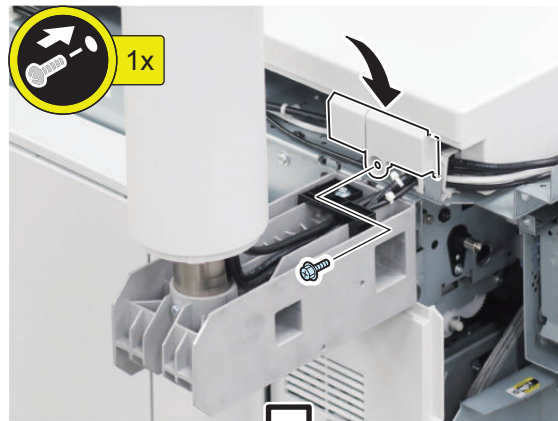


□
2.

< In the Case of Flat Control Panel >



< In the Case of Upright Control Panel >



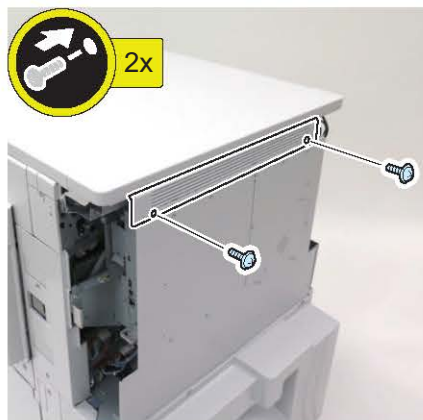
□
3.



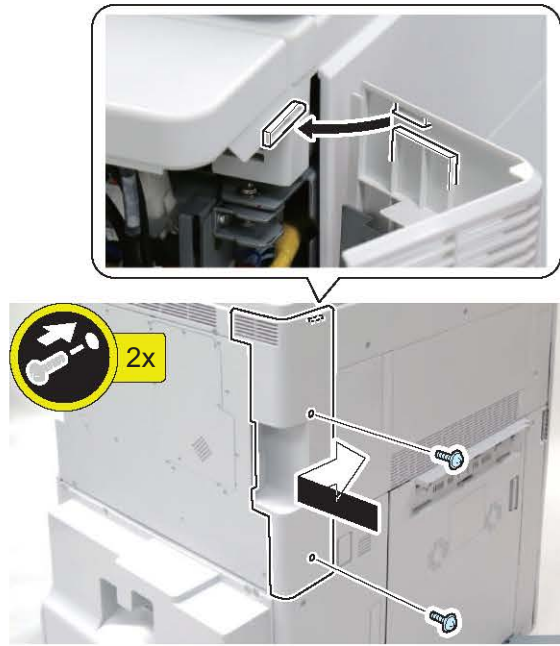
□
4.



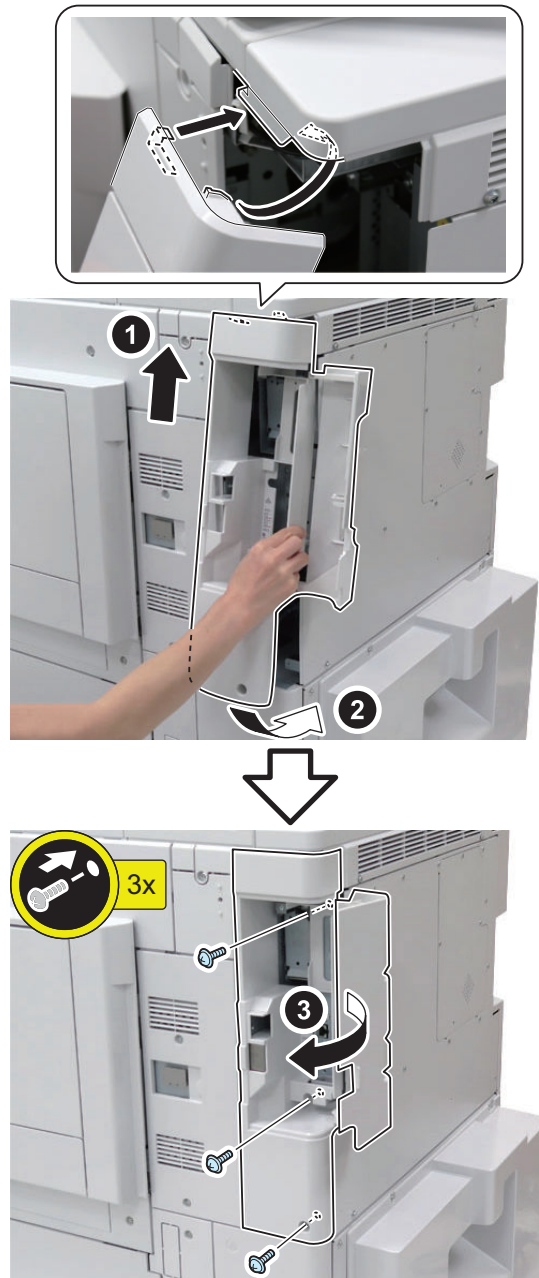
□
5.



□
6.



□
7.



● Operation Check

□

1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

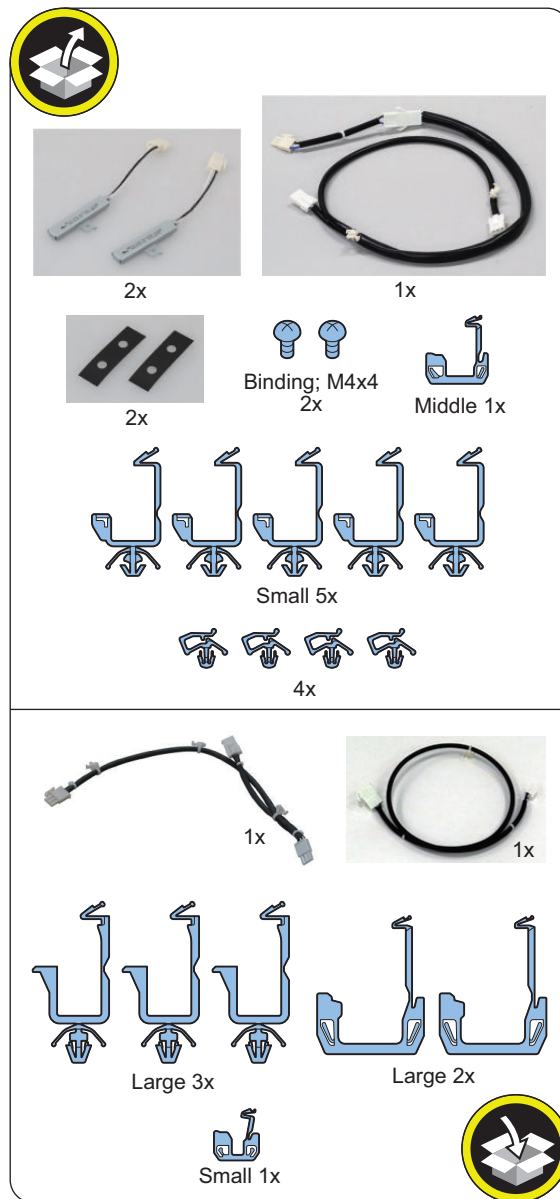
If "E732-0023" is displayed after turning ON the main power switch, turn OFF and then ON the main power switch, and then perform the following steps.

3. The message confirming the cable connection of the Reader Unit is displayed.
4. Set "0" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/SCNR

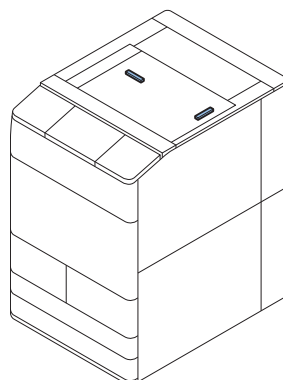
5. **Exit service mode.**
6. **Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.**

Reader Heater-P1

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing

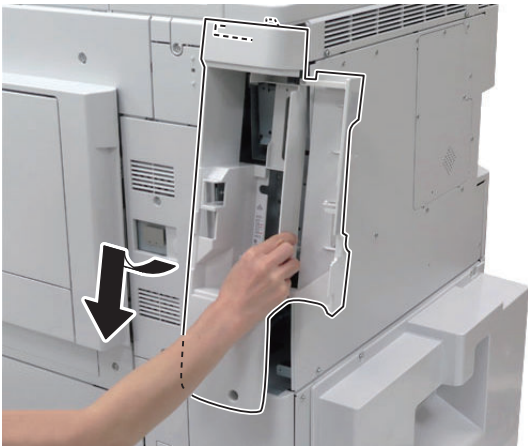
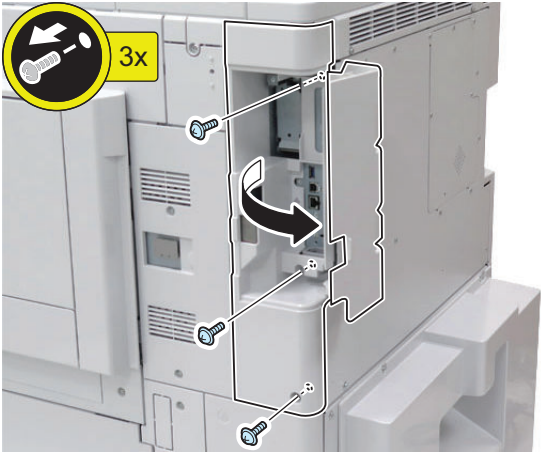


Installation Procedure

■ Removing the Covers

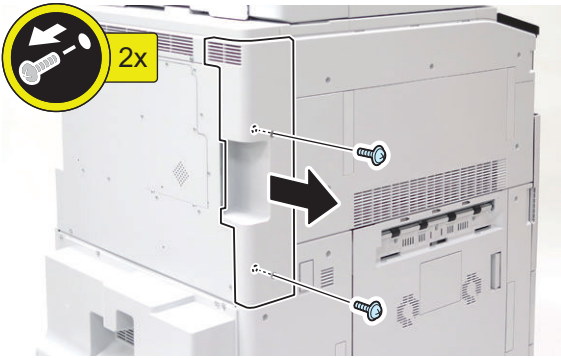
□

1.

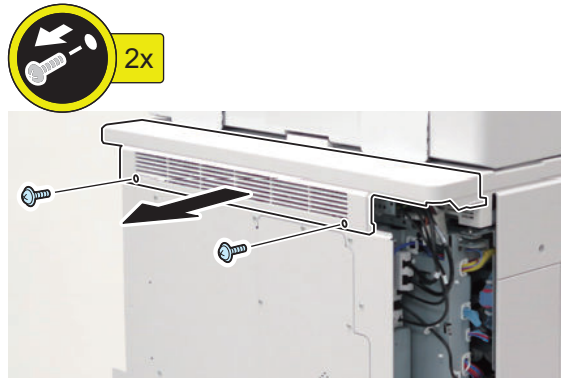


□

2.

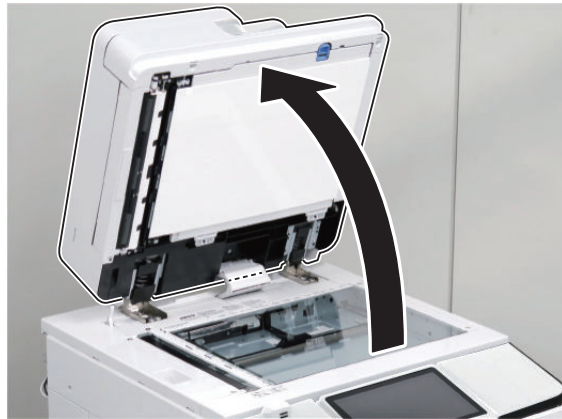


□
3.

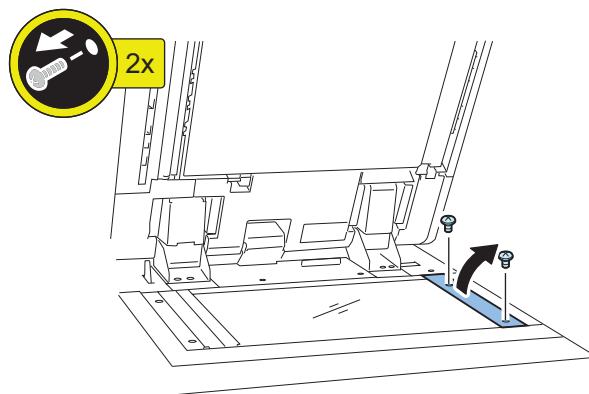


■ **Installing the Reader Heater**

□
1.

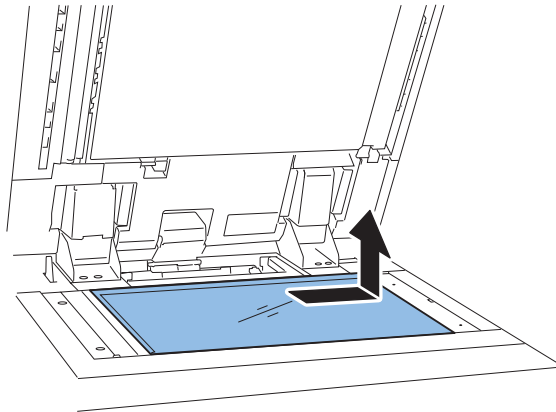
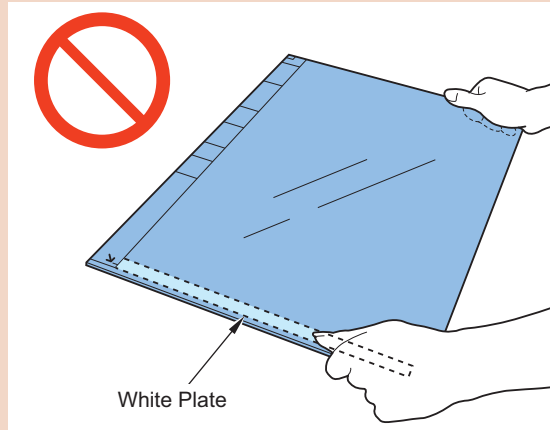
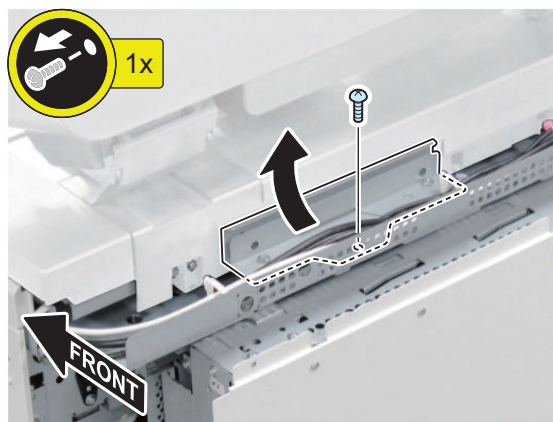


□
2.



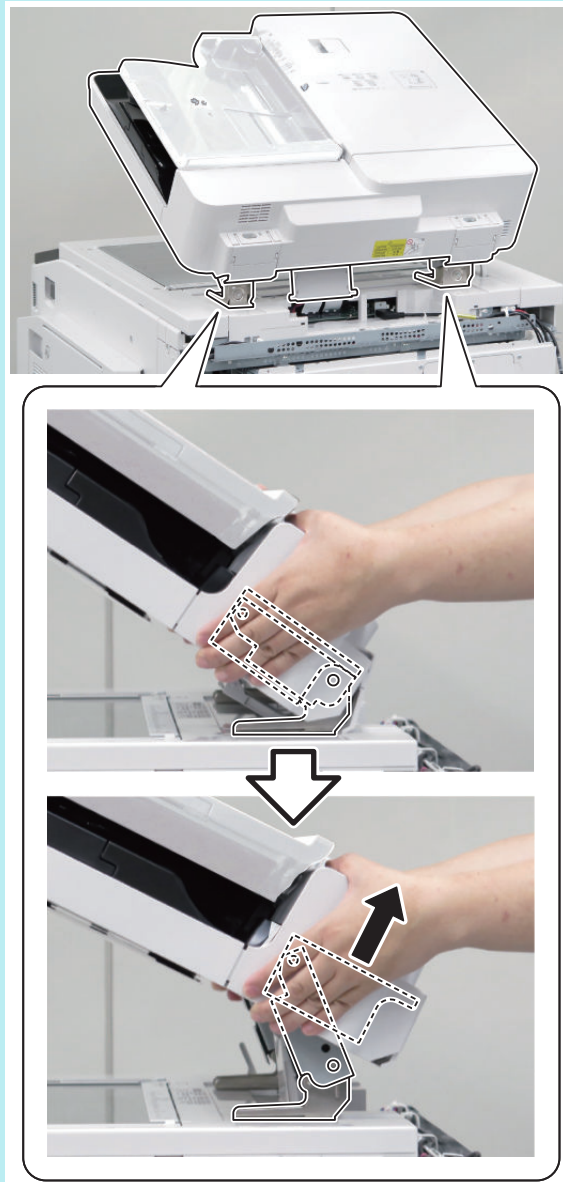
□
3.**CAUTION:**

- Soiling on the glass surface and the White Plate affects reading. When removing or installing the Copyboard Glass, be sure not to touch the glass surface and the White Plate.
- If soiling is attached, clean it with lint-free paper.

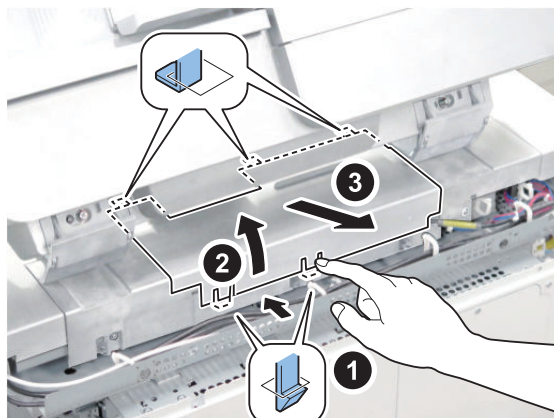
□
4.

NOTE:

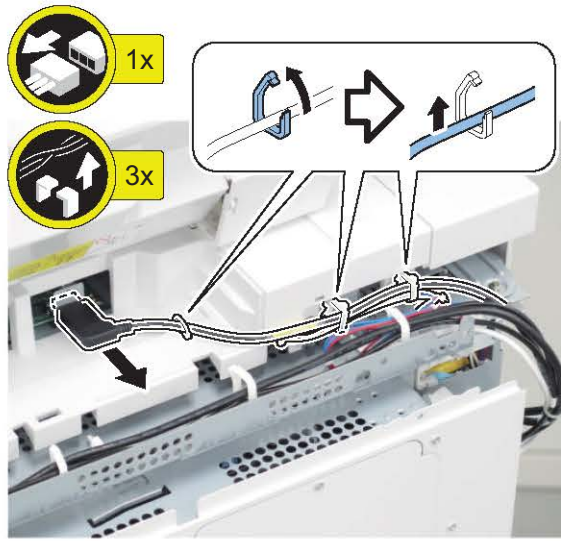
When performing following procedures, using ADF in the book mode as necessary makes the work easy.
The book mode is released by opening the ADF.



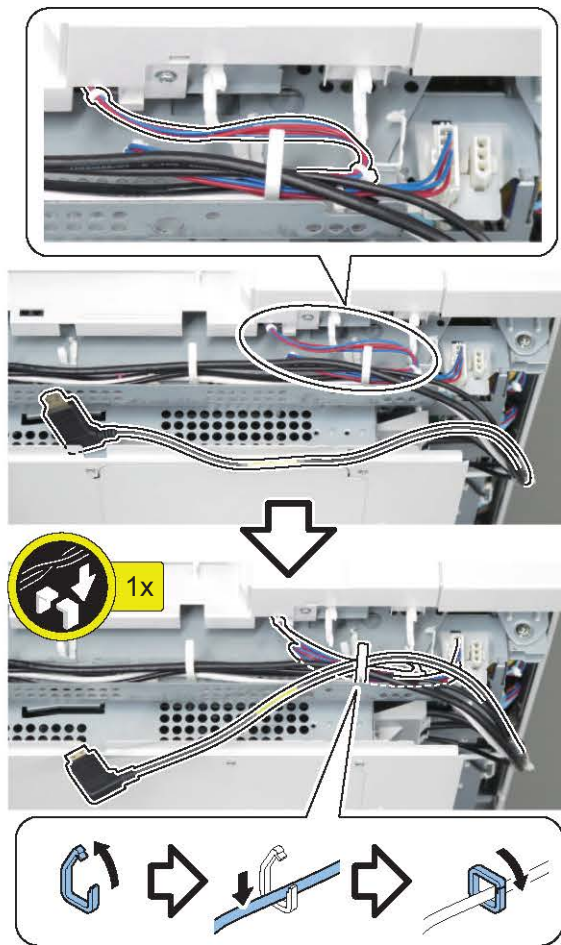
□
5.



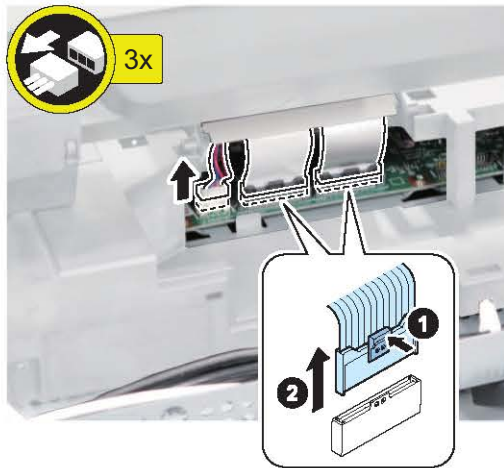
□
6.



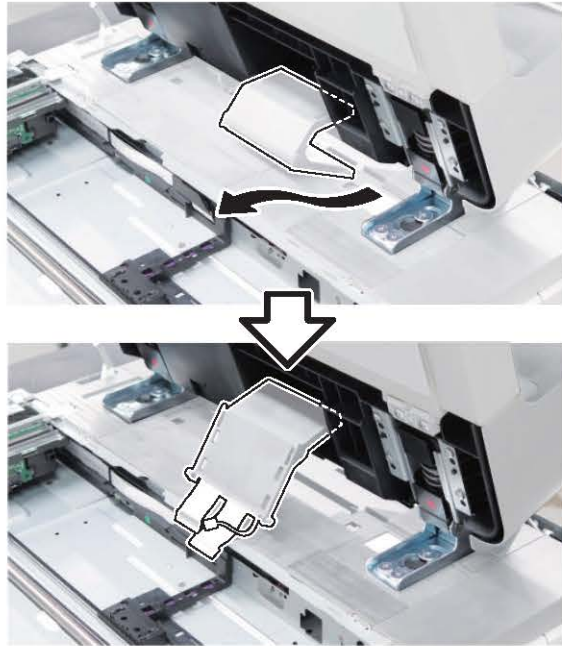
□
7.



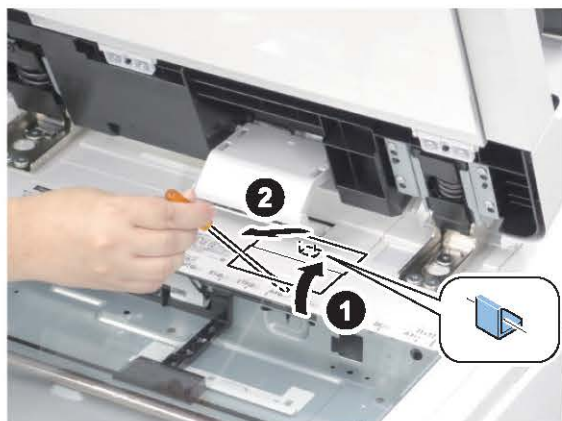
□
8.



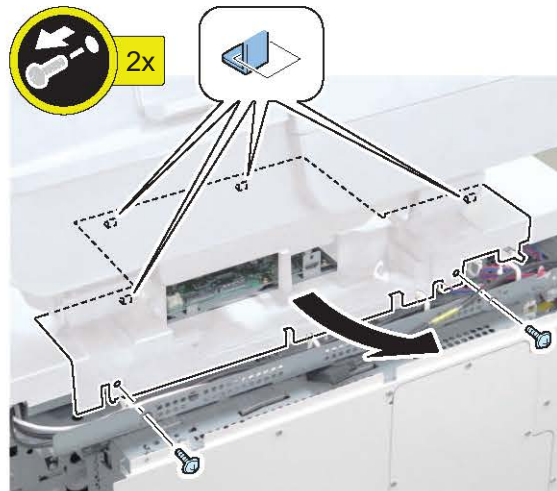
□
9.



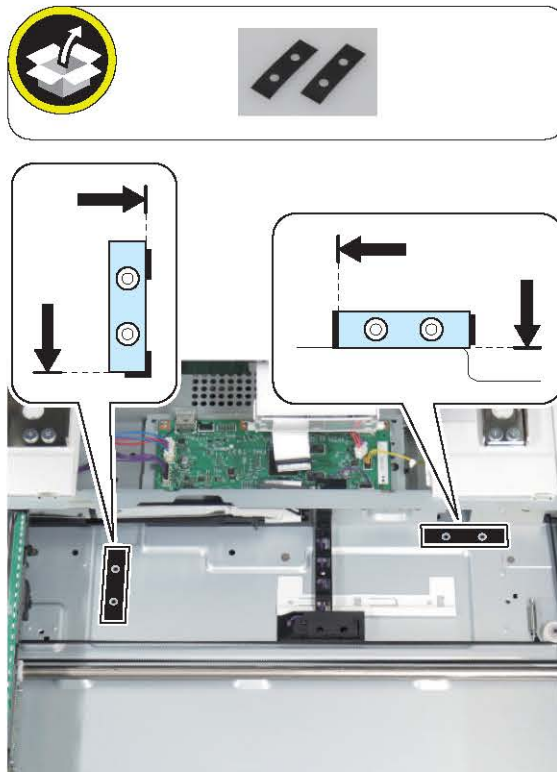
□
10.



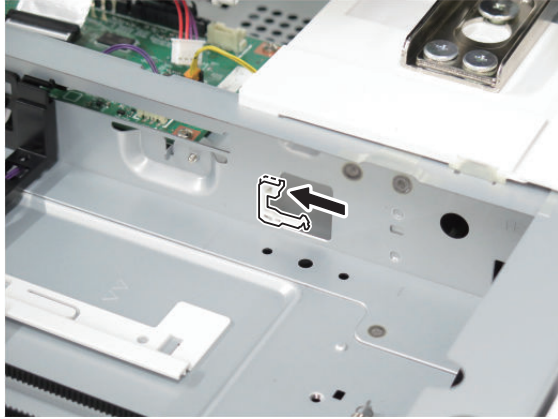
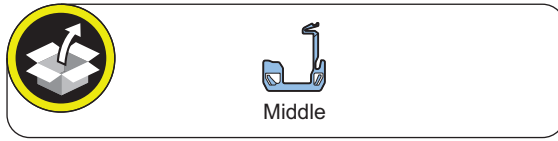
□
11.



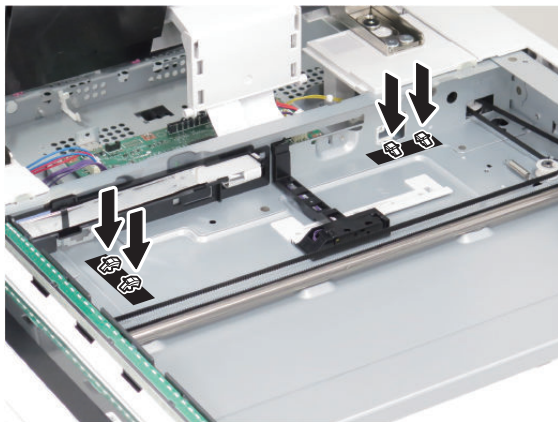
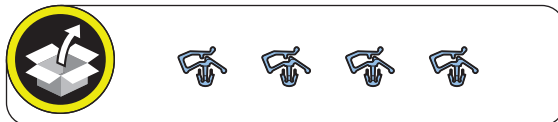
□
12.



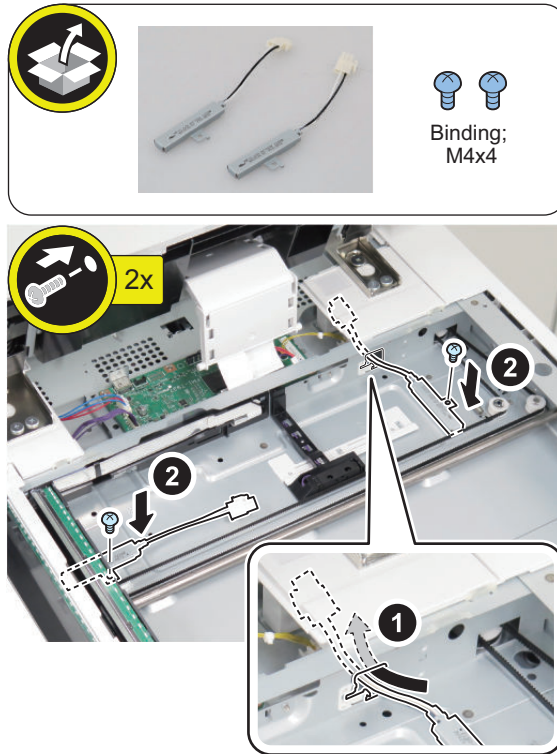
□
13.



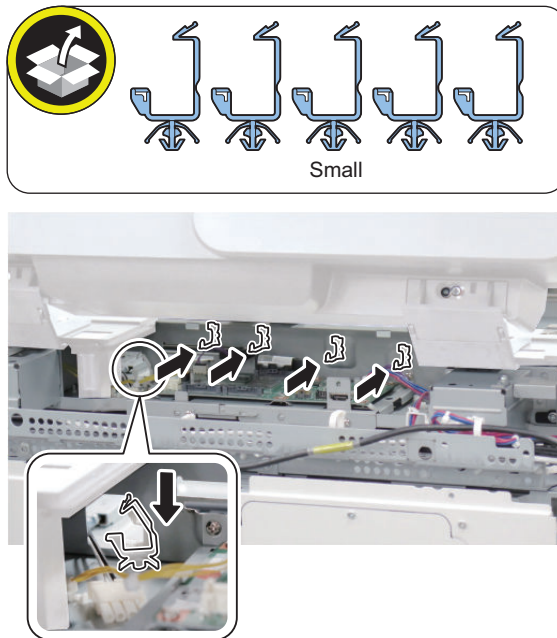
□
14.



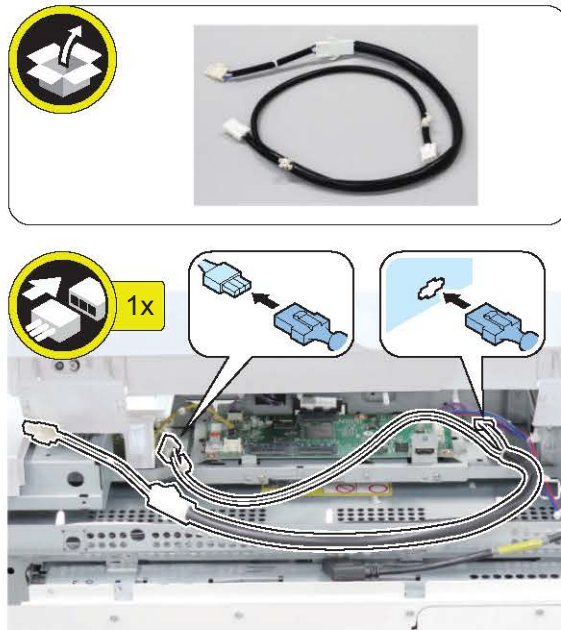
□
15.



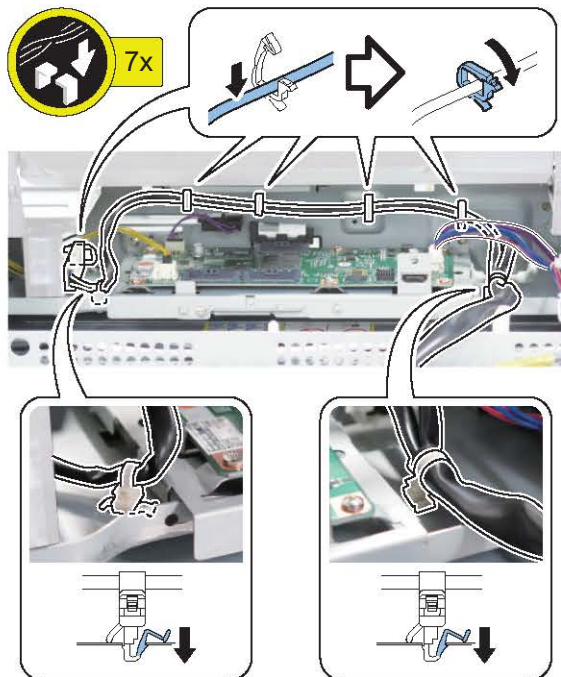
□
16.



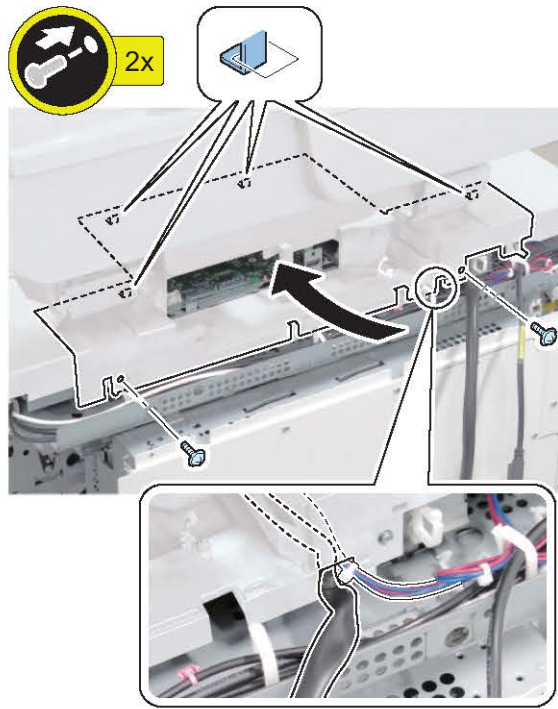
□
17.



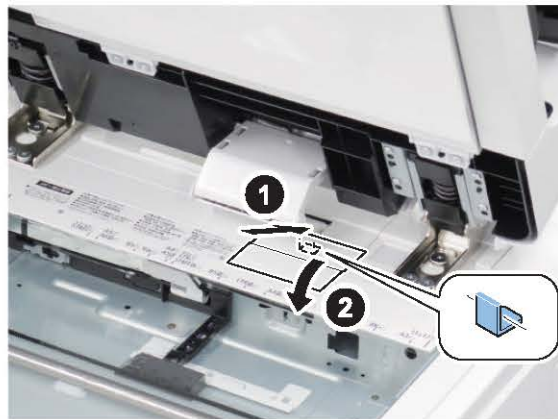
□
18.



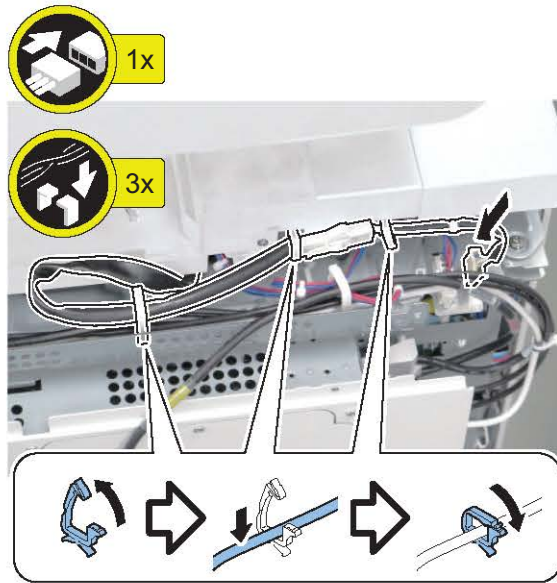
□
19.



□
20.

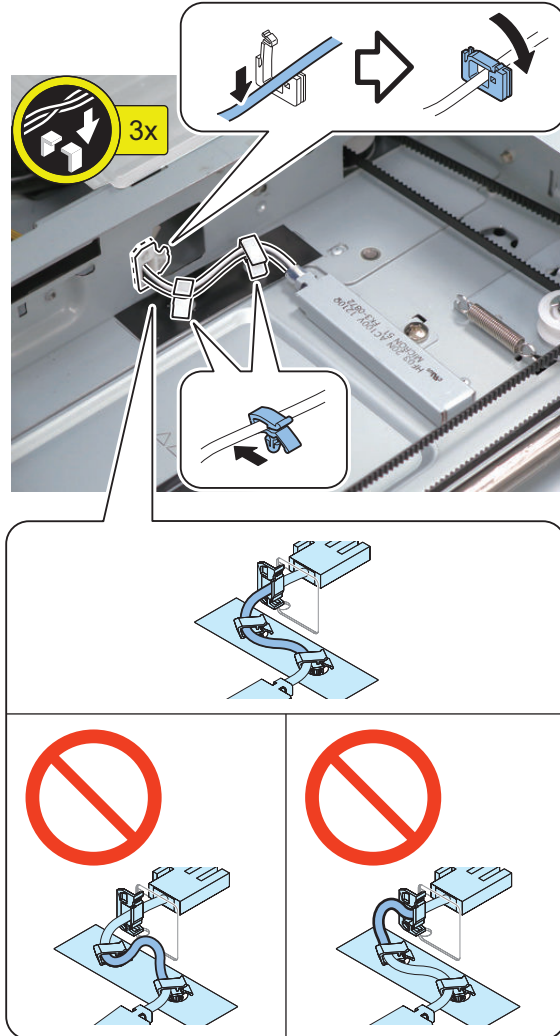


□
21.



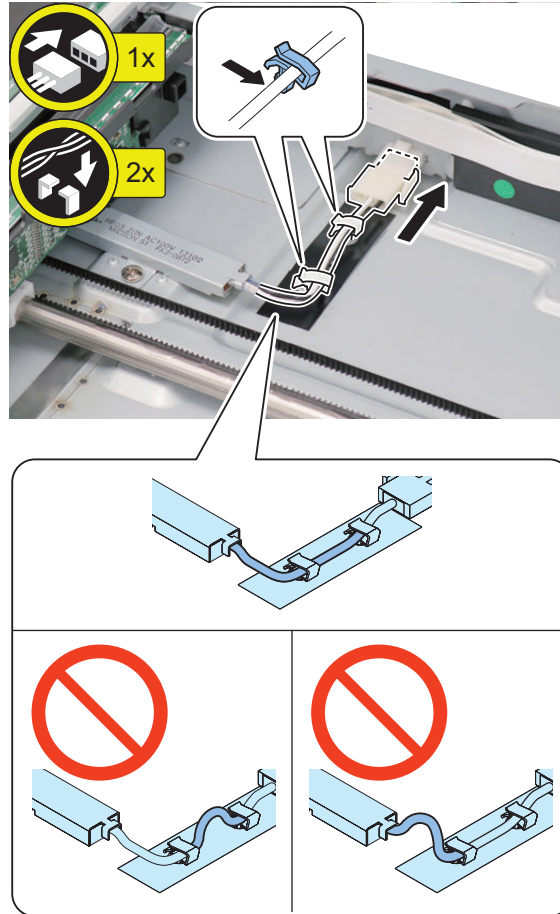
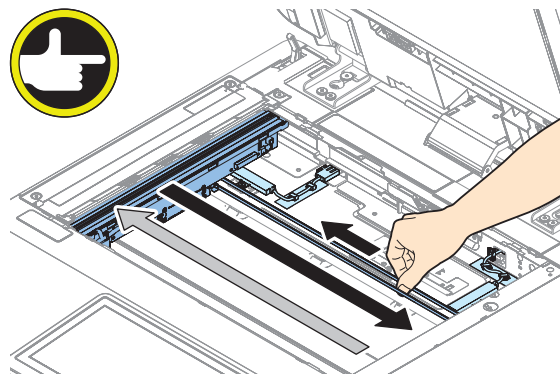
□
22.**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold down the Reader Heater Harness because it may interfere with moving of the Scanner Box if it is not connected properly.



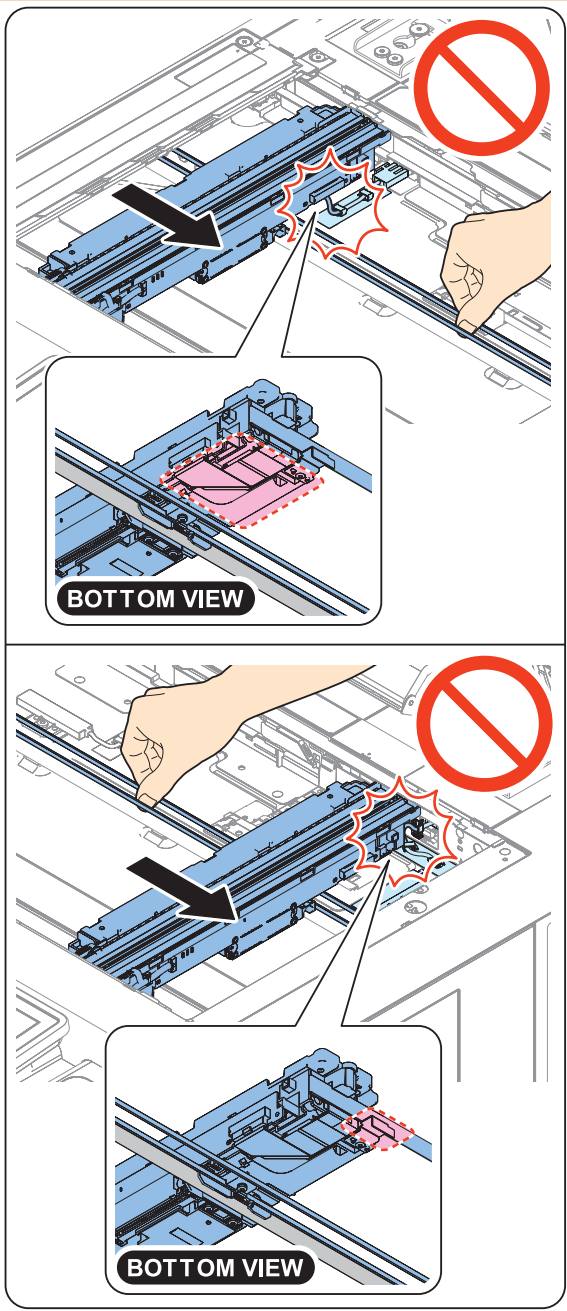
□
23.**CAUTION:**

Be sure to hold down the Reader Heater Harness because it may interfere with moving of the Scanner Box if it is not connected properly.

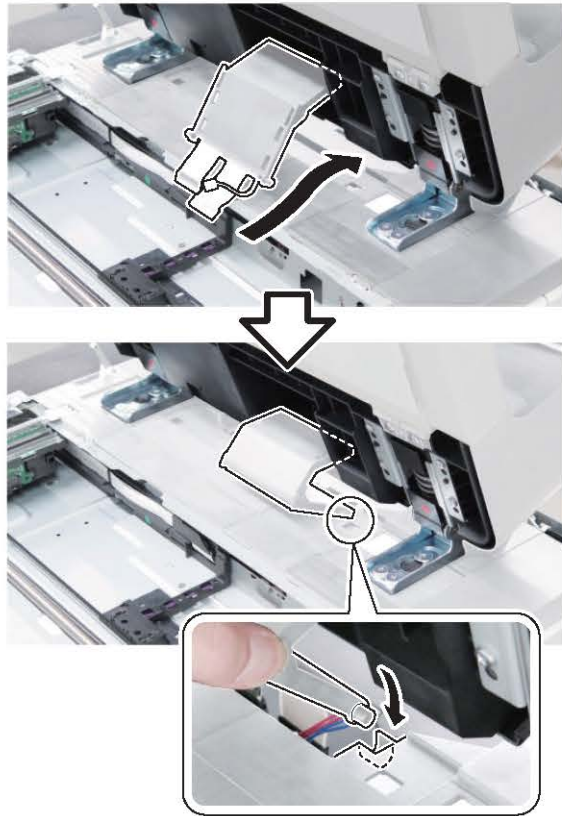
□
24.

CAUTION:

Move the Scanner Box to the right edge, and check if the underside of the Scanner Box and the HP Sensor Flag Plate do not interfere with the Reader Heater harness.



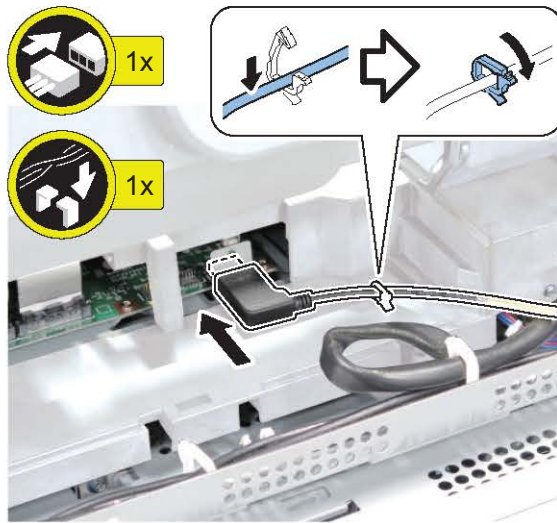
□
25.



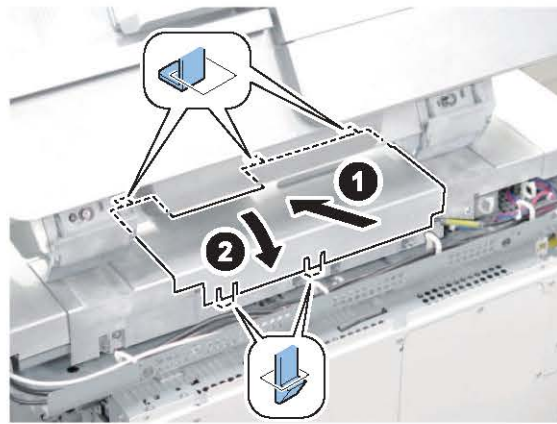
□
26.



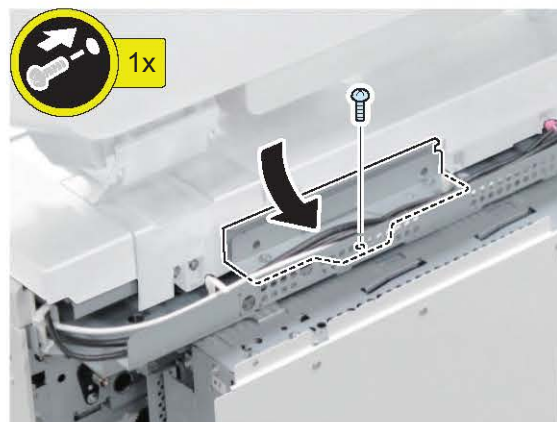
□
27.



□
28.

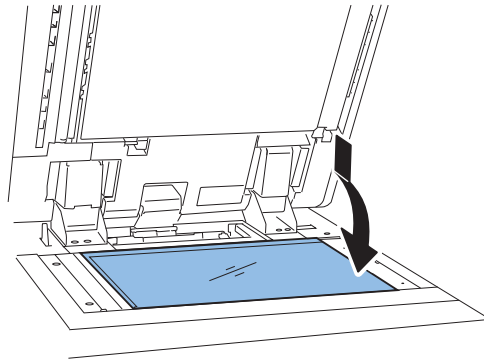
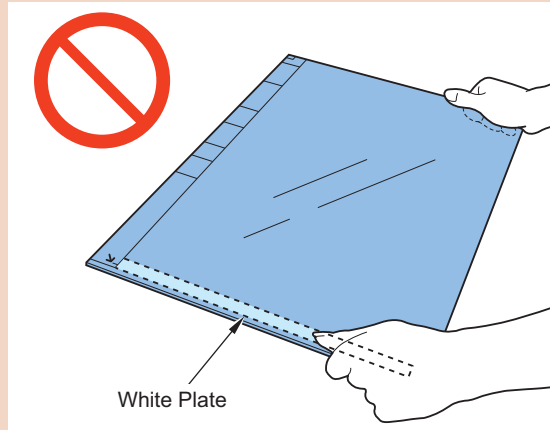
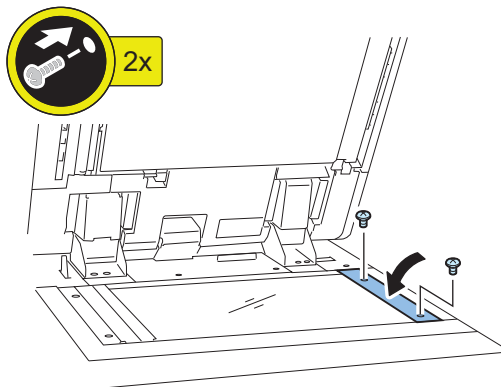


□
29.

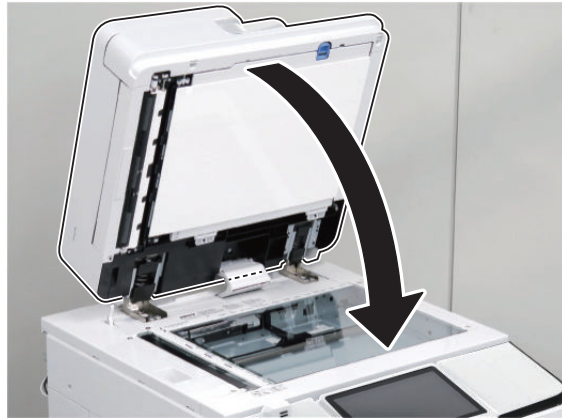


□
30.**CAUTION:**

- Soiling on the glass surface and the White Plate affects reading. When removing or installing the Copyboard Glass, be sure not to touch the glass surface and the White Plate.
- If soiling is attached, clean it with lint-free paper.

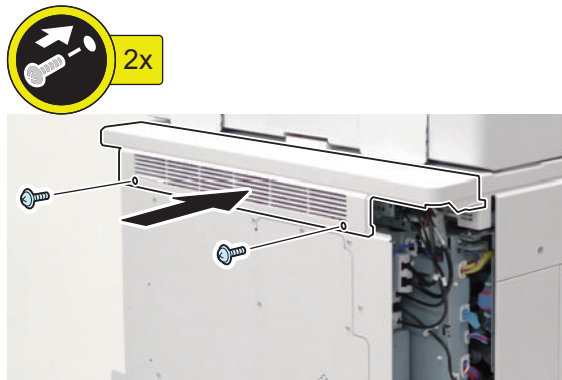
□
31.

□
32.

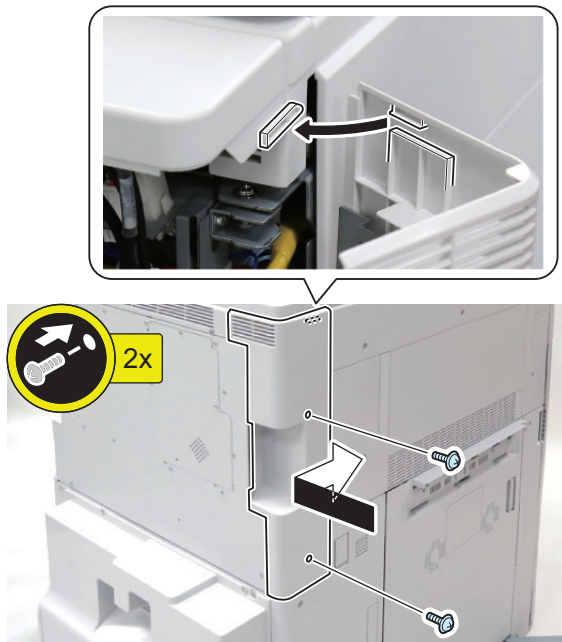


■ **Installing the Covers**

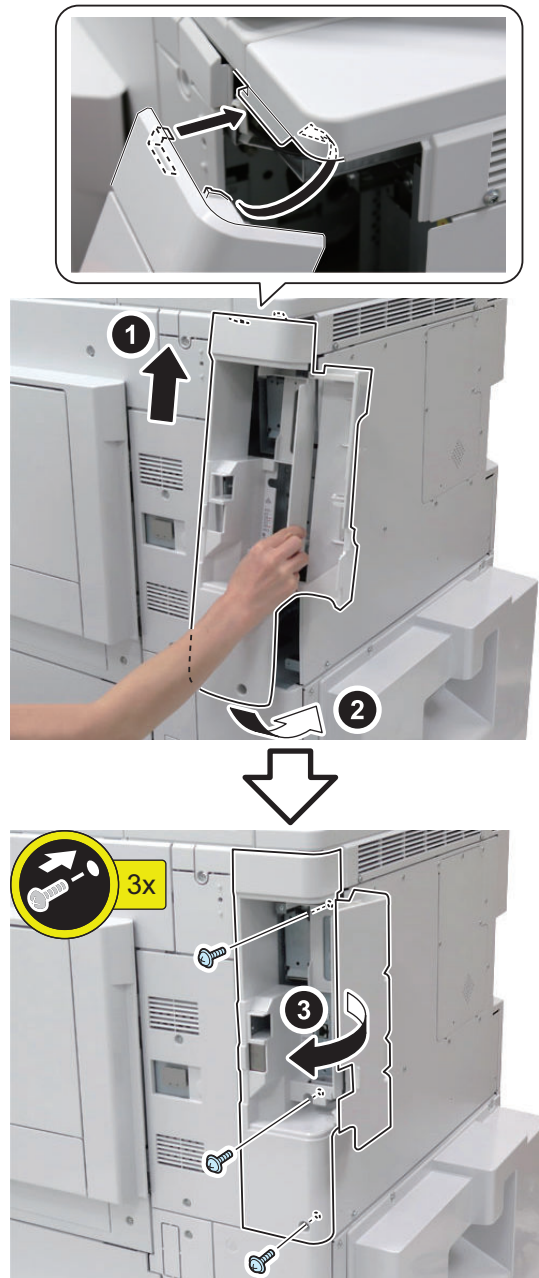
□
1.



□
2.



□
3.



-
- 4.** Turn ON the Environment Heater Switch.
 - 5.** Connect the power plug to the outlet.
 - 6.** Turn ON the main power switch.

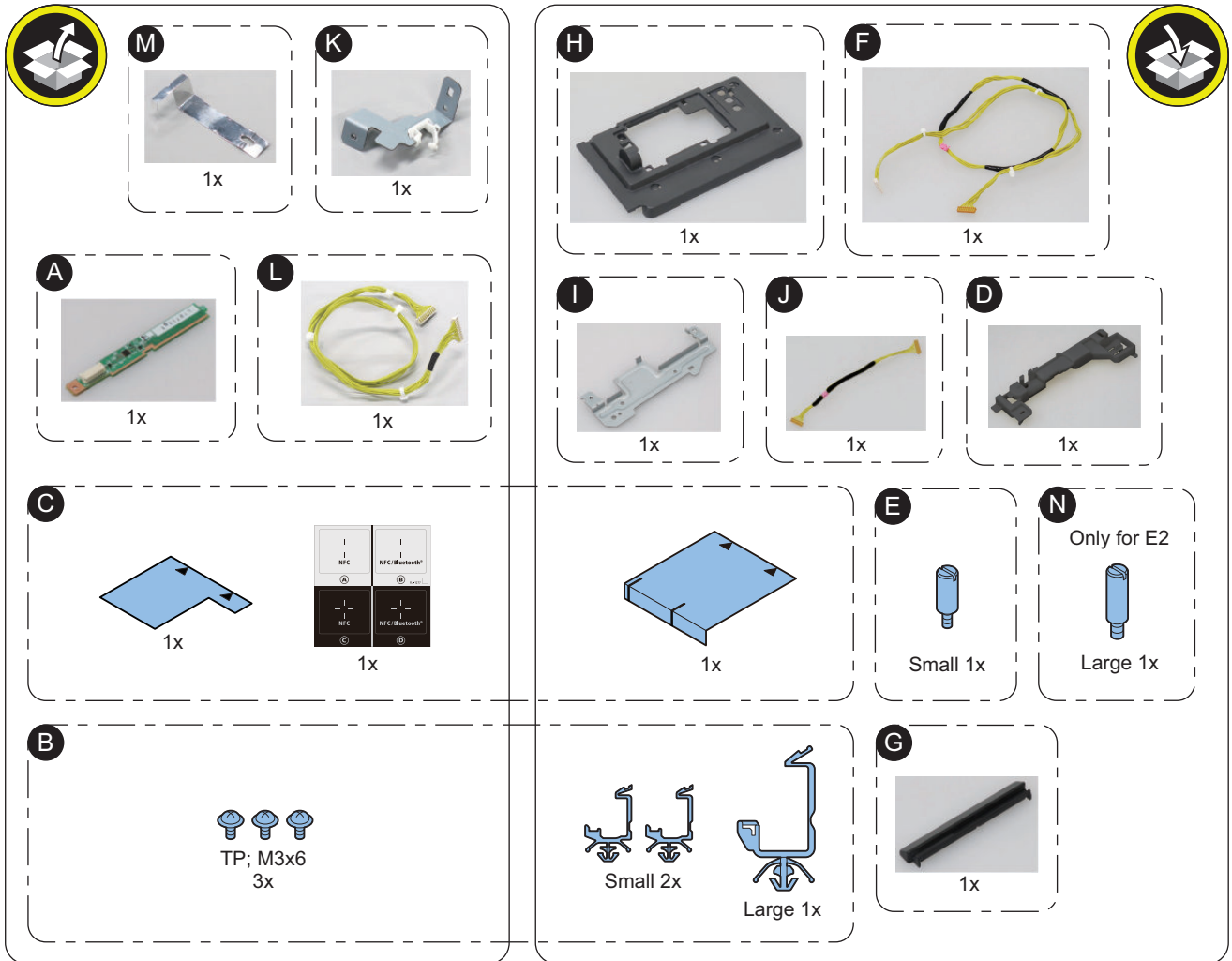
4

Host Machine Options

NFC Kit-E1/E2.....	182
Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE.....	201
Numeric Keypad-A1/A2.....	211
Copy Card Reader-F1.....	221
Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1	240
Utility Tray-B1.....	250
Voice Operation Kit-D1.....	257
Voice Guidance Kit-G1.....	271
Super G3 FAX Board-AS1.....	285
Super G3 FAX Board-AS2.....	294
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1..	300
Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2..	321
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1	340
Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2	350
HDD-related Option.....	360
Upright Control Panel-J1.....	393
imagePASS-N2 V1.1.....	431

NFC Kit-E1/E2

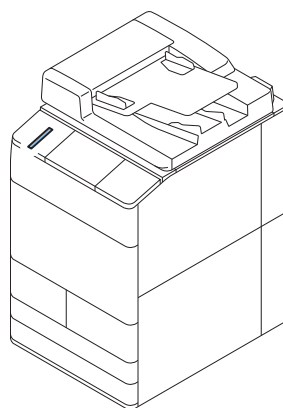
Checking the Contents



< Others >

- Guides are included

Installation Outline Drawing



● Installation Procedure

■ Installing the NFC PCB

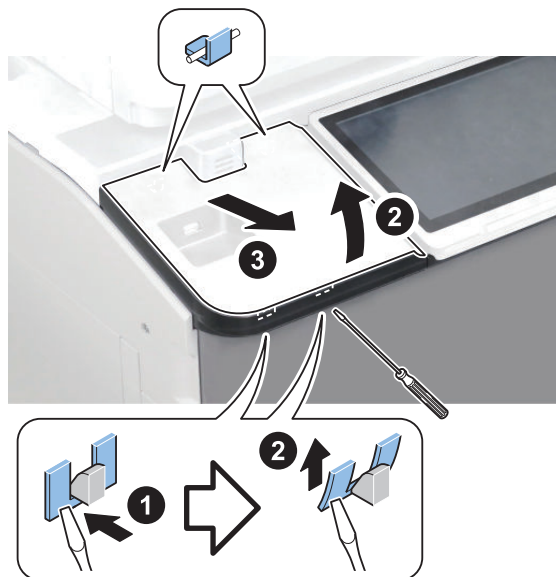
□

1.

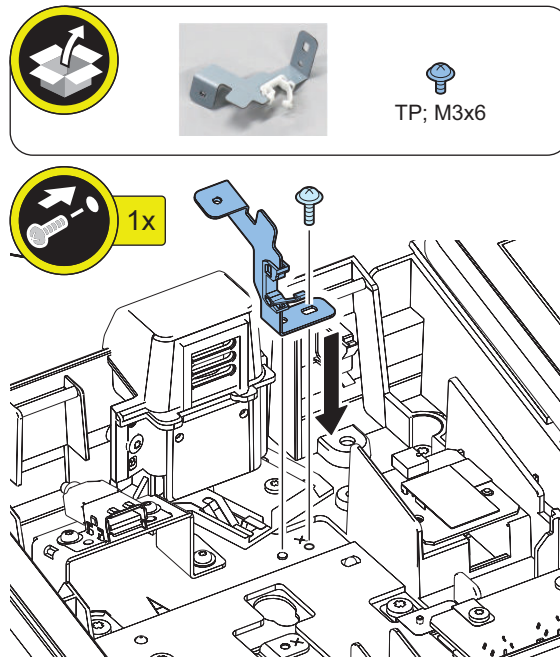


□

2.

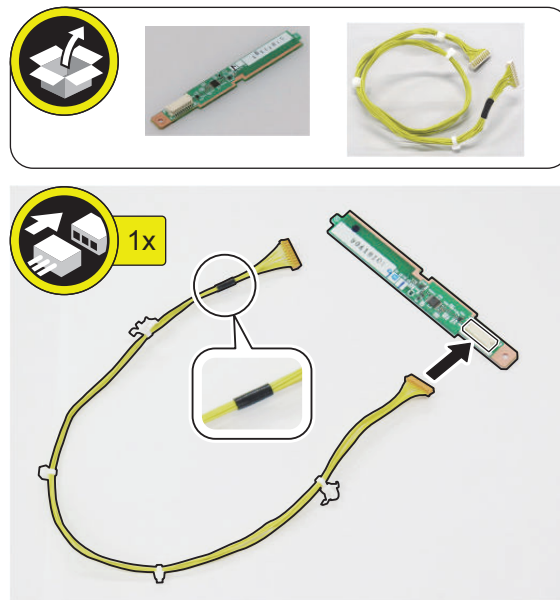


□
3.

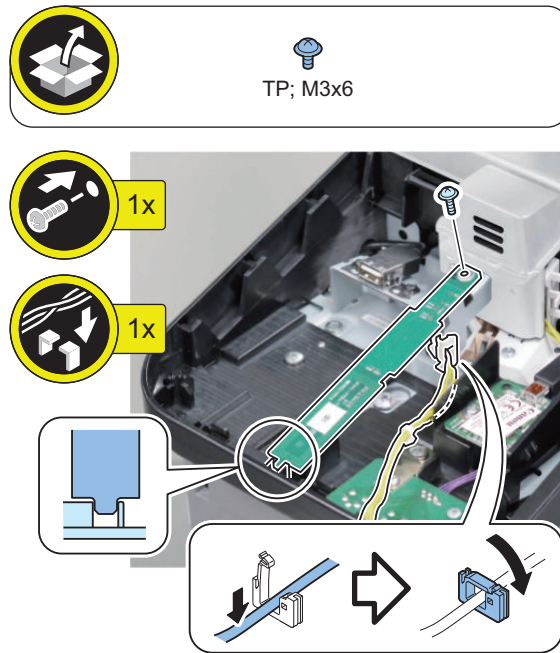


□
4.

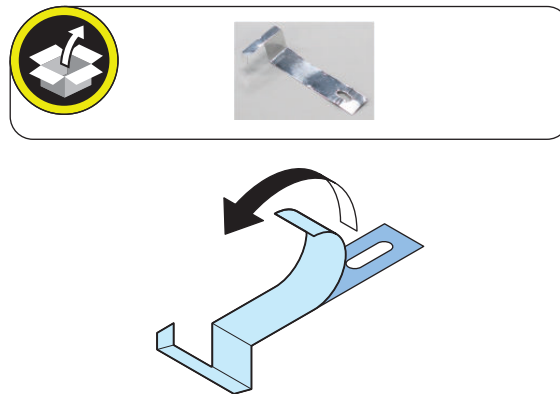
CAUTION:
Connect the cable end which is not wrapped with black tape.



□
5.



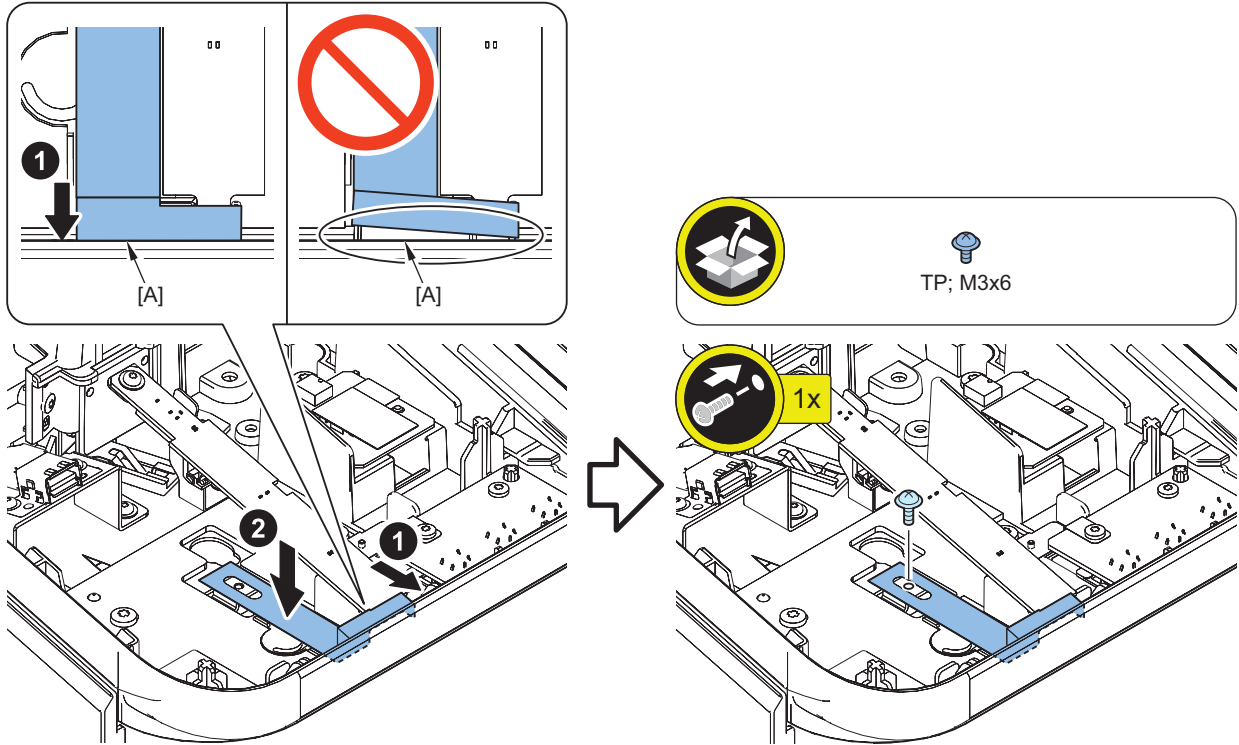
□
6.



□
7.

CAUTION:

Make sure to affix the shield sheet flat against the cover wall [A] without a gap between the shield sheet and the cover. Static electricity from the gap in the Control Panel Left Upper Cover may cause damage to the NFC PCB.



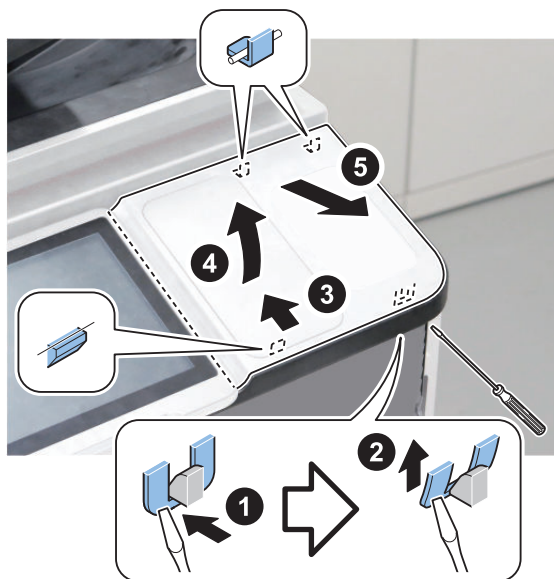
□

8. Next, proceed to the installation procedure for the target parts.

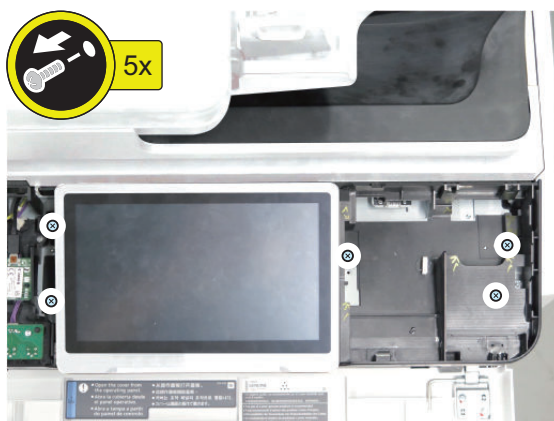
- “Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Flat Control Panel)” on page 187
- “Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Upright Control Panel)” on page 192

■ Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Flat Control Panel)

□
1.



□
2.



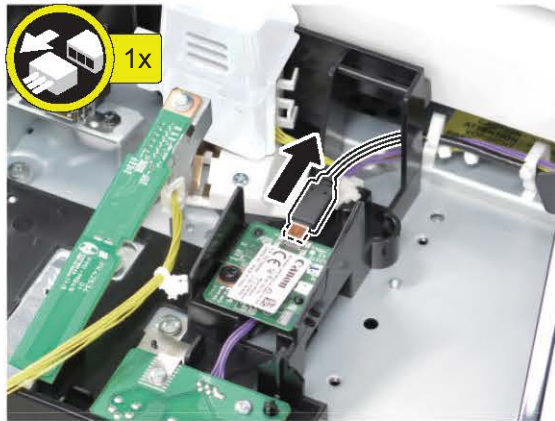
NOTE:

The removed screw will be used in step 10.

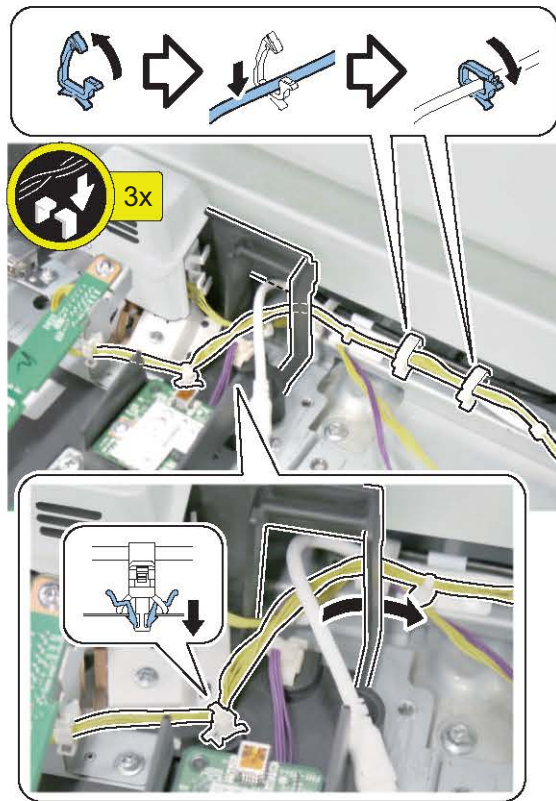
□
3.



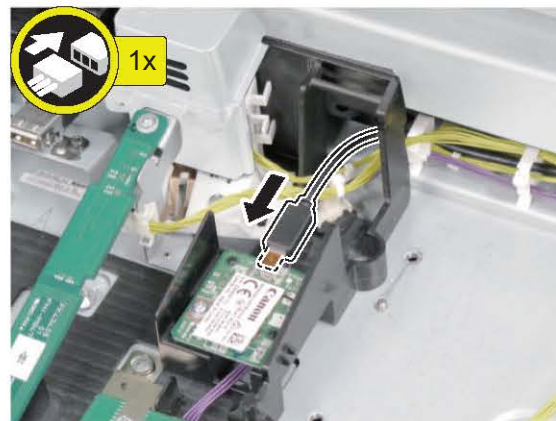
□
4.



□
5.



□
6.



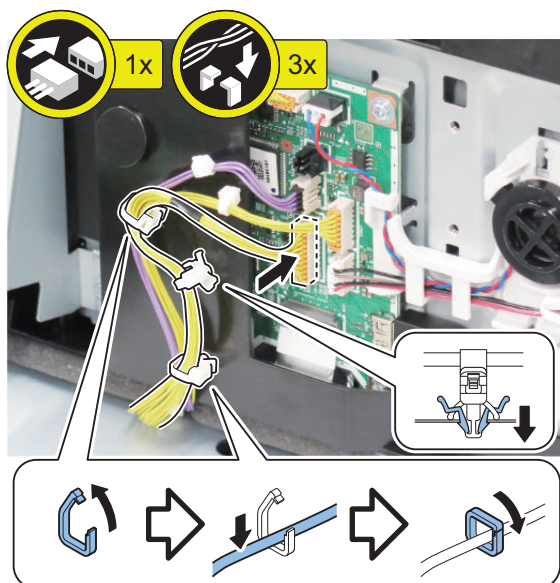
□
7.



□
8.

CAUTION:

Make sure to check if any connectors are disconnected by pushing again all the connectors connected to the Flat Control Panel Unit.

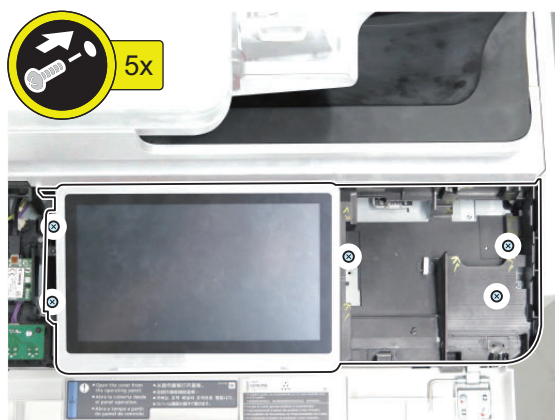


□
9.

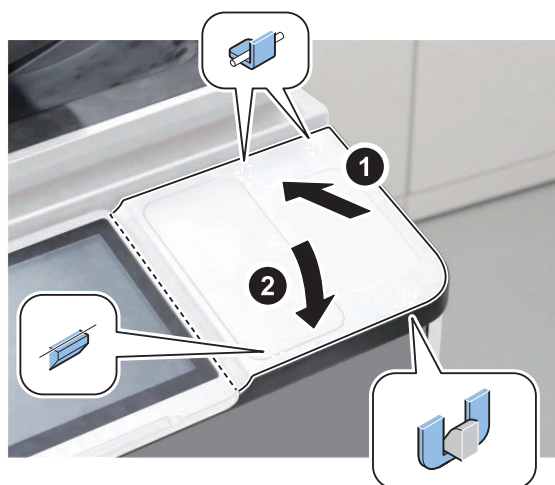


□
10.

NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 2.



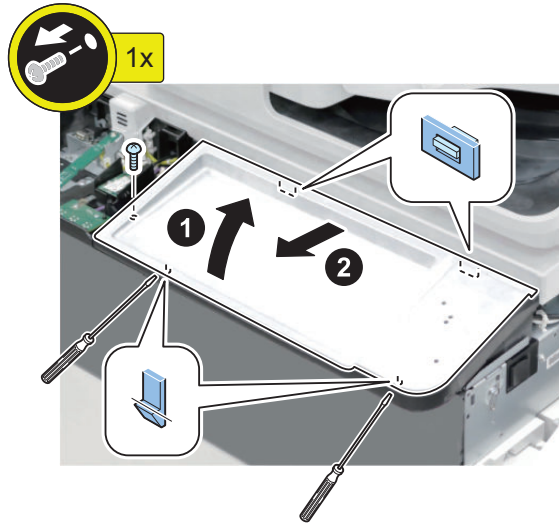
□
11.



□
12. Next, proceed to “Affixing the NFC Labels” on page 197.

■ **Connecting the NFC Cable (for the Upright Control Panel)**

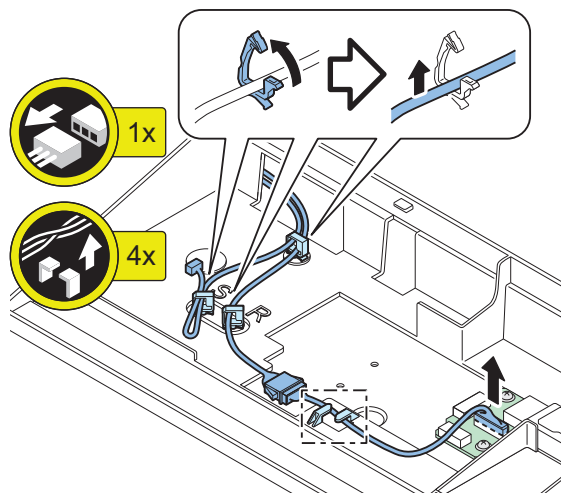
□
1.



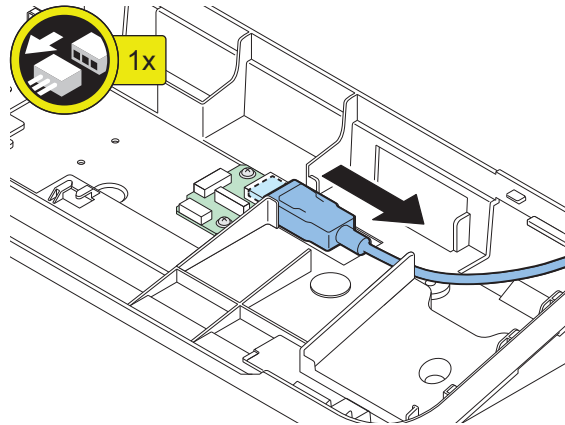
NOTE:

The removed screw will be used in step 11.

□
2.



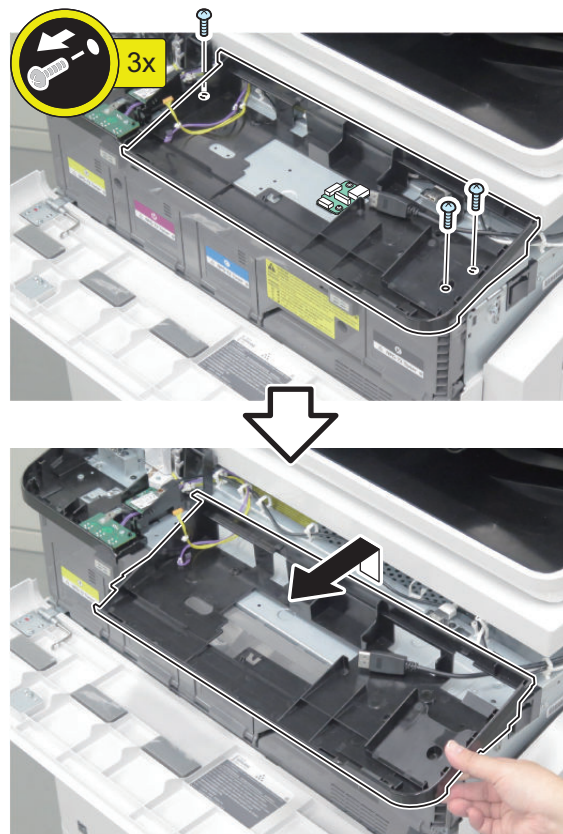
□
3.



□
4.

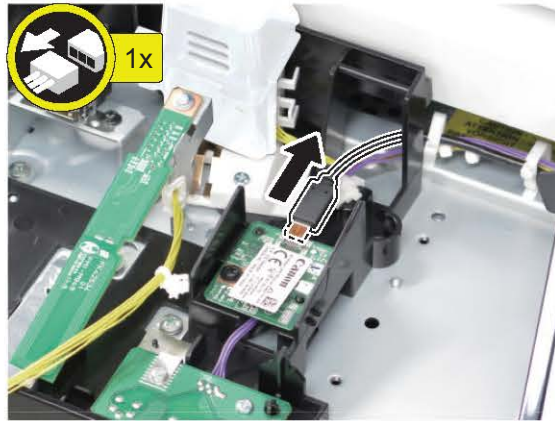
NOTE:

Slightly pull the Front Tray Lower Unit without pulling out the cables that pass through it.

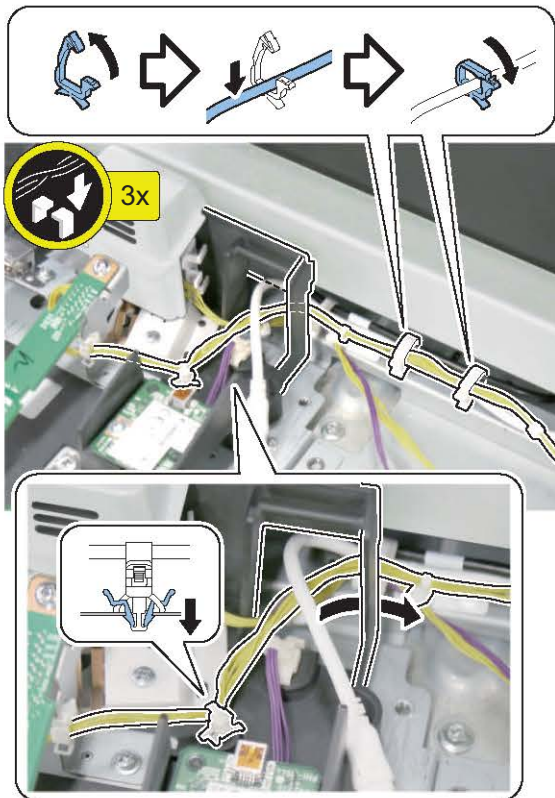
**NOTE:**

The removed screw will be used in step 8.

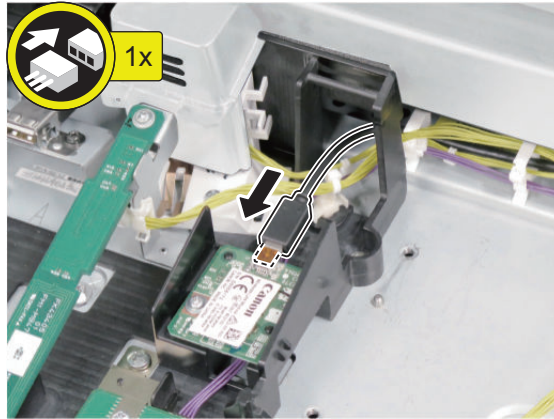
□
5.



□
6.

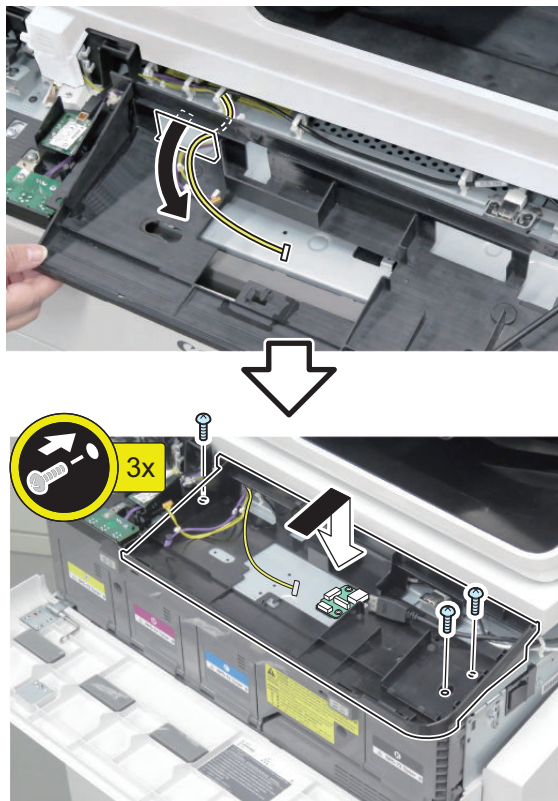


□
7.

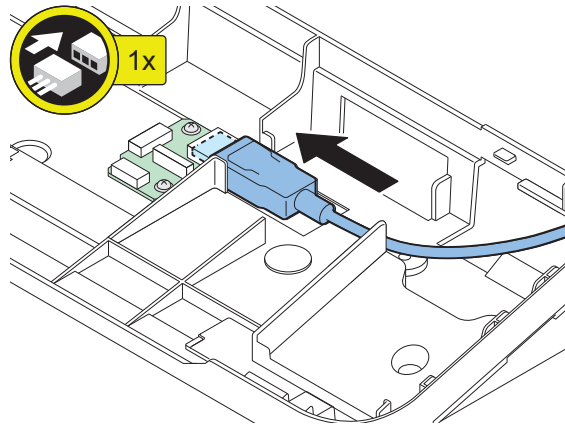


□
8.

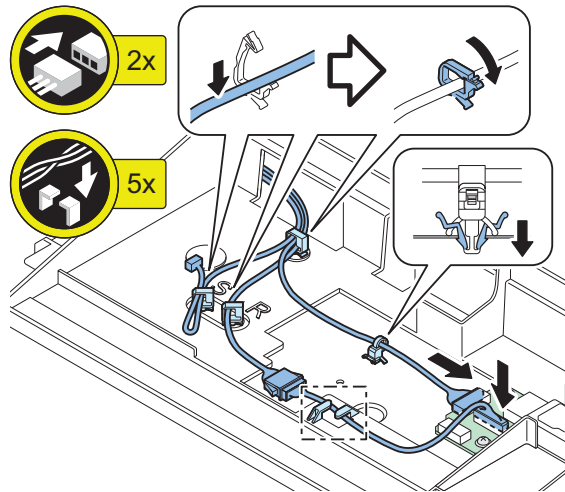
NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 4.



□
9.

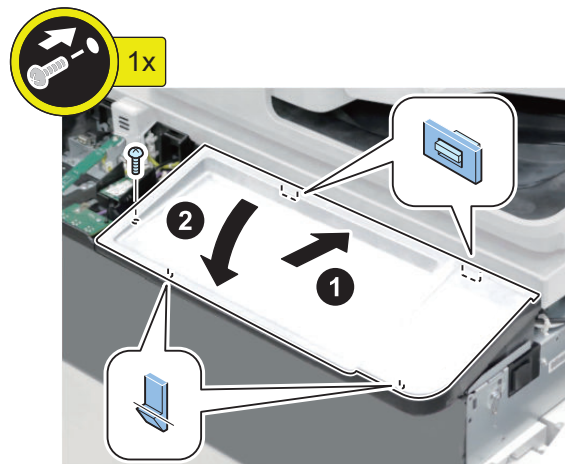


□
10.



□
11.

NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 1.



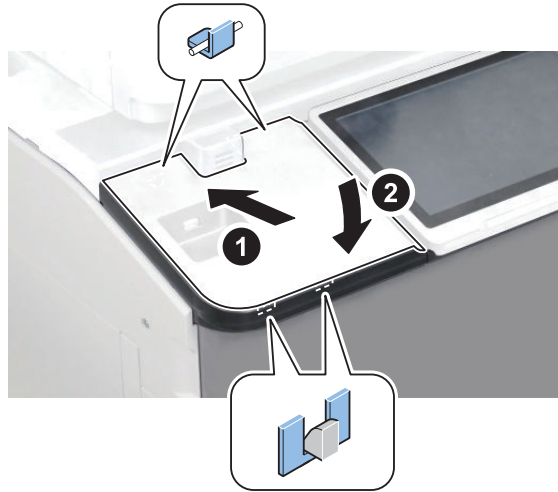
□

12. Next, proceed to “Affixing the NFC Labels” on page 197.

■ **Affixing the NFC Labels**

□

1.

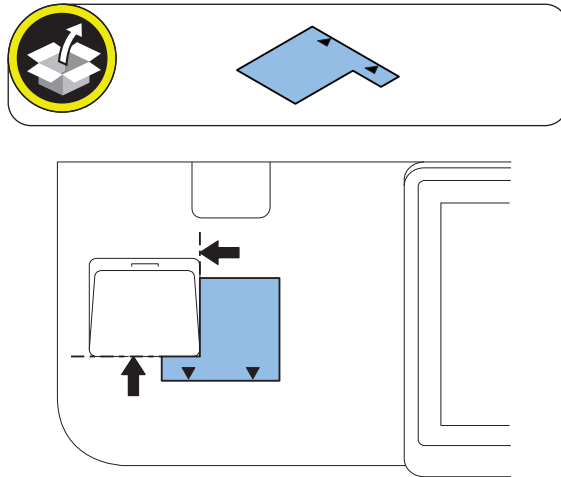


□

2.

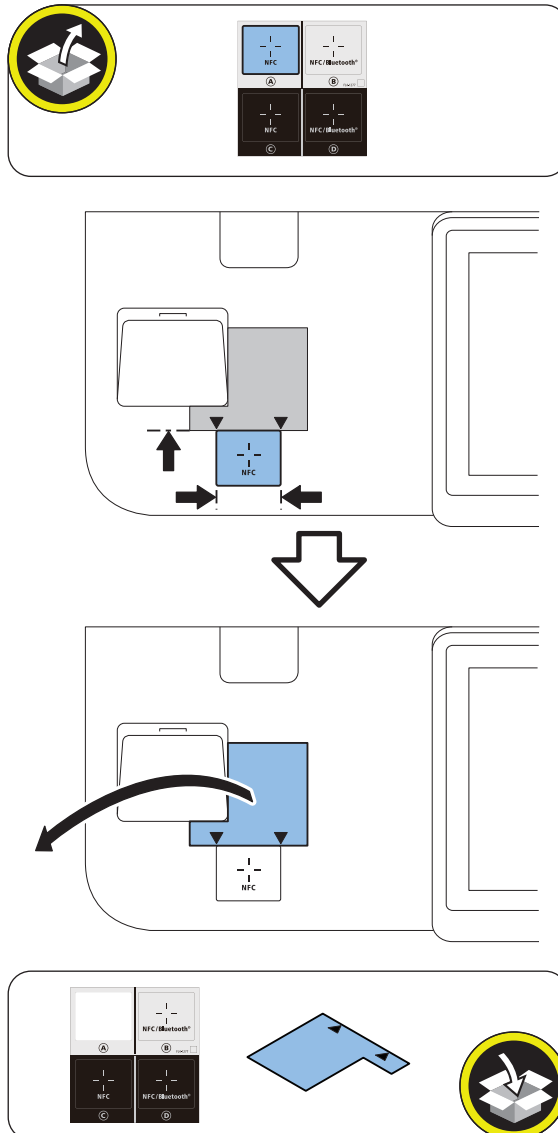


□
3.



□
4.

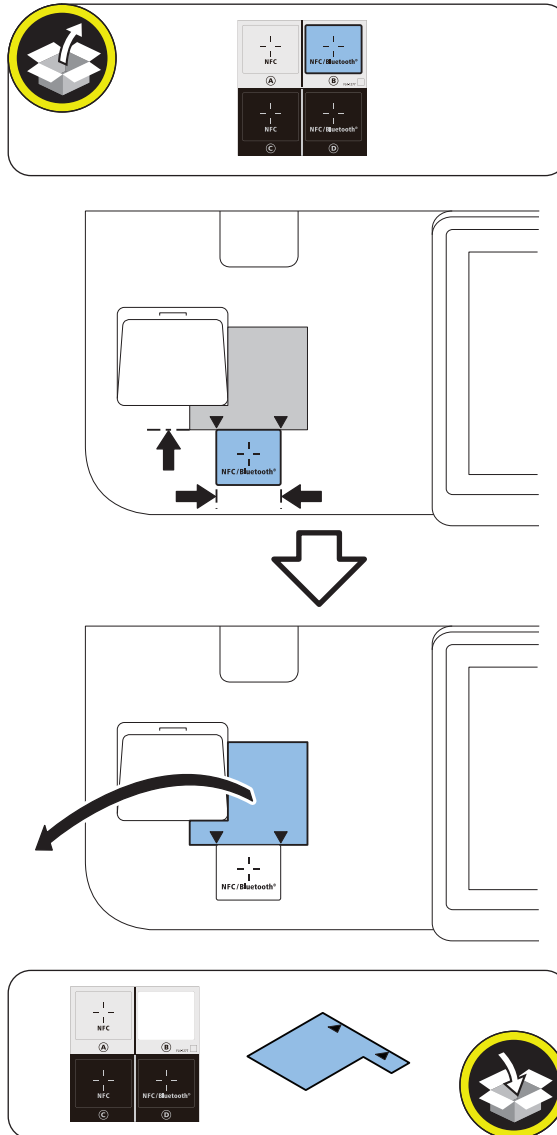
< When installing with the NFC Kit >



< When installing with the Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE at the same time >

NOTE:

If "Bluetooth" Label is already affixed there, remove the label and wipe off the glue with alcohol.



■ Setting after Installation



1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.
2. Turn ON the main power switch.
3. Enter service mode and set the value to "1".
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > NFC-USE

NOTE:

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions of the user administrator.

4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [Device Management] > [Use NFC Card Emulation], and set the item to "ON".
5. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch.

6. When a message prompting the version update is displayed, press [Update] and automatically update the version of this equipment.

CAUTION:

It may take time to display the update screen. (Approx. 1 to 2 min.) During this time, do not operate the screen.

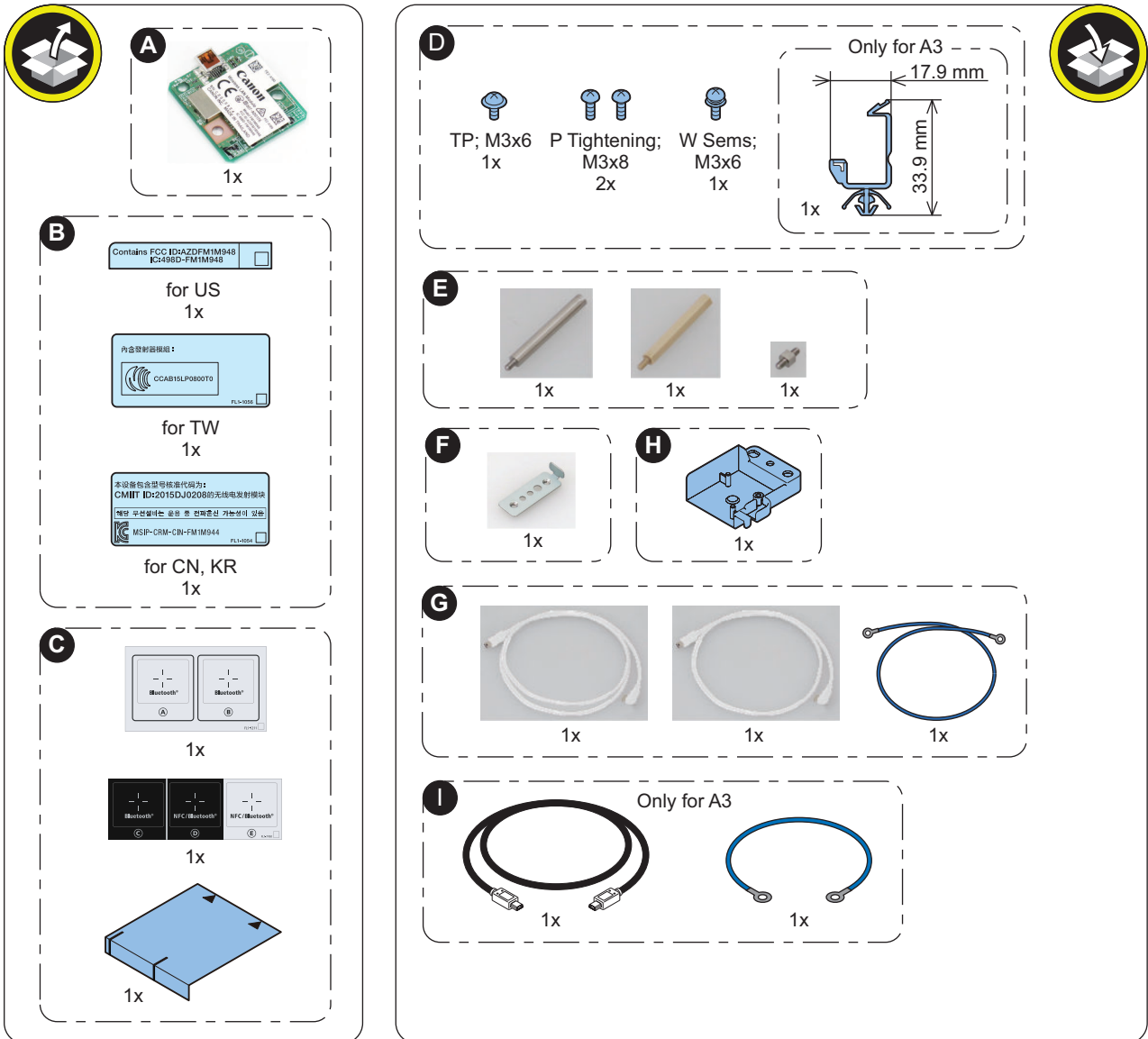
7. Check the end of the following service mode.

COPIER > DISPLAY > VERSION > PANEL

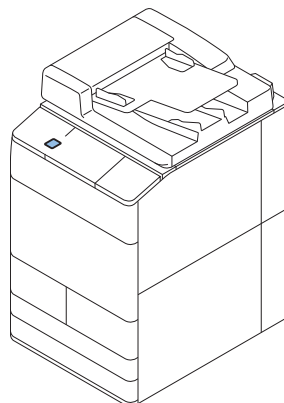
- If the end is an even number (e.g. 01.26): NFC is not installed.
- If the end is an odd number (e.g. 01.27): NFC is installed.

Connection Kit-A2/A3 for Bluetooth LE

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing

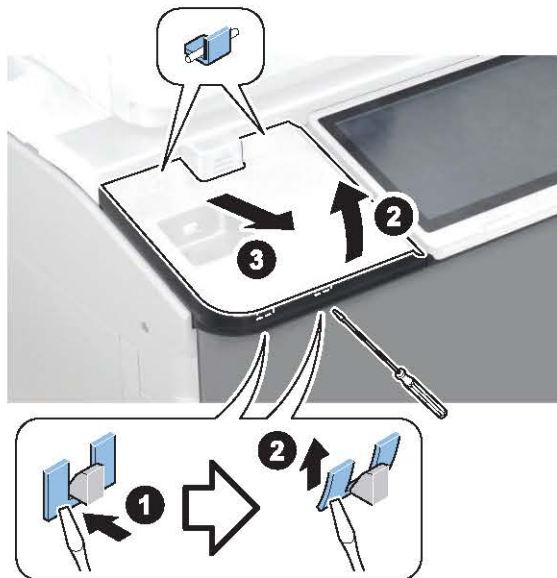


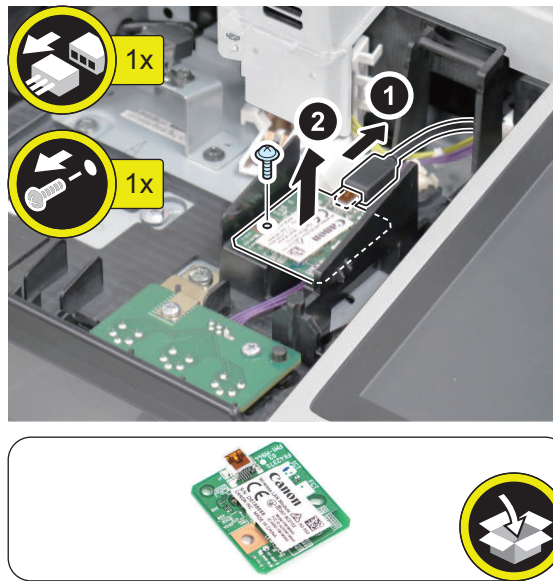
● Installation Procedure

□
1.



□
2.

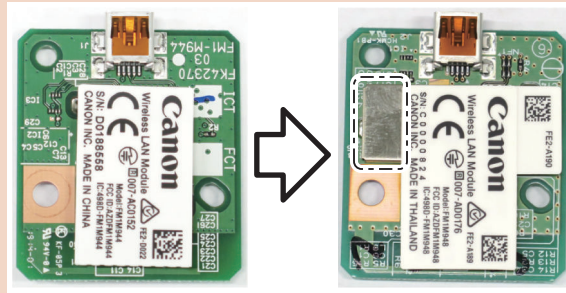


□
3.**NOTE:**

The removed screw will be used in a next step.

CAUTION:

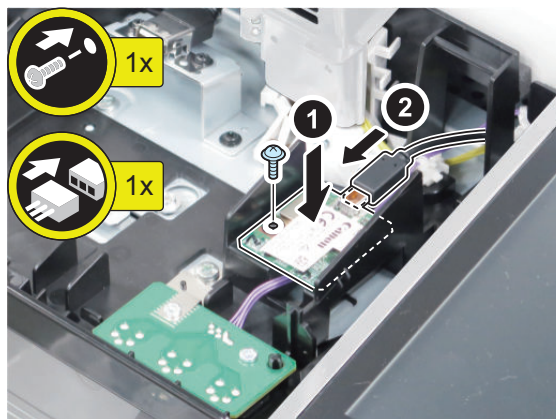
Replace the removed Wi-Fi PCB with the optional Bluetooth PCB. Be sure to mount the correct one.



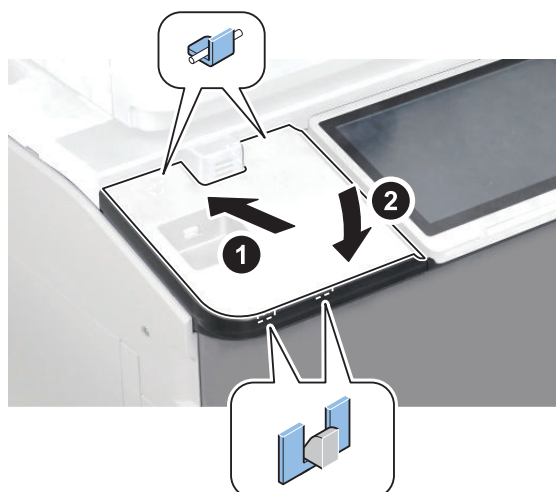
□
4.

NOTE:

Use the screw removed in the previous step.



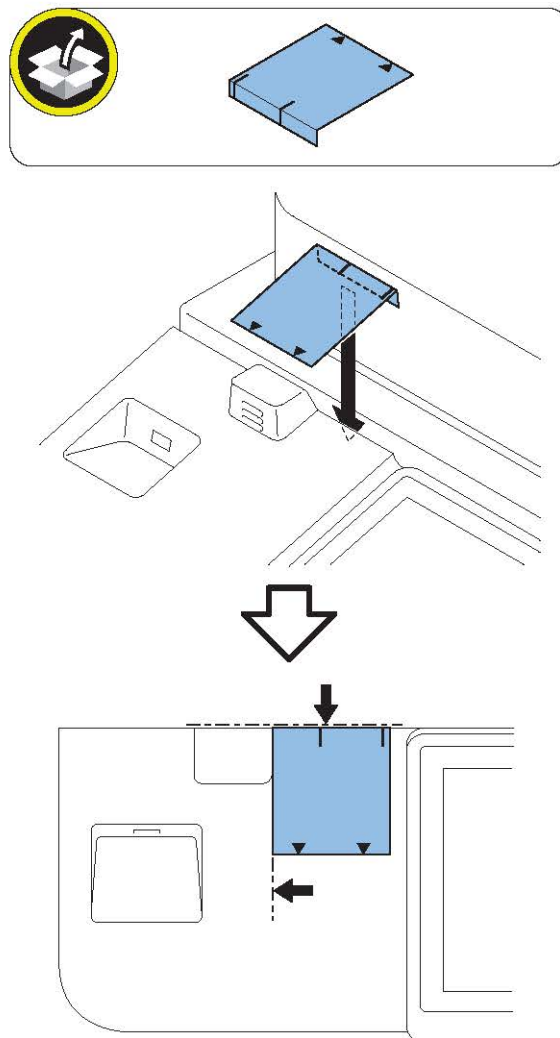
□
5.



□
6.

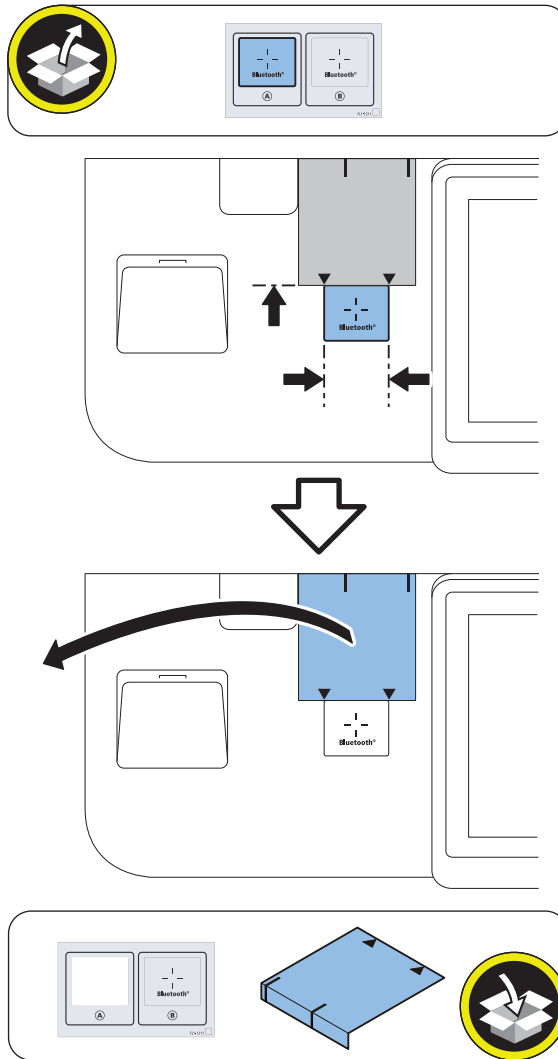


□
7.



□
8.

< When installing with the Connection Kit-A2 for Bluetooth LE >

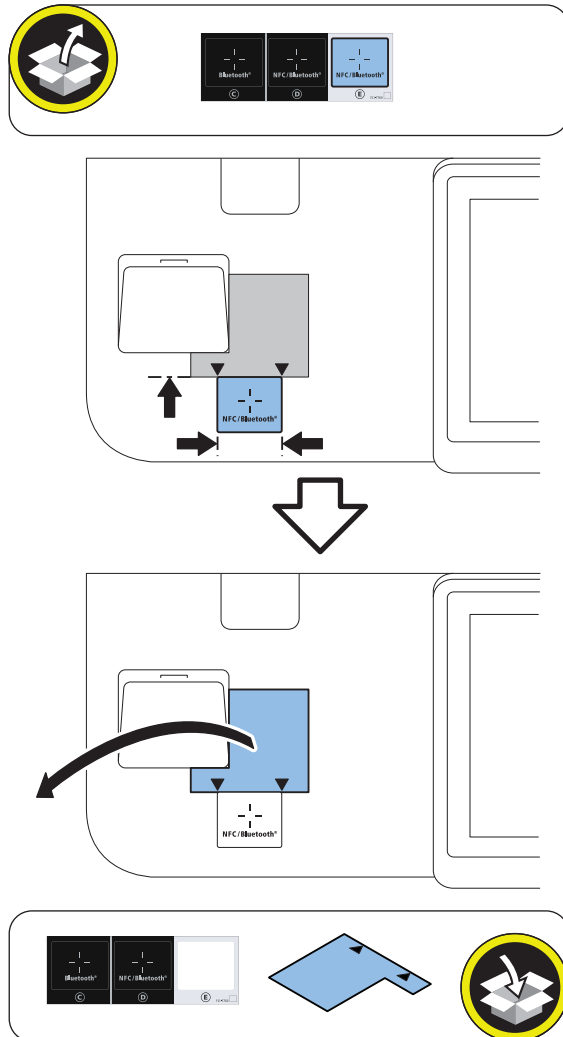


< When installing with the NFC Kit at the same time >

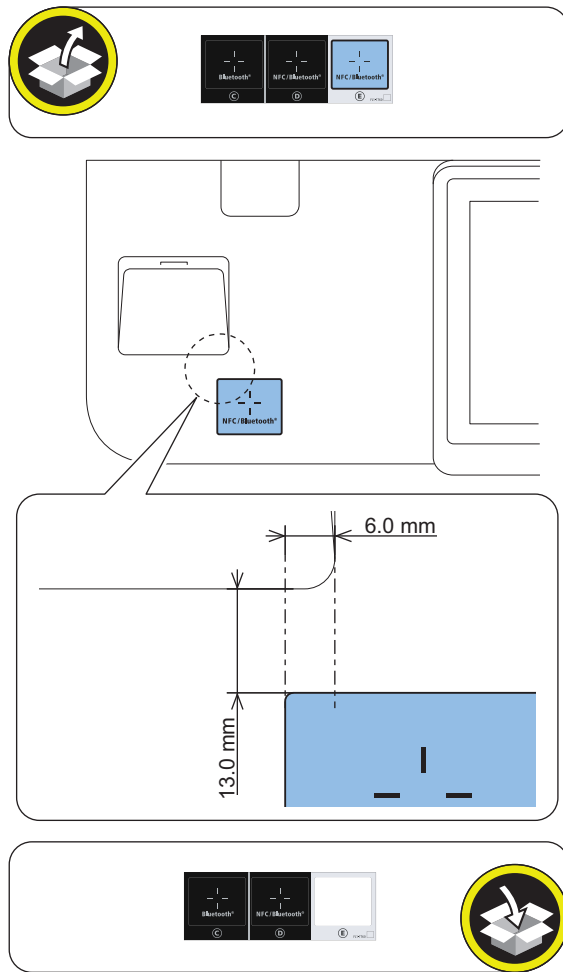
NOTE:

If "Bluetooth" Label is already affixed there, remove the label and wipe off the glue with alcohol before affixing the new label.

- When the Target Sheet for the NFC Kit is available



- When the Target Sheet for the NFC Kit is not available



■ Affixing the Wireless LAN Approval Label

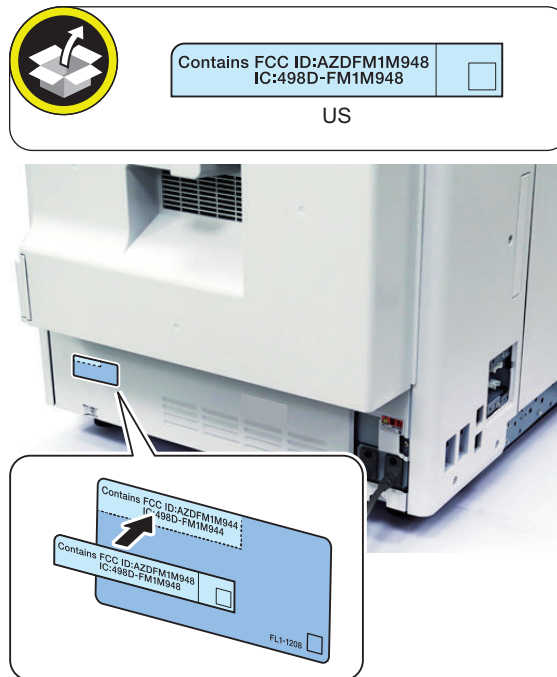
□
1.

NOTE:

In countries other than the following countries, it is not necessary to affix the Approval Label.

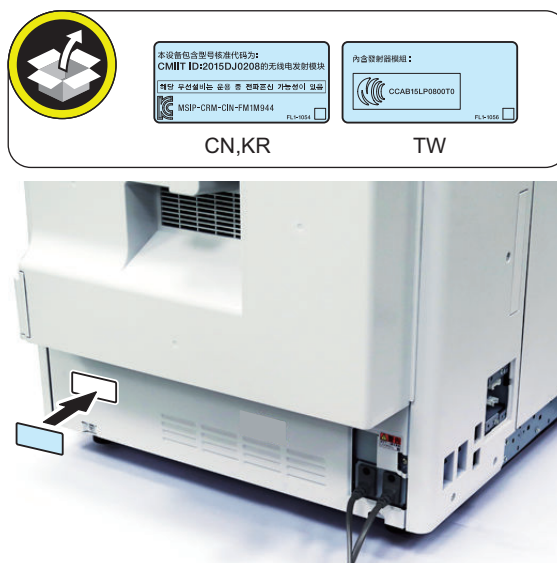
< For US >

Affix it over the number on the Wireless LAN Approval Label.



< For CN, KR, and TW >

Affix it over the Wireless LAN Approval Label.



● Setting after Installation

□

1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.

2. Turn **ON** the main power switch.
3. In the following **Service Mode**, set the value to "1."
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > BLE-USE

NOTE:

When [System Manager Information Settings] is set, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions of the user administrator.

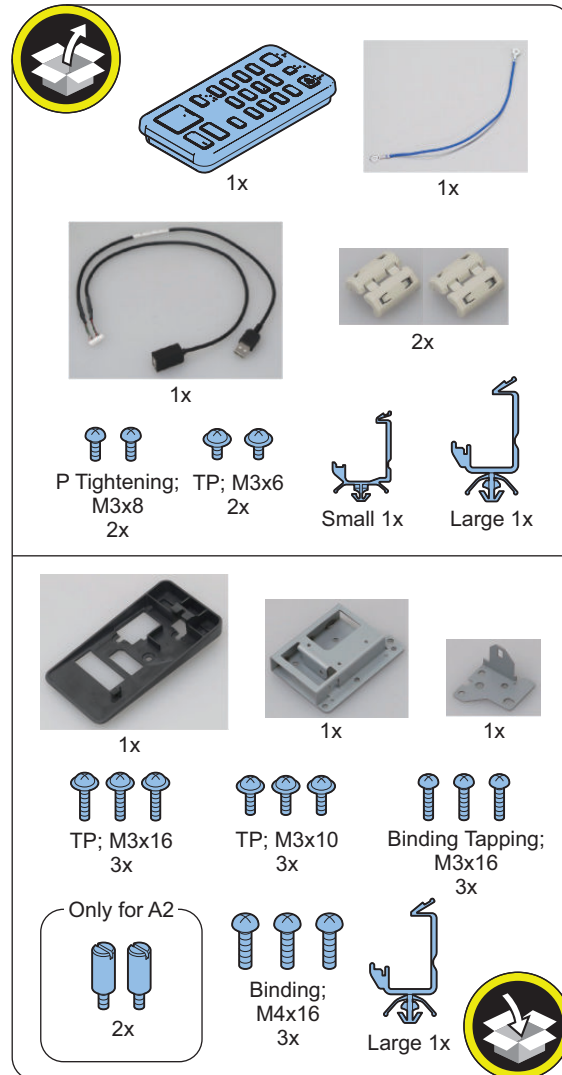
4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Confirm Network Connection Setting Changes], and set the item [ON].
5. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Network] > [Bluetooth Settings] > [Use Bluetooth] > [ON].
6. The message "Perform Apply Setting Changes from Settings/Registration" appears in the Touch Panel Display.
7. Perform "Apply Setting Changes."
Press [Settings/Registration] > [Yes].

Numeric Keypad-A1/A2

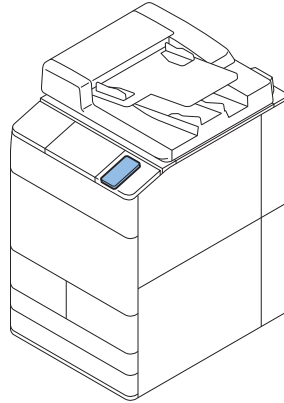
Points to Note before Installation

- When installing the Numeric Keypad and the IC Card Reader at the same time, be sure to install the Numeric Keypad first.
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Checking the Contents



● Installation Outline Drawing

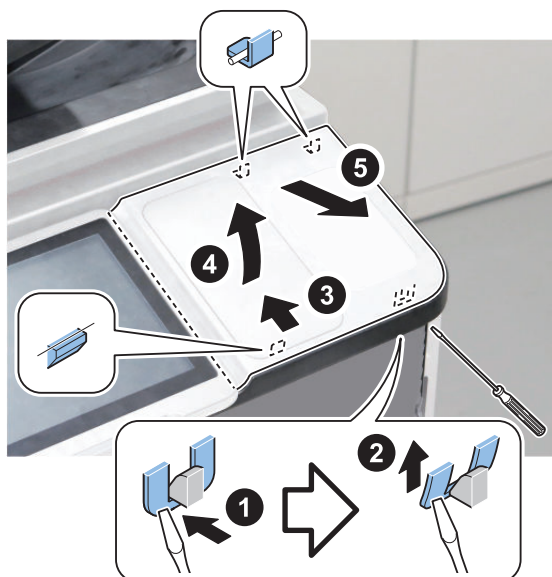


● Installation Procedure

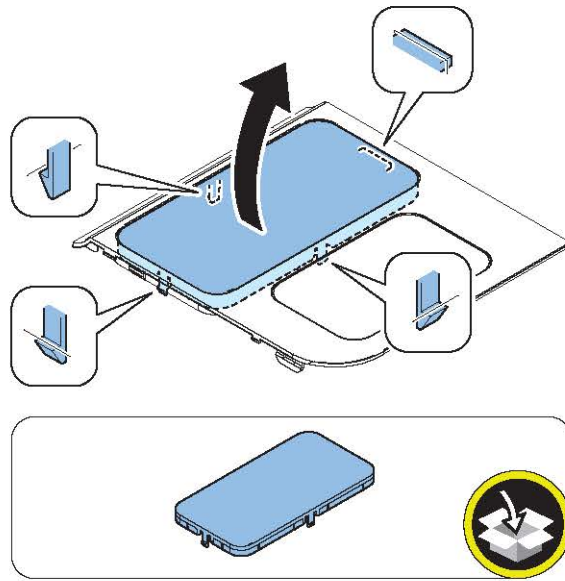
□
1.



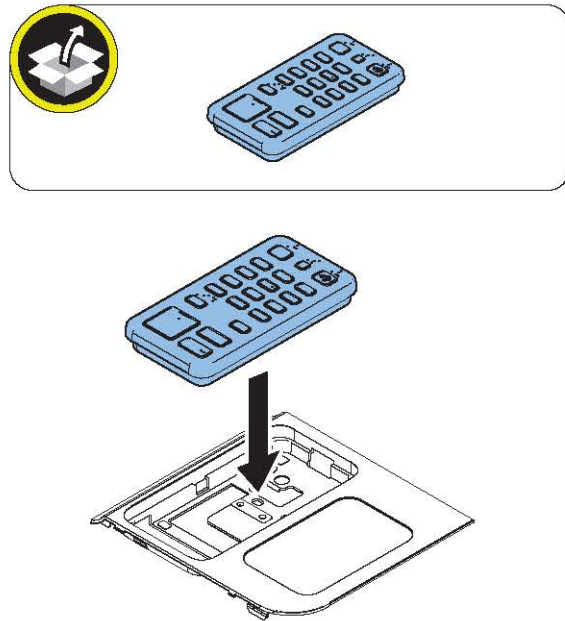
□
2.



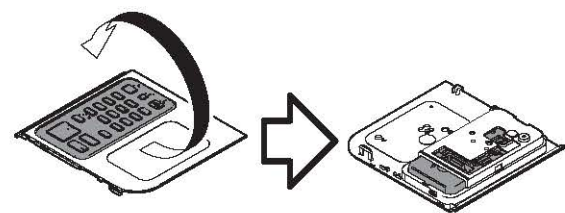
□
3.



□
4.



□
5.



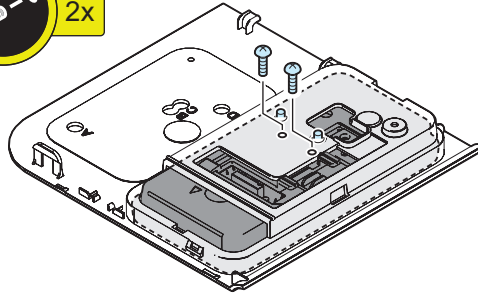
□
6.**CAUTION:**

Be sure to check that the 2 bosses are fitted securely.

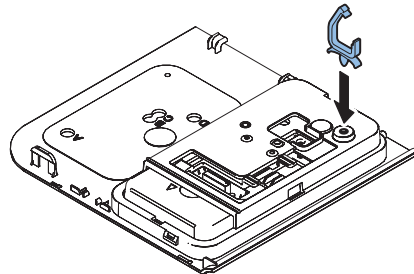
Installing the Control Panel Right Upper Cover while the bosses are not fitted securely will cause rattling.



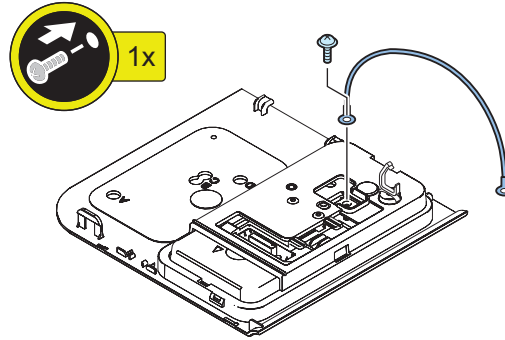
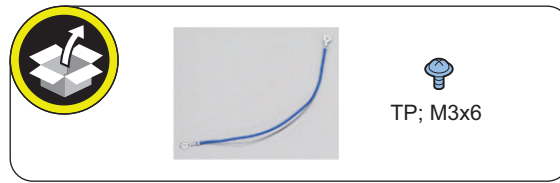
P Tightening; M3x8

□
7.

Small



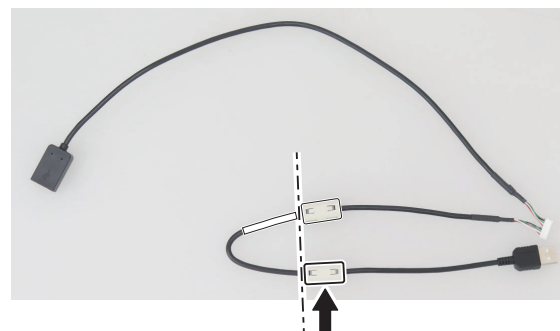
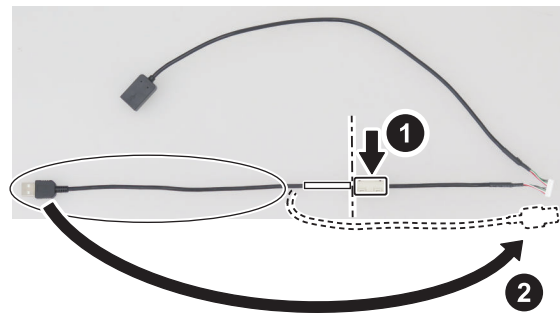
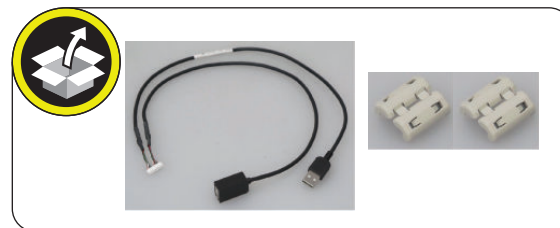
□
8.



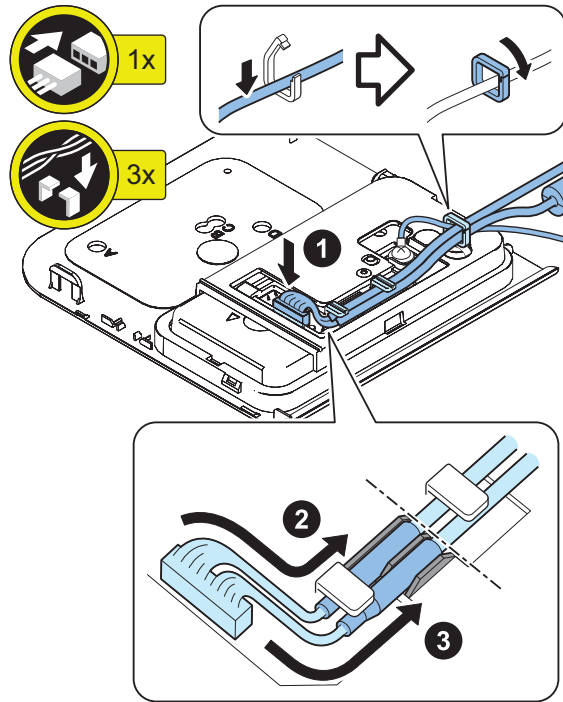
□
9.

NOTE:

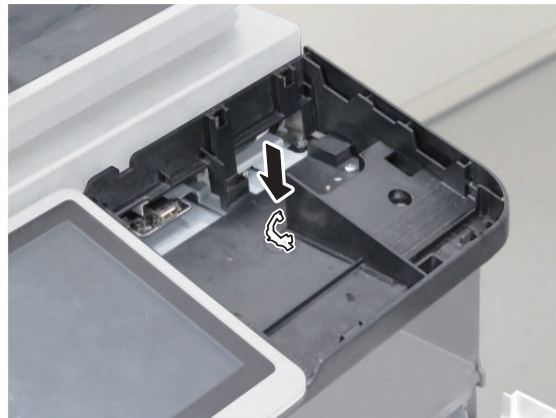
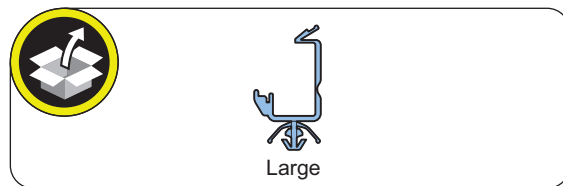
Attach the first core along with the white tape affixed to the Numeric Keypad cable. Fold the cable as shown in the figure, and attach the second core in a line-symmetric position with respect to the core attached first.



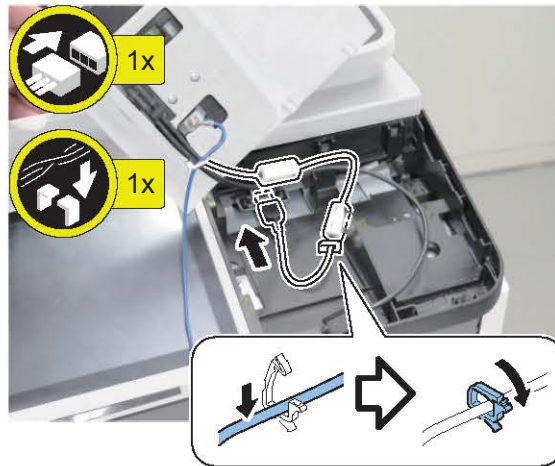
□
10.



□
11.



□
12.

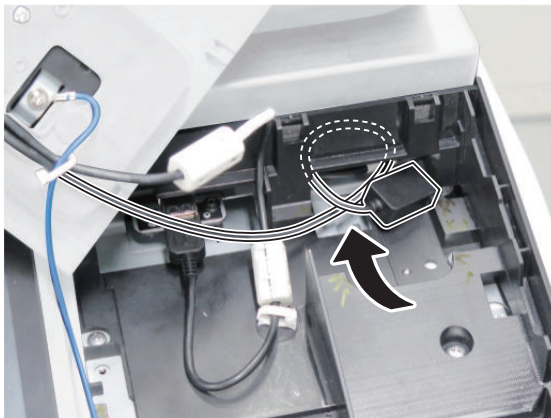


13.

< When installing the Numeric Keypad only >

NOTE:

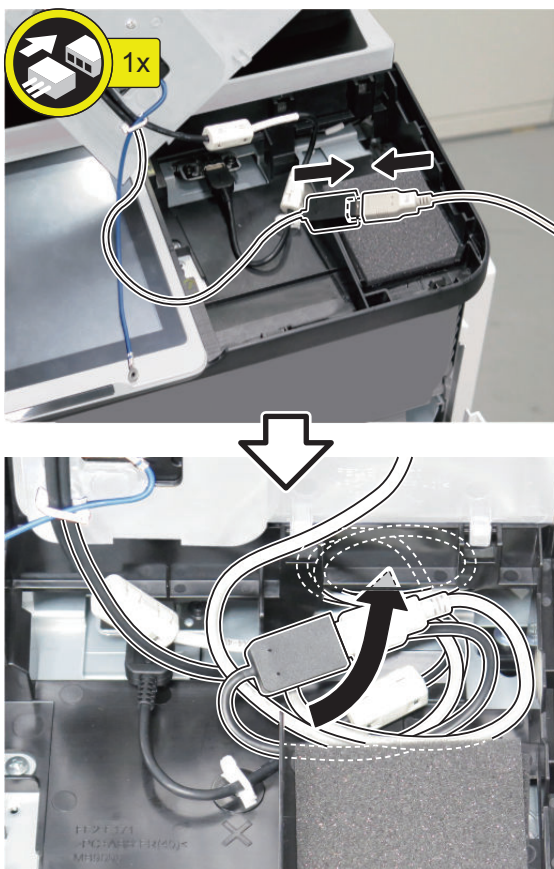
Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.



< When installing with the IC Card Reader at the same time >

NOTE:

Store the excess length of the cable in the position as shown in the figure.

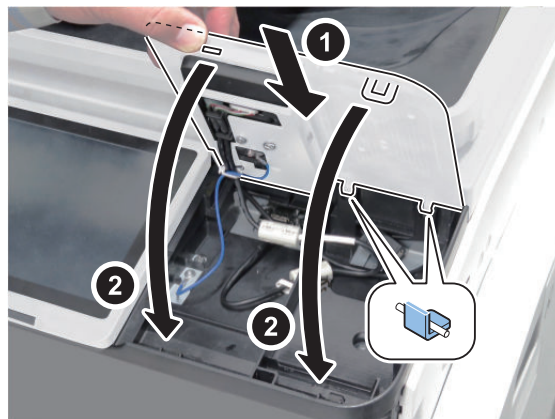


□
14.



□
15.

CAUTION:
Place the Core in the position as shown in the figure.



□
16.



□
17. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

18. Turn ON the main power switch.

Copy Card Reader-F1

Points to Note at Installation

- To install this equipment, the Copy Card Reader Attachment is required.
- After installing the Copy Card Reader, input the card number to be used in service mode. Otherwise the card cannot be recognized even though it is inserted.
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

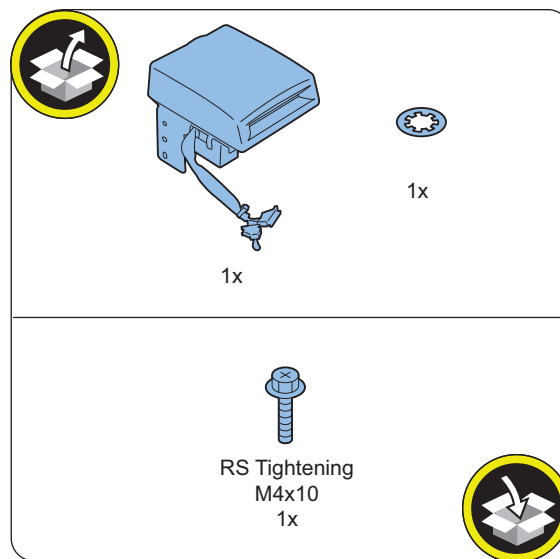
Table of Options Combination

	Utility Tray	Voice Operation	Voice Guidance Kit	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit
Copy Card Reader	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

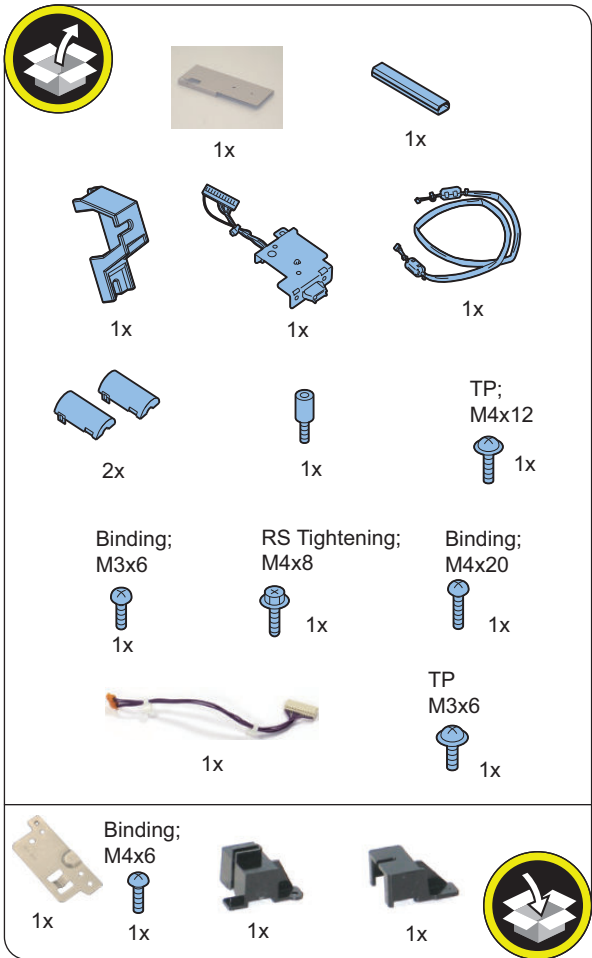
Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents

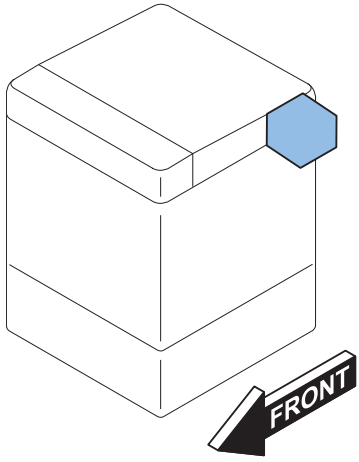
< Copy Card Reader-F1 >



<Copy Card Reader Attachment-A4>

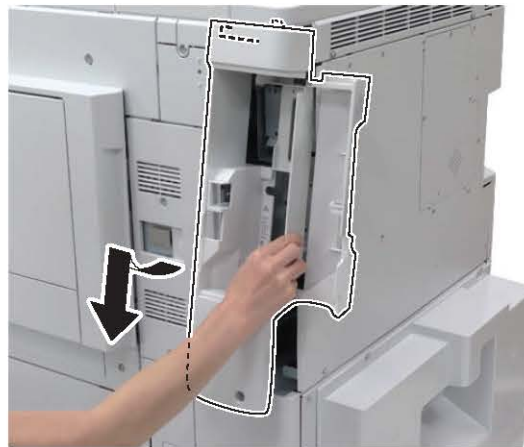
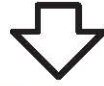
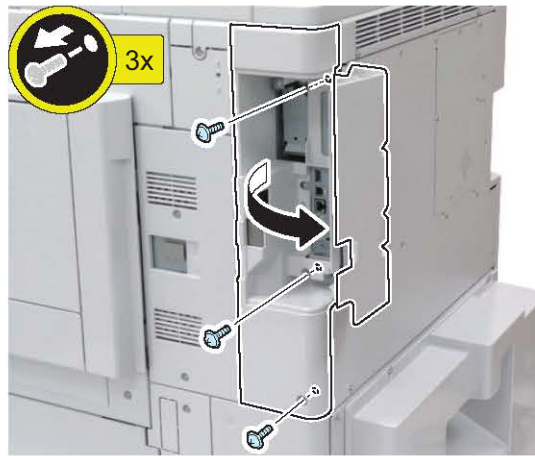


Installation Outline Drawing



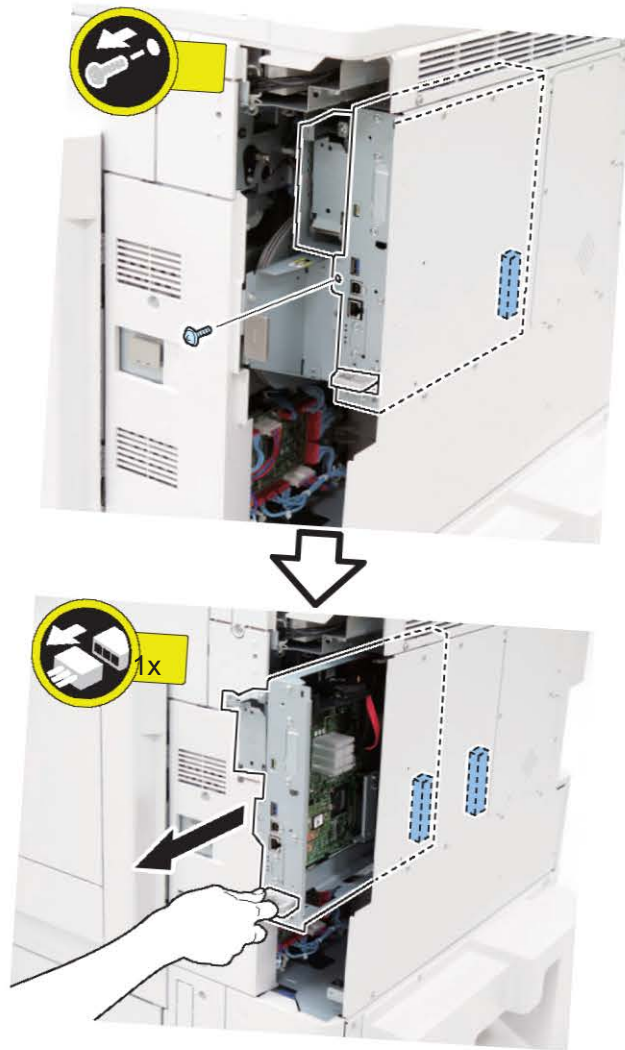
Installation Procedure

□
1.

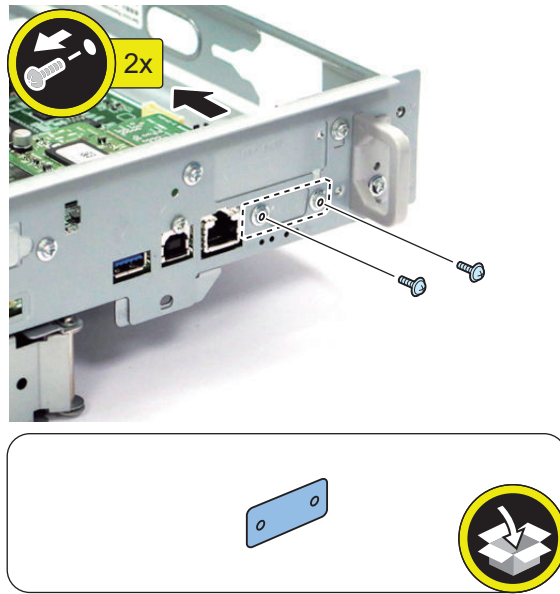




2.



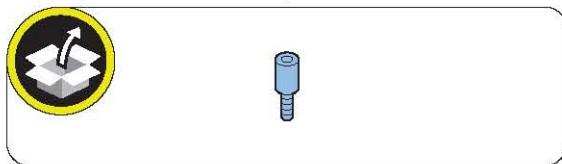
□
3.



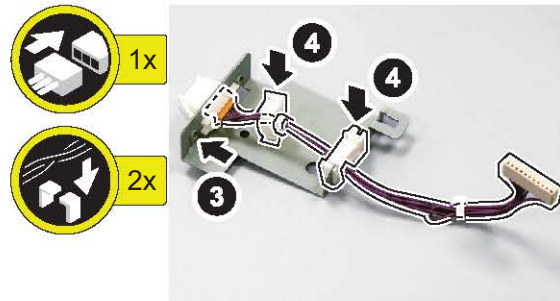
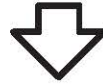
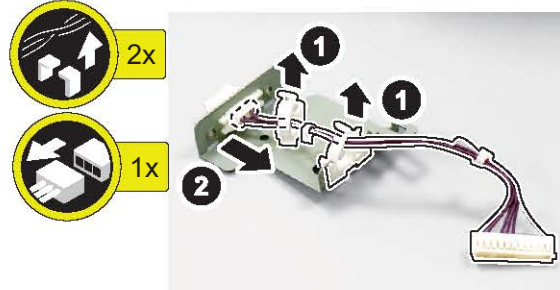
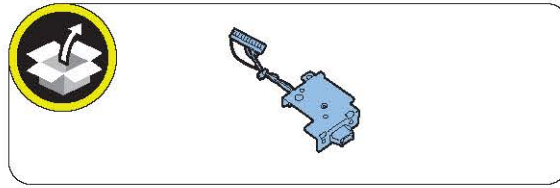
NOTE:

The removed screws will be used in step 6.

□
4.

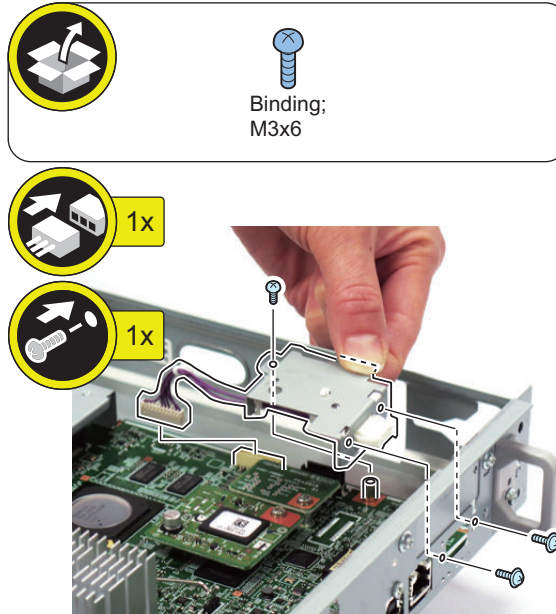


□
5.



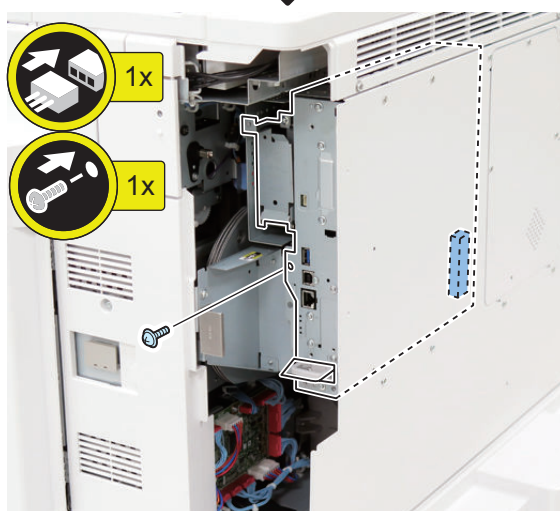
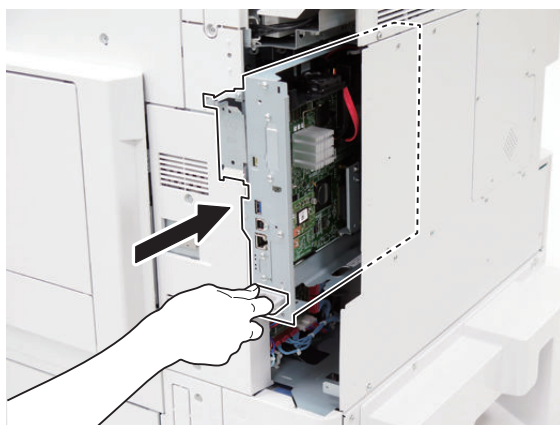
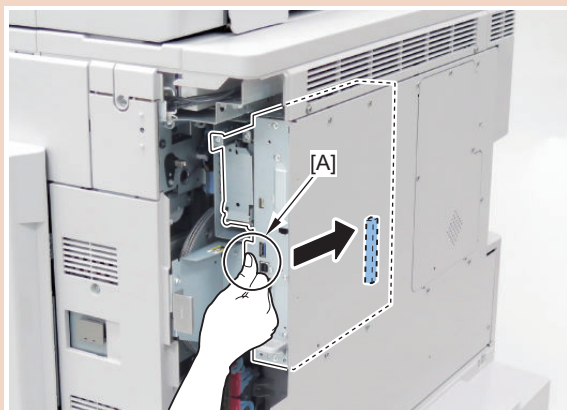
□
6.

NOTE:
Use the 2 screws removed in step 3.



□
7.**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB until it stops.
- Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



□
8.



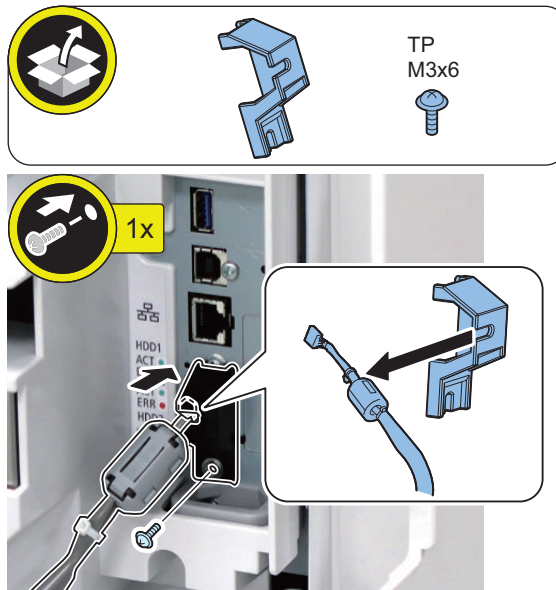
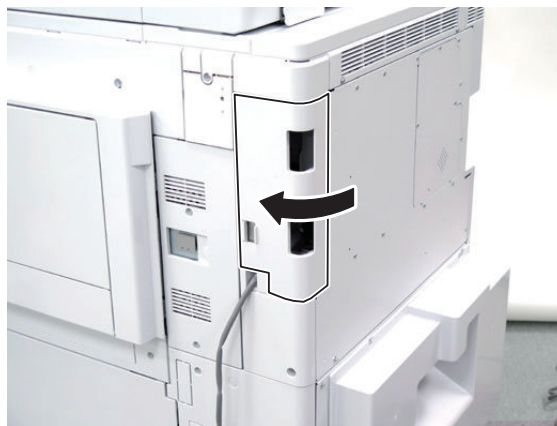
□
9.**CAUTION:**

Connect the end of connector that does not have a ring as shown in the following figure.

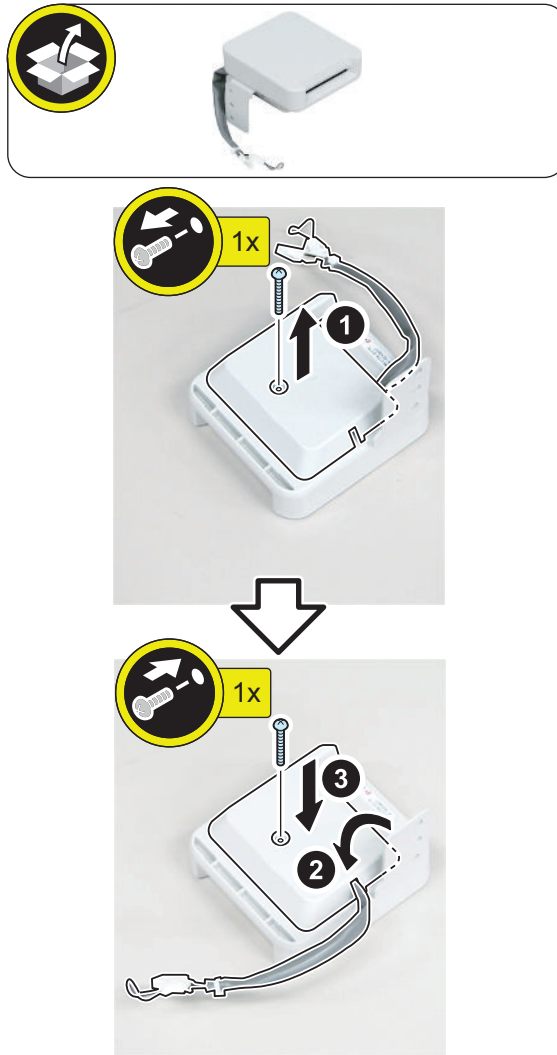


□
10.**CAUTION:**

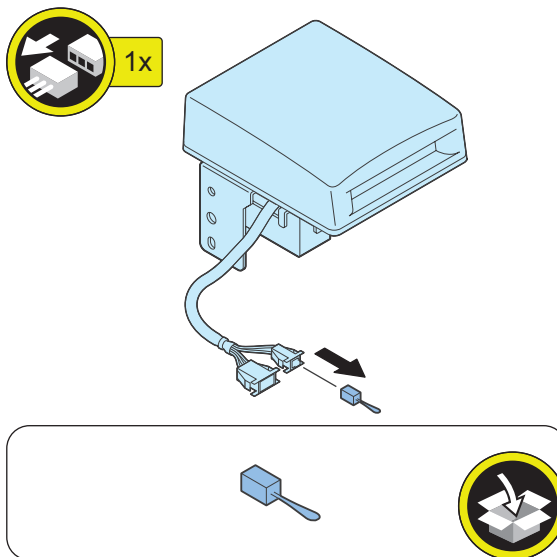
Be sure to place the Harness Band of the Card Reader External Relay Harness inside of the Connector Cover.

□
11.

□
12.



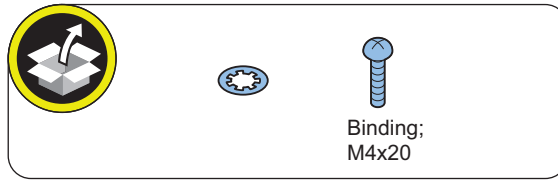
□
13.



□
14.

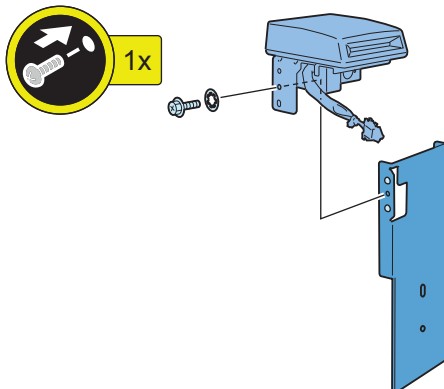
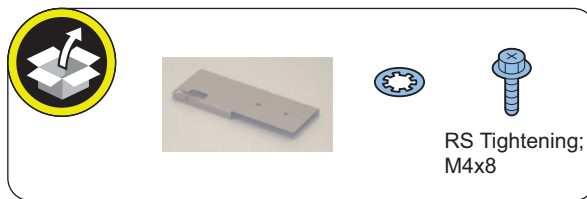
<In the Case of Flat Control Panel>

14-1.

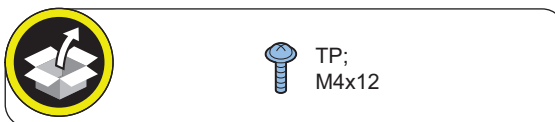


<In the Case of Upright Control Panel>

14-1.



14-2.



□
15.

<In the Case of Flat Control Panel>

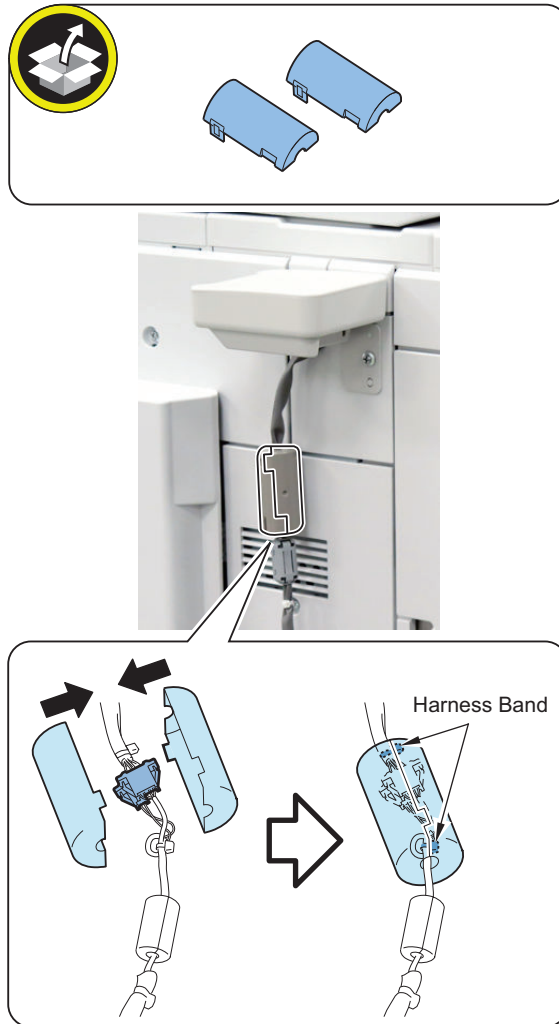


<In the Case of Upright Control Panel>



□
16.**CAUTION:**

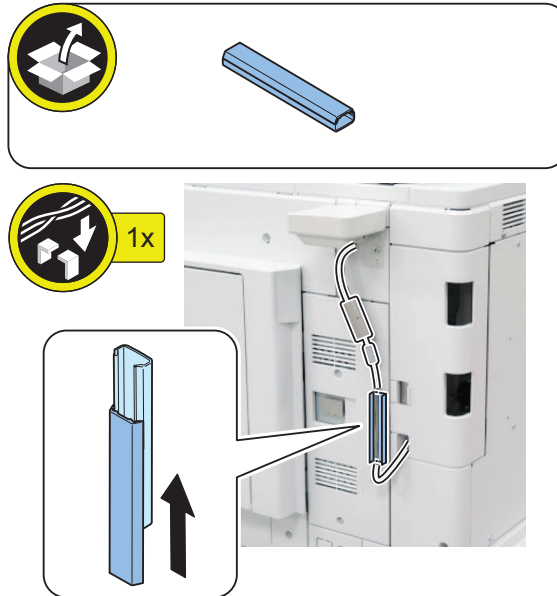
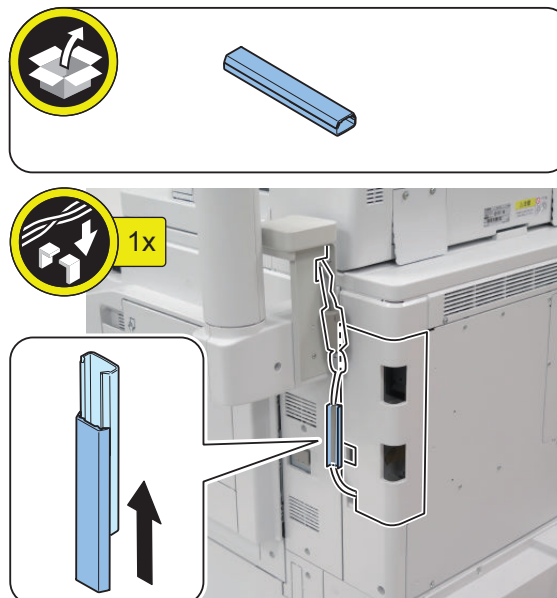
Be sure to place the Harness Band of the Card Reader External Relay Harness inside of the Connector Case.



□
17.

NOTE:

1. Remove the cover of the Cord Guide, and affix it as shown in the figure below.
2. Put the cable through the Cord Guide as shown in the figure below, and install the cover of the Cord Guide.

<In the Case of Flat Control Panel>**<In the Case of Upright Control Panel>**

Checking after Installation

□

1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
2. Turn the main power switch ON.
3. Check the model of the Card Reader in service mode. (Default: 0 "Card Reader-F1")
COPIER > OPTION > ACC > CR-TYPE

-
- 4. Set the number of card (number of department ID) that can be used with the Card Reader in service mode.(Lv.2).**
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > CARD-RNG

-
- 5. Use Service Mode to enter the minimum card number to be used by a user (1 to 2001).**
COPIER > FUNCTION > INSTALL > CARD
Starting from the entered card number, the number of cards set in step 4 can be used.

-
- 6. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting values.**
- 7. Insert a card with a card number that has been registered, and check that the machine operates normally.**

NOTE:

Perform the following operations to change the number of cards (departments) after it has been set. In such a case, counter information for each department is reset.

COPIER > FUNCTION > CLEAR > CARD

- Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the settings.
- After that, perform from step 3.

Serial Interface Kit-K3 / Copy Control Interface Kit-A1

Points to Note at Installation

When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".

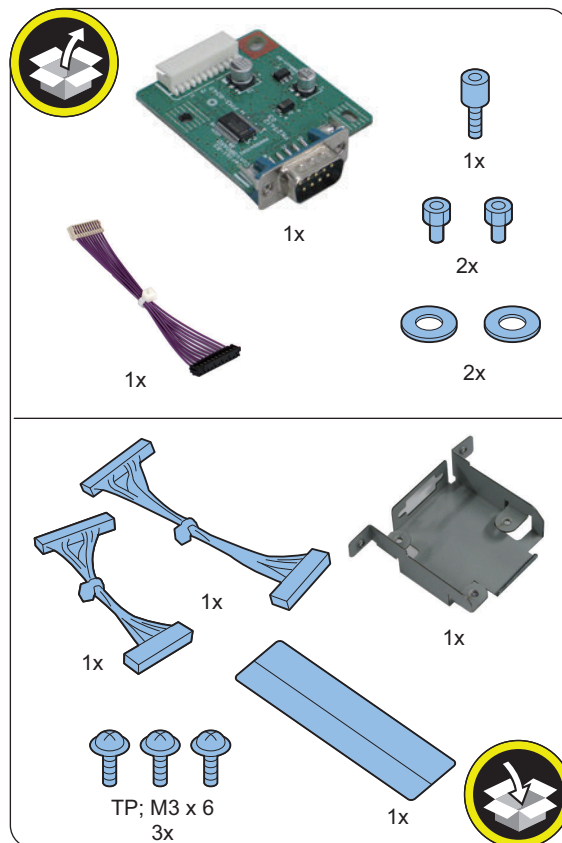
Table of Options Combination

	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit	Voice Operation Kit	Voice Guidance Kit	Copy Card Reader
Serial Interface Kit	-	No	Yes	Yes	No
Copy Control Interface Kit	No	-	Yes	Yes	No

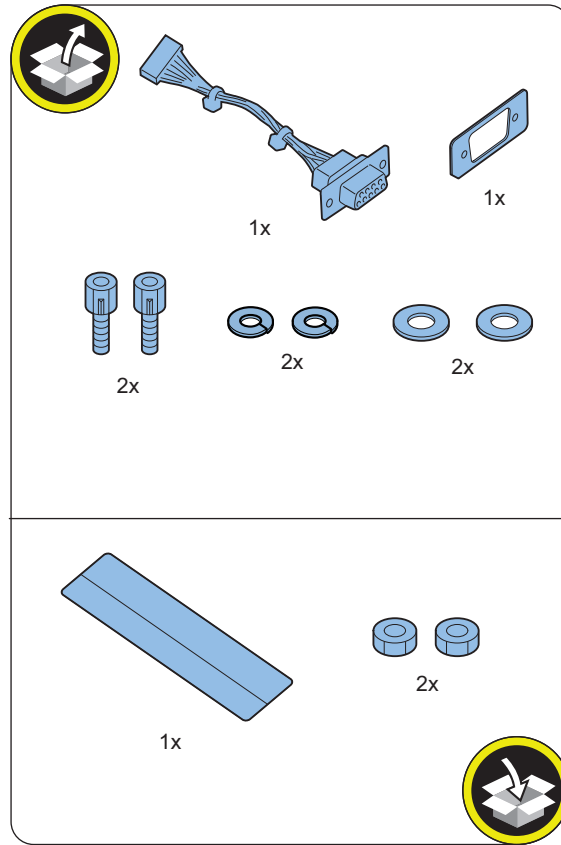
Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents

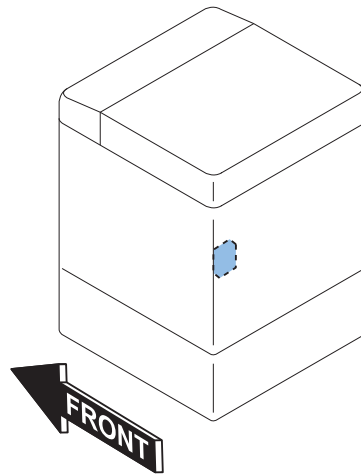
< Serial Interface Kit-K3 >



< Copy Control Interface Kit-A1 >



● Installation Outline Drawing

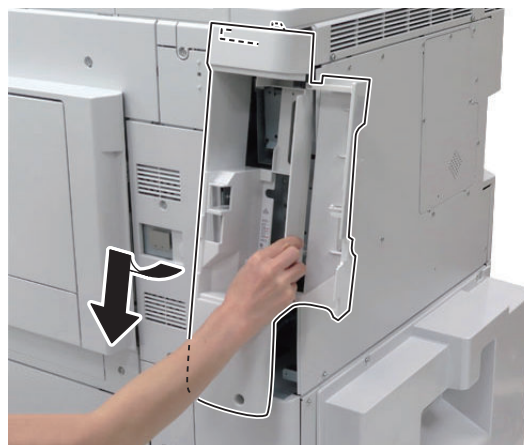
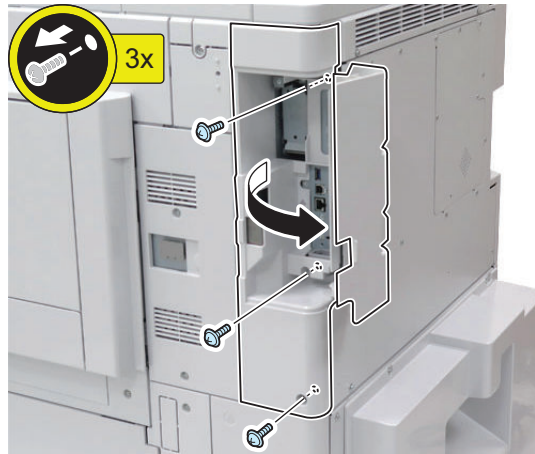


● Installation Procedure

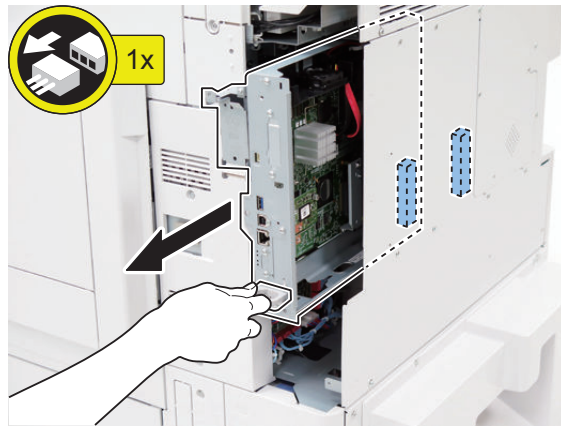
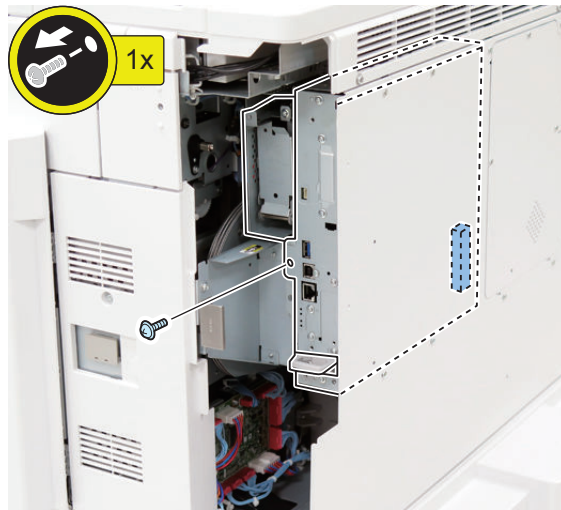
■ Removing the Main Controller PCB

□

1.

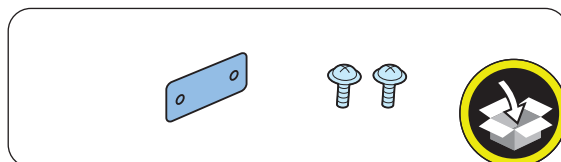
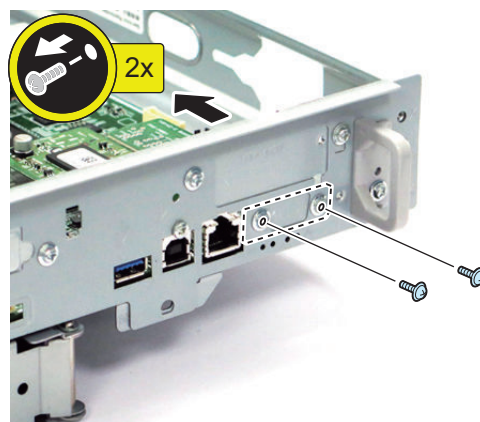


□
2.

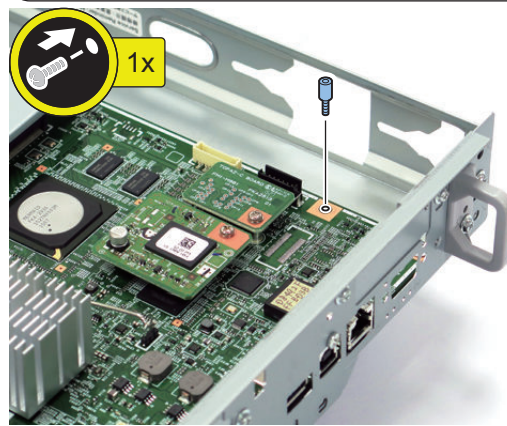
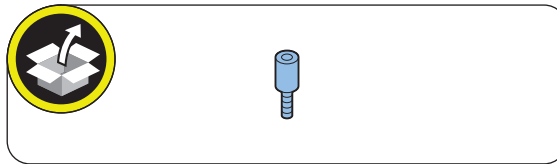
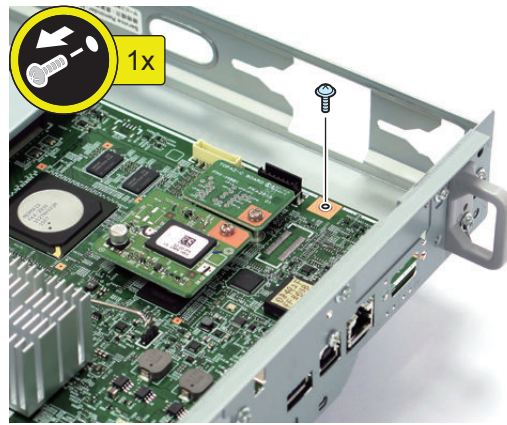


■ Installing the Serial Interface Kit

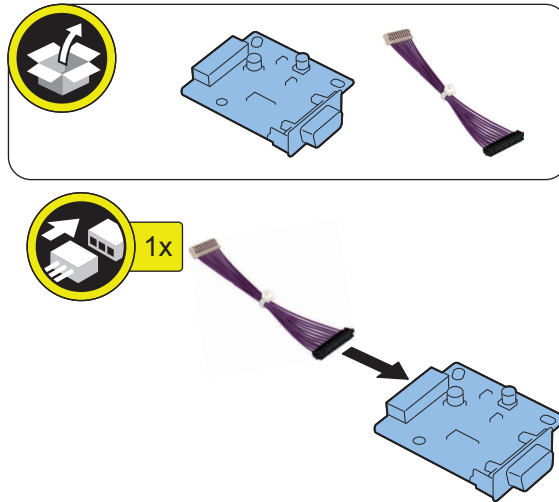
□
1.



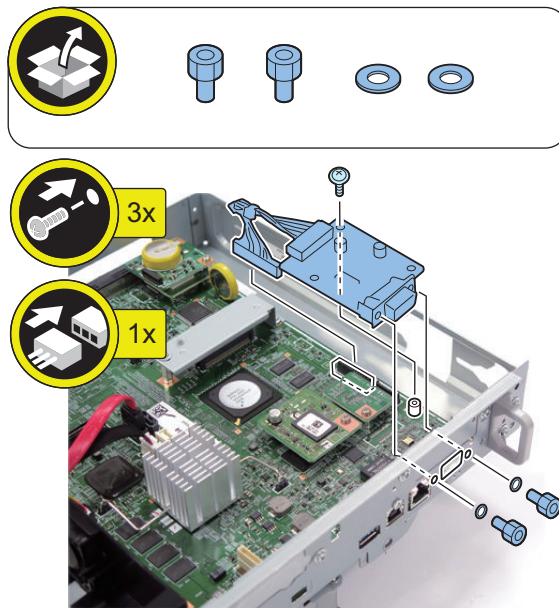
□
2.



NOTE:
Removed screw will be used in step 4.

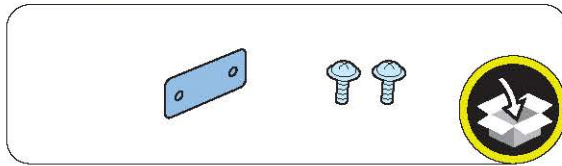
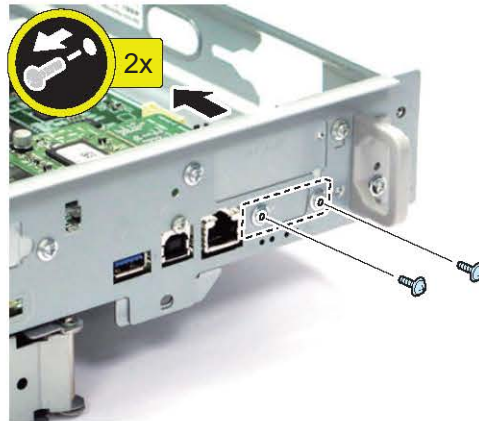
□
3.□
4.

NOTE:
Use the screw removed in step 2.

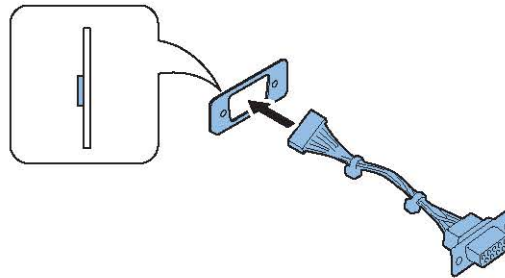
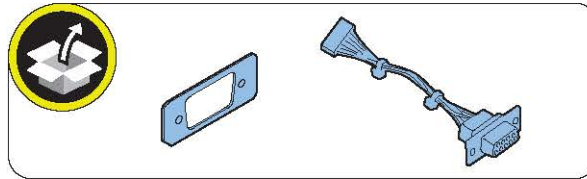


■ Installing the Copy Control interface Kit

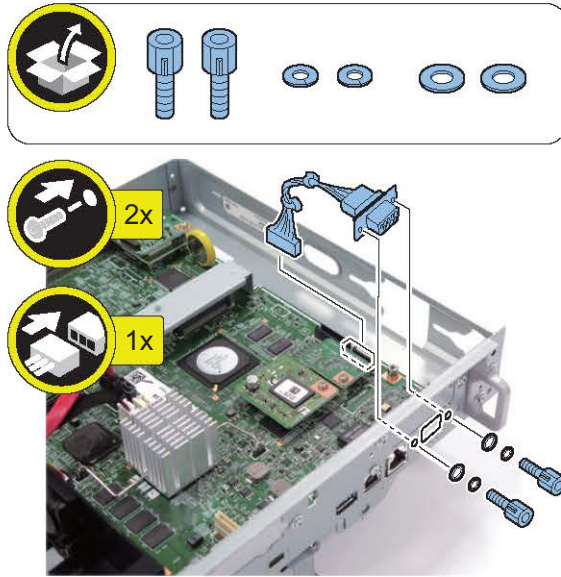
□
1.



□
2.



□
3.

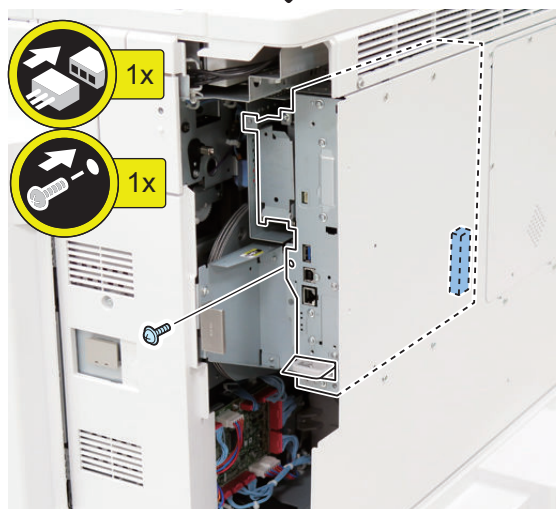
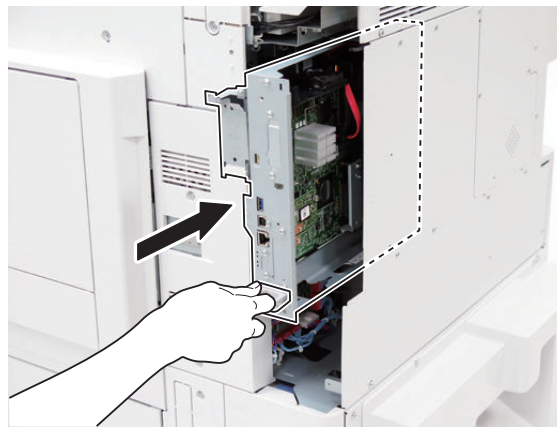
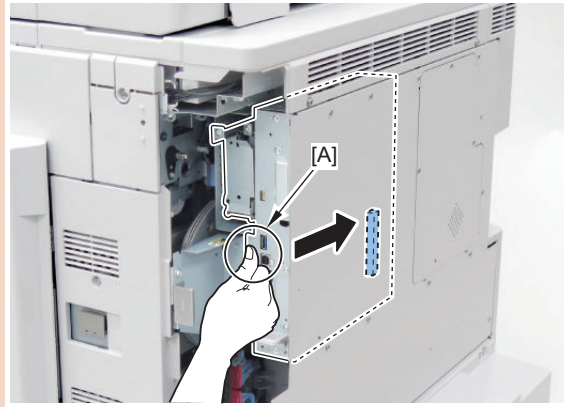


■ Subsequent Work

□
1.

CAUTION:

- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB until it stops.
- Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



□
2.



□
3. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.

□
4. Turn the main power switch ON.

Utility Tray-B1

Points to Note at Installation

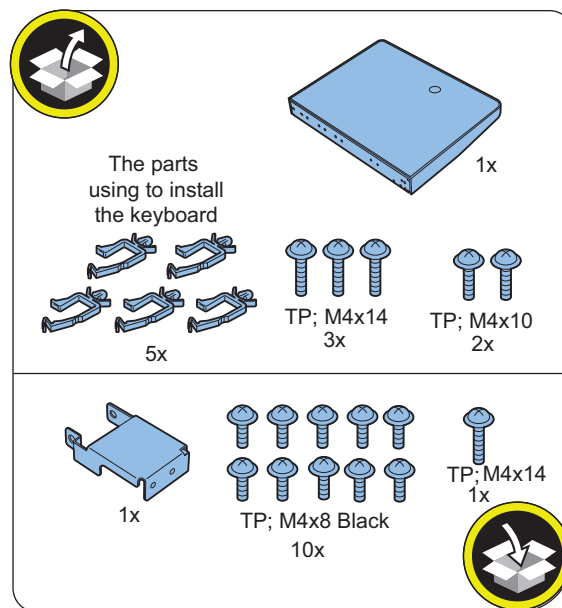
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Table of Options Combination

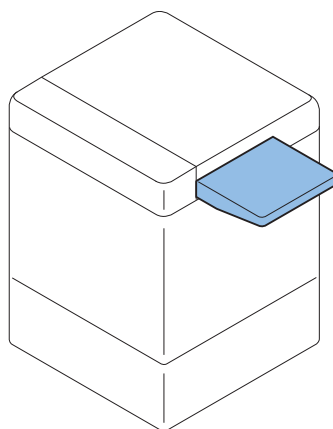
	Voice Operation	Voice Guidance Kit	Copy Card Reader
Utility Tray	No	No	Yes

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents



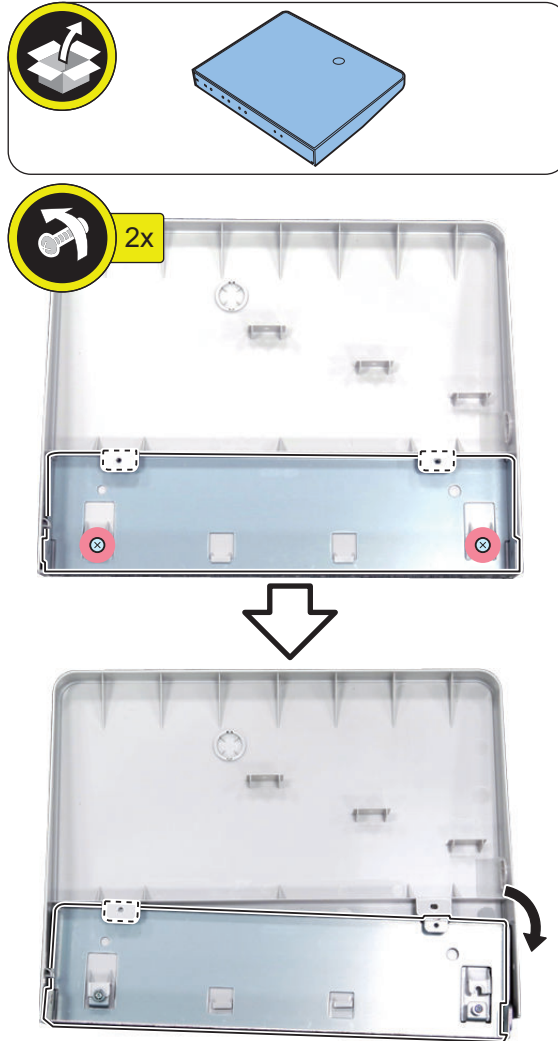
Installation Outline Drawing



Installation Procedure

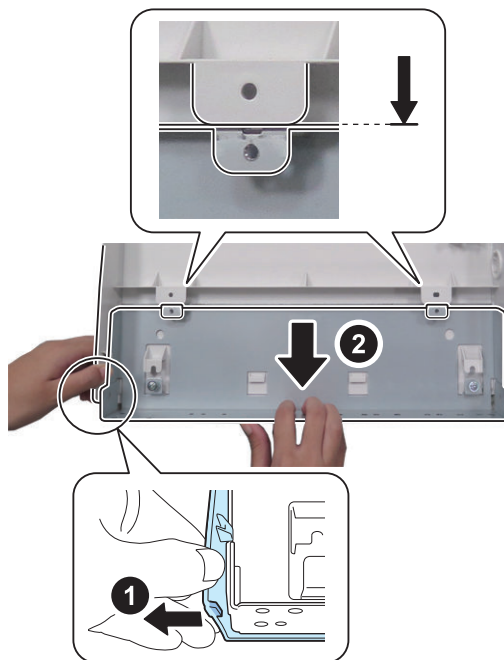
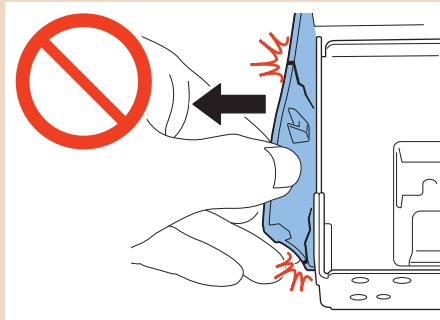
1. Remove the packing tapes from this equipment.

2.



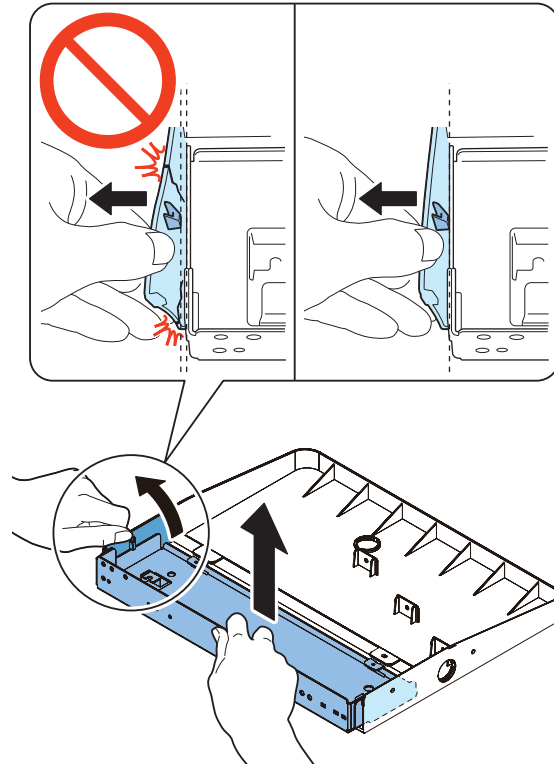
□
3.**CAUTION:**

To avoid damage, do not pull the Utility Tray too much.



□
4.

CAUTION:
To avoid damage, do not pull the Utility Tray too much.

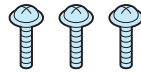
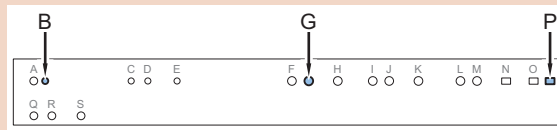


□
5.

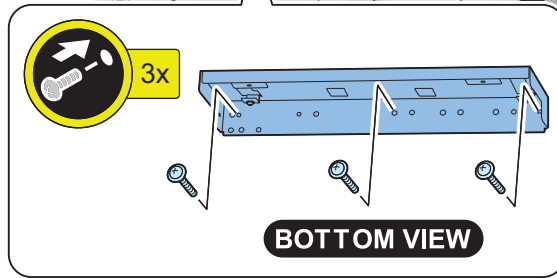
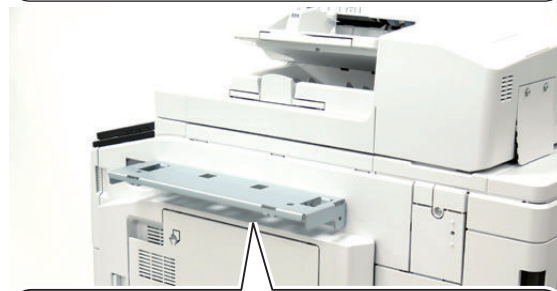


□
6.

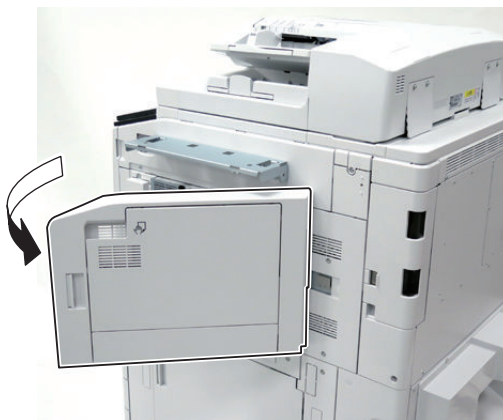
CAUTION:
Be sure to install it by using the holes with the marks B, G, and P.



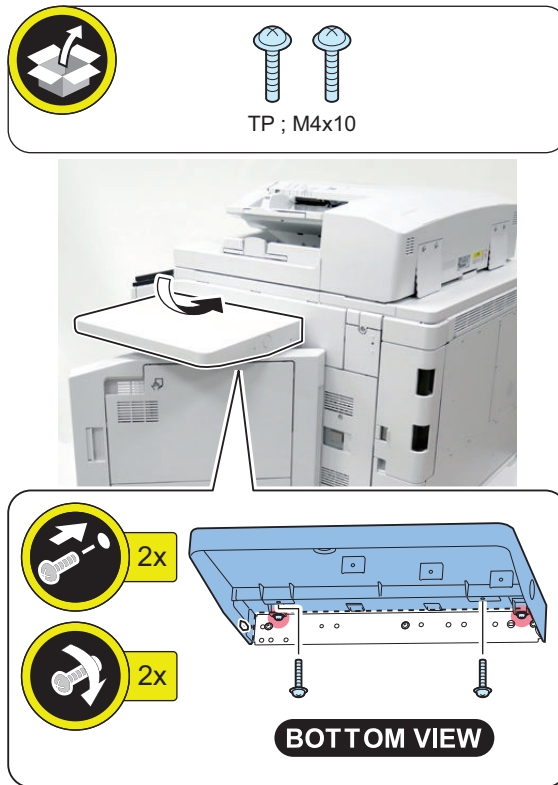
TP ; M4x14



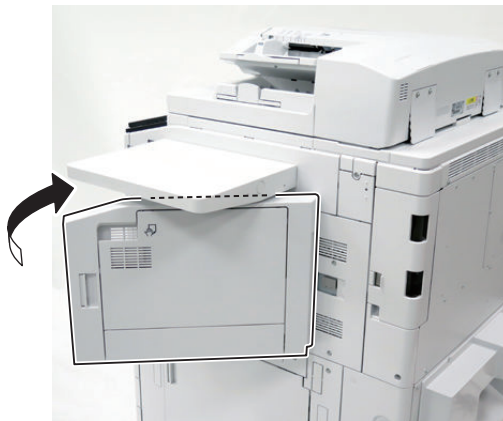
□
7.



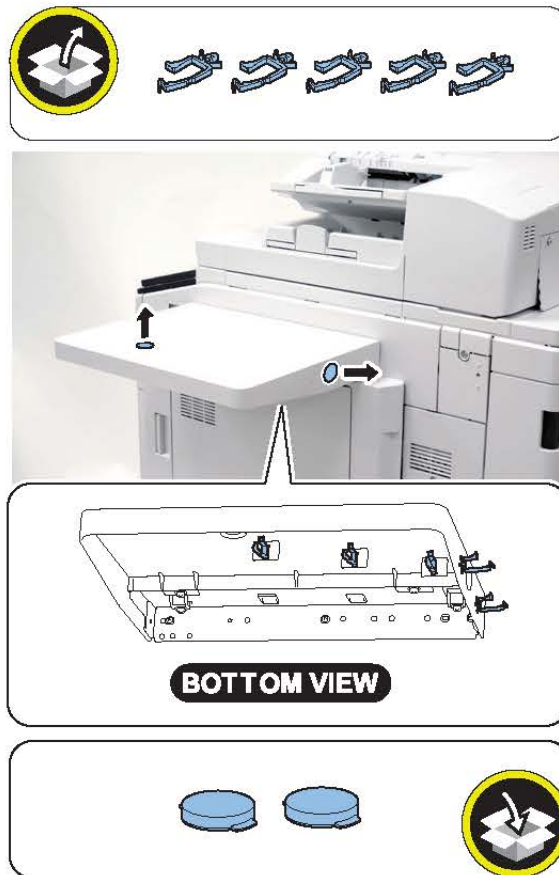
□
8.



□
9.



■ When Installing the USB Keyboard



Voice Operation Kit-D1

Points to Note at Installation

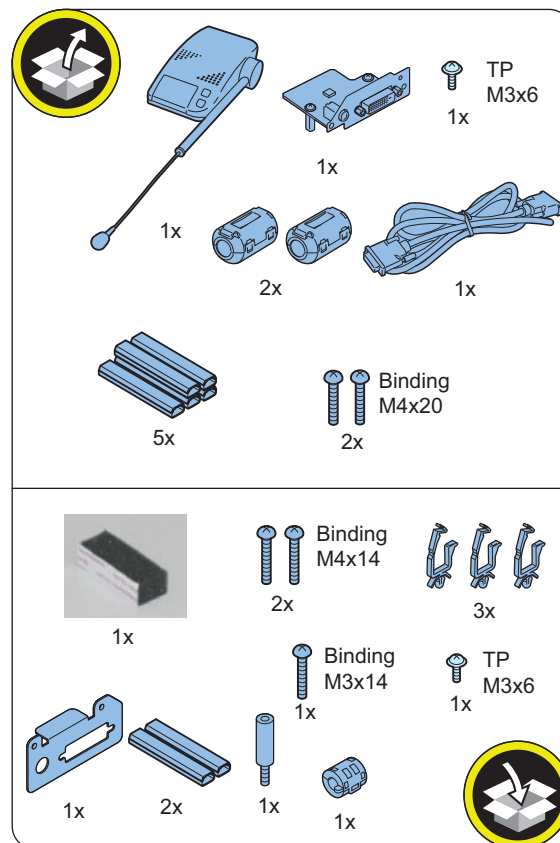
- When installing this equipment, the option Numeric Keypad is required. Refer to the Installation Procedure for the Numeric Keypad when installing the Numeric Keypad.
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Table of Options Combination

	Copy Card Reader	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit	Voice Guidance Kit	Utility Tray
Voice Operation Kit	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

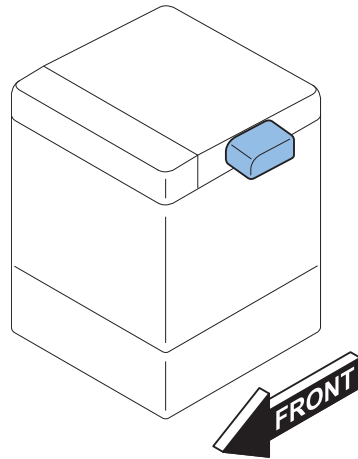
Checking the Contents



<Others>

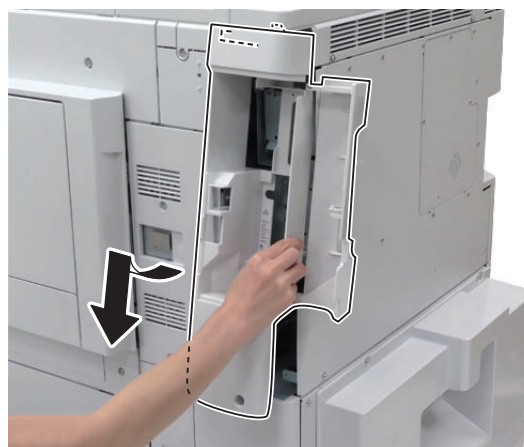
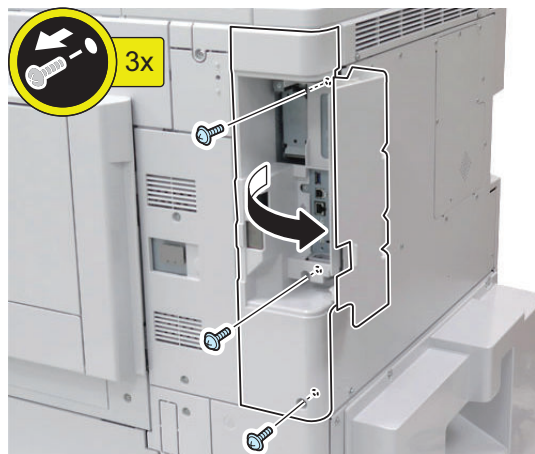
- Including guides

● Installation Outline Drawing

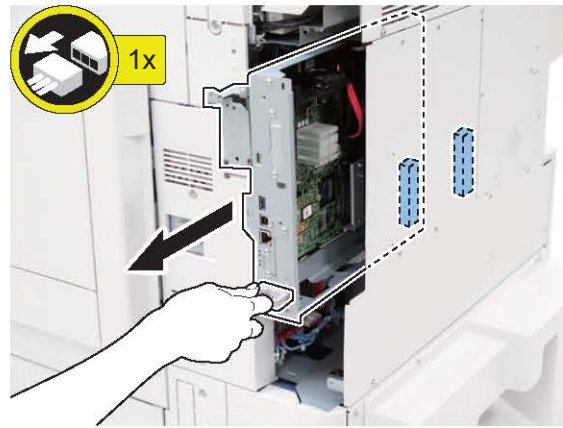
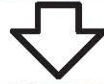


● Installation Procedure

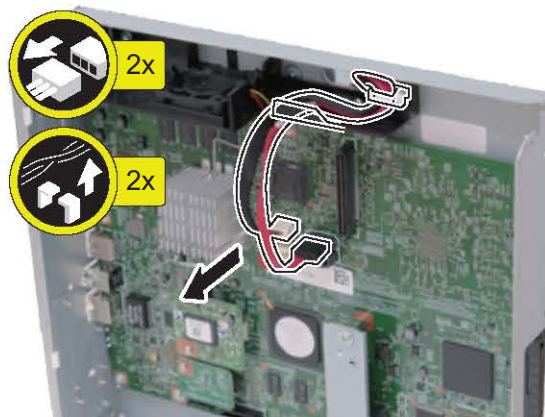
□
1.



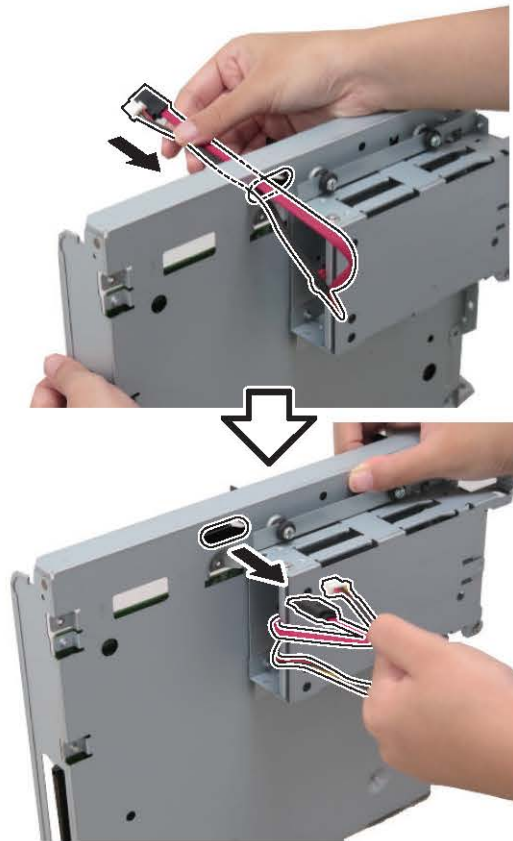
□
2.



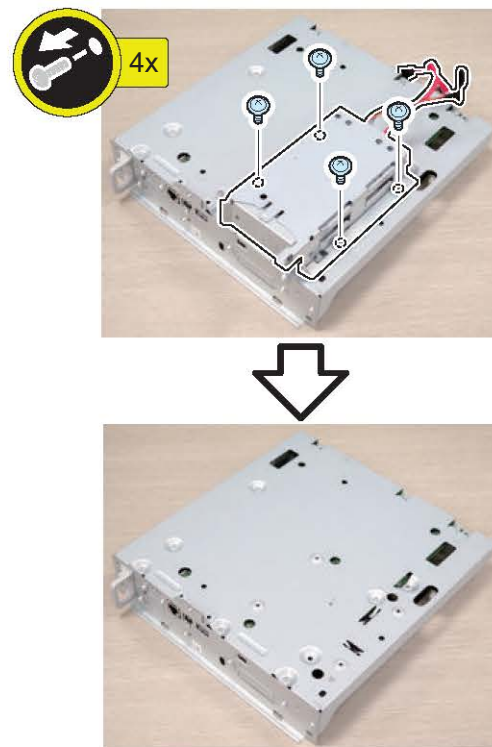
□
3.



□
4.



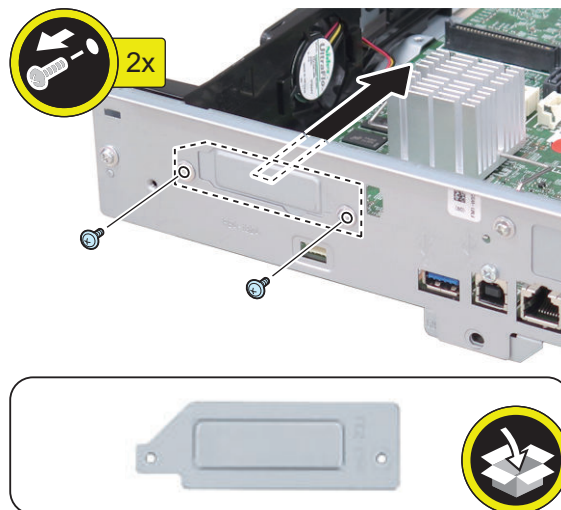
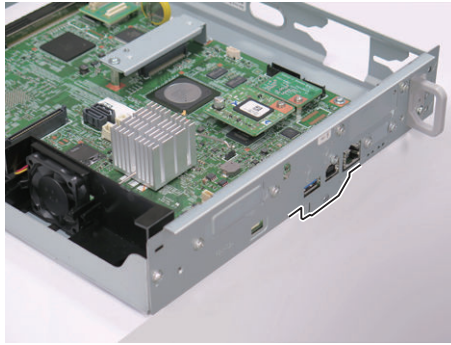
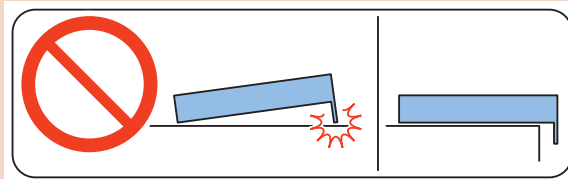
□
5.



□
6.

CAUTION:

Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.

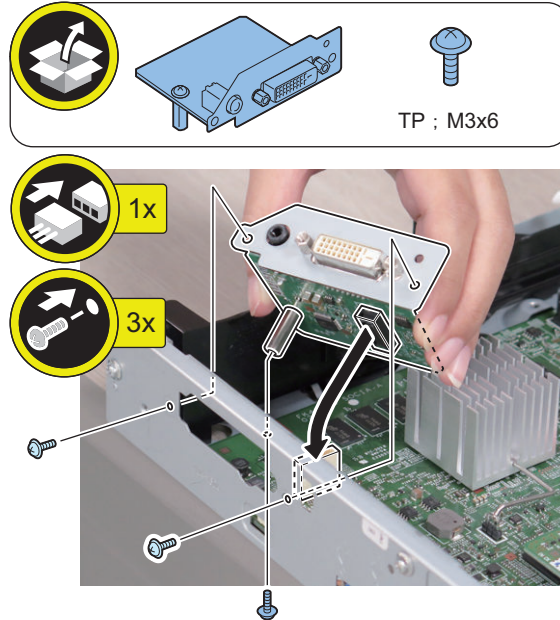
**NOTE:**

Removed screws will be used at later step.

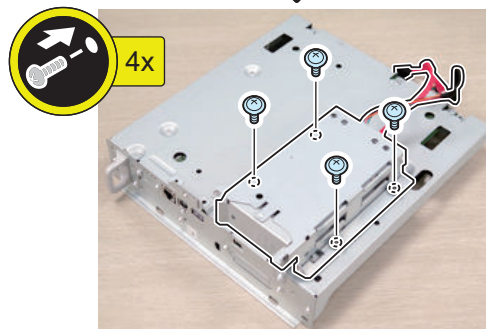
□
7.

NOTE:

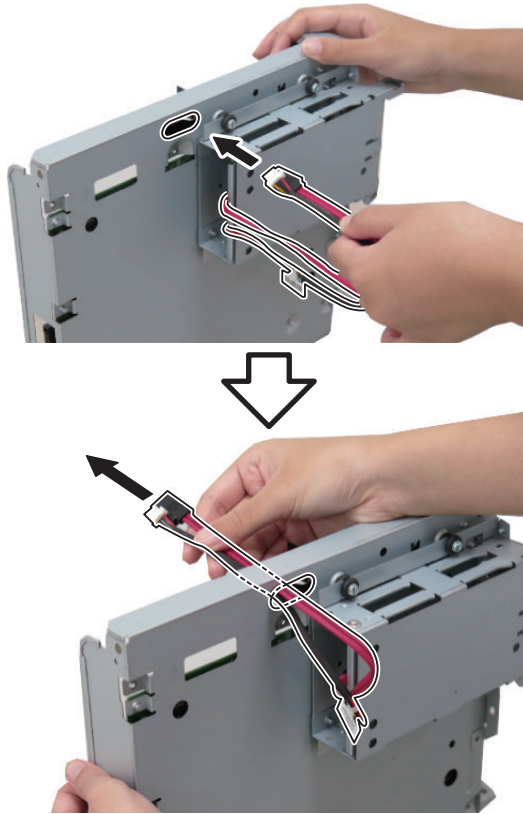
- Use the screw removed in the previous step.
- Check that the connector is connected properly.



□
8.



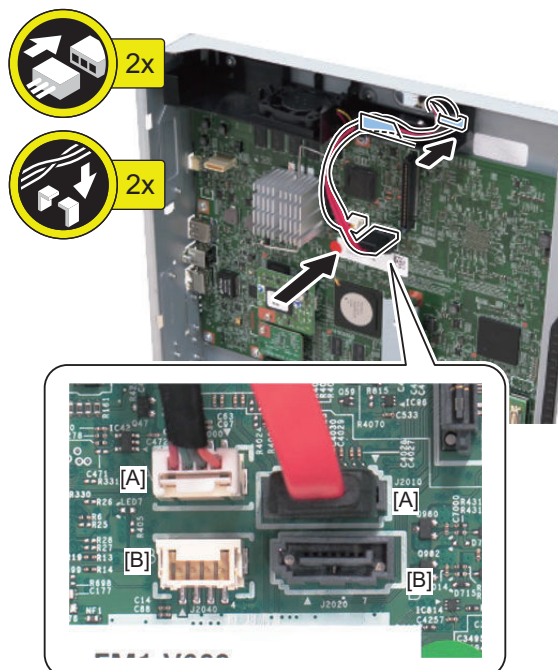
□
9.



□
10.

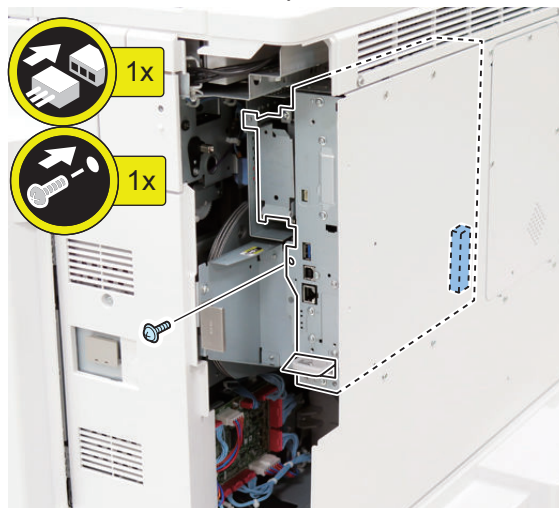
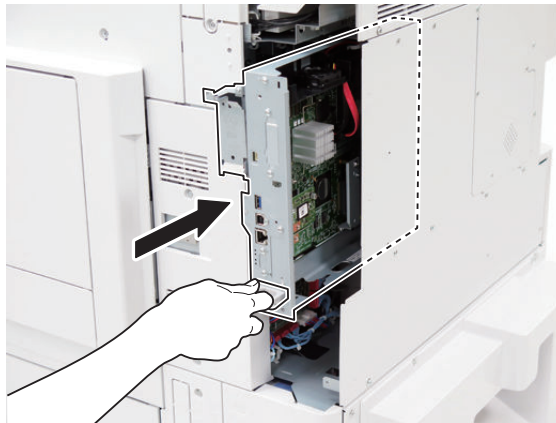
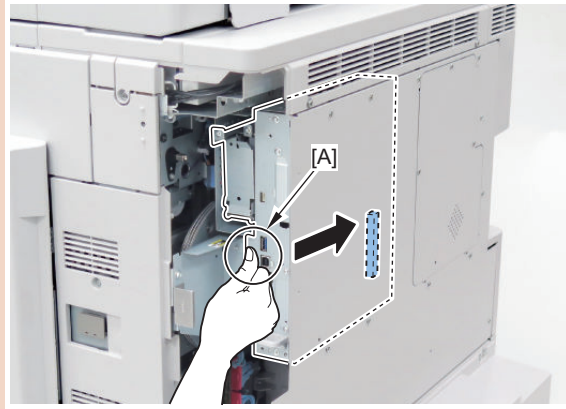
CAUTION:

Connect the Communication Cable (red) and Power Supply Cable to [A] on the Controller PCB.
When the Communication Cable (red) is connected to [B], the HDD error occurs.



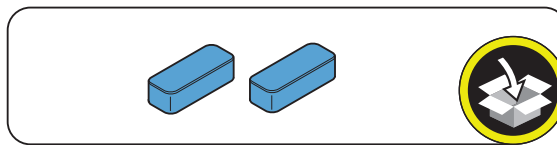
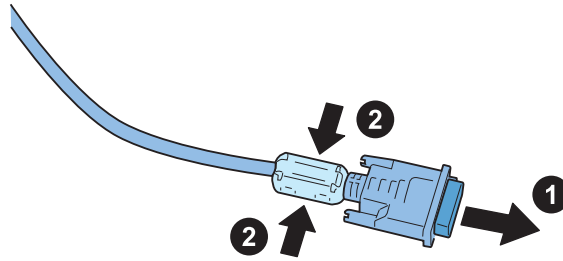
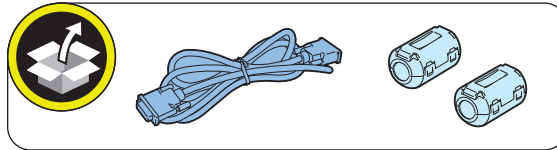
□
11.**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB until it stops.
- Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



□
12.

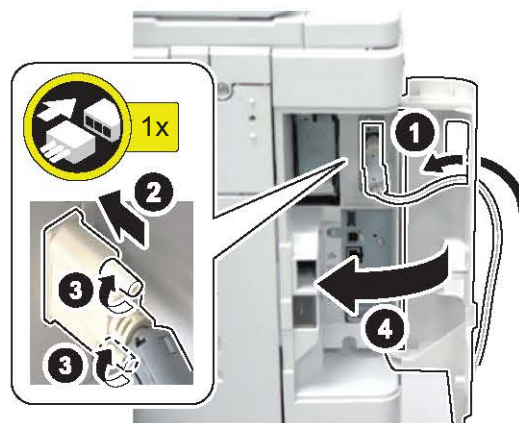
NOTE:
Install both side of the cable.

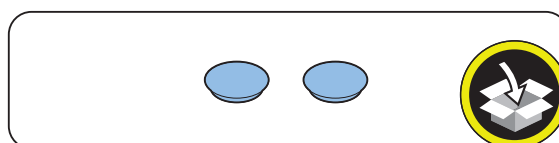
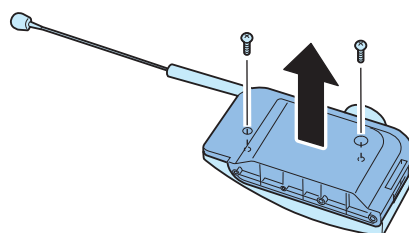
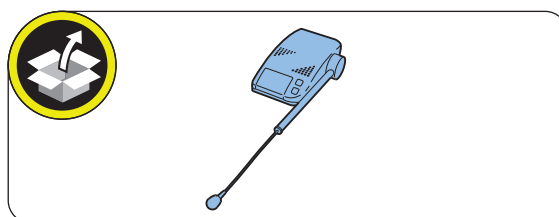


□
13.



□
14.



□
15.□
16.**NOTE:**

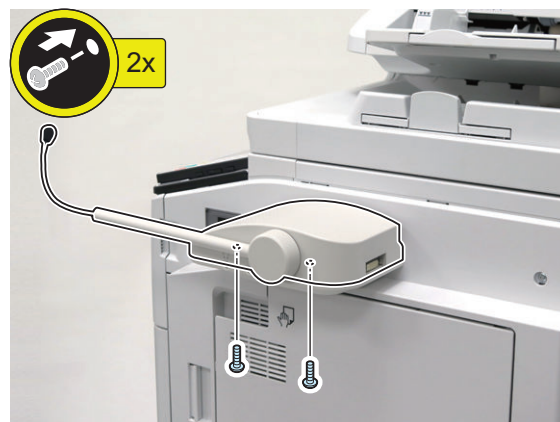
The removed screws will be used in step 18.

□
17.



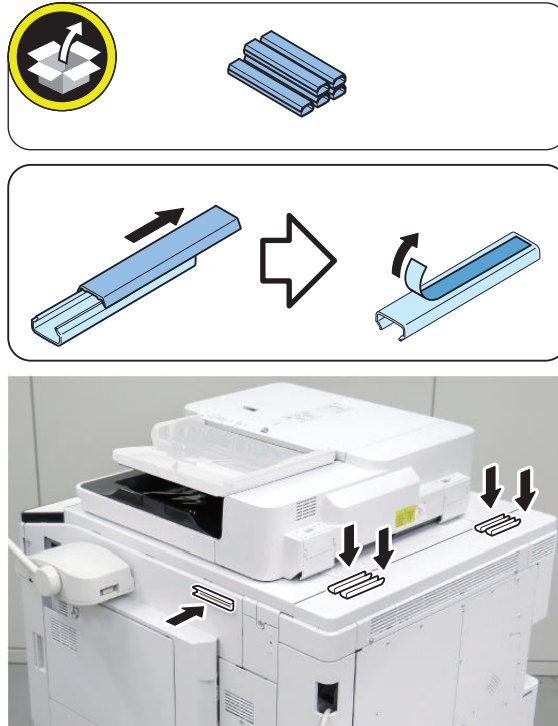
□
18.

NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 16.

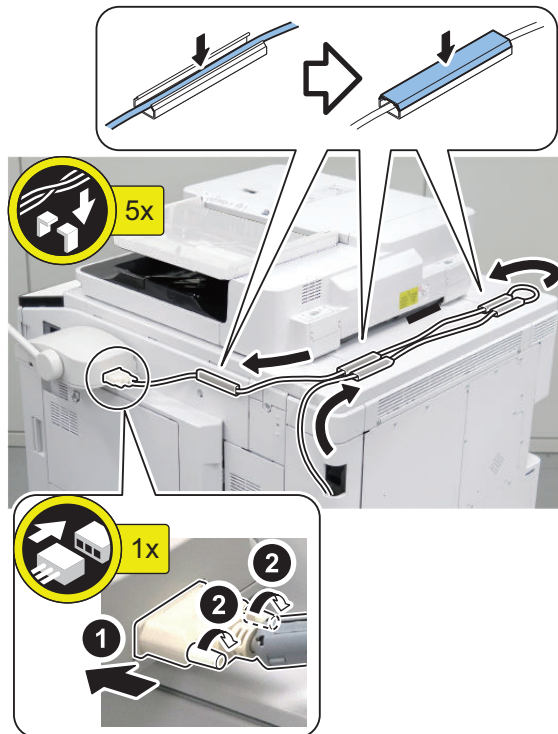


□
19.

NOTE:
Even when used in combination with the Copy Card Reader, the routing of the cable is the same.



□
20.



Checking after Installation

NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

-
1. **Connect the power plug of the host machine to the outlet.**
 2. **Turn ON the main power switch.**
 3. **Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Use Voice Navigation, and check that the setting is ON.**
 4. **Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings > Voice Navigation at Startup, and check that "Select Mode at Startup" is set.**
 5. **Select Settings/Registration > Preferences > Accessibility > Voice Navigation Settings, and check that "Tune Microphone" is displayed.**

Operation Check

■ When Starting to Use

-
1. **Press the Guidance Start button or Voice Recognition button for 3 seconds or longer.**
 2. **In "Select the Voice Navigation type." on the Control Panel screen, select "Manual + Vocal Mode", "Vocal Mode" or "Manual Mode", and press OK.**
 3. **Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Operation Kit" becomes enabled.**

NOTE:

When "Manual Mode" is selected in "Select the Voice Navigation type.", nothing happens by pressing the Voice Recognition button.

■ When Stopping to Use

-
1. **Press the Guidance Start button or Voice Recognition button for 3 seconds or longer.**

Voice Guidance Kit-G1

Points to Note at Installation

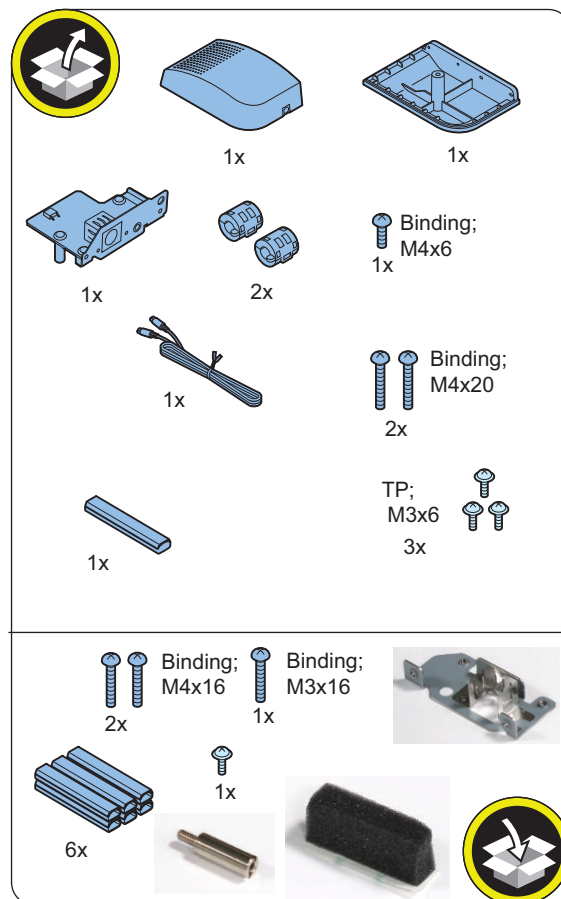
- When installing this equipment, the option Numeric Keypad is required. Refer to the Installation Procedure for the Numeric Keypad when installing the Numeric Keypad.
- When installing this equipment, be sure to install it by referring to "Table of Options Combination".
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

Table of Options Combination

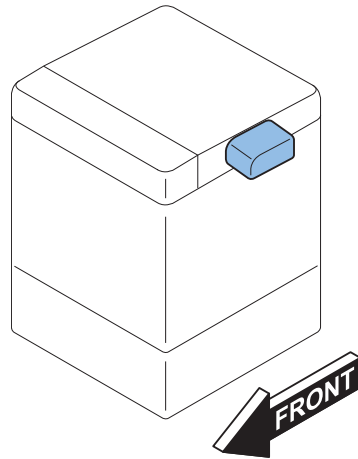
	Copy Card Reader	Serial Interface Kit	Copy Control Interface Kit	Voice Operation Kit	Utility Tray
Voice Guidance Kit	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No

Yes: Available, No: Unavailable

Checking the Contents

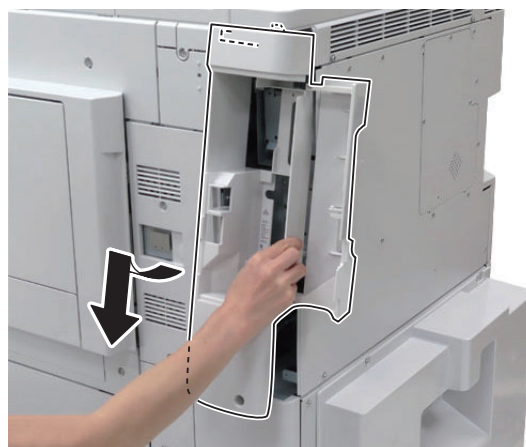
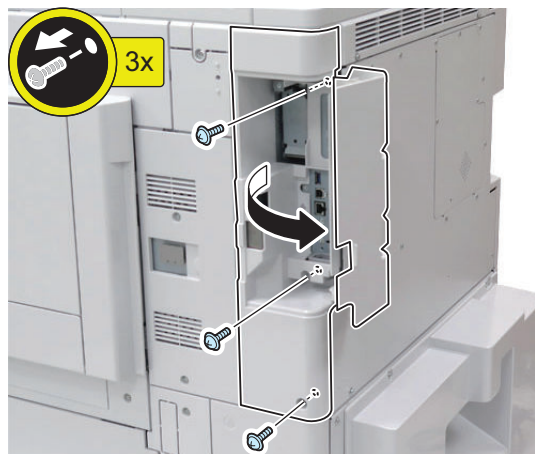


● Installation Outline Drawing

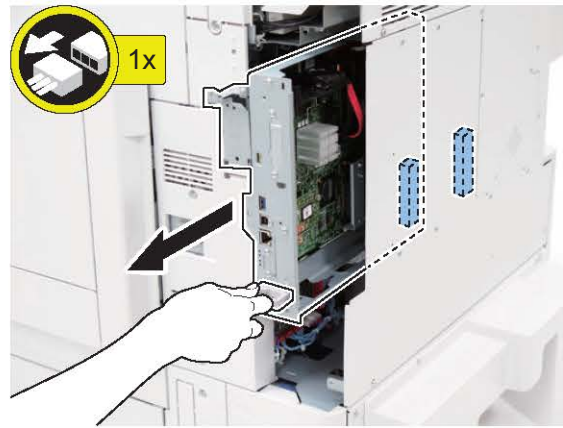
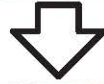


● Installation Procedure

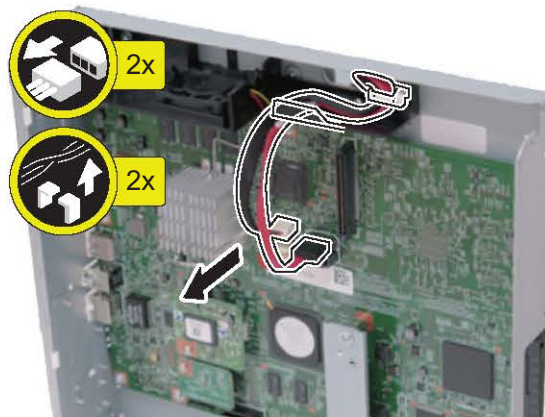
□
1.



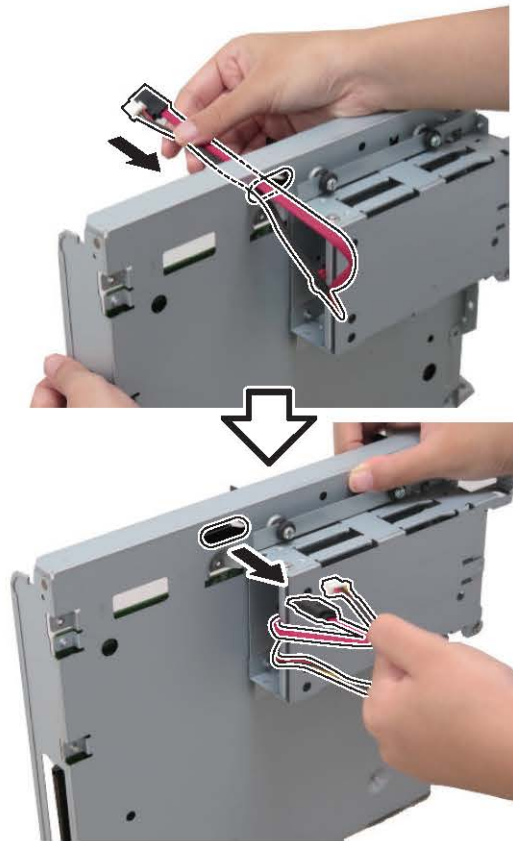
□
2.



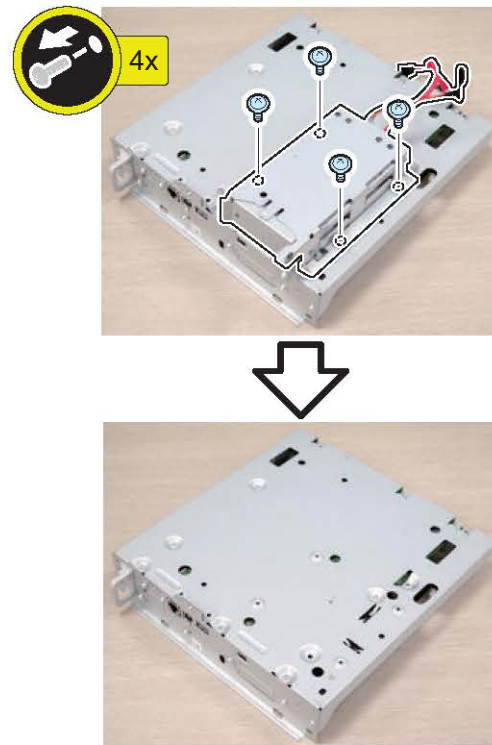
□
3.



□
4.

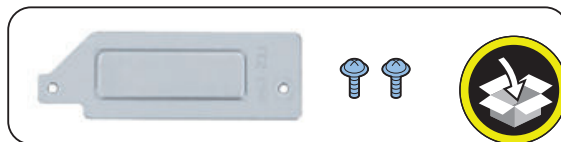
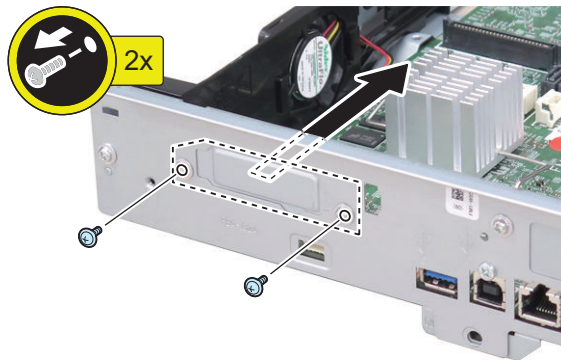
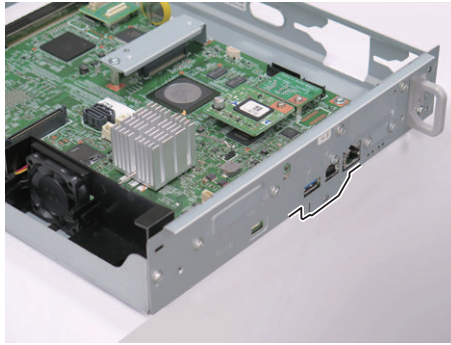
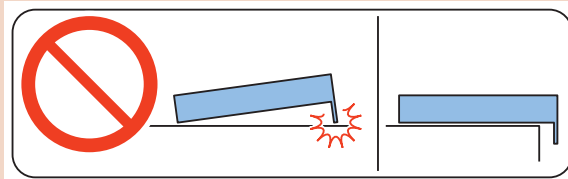


□
5.



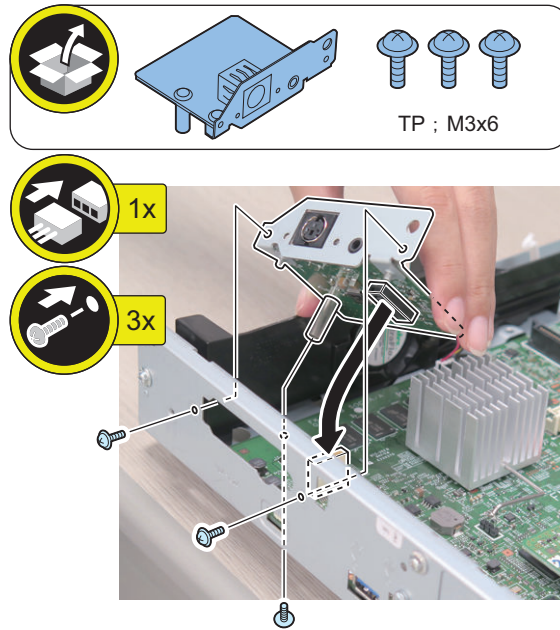
□
6.**CAUTION:**

Be sure to place the removed Main Controller PCB 1 flatly. Reason: Due to the protruded plate, the PCB may be deformed if work is performed while it is placed at an angle.

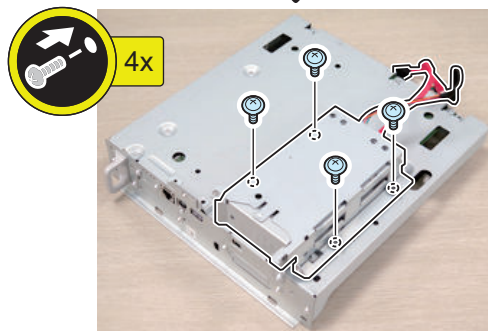


□
7.

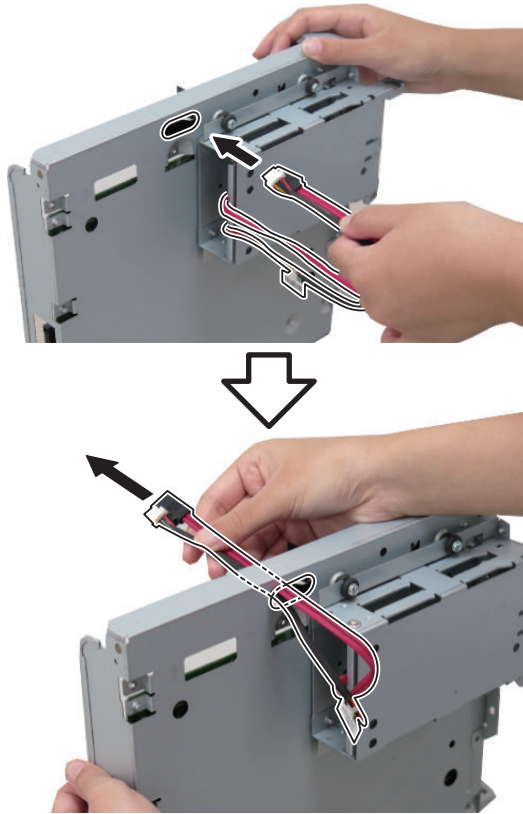
NOTE:
Check that the connector is connected properly.



□
8.



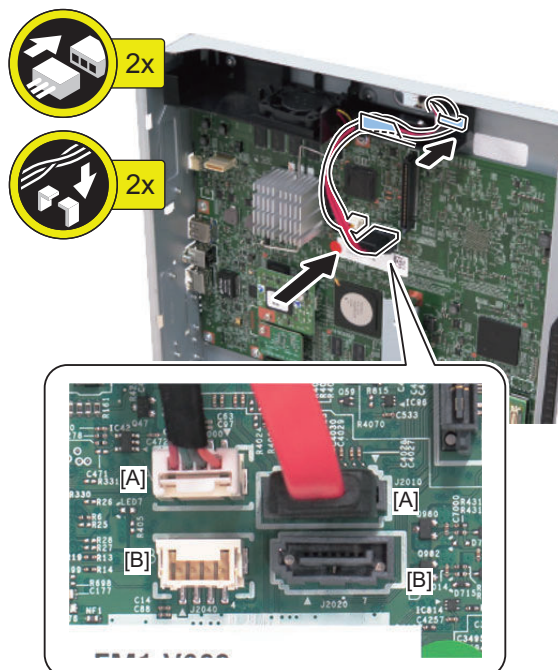
□
9.



□
10.

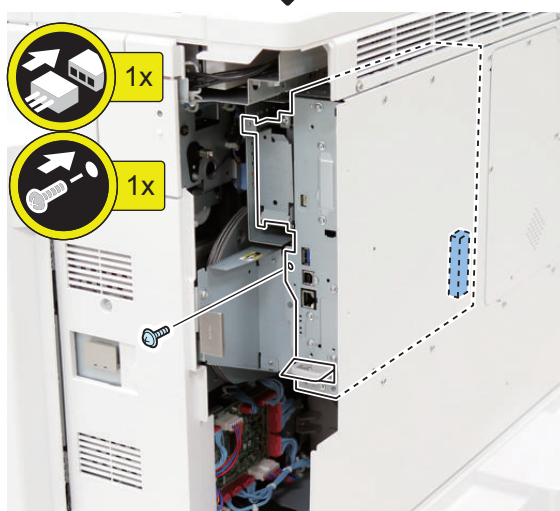
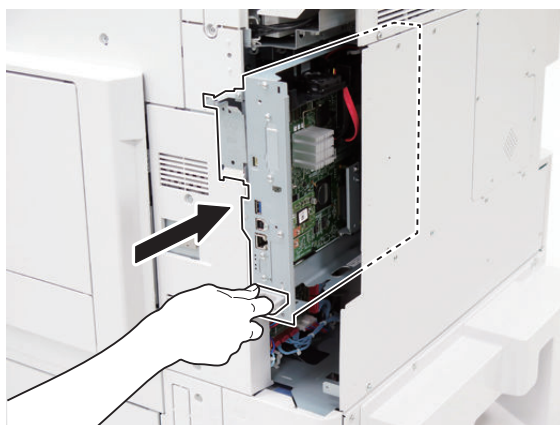
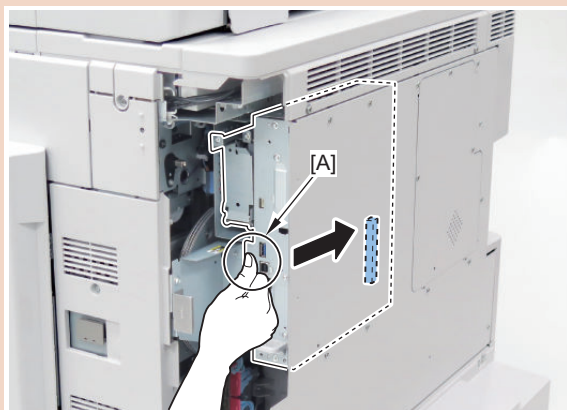
CAUTION:

Connect the Communication Cable (red) and Power Supply Cable to [A] on the Controller PCB.
When the Communication Cable (red) is connected to [B], the HDD error occurs.



□
11.**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB until it stops.
- Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



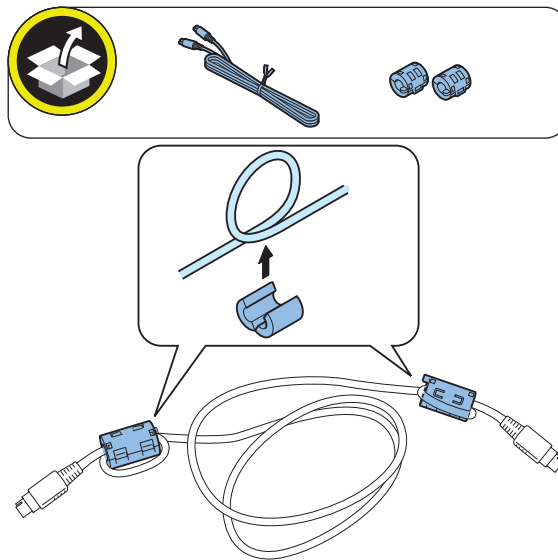
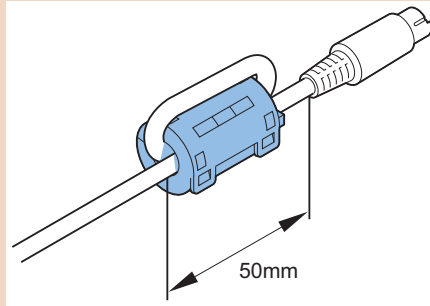
□
12.



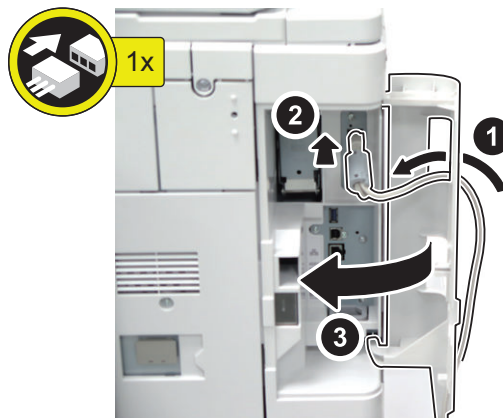
□
13.

CAUTION:

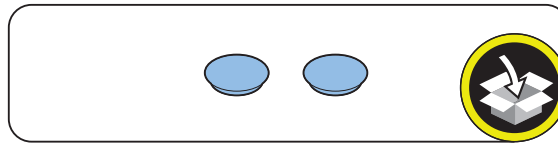
Be sure to attach the Ring Cores within 50 mm from the end of the Speaker Cable.



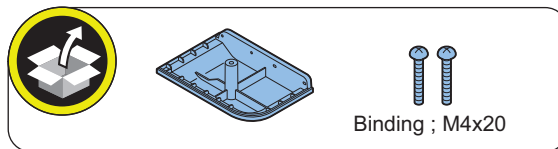
□
14.



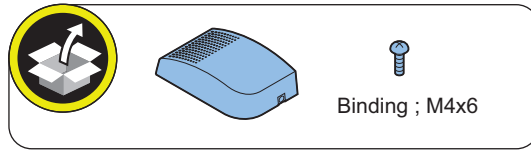
□
15.



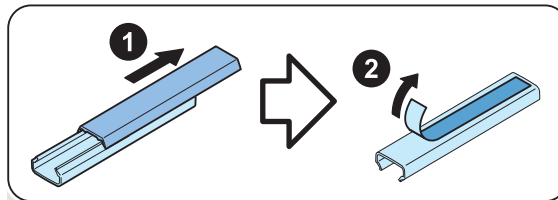
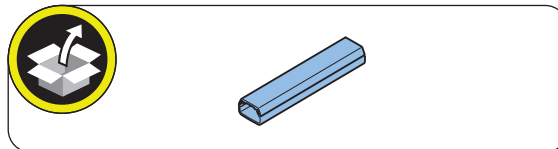
□
16.



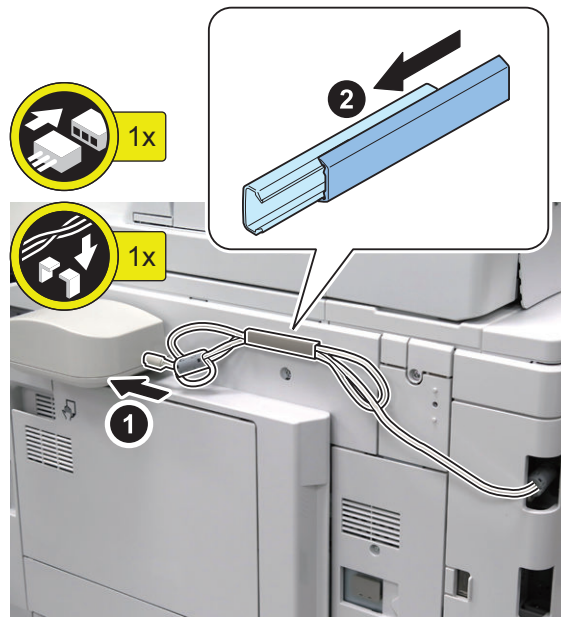
□
17.



□
18.



19.



Checking after Installation

NOTE:

When changing the settings upon user's request, it is required to log in as a system manager in accordance with instructions from the user administrator.

1. Connect the power plug of the host machine to the power outlet.
2. Turn the main power switch ON.
3. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Accessibility] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Use Voice Navigation], and check that the setting is [ON].
4. Select [Settings/Registration] > [Preferences] > [Accessibility] > [Voice Navigation Settings] > [Voice Guide from Speakers], and check that the setting is ON.

Operation Check

NOTE:

Perform the following check from the Voice Recognition button on the numeric keypad.

■ When Using

1. Press the Voice Guidance Start button.
2. Once the indication on the screen is framed in red, the "Voice Guidance Kit" becomes enabled.

■ When Stopping to Use



1. **Press the Voice Guidance Start button.**

Super G3 FAX Board-AS1

Product Name



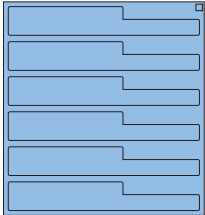

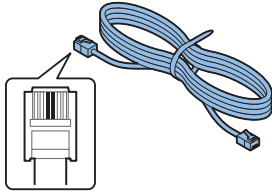
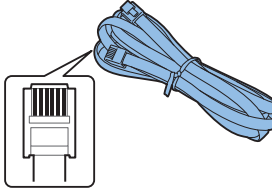
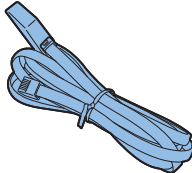
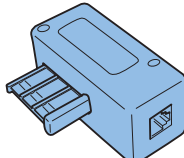
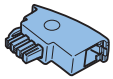
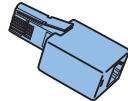

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632501

Points to Note at Installation

- When installing the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board and this equipment at the same time, after checking "Checking the Contents", and install them following the Installation Procedure for Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- For "Checking the Operation", refer to this document.

Checking the Contents

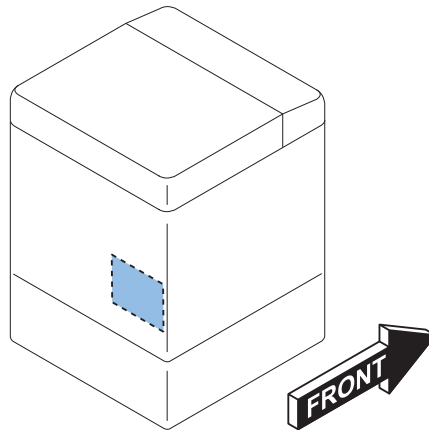
<input type="checkbox"/> [1] FAX Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Fax Approval Label X 1 Included for USA and Taiwan 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Telephone Cord (6 Contact type) (only for Europe) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] PTT Cable (only for Asia) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PTT Plug (Only for France) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Plug (Only for Germany) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] PTT Plug (Only for U.K.) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Modular Cover (only for Europe) X 1 	

* These are not used with this machine.

< Others >

- Including guides

● Installation Outline Drawing

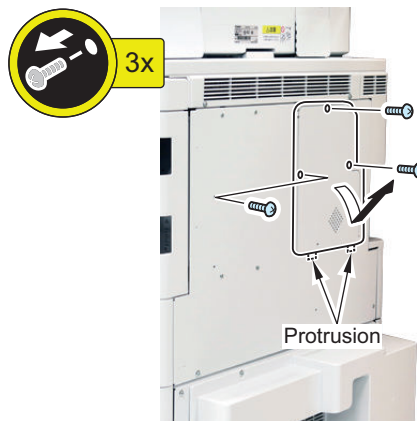


● Installation Procedure



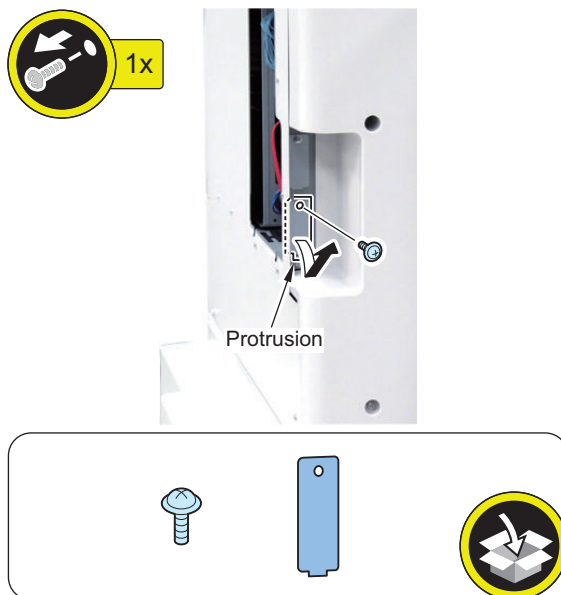
1. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



**2. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed parts will not be used.)**

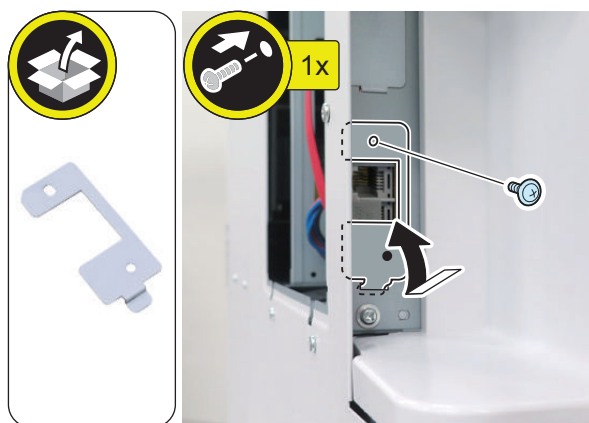
- 1 Screw(used in the next step only in EUR)
- 1 Protrusion

**NOTE:**

This step is only for Europe.

3. Install the Modular Cover.

- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in the previous step)



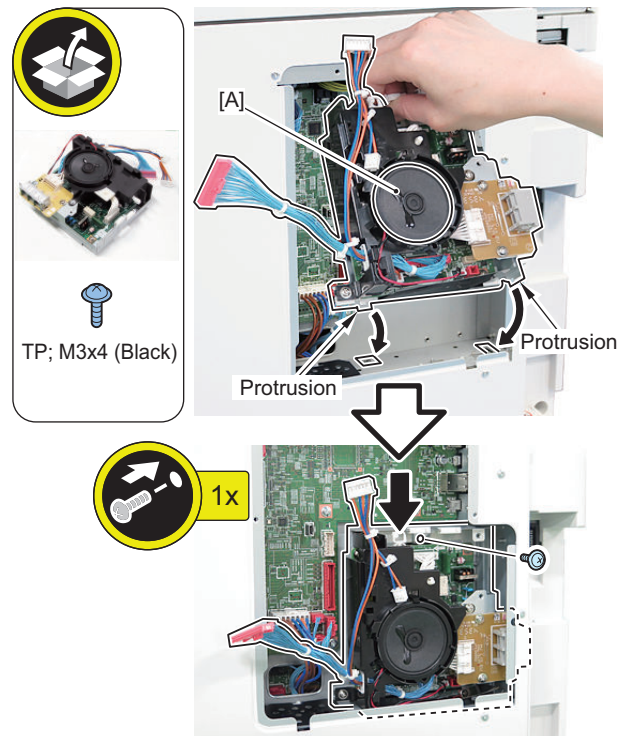


4. Remove the tape and, install the Fax Unit.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4: Black)

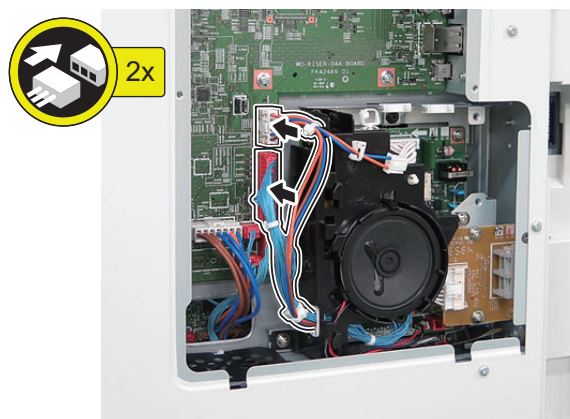
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



5. Connect the 2 cables of the FAX Unit.

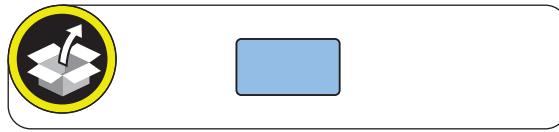
- 2 Connectors



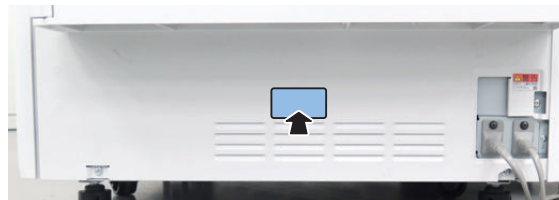
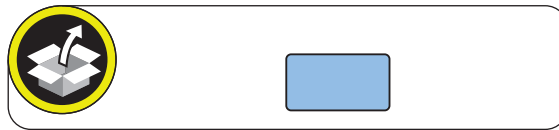


6. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

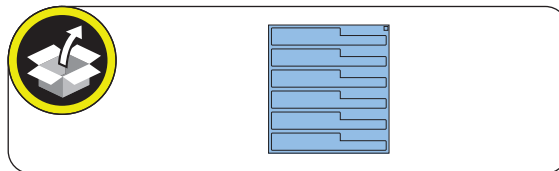
- For USA



- For Taiwan



7. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.

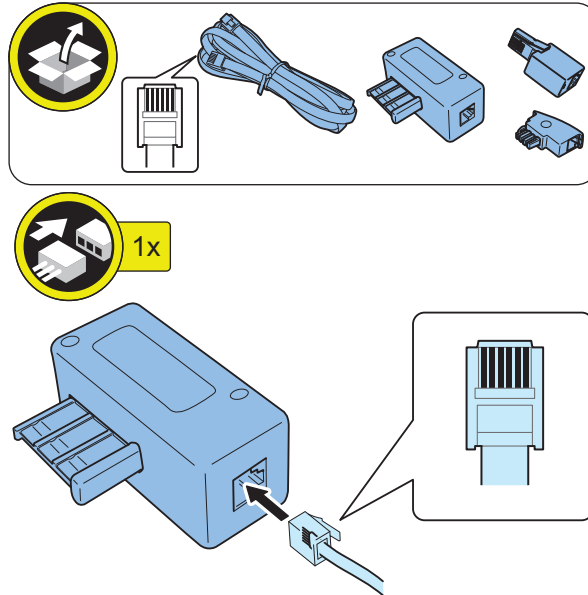


**NOTE:**

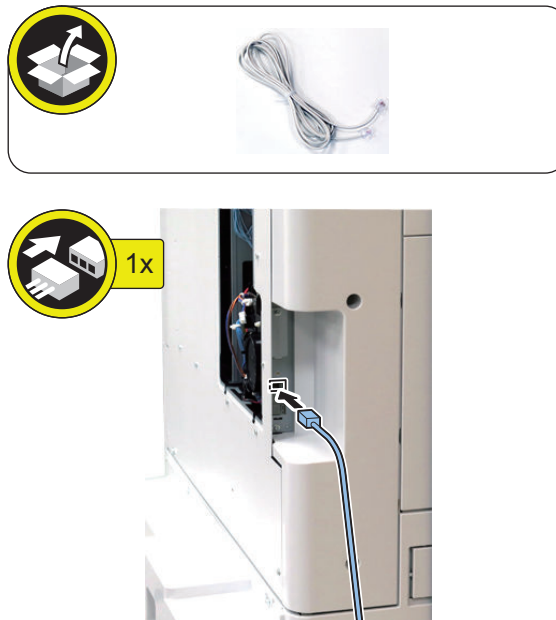
This step is only for Europe.

Do not connect the Telephone Cord (2 contact type) with the PTT Plug.

8. Connect the PTT Plug matched the field or area to the PTT Cable (6 contact type).

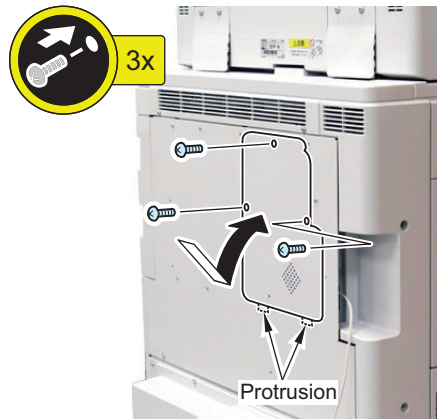


9. Connect the end of the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



**10. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws

**11. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.****12. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

Checking the Operation

■ Type Setting

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



- 1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**
FAX > TYPE > TYPE
- 2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

- 3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

■ Basic Setting

NOTE:

- When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.
- This setting can also be set from the Setup Guide ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide]).

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter the fax number > [OK]

2. Set Type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Send/Fax display.

2. Send the test document from this machine to another machine that can handle the communication test to check that this machine can send the data correctly.

3. Send the test document from the target to this machine to check if the machine can receive the document properly.

Super G3 FAX Board-AS2

Product Name



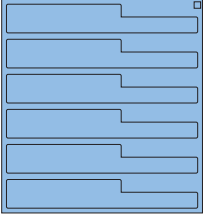

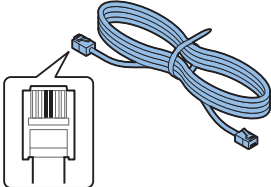
Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632501

Points to Note at Installation

- When installing the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board and this equipment at the same time, after checking "Checking the Contents", and install them following the Installation Procedure for Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- For "Checking the Operation", refer to this document.

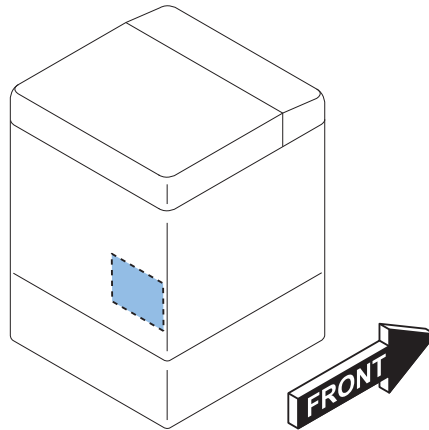
Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] FAX Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Fax Approval Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 	

< Others >

- Including guides

Installation Outline Drawing

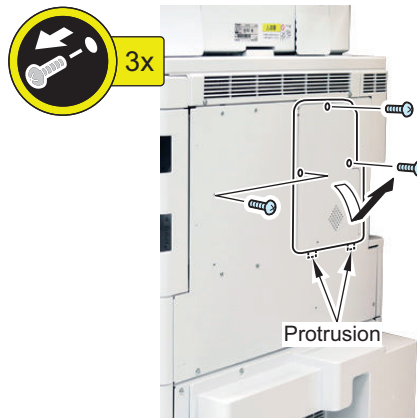


Installation Procedure



1. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

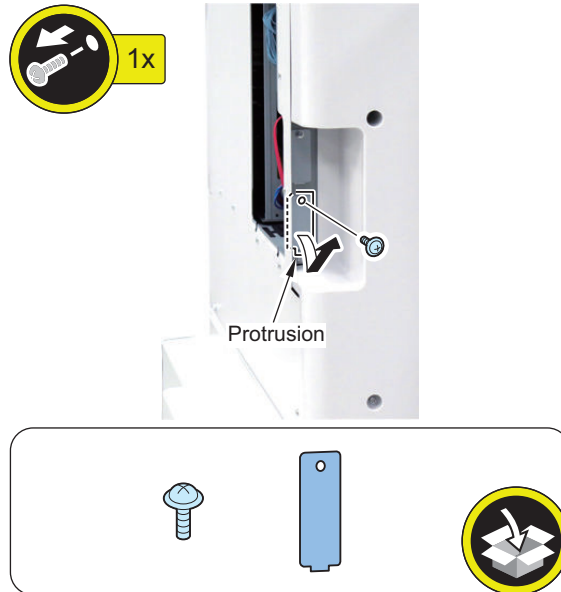
- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions





2. Remove the Face Cover. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

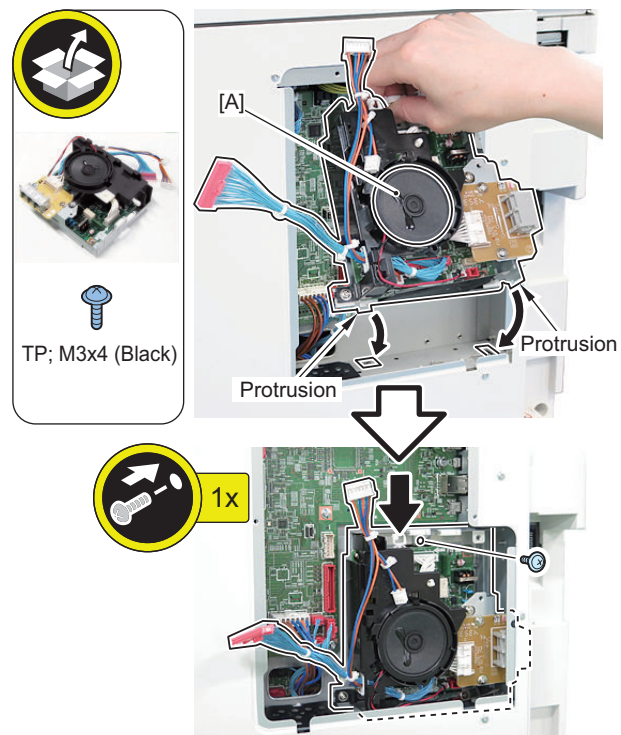


3. Remove the tape and, install the Fax Unit.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4: Black)

CAUTION:

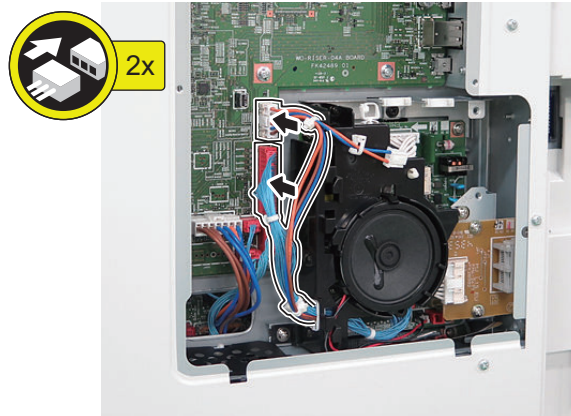
- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



□

4. Connect the 2 cables of the FAX Unit.

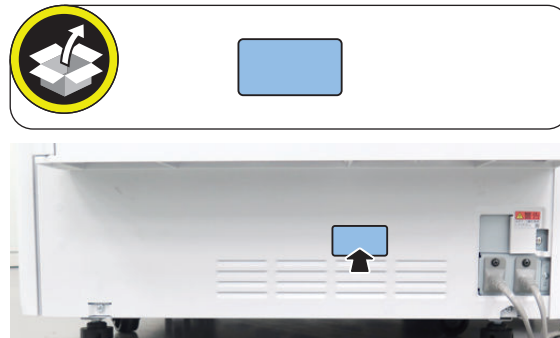
- 2 Connectors



□

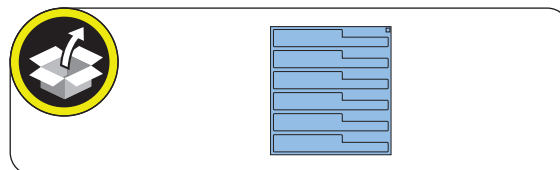
5. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

- For USA



□

6. Affix the appropriate Modular Label to the place shown in the figure.



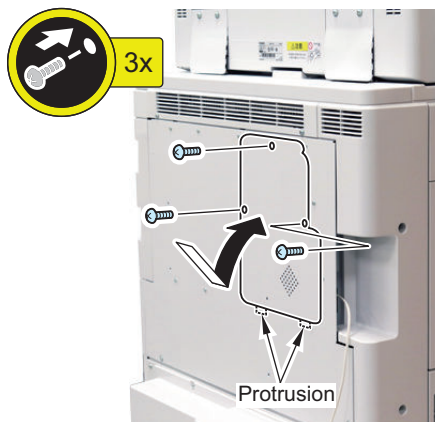


7. Connect the end of the Telephone Cord to the modular jack on the Host machine, and connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



8. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



9. Connect the Power Plug to the outlet.



10. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

Checking the Operation

■ Type Setting

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. **From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**
FAX > TYPE > TYPE
2. **Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".**
COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.**

■ Basic Setting

NOTE:

- When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.
- This setting can also be set from the Setup Guide ([Settings/Registration] > [Management Settings] > [License/Other] > [Start Setup Guide]).

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. **Set the user telephone number.**
[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter the fax number > [OK]
2. **Set Type of telephone line.**
[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 1] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]
3. **Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.**

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. **Switch the control panel display to Send/Fax display.**
2. **Send the test document from this machine to another machine that can handle the communication test to check that this machine can send the data correctly.**
3. **Send the test document from the target to this machine to check if the machine can receive the document properly.**

Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS1

Product Name






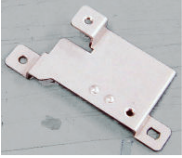



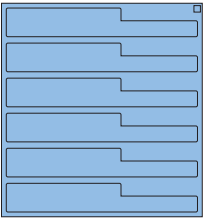
Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

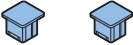
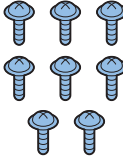

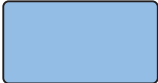
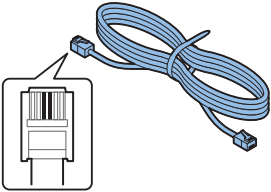
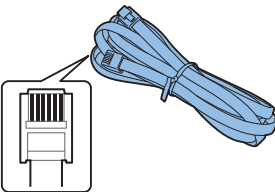
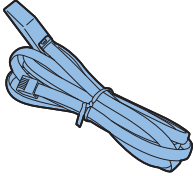
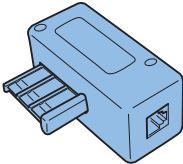
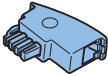
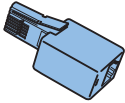
- F632502

Points to Note at Installation

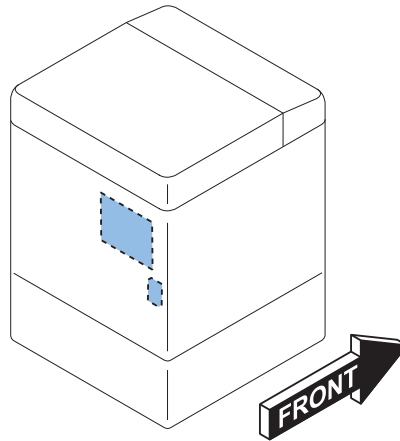
When installing the Super G3 FAX Board and this equipment at the same time, be sure to install them by referring to this document after checking "Checking the Contents" of Super G3 FAX Board.

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Modular PCB X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] USB Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Modular Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Signal Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer (Long) X 3 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PCB Spacer (Short) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Modular Label X 1 

<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Dust Cover X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 8 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Screw (Binding; M4x4) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Fax Approval Label (only for Taiwan) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Telephone Cord (2 Contact type) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Telephone Cord (6 Contact type) (only for Europe) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [17] PTT Cable (only for Asia) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] PTT Plug (Only for France) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [19] PTT Plug (Only for Germany) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [20] PTT Plug (Only for U.K.) X 1 

Installation Outline Drawing



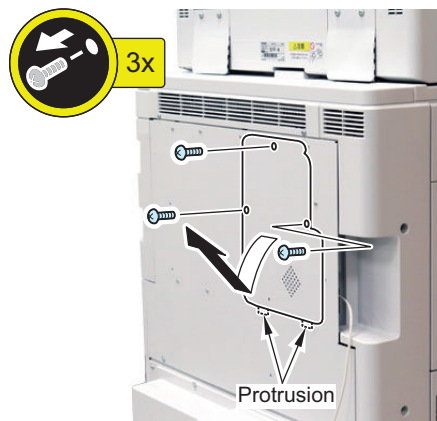
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation



1. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



NOTE:

- When the Super G3 FAX Board is installed: Perform steps 2 and 3, and proceed to step 6.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time: Proceed to step 4.



2. When a Telephone Cord is connected, disconnect the Telephone Cord for 1-line.

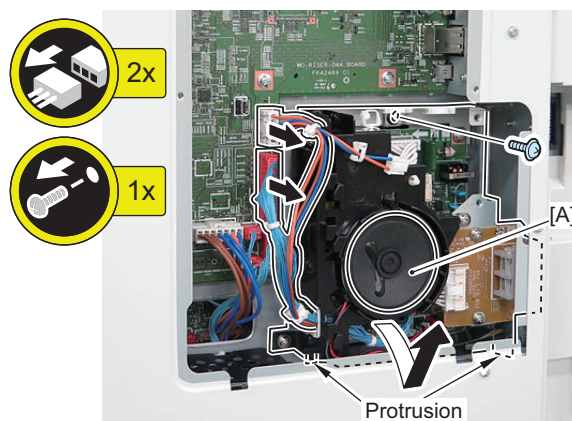


3. Remove the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions

CAUTION:

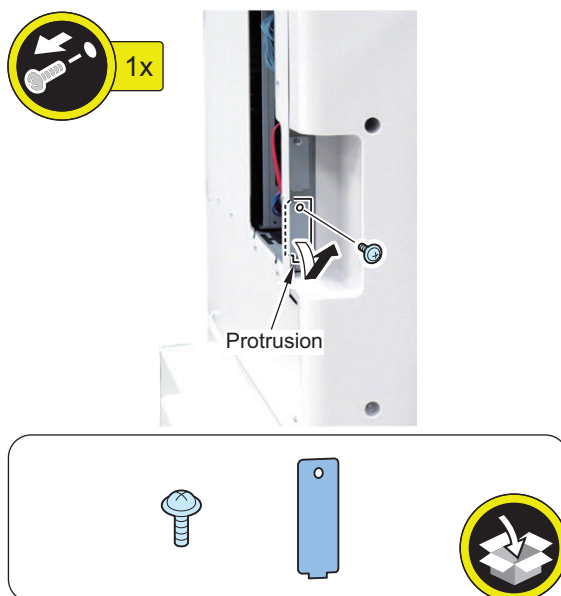
Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be open circuit.





4. When installing the 1-Line at the same time, remove the Face Cover of the 1-Line. (The removed parts will not be used.)

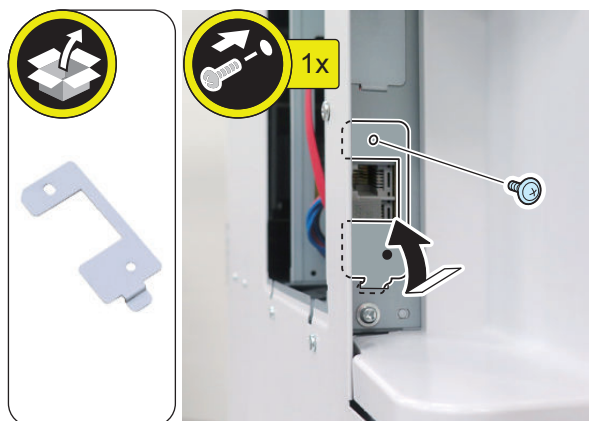
- 1 Screw (used in the next step only in EUR)
- 1 Protrusion



NOTE:
This step is only for Europe.

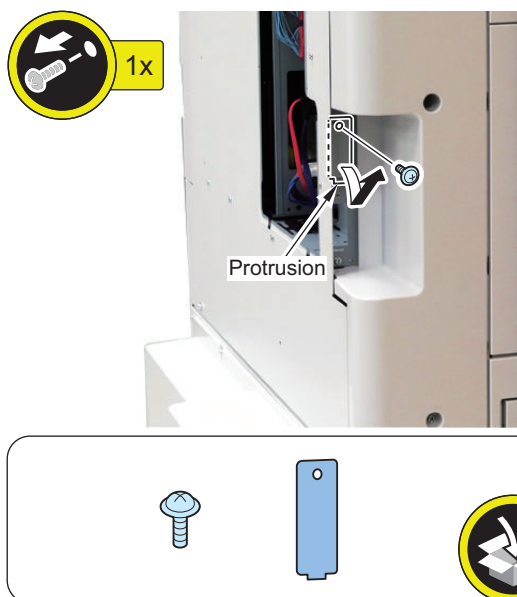
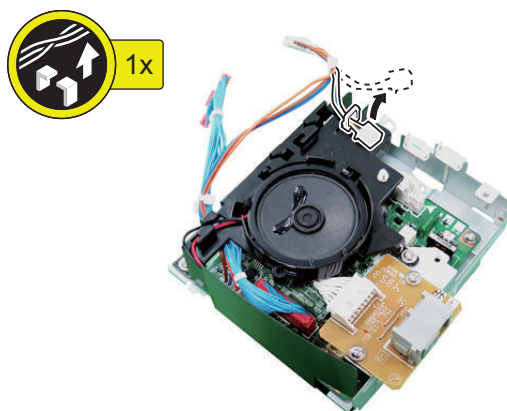
5. Install the Modular Cover.

- 1 Protrusion
- 1 Screw (use the screw removed in the previous step)



**6. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (2-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

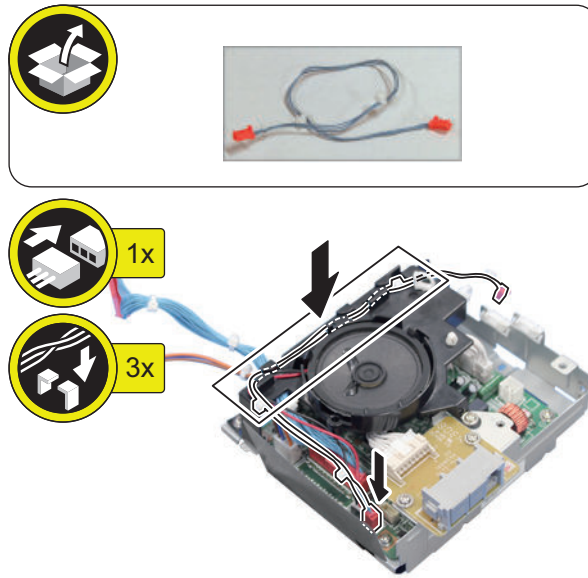
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**■ Installing the Equipment****1. Free the Cable from the Wire Saddle.**

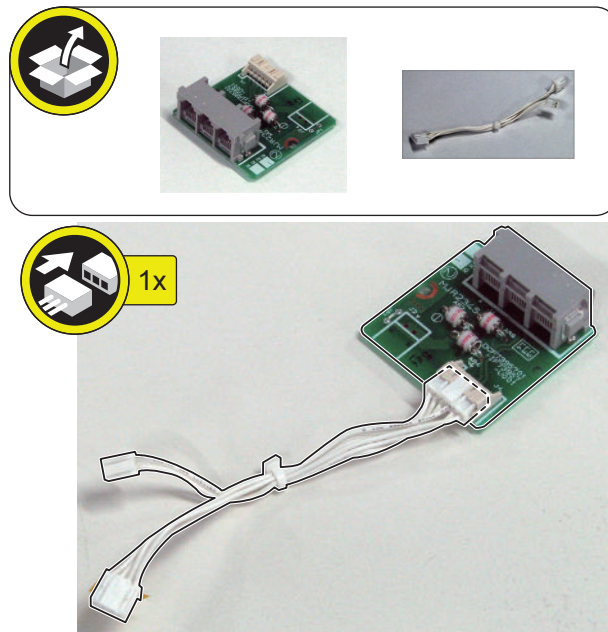


2. Install the Signal Cable to the FAX Unit.

- 3 Cable Guides



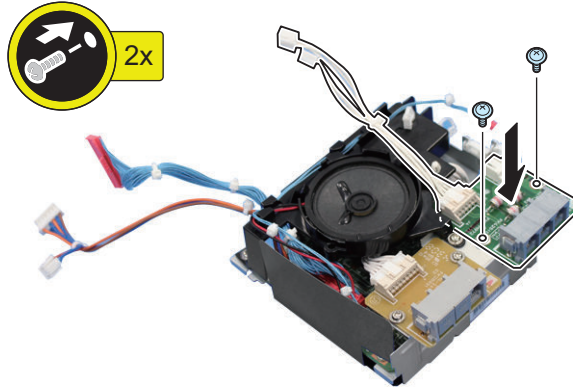
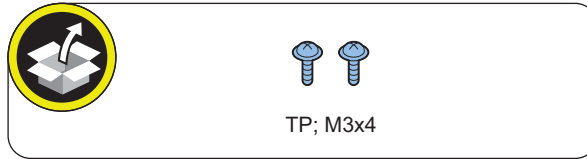
3. Install the Modular Cable to the Modular PCB.





4. Install the Modular PCB to the FAX Unit.

- 2 Screws (TP; M3x4)



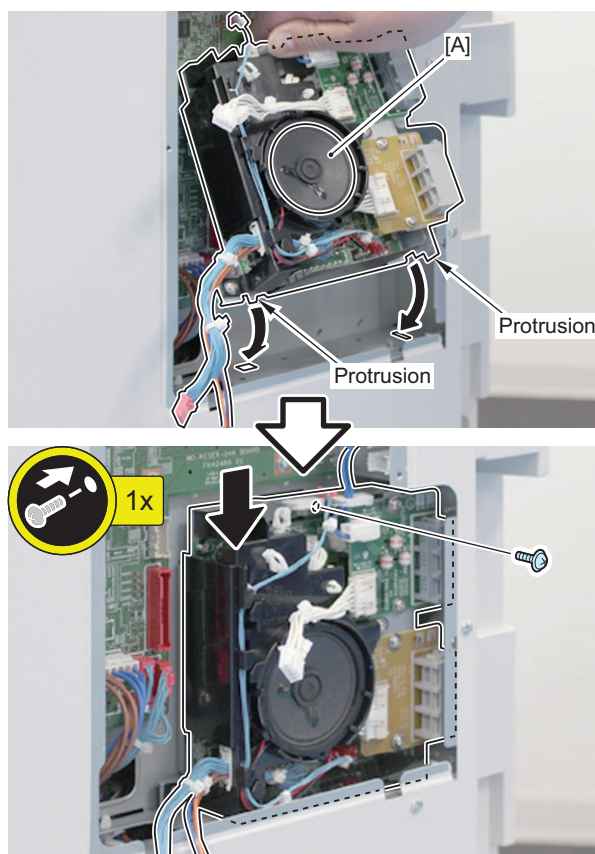


5. Install the FAX Unit to the Host Machine.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) (Use the removed screw or those included with the Super G3 FAX Board)

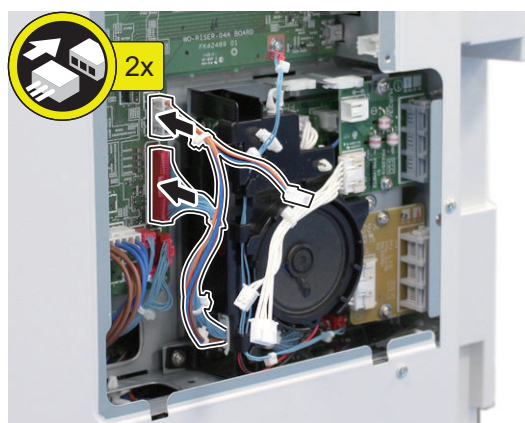
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



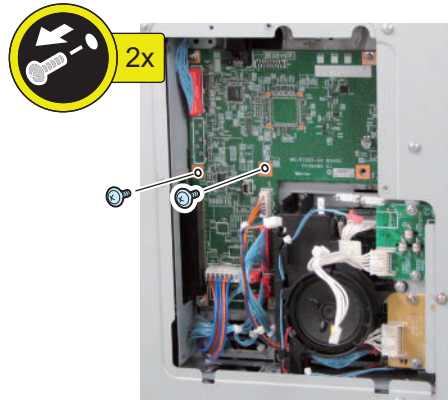
6. Install the 2 Cable of the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors



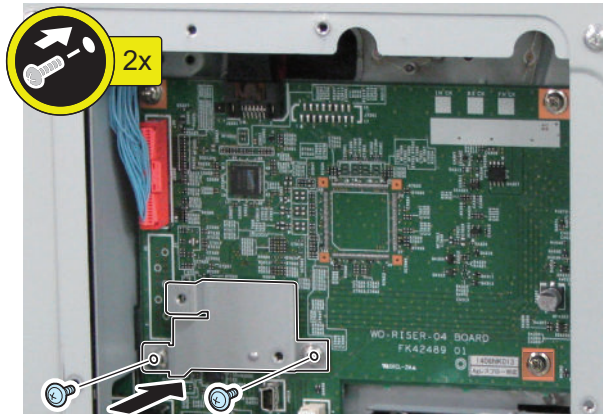
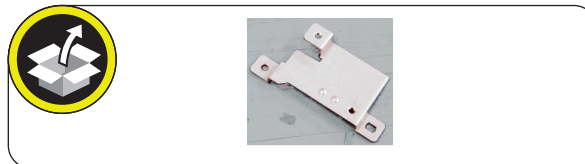


7. Remove the 2 Screws. (will be used in next step)



8. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

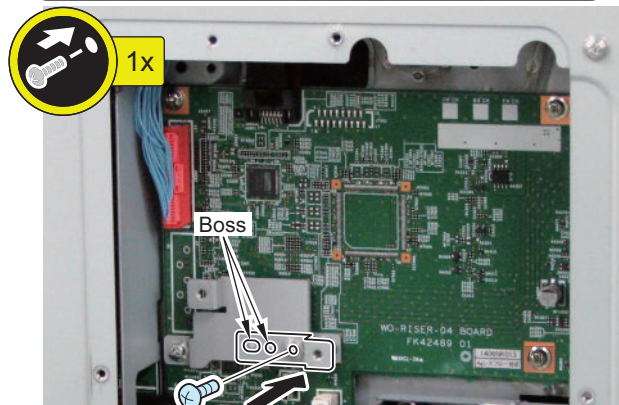
- 2 Screws (screws removed in the previous step)





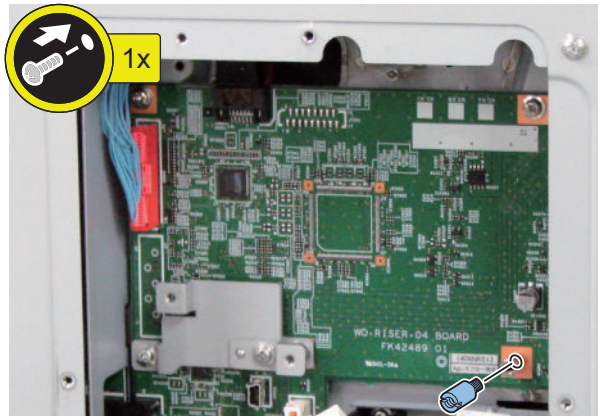
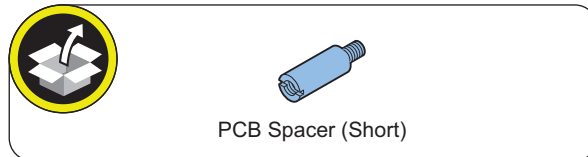
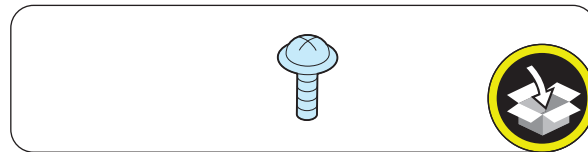
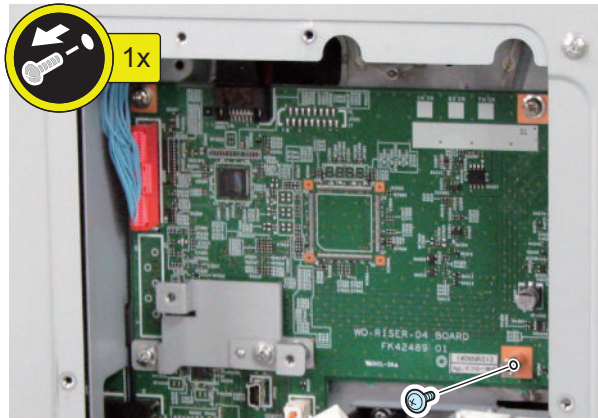
9. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x4)



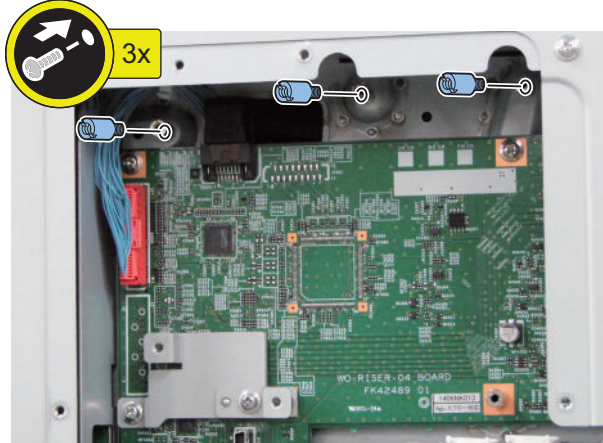
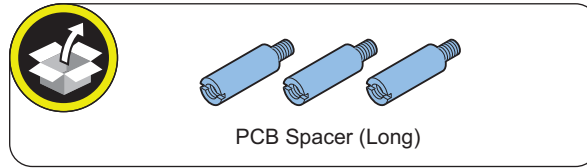


10. Remove the Screw and install the PCB Spacer (Short). (The removed screw will not be used.)





11. Install the 3 PCB Spacers (Long).

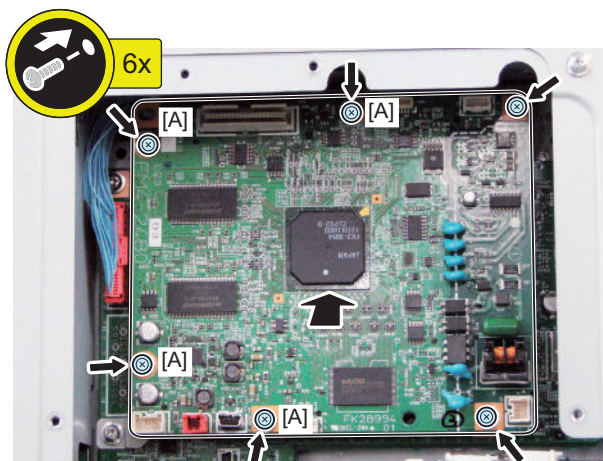
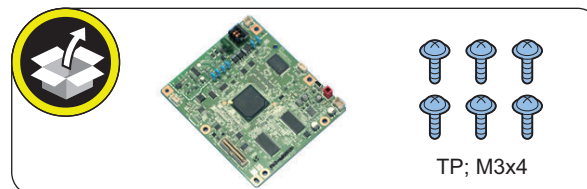


12. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 6 Screws (TP; M3x4)

NOTE:

Because the 4 screws [A] need to be removed when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to tighten them here.



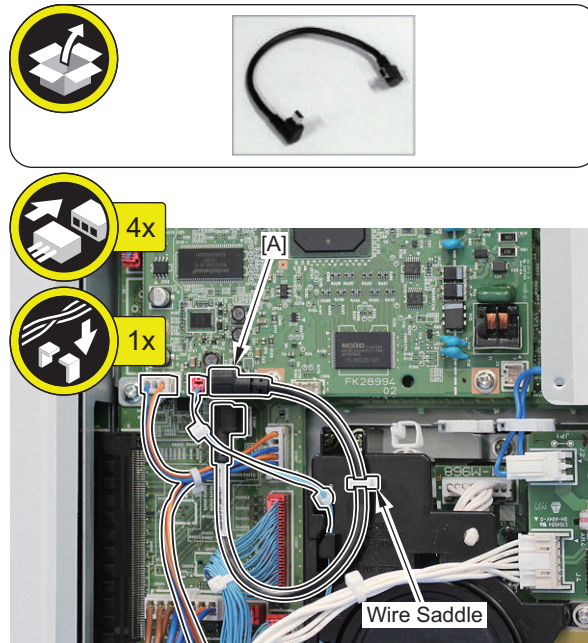


13. Install the Signal Cable, Power Supply Cable and USB Cable to the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 1 Wire Saddle

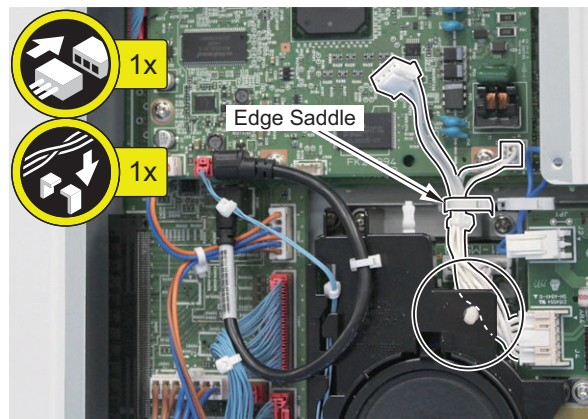
NOTE:

Because [A] of the USB Cable needs to be disconnected when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to connect it here.



14. Pass the Modular Cable inside the Speaker Holder, and install the G3 FAX Control PCB.

- 1 Edge Saddle

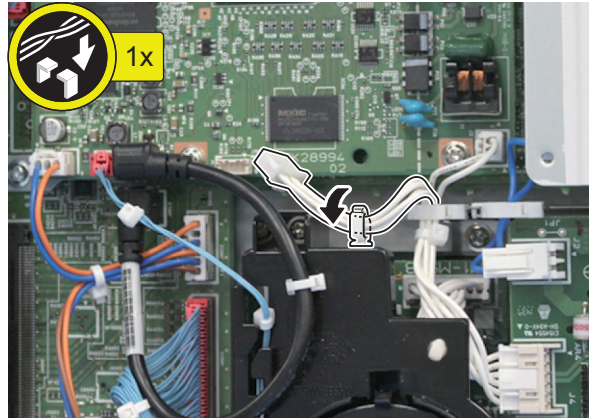




NOTE:

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

15. Secure the cable with the Wire Saddle.



■ Subsequent Work

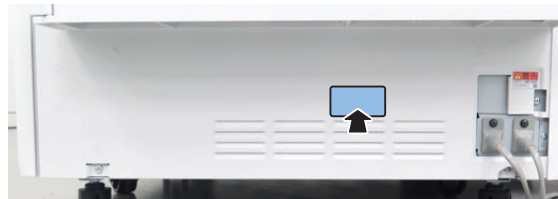
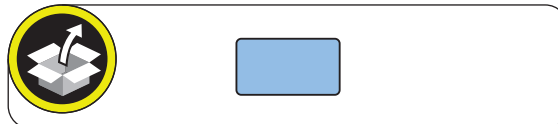


NOTE:

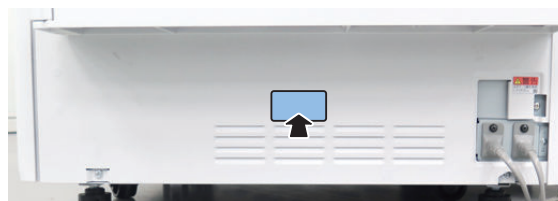
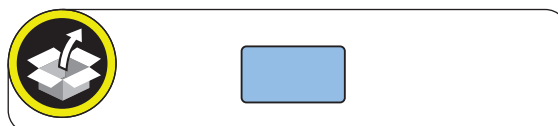
The following work is required only when installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time.

1. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

- For USA



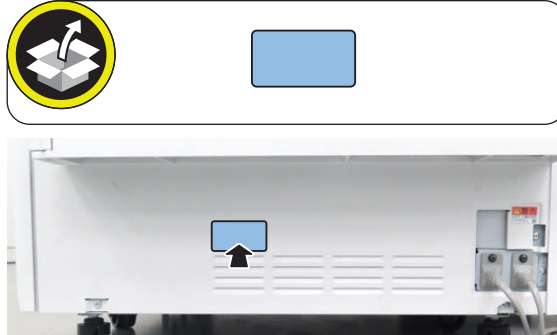
- For Taiwan



**NOTE:**

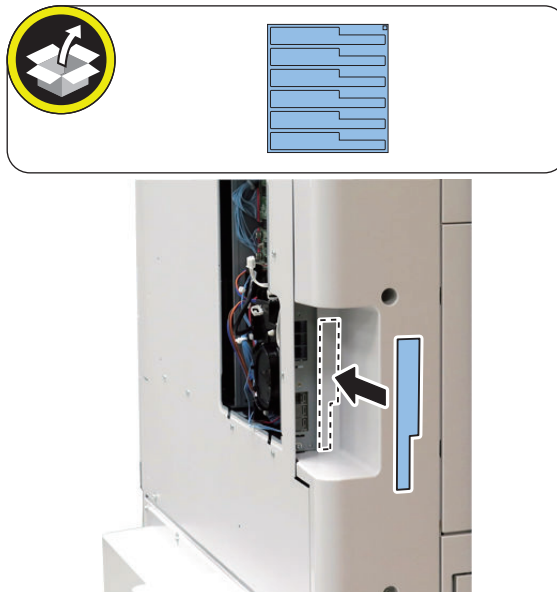
This step is only for Taiwan.

2. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

3. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.



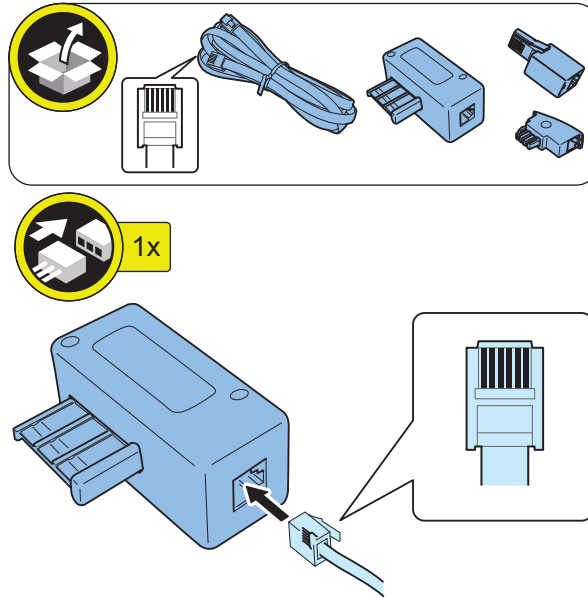
**NOTE:**

- This step is only for Europe.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time, assemble it by following the same procedure.

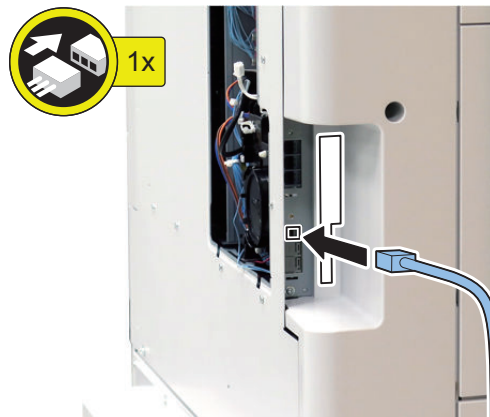
4. Connect the PTT Plug matched the field or area to the PTT Cable (6 contact type).

CAUTION:

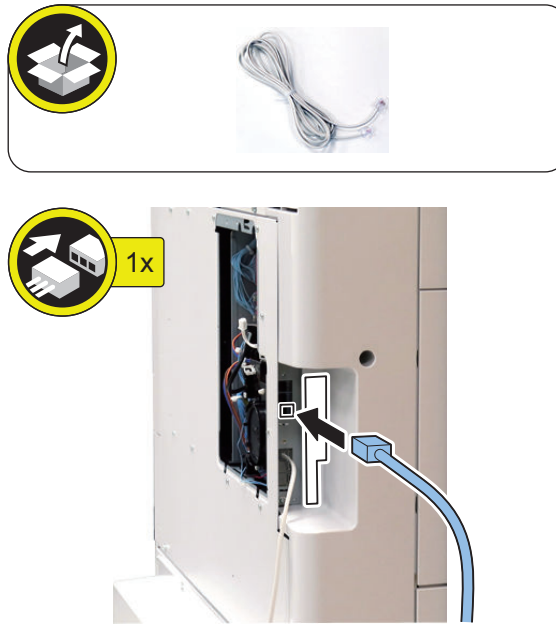
Do not connect the Telephone Cord (2 contact type) with the PTT Plug.



5. Connect the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line). When installing this equipment at the same time, connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.



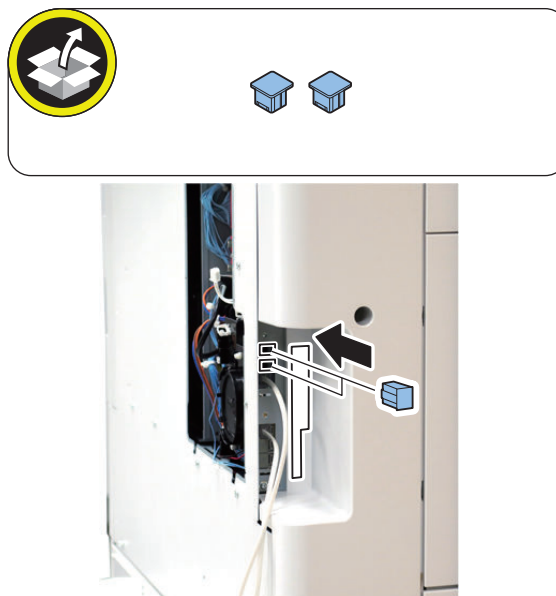
-
6. Connect one end of the PTT Cable or Telephone Cord of the 2-Line to the modular jack on the host machine and the end of the modular jack on the wall.



□

NOTE:
When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

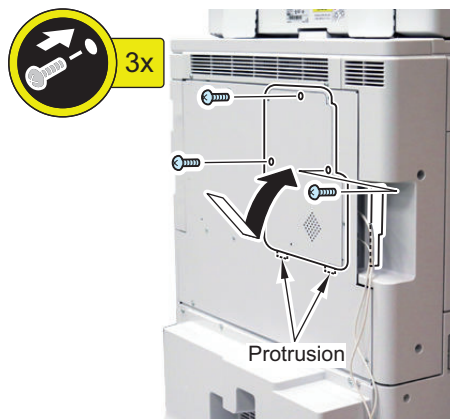
7. Install the Dust Cover.



NOTE:
When performing the following steps, it is efficient to install the cover after installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board in case of installing the fax board at the same time.

**8. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws

**9. Connect the power plug to the outlet.****10. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

11. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**NOTE:**

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.

**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.

2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.

E.g. "ECM:2" => Line 2

NOTE:

If E744-5000 error code (Fax software version mismatch error) occurred while sending or receiving fax, upgrade the firmware of 2-line Fax to the latest version.

Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board-AS2

Product Name






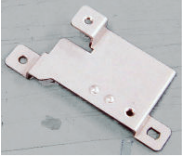



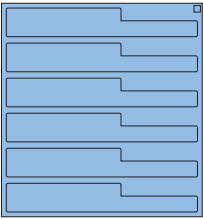
Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

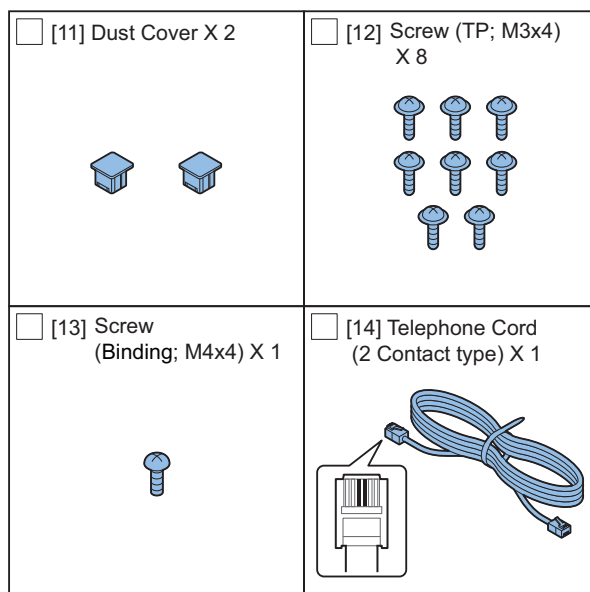
- F632502

Points to Note at Installation

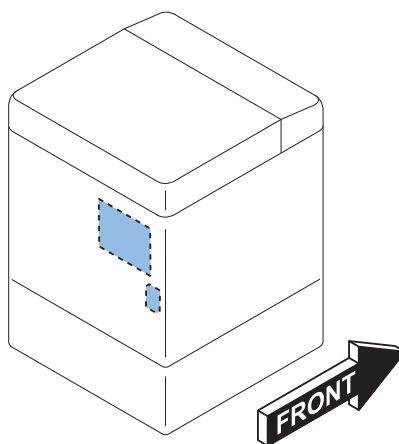
When installing the Super G3 FAX Board and this equipment at the same time, be sure to install them by referring to this document after checking "Checking the Contents" of Super G3 FAX Board.

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Modular PCB X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] USB Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Modular Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Signal Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] PCB Spacer (Long) X 3 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PCB Spacer (Short) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Modular Label X 1 



Installation Outline Drawing



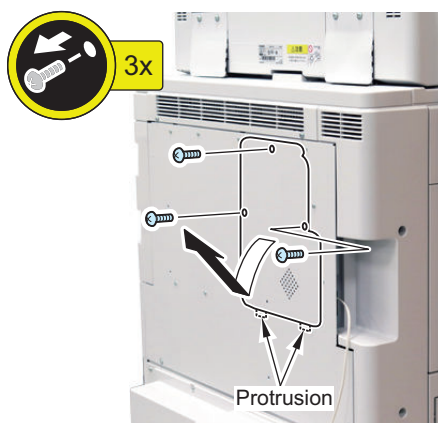
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation



1. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions



NOTE:

- When the Super G3 FAX Board is installed: Perform steps 2 and 3, and proceed to step 5.
- When installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time: Proceed to step 4.



2. When a Telephone Cord is connected, disconnect the Telephone Cord for 1-line.



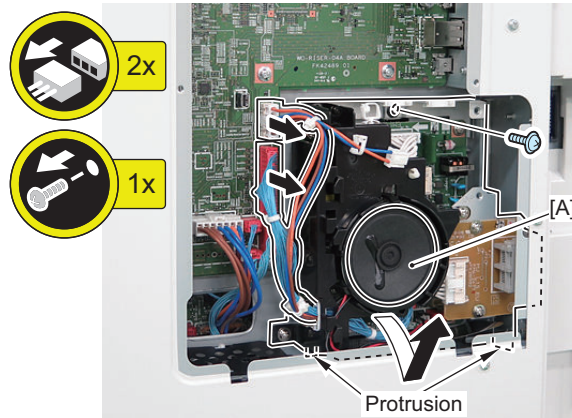


3. Remove the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions

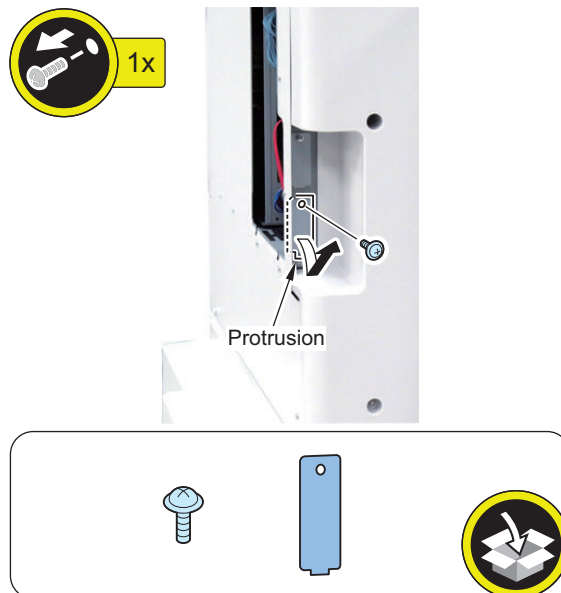
CAUTION:

Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be open circuit.



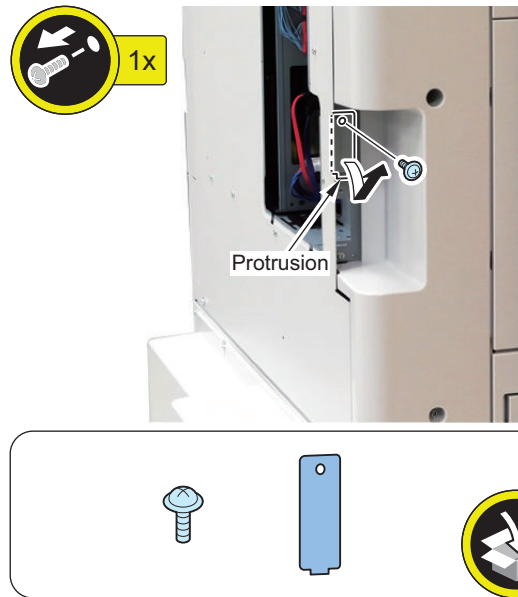
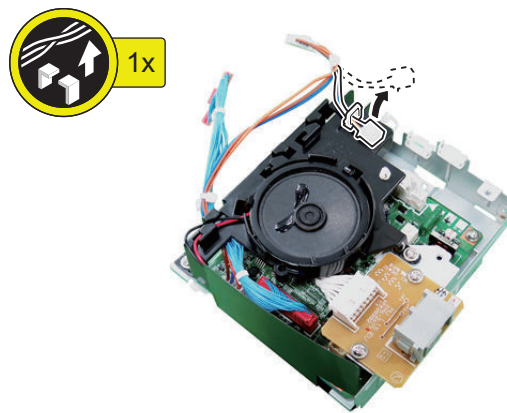
4. When installing the 1-Line at the same time, remove the Face Cover of the 1-Line. (The removed parts will not be used.)

- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion



**5. Remove the Face Cover of the FAX (2-Line). (The removed parts will not be used.)**

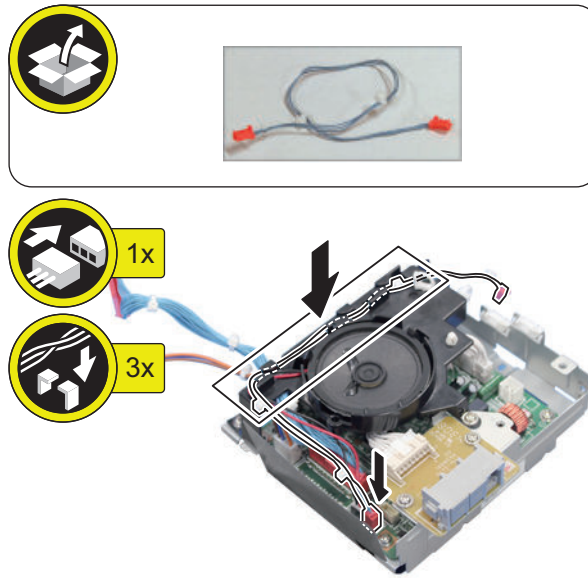
- 1 Screw
- 1 Protrusion

**■ Installing the Equipment****1. Free the Cable from the Wire Saddle.**

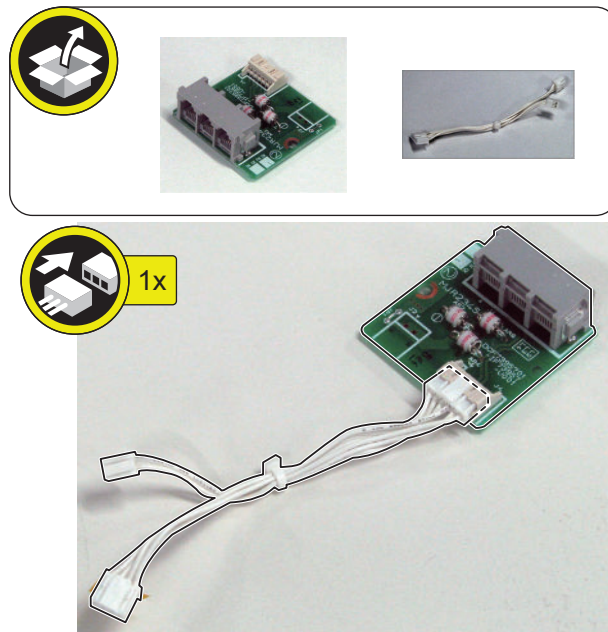


2. Install the Signal Cable to the FAX Unit.

- 3 Cable Guides



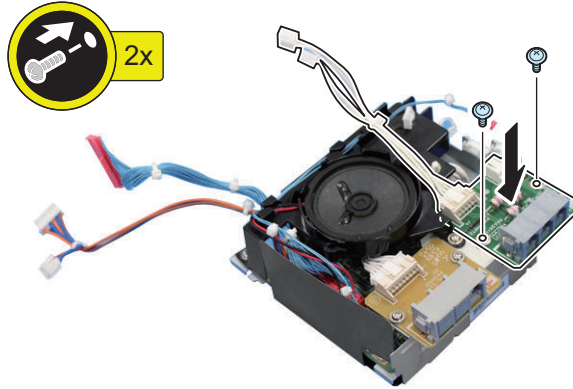
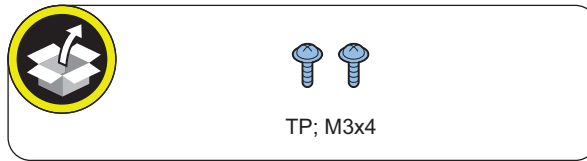
3. Install the Modular Cable to the Modular PCB.





4. Install the Modular PCB to the FAX Unit.

- 2 Screws (TP; M3x4)



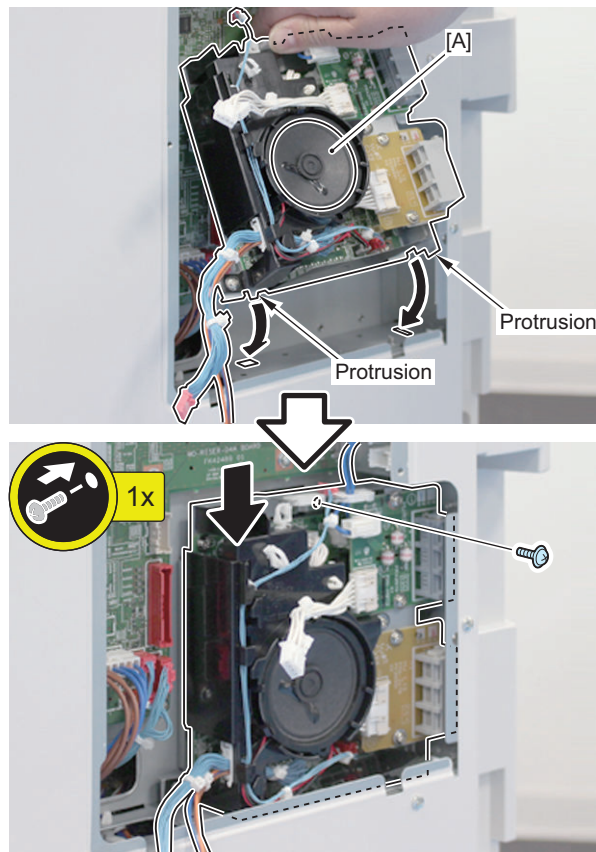


5. Install the FAX Unit to the Host Machine.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4 Black) (Use the removed screw or those included with the Super G3 FAX Board)

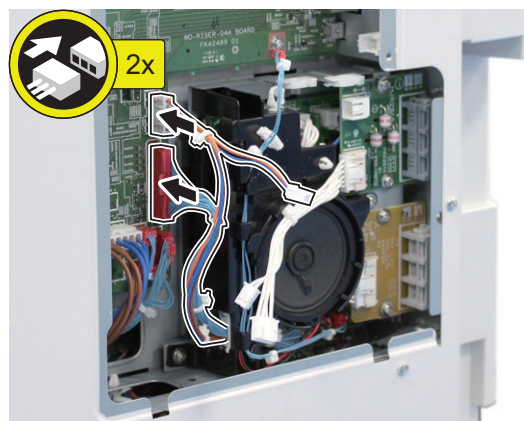
CAUTION:

- Be careful not to damage the [A] part of the speaker as the wiring may be broken.
- Be sure to tighten the screw while holding the FAX Unit.
- After tightening the screw of the FAX Unit, check for any backlash. If there is backlash, tighten the screw again with the protrusion precisely fitted.



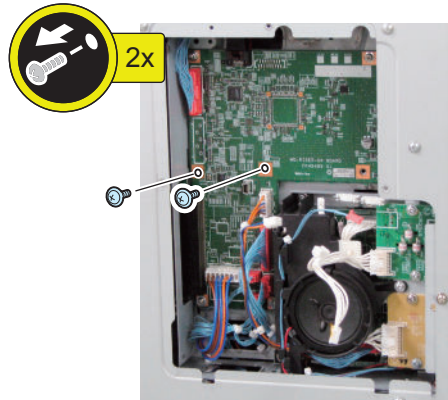
6. Install the 2 Cable of the FAX Unit.

- 2 Connectors



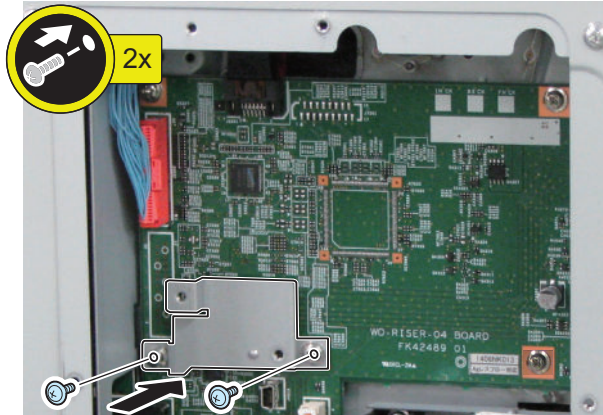
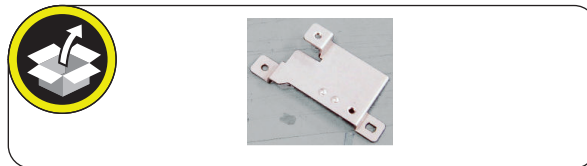


7. Remove the 2 Screws. (will be used in next step)



8. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

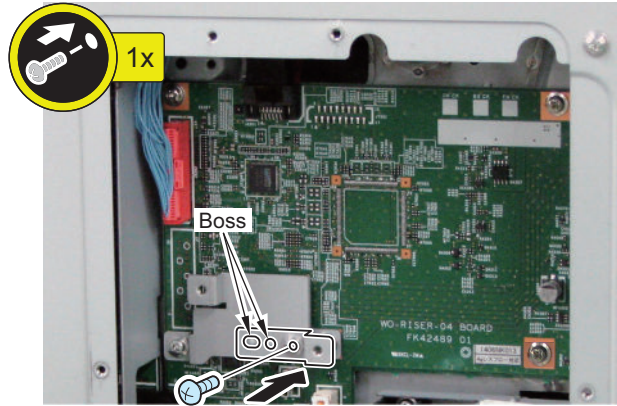
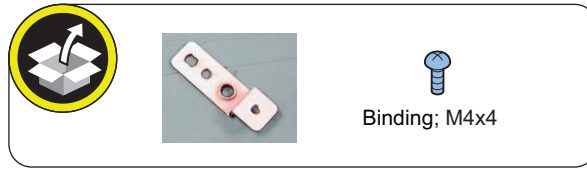
- 2 Screws (screws removed in the previous step)





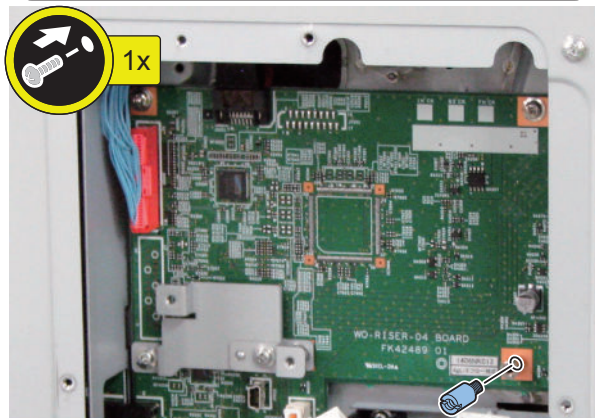
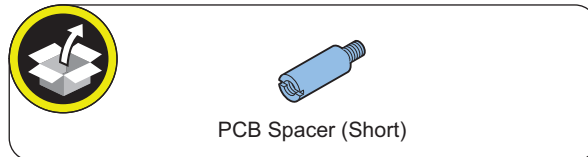
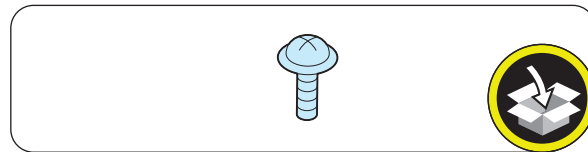
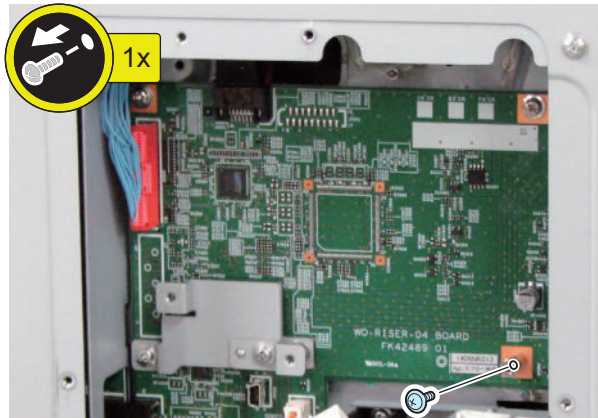
9. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x4)



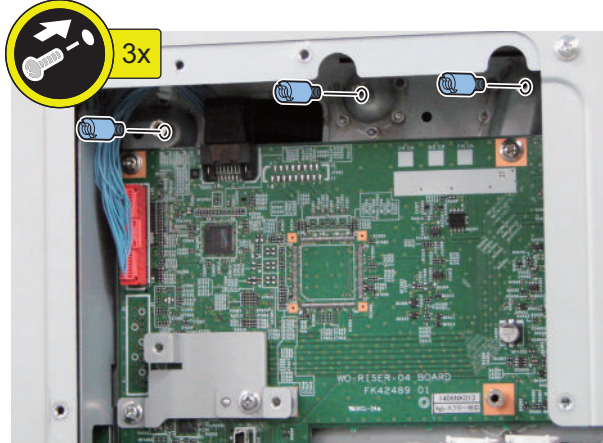
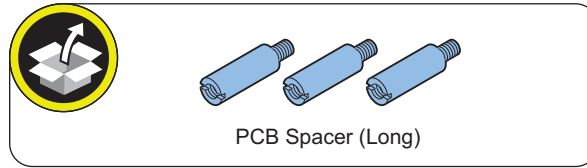


10. Remove the Screw and install the PCB Spacer (Short). (The removed screw will not be used.)





11. Install the 3 PCB Spacers (Long).

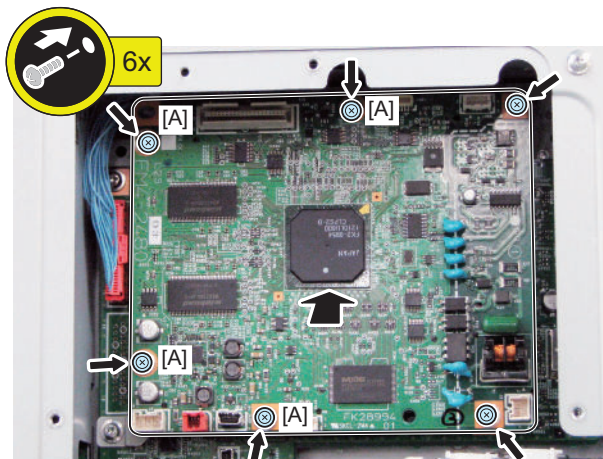
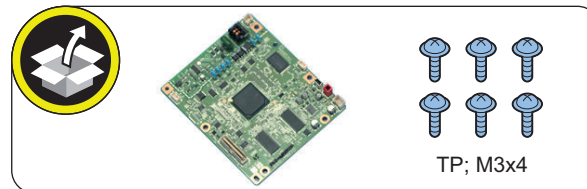


12. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 6 Screws (TP; M3x4)

NOTE:

Because the 4 screws [A] need to be removed when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to tighten them here.



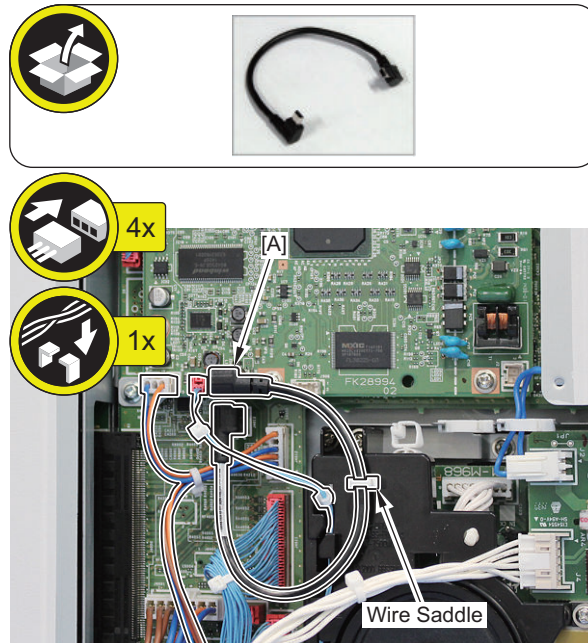


13. Install the Signal Cable, Power Supply Cable and USB Cable to the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- 1 Wire Saddle

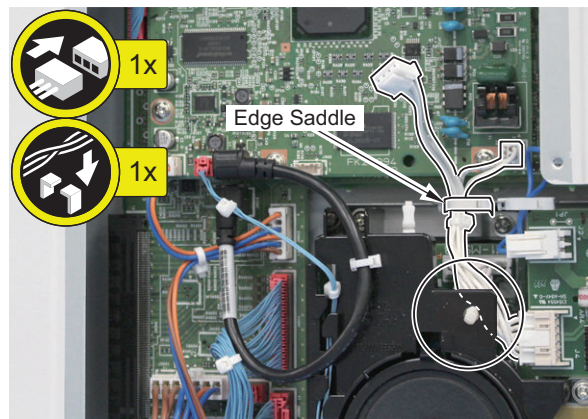
NOTE:

Because [A] of the USB Cable needs to be disconnected when installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, it is efficient not to connect it here.



14. Pass the Modular Cable inside the Speaker Holder, and install the G3 FAX Control PCB.

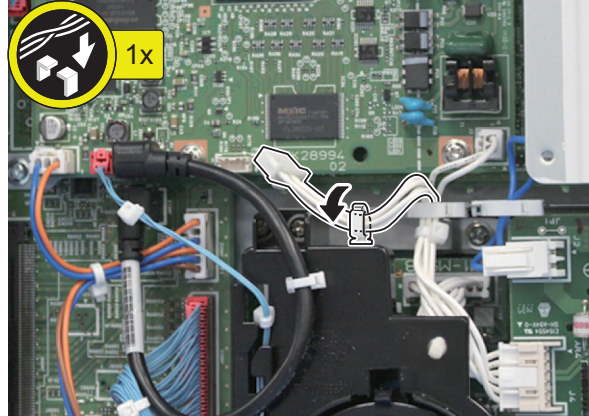
- 1 Edge Saddle



**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

15. Secure the cable with the Wire Saddle.



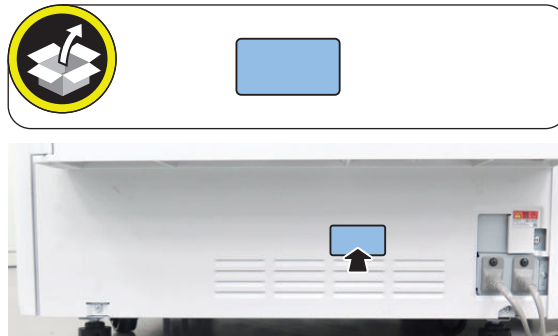
■ Subsequent Work

**NOTE:**

The following work is required only when installing the Super G3 FAX Board at the same time.

1. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.

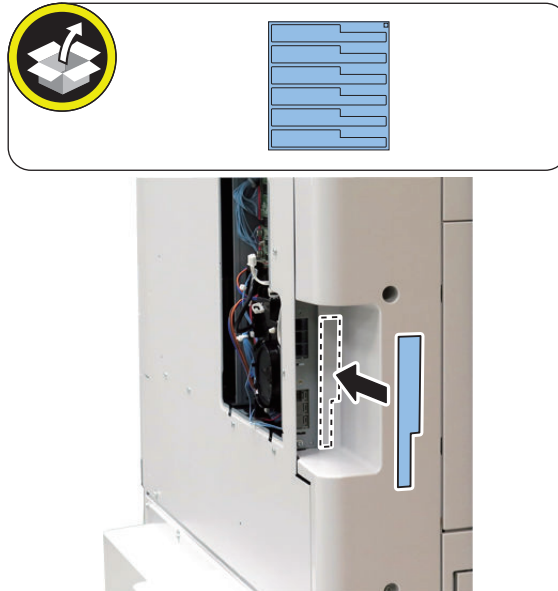
- For USA



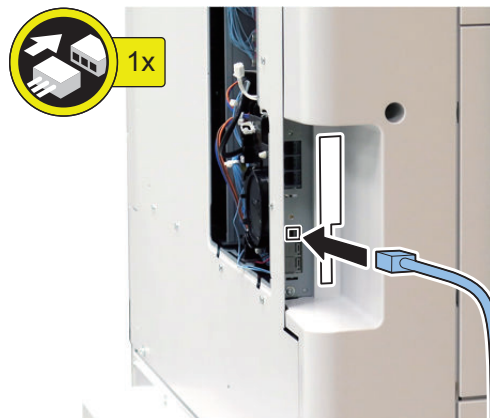
**NOTE:**

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

2. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.

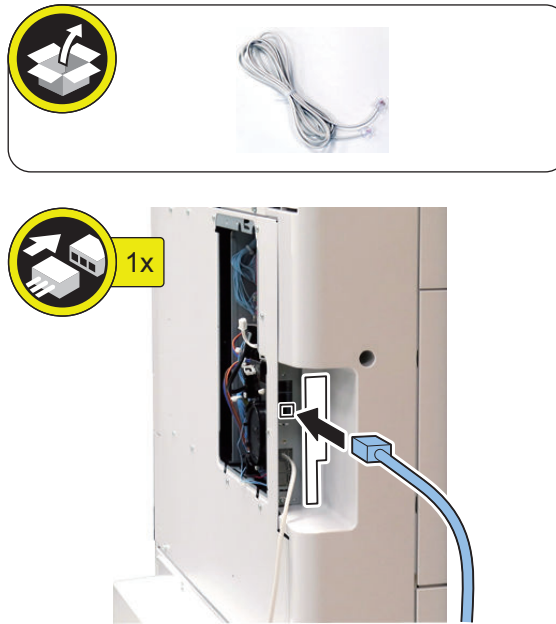


3. Connect the Telephone Cord of the FAX (1-Line). When installing this equipment at the same time, connect the other end to the modular jack on the wall.





4. Connect one end of the Telephone Cord of the 2-Line to the modular jack on the host machine and the end of the modular jack on the wall.



NOTE:

When installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board at the same time, the following step is not necessary.

5. Install the Dust Cover.

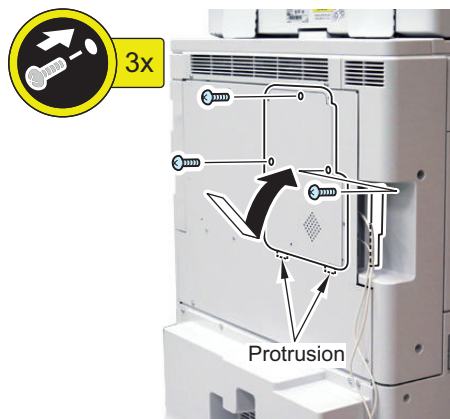


NOTE:

When performing the following steps, it is efficient to install the cover after installing the Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board in case of installing the fax board at the same time.

**6. Install the Rear Cover 2.**

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws

**7. Connect the power plug to the outlet.****8. Turn ON the main power switch.****CAUTION:**

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds. To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

9. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**NOTE:**

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.

**1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.**

FAX > TYPE > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 2] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.

2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.

E.g. "ECM:2" => Line 2

NOTE:

If E744-5000 error code (Fax software version mismatch error) occurred while sending or receiving fax, upgrade the firmware of 2-line Fax to the latest version.

Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS1

Product Name




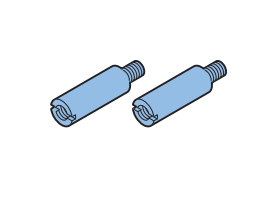
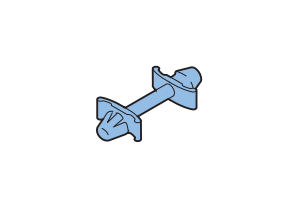
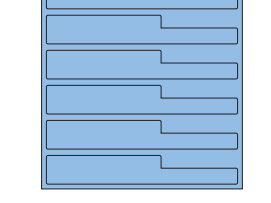
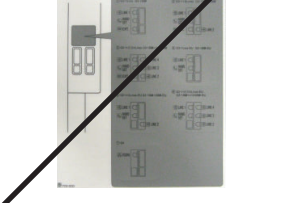
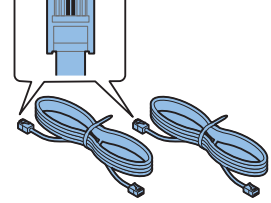
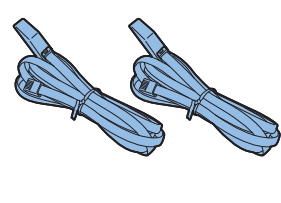
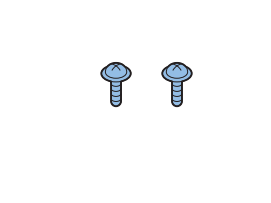
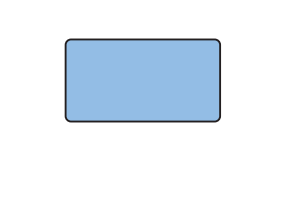
Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632503

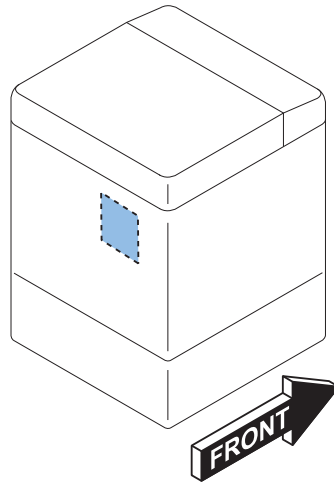
Points to Note at Installation

- Install this equipment after installing the Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- When installing Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, start from "Installing the Equipment".
- When installing this equipment later, start from "Preparation".

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] PCB Spacer X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Resin Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Modular Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Telephone Cord X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Cable X 2 (only for Asia) 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [11] FAX Approval Label (only for Taiwan) X 1 	

Installation Outline Drawing



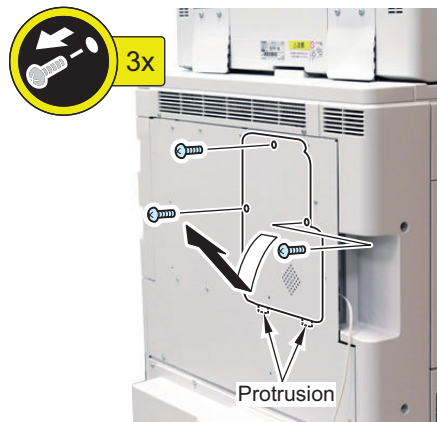
Installation Procedure

Preparation

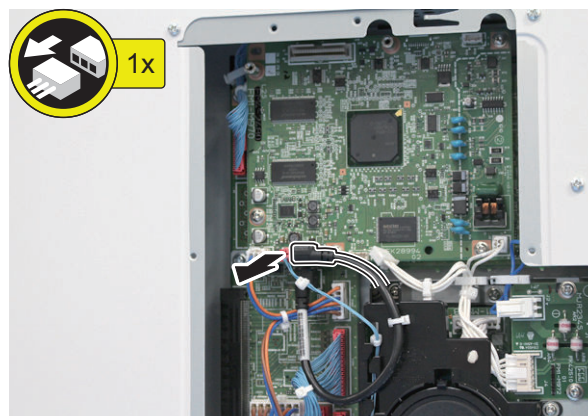


1. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

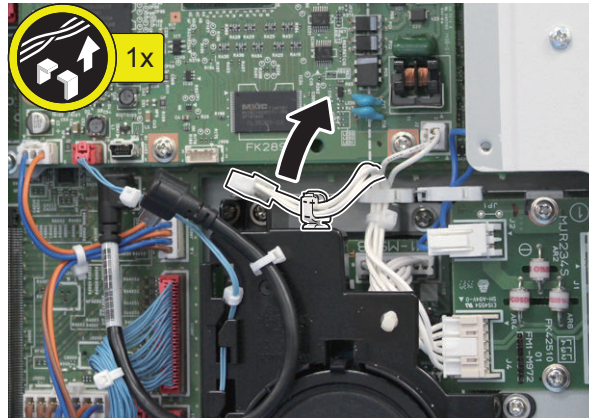


2. Disconnect the USB Cable of the G3FAX Expansion PCB side.



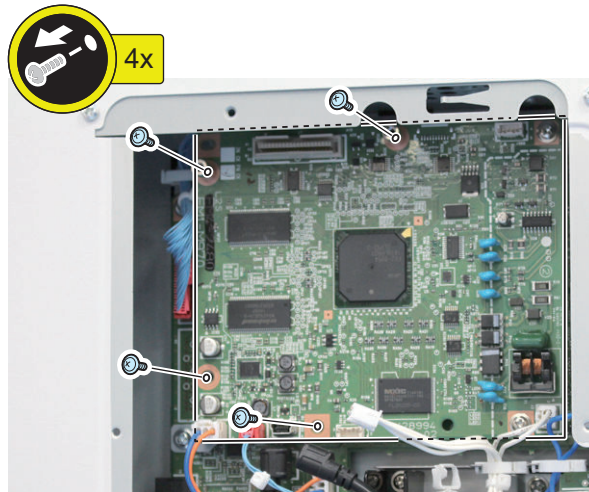
□

3. Free the Modular Cable from the Wire Saddle. (Close the Wire Saddle.)



□

4. Remove the 4 Screws. (will be used in Installing the Equipment)

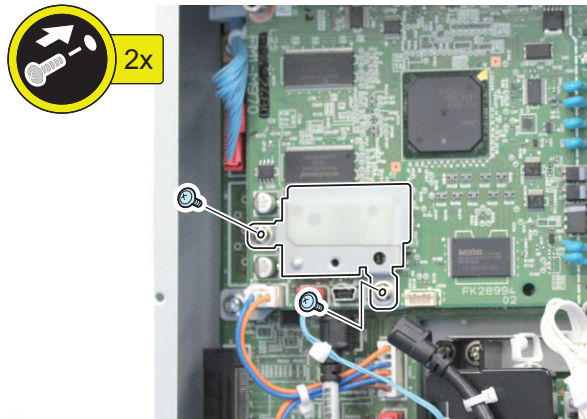
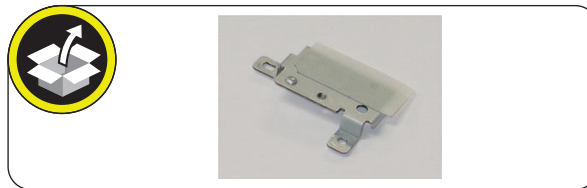


■ Installing the Equipment



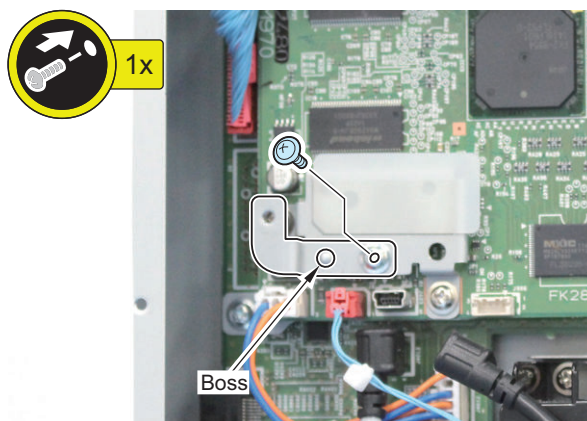
1. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))



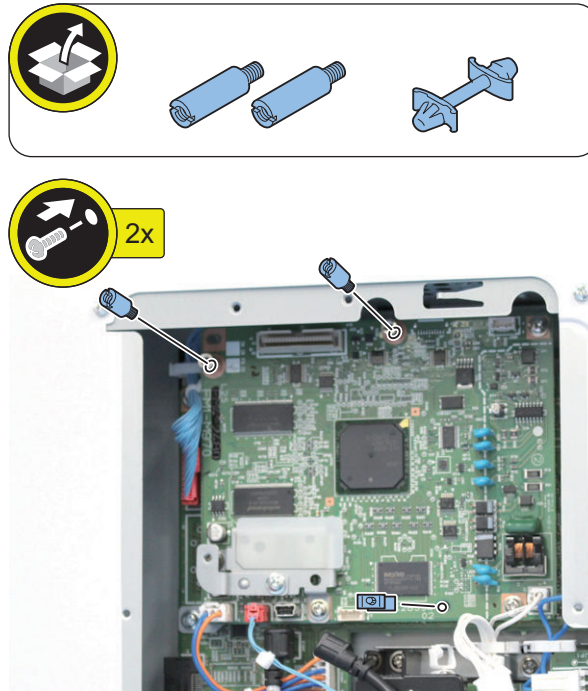
2. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)



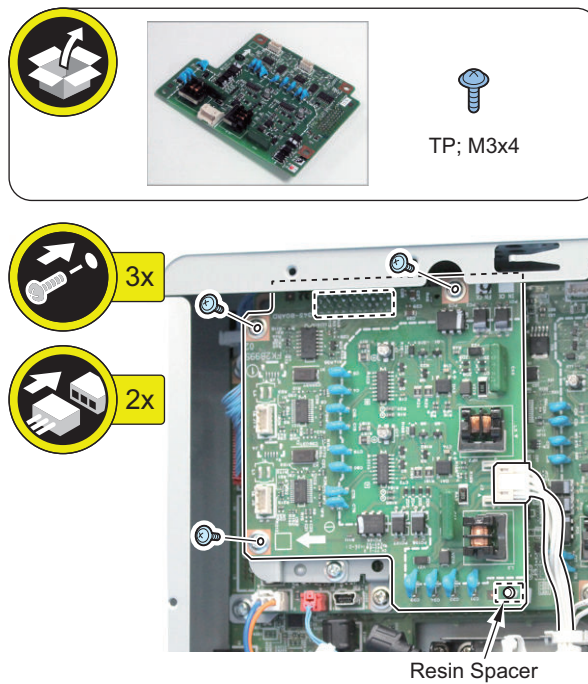


3. Install the 2 PCB Spacers and Resin Spacer.



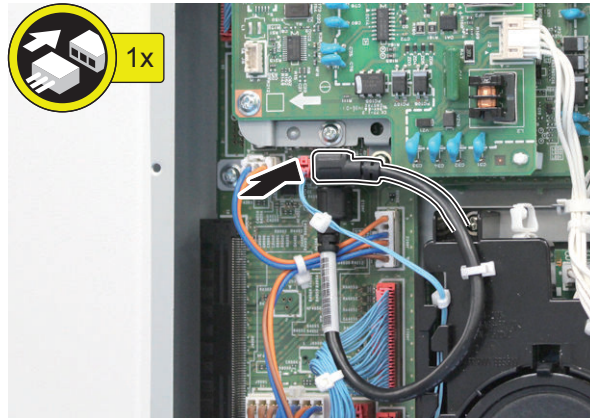
4. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- Upper Side: 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))
- Lower Side: 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)
- 1 Resin Spacer
- 2 Connectors





5. Connect the USB Cable.

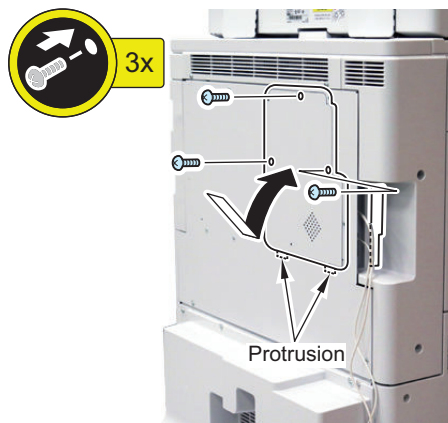


■ Subsequent Work



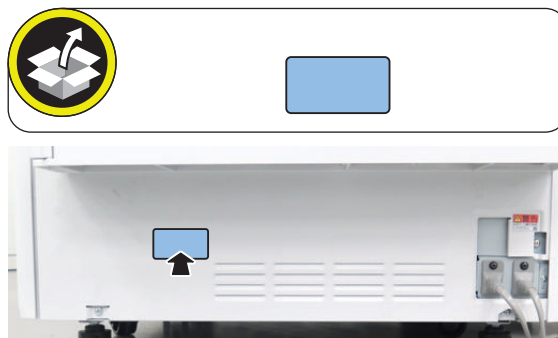
1. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



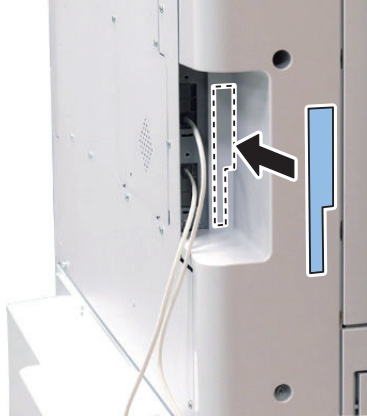
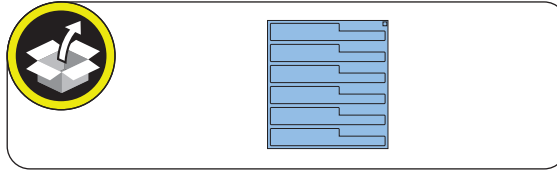
NOTE:
This step is only for Taiwan.

2. Affix the following FAX Approval Label.





3. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.



4. Remove the 2 Dust Covers if installed.

CAUTION:

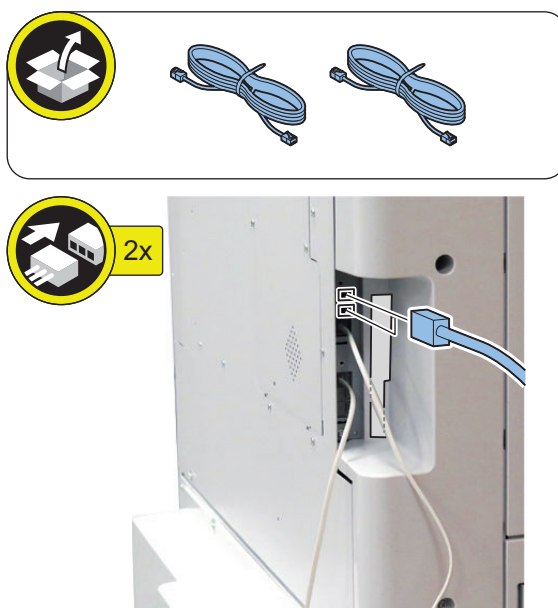
Do not insert a screwdriver, etc. into the modular terminal.

NOTE:

Keep the removed Dust Cover.



-
5. Connect one of the 2 Telephone Cords or the 2 PTT Cables to the modular jack on the host machine and the other cord to the modular jack on the wall.



-
6. Connect the power plug to the outlet.
7. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

If the host machine still does not recognize this equipment after performing the foregoing remedy: In the case of installing the Super G3 Fax Board (1-Line) and the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, it is necessary to turn OFF and then ON the power three times in some cases (no message is displayed on the Control Panel).

Checking the Operation

■ Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.

-
1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.
 - Service Mode > FAX > Type > TYPE
 2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".
 - COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

■ Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

■ FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.

2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].

3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.

E.g. "ECM:3" => Line 3

Super G3 3rd/4th Line Fax Board-AS2

Product Name


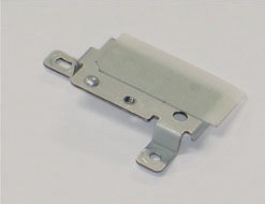

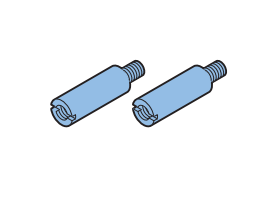
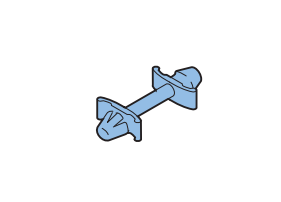
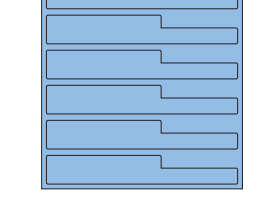
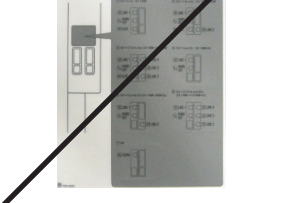
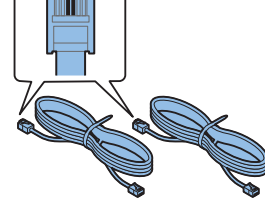
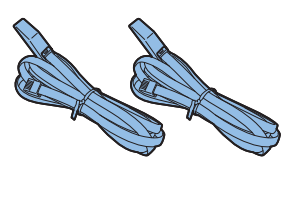
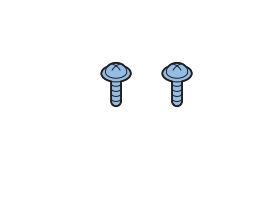
Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F632503

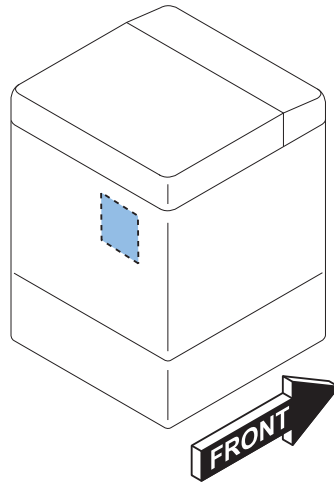
Points to Note at Installation

- Install this equipment after installing the Super G3 FAX Board and Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board.
- When installing Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, start from "Installing the Equipment".
- When installing this equipment later, start from "Preparation".

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] G3FAX Expansion PCB X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] FAX Shield Plate X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] FAX Board Fixed Plate X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] PCB Spacer X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Resin Spacer X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Modular Label X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Modular Label X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Telephone Cord X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] PTT Cable X 2 (only for Asia) 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Screw (TP; M3x4) X 2 

Installation Outline Drawing



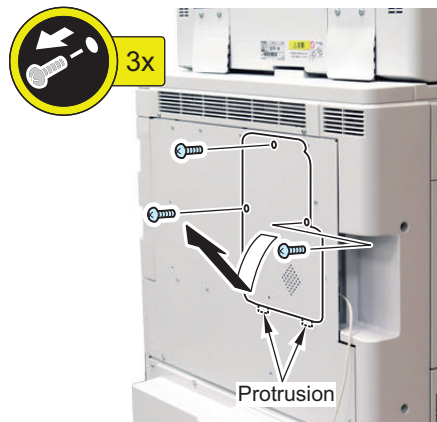
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation

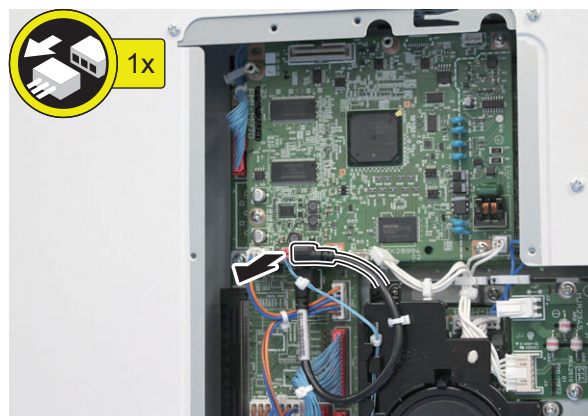


1. Remove the Rear Cover 2.

- 3 Screws
- 2 Protrusions

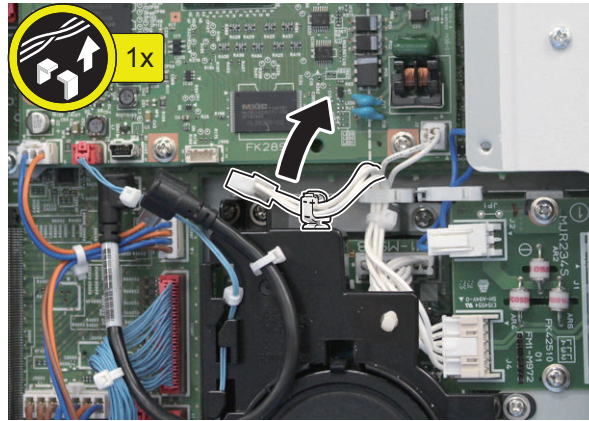


2. Disconnect the USB Cable of the G3FAX Expansion PCB side.



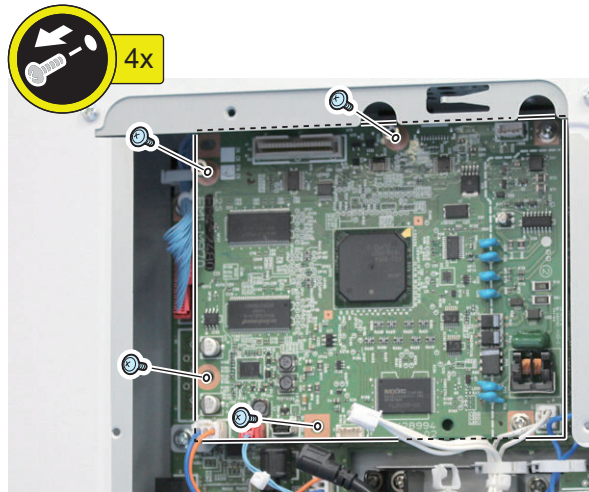
□

3. Free the Modular Cable from the Wire Saddle. (Close the Wire Saddle.)



□

4. Remove the 4 Screws. (will be used in Installing the Equipment)

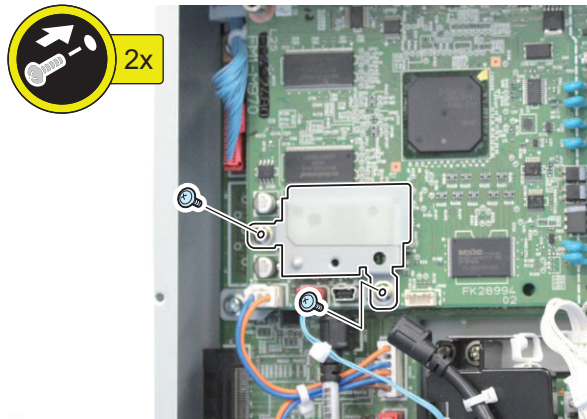
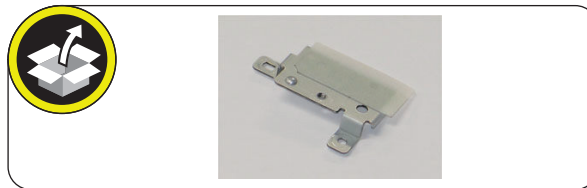


■ Installing the Equipment



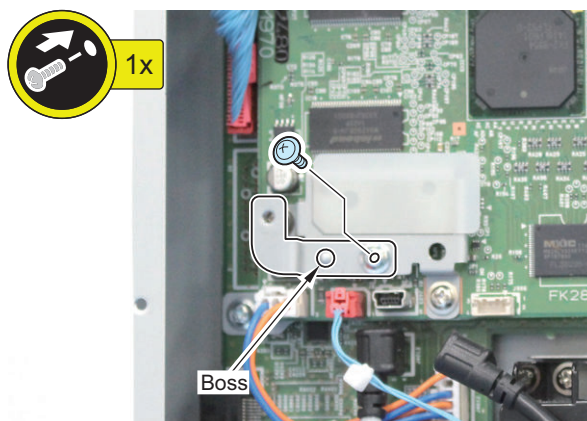
1. Install the FAX Shield Plate.

- 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))



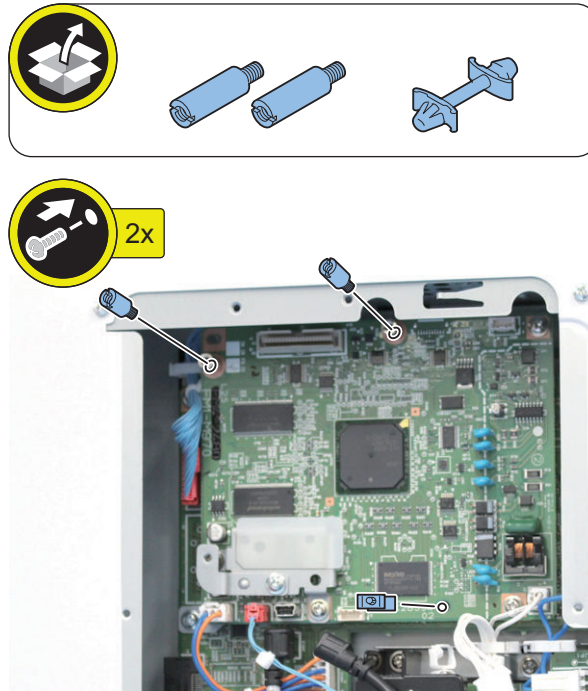
2. Install the FAX Board Fixed Plate.

- 1 Boss
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)



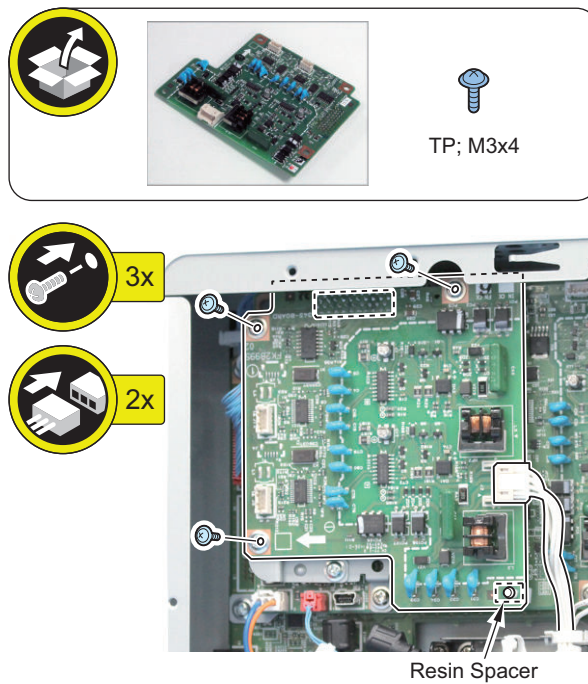


3. Install the 2 PCB Spacers and Resin Spacer.



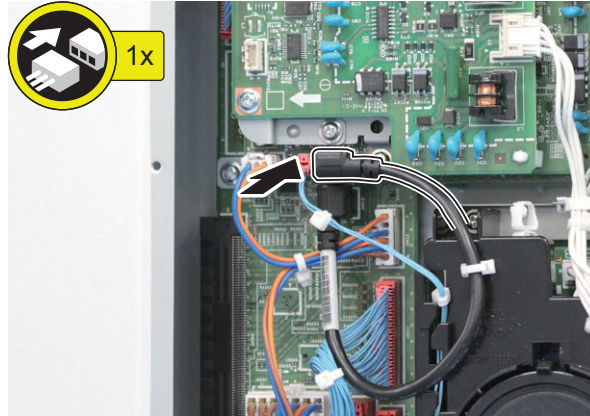
4. Install the G3FAX Expansion PCB.

- Upper Side: 2 Screws (Use the removed screws or TP; M3x4 included with the FAX (2-Line))
- Lower Side: 1 Screw (TP; M3x4)
- 1 Resin Spacer
- 2 Connectors





5. Connect the USB Cable.

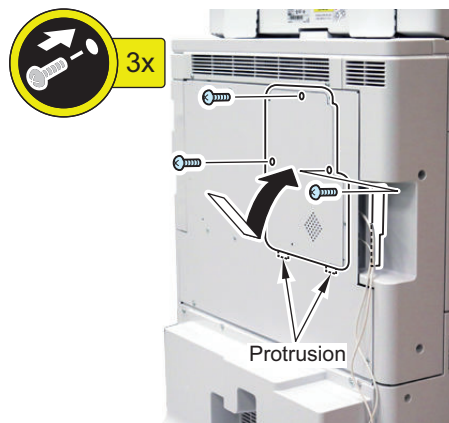


■ Subsequent Work

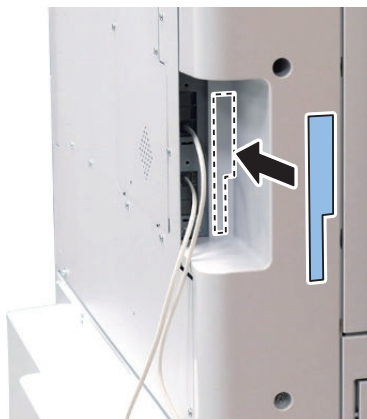
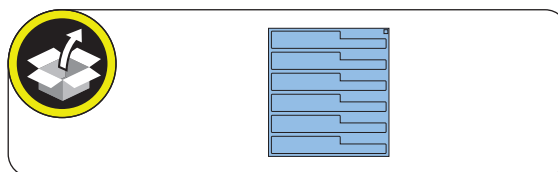


1. Install the Rear Cover 2.

- 2 Protrusions
- 3 Screws



2. Affix the appropriate Modular Label. If a label is already affixed, remove it and then affix the appropriate label.





3. Remove the 2 Dust Covers if installed.

CAUTION:

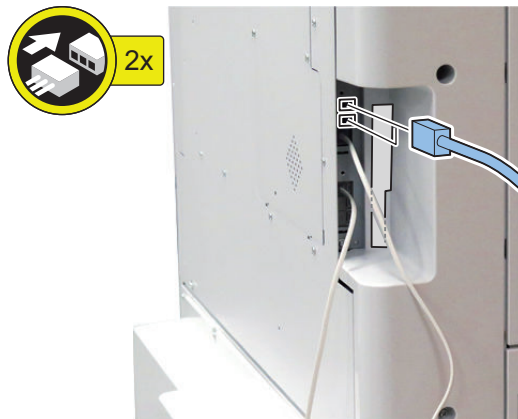
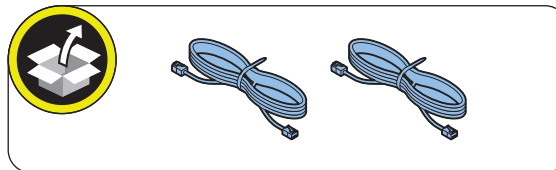
Do not insert a screwdriver, etc. into the modular terminal.

NOTE:

Keep the removed Dust Cover.



4. Connect one of the 2 Telephone Cords or the 2 PTT Cables to the modular jack on the host machine and the other cord to the modular jack on the wall.



5. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

6. Turn ON the main power switch.

CAUTION:

If the machine does not recognize this equipment, unplug and then plug the power plug after turning OFF the main power switch, or turn OFF the main power switch and then turn it ON within 20 seconds.

To avoid this symptom, unplug the power plug or turn the breaker OFF when installing.

If the host machine still does not recognize this equipment after performing the foregoing remedy: In the case of installing the Super G3 Fax Board (1-Line) and the Super G3 2nd Line Fax Board at the same time, it is necessary to turn OFF and then ON the power three times in some cases (no message is displayed on the Control Panel).

Checking the Operation

Type Settings

Select the country/region of the FAX Board in Service Mode: FAX > Type > TYPE

This setting performs the parameter settings to match the communication specification of the country/region.



1. From the following service mode, set the TYPE of country/region to install this machine, and then press OK.

- Service Mode > FAX > Type > TYPE

2. Confirm that service mode parameter below is "0". In the case, parameter is "1", change to "0".

- COPIER > OPTION > DSPLY-SW > SDTM-DSP

NOTE:

To change parameter to "0" makes no show below [Settings/Registration > Preferences > Time/Energy Settings > Auto Shutdown Time] and auto shut down is not available.

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch to enable this setting.

Basic Settings

NOTE:

When "System Manager Information Settings" is set, be sure to follow the direction of user administrator in order to log in as an administrator.

In this section, make only minimum settings required for FAX communication.



1. Set the user telephone number.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Register Unit Telephone Number] > Enter FAX number > [OK]

2. Set the type of telephone line.

[Settings/Registration] > [Function Settings] > [Send] > [Fax Settings] > [Set Line] > [Line 3]/[Line 4] > [Select Line Type] > Select the line type to connect > [OK]

3. Turn OFF/ON the main power switch after setting the user telephone numbers and the type of telephone line.

FAX Communication Test

Perform communication test to check if FAX function works correctly.



1. Switch the control panel display to Fax display.

2. Select the sending line.

Press [Fax] > [Options] > [Select Line], select the added line, then press [OK] button.

3. Send and receive a test original between the equipment and a remote unit with which a communication test can be performed and check if it can be sent and receive correctly.

1. Press [Status Monitor/Cancel] > [Send] > [Job Log] and select [Fax] from pull down menu.
2. Press [Fax Activity Report] > [OutPut Normally] > [Start Printing].
3. The number printed following colon (:) in "COMM.MODE" field on FAX ACTIVITY REPORT TX/RX shows line type used for sending/receiving.
E.g. "ECM:3" => Line 3

HDD-related Option

Pre-checks

Points to Note at Installation

CAUTION:

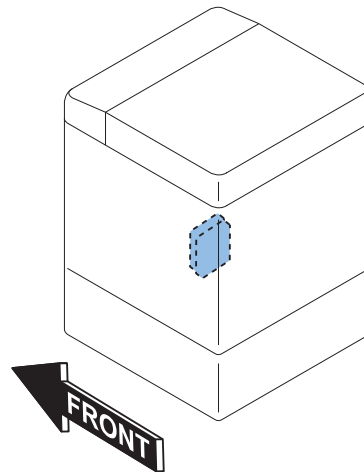
- For TYPE-2 / TYPE-3, be sure to proceed to the procedure for each TYPE after performing “[Removing the HDD \(Preparation\)](#)” on page 361.
- When using the mirroring function, be sure to install 2 HDDs of the same capacity.
- If the HDD is replaced with a high-capacity HDD, the HDD needs to be initialized.
- If an HDD containing user information is replaced with a high-capacity HDD (not initial installation), the HDD data needs to be backed up/exported. For details, refer to "Backup Data List" in the Service Manual.

When installing the HDD-related options (the following 3 products), be sure to refer to the pages described in the following table:

- 2.5inch/250GB HDD-N1
- 2.5inch/1TB HDD-P1
- HDD Mirroring Kit-J1

Title	Combination of products
TYPE-1	“ [TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB) ” on page 364
TYPE-2	“ Removing the HDD (Preparation) ” on page 361 + “ [TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit ” on page 369
TYPE-3	“ Removing the HDD (Preparation) ” on page 361 + “ [TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit ” on page 380

Installation Outline Drawing

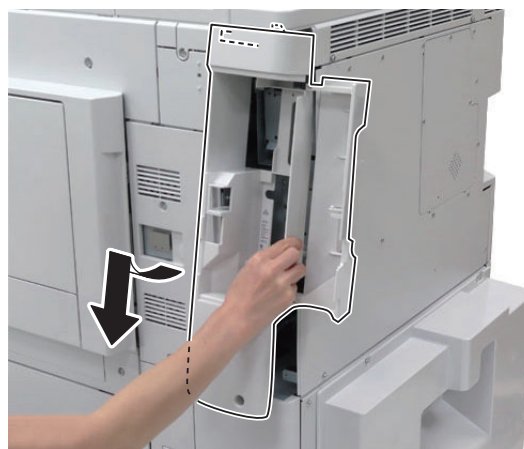
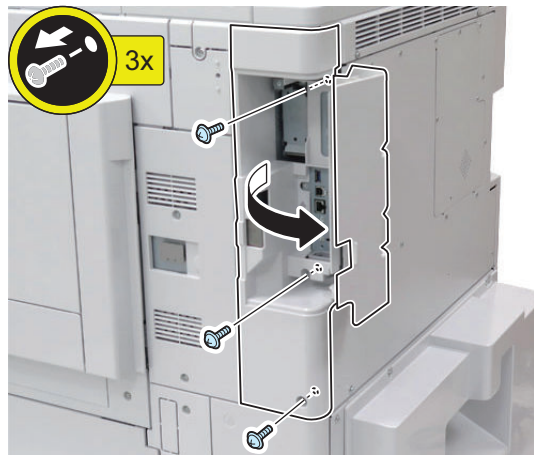


Removing the HDD (Preparation)

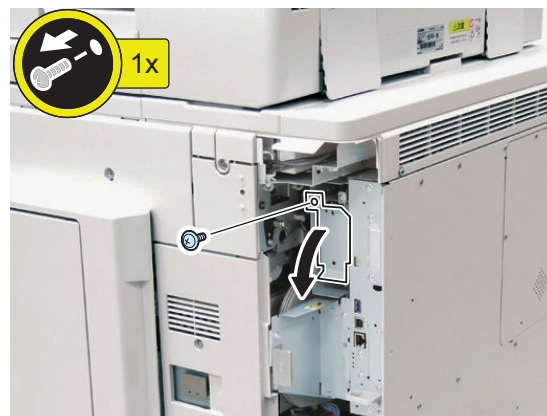
CAUTION:

- [TYPE-1] For Option HDD (1TB), skip this procedure.
For other TYPES, be sure to proceed to each installation procedure after performing this procedure.
- Removed screws will be reused in the installation procedure of each TYPE.

□
1.



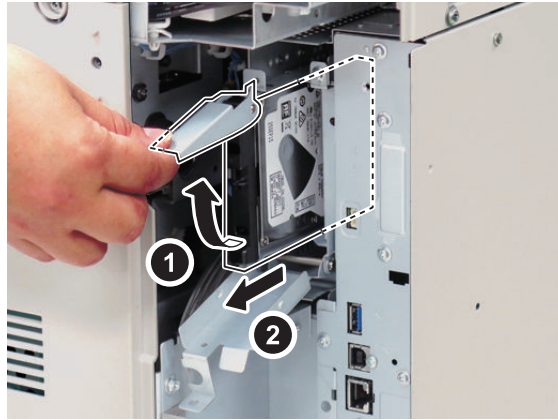
□
2.



□
3.

NOTE:

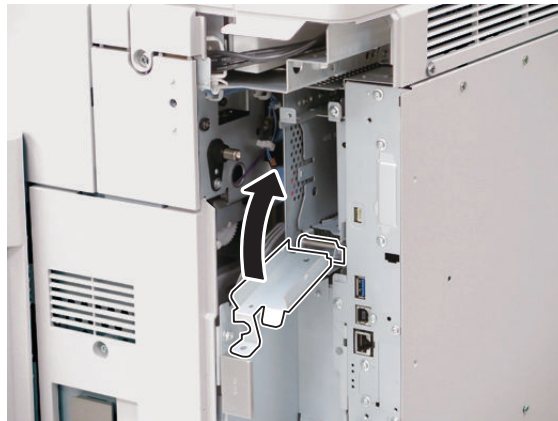
When replacing the HDD with an Option HDD (1TB), the removed HDD will not be used.



□
4.

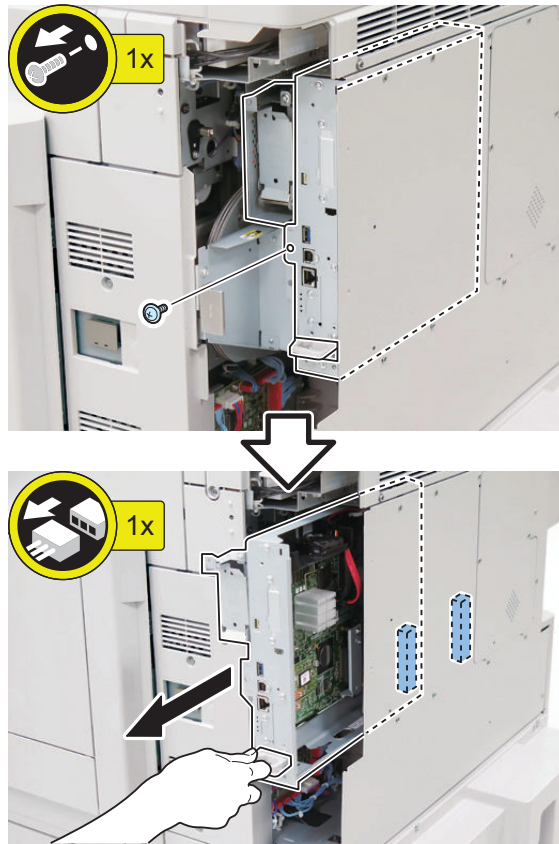
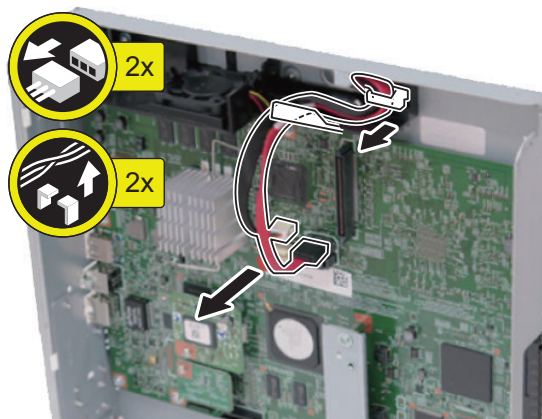
NOTE:

Do not tighten the screw here.

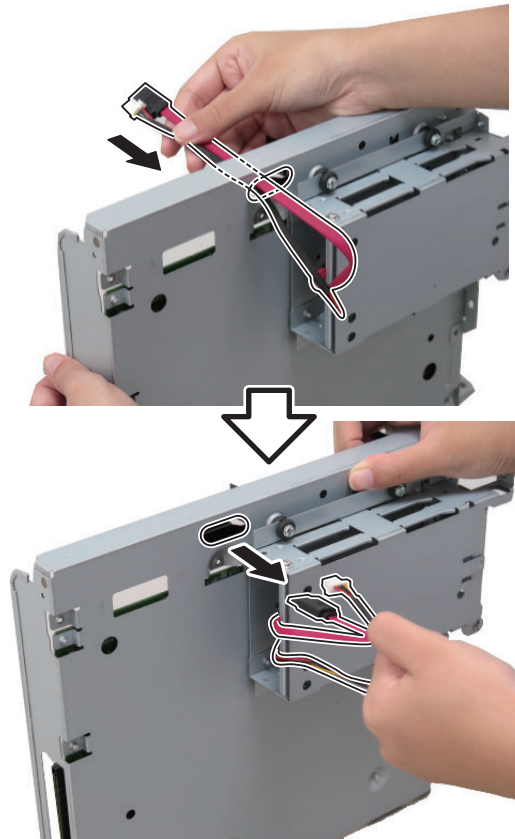


□
5.

NOTE:
Hold the handle to remove the Main Controller PCB 1.

□
6.

□
7.



● [TYPE-1] Option HDD (1TB)

■ Checking the Contents



■ Installation Procedure

□
1.



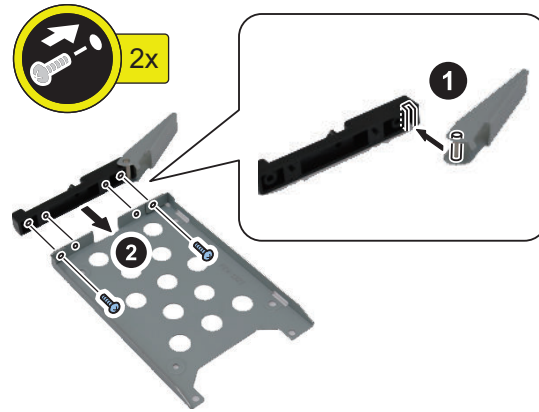
NOTE:

The removed screw will be used in step 6.

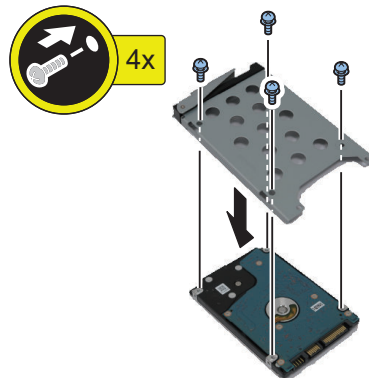
□
2.



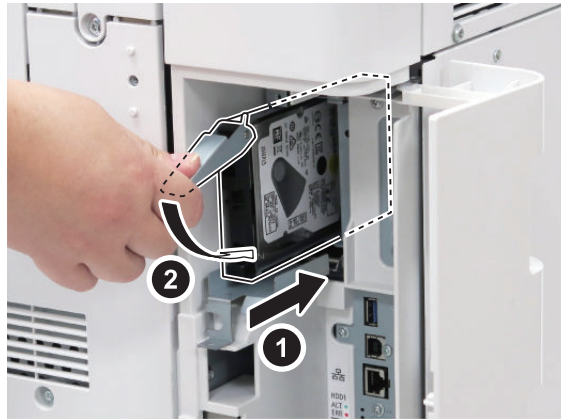
□
3.



□
4.



□
5.



□
6.

NOTE:

Use the screw removed in step 1.



□
7.

■ Connect the power plug to the outlet.

■ HDD Initialization Procedure

1. Requirements

1. PC
Service Support Tool in the version that supports this host machine must be installed.
2. Cross Ethernet Cable (when SST is used)

2. Preparing for the Installation of the System Software of Host machine

1. If both PC and the machine are on, turn them off.
2. Connect the PC and the host machine using an Cross Ethernet cable. (when SST is used)
3. Turn on the PC.

3. Registering the system software

1. Insert the latest System Software into the PC using the SST.
2. Start the SST.
3. Click 'Register Firmware'.
4. Select the drive where the system software has been inserted, and click the [SEARCH] button.
5. Click the [REGISTER] button.
6. Click [OK].

4. Initializing HDD

<In case of SST>

1. Start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
2. Start the SST.
3. Select the model. Then, select [Single] and click [Start].
4. Click [Format HDD].
5. Select [All], and click [Start].
6. Click [Execute Format].
7. The Format is executed.
8. Select [Shutdown/Restart], and click [Shutdown].
9. Click [OK]
10. The power of the host machine is turned OFF.
11. Terminate the SST.
12. Disconnect the Cross Ethernet Cable from the machine, and connect the user's network cable to the machine.

<In case of USB flash drive>

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
2. Start up SST, and click the USB icon displayed in the target selection screen.
3. Select the drive, the model series, and the version to be written to the USB flash drive, and click [Confirm].
4. Click [Start], and after the version has been written to the USB flash drive, click [OK] and then remove the USB flash drive.
5. Terminate the SST.
6. Connect the USB flash drive to the host machine, and start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
7. When the USB menu is displayed, press keys on the Control Panel in the order shown below.
 - [4]: Clear/Format
 - [1]: Disk Format
 - [0]: OK
 - Press any keys.
 - [C]: Return to menu
 - [Reset] : Start shutdown sequence
 - [0]: OK (The power of the host machine is turned OFF automatically.)
8. Remove the USB flash drive.
9. Turn ON the main power switch.

■ Executing Auto Gradation Adjustment

When the high-capacity HDD is installed, the machine initializes its HDD, resetting the data used for auto gradation correction. Therefore, execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment after installing the high-capacity HDD to enable proper images to be output.

■ Execution of the Minimum Installation Work

Be sure to execute the minimum installation work in accordance with the Setup Guide because HDD is initialized when the high-capacity HDD is installed.

● [TYPE-2] Standard HDD + Option HDD (250GB) + HDD Mirroring Kit

■ Checking the Contents

<Option HDD (250 GB)>

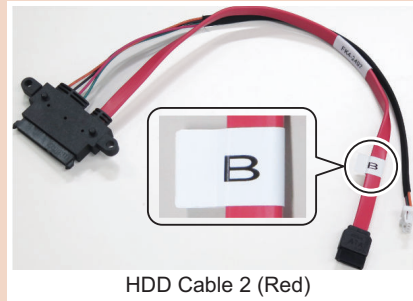


<HDD Mirroring Kit>

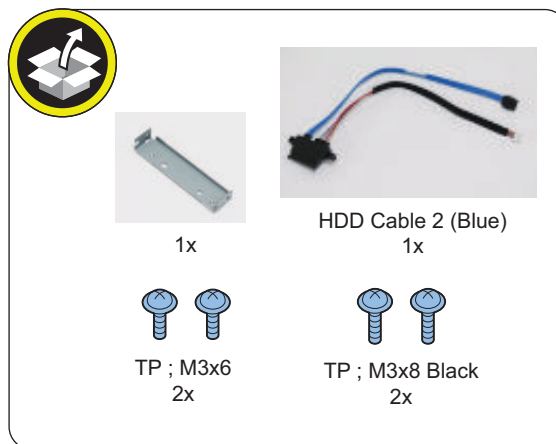
CAUTION:

Although the red cable shown below may sometimes be supplied in lieu of the HDD Cable 2 (Blue), the procedure for connecting the red cable is the same as that for the blue cable.

When connecting the cable to the Controller PCB, make sure to first confirm that the sticker [B] is attached to the cable and then connect the cable to the Controller PCB.



HDD Cable 2 (Red)



<Others>

- Guides are included

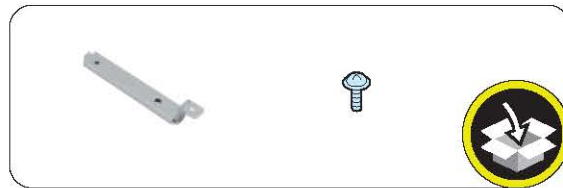
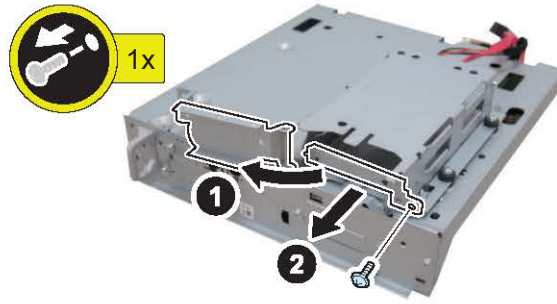
■ Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

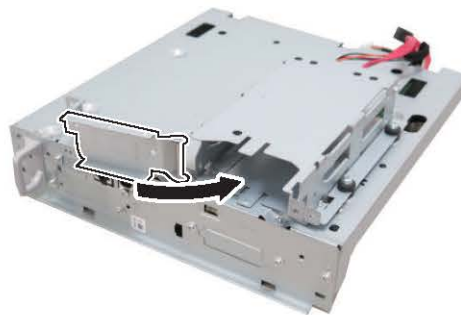
Be sure to perform [“Removing the HDD \(Preparation\)”](#) on page 361 before performing the following work.

• Installing the HDD Mirroring Kit

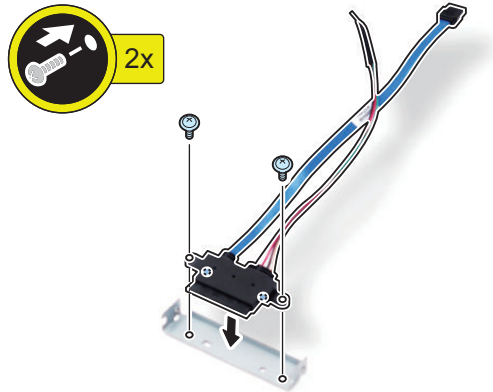
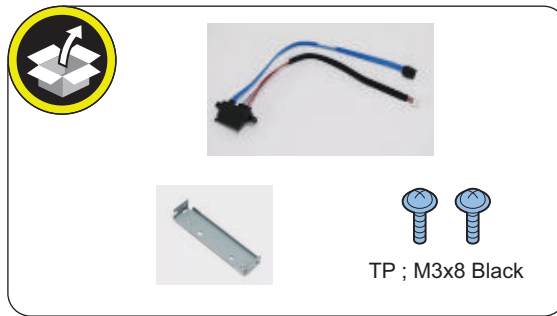
□
1.



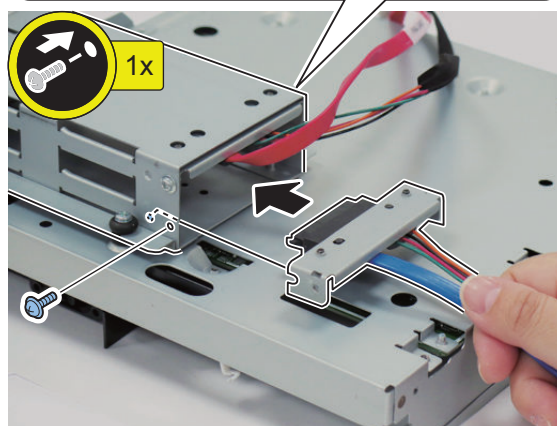
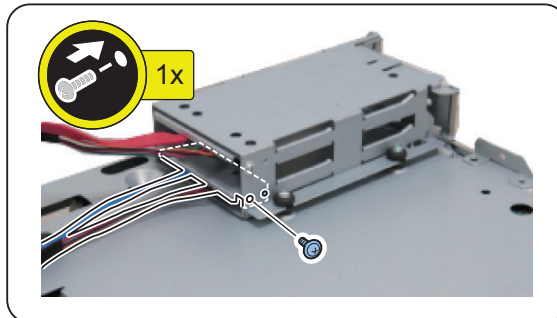
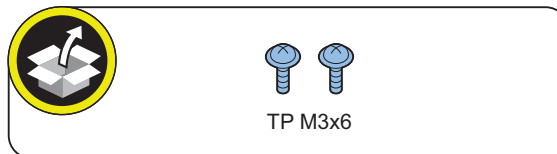
□
2.



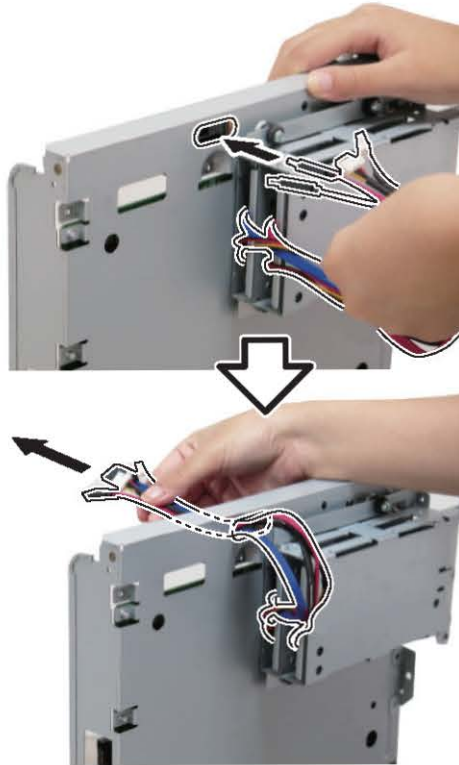
□
3.



□
4.



□
5.

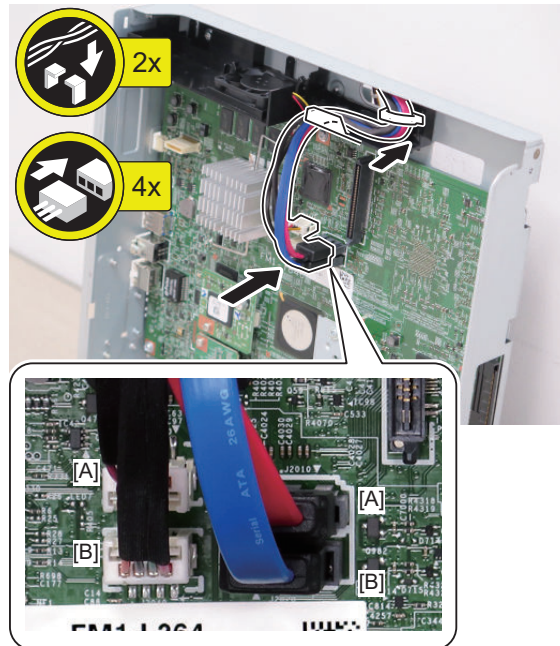


□
6.

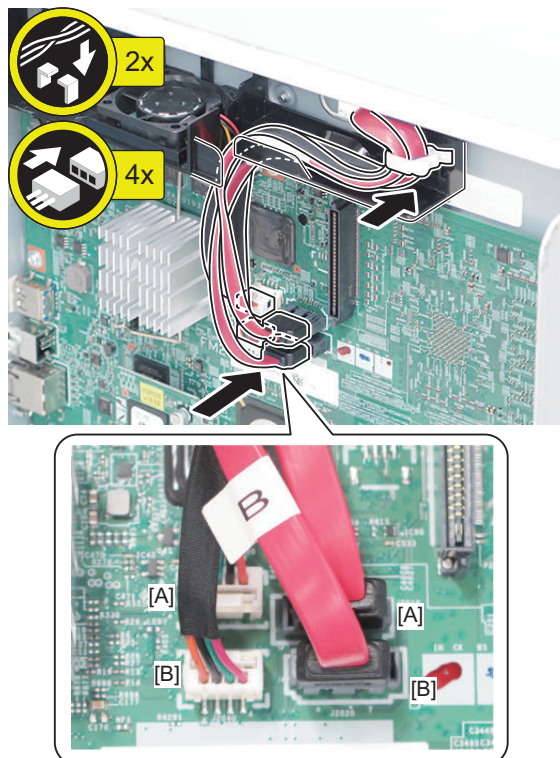
CAUTION:

- Be sure to connect the communication cable to the correct port. The HDD error occurs.
- Connect the HDD Cable 1 (Red) to [A] on the Controller PCB.
- Connect the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) or the HDD Cable 2 (Red) with a sticker labeled [B] to [B] on the Controller PCB.

< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) >

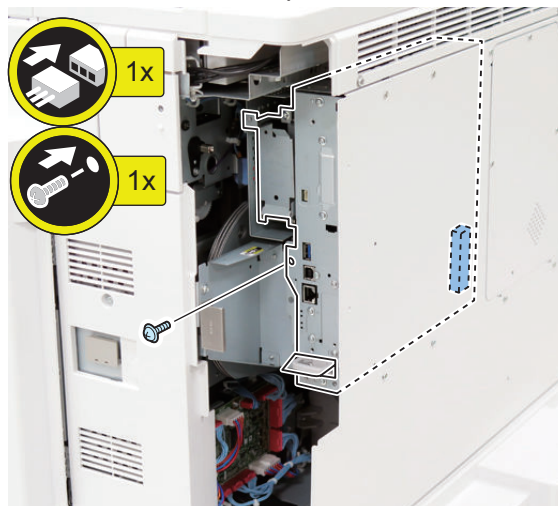
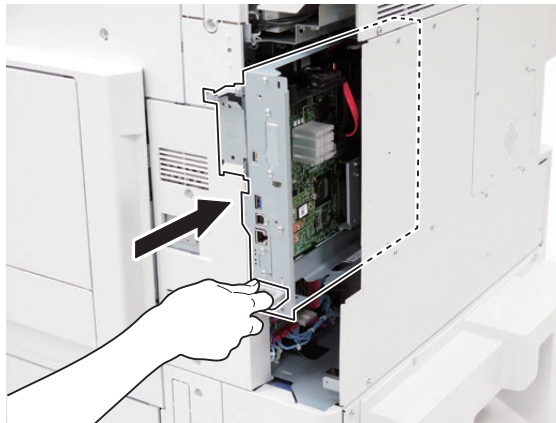
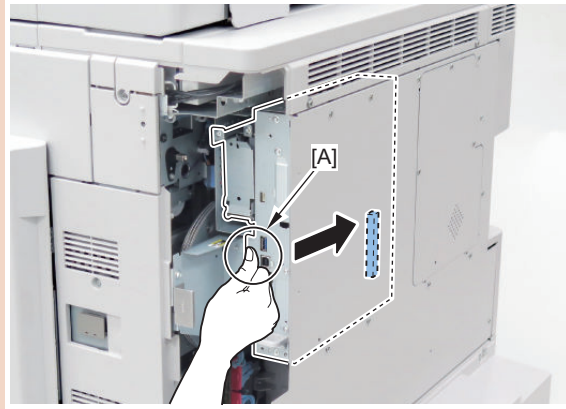


<< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Red) >

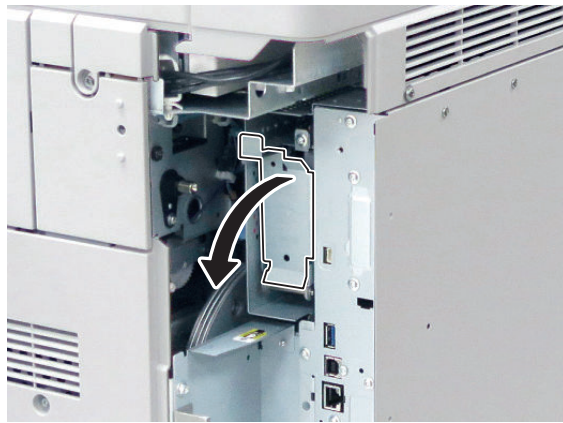


□
7.**CAUTION:**

- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.
- Be sure to push the [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.

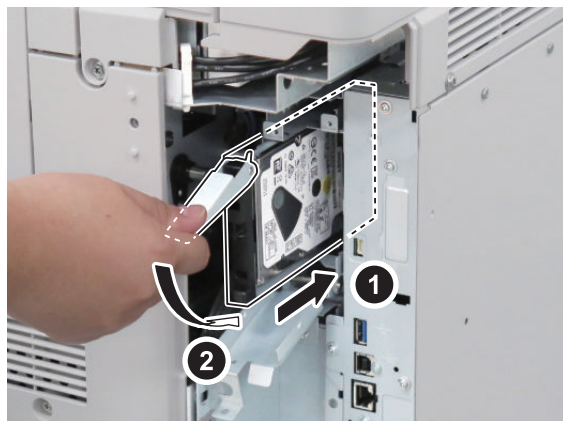


□
8.



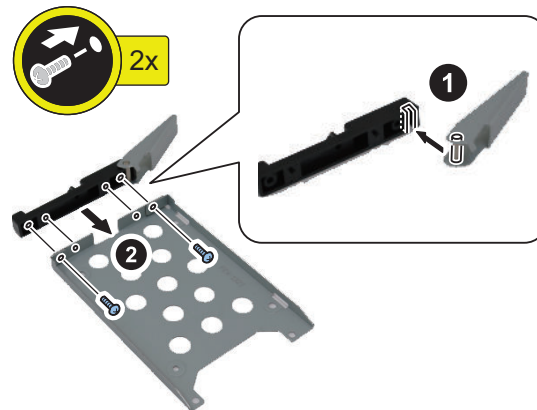
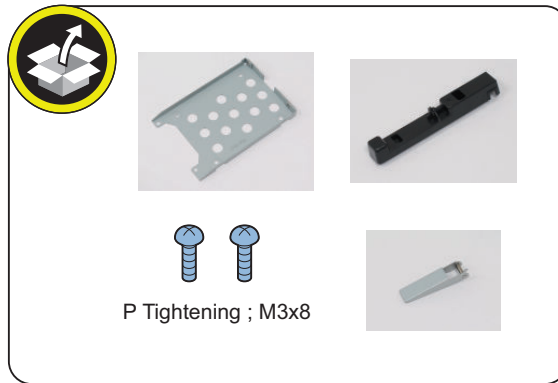
□
9.

NOTE:
Return the HDD removed from the host machine to the Slot 1 (Left).

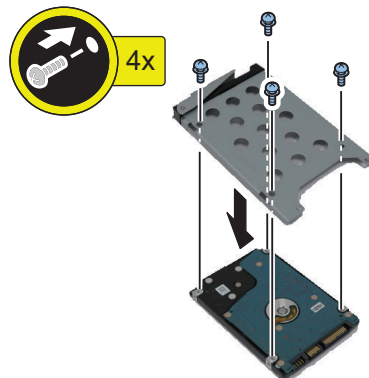


• Assembling and Installing the Option HDD

□
1.

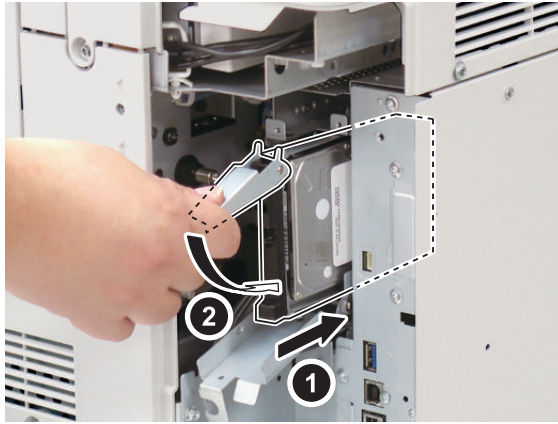


□
2.



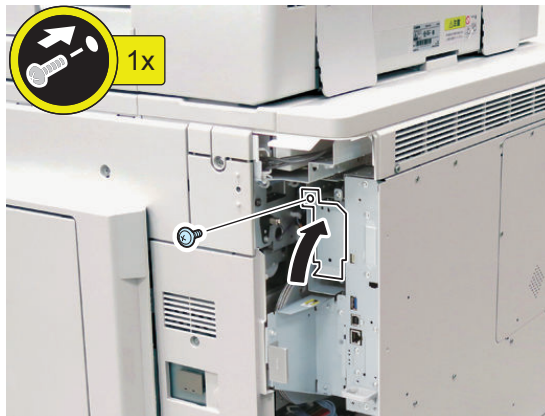
□
3.

NOTE:
Install the Option HDD to the Slot 2 (Right).

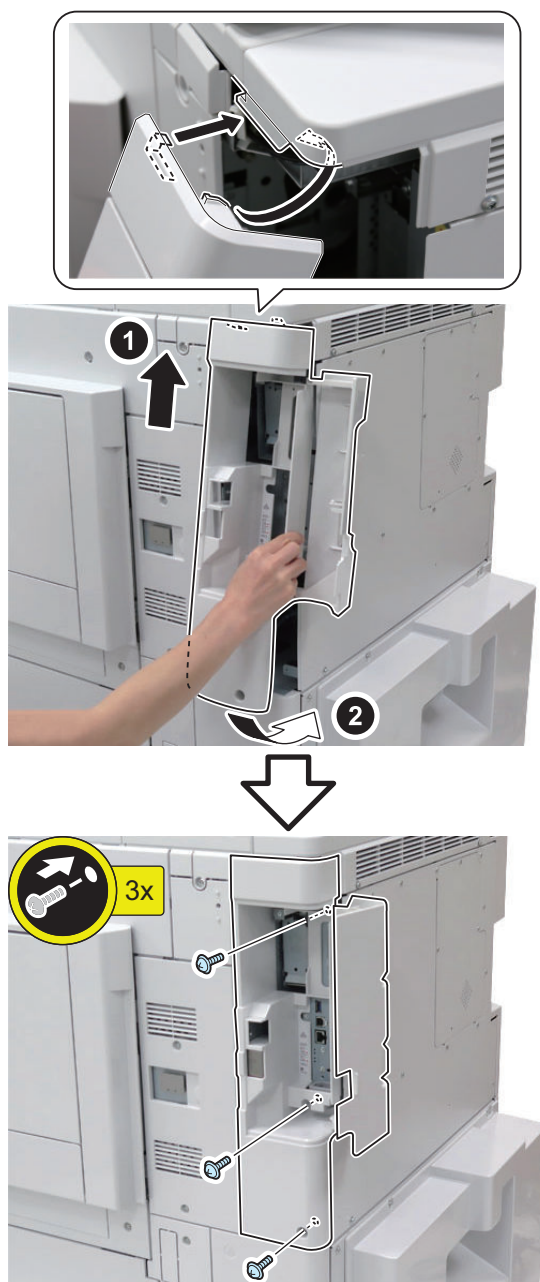


□
4.

NOTE:
Use the screw removed in step 2 of "Removing the HDD (Preparation)".



□
5.



□
6. Connect the power plug to the outlet.

□
7. Turn ON the main power switch.

■ Setting the Mirroring

-
1. Set the setting value for the mirroring to "1" in the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
 2. Turn OFF/ON the main power of the host machine to enable the setting value.

3. Make sure that the UI screen is activated correctly.
4. Open the Cover, and make sure that the LED blinks.

NOTE:

Rebuilding starts approximately after 3 minutes after turning OFF and then ON the power.

- HDD 1 (Slot 1): The green LED blinks.
- HDD 2 (Slot 2): The green and red LEDs blink.

CAUTION:

Rebuild process starts after setting "1" for W/RAID.

If an error occurs during the rebuild process at the initial installation the hard disk needs to be replaced. (Call service rep.), reexecute the process with the following procedure.

1. Check that the lighting red LED is HDD2.
2. Select "0" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
3. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.
4. Select "1" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
5. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.

The foregoing procedure is limited to the rebuild process at the initial installation.

An error during the rebuild process that is executed during operation is not included in the consideration.

[TYPE-3] 2 Option HDDs (1TB) + HDD Mirroring Kit

■ Checking the Contents

<Option HDD (1TB)>

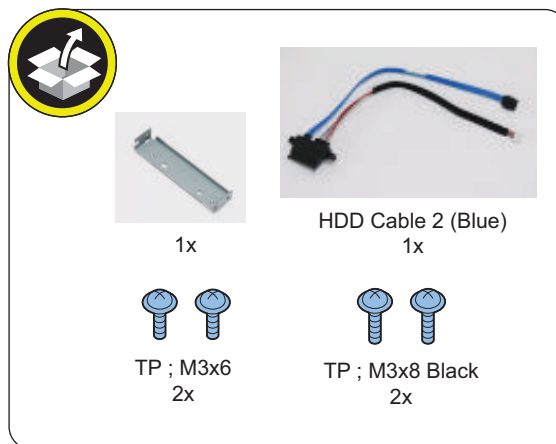
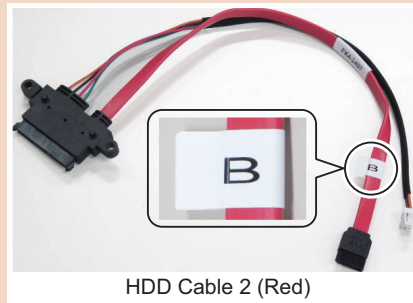


<HDD Mirroring Kit>

CAUTION:

Although the red cable shown below may sometimes be supplied in lieu of the HDD Cable 2 (Blue), the procedure for connecting the red cable is the same as that for the blue cable.

When connecting the cable to the Controller PCB, make sure to first confirm that the sticker [B] is attached to the cable and then connect the cable to the Controller PCB.



<Others>

- Guides are included

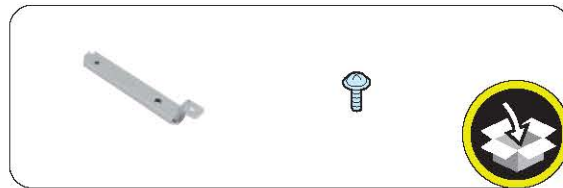
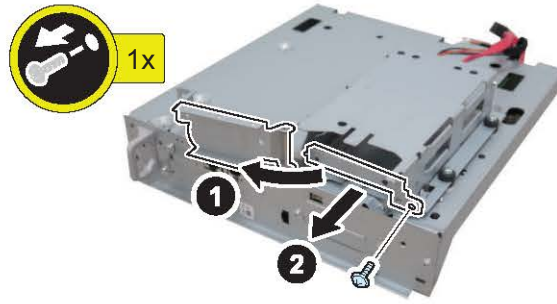
■ Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

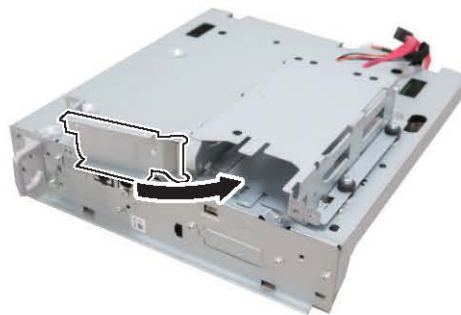
Be sure to perform [“Removing the HDD \(Preparation\)”](#) on page 361 before performing the following work.

• Installing the HDD Mirroring Kit

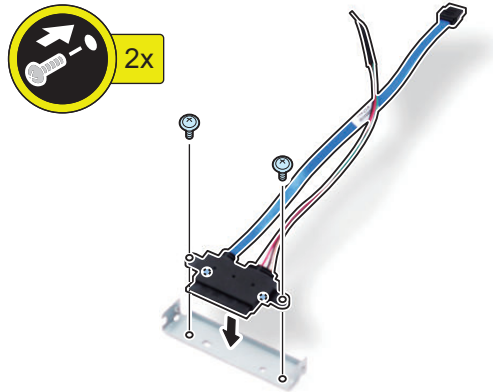
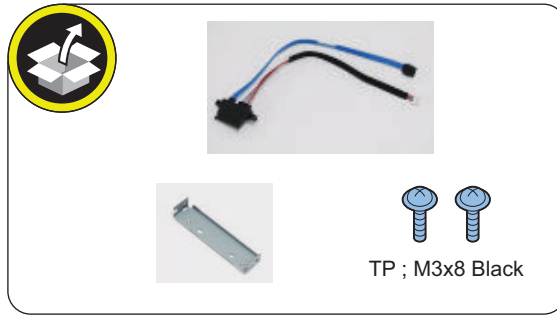
□
1.



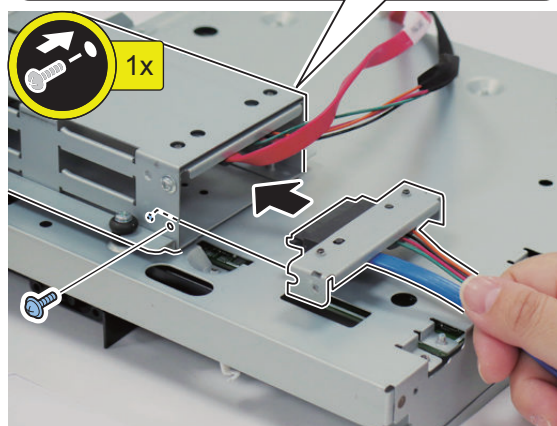
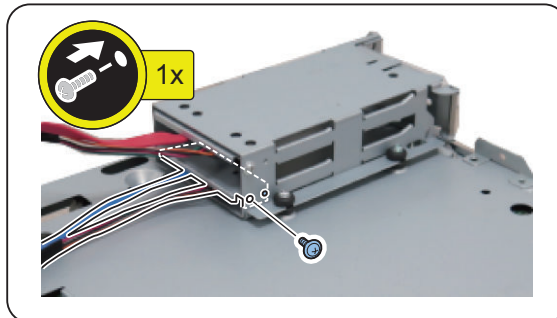
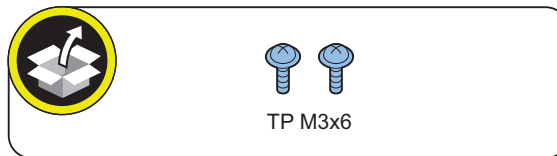
□
2.



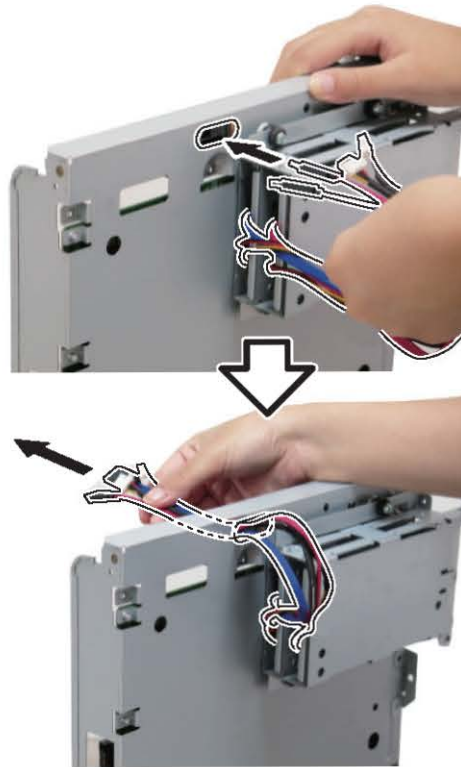
□
3.



□
4.



□
5.

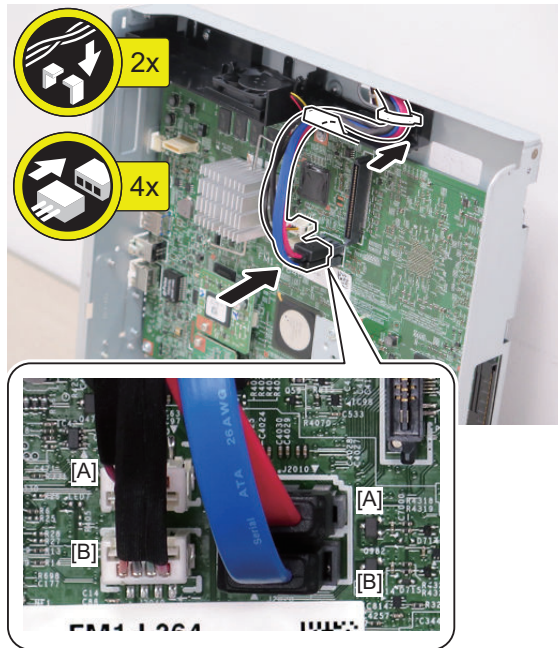


□
6.

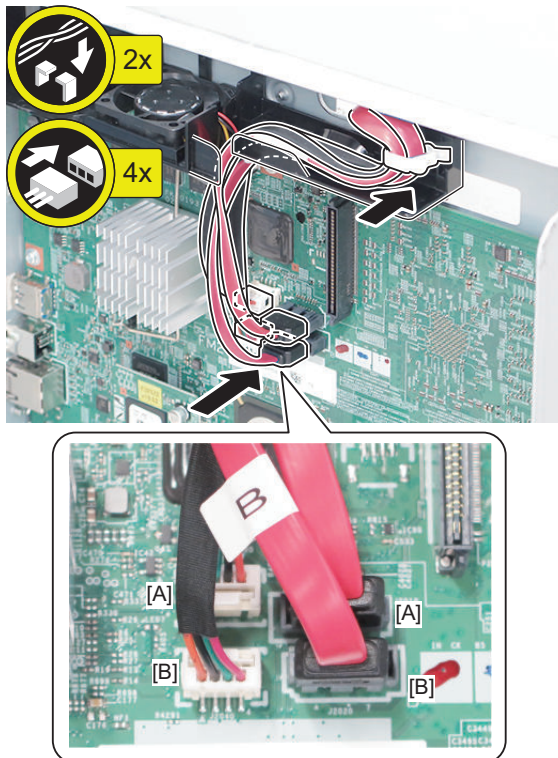
CAUTION:

- Be sure to connect the communication cable to the correct port. The HDD error occurs.
- Connect the HDD Cable 1 (Red) to [A] on the Controller PCB.
- Connect the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) or the HDD Cable 2 (Red) with a sticker labeled [B] to [B] on the Controller PCB.

< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Blue) >

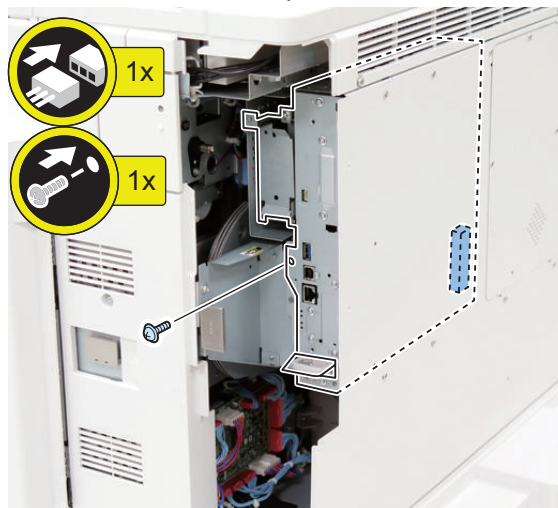
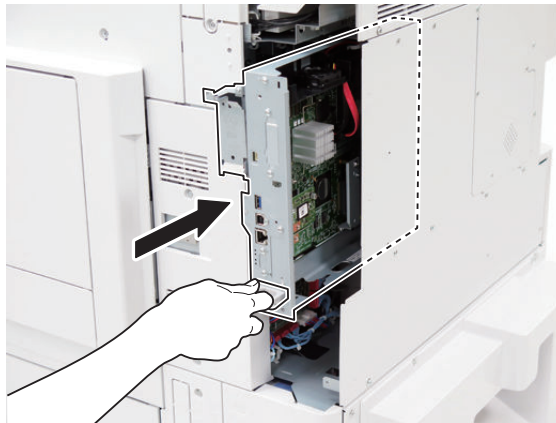
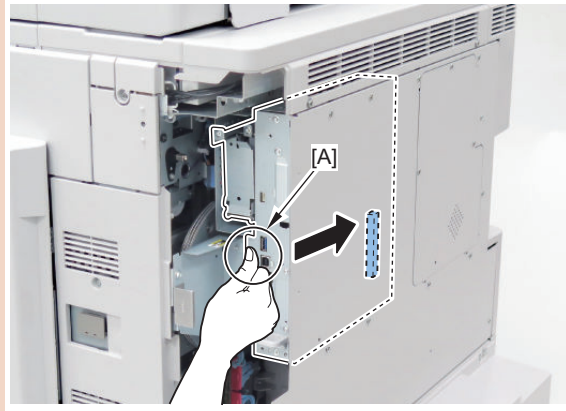


< When using the HDD Cable 2 (Red) >



□
7.**CAUTION:**

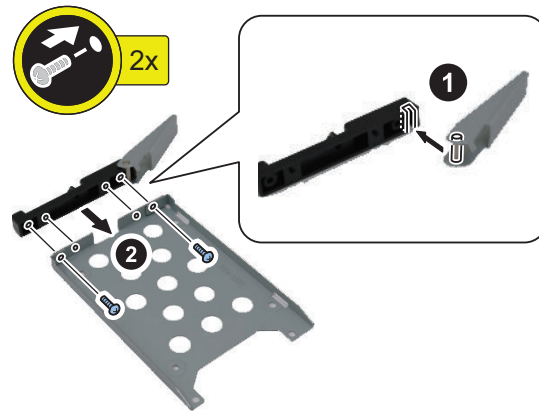
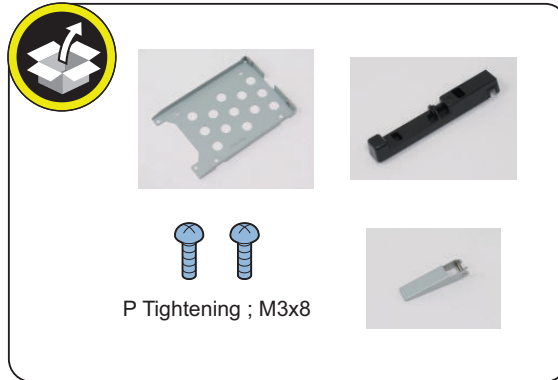
- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB 1 until it stops.
- Be sure to push the [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



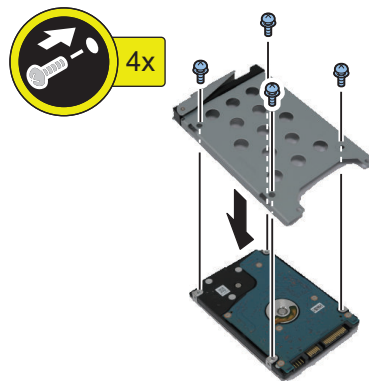
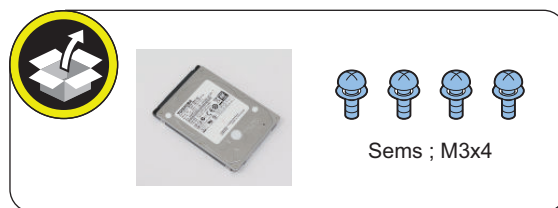
• Assembling and Installing the Option HDD

□
1.

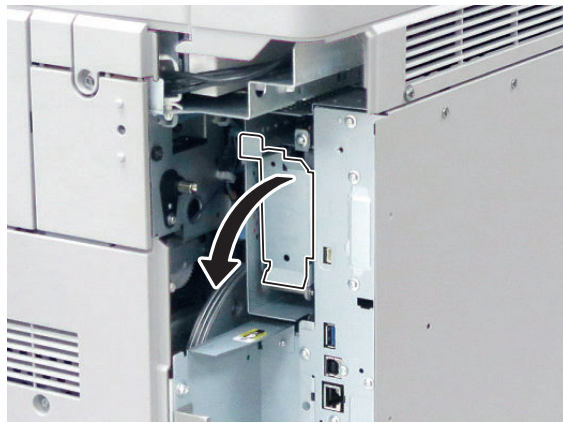
NOTE:
Install the 2 Option HDDs according to steps 1 to 2.



□
2.



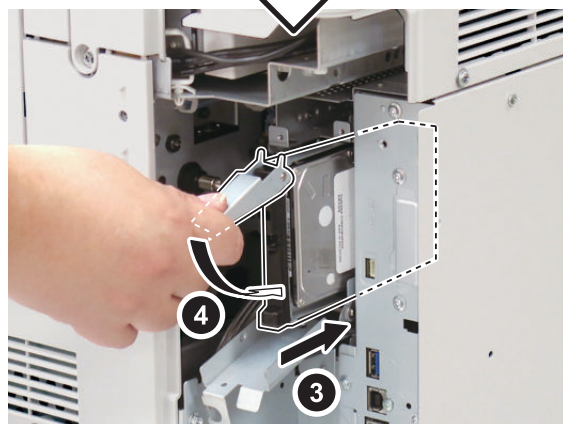
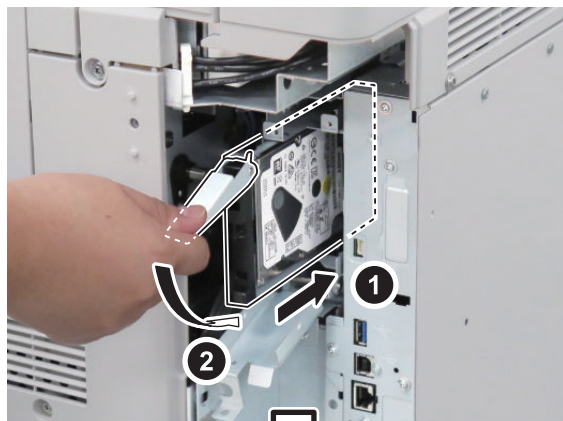
□
3.



□
4.

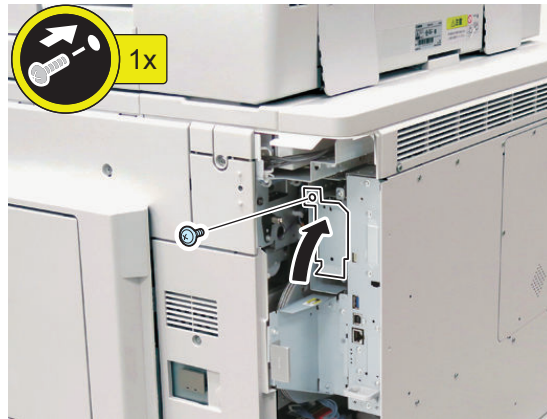
NOTE:

- Install the first Option HDD to the Slot 1 (Left).
- Install the second Option HDD to the Slot 2 (Right).



□
5.

NOTE:
Use the screw removed in step 2 of "Removing the HDD (Preparation)".



□
6.



□
7. ■ Connect the power plug to the outlet.

■ HDD Initialization Procedure

1. Requirements

1. PC
Service Support Tool in the version that supports this host machine must be installed.
2. Cross Ethernet Cable (when SST is used)

2. Preparing for the Installation of the System Software of Host machine

1. If both PC and the machine are on, turn them off.
2. Connect the PC and the host machine using an Cross Ethernet cable. (when SST is used)
3. Turn on the PC.

3. Registering the system software

1. Insert the latest System Software into the PC using the SST.
2. Start the SST.
3. Click 'Register Firmware'.
4. Select the drive where the system software has been inserted, and click the [SEARCH] button.
5. Click the [REGISTER] button.
6. Click [OK].

4. Initializing HDD

<In case of SST>

1. Start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
2. Start the SST.
3. Select the model. Then, select [Single] and click [Start].
4. Click [Format HDD].
5. Select [All], and click [Start].
6. Click [Execute Format].
7. The Format is executed.
8. Select [Shutdown/Restart], and click [Shutdown].
9. Click [OK]
10. The power of the host machine is turned OFF.
11. Terminate the SST.
12. Disconnect the Cross Ethernet Cable from the machine, and connect the user's network cable to the machine.

<In case of USB flash drive>

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the PC.
2. Start up SST, and click the USB icon displayed in the target selection screen.
3. Select the drive, the model series, and the version to be written to the USB flash drive, and click [Confirm].
4. Click [Start], and after the version has been written to the USB flash drive, click [OK] and then remove the USB flash drive.
5. Terminate the SST.
6. Connect the USB flash drive to the host machine, and start the host machine with download mode in safe mode.
7. When the USB menu is displayed, press keys on the Control Panel in the order shown below.
 - [4]: Clear/Format
 - [1]: Disk Format
 - [0]: OK
 - Press any keys.
 - [C]: Return to menu
 - [Reset] : Start shutdown sequence
 - [0]: OK (The power of the host machine is turned OFF automatically.)
8. Remove the USB flash drive.
9. Turn ON the main power switch.

■ Setting the Mirroring



1. **Set the setting value for the mirroring to "1" in the following service mode.**
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
2. **Turn OFF/ON the main power of the host machine to enable the setting value.**
3. **Make sure that the UI screen is activated correctly.**
4. **Open the Cover, and make sure that the LED blinks.**

NOTE:

Rebuilding starts approximately after 3 minutes after turning OFF and then ON the power.

- HDD 1 (Slot 1): The green LED blinks.
- HDD 2 (Slot 2): The green and red LEDs blink.

CAUTION:

Rebuild process starts after setting "1" for W/RAID.

If an error occurs during the rebuild process at the initial installation the hard disk needs to be replaced. (Call service rep.), reexecute the process with the following procedure.

1. Check that the lighting red LED is HDD2.
2. Select "0" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
3. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.
4. Select "1" for the following service mode.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > W/RAID
5. To enable the setting value, turn OFF/ON the Main Power Supply Switch of the host machine.

The foregoing procedure is limited to the rebuild process at the initial installation.

An error during the rebuild process that is executed during operation is not included in the consideration.

■ Executing Auto Gradation Adjustment

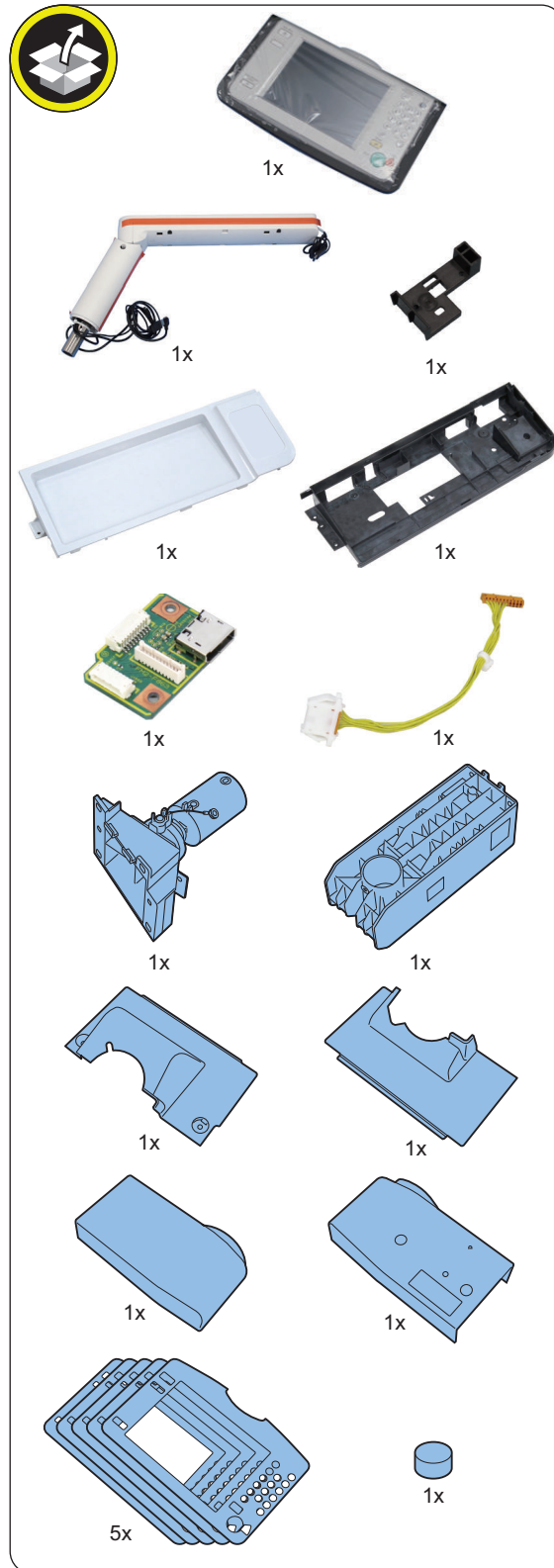
When the high-capacity HDD is installed, the machine initializes its HDD, resetting the data used for auto gradation correction. Therefore, execute full adjustment of auto gradation adjustment after installing the high-capacity HDD to enable proper images to be output.

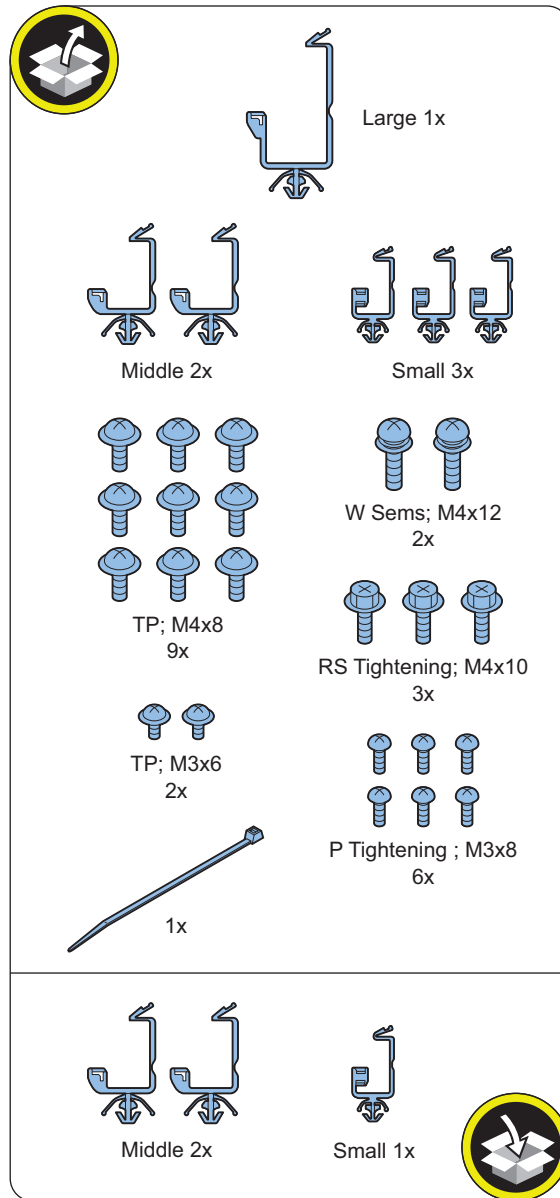
■ Execution of the Minimum Installation Work

Be sure to execute the minimum installation work in accordance with the Setup Guide because HDD is initialized when the high-capacity HDD is installed.

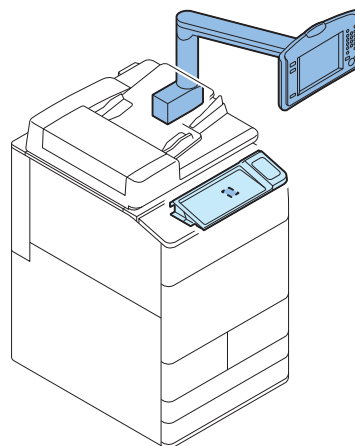
Upright Control Panel-J1

Checking the Contents





Installation Outline Drawing

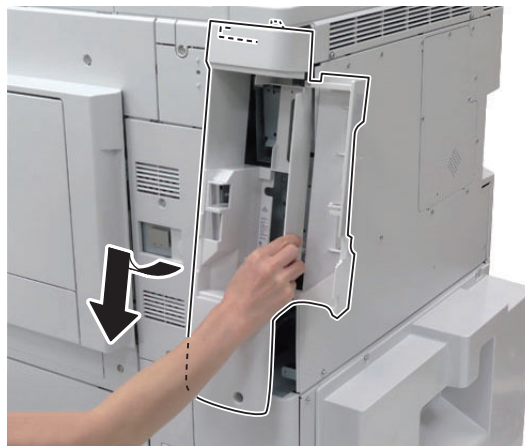
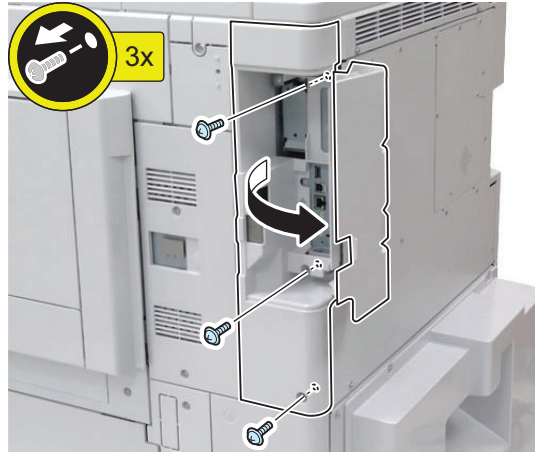


Installation Procedure

■ Removing the Covers

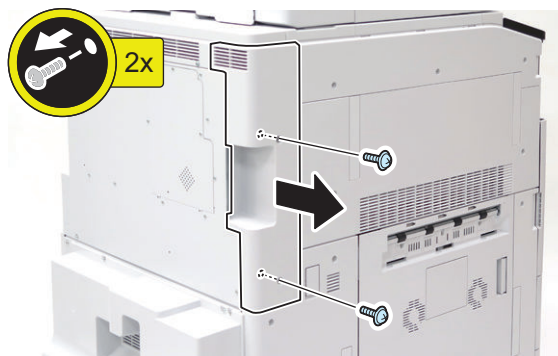
□

1.

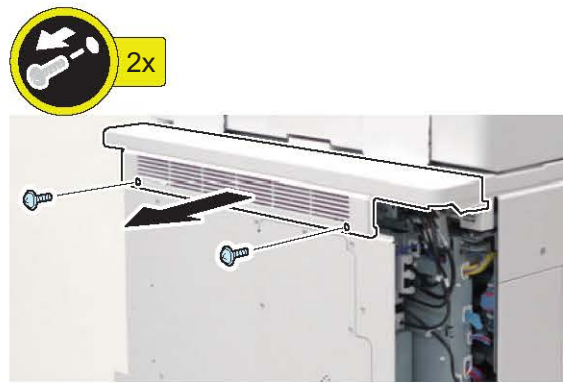


□

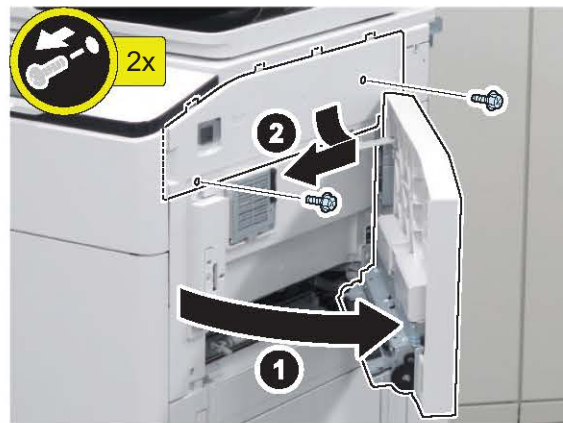
2.



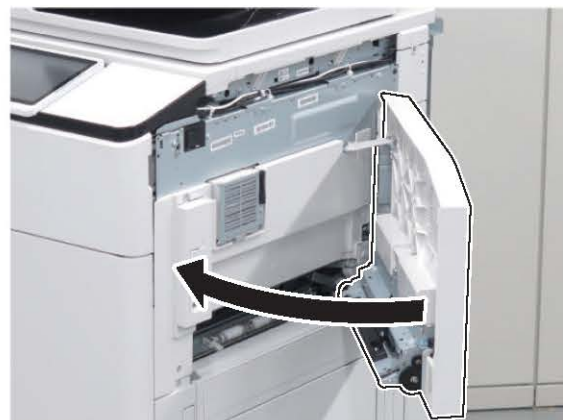
□
3.



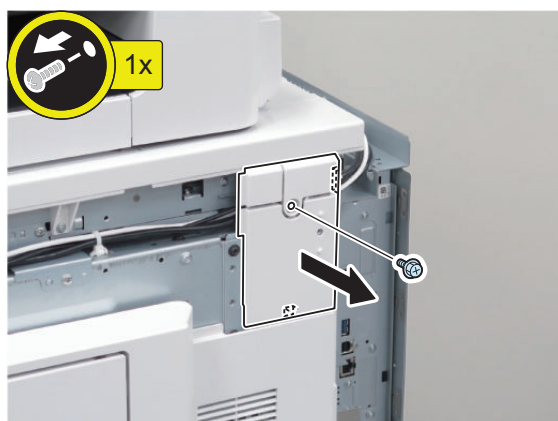
□
4.



□
5.



□
6.



NOTE:

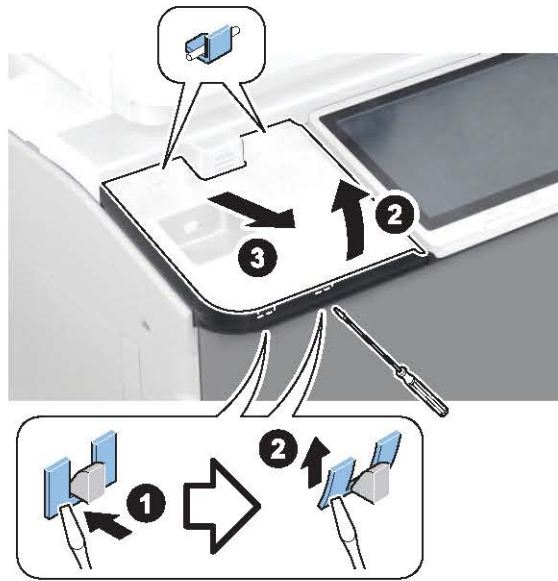
Removed parts will be used in step 25 and 26 of "Installing the Upright Arm".

■ **Removing the Flat Control Panel**

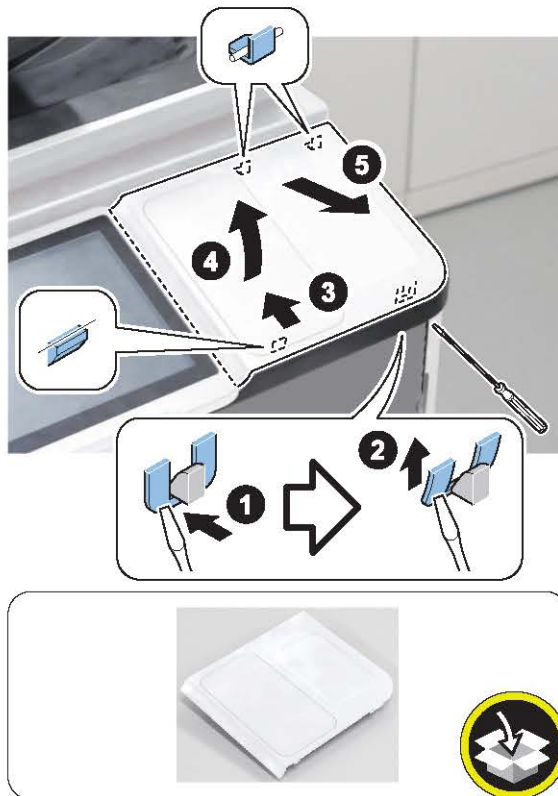
□
1.



□
2.



□
3.



□
4.



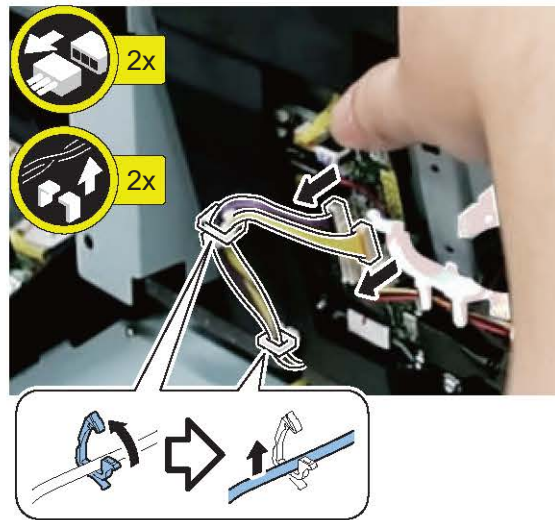
NOTE:

3 of removed screws will be used in step 9 and 1 will be used in step 14 of "Installing the Upright Arm".

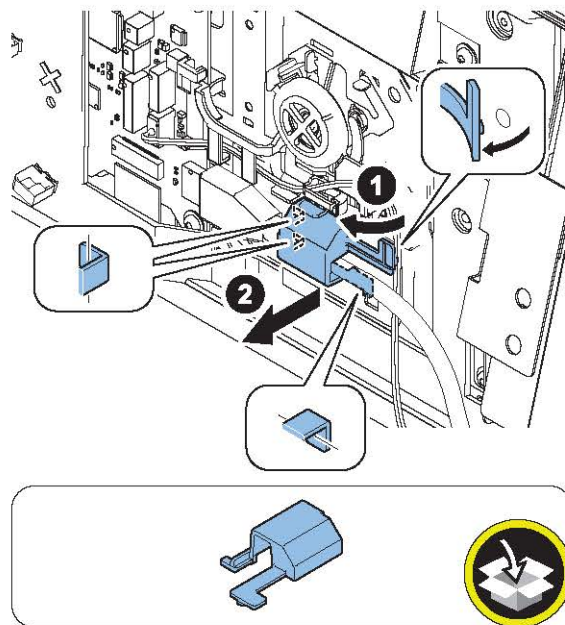
□
5.



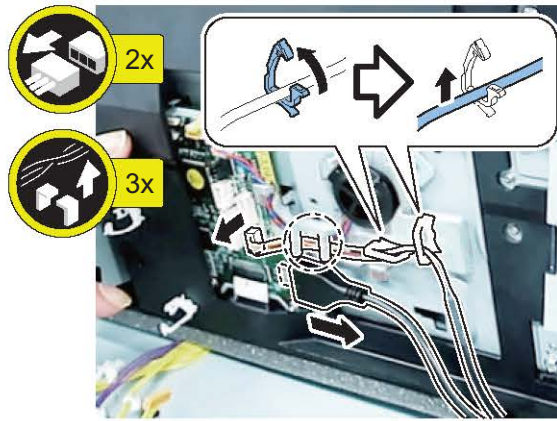
□
6.



□
7.



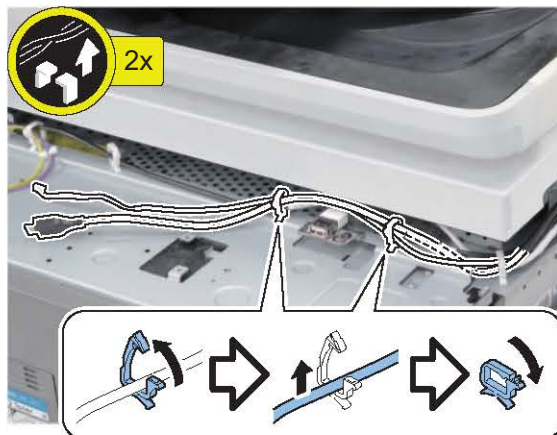
□
8.



□
9.

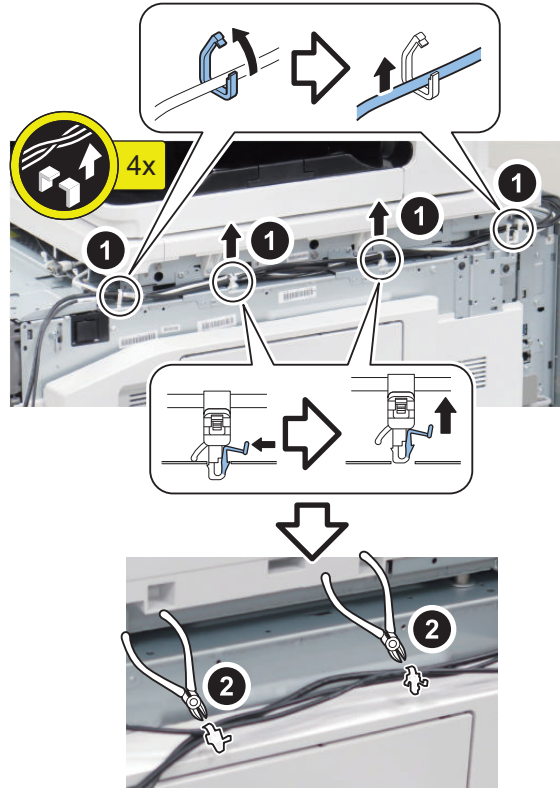


□
10.

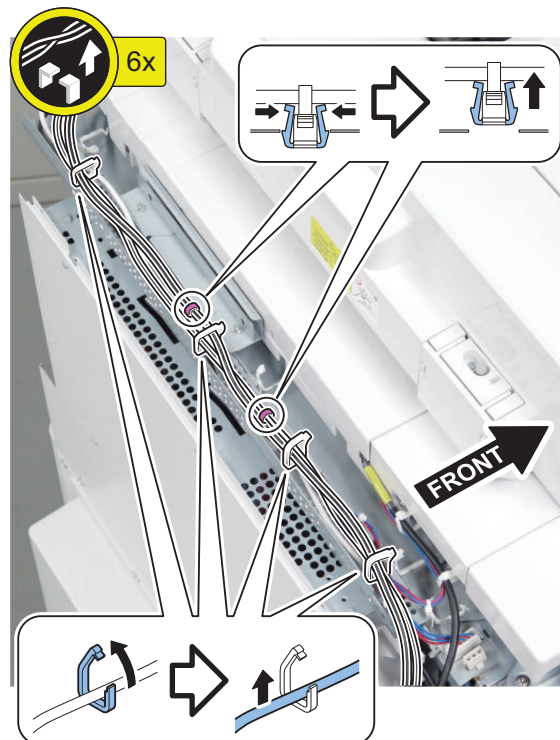


□
11.

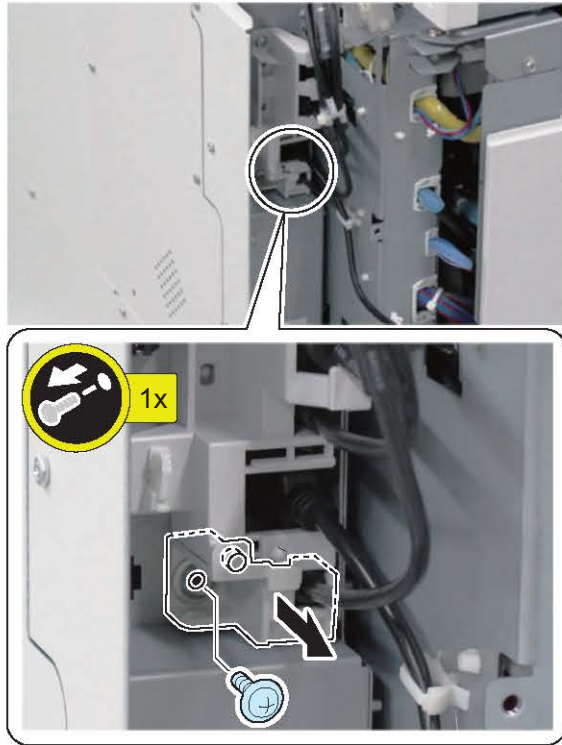
CAUTION:
Be careful not to damage the cables.



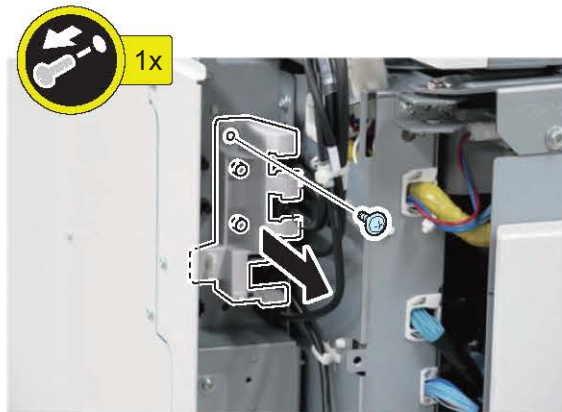
□
12.



□
13.

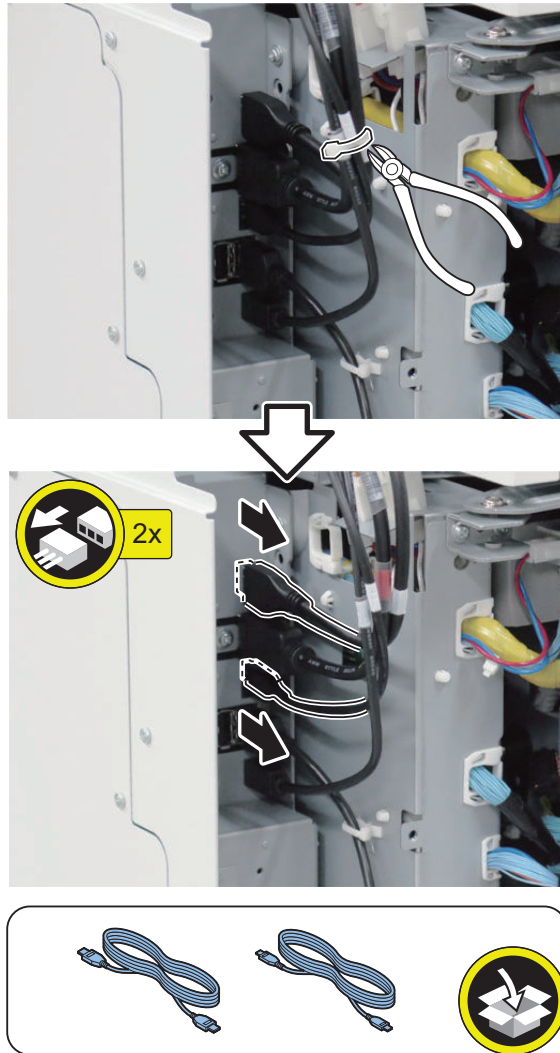


□
14.



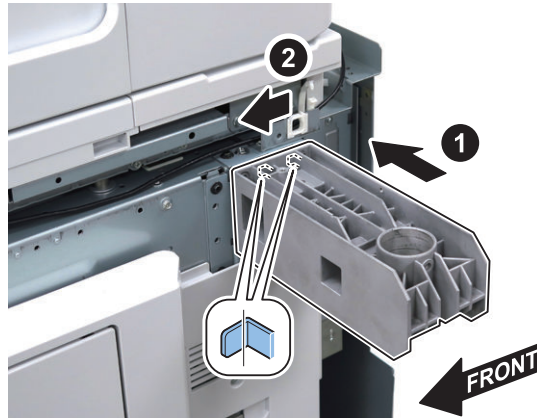
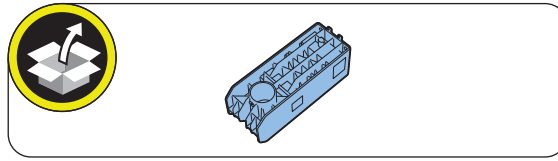
□
15.

CAUTION:
Be careful not to damage the cables.

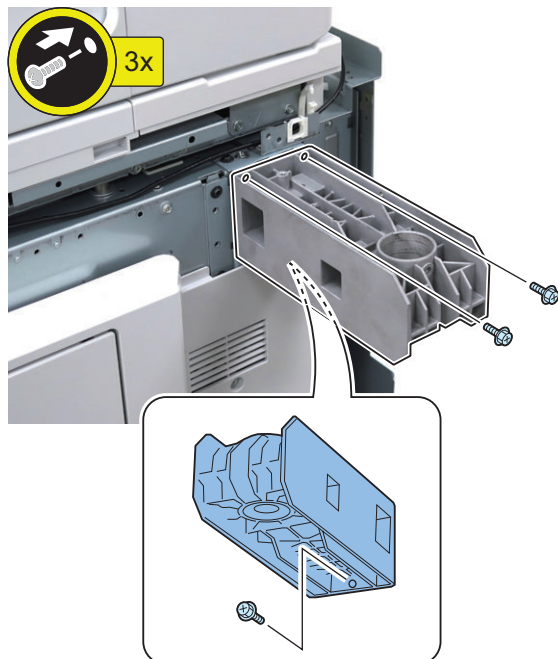
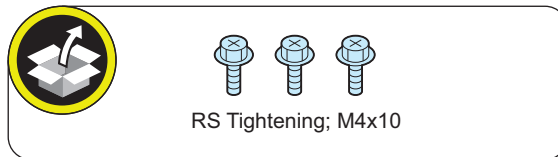


■ Installing the Upright Arm

□
1.

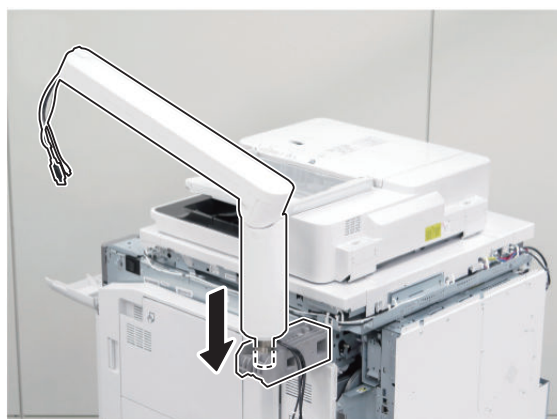


□
2.

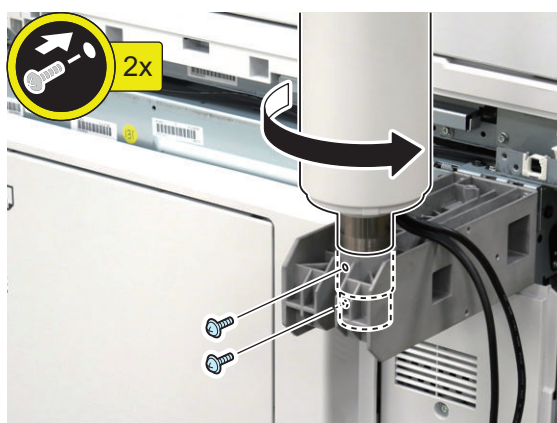
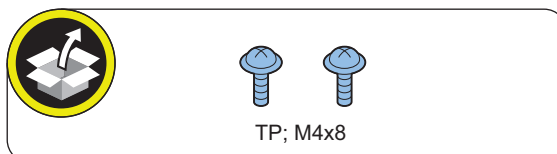


□
3.

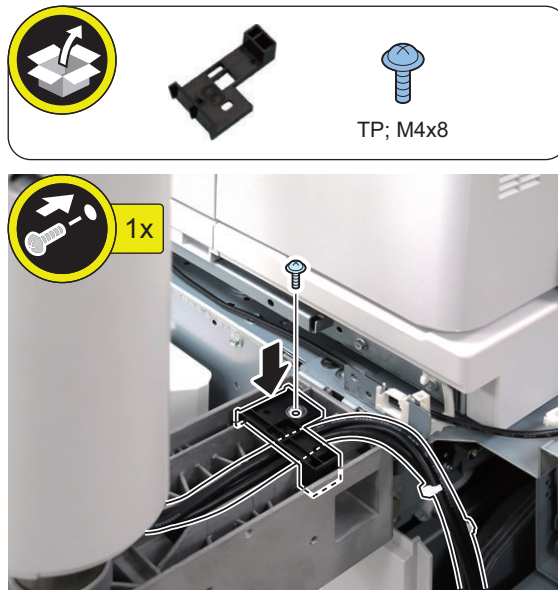
NOTE:
Remove tapes, and insert the Upright Arm vertically into the round hole of the Frame Base.



□
4.

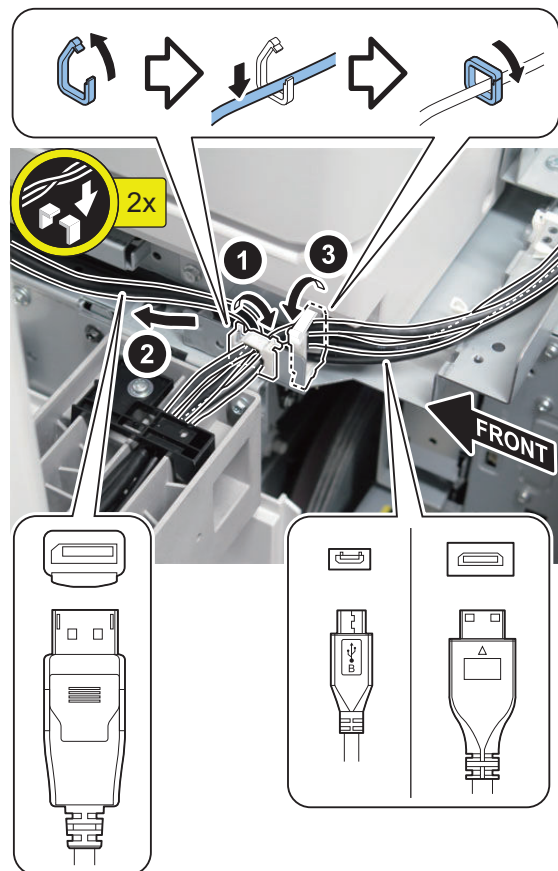


□
5.



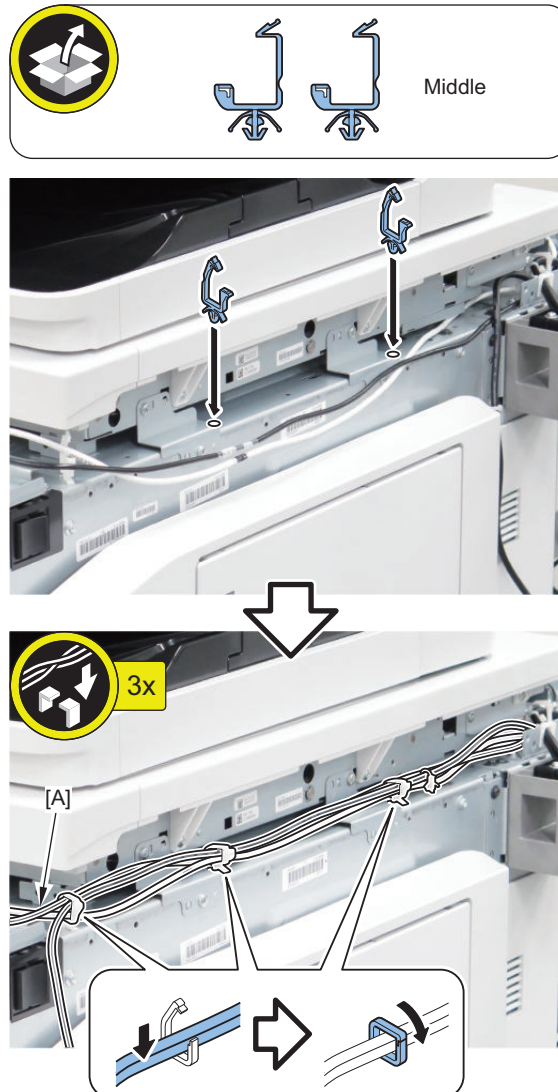
□
6.

1. Secure the 3 cables in place using the Edge Saddles.
2. Hang the Display Port Cable on the front side.
3. Secure the UI Signal Cable (HDMI Type C) and the UI Power Supply Cable (microUSB) in place using the Wire Saddle.



□
7.**NOTE:**

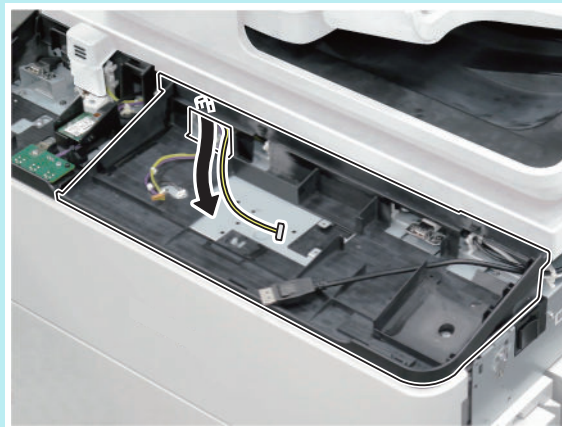
Install the 2 Wire Saddles (Middle) as shown in the figure, and secure the existing cable [A] and the Display Port Cable with them.



□
8.

**NOTE:**

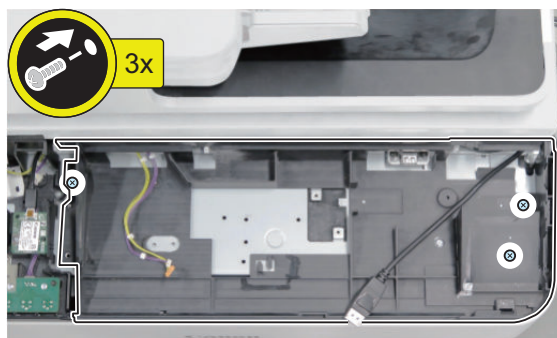
When the NFC Kit will be installed at the same time, make sure to pass the NFC Cable through together. (Refer to the Service Manual of host machine for the installation procedure.)



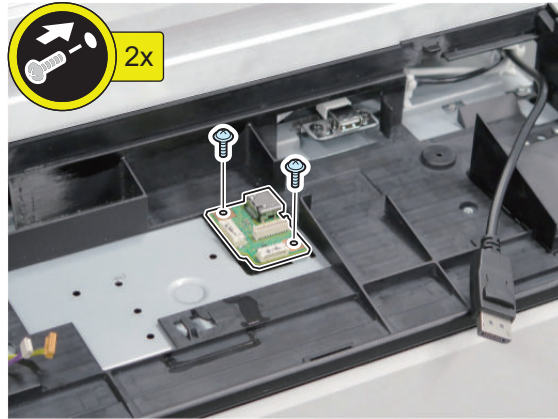
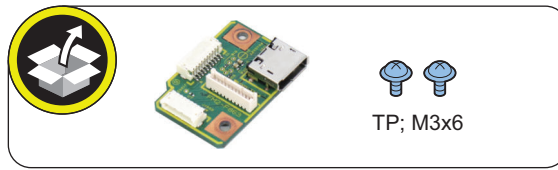
□
9.

NOTE:

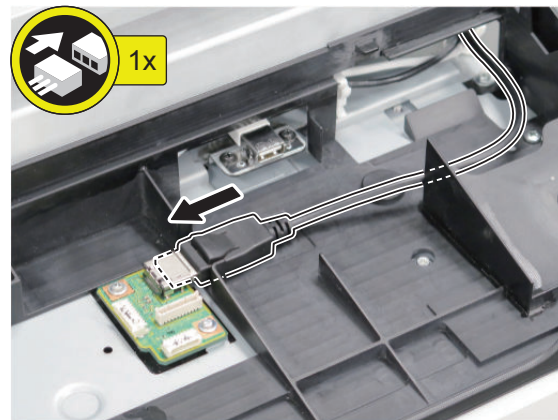
Use screws removed in step 4 of "Removing the Flat Control Panel".



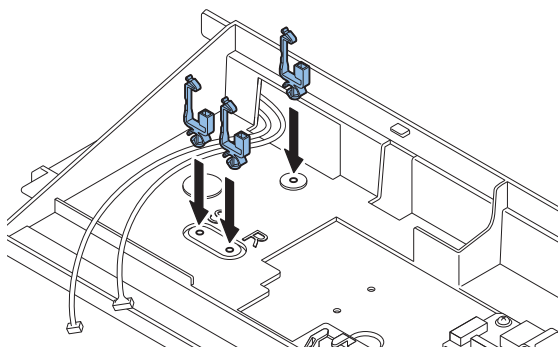
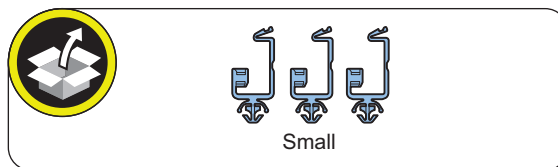
□
10.



□
11.



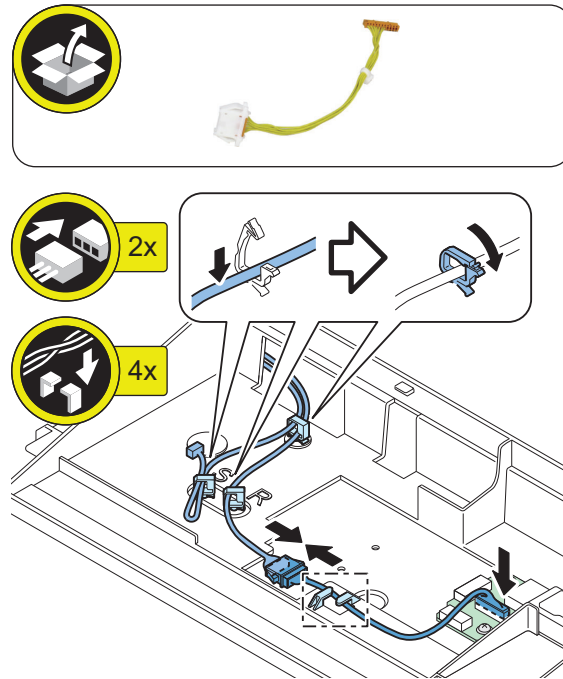
□
12.



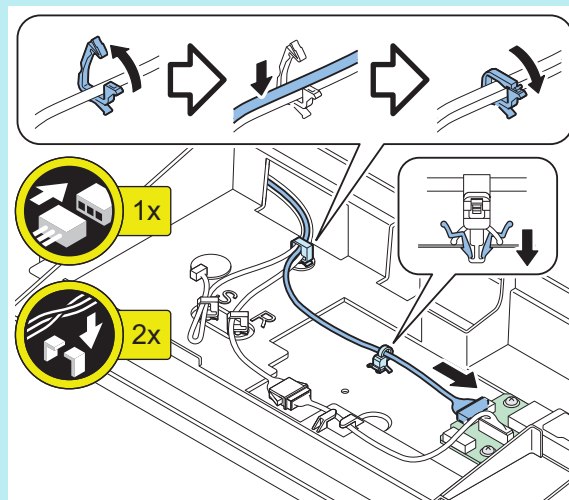
□
13.

NOTE:

Be careful to hold down the connector of Relay Cable so that it is securely fitted.

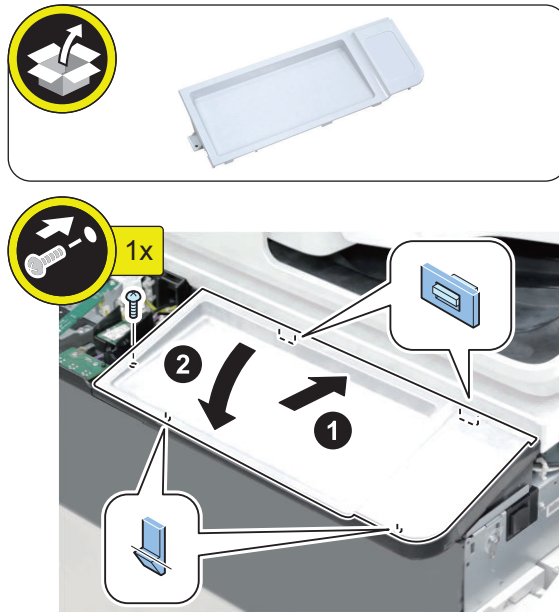
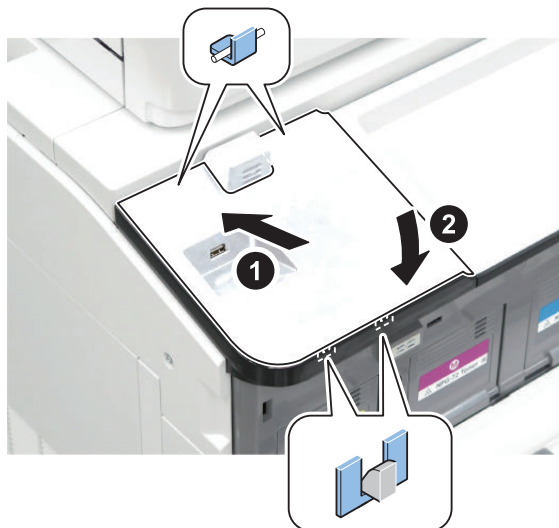
**NOTE:**

When the NFC Kit will be installed at the same time, make sure to connect the NFC Cable. (Refer to the Service Manual of host machine for the installation procedure.)



□
14.

NOTE:
Use screws removed in step 4 of "Removing the Flat Control Panel".

□
15.

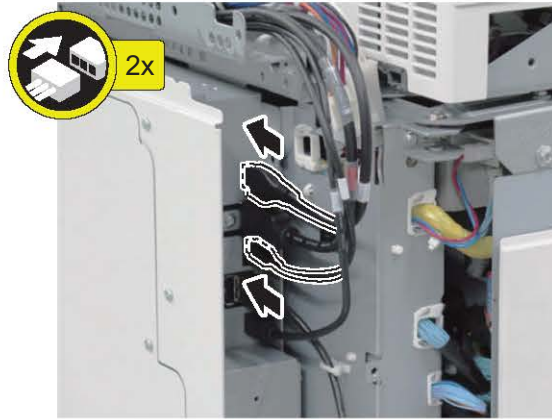
□
16.



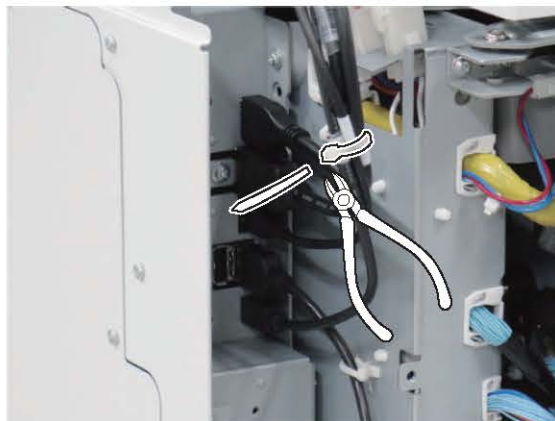
□
17.



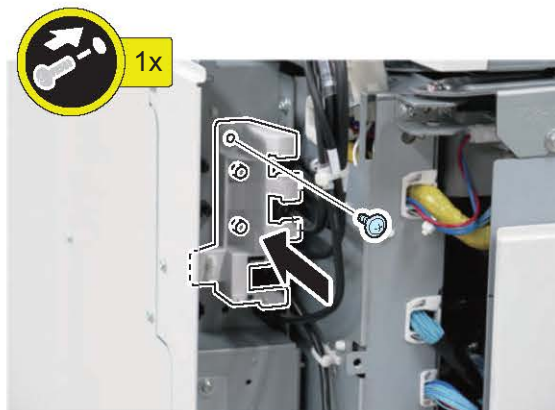
□
18.



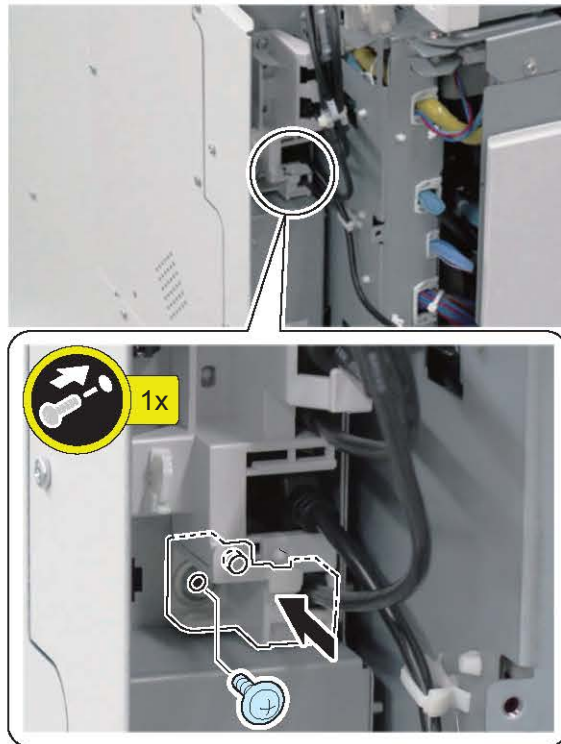
□
19.



□
20.



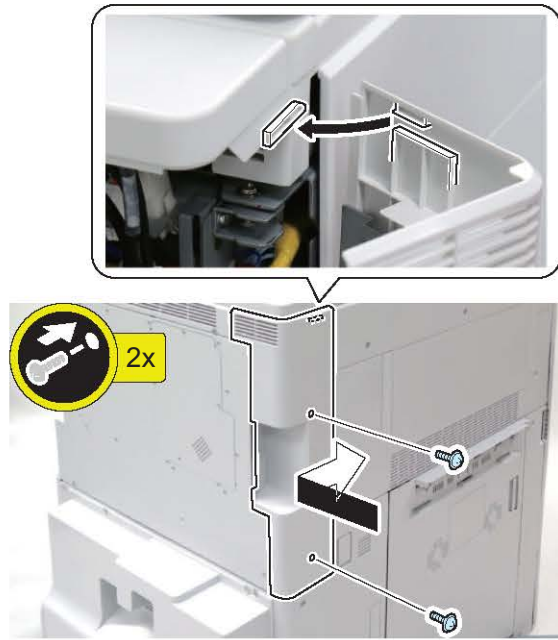
□
21.



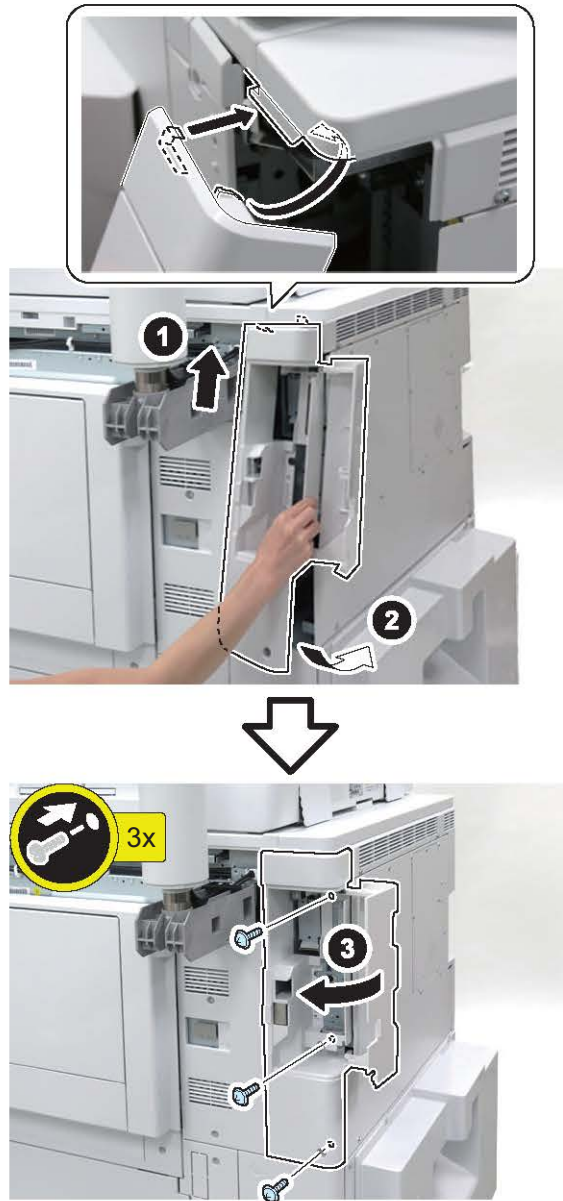
□
22.



□
23.

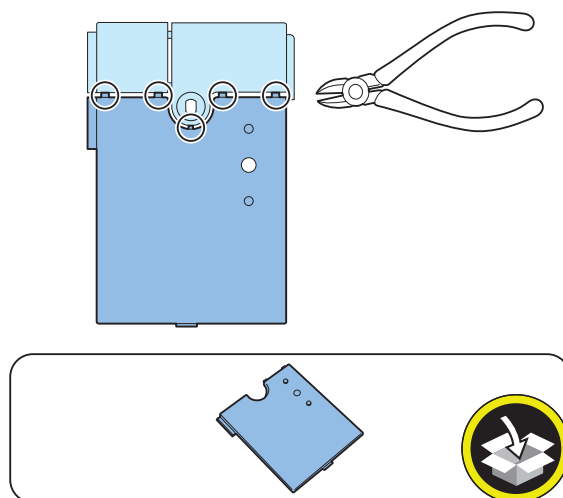


□
24.



□
25.**NOTE:**

Use the Right Rear Cover removed in step 6 of "Removing the Covers".

□
26.**NOTE:**

Use the screw removed in step 6 of "Removing the Covers".



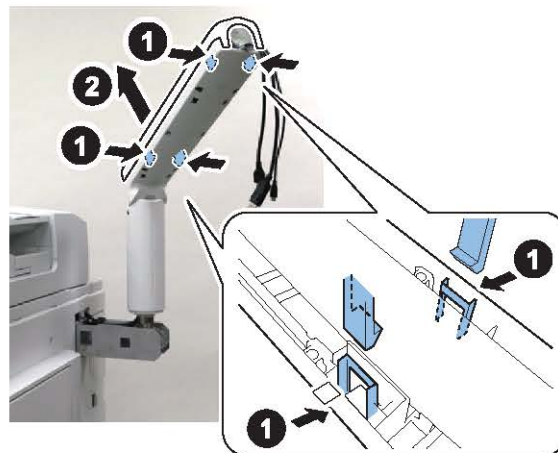
□
27.



□
28.



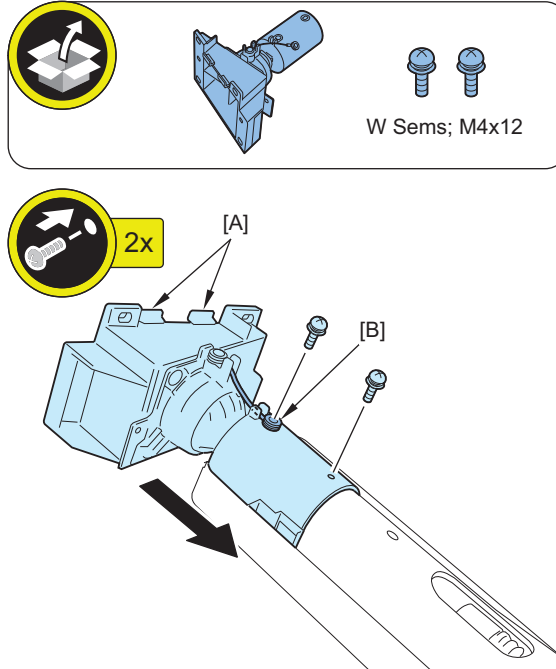
□
29.



□
30.

CAUTION:

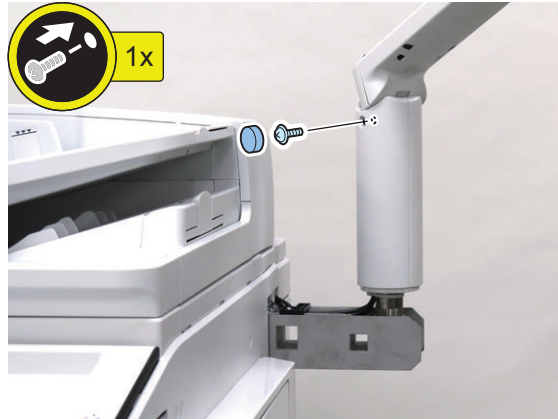
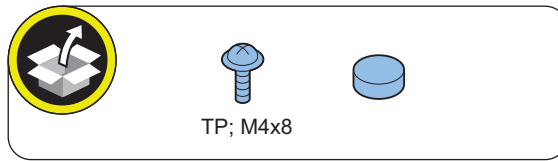
- Turn the Panel Base to make the protrusions [A] come to the upper side.
- Be sure to tighten the screws to secure the wire [B] simultaneously when installing the Panel Base.



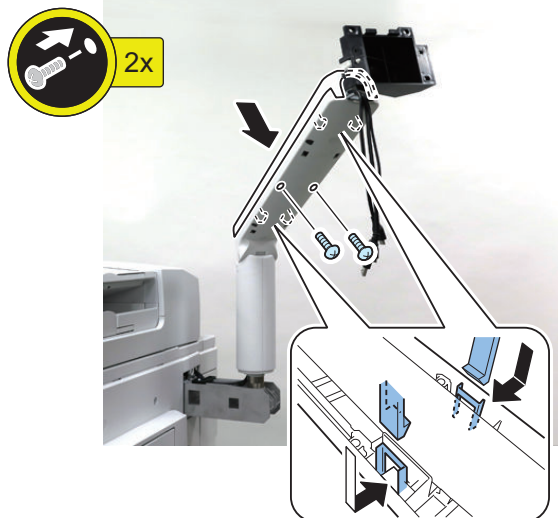
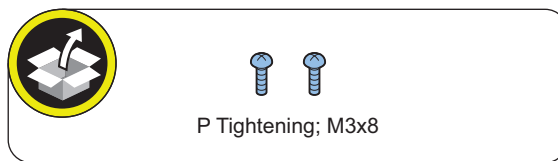
□
31.



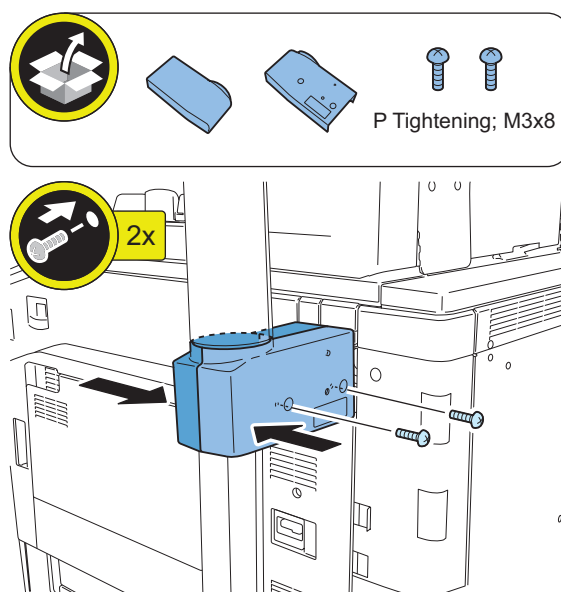
□
32.



□
33.



□
34.



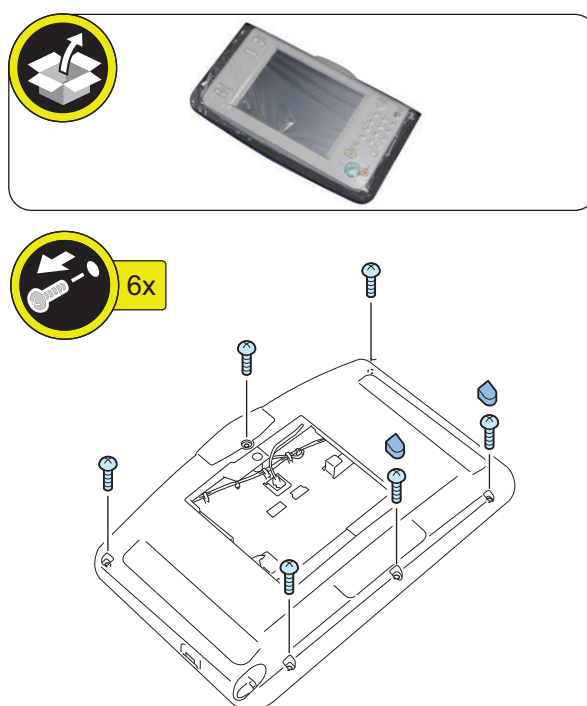
■ Installing the Upright Control Panel

-
1. Remove the packing tape from the Upright Control Panel.

NOTE:

If the language of the Control Panel Sheet is not appropriate for the country, perform steps 2 to 11 and replace the Control Panel Sheet.
The sheet installed as standard is in English.

□
2.

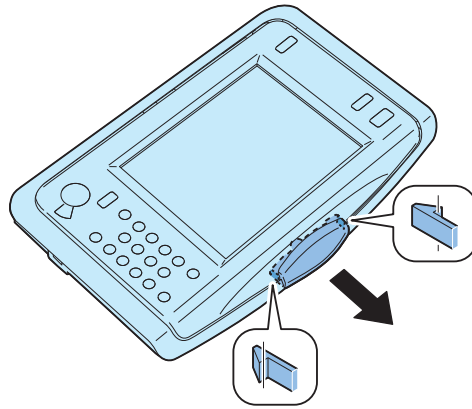


□

3. Remove the Protection Sheet from the Upright Control Panel.

□

4.



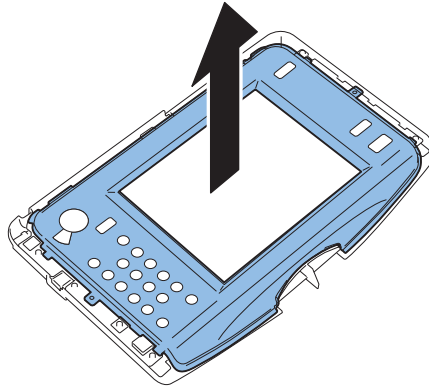
□

5.

CAUTION:
Disconnect the claws one by one in the direction of the arrow.



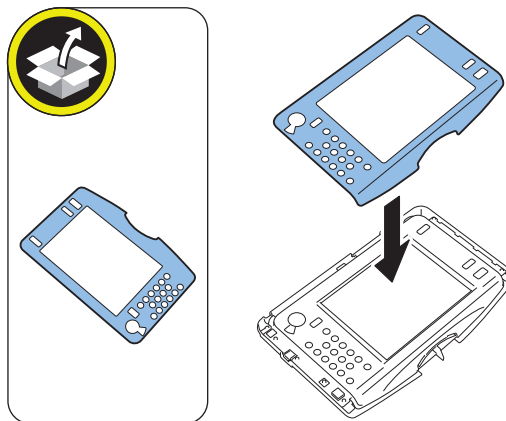
□
6.



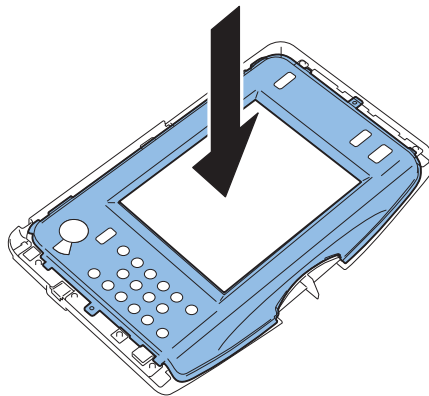
□
7.

NOTE:

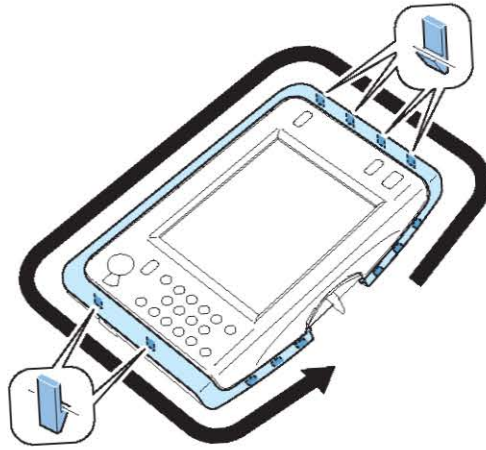
Place the appropriate Control Panel Sheet on the Upright Control Panel, and remove the Protection Sheet from the Control Panel Sheet.



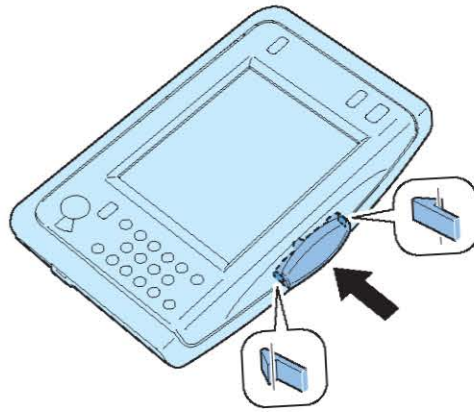
□
8.



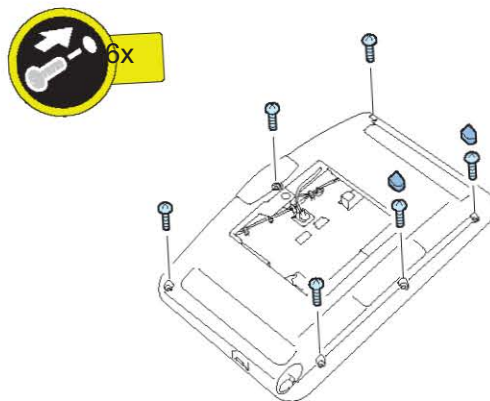
9.



10.

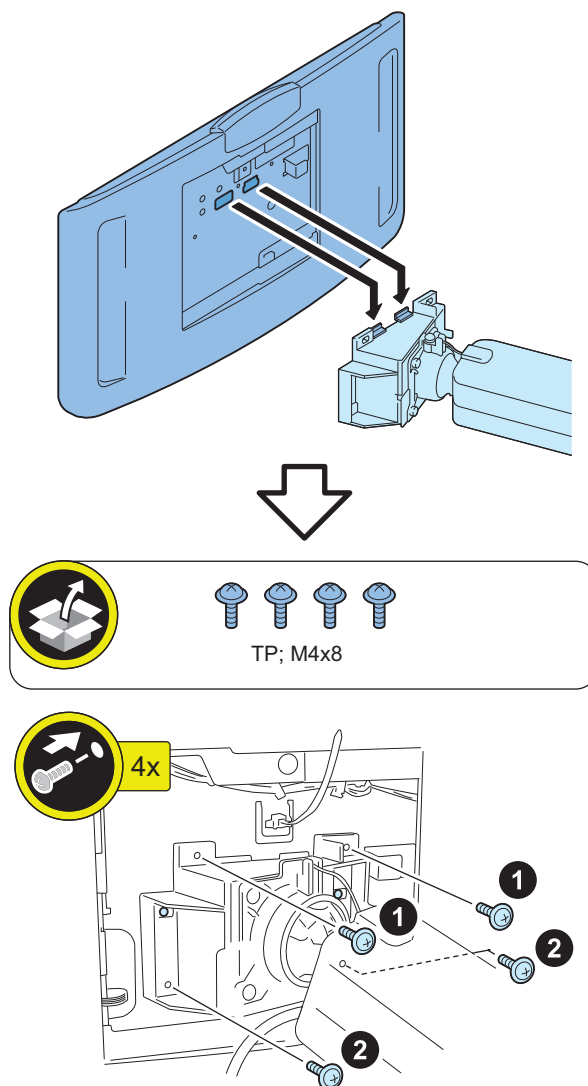


11.

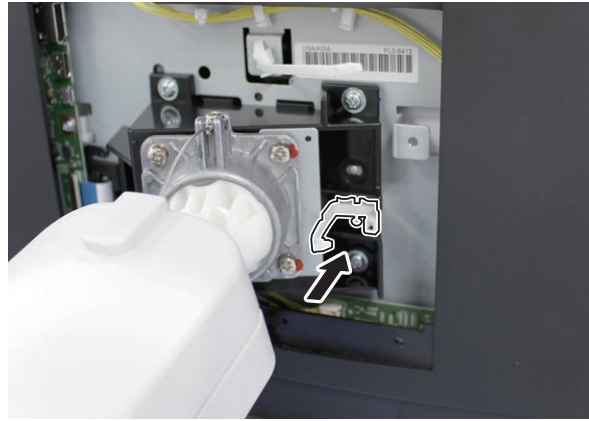
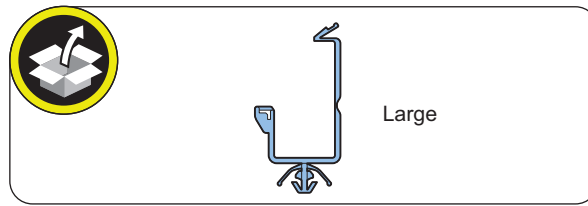


□
12.**NOTE:**

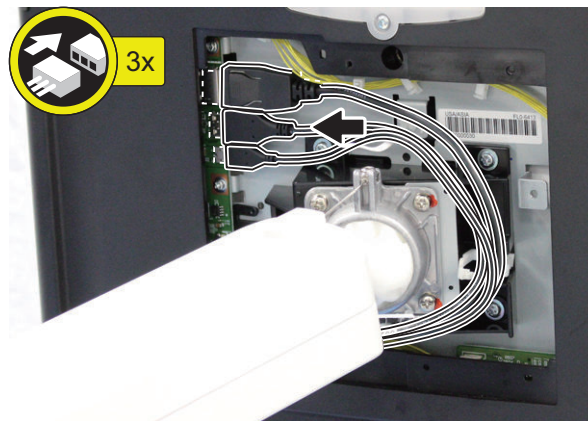
When installing the Upright Control Panel, be sure to tighten the screws from the upper part.

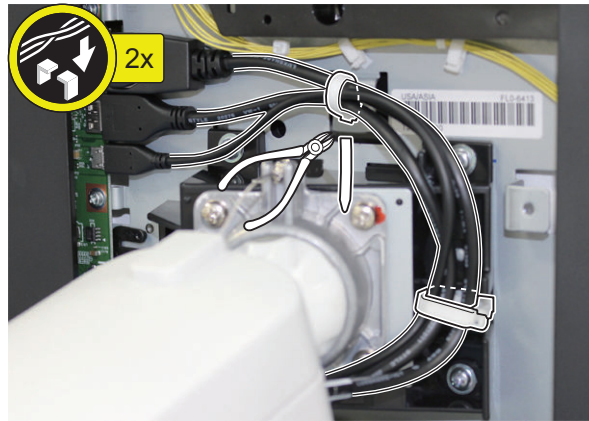


□
13.



□
14.



□
15.**CAUTION:**

- Check that the white tape of the Control Panel Cables is completely outside the Pipe Cover.
- If not, adjust the cables to positions where the white tape is outside the cover.



□
16.



□
17.



□
18. Connect the power plug to the outlet.



19. If the Protection Sheet has not been removed from the Control Panel, remove it.



20. Turn ON the main power switch. Check that the Upright Control Panel is displayed.



21. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv.2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



22. Set the value of the following service mode (Lv.2) to "1".

COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > STND-PNL

NOTE:

By executing the above service mode, the following function can be changed.

- The animation of the host machine on the Control Panel screen can be switched from the Flat Control Panel to the Upright Control Panel.
- The [Timeline] button will be displayed on the main menu.



23. Turn OFF and then ON the main power switch to enable the setting value.

imagePASS-N2 V1.1

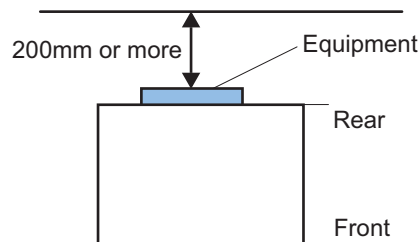
The IP addresses for communication between the host machine and equipment are set automatically



1. Turn **ON** the main power switch of the host machine.
2. Set the value in the following service mode to "3".
COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE > IMG-CONT
3. Exit from Service Mode.
4. Turn **OFF** the main power switch of the host machine.

Securing space for installation

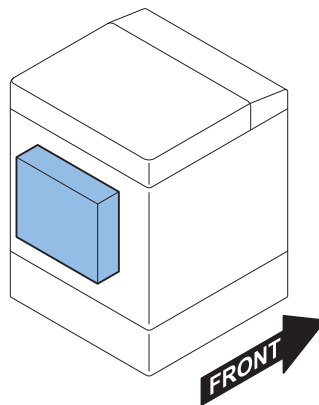
Be sure to secure the space for installing this equipment as shown in the figure. The space of 200 mm or more from the back of this equipment is necessary.



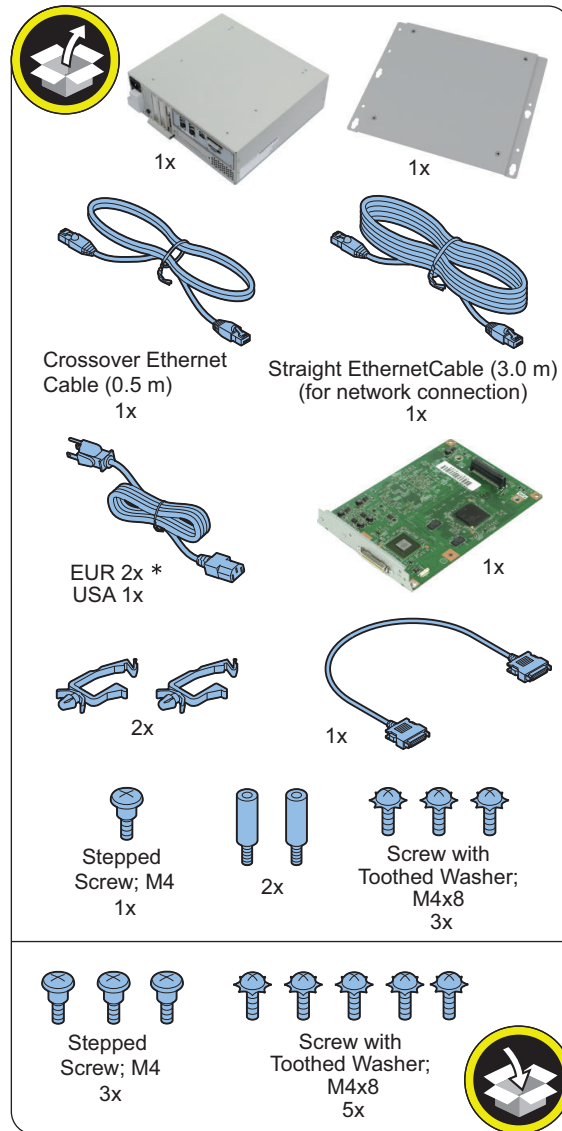
Check When Connecting the Power Plug to an Outlet

1. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
2. Be sure to install this equipment near an outlet so that the power plug can be disconnected right away in case of emergency, and do not put anything around the power plug.

Installation Outline Drawing



Checking the Contents



NOTE:

* Power Cord: The connector has a different shape depending on locations. 2 are packaged in the products for EUR. 1 is packaged in the products for USA.

Use the correct power cord to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cord at the site.

< Others >

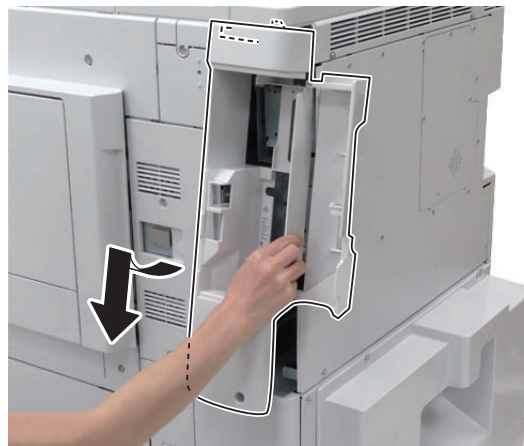
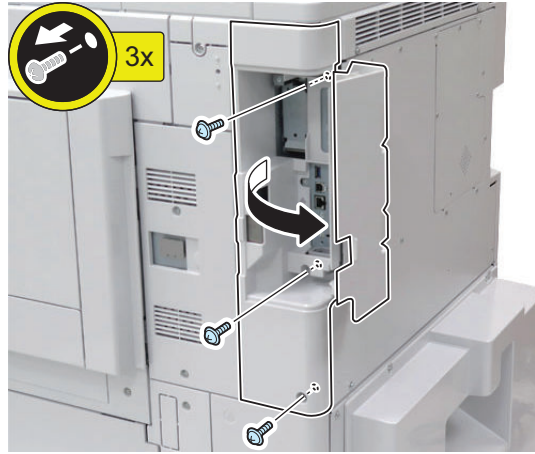
- Including guides

● Installation Procedure

■ Installing the Open I/F PCB

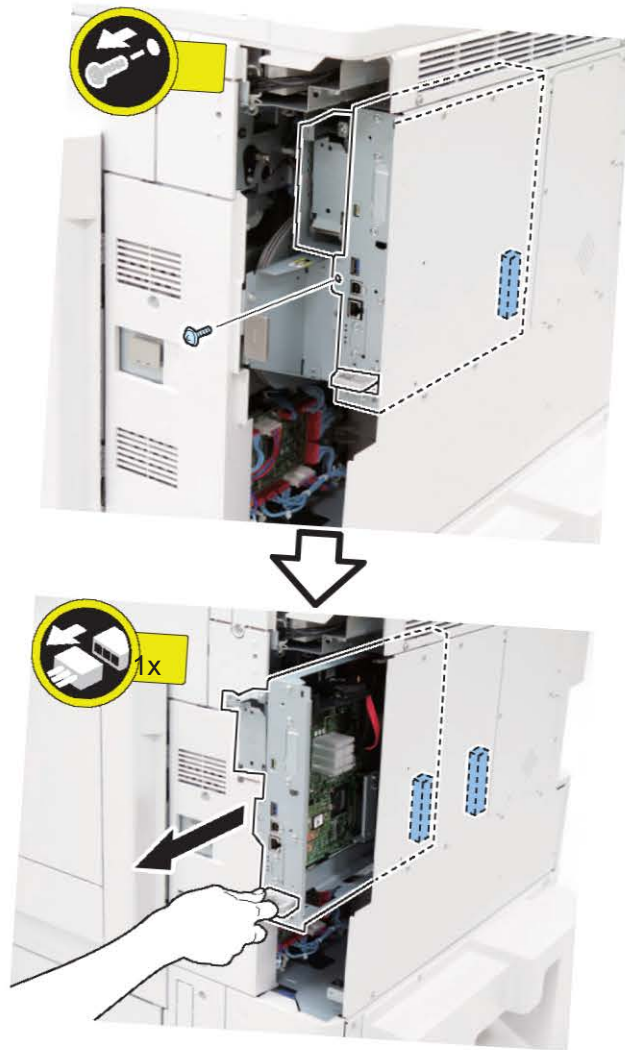
□

1.





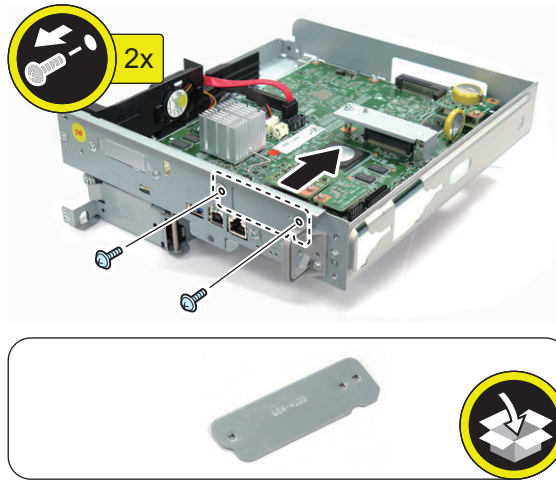
2.



□
3.

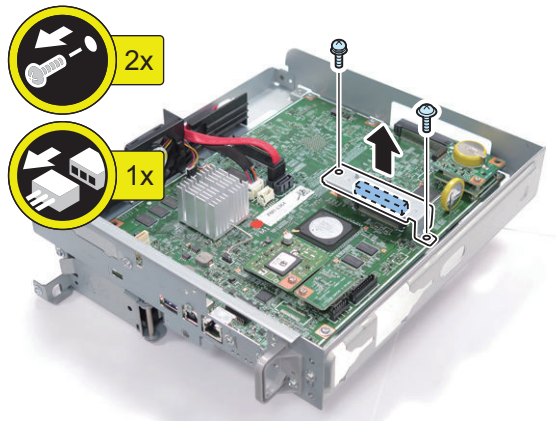
NOTE:

Ask the user to keep the removed Face Cover.

**NOTE:**

The removed screws will be used in step 6.

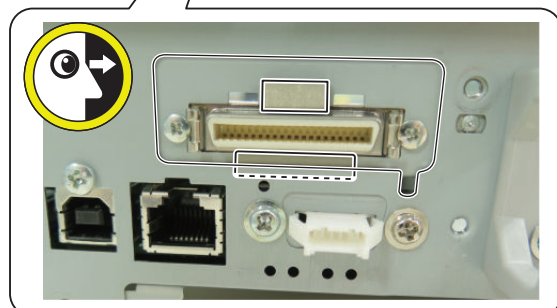
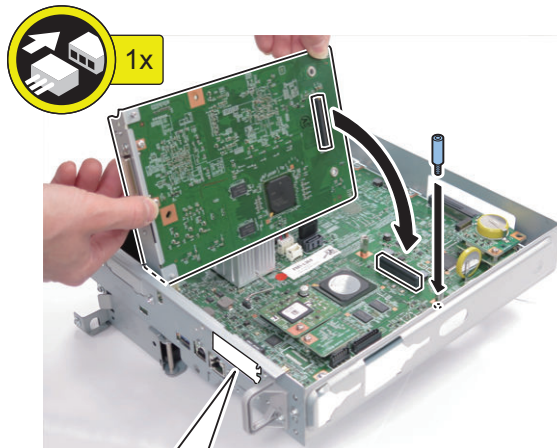
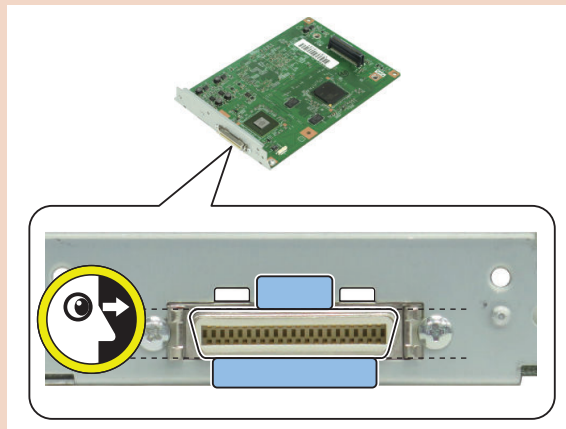
□
4.

**NOTE:**

The removed part and screws will be used in step 8.

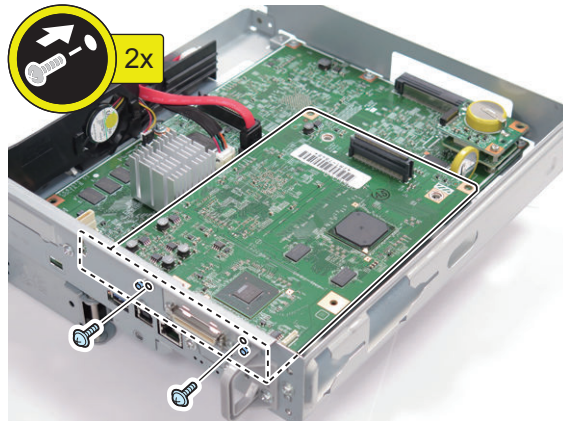
□
5.**CAUTION:**

Check that there are 2 gaskets.



□
6.

NOTE:
Use the screws removed in step 3.

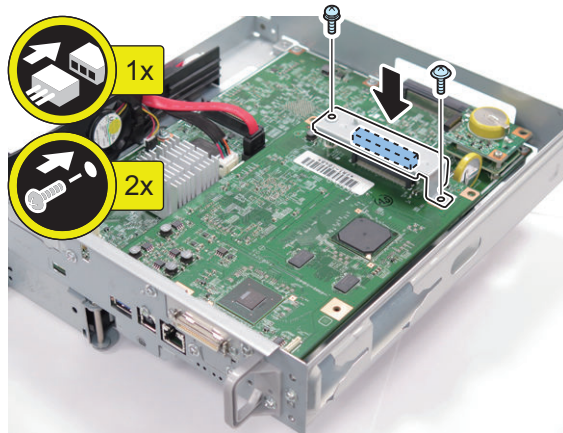


□
7.



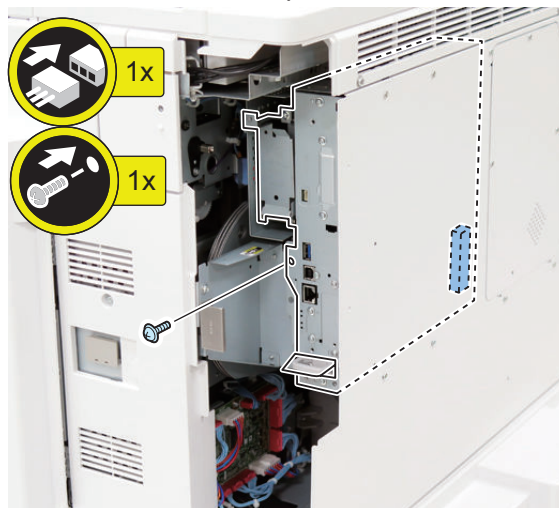
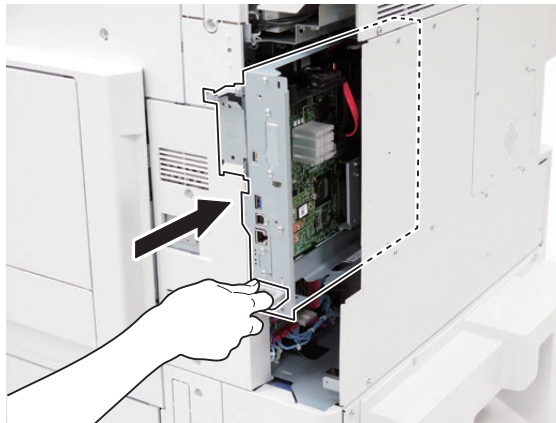
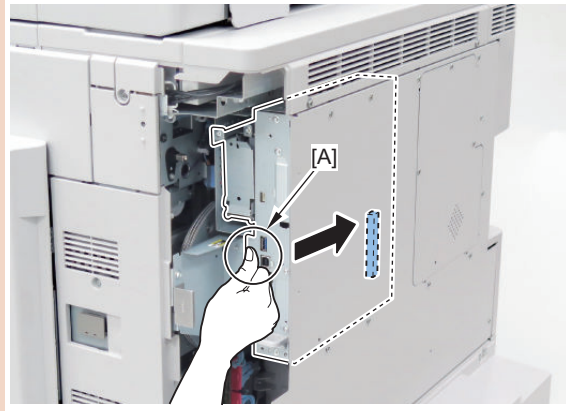
□
8.

NOTE:
Use the part and screws removed in step 4.



□
9.**CAUTION:**

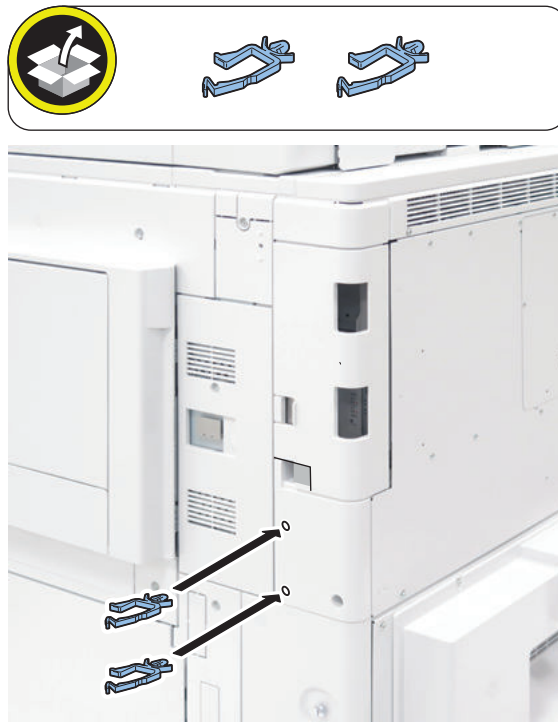
- Be sure to insert the Main Controller PCB until it stops.
- Be sure to push [A] part hard to install it, otherwise the connector may not be connected properly.



□
10.

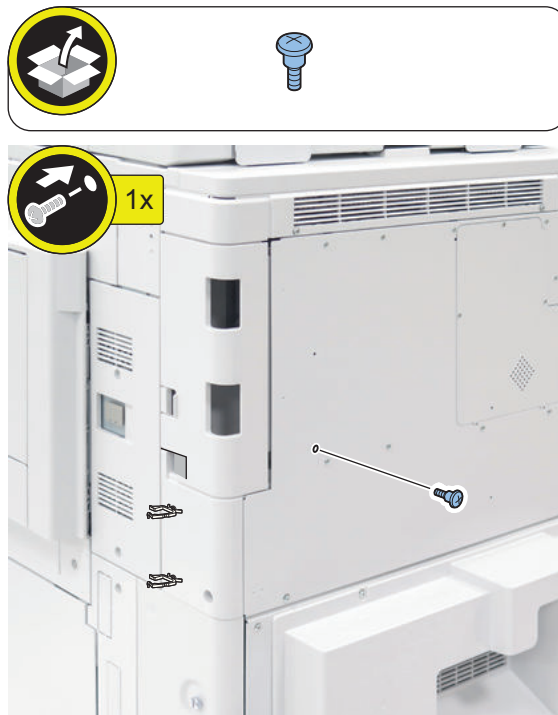


□
11.

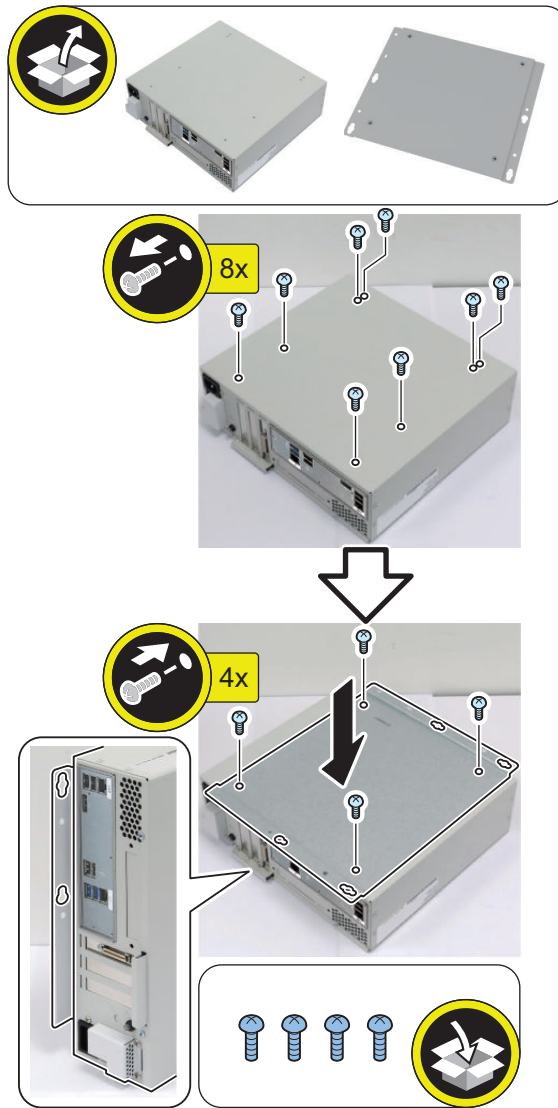


■ **Installing the imagePASS**

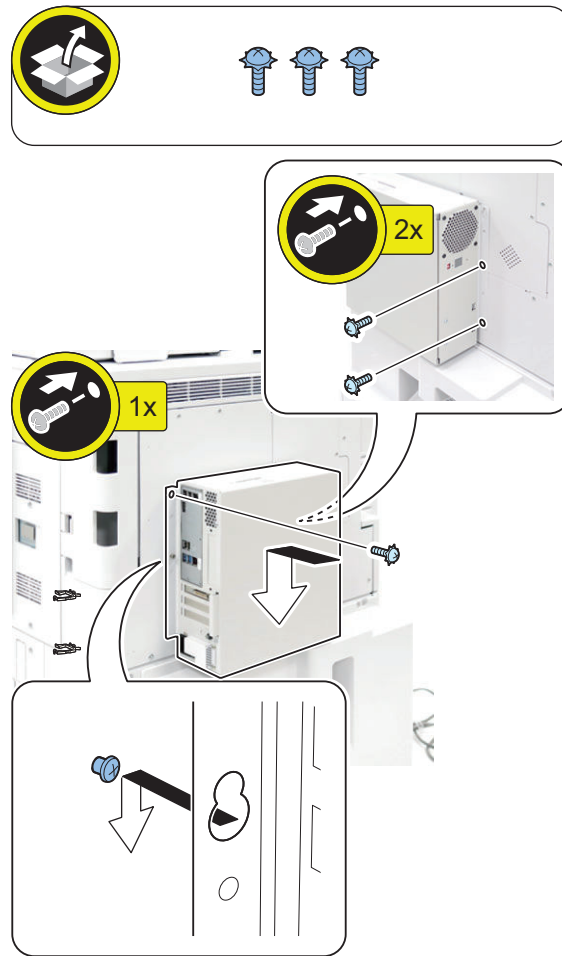
□
1.



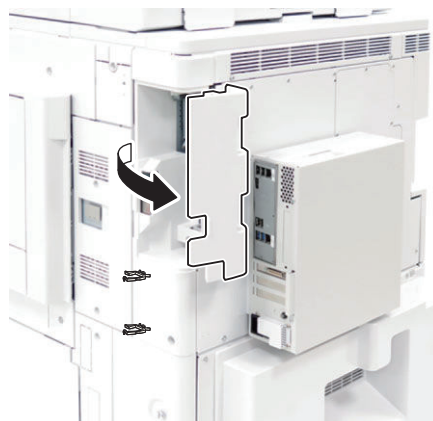
□
2.



□
3.

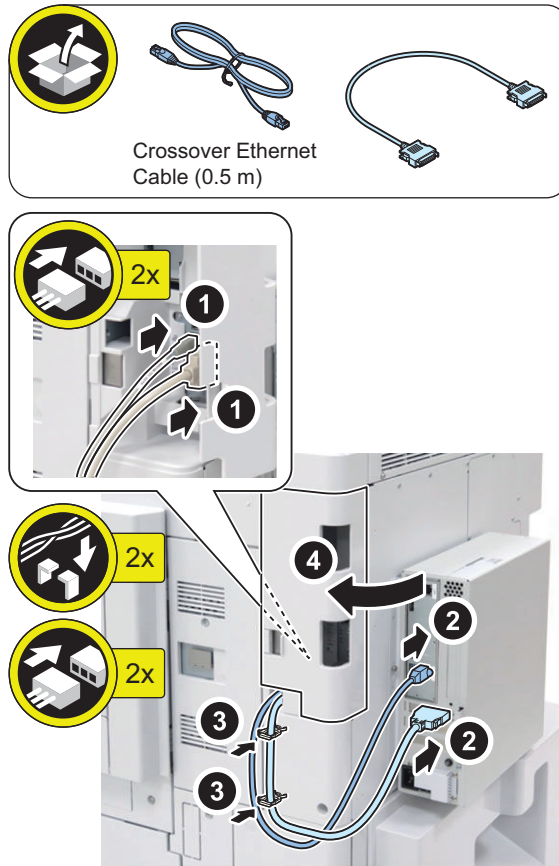


□
4.



□
5.**NOTE:**

Do not secure Crossover Ethernet Cable to the Wire Saddles.

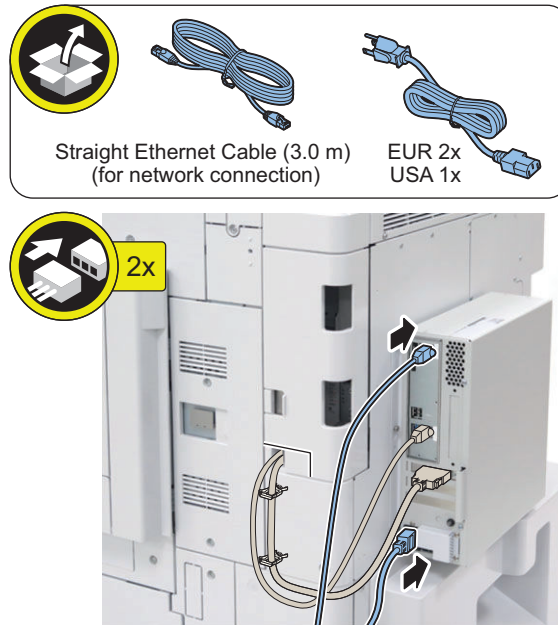


□

6.

CAUTION:

- Be sure to use the network cable with Category 5e or higher. In addition, a shielded type (STP cable) is recommended. When using the non-shielded type (UTP cable), it may influence the surrounding electronic imagePASS via network cable.
- Use the correct power cord to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cord at the site.



□

7.

- Connect the power plug to the outlet of the host machine.

□

8.

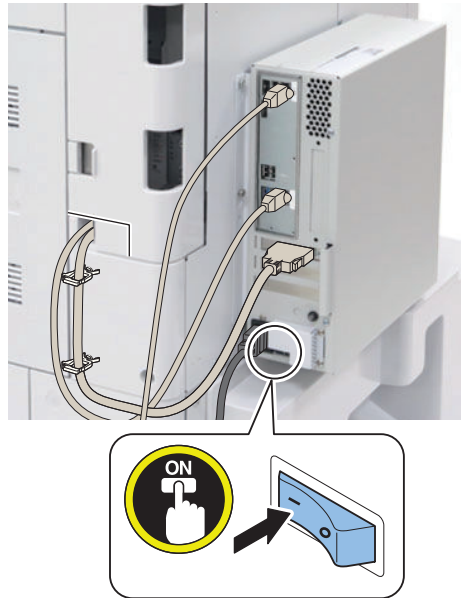
- Connect the power plug to the outlet of the imagePASS.

CAUTION:

Be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.

□

- 9.** Turn ON the power switch of the imagePASS.



□

- 10.** Turn ON the main power switch of the host machine.

□

- 11.** After seeing "Perform Apply Setting Changes from Settings/Registration." displayed on the host machine's Touch Panel, select [Apply Set. Changes] > [Yes].

NOTE:

- The host machine automatically restarts. It may take approx. 10 minutes before the message appears.
- The imagePASS is automatically restarted only at the first time when it is connected. It takes about approx. 5 minutes until it is ready for use. Do not press the buttons on the imagePASS until it is ready for use.

□

- 12.** Check that the value of the following service mode is "477".

COPIER > OPTION > INT-FACE > CNT-TYPE

□

- 13.** Exit from Service Mode.

Setting after Installation

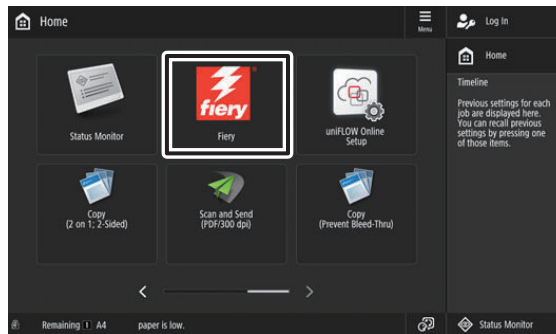
Settings After Installation



1. Select [Fiery] from the main menu on the host machine's LCD.

NOTE:

It may take a while for the Fiery icon shown in the figure below to appear.



2. Select [Login] to log in as a system administrator.

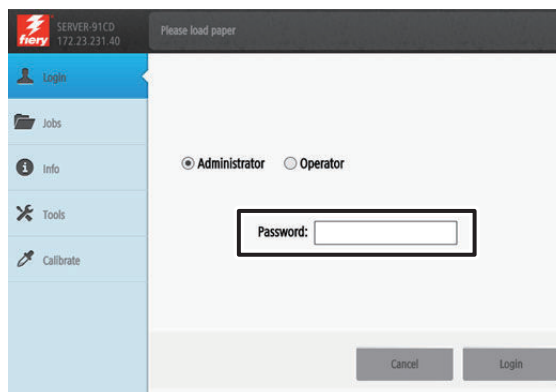
Input of password :

A password input screen is displayed at the time of installation.

Entering "Fiery password" in the password field displays the setting screen.

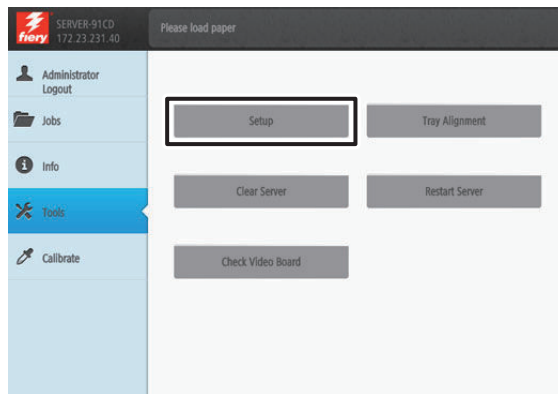
NOTE:

On the Fiery Server Configuration page, look for ID in the BIOS Setup section. The alphanumeric characters in the ID field is the default password.(Print the Configuration page: Press the Fiery logo, then press [Info] > [Print Pages] > [Configuration].)





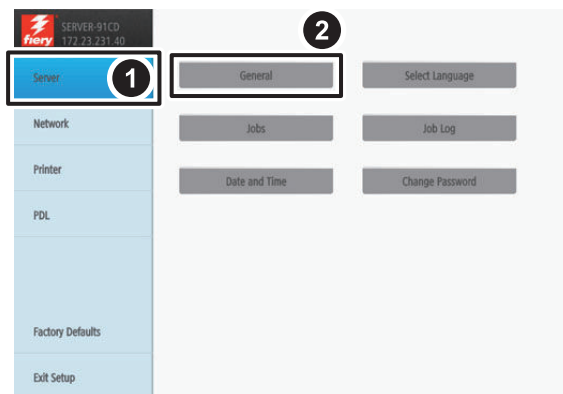
3. Select [Tools] > [Setup].



4. Check the settings of server, network, printer and PDL, and press [Save Changes] even if there is no change. At that time, the setting will not be completed unless [Save Changes] is pressed.



Example : Select [Server] > [General].



Check that the items in the General Setup are set, and perform [Save Changes] even if there is no change. The setting will not be completed unless [Save Changes] is pressed.

□

5. Press [Exit Setup] after all settings are completed.

□

6. The confirmation screen will appear, and then press [Reboot Now].

□

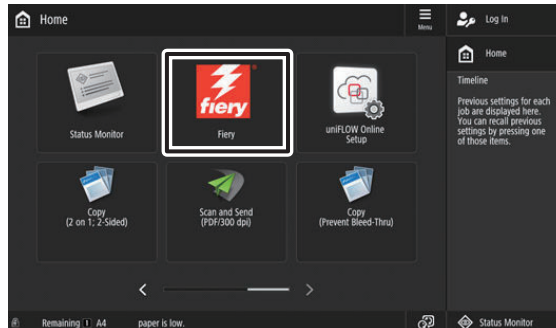
7. The imagePASS Server will be restarted (approx. 10 min.).

■ Checking the Operation After Making the Settings

Output Test Page and Configuration by the following procedure, and check the connection between the host machine and this equipment as well as the settings of this equipment.



1. Select [Fiery] from the main menu on the host machine's LCD.

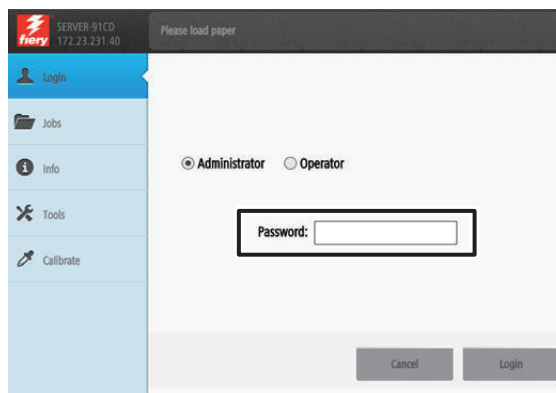


2. Select [Login] to log in as a system administrator.

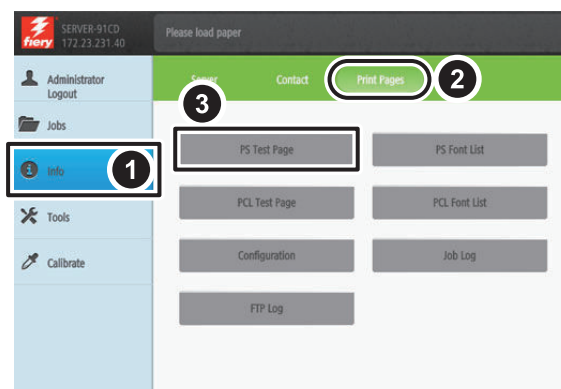
Entering "Fiery password" in the password field displays the setting screen.

NOTE:

On the Fiery Server Configuration page, look for ID in the BIOS Setup section. The alphanumeric characters in the ID field is the default password. (Print the Configuration page: Press the Fiery logo, then press [Info] > [Print Pages] > [Configuration].)

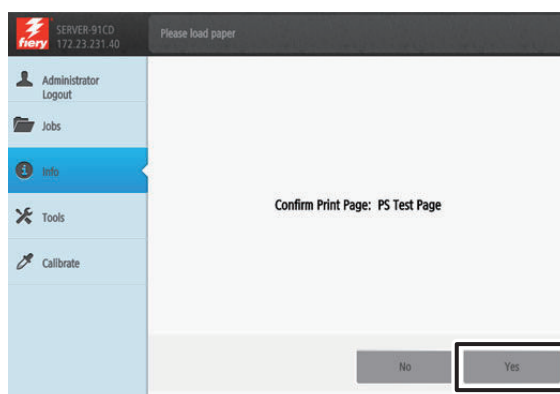


3. Select [Info] > [Print Pages] > [PS Test Page].





4. Press [Yes].



■ Connecting to the Network

Ask the network administrator to connect to the network, make settings and output the test print. Refer to "Settings Management" in User's Manual for details of checking work.

■ Executing image Quality Adjustment

Execute the image quality adjustment shown below at installation.

- ["Auto Adjust Gradation \(Full Adjustment\)" on page 78](#)

5

Paper Feed Options

Cassette Heater Unit-38.....	453
Paper Deck Unit-E1.....	462
Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1.....	490
POD Deck Lite-C1.....	506
Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1.....	534
Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1.....	543
Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit-A1.....	594
Paper Deck Heater Unit for Multi- drawer Paper Deck-C1.....	629

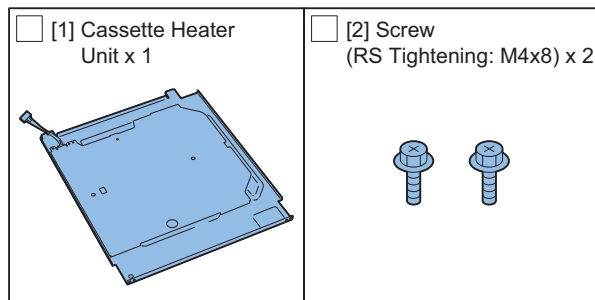
Cassette Heater Unit-38

Product Name

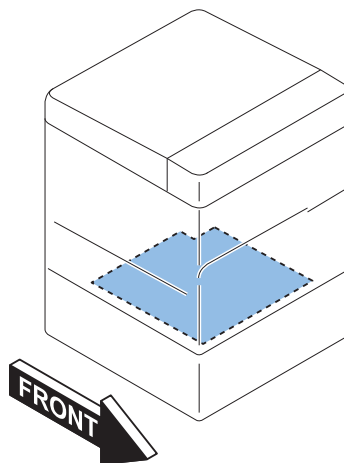
Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F276801

Checking the Contents



Installation Outline Drawing



Installation Procedure

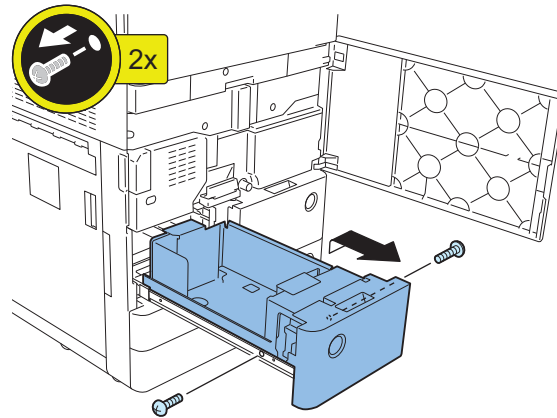


1. Open the Front Cover.

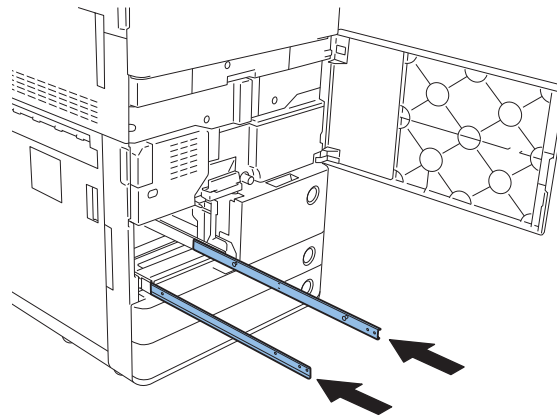


2. Pull out the Left Deck to remove.

- 2 Screws



3. Put the 2 Rails in.

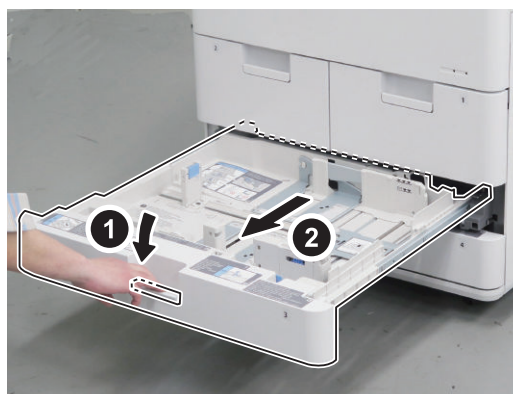


4. Pull out the Right Deck to remove the Left Deck in the same way.

5. Put the 2 Rails in.

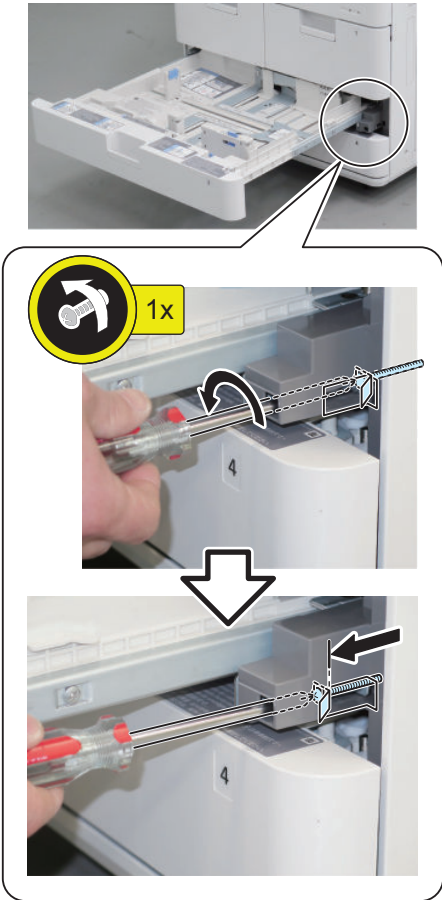


6. Pull the Open/Close Lever, and pull out the Cassette 3.



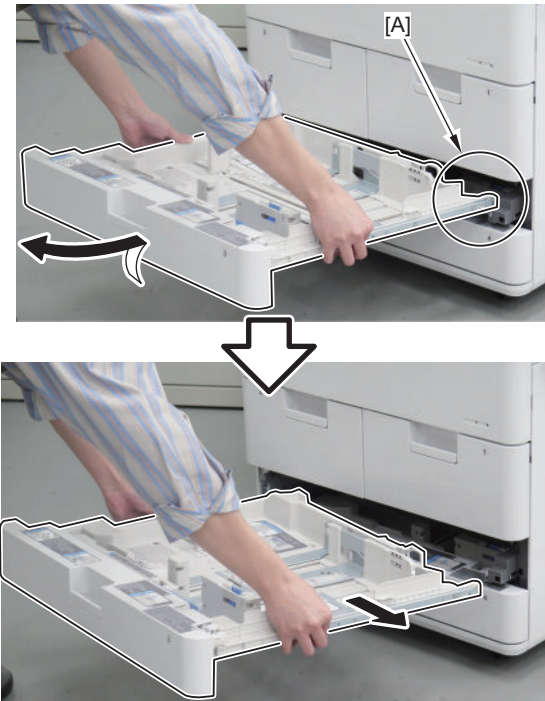
□

7. Loosen the screw, and move the stopper to the front until it stops.



□

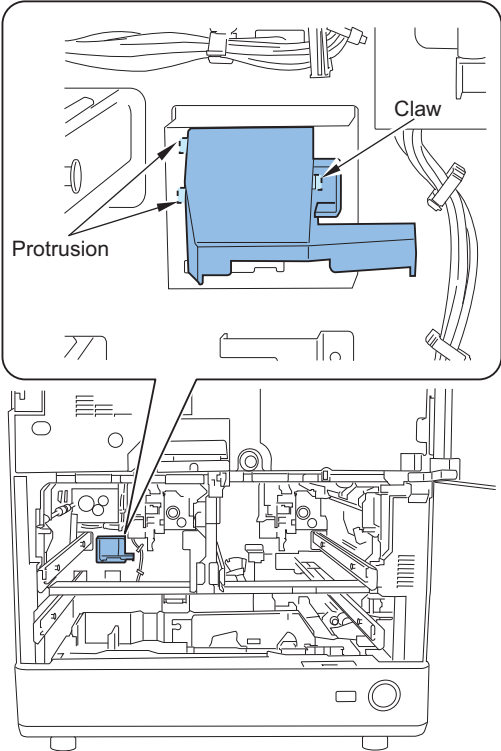
8. Pull out the right side [A] of the cassette while lifting the front side, move it to the right, and remove the Cassette 3.





9. Remove the Connector Cover.

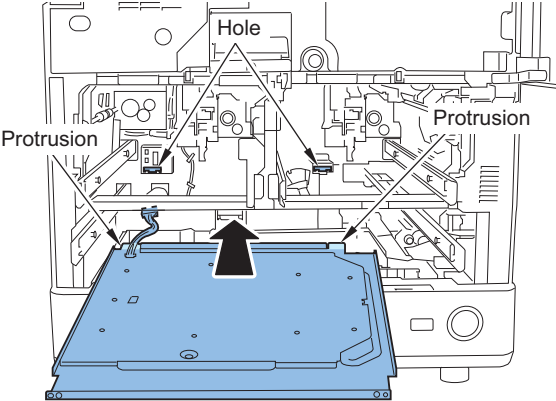
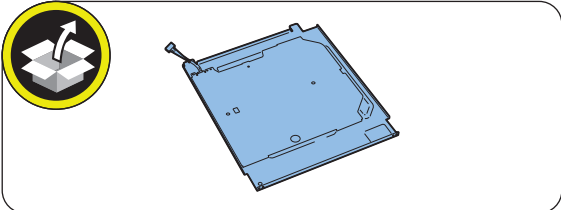
- 1 Claw
- 2 Protrusions



10. Remove tapes on the Cassette Heater Unit.



11. Fit the protrusions of the Cassette Heater Unit into the holes of the Host Machine.

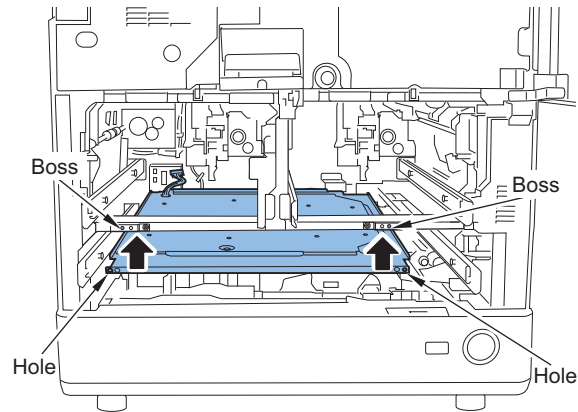




12. Fit the holes of the Cassette Heater Unit with the bosses of the Host Machine.

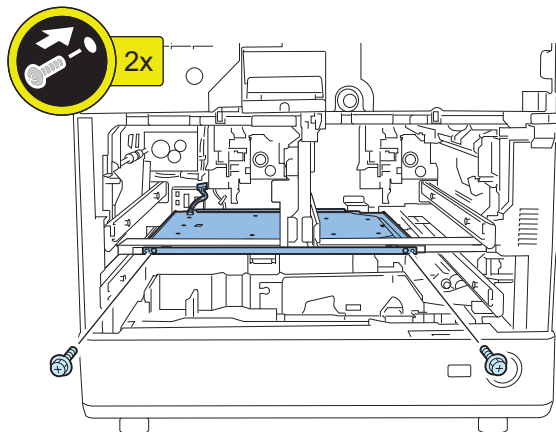
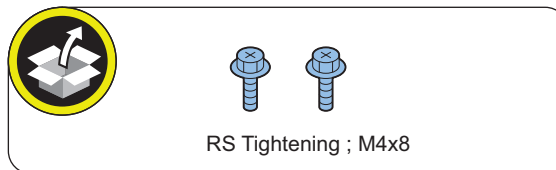
CAUTION:

When fitting the Cassette Heater Unit with the bosses, be sure to support the bottom side with your hand; otherwise, the Unit could fall if protrusions come out of the holes.



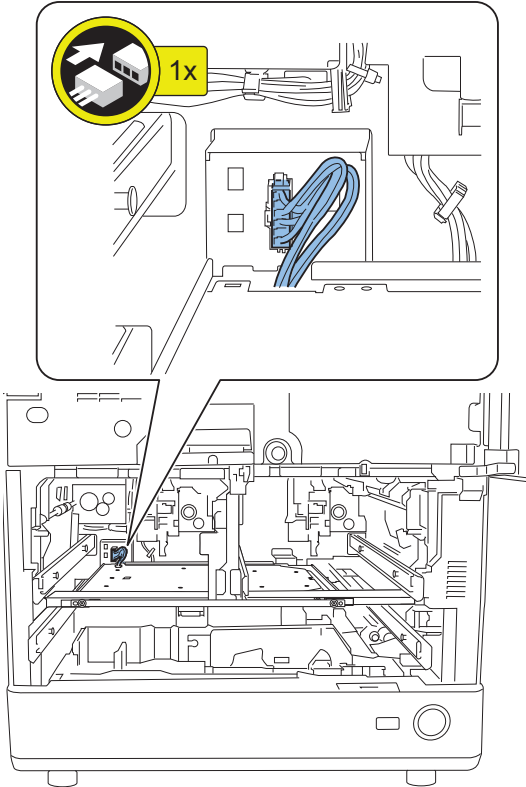
13. Install the Cassette Heater Unit.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)





14. Install the Connector.



15. Install the Connector Cover.

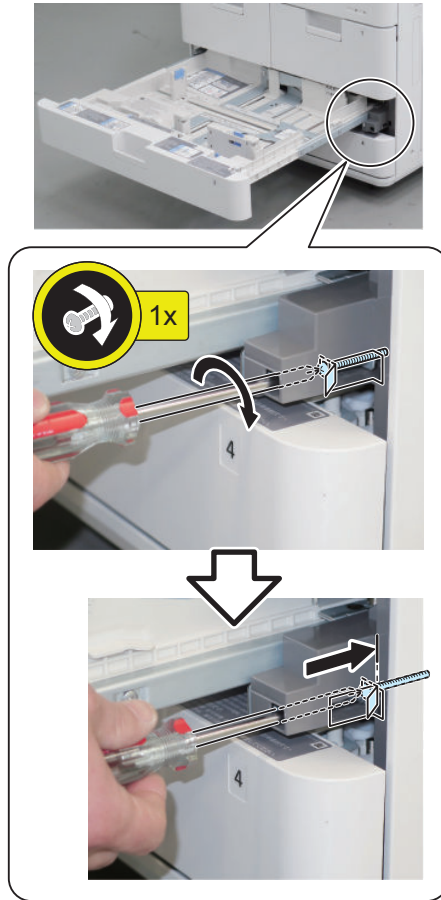


16. When installing the Cassette 3, align the triangle mark of the rail on the left side with the triangle mark of the cassette. Place the roller [B] of the cassette onto the [A] part of the rail on the right side to install the Cassette 3.

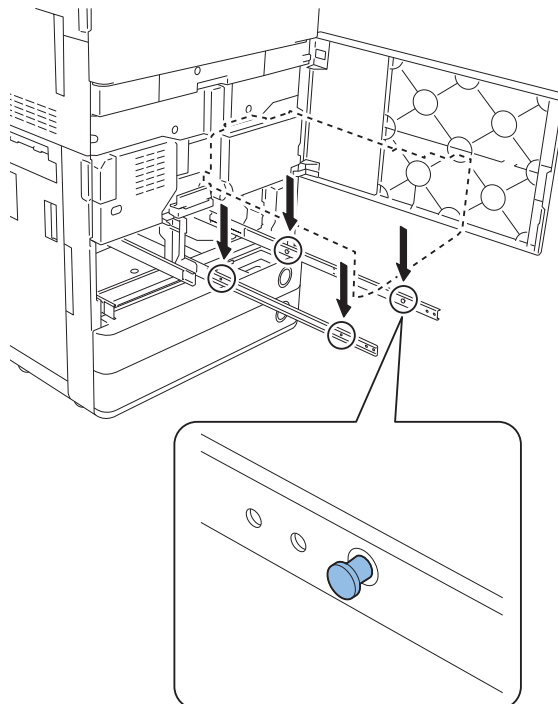




17. Install the screw loosened in step 7.



18. Pull out the Rails at the installation area of the Right Deck. Fit the 4 pins on the Rails with the grooves of the Right Deck to place the Right Deck over the Rails.





19. After having installed Right Deck with 2 screws, close the Right Deck.
20. Install the Left Deck in the same way as the Right Deck.
21. Close the Front Cover.
22. Turn on the Environment Heater Switch.
23. Connect the power plug to the outlet.
24. Turn ON the main power switch.

Paper Deck Unit-E1

Checking before Installation

Requirements for the installation place are given below. It is recommended to look over the place to be used for installation before delivering the equipment to the user.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install the Paper Deck.
- Do not carry the Paper Deck with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

■ Points to Note on Installation

Exercise following caution for installation.

1. This equipment maximum 33 kg. When holding this equipment at the installation, be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country. In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.
2. When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281210

Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

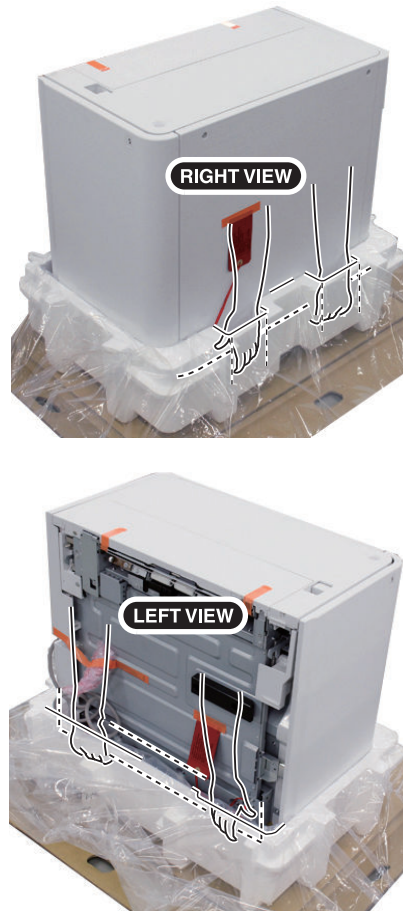
Paper Deck is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transport. Keep the removed all packaging tapes and cushioning materials for relocation.



1. Remove the cushioning materials.




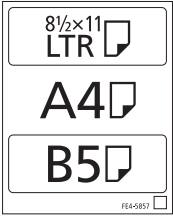
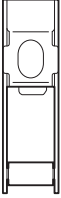


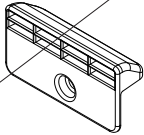
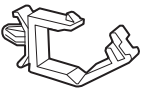
2. Open the plastic packing bag. Remove the Paper Deck from the pallet holding the parts as shown in the figure.



3. Remove the packaging tapes and the cushioning materials.

Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.

<p>□ [1] Paper Deck x1</p> 	<p>□ [2] Paper Size Label x1</p> 
<p>□ [3] Latch Plate x2</p> 	<p>□ [4] Screw (Binding;M4x5) x3</p> 
<p>□ [5] Screw (P Tightening;M3x8) x1</p> 	<p>□ [6] Door Stopper x1</p> 
<p>□ [7] Wire Saddle x1</p> 	

The parts [5], [6] are not used.

<Others>

- Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

Check that the main power switch is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

NOTE:

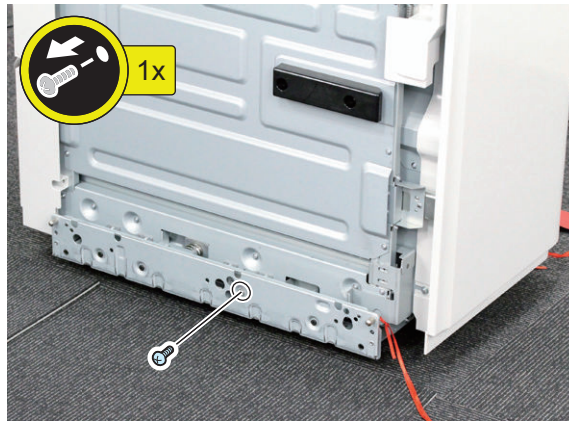
Keep the removed fixing materials as they are used to transport for relocation.

■ Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit



1. Remove the screw from the base stay unit.

- 1 Screw

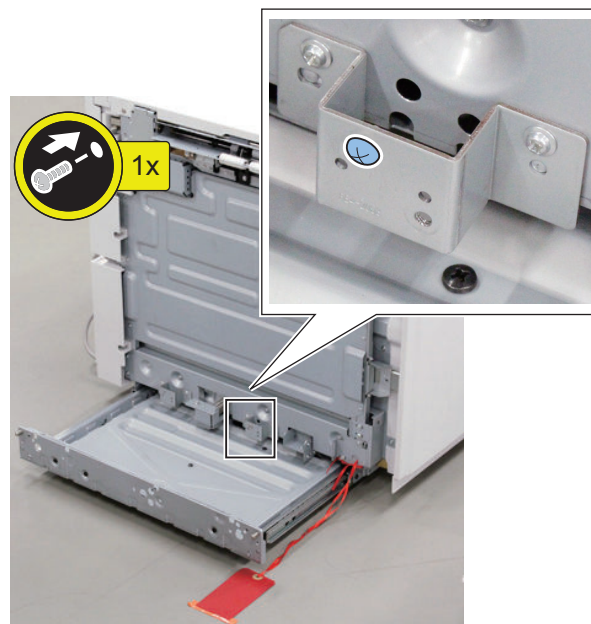
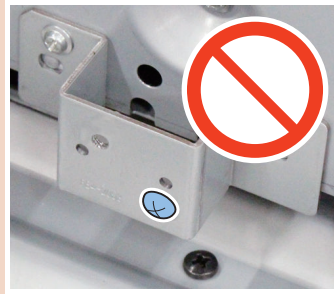




2. Push the Paper Deck Unit until it stops while holding the base stay unit and then attach the screw removed at procedure 2 as shown in the figure.

CAUTION:

Do not attach the screw removed at procedure 1 to the original position.

**NOTE:**

The screw is used to fix the base stay unit when the Paper Deck Unit is transported for relocation.

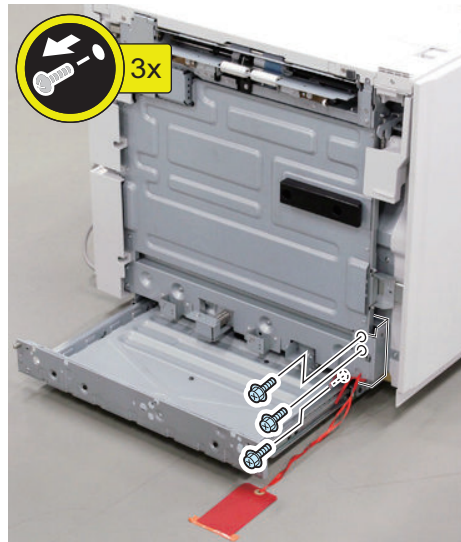


3. Remove the screws from bottom left side of the Paper Deck Unit (the removed screws are used at procedure 4, "Preparation of the Host Machine").

- 3 Screws

NOTE:

The fixing plate is removed at procedure 6, "Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit".



4. Remove the fixing plate from bottom right side of the compartment (the removed screw is used at procedure 4, "Preparation of the Host Machine").

- 1 Screw

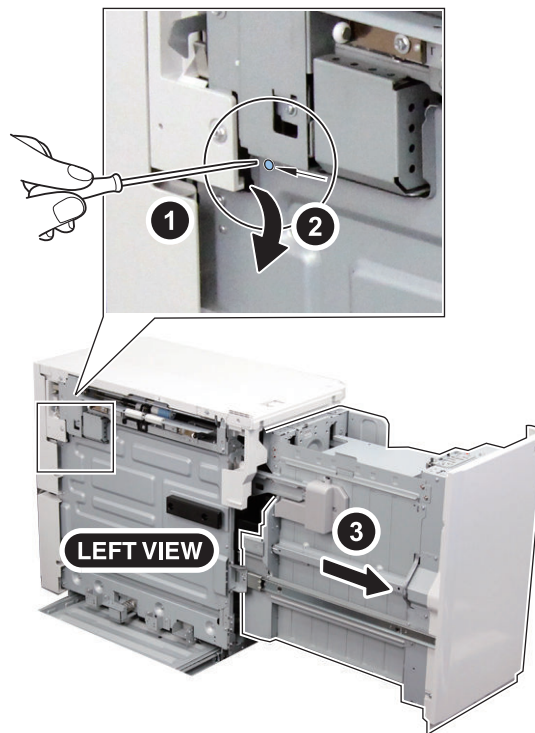
NOTE:

The fixing plate is removed at procedure 7, "Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit".





5. Insert screwdrivers into the hole at rear left side of the compartment and then release the lever to open it.

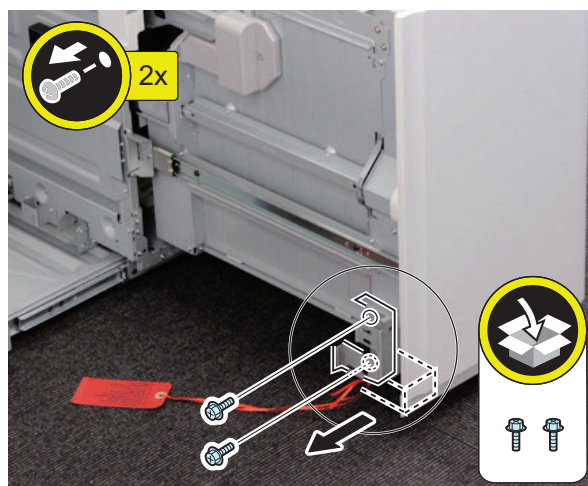


6. Remove the fixing plate and the cushioning material from bottom left side of the compartment (the removed screws are not used).

- 2 Screws

NOTE:

Do not forget to remove the cushioning material.



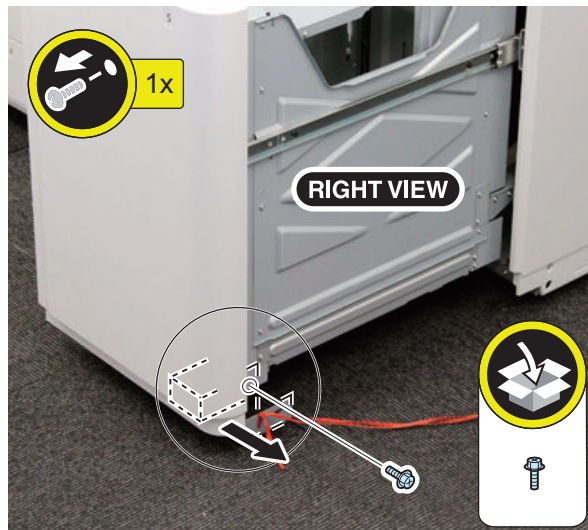


7. Remove the fixing plate and cushioning material from bottom right side of the compartment (the removed screw is not used).

- 1 Screw

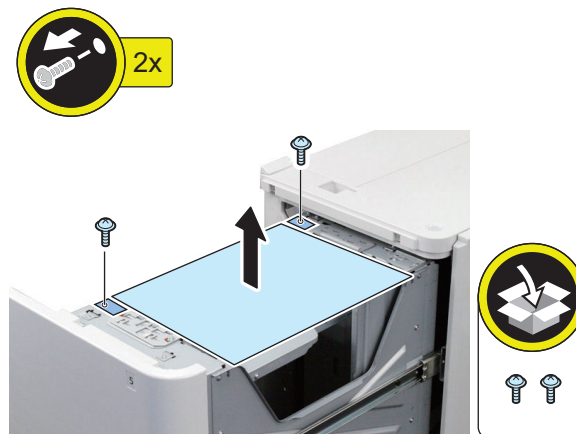
NOTE:

Do not forget to remove the cushioning material.



8. Remove the fixing sheet fixing the lifter plate (the removed screws are not used).

- 2 Screws



CAUTION:

Do not forget to remove the fixing sheet. The lifter wire may be broken without removing the above when the main power is turned ON.



9. Close the compartment.

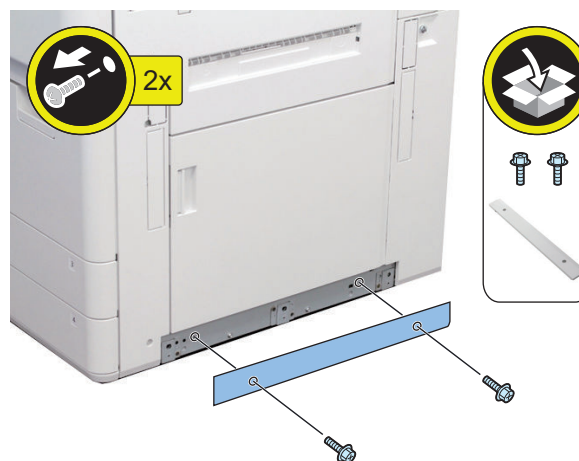
■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the feed cover (the removed cover is not used).

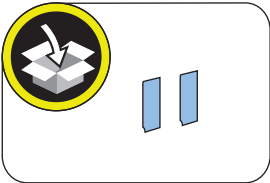
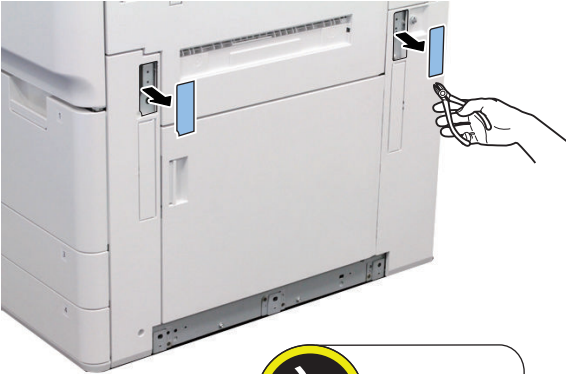


2. Remove the lower right cover (the removed cover and the screws are not used).
 - 2 Screws





3. Cut the front and rear blinded covers with a side cutter.

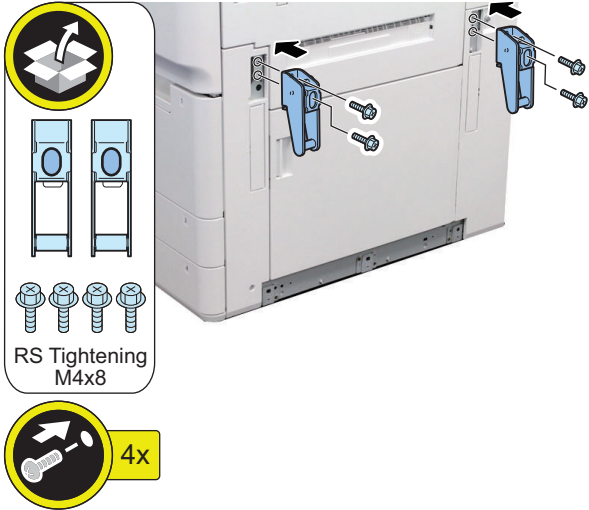
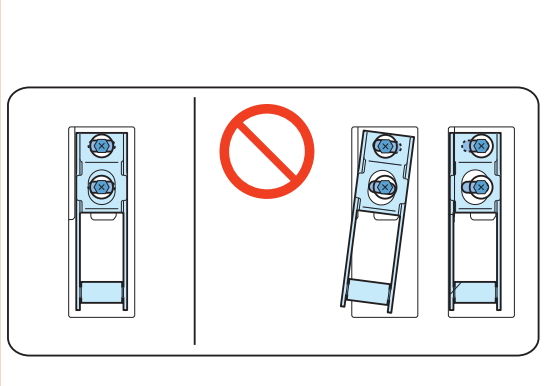


CAUTION:
Be sure to cut the cover properly so that no burr is formed.

□

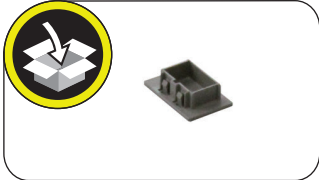
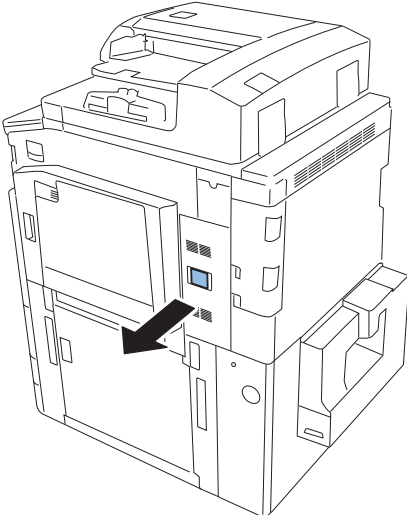
4. Attach the latch plates (front and rear) to the host machine with screws removed at procedure 3, 4, "Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit".

CAUTION:
Attach the 2 latch plates in the center of the hole.

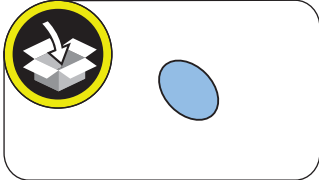
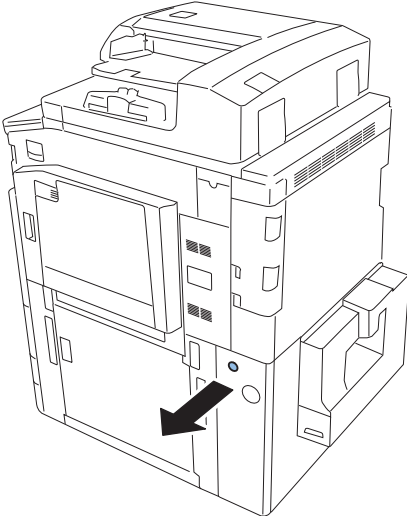




5. Remove the connector cover (the removed connector cover is not used).



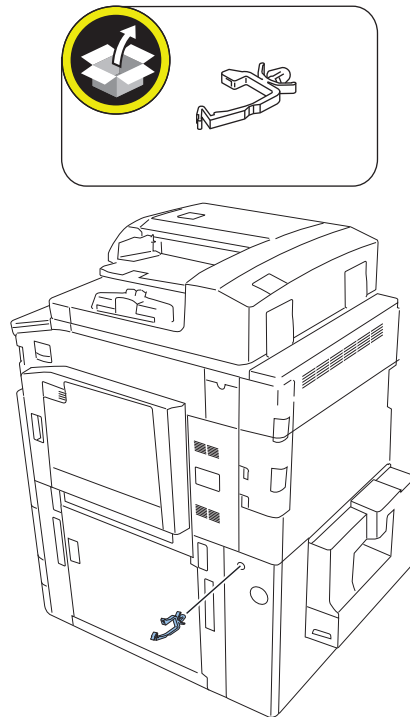
6. Remove the lower blindfold seal (the removed lower blindfold seal is not used).





7. Attach the wire saddle to the host machine.

- 1 Wire saddle

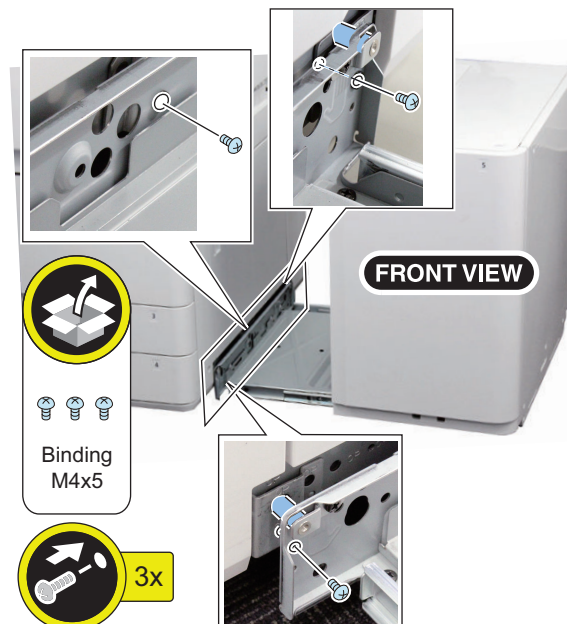


■ Connection with the Host Machine



1. Insert the positioning pins to the holes on the host machine and then fix the base stay unit.

- 3 Screws (Binding; M4x5)



**2. Connect the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine.****NOTE:**

Do not nip the cable between the Paper Deck Unit and the host machine when connecting.

NOTE:

When it is difficult to insert the rear connection pin into the rear latch hole, loosen the 2 screws fixing the latch plate and then adjust the position of the latch plate to fit it. Check that the latch plate is not positioned at an angle when installing.





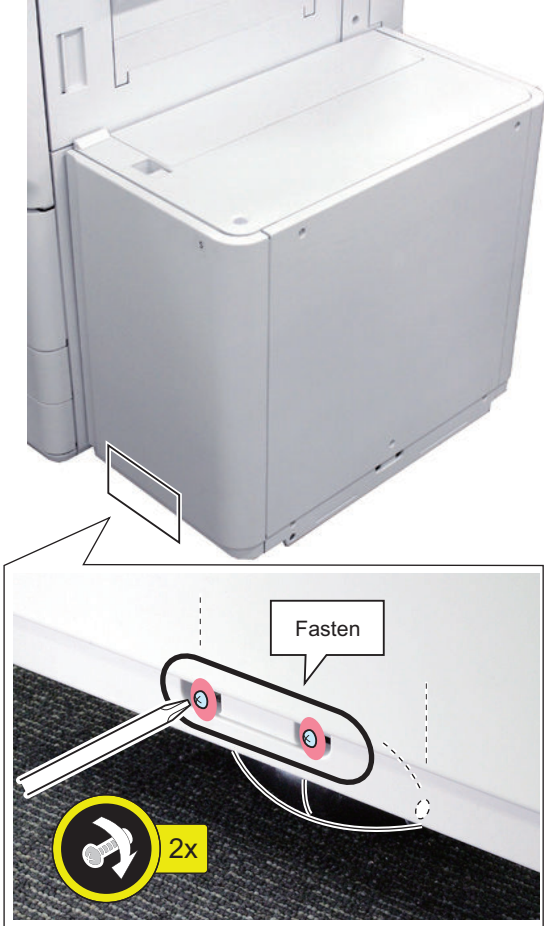
3. Loosen the 2 screws fixing the front bottom wheel to touch it to the floor.
• 2 Screws





4. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 3.

- 2 Screws





5. Loosen the 2 screws fixing the bottom right wheel to touch it to the floor.

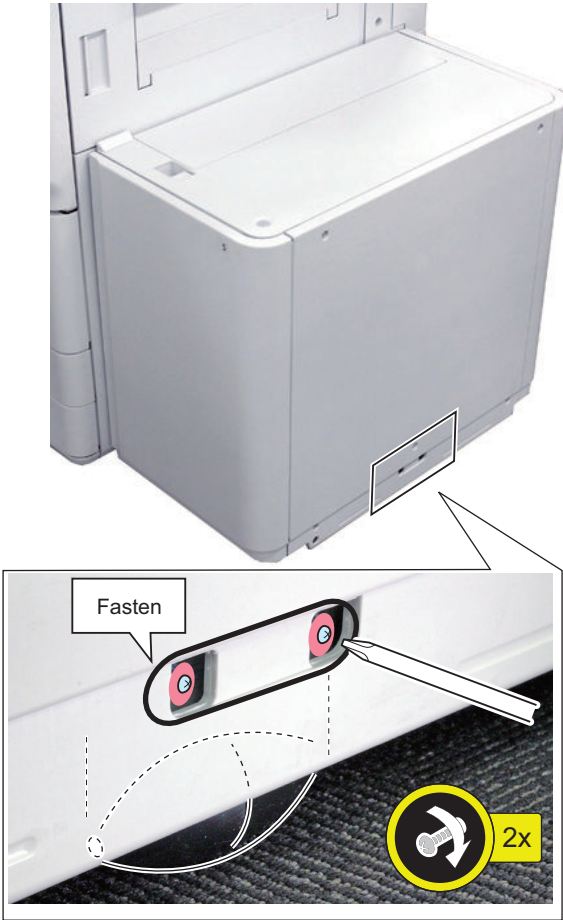
- 2 Screws



□

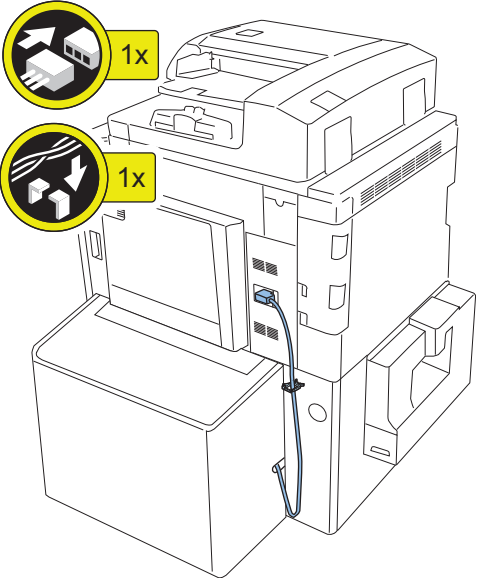
6. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 5.

- 2 Screws



□

7. Connect the lattice connector of the Paper Deck Unit to the host machine and then fix it with the wire saddle.

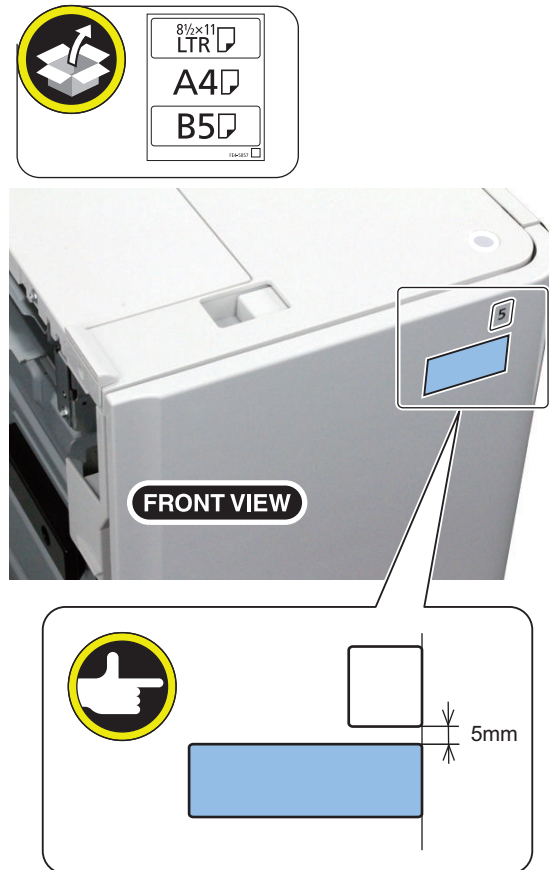




8. Paste the paper size label with a gap in 5mm from the cassette no. label while aligning right edge of the labels (the remaining labels are not used).

NOTE:

Keep the paper size label for use when paper size is changed.



9. Turn ON the host machine.

■ Switching of the Paper Size



1. Press the open button to open the compartment.

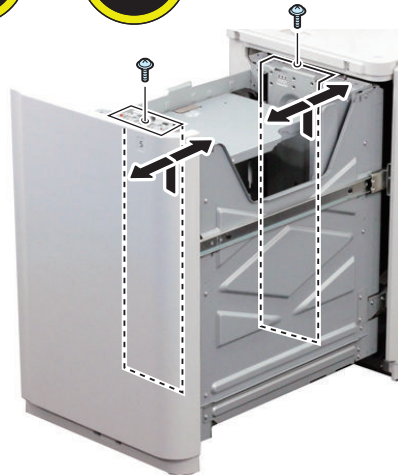
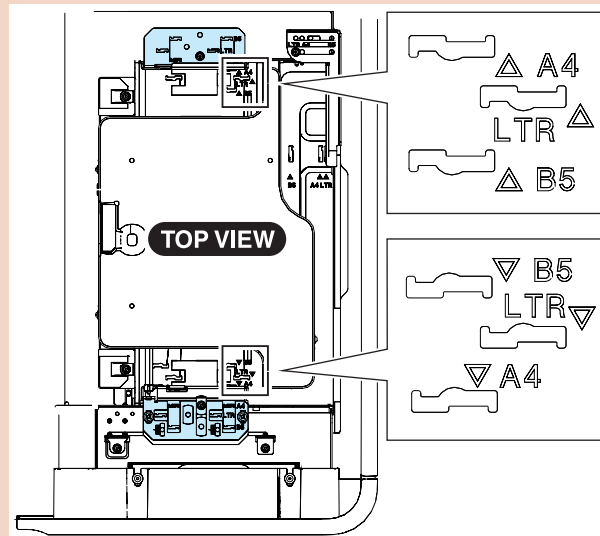




2. Relocate the left/right edge guide plates at the specified paper size.

CAUTION:

Paper size is marked on both top and bottom of the compartment. Check that the marked paper size is the specified paper size when relocating the the left/right edge guide plates.

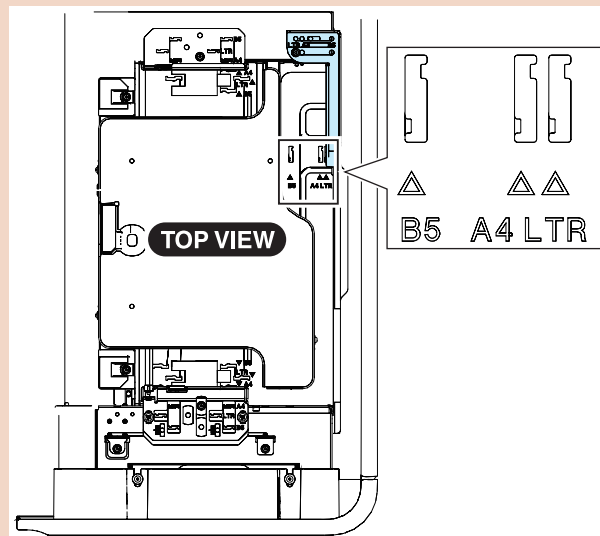




3. Relocate the rear edge guide plate at the specified paper size.

CAUTION:

Paper size is marked on both top and bottom of the compartment. Check that the marked paper size is the specified paper size when relocating the rear edge guide plate.



4. Set sheets of paper in the compartment and close it.



5. Set the paper size on the service mode.

(Lv.1) COPIER > OPTION > ACC > DK-P

- 0: A4
- 1: B5
- 2: LTR

Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Screw (RS tightening; M4x8)	3pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (RS tightening; M4x10)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Screw (TP; M3x6)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Screw (P tightening; M3x8)	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Paper Size Label (remaining label)	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Blindfold Seal	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[7]	Door Stopprt	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[8]	Connector Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[9]	Feed Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[10]	Lower Right Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[11]	Removed Face Cover	2pcs.

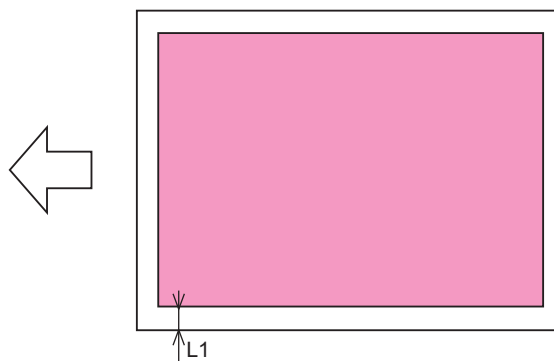
■ Paper Positioning Check /Adjustment Procedure

● Adjusting the Left Edge Margin(L1) of the Image

1. After setting the service modes (level 1) as follows, press the Start key and output a test print.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y/C/K = 0

2. Print sheets of paper from POD Deck Lite and then check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm.



3. Execute manua adjustment as follows when it is out of standard.

• Adjustment Procedure (Manual)

1. Release the Paper Deck from the host machine and press the open button of the Paper Deck to open the compartment.



2. Loosen the 2 screws at the latch plate on left side of the compartment.
 - 2 Screws

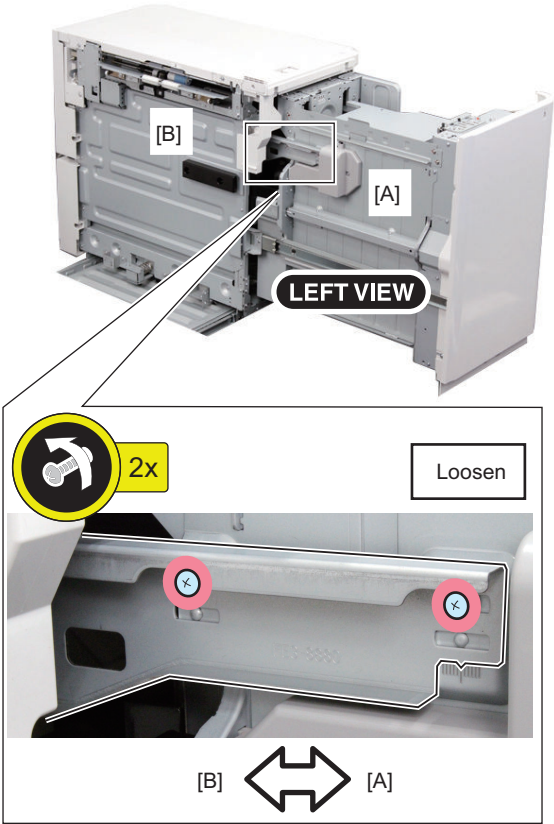
NOTE:

The screws retaining the latch plate are locked with the paint to avoid loosening in transit. For the adjustment, loosen the paint-locked screws and change the latch plate position.



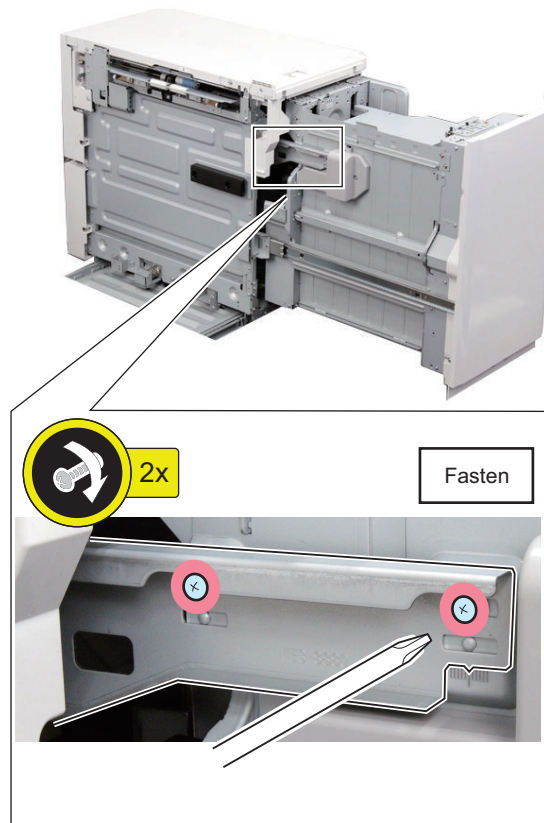
3. Move the latch plate toward front [A] or rear [B] (1 scale = 1mm)

- Move the latch plate to front [A] when L1 is large.
- Move the latch plate to rear [B] when L1 is small.



**4. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 2.**

- 2 Screws

**5. Move the front cover fitting to the amount of the latch plate adjustment. Refer to the next item "Front Cover Positioning Adjustment" for detail.****6. Close the compartment and connect with the host machine.****7. Print sheet of paper from the Paper Deck. Check that L1 is 2.5+/-1.5mm. Re-adjust L1 in case that it is out of standard.**

• Front Cover Positioning Adjustment



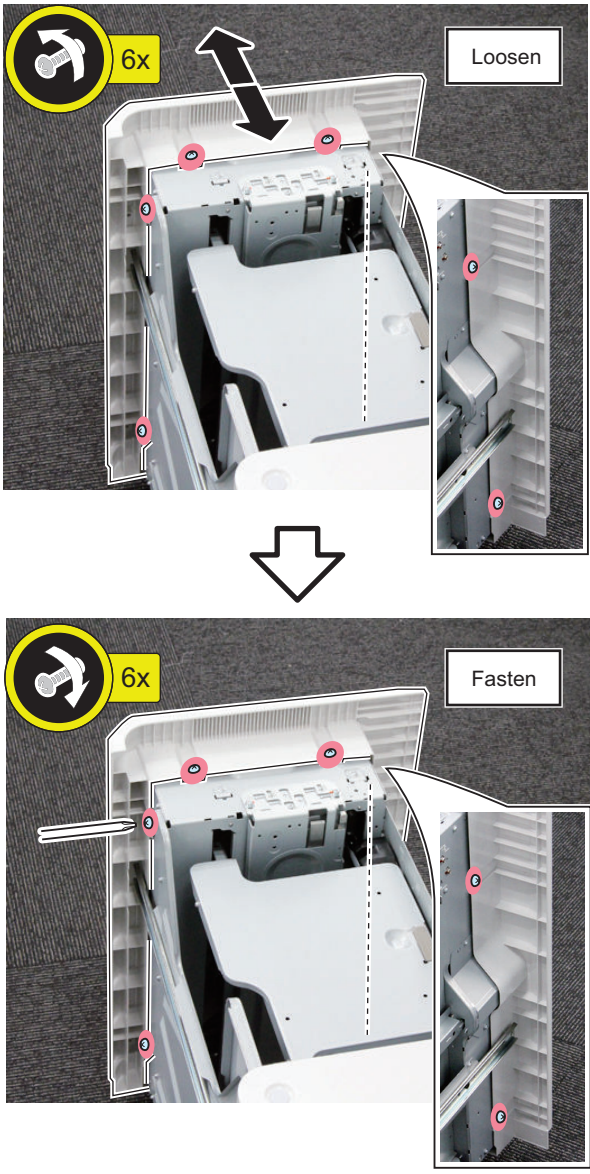
1. Check that the gap between the front cover and the Paper Deck is as follows.

- Gap between the front cover and the right cover: $3\pm 1\text{mm}$
- Gap between the front cover and the upper cover: $4\pm 1\text{mm}$



NOTE:

Loosen the 6 screws on the front cover and then move it to adjust the gap within the standard.



Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1

Checking before Installation

Requirements for the installation place are given below. It is recommended to look over the place to be used for installation before delivering the equipment to the user.

CAUTION:

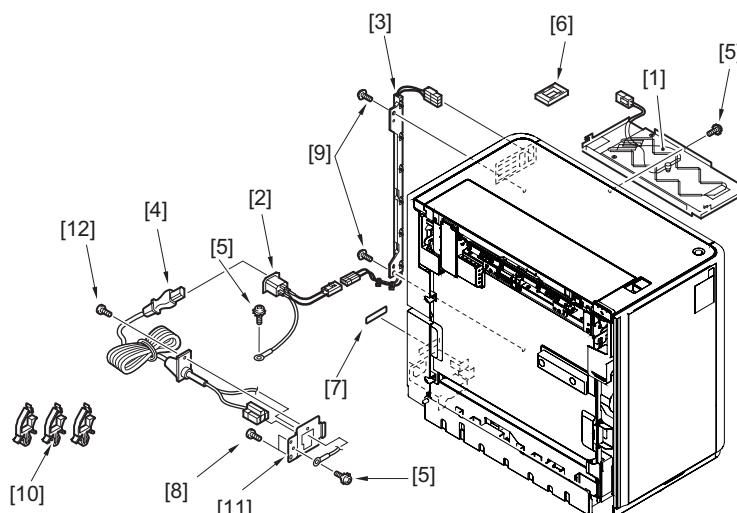
- Install the host machine first and then install the Paper Deck Unit.
- Do not carry the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

Checking the Supplied Parts

NOTE:

Each part of the Paper Deck Heater Unit-A1 for the Paper Deck is supplied as a service part according to the location, so prepare the following parts.

Also, use the appropriate Paper Deck Heater Unit for each country.



Item	Parts Name	Parts Number	Q'ty
[1]	Heater unit	FG6-9650 (100V) FG6-9651 (230V)	1pc.
[2]	AC input connector	FG6-1117	1pc.
[3]	Relay harness unit	FG6-2957	1pc.
[4]	AC cable	FK3-0630 (100V) FK3-0631 (230V)	1pc.
[5]	Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)	XB2-7400-607	3pcs.
*[6]	Cable protection bushing	WT2-5098	1pc.
[7]	Power supply label	FS6-8478 (100V) FS6-8725 (230V)	1pc.
[8]	Screw (Binding; M4x4)	XB1-2400-409	2pcs.
[9]	Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)	XA9-0732-010	2pcs.
[10]	Wire saddle	WT2-5730	3pcs.
[11]	Cord mount	FC7-5473	1pc.
[12]	Screw with flat spring (M4x10)	XB2-8401-007	1pc.

*As for the change of the part number, please refer to the latest parts catalog.

*[6] Cable protection bushing is not used for the installation.

<Others>

Including guides

Installation Procedure

■ Preparation of the Paper Deck Unit

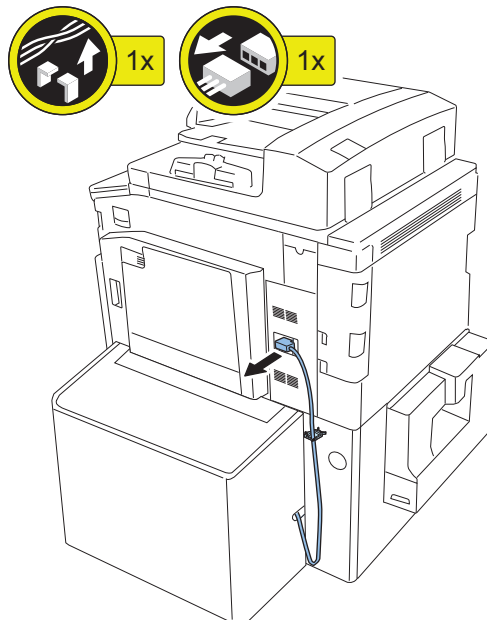


1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.



2. Disconnect the lattice connector from the host machine and then release the cable from the wire saddle.

- 1 Wire Saddle
- 1 Connector

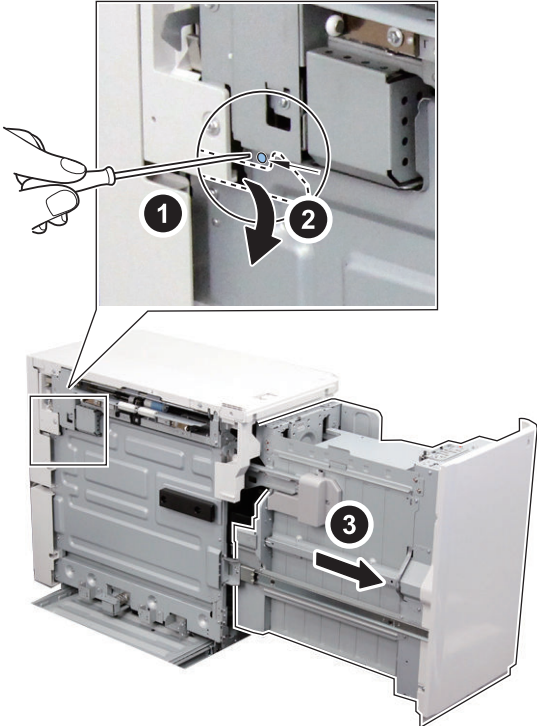


3. Pull the release lever and then withdraw the Paper Deck Unit until it stops.





4. Insert screwdrivers into the hole at rear left side of the compartment and then release the lever to open it.

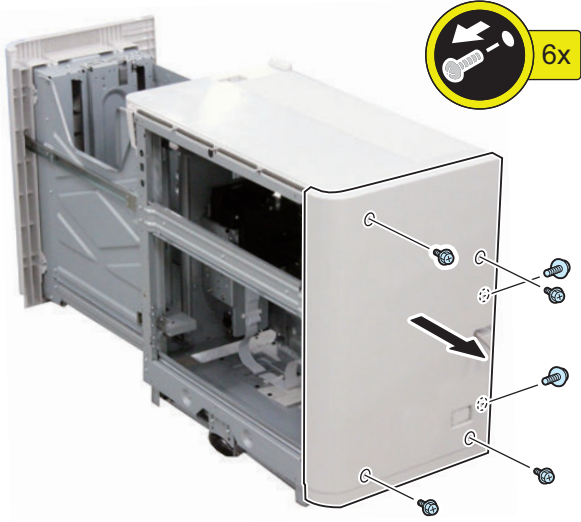


5. Remove the right cover.
• 5 Screws

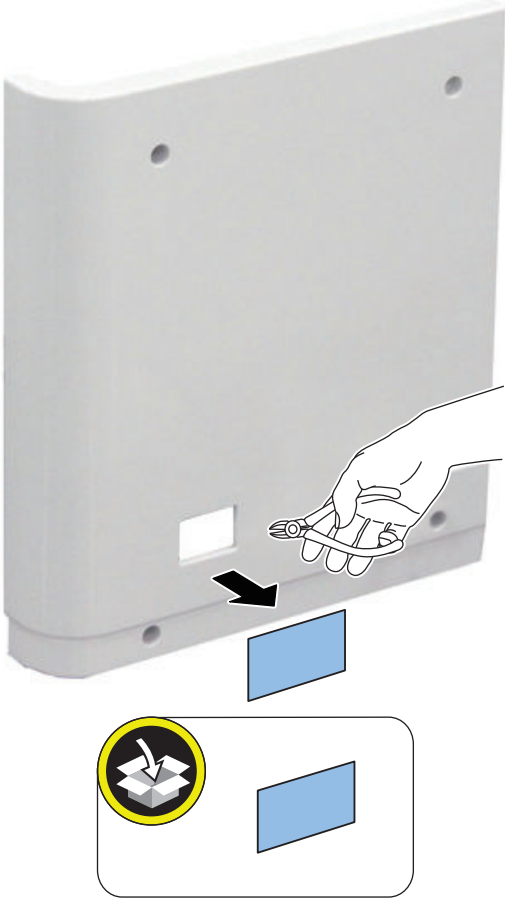




6. Remove the rear cover.
• 6 Screws

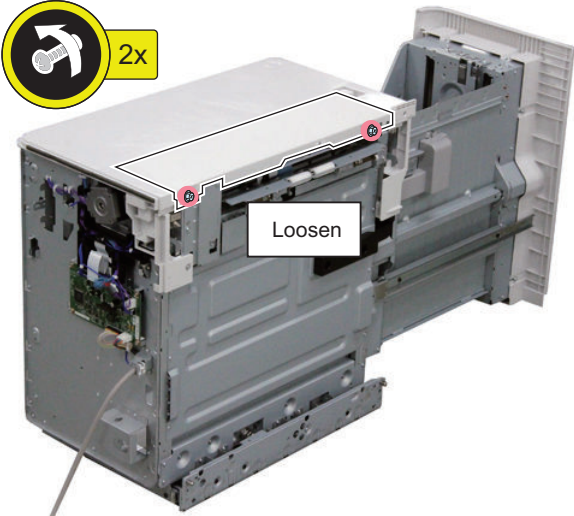


7. Cut the blindfold cover from the rear cover.





8. Loosen the 2 screws and then remove the upper left cover.



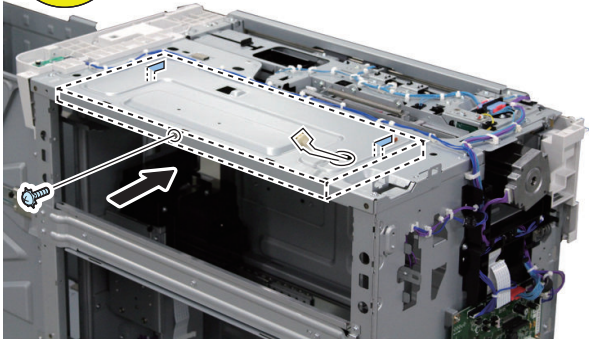
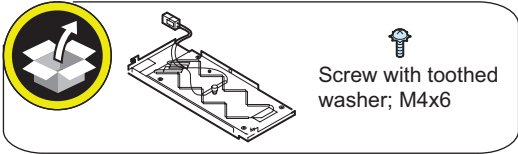
9. Remove the upper cover.
• 3 Screws





10. Put the connector through the hole in the top plate and then fix the Heater Unit in the Paper Deck Unit.

- 2 Hooks
- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)



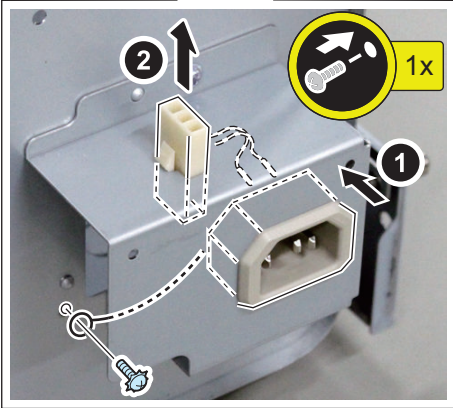
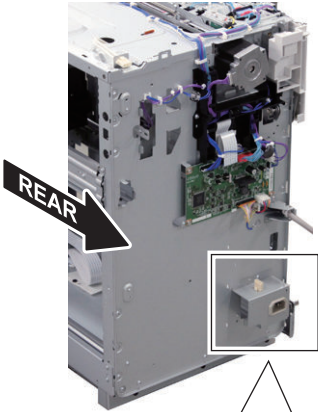
11. Insert the connector of the Heater Unit to the panel mount part.



□

12. Insert the AC input connector and then fix the ground cable.

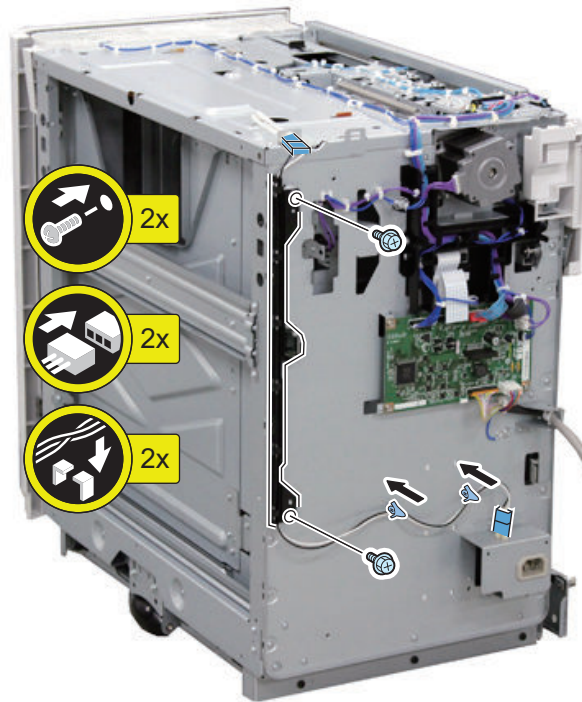
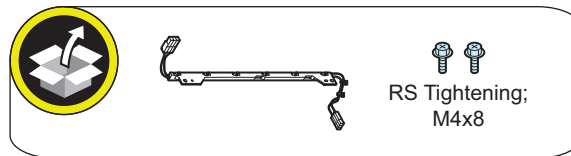
- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)





13. Install the relay harness unit on the rear side panel of the Paper Deck Unit.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)
- 2 Connectors
- 2 Snap Fit

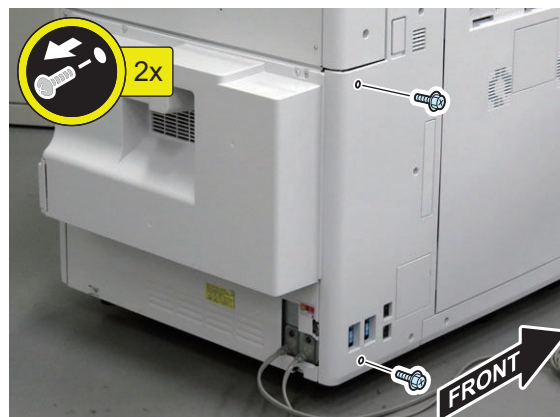


14. Re-attach the external covers.

■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the 2 screws of the left lower cover.

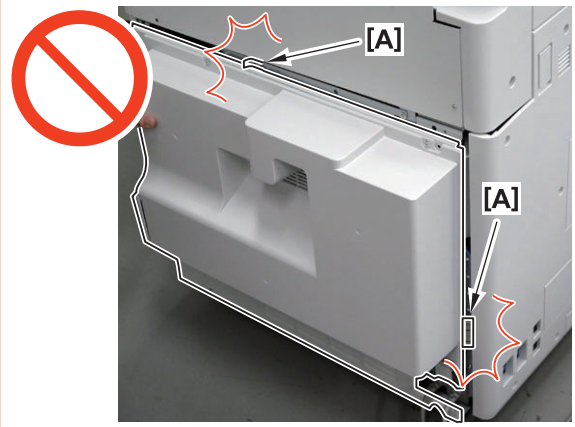


□

2. Hold and remove the rear lower cover unit.

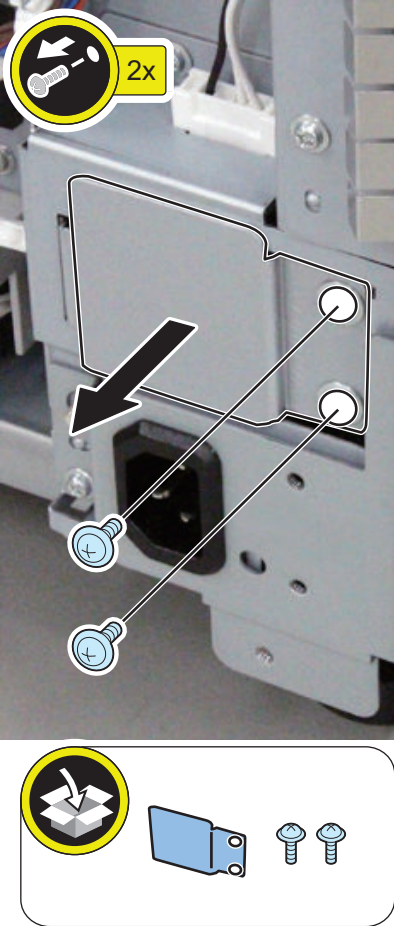
- 4 Screws

CAUTION:
When disassembling, do not deform the grounding plate.

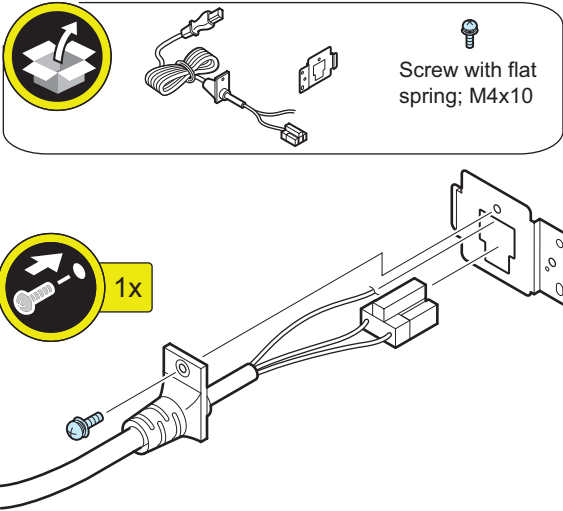




- 3. Remove the blindfold plate.
 - 2 Screws



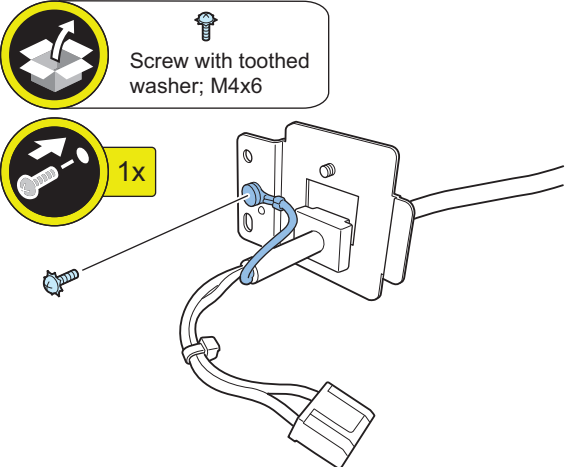
- 4. Insert the AC cord into the hole of the cord mount and fix it.
 - 1 Screw (Flat spring; M4x10)





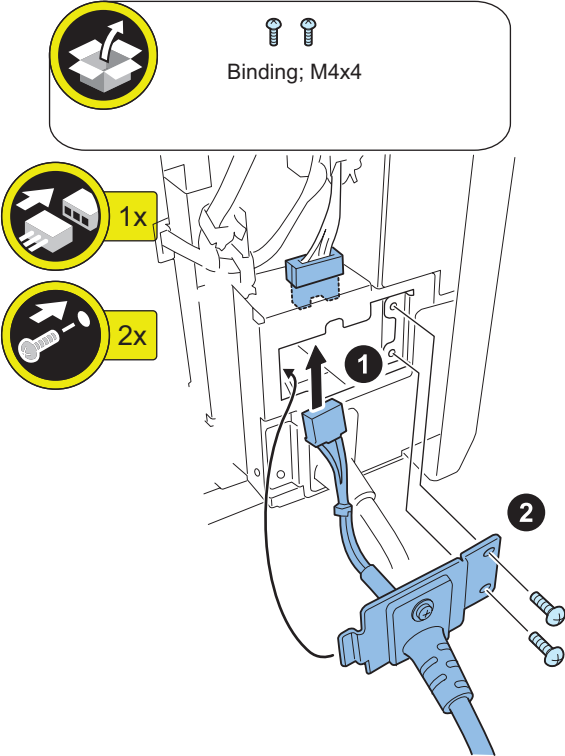
5. Fix the ground cable to the cord mount.

- 1 Screw (Toothed washer; M4x6)



6. Connect the AC cable to the host machine and then fix it.

- 1 Connector
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x4)



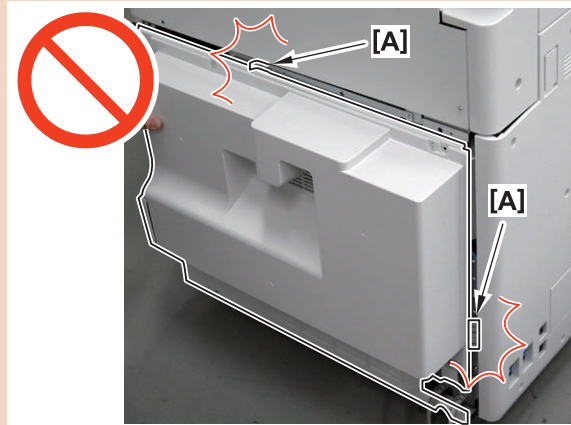


7. Attach the noise reduction cover and the lower rear cover.

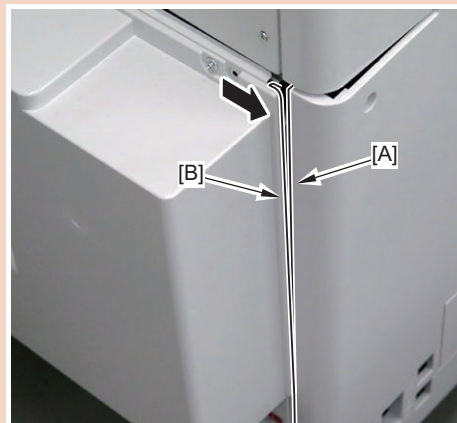
- 4 Screws

CAUTION:

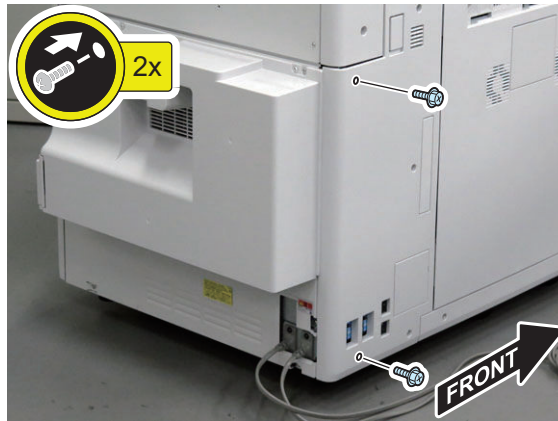
- When assembling, do not deform the grounding plate.



- When assembling, be sure to insert the edge [A] of the left lower cover in the groove [B] of the rear lower cover Unit.



8. Attach the 2 screws of the left lower cover.



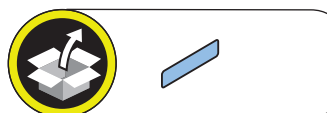
■ Connection with the Host Machine



1. Close the compartment and then connect the Paper Deck Unit with the host machine.



2. Paste the power supply label on the above the AC input connector.



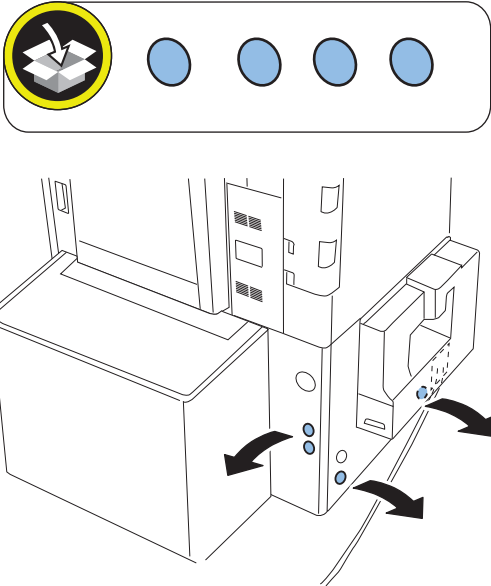
□

3. Connect the AC cable to the Paper Deck Unit.



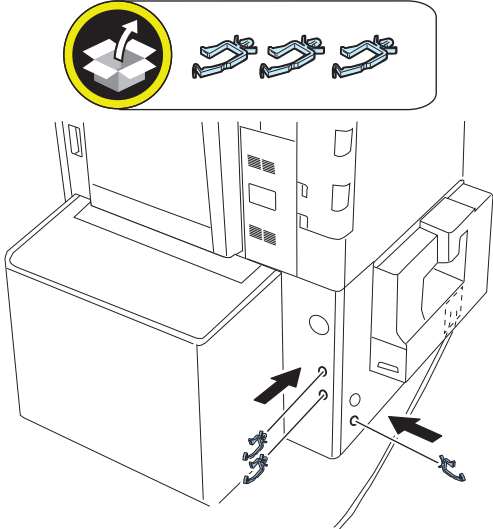
□

4. Remove the 4 blindfold seals.

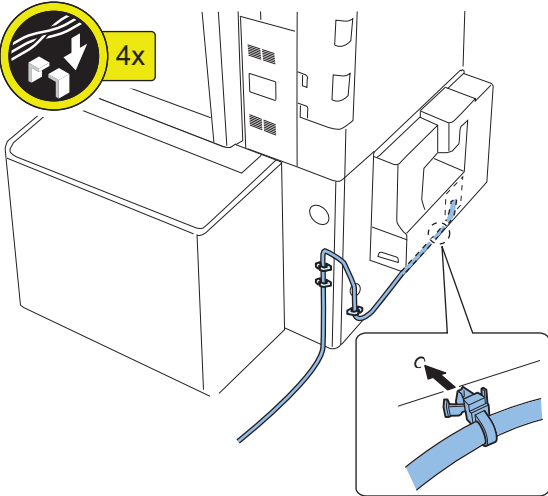




- 5. Attach the wire saddle.
- 3 Wire Saddles



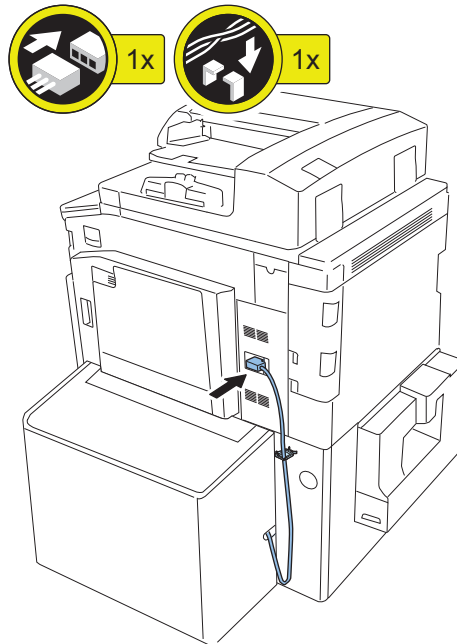
- 6. Fix the cable with the wire saddles and the snap fit.
- 3 Wire Saddles
- 1 Snap Fit





7. Connect the lattice connector of the Paper Deck to the host machine and then fix the cable with the wire saddle.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Wire Saddle



8. Turn ON the host machine.

Checking after Installation

■ Installation Procedure

1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Cable Protection Bushing	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (TP; M4x4)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Power Supply Label	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Blindfold Cover	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Blindfold Seal	4pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Blindfold Plate	1pc.

POD Deck Lite-C1

Checking before Installation

Requirements for the installation place are shown below. It is recommended to look over the installation place before delivering the equipment to the user.

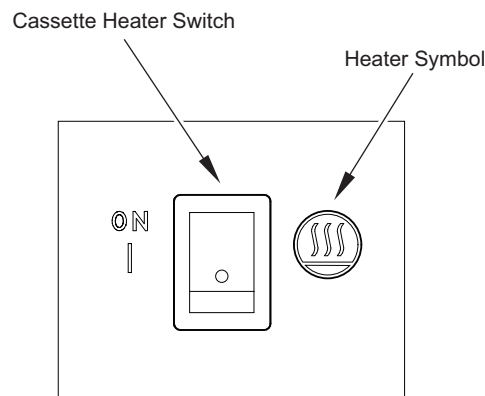
CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install the POD Deck Lite.
- Do not carry the POD Deck Lite with the host machine installed for breakage prevention.

Points to Note on Installation

Exercise following caution for installation.

1. POD Deck Lite weighs maximum 67 kg. When holding the POD Deck Lite at the installation, be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country. In addition, be sure to keep the machine leveled when lifting it.
2. When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
3. The cassette heater switch is indicated by the heater symbol.



Checking the Power Supply

1. Check that this equipment is connectable to the outlet independently which supplies the rated voltage within +10/-15% at the specified ampere or higher.
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this equipment near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281020

Unpacking

Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

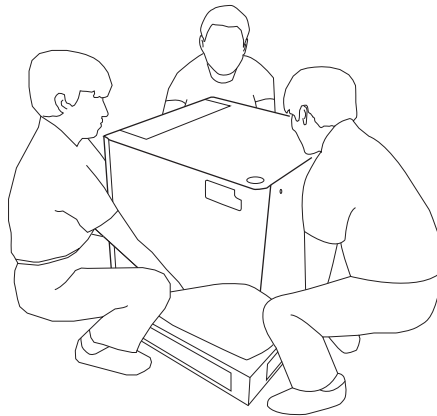
POD Deck Lite is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials following the unpacking procedure.



1. Open the box and remove the accessory box and cushioning materials.

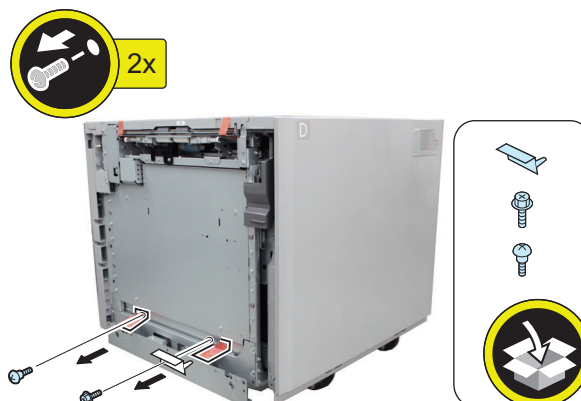


2. Open the plastic packing bag. Remove the POD Deck Lite from the pallet.



3. Remove the fixing plate and 2 tags (the removed tags, fixing plate and screws are not used).

- 2 Screws



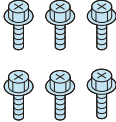
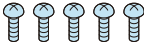

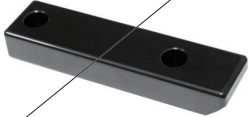
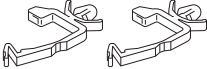
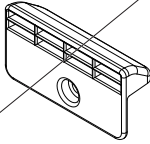


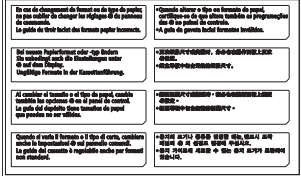
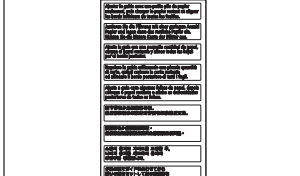
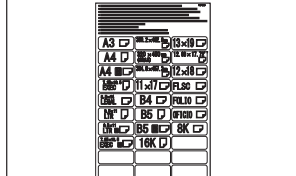
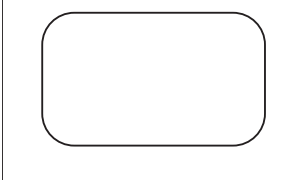
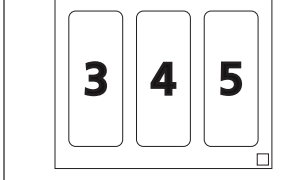
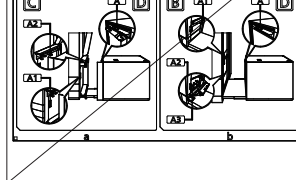
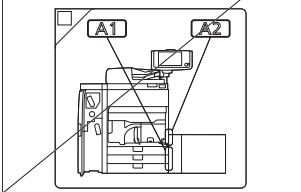

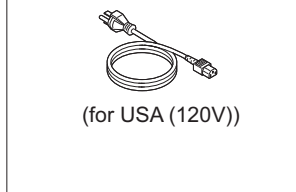
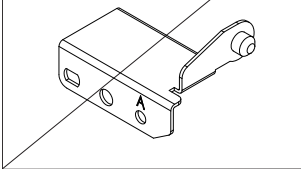
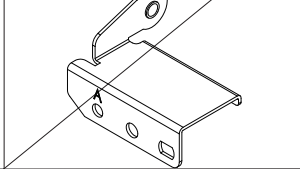
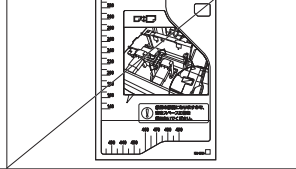
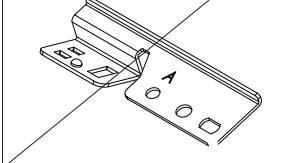
4. Remove all packaging tapes.

Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.

■ Contents

<p>□ [1] POD Deck Lite x1</p> 		<p>□ [2] Latch Plate x2</p> 
<p>□ [4] Screw (RS Tightening;M4x8) x6</p> 	<p>□ [5] Screw (Binding;M4x5) x5</p> <p>Use 3 of them</p> 	<p>□ [3] Screw (P Tightening;M3x8) x1</p> 
<p>□ [7] Slope Guide x1</p> 	<p>□ [8] Wire Saddle x2</p> 	<p>□ [6] Door Stopper x1</p> 

<p>□ [9] Foreign Language Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [10] Paper Size Overlay Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [11] Paper Size Label x1</p> 
<p>□ [12] Paper Size Plate x1</p> 	<p>□ [13] Cassette No. Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [14] Total Map Label x1</p> 
<p>□ [15] JAM Label x1</p> 	<p>□ [16] *1 Power Cord x3</p>  <p>(for Europe/Asia/Australia/Latin America (230V))</p>	<p>□ [17] *1 Power Cord x1</p>  <p>(for USA (120V))</p>
<p>□ [18] Feed Lower Guide Front Fixing Plate x1</p> 	<p>□ [19] Feed Lower Guide Rear Fixing Plate x1</p> 	<p>□ [20] Paper Size Sub label x1</p> 
<p>□ [21] Extraction Sensor Plate x1</p> 		

*1 : Use the appropriate power cord by location. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

NOTE:

Keep the removed fixing materials as they are used to transport for relocation.

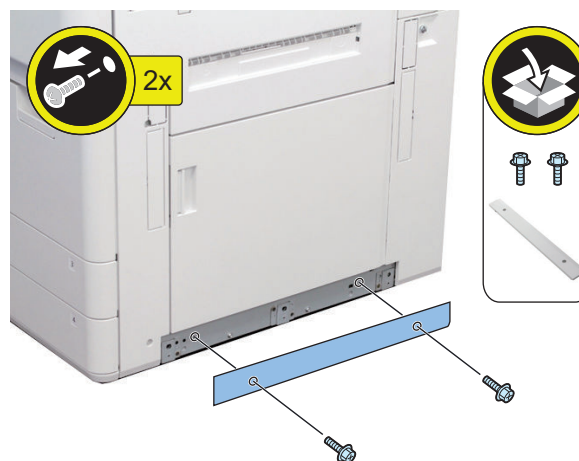
■ Preparation of the Host Machine



1. Remove the feed cover.



2. Remove the lower right cover.
 - 2 Screws





3. Cut the blindfold covers (front /rear) with a side cutter.

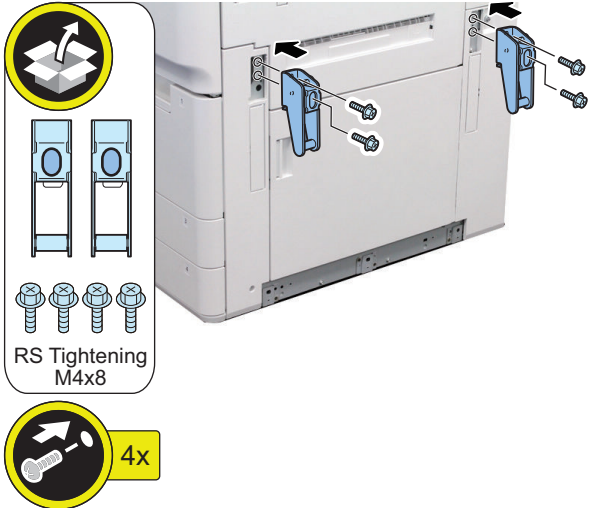
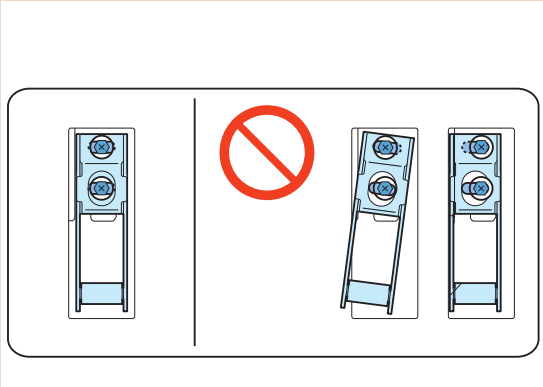


CAUTION:
Be sure to remove the face cover properly so that no burr is formed.



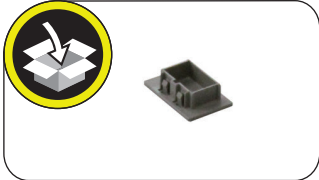
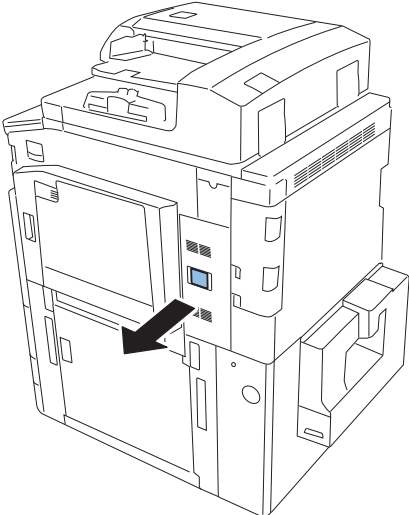
4. Attach the 2 latch plates to the host machine.
• 4 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)

CAUTION:
Attach the 2 latch plates in the center of the hole.

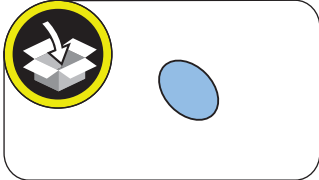
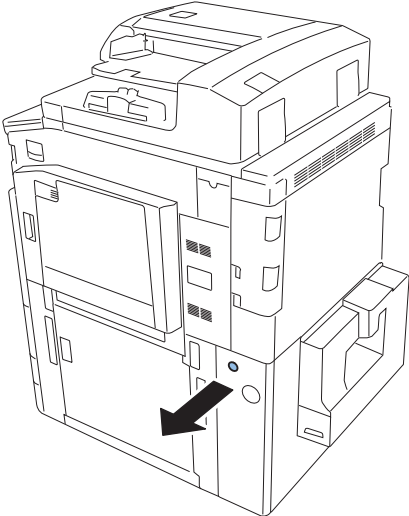




5. Remove the connector cover from rear of the host machine.

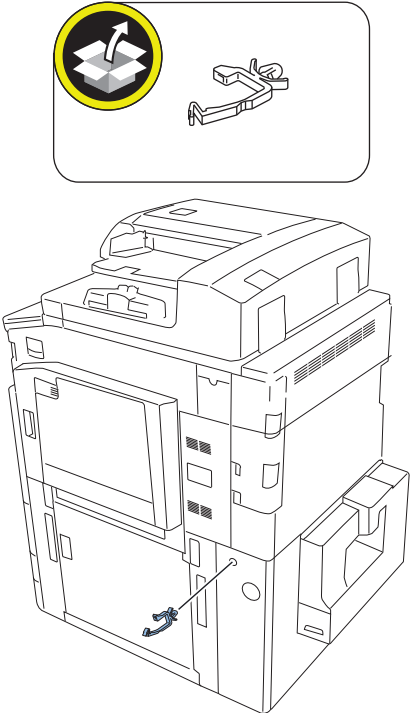


6. Remove the blindfold cover from the host machine.





- 7. Attach the wire saddle.
 - 1 Wire Saddle



■ Preparation of the POD Deck Lite



- 1. Remove the screw and spacer from the base stay unit. Push the POD Deck Lite until it stops while holding the base stay unit (the removed screw is used at procedure 2).

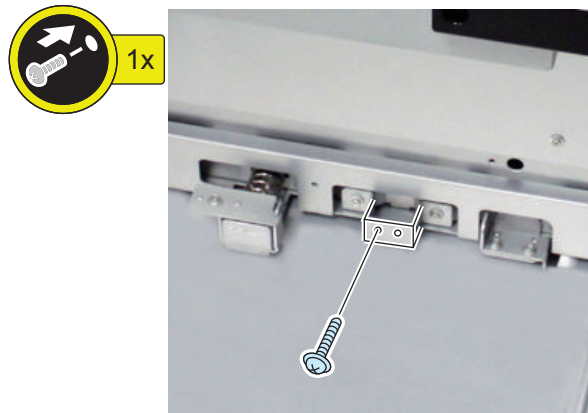




2. Fix the removed screw at procedure 1 to the original position.

NOTE:

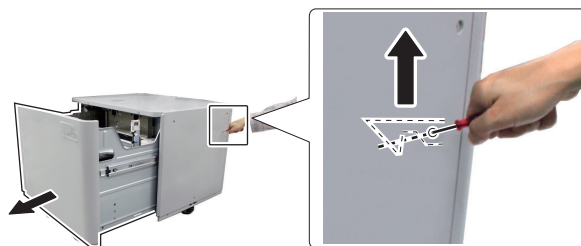
The screw is used to fix the base stay unit when the POD Deck Lite is transported for relocation.



■ Connection with the Host Machine



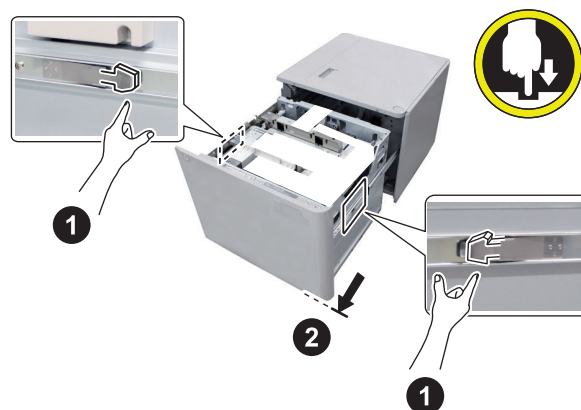
1. Insert screwdrivers into the hole of the rear right side and then release the lever to open the compartment.



2. Open the compartment until it stops while releasing stoppers with pressing left and right latches.

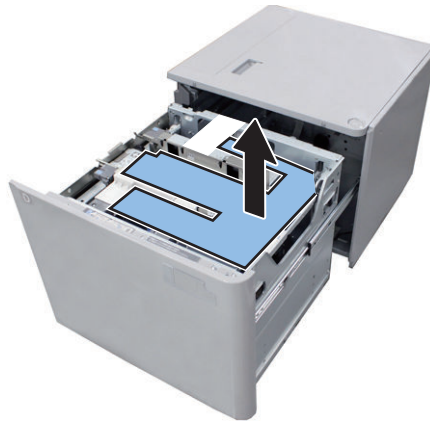
⚠ CAUTION:

Be careful not to get your fingers caught.



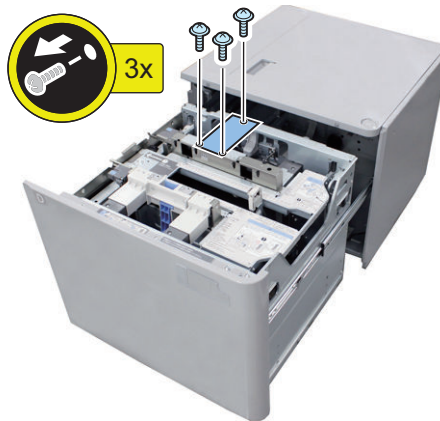


3. Remove the sheet and tapes from the compartment.



4. Remove the stay guide. Removed 1 screw and the stay guide are used at procedure 25.

- 3 Screws



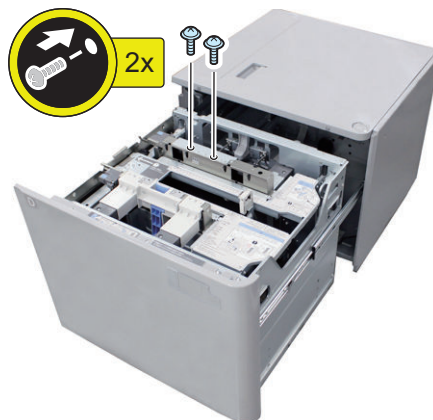
NOTE:

The removed screw is used to fix the stay guide plate when the POD Deck Lite is transported.



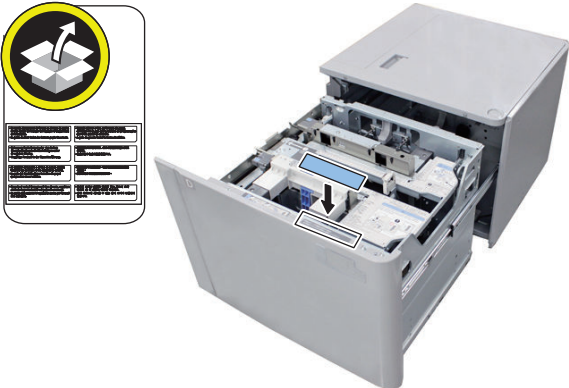
5. Fix the 2 screws removed at procedure 4 to the original position.

- 2 Screws (TP screws; M3x6)

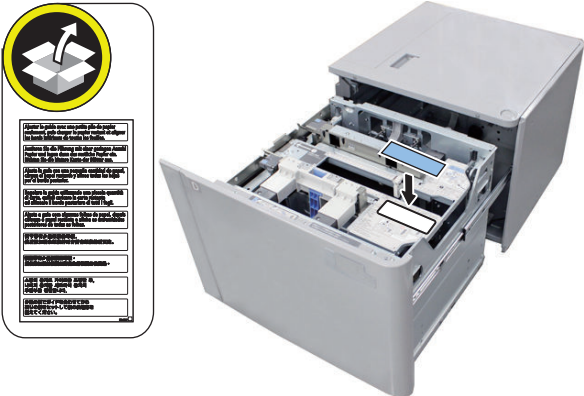




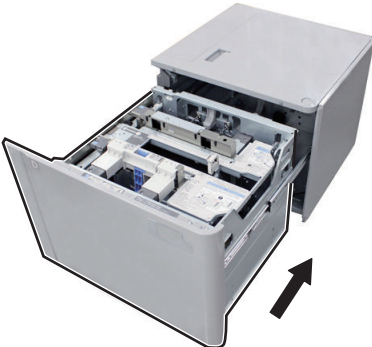
6. Affix the foreign language label by language over the original label as shown in the figure.



7. Affix the paper size overlay label over the original label by language as shown in the figure.



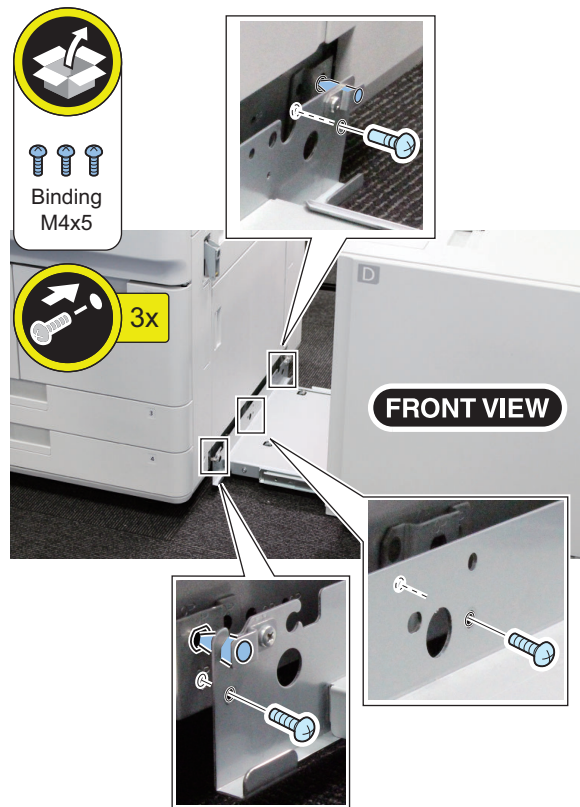
8. Close the compartment.





9. Insert the 2 positioning pins to the holes of the host machine and then fix the base stay.

- 3 Screws (Binding screws; M4x5)



**10. Connect the POD Deck Lite with the host machine.****NOTE:**

- Do not nip the cable between the POD Deck Lite and the host machine when connecting.

NOTE:

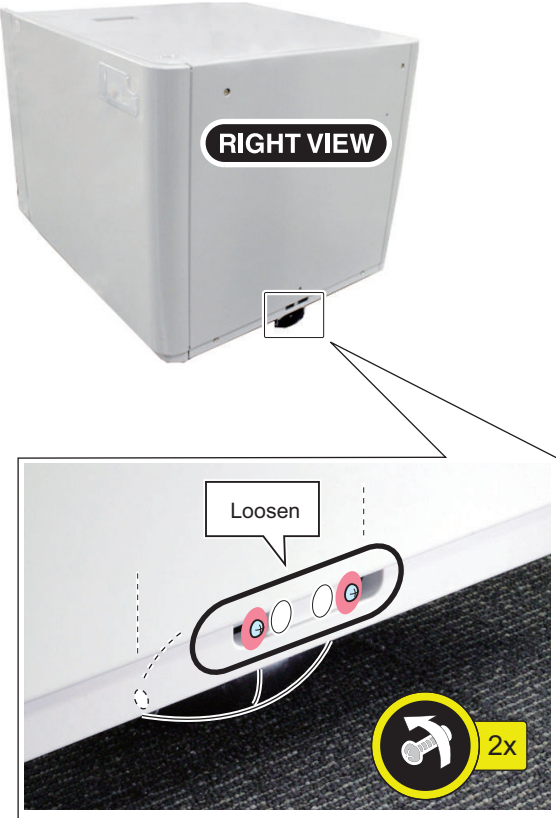
- When inserting the rear connection pin into the rear latch hole is difficult, loosen the 2 screws fixing the latch plate and then adjust the position of the latch plate to fit it in. Check that the latch plate is not positioned at an angle when installing.





11. Loosen the 2 screws on the bottom right side wheel.

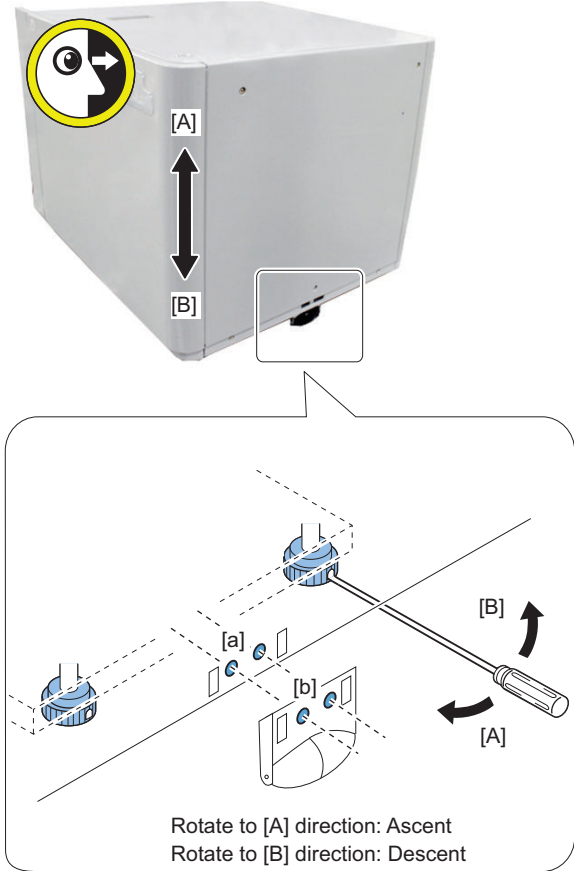
- 2 Screws





12. Match position(a) with position(b) by adjusting the height of the POD Deck Lite with the 2 adjusters.

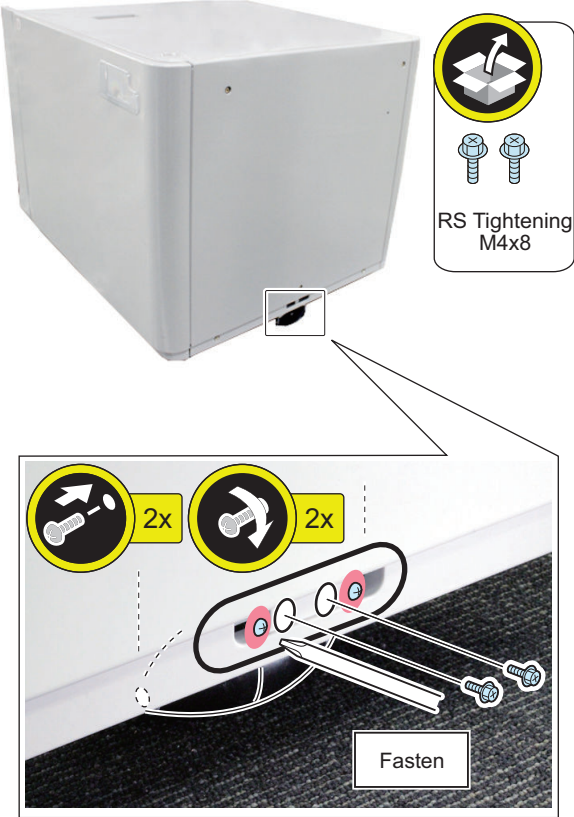
- Position (a) : 2 fixing screw tapped holes (middle) of the POD Deck Lite.
- Position (b) : 2 fixing screw tapped holes (middle) of the bottom right side wheel.





13. Fix the bottom right side wheel with Screw A and Screw B.

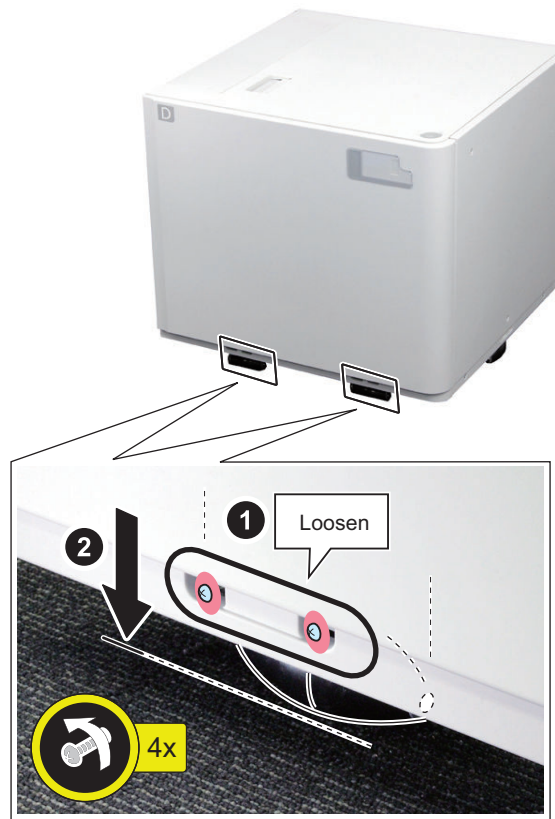
- Screw A: Supplied 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)
- Screw B: 2 screws loosened at procedure 11





14. Loosen the 2 screws on the 2 front bottom wheels for each and touch them to the floor.

- 4 Screws



15. Fasten the 2 screws loosened at procedure 14.

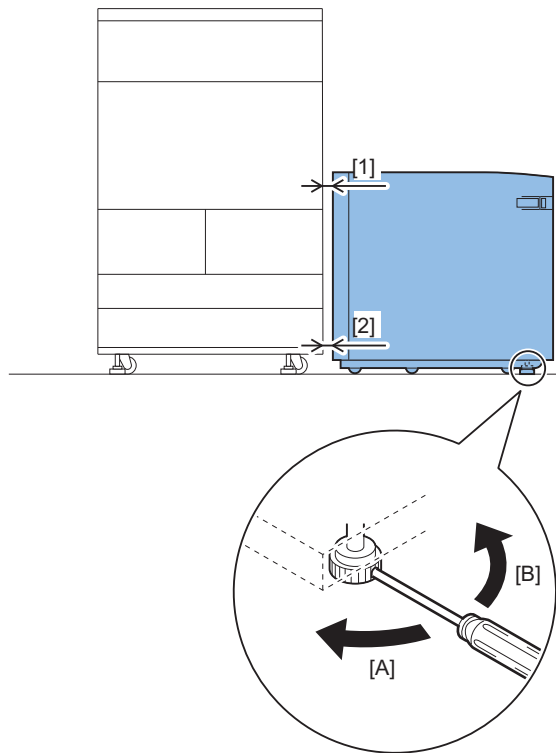
- 4 Screws





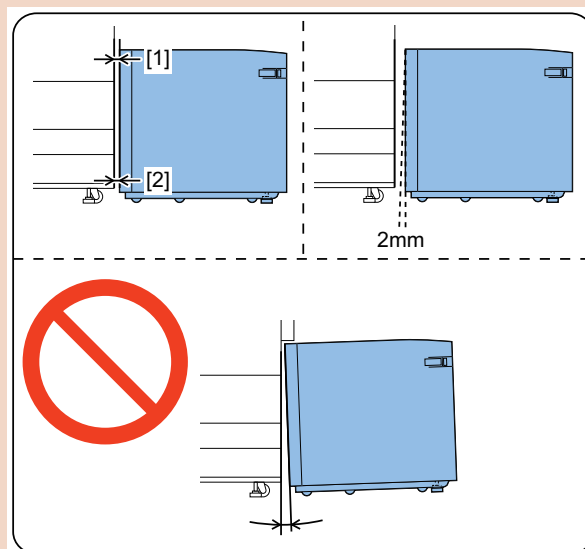
16. Adjust tilt with the 2 adjusters until a top gap [1] and a bottom gap [2] between the POD Deck Lite and the host machine are same width.

- Rotate to [A] direction: Ascent
- Rotate to [B] direction: Descent



CAUTION:

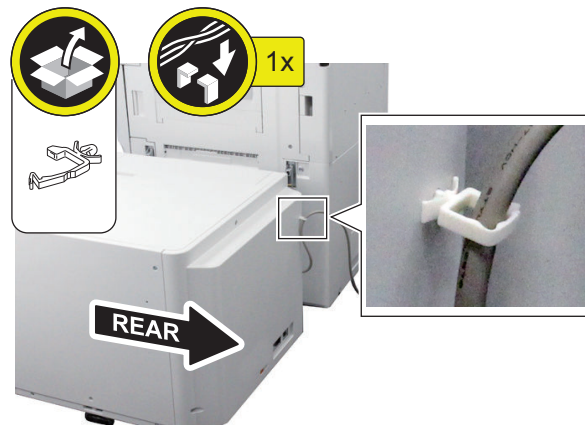
- In case that the gap between the top [1] and the bottom [2] is not in parallel, connection may not be detected.
- Allowance gap range is that the bottom [2] is 2mm shorter than the top [1].
- When relocating the POD Deck Lite, re-adjust the gap in parallel.





17. Attach the wire saddle to the hole on rear side of the POD Deck Lite and then clamp the cable with it.

- 1 Wire saddle



18. Attach the Interface Cable with the host machine and fix it with the wire saddle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When connecting the Interface Cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet. If you do not do so, electric shock can result.





19. Connect the power cord to the inlet of the POD Deck Lite and then plug it to the external source.

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the power cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is incomplete, smoke or fire may occur.



20. Check that the circuit breaker is ON.



21. If the cassette heater is installed, turn ON the cassette heater in high humidity or low temperature environment.



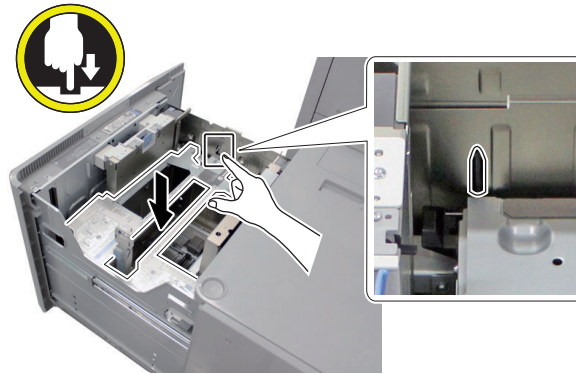
22. Turn ON the main power on the host machine.

23. Press the open button of the POD Deck Lite to open the compartment.



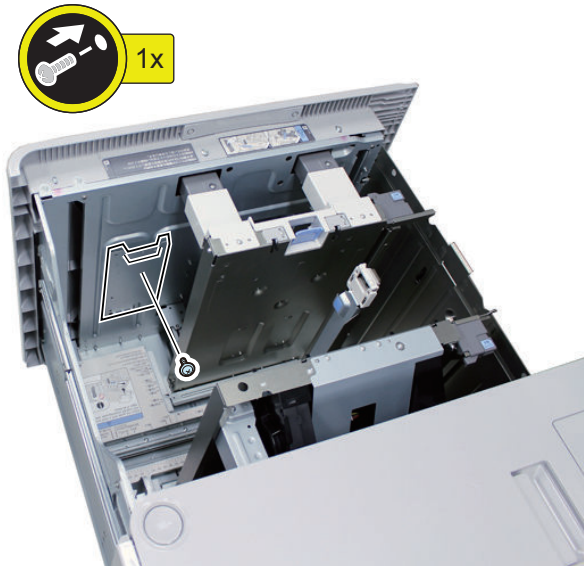


24. Press the relay paper sensor until the lifter reaches to the bottom position.



25. Fix the stay guide inside of the front frame with the screw removed at procedure 4.

- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)



26. Set sheets of paper in the Compartment.



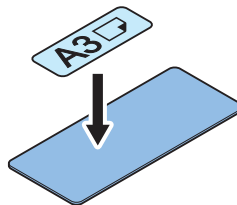
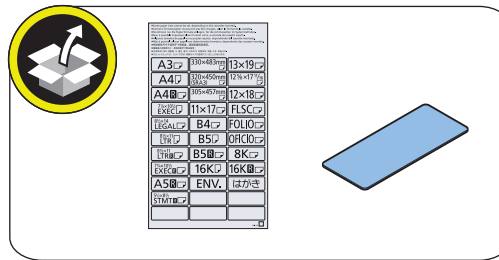
27. Close the Compartment.



28. Affix the Cassette No. Label following the cassette No. of the Host Machine.



29. Affix the Paper Size Label on the Size Plate.



NOTE:

- Be sure to check with the user whether or not to affix the Paper Size Label, and then affix it.
- Keep the Paper Size Labels as they will be used when changing the paper size.



30. Insert the Size Plate prepared at procedure 29 to the Media Plate Holder.



Disposal Parts

1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Screw (RS Tightening;M4x8) 3pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (Binding; M4x5) 2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x8) 1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Screw (P Tightening; M3x8) 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Feed Cover 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Lower Right Cover 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[7]	Connector Cover 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[8]	Blindfold Cover 2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[9]	Total Map Label 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[10]	Foreign Language Label 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[11]	Cassette No. Label 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[12]	Papaer Size Sub Label 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[13]	JAM Label 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[14]	Spacer 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[15]	Slope Guide 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[16]	Door Stopper 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[17]	Extraction Sensor Plate 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[18]	Feed Lower Guide Front Fixing Plate 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[19]	Feed Lower Guide Rear Fixing Plate 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[20]	Blindfold Seal 1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/>	[21]	Fixing Plate 1pc.

Paper Positioning Check/Adjustment Procedure

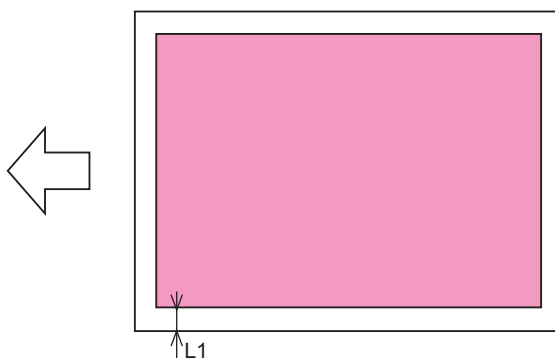
■ Adjusting the Left Edge Margin (L1) of the Image

1. After setting the service modes (level 1) as follows, press the Start key and output a test print.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y/C/K = 0

2. Print sheets of paper from the POD Deck Lite. Check whether L1 is within the reference range.

- $L1=2.5 \pm 1.5\text{mm}$





3. Execute manual adjustment as follows when it is out of standard.

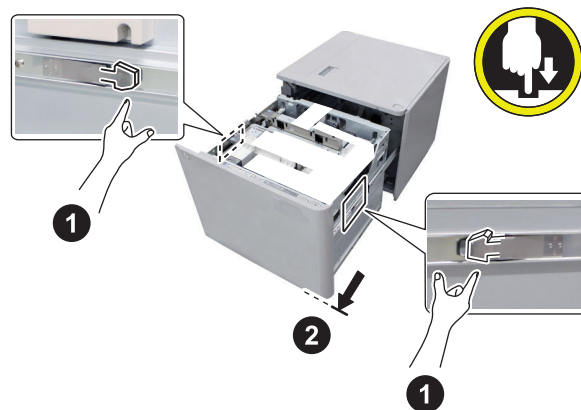
■ Adjustment Procedure (manual)



1. Press the open button of the POD Deck Lite to open the compartment.



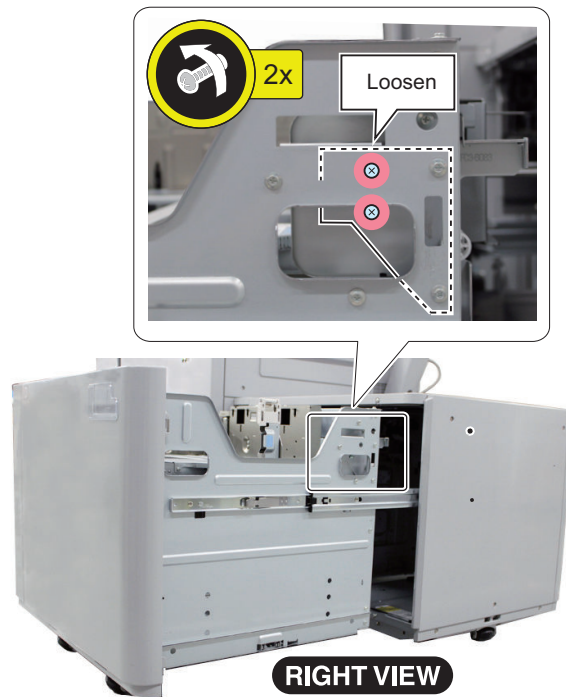
2. Open the compartment until it stops while releasing stoppers with pressing left and right latches.





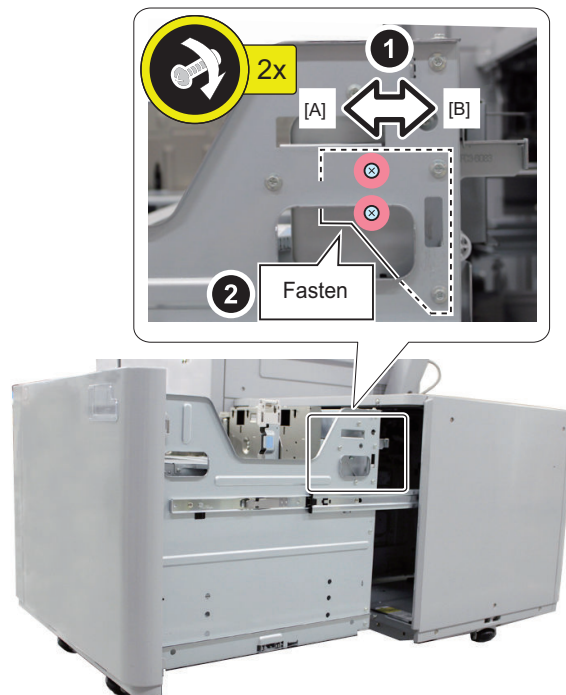
3. Loosen the 2 screws at the latch plate on the right side of the compartment.

- 2 Screws



4. Move the latch plate toward front [A] or rear [B] (1 scale = 1mm) and then fasten the 2 screws. The adjusted value is used at procedure 6.

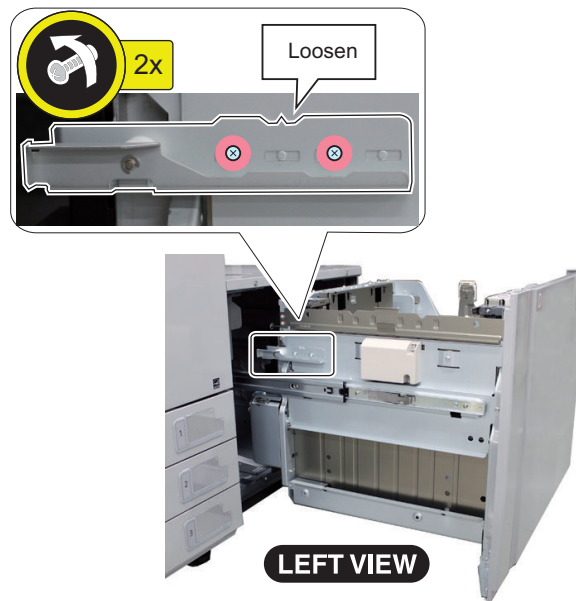
- When L1 is large, move the latch plate to front [A].
- When L1 is small, move the latch plate to rear [B].



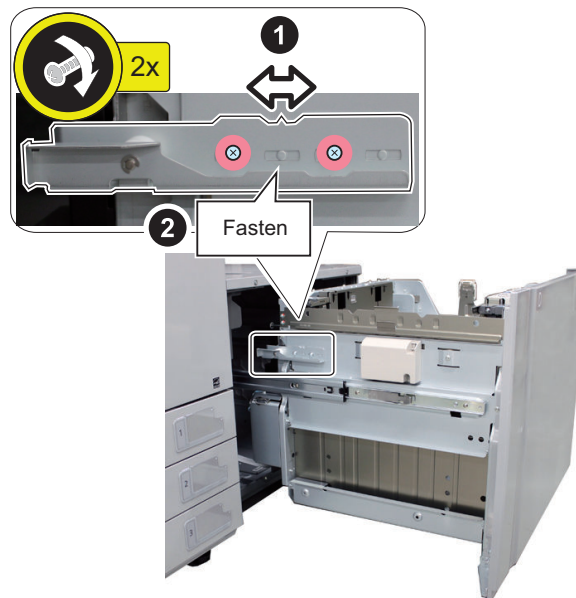


5. Loosen the 2 screws at the latch plate on the left side of the compartment.

- 2 Screws



6. Move the latch plate in the same scale position as procedure 4 and then fasten the 2 screws (1 scale = 1mm).



7. Move the front cover fitting to the amount of the latch plate adjustment. Refer to the next item "Front Cover Positioning Adjustment" for detail.



8. Close the compartment.



9. Print sheets of paper from the POD Deck Lite. Check whether L1 is within the reference range. Re-adjust L1 in case that it is out of range.

- L=2.5 +/- 1.5 mm

■ Front Cover Positioning Adjustment

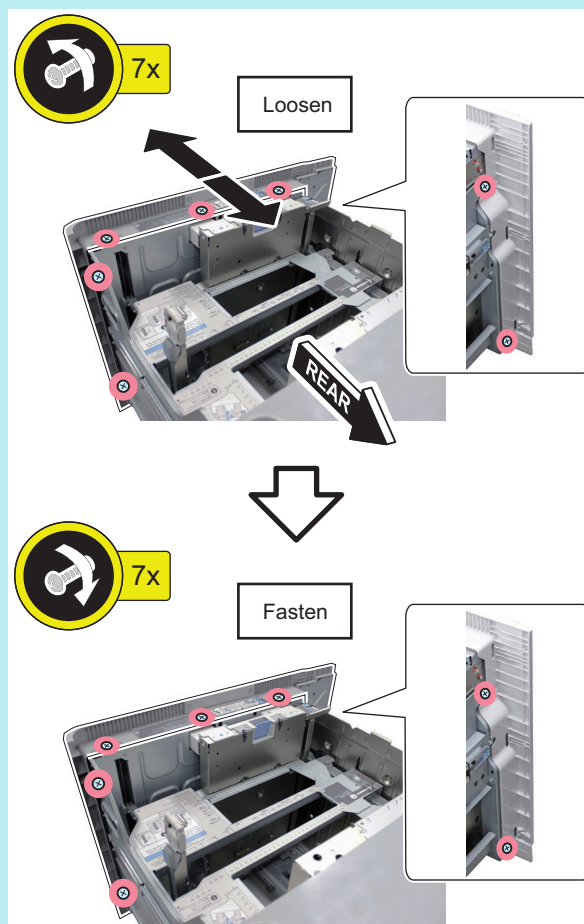


1. Check that the gap is 4 ± 1 mm between the front cover and upper cover, the front cover and right cover.



NOTE:

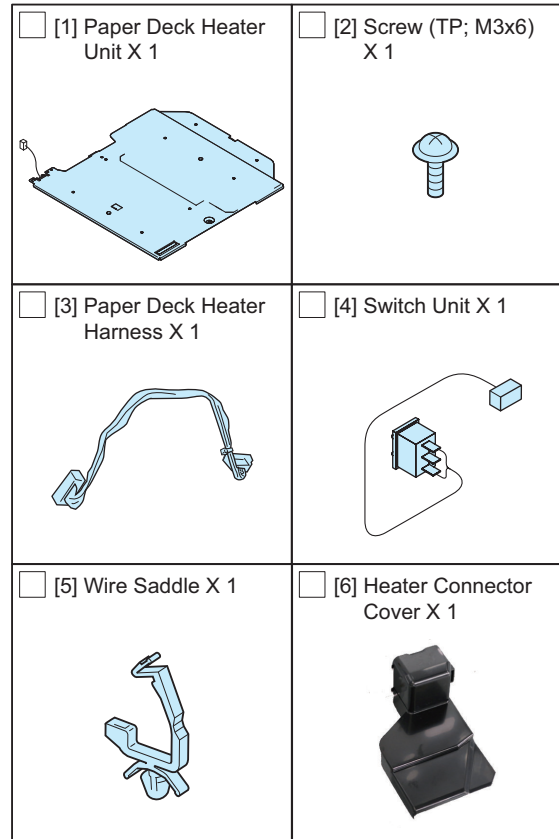
Loosen the 7 screws on the front cover to adjust the gap in 4 ± 1 mm.



Paper Deck Heater Unit for POD Deck Lite-C1

Checking the Parts to be Installed

Each part of the Paper Deck Heater Unit for the Paper Deck is supplied as a service part, so prepare the following parts. Also, use the appropriate Paper Deck Heater Unit for each country.



No	Parts name	Parts Number	Q'ty
[1]	Paper Deck Heater Unit	FM1-D634	1pc
[2]	Screw (TP ; M3x6)	XB6-7300-605	1pc
[3]	Paper Deck Heater Harness (120V)	FM1-E857	1pc
	Paper Deck Heater Harness (230V)	FM1-E858	1pc
[4]	Switch Unit	FM1-E859	1pc
[5]	Wire Saddle	WT2-6108	1pc
[6]	Heater Connector Cover	FE3-5299	1pc

*Check the parts numbers on the current parts catalogue as the above parts numbers may be changed.

Removing from the Host Machine

■ Removing from the Host Machine



1. Turn OFF the main power of the host machine.

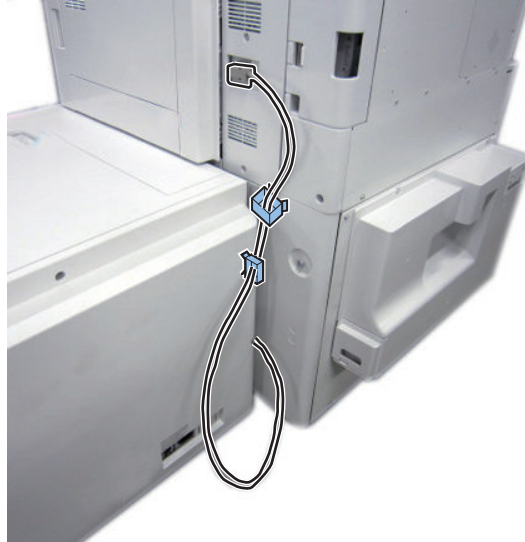


2. Remove the power cord.



3. Remove the cable.

- 2 Wire saddles
- 1 Connector



4. Slide the POD Deck Lite until it stops with holding the release lever.

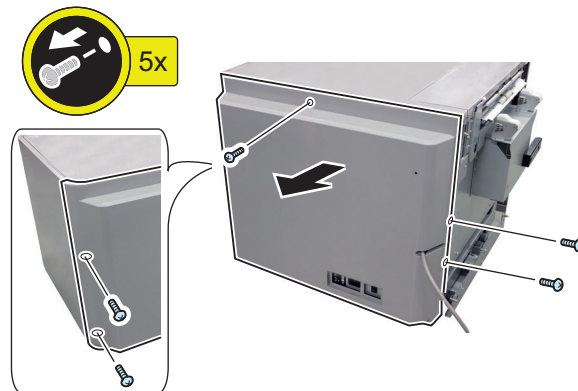


Installation Procedure

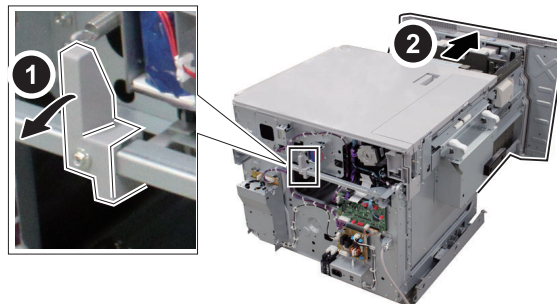


1. Remove the Rear Cover.

- 5 Screws



2. Open the Compartment while unlocking the release lever.



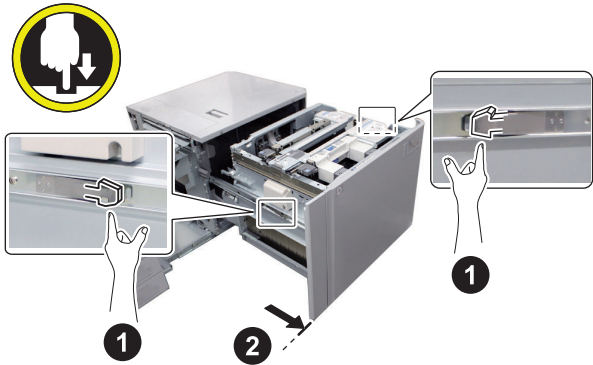
3. Remove the Right Cover.

- 5 Screws



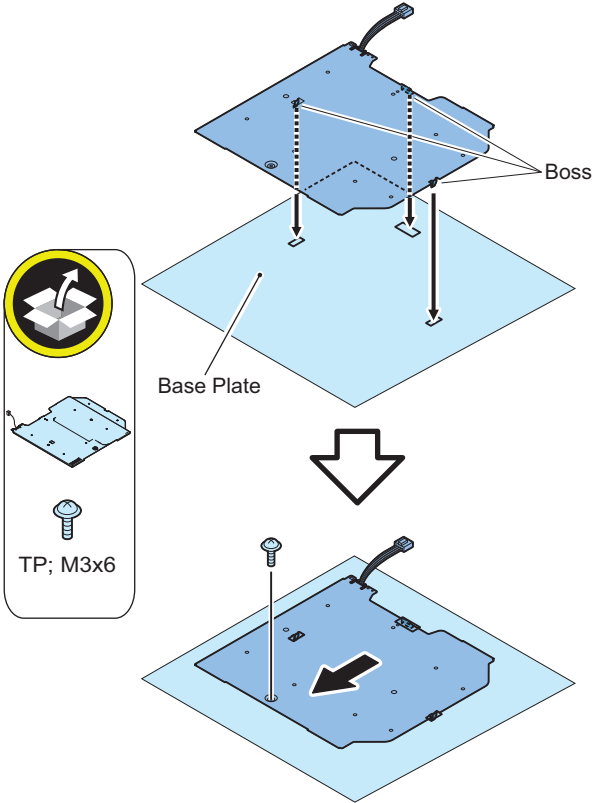


4. Open the Compartment until it stops while releasing stoppers with pressing the left and right Latches.



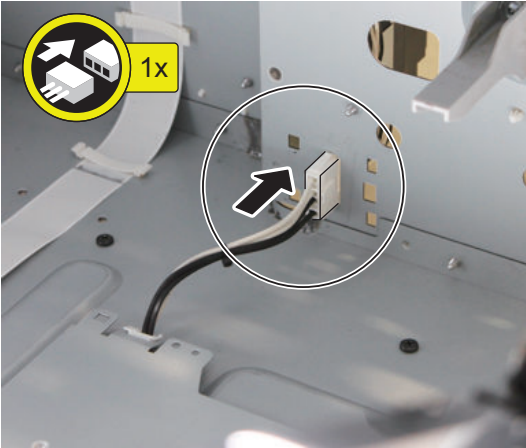
5. Install the Paper Deck Heater Unit.

- 3 Claws
- 1 Screw (TP; M3x6)



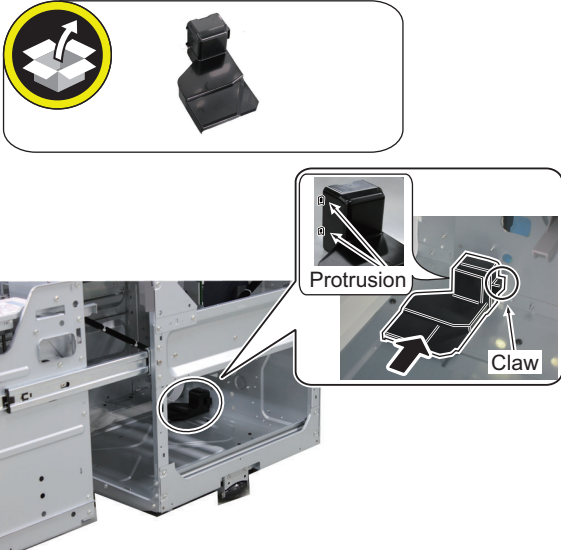


6. Connect the connector to the POD Deck Lite.



7. Install the Heater Connector Cover.

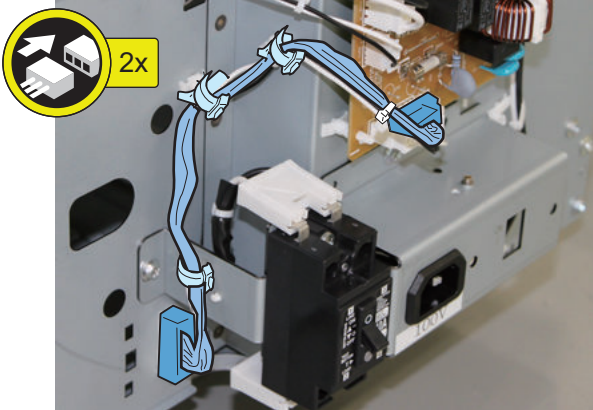
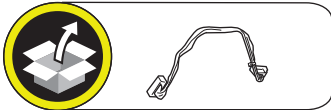
- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Claw



□

8. Install the Paper Deck Heater Harness.

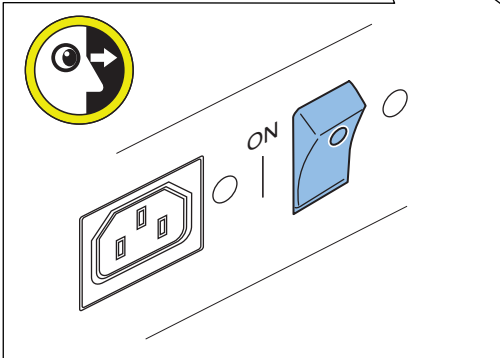
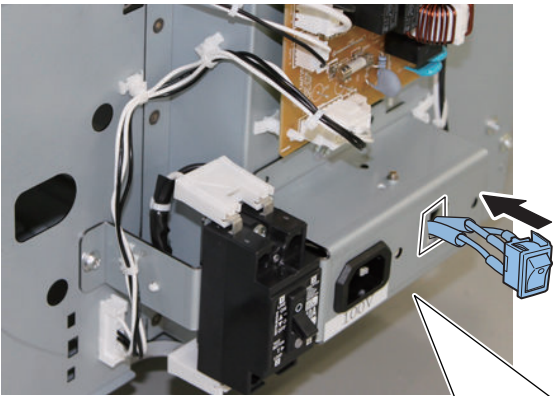
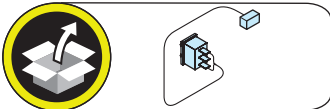
- 3 Reuse bands
- 2 Connectors



□

9. Install the Switch Unit.

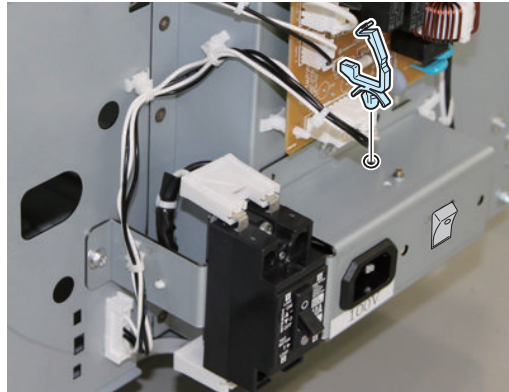
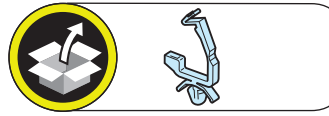
NOTE:
When installing the Switch Unit, check that the Cassette Heater Switch is OFF.





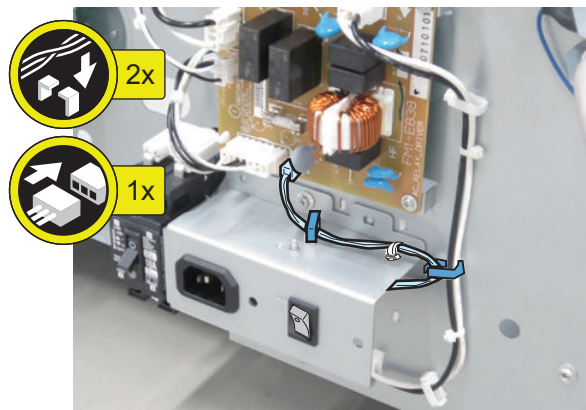
10. Attach the wire saddle.

- 1 Wire saddle



11. Fix the Switch Unit Harness as follows.

- 2 Wire saddles
- 1 Connector



12. Attach the external covers.

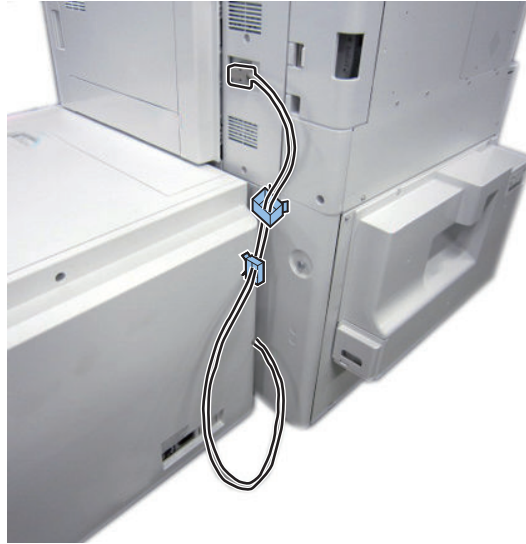


13. Connect the POD Deck Lite with the host machine.



**14. Connect the cable.**

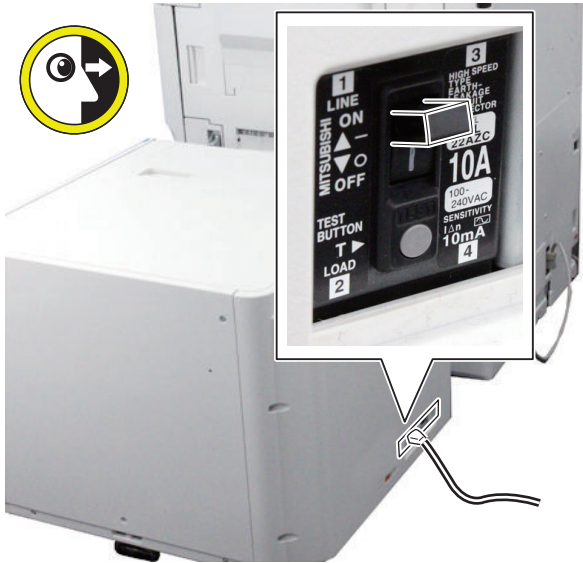
- 2 Wire saddles
- 1 Connector

**15. Connect the power cord to the inlet of the POD Deck Lite and then plug it to the external source.****CAUTION:**

Make sure that the power cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is incomplete, smoke or fire may occur.



16. Check that the circuit breaker is ON.



17. Turn ON the Cassette Heater Switch.



18. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.

Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1

Checking before Installation

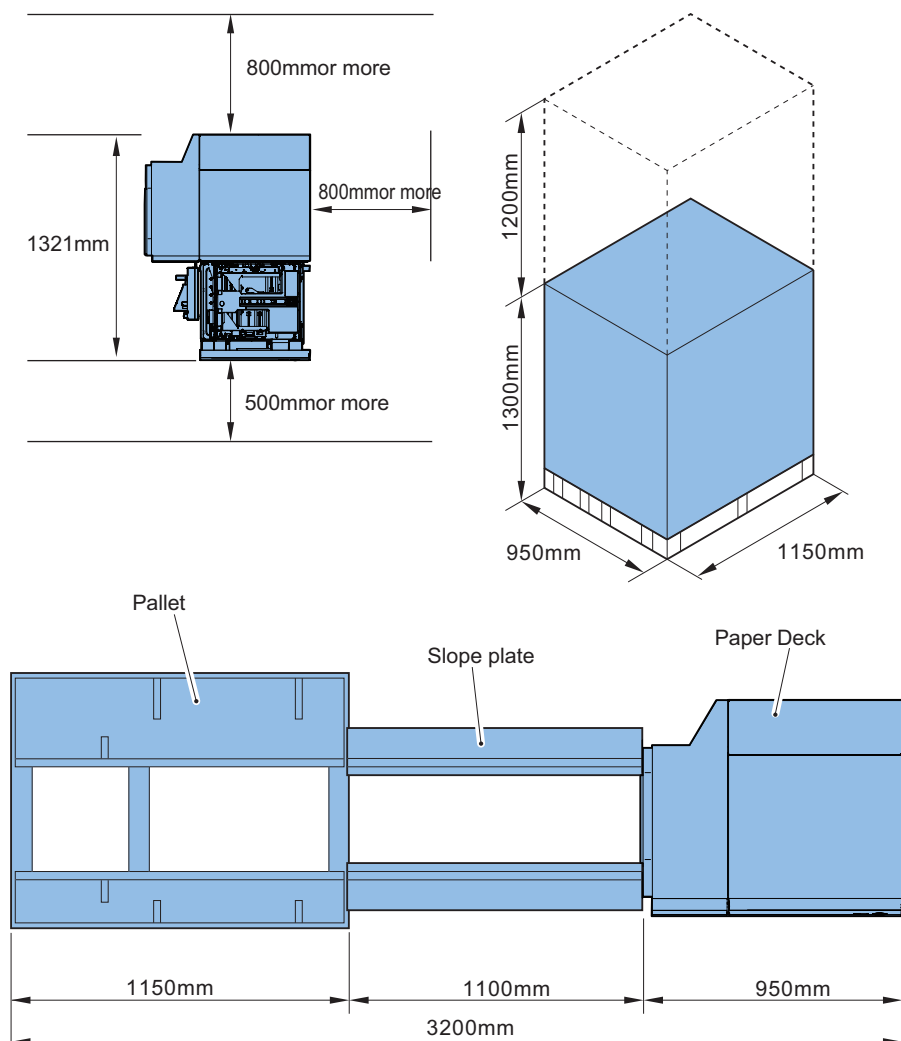
Requirements for the installation place are shown below. It is recommended to look over the installation place before delivering the equipment to the user.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install the Multi-drawer Paper Deck.
- Do not carry the Multi-drawer Paper Deck with the host machine installed for breakage prevention.

Checking the Installation Space

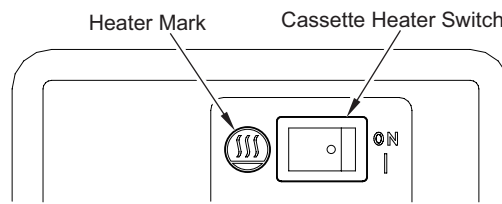
The space required for installation and maintenance work is shown below.



■ Points to Note before Installation

When installing this equipment, be sure to note the following points.

1. Since this Equipment weighs approximately 155 kg, unpacking must be done by 4 or more persons.
2. When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
3. The Heater Mark shown at the left of the Cassette Heater Switch indicates that this Switch is a Cassette Heater Switch.



■ Checking the Power Supply

1. Check that the Multi-drawer Paper Deck-B1 is connectable to the outlet which supplies the rated voltage within +10/-15% at the specified ampere or higher.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281030

● Unpacking

■ Unpacking Procedure

CAUTION:

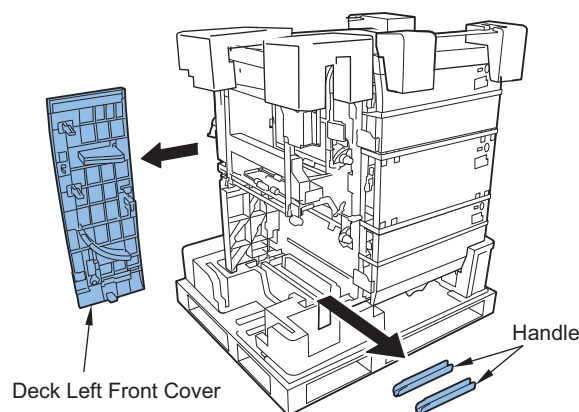
Do not lift this Equipment with a forklift.

NOTE:

The device is fixed for shipment with fixing tapes and impact absorbing materials to protect from vibration and the shock in the transportation. According to steps, install after removing all fixing tapes and impact absorbing materials. In addition, the removed impact absorbing materials shall be stored to reuse for transportation in case of transference and the repair of this Equipment.

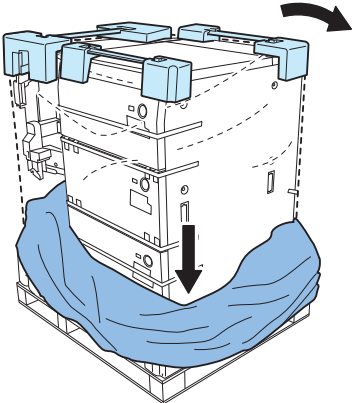


1. Take out the Deck Left Front Cover and 2 Handles.





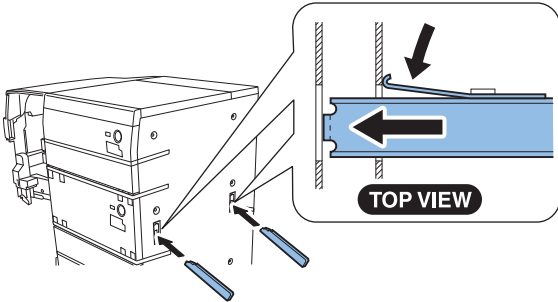
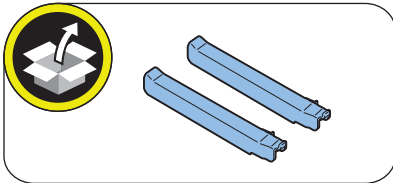
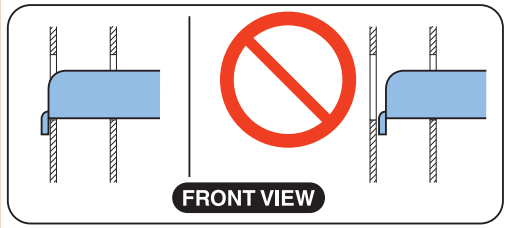
2. Remove the top cushion material and remove the Plastic Cover from the top.



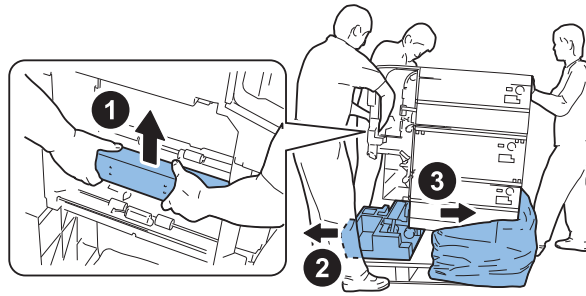
3. While holding the leaf spring of the Handle, insert it in this equipment.

CAUTION:

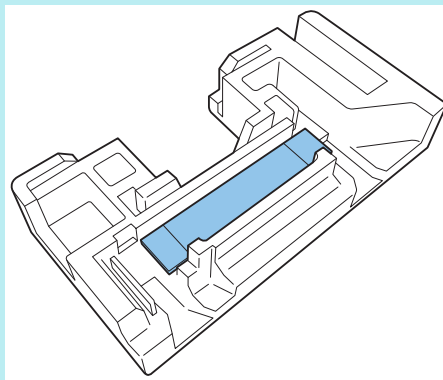
Assure that the bent part of the Handle is hooked on the machine frame as shown in the figure.



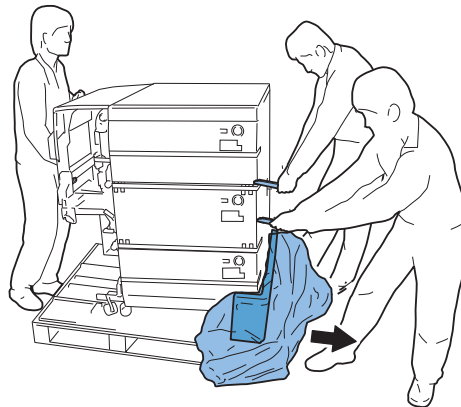
-
4. Lift the left side of this Equipment and remove the cushioning material from the bottom. Pull the plastic bag to the right side in advance.

**NOTE:**

A reinforcing plate is attached to the cushioning material. Since the reinforcing plate is no longer needed, remove it together with the cushioning material.

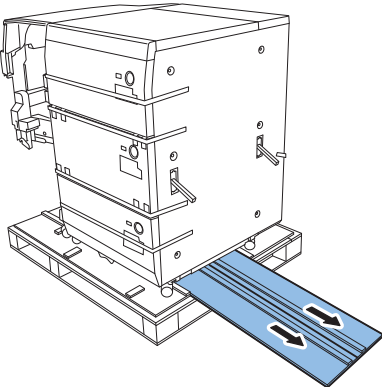


-
5. While holding the Handles (at the front and rear), lift the right side of this Equipment, and then remove the cushioning material and plastic bag from the bottom.

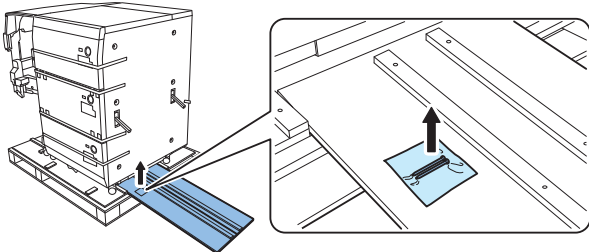




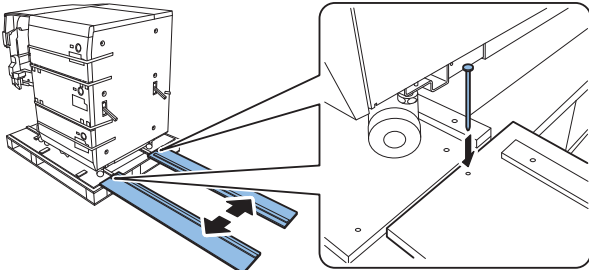
6. Pull out the 2 slope plates from the palette.



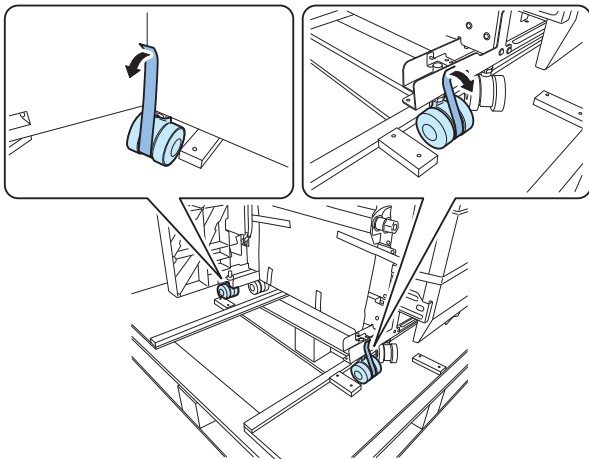
7. Remove the 2 pins secured to the slope plate with tape.



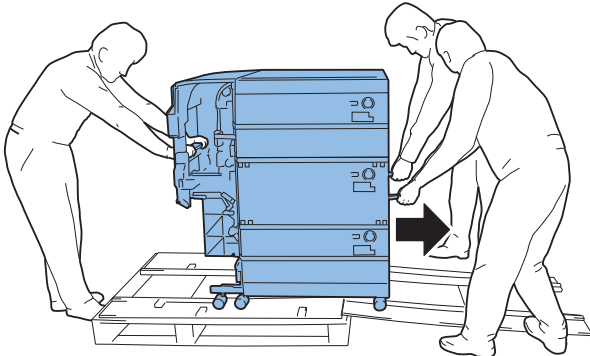
8. With the hole in the palette aligned with the hole in the slope plate, insert a pin. Carry out this step for the other slope plate.



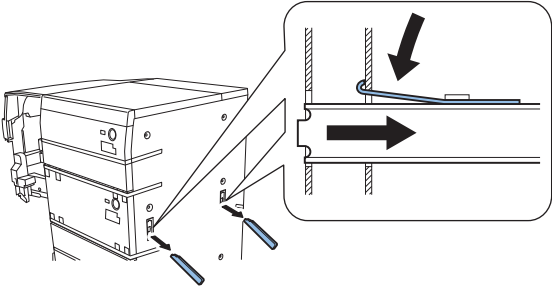
9. Remove tapes from the left-side casters (front, rear) of this Equipment.



-
- 10. While holding the right-side Handles (at the front and rear), slide this Equipment on the slope plates to let it down from the palette.

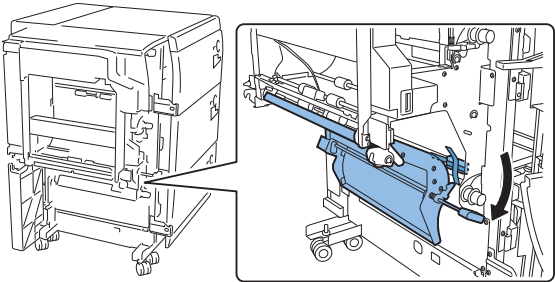


-
- 11. While pressing the Leaf Spring, remove the Handles (the removed handles is used at late procedure).

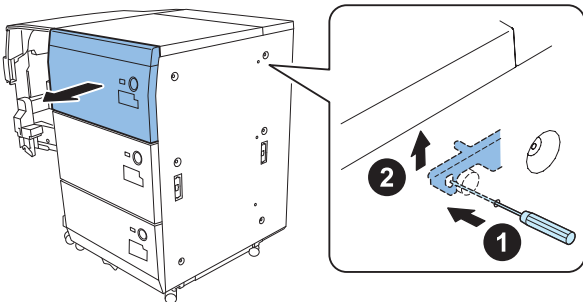


-
- 12. Remove all the external packaging tapes and cushioning materials.

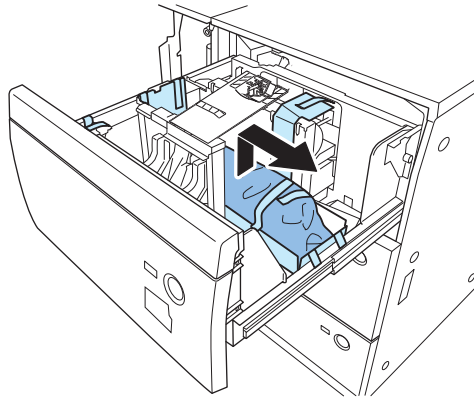
-
- 13. Open the horizontal Path Guide and remove the cushioning material and tape.



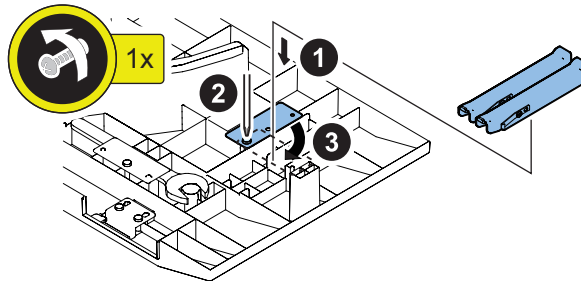
-
- 14. Insert a relatively Small Screwdriver in the hole in the right side of the Upper Deck to release and open the Upper Deck.



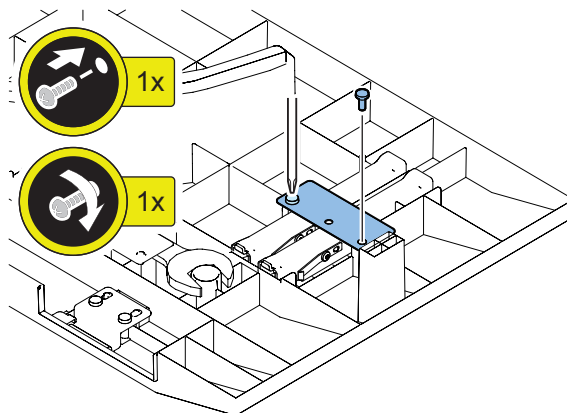
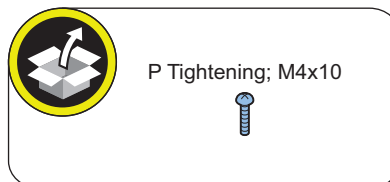
-
15. Remove all fixing tapes and cushioning materials in the Upper Deck, and take out the contents. Open the Middle Deck and the Lower Deck, and remove all fixing tapes and cushioning materials.



-
16. Store the 2 Handles in place on the Deck Left Front Cover. Loosen the Screw securing the Handle Fixing Plate, and then turn down the Handle Fixing Plate to hold the Handles.



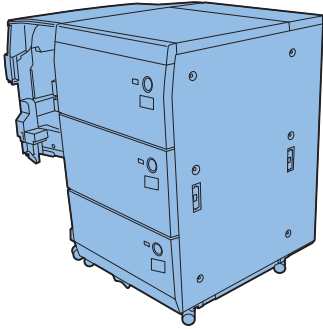
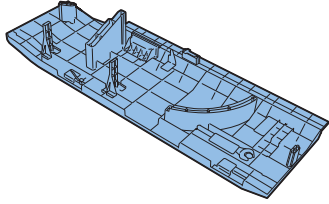
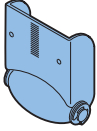
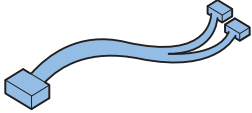
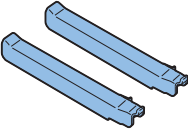
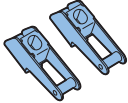
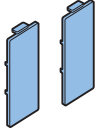

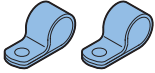






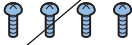
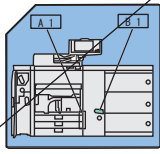

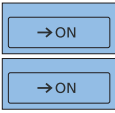

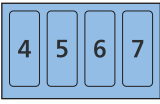
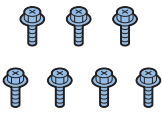
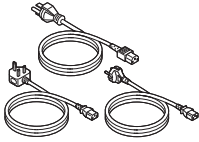
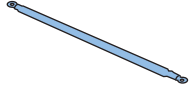
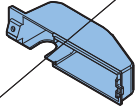

-
17. Fix the Handle Fixing Plate. And securely tighten Screw loosened in step 16).
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M4x10)



Checking the Contents

■ **Contents**

Content parts described below are stored in the Upper Deck.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Multi-drawer Paper Deck x1 		<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Deck Left Front Cover x1 	
		<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Roller Support Plate x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Interface Cable x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Handle x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Latch Plate x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Handle Cover x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Hinge Pin x2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Code Retainer x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Fixing Plate x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Wire Saddle x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Short Connector x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Paper Size Label x3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (P Tightening; M4x10) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Size Indication Plate x3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Screw (Binding; M4x7) x4 
<input type="checkbox"/> [17] JAM Label x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [18] Screw (Sems(Black); M4x8) x3  <p>Use 2 of them</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> [19] Power Switch ON Label x2  <p>Use 1 of them</p>	<input type="checkbox"/> [20] Screw (Sems(White); M4x8)x2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [21] Cassette No. Label x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [22] Screw (RS tightening; M4x8) x7 	<input type="checkbox"/> * [23] Power Cord x3 (Included in 230V model) 	<input type="checkbox"/> [24] Shunt Cable x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [25] Connector Cover x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [26] Paper Size Set Label x3 (Included in 230V model) 		

- The parts [16][17][25] are not used.
- *Use the appropriate power cord by location. Make sure not to leave it at the site.

<Other>

- Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

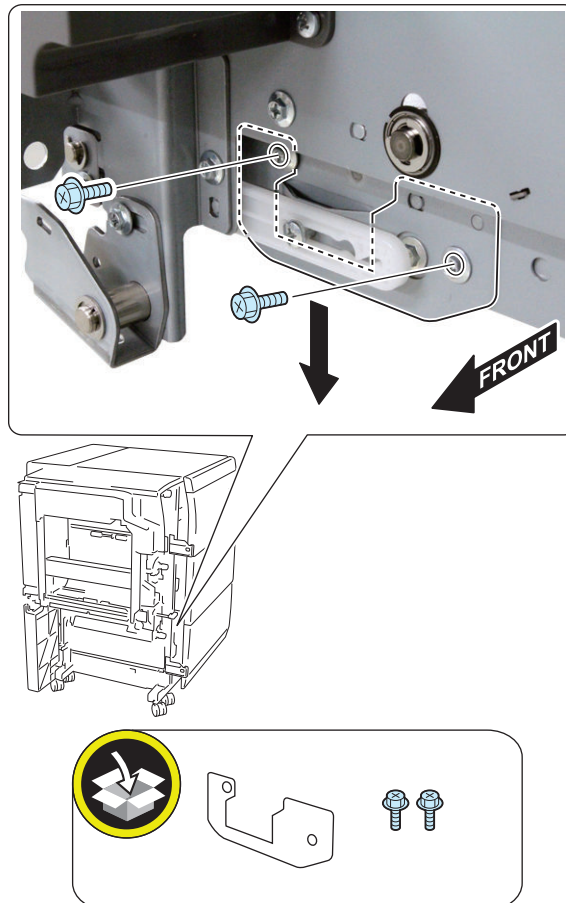
NOTE:

Keep the removed fixing materials as they are used to transport for relocation.

■ Preparation of Multi-drawer Paper Deck

**1. Remove the Bracket.**

- 2 Screws



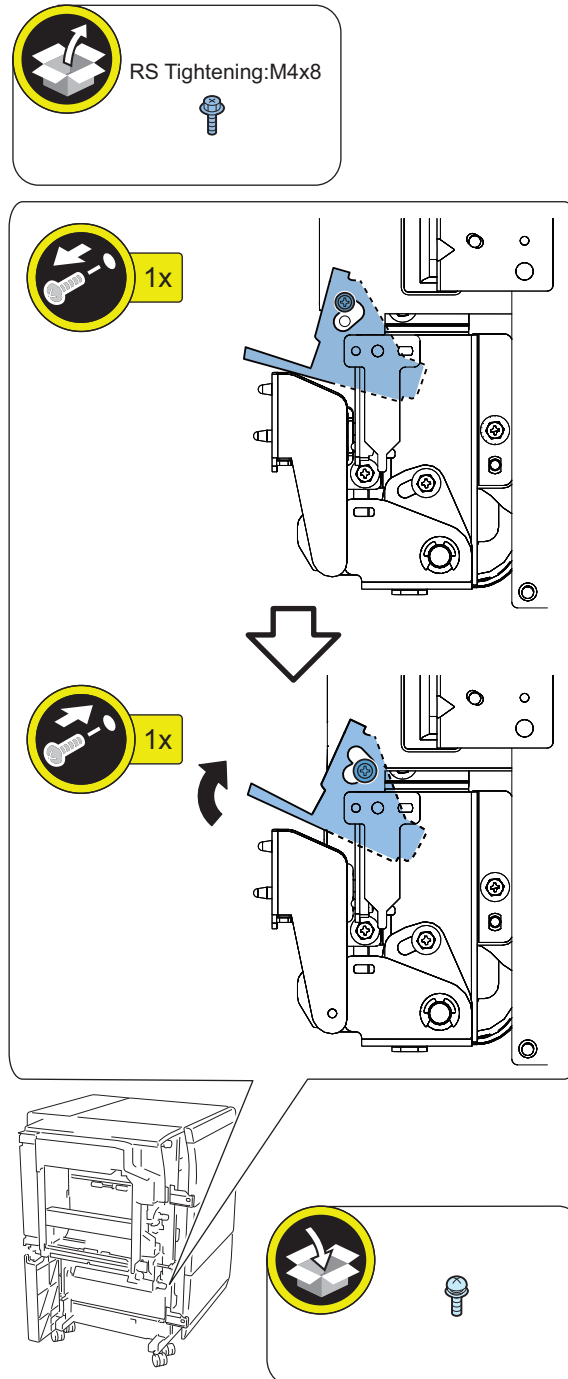


2. Remove the screw from the Bridge Delivery Guide to change the installation angle as follows with the bundled screws.

- 1 Screw (RS tightening; M4x8)

CAUTION:

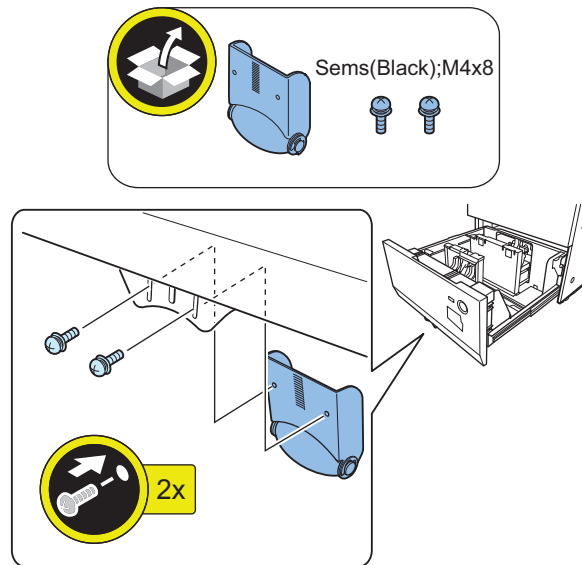
When do not change angle of the Bridge Delivery Guide, it may be damaged by the host machine.





3. Open the Lower Deck until it stops and then temporary tighten the Roller Support.

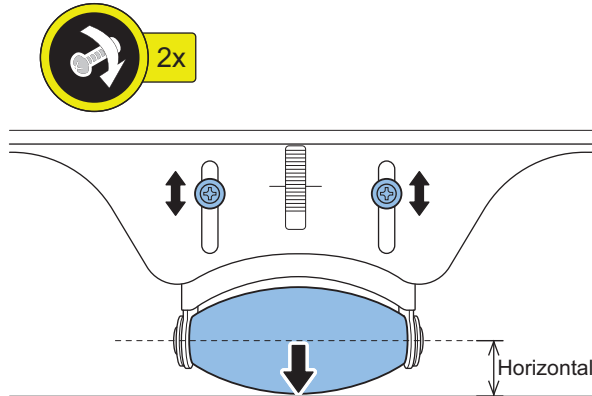
- 2 Screws Sems(Black); M4x8)



4. Touch the Roller Support to the floor horizontally and then tighten the 2 Screws. Close the Lower Deck.

NOTE:

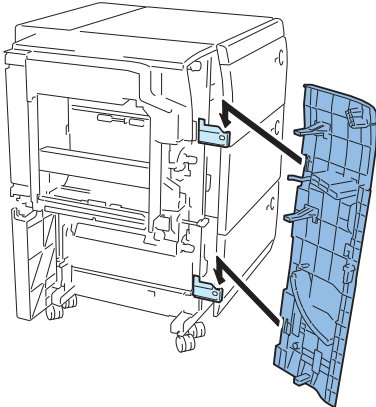
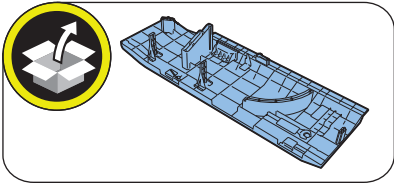
When the Height is adjusted, the Roller Support must be horizontally aligned with the floor.



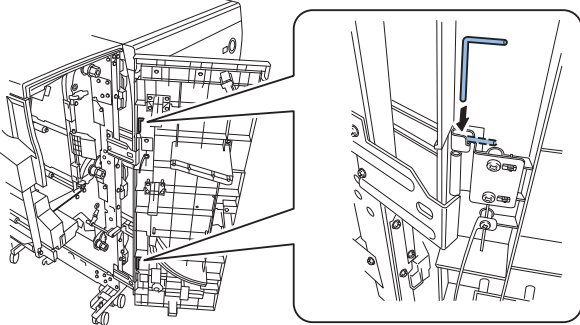
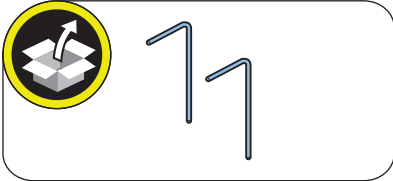
5. Close the Lower Deck.



6. Hang the Deck Front Left Cover to 2 Hinges.



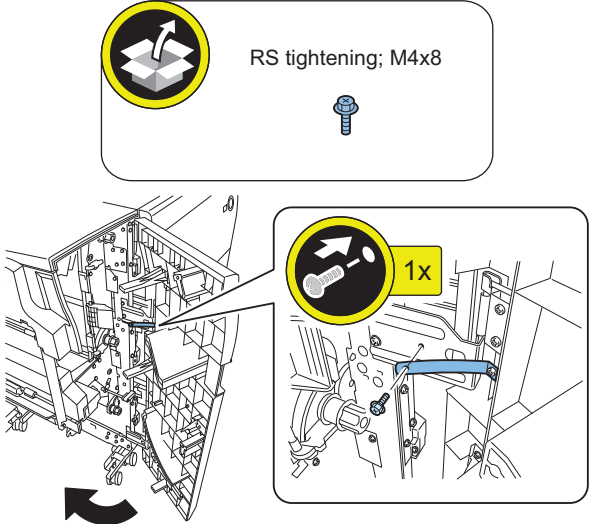
7. Fix the Deck Left Front Cover with 2 Hinge Pins.





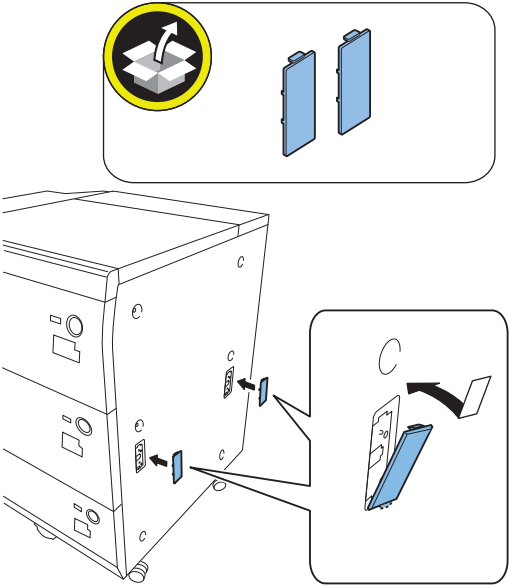
8. Secure the Deck Front Left Cover Band and close the Deck Front Left Cover.

- 1 Screw (RS tightening; M4x8)



9. Install the 2 Handle Covers on the handle mounting holes in the Deck Right Cover.

- 2 Protrusions
- 2 Claws

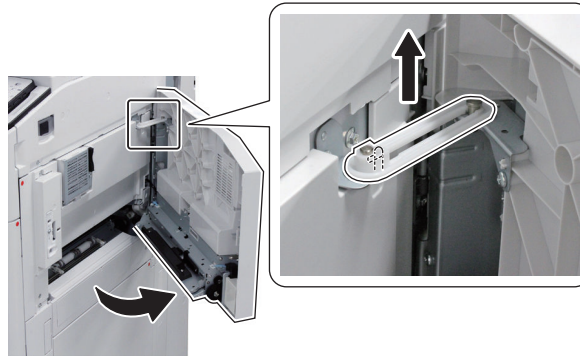


■ Preparation of Host Machine



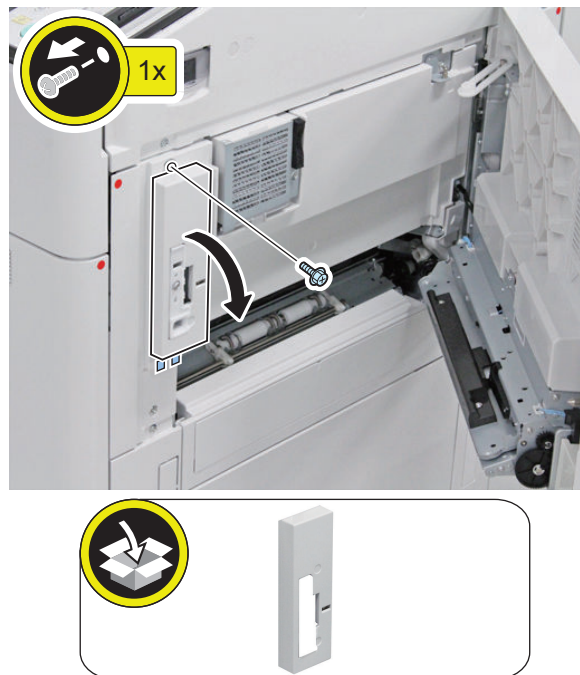
1. Open the Multi-purpose Tray Cover, and release the Slider of the cover.

- 1 Claw



2. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Inner Cover (the removed screw is used at late procedure).

- 1 Screw
- 2 Claws





3. Remove the Multi-door Switch (the removed screw is used at late procedure).

- 2 Screws
- 2 Connectors
- 2 Bosses





4. Remove the Multi-purpose Tray Cover (the removed screw is used at late procedure).

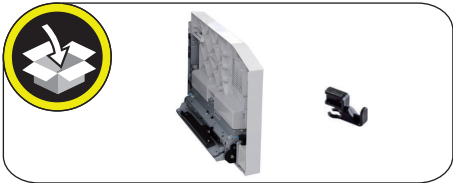
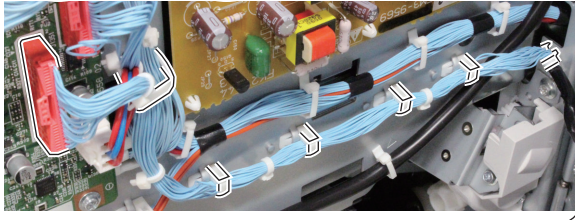
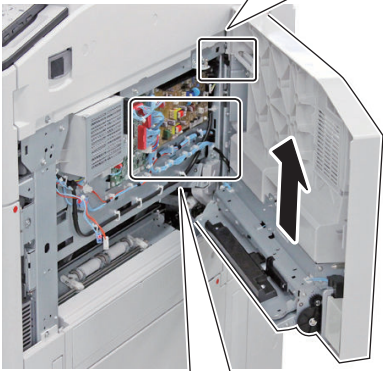
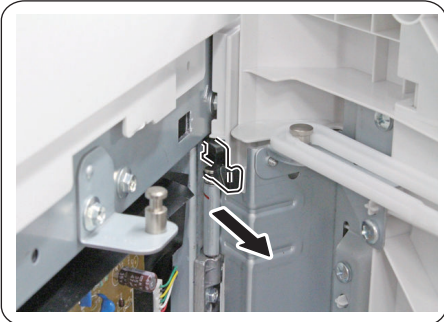
- 1 Screw
- 2 Protrusions





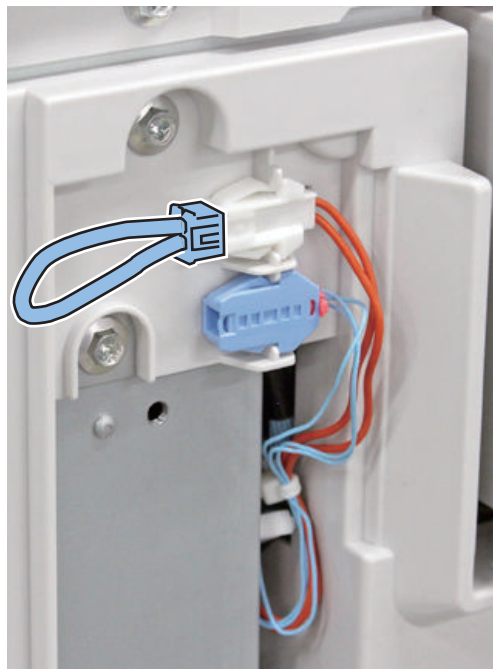
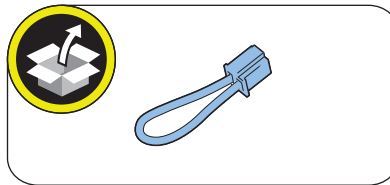
5. Remove the Multi-door Unit .

- 5 Wire Saddles
- 1 Reuse band
- 1 Connector
- 1 Clip



**6. Attach the Multi-purpose Tray Cover with screws removed at procedure 2,4.**

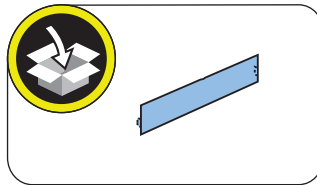
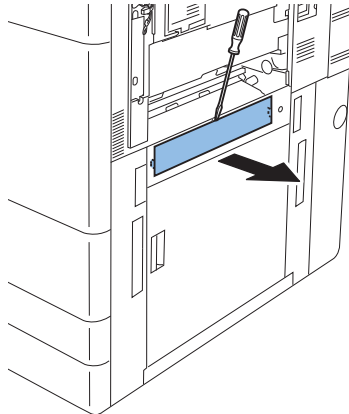
- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)
- 2 Protrusions

**7. Attach the Connectors as shown in the figure and then connect the short connector.**

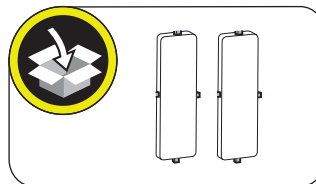
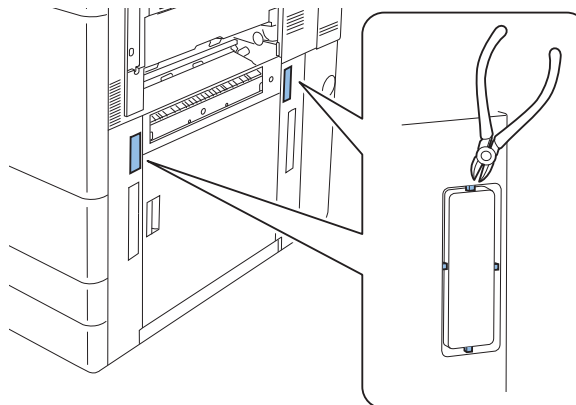


8. Lift the cover up by inserting a flat-blade screwdriver, and remove the Face Cover (the removed face cover is not used).

- 2 Protrusions



9. Cut the Blindfold Cover in the Lower Right Covers.



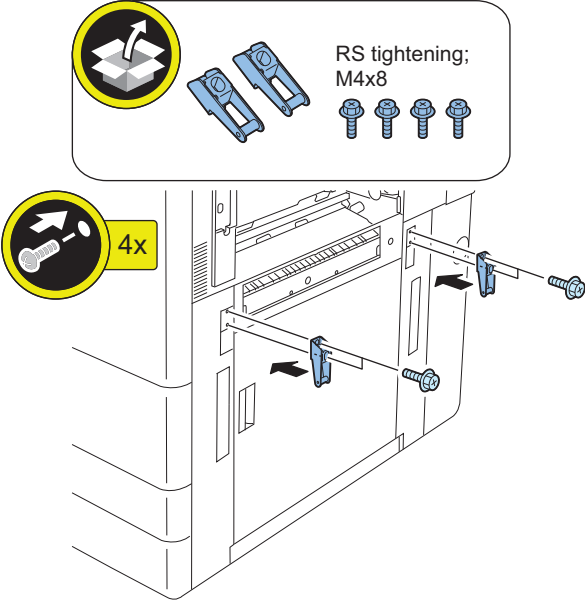
CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the face cover properly so that no burr is formed.



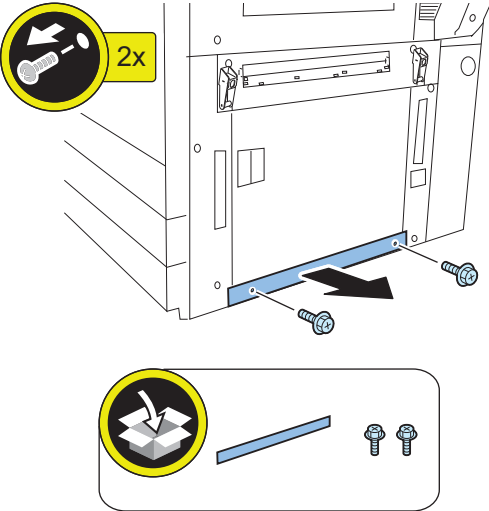
10. Install the 2 Latch Plate.

- 4 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)



11. Remove the Lower Right Cover.

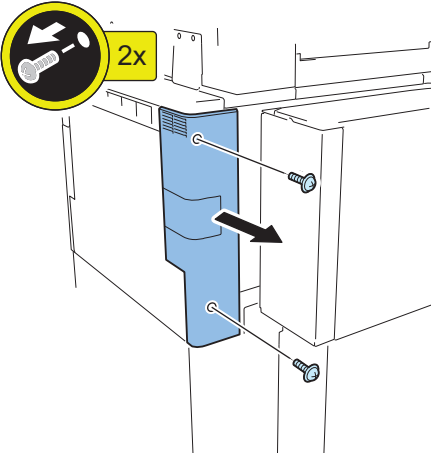
- 2 Screws



□

12. Remove the Controller Box Left Cover.

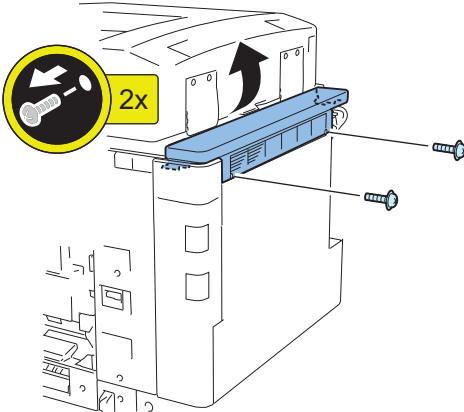
- 2 Screws



□

13. Remove the Controller Box Upper Cover.

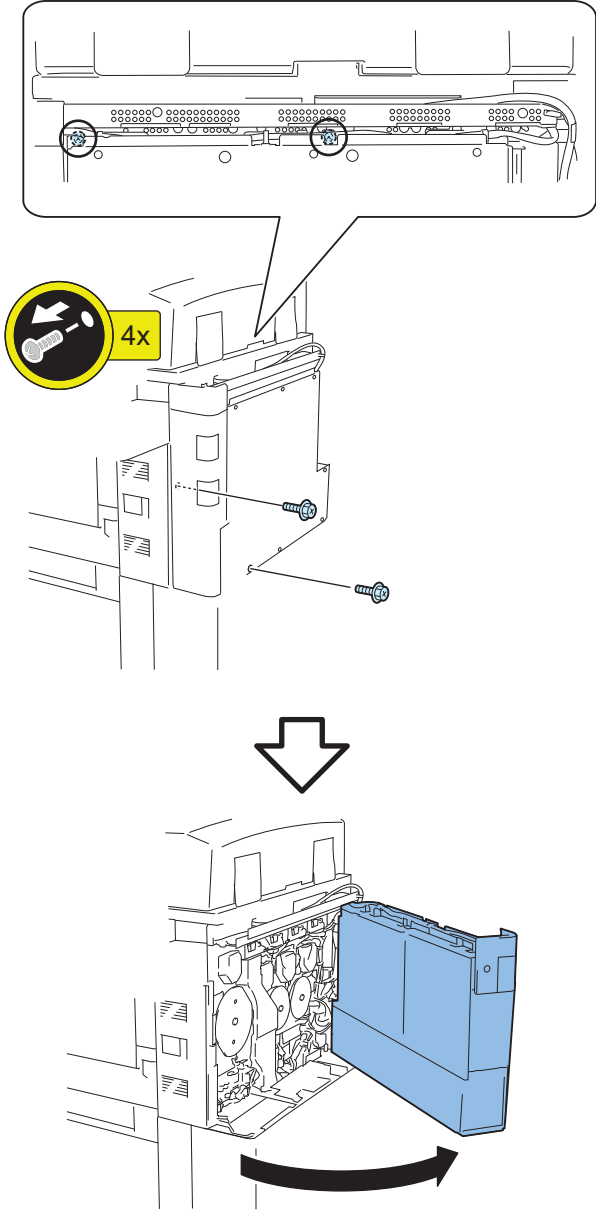
- 2 Screws





14. Open the Controller Box Unit.

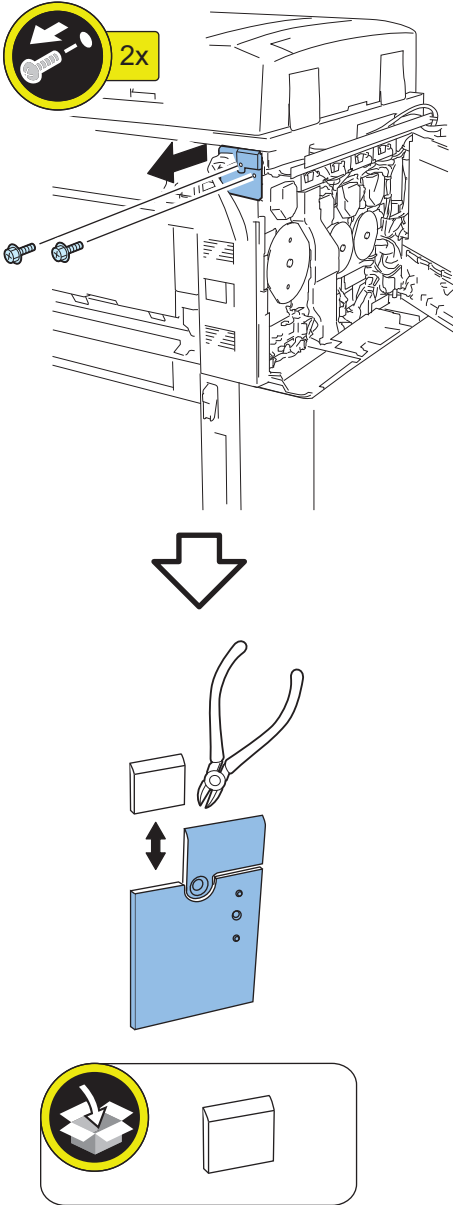
- 4 Screws





15. Remove the Right Rear Cover, and cut with side cutters.

- 2 Screws
- 1 Claw

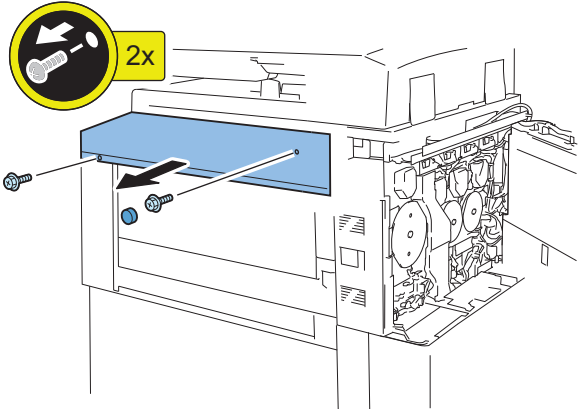


CAUTION:
Be sure to remove the face cover properly so that no burr is formed.

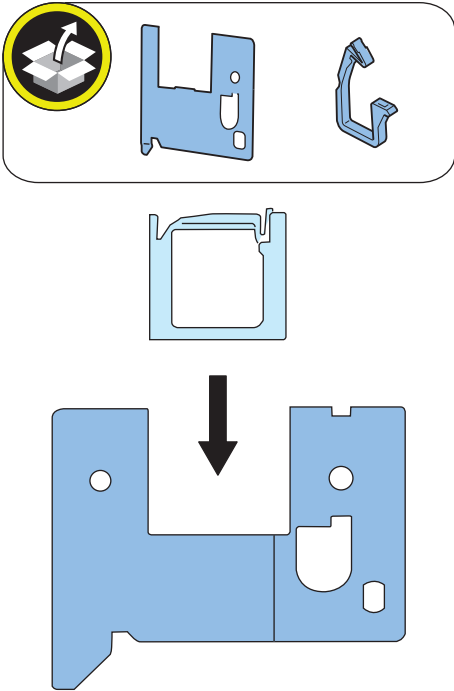


16. Remove the Upper Right Cover.

- 1 Rubber Cap
- 2 Screws

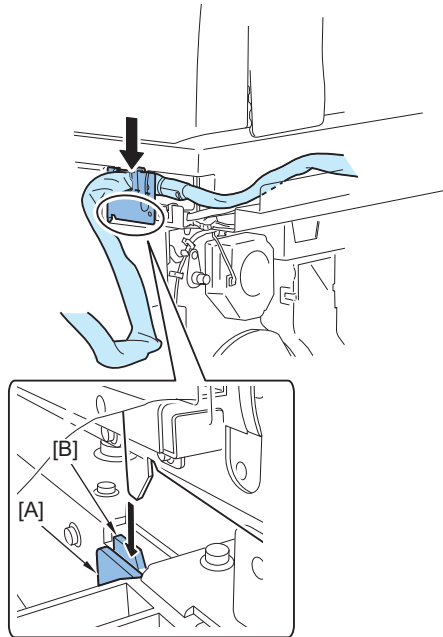


17. Attach the Wire Saddle to the Fixing Plate.

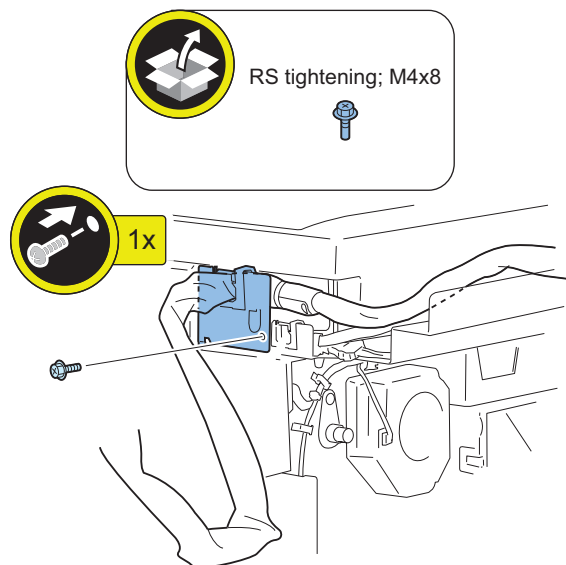




18. Put the Interface Cable through the wire saddle on the fixing plate. Insert the protrusion on the plate of the Interface Cable between [A] and [B].



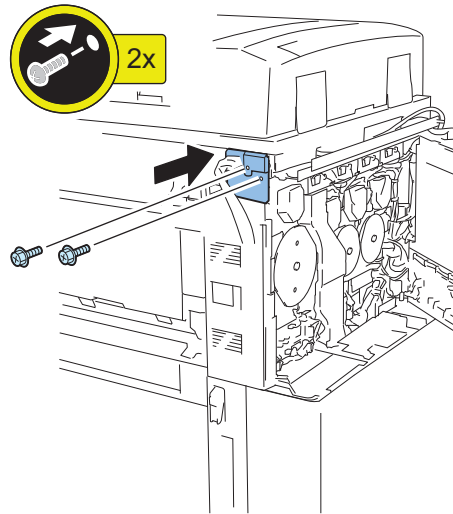
19. Attach the fixing plate to the Host Machine with bundled screw.
- 1 Screw (RS tightening; M4x8)





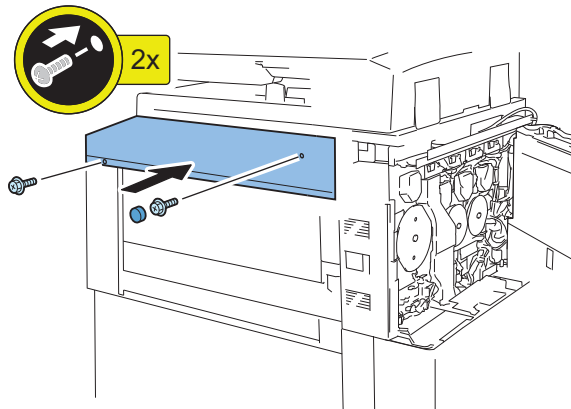
20. Attach the Right Rear Cover with screws removed at procedure 15.

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)
- 1 Claw



21. Attach the Upper Right Cover.

- 2 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)
- 1 Rubber Cap



■ Installing the Interface Cable

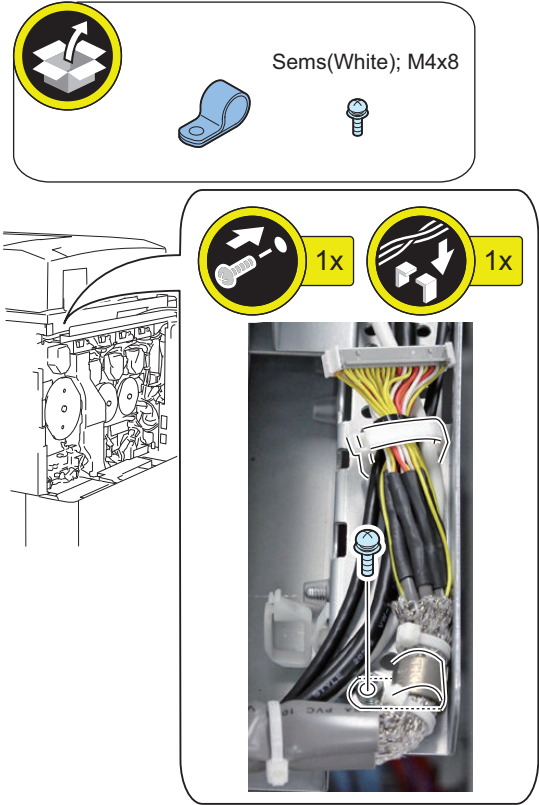


1. Install the Cord Retainer to the Interface Cable to be secured.

- 1 Screw (Sems(White); M4x8)
- 1 Wire Saddle

NOTE:

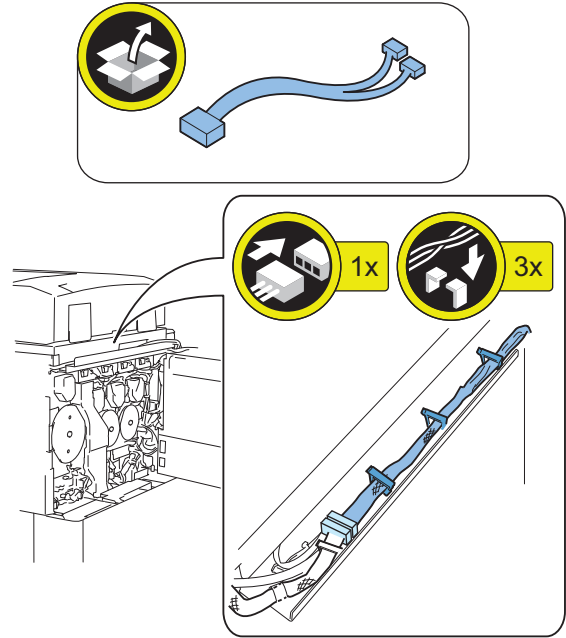
Attach the tie-wrap between the cable ties.



□

2. Fix the bundled Interface Cable with wire saddles.

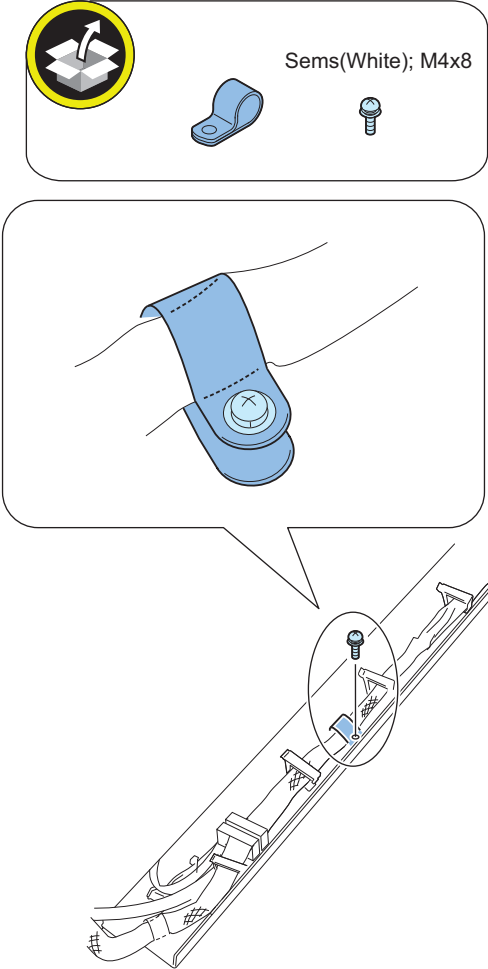
- 1 Connector
- 3 Wire Saddles



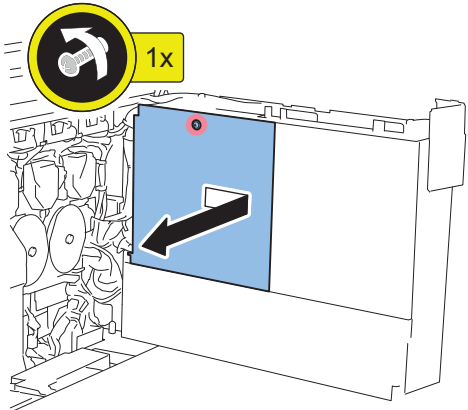


3. Install the Cord Retainer to the bundled Interface Cable to be secured.

- 1 Screw (Sems(White); M4x8)



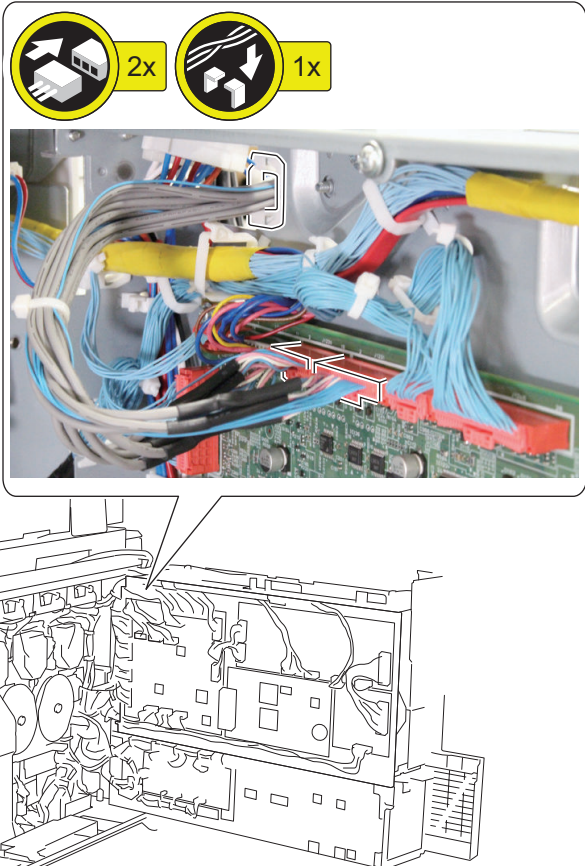
4. Loosen the 1 screw on the Controller Box and shift them in the direction of the arrow, and then remove the DC Controller Cover.



□

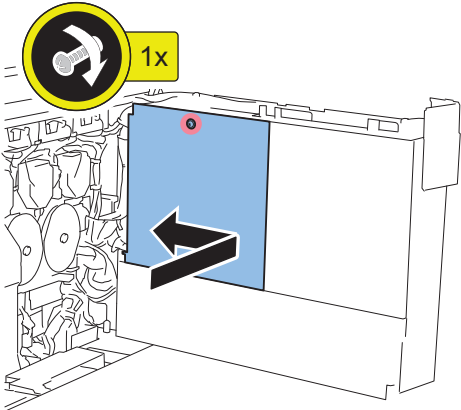
5. Connect the Interface Cable to the connector on the DC Controller PCB.

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Edge Saddle



□

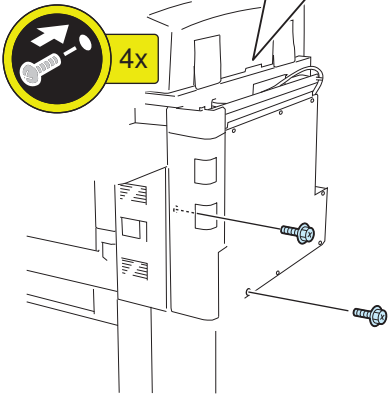
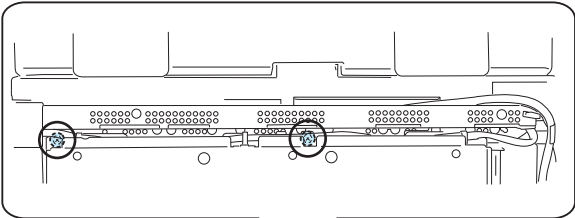
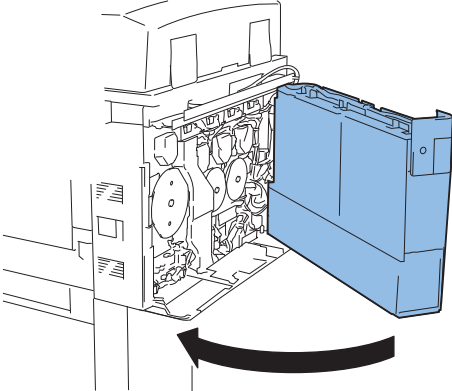
6. Install the removed DC Controller Cover.





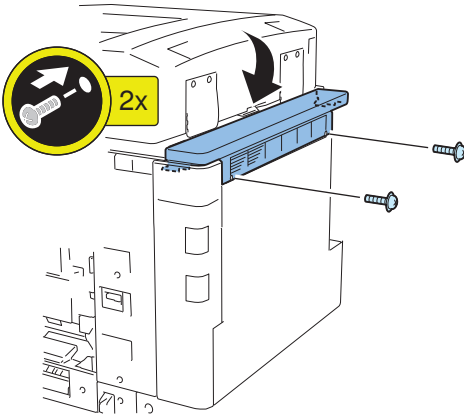
7. Install the removed Controller Box.

- 4 Screws (RS tightening; M4x8)



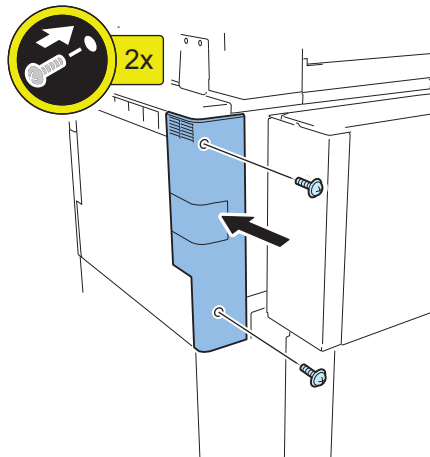
8. Install the removed Box Upper Cover.

- 2 Screws (TP; M4x8)



**9. Install the Main Controller Left Cover Unit.**

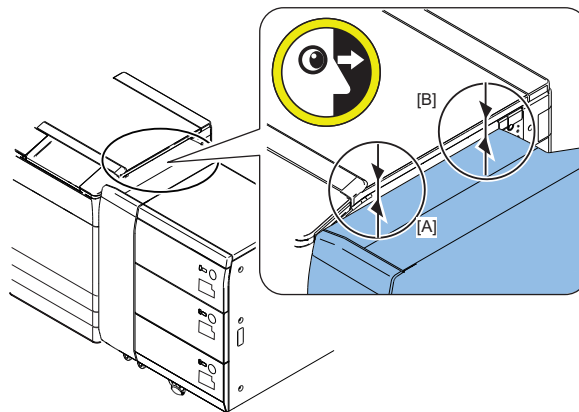
- 2 Screws (TP; M4x8)

**■ Checking the Heights and Tilt****NOTE:**

This Equipment height requires adjustment depending on the floor of the installation place. Improper height adjustment can cause paper jams frequently. Check and adjust the heights using the following procedure.



1. Check the differences, front [A] and rear [B], in height between this Equipment and the Host Machine are within 1.5mm. And check the difference between front [A] and rear [B] is within 1.5mm.

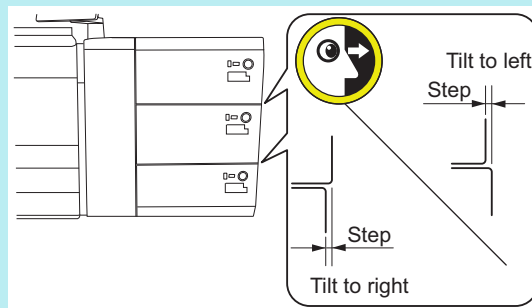




2. Check that the difference of the heights of this equipment at the front [A] and rear [B] is 1.5mm or less.

NOTE:

If the height of this equipment or host machine is not within specification, adjust it using the following procedure.



■ Remove the Spanner

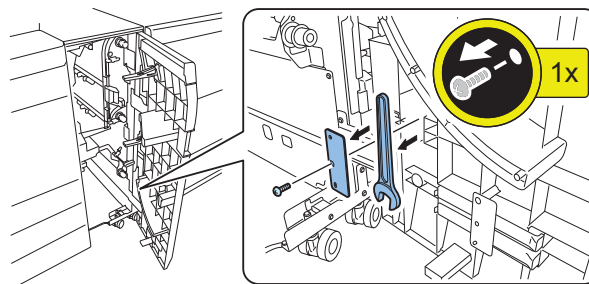
NOTE:

If it is necessary to use the Spanner for "Adjusting the Heights and Tilt" and "Securing this Equipment Stopper", remove the Spanner according to the following procedures.



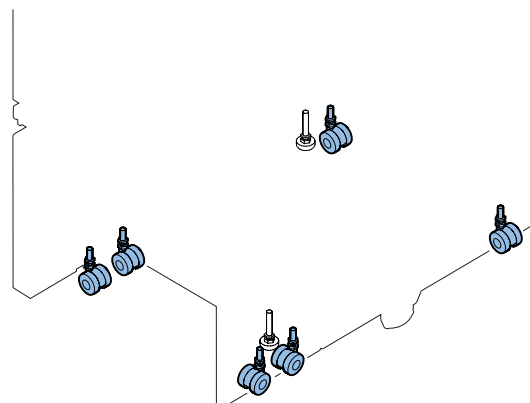
1. Remove the Face plate inside the Deck Left Front Cover, and remove the Spanner.

- 1 Screw



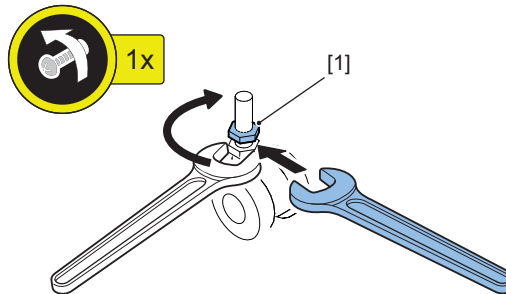
■ Adjusting the Heights and Tilt

Loosen the upper nuts on the caster with a wrench to adjust the heights and tilt.

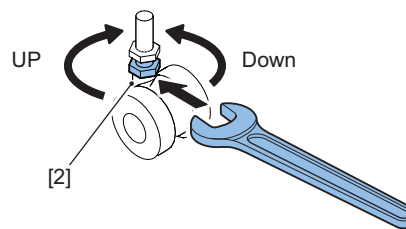
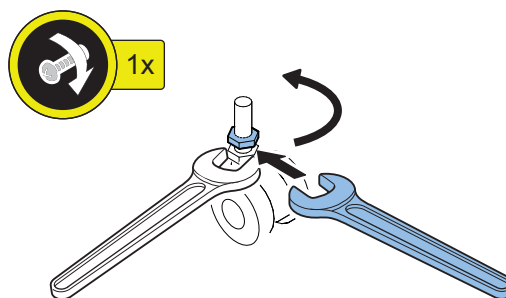


**1. Using a wrench, loosen the upper nut on the caster.****NOTE:**

- Turn the upper nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- If it is difficult to loosen the upper nut [1], loosen the upper nut while fixing the lower nut by using the wrench of the other options.

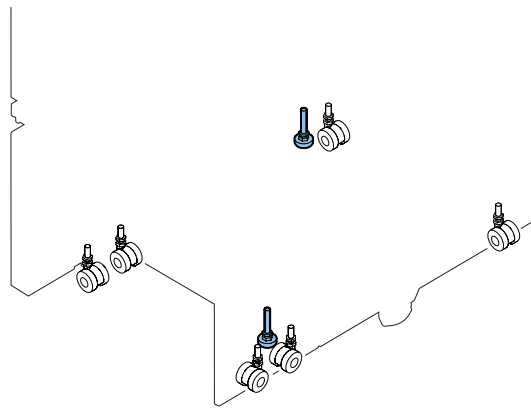
**2. Using a Wrench, turn the lower nut on the caster to adjust the height.****NOTE:**

Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.

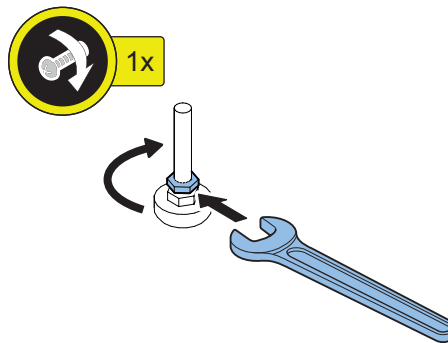
**3. Tighten the upper nut.**

■ Securing this Equipment Stopper

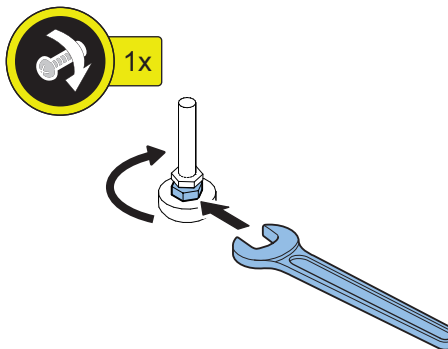
Turn the nuts on the 2 stoppers to secure this Equipment.



1. Using a wrench, loosen the upper nut on the stopper.

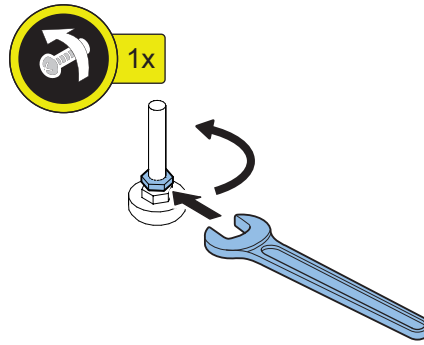


2. Using a wrench, turn the lower nut on the stopper to lower the stopper to the floor surface.





3. Tighten the upper nut.

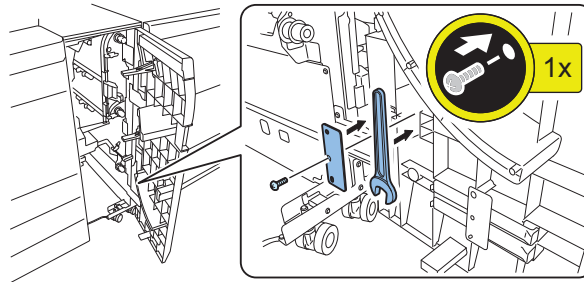


■ Store the Spanner



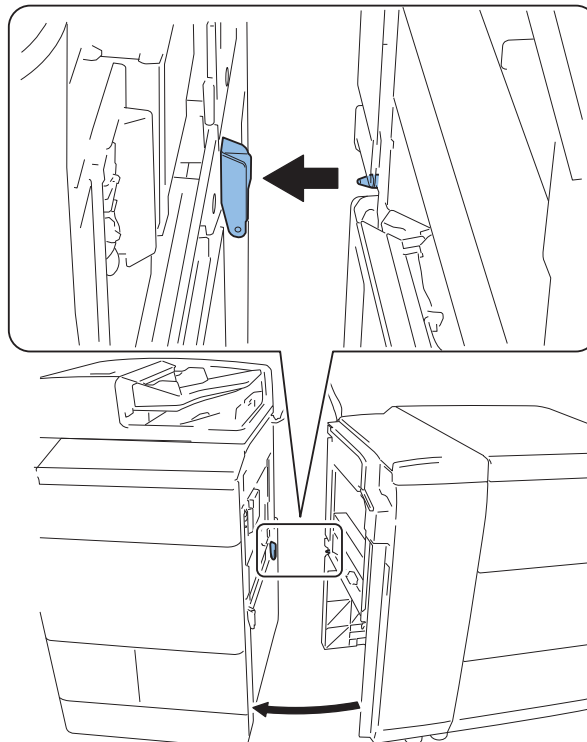
1. Store the spanner at the original position and install the Face plate.

- 1 Screw (Tapping; M4x10)



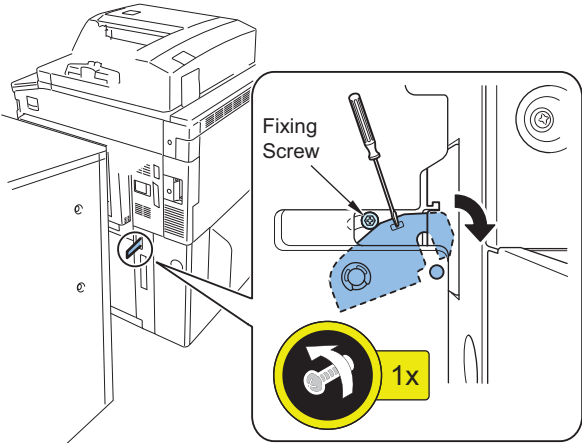
■ Connection with the Host Machine

Fit the Host Machine Connecting Bracket (installed to the Host Machine) with the pin of this Equipment, and connect the Host Machine with this Equipment.





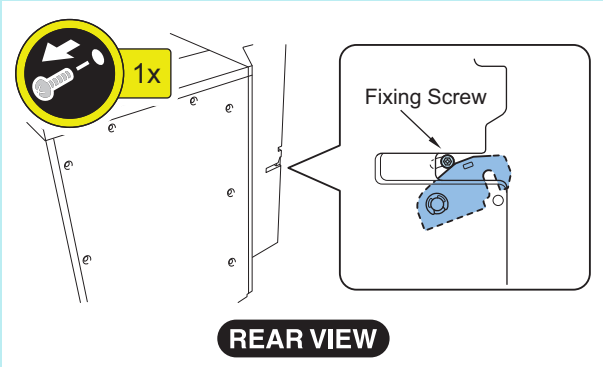
1. Loosen the fixing Screw of Rear Latch Plate once, insert the Flat-Blade Screwdriver to push it and hook the Latch Plate to the Latch Receiver.



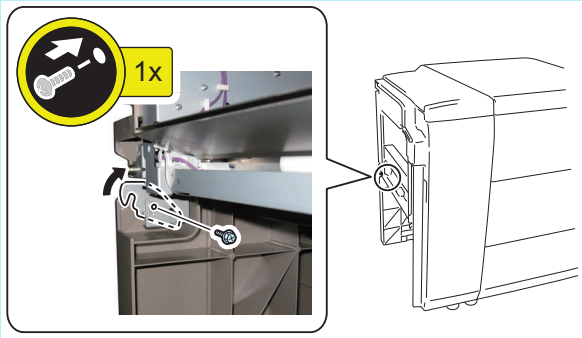
NOTE:

When the work space at the back of the Host Machine and this Equipment is small, the Latch Receiver at the rear Side can be connected from the front Side. In such case, be sure to perform the following work before connecting the Host Machine to this Equipment.

- Remove the fixing Screw of the Latch Plate at the rear side.

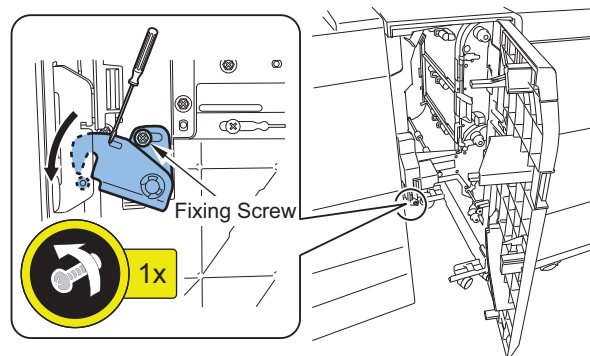


- Install the Screw while lifting the Latch Plate from the front Side.





2. Open the Deck Left Front Cover, loosen the fixing Screw securing the Front Latch Plate, and then hook the Latch Plate on the Latch Receiver.

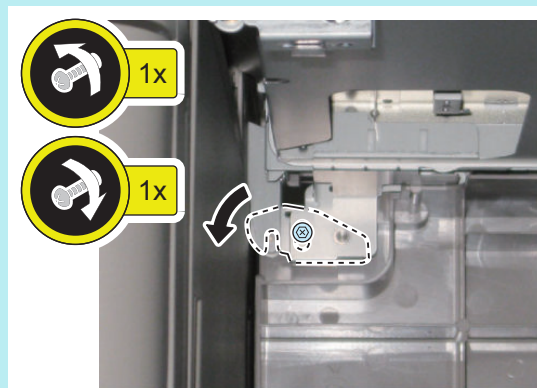


3. Tighten the fixing Screw of Front and Rear Latch Plate securely.

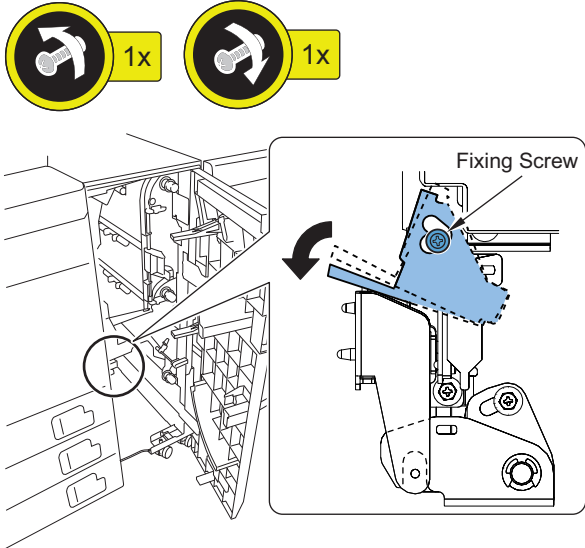
NOTE:

When the Screw of the Rear Latch Plate is installed from the Front Side due to the work space at the back of the Host Machine and this Equipment being small, be sure to perform the following work.

- Loosen the fixing Screw of the Latch Plate once, and hook the Latch Plate on the Latch Receiver. Fully tighten the fixing Screw loosened before.
- If the work is difficult, remove the Deck Left Front Cover temporarily.

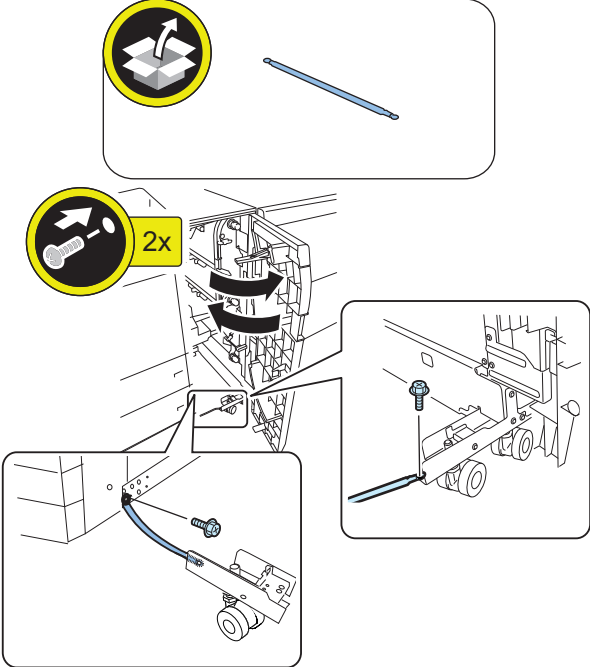


-
- 4. Loosen the Fixing Screw securing the Delivery Guide, lower the Delivery Guide, and then tighten the Fixing Screw.



NOTE:
When separating the this equipment, raise the Delivery Guide and tighten the Screw and then separate the this equipment.

-
- 5. Open the Deck Left Front Cover of this Equipment and fix the Shunt Cable at the front bottom of the Host Machine and this Equipment. Close the Deck Left Front Cover.
 - 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)



■ Connecting the Power Cord



1. Connect the Power Plugs of this Equipment to the wall outlets.

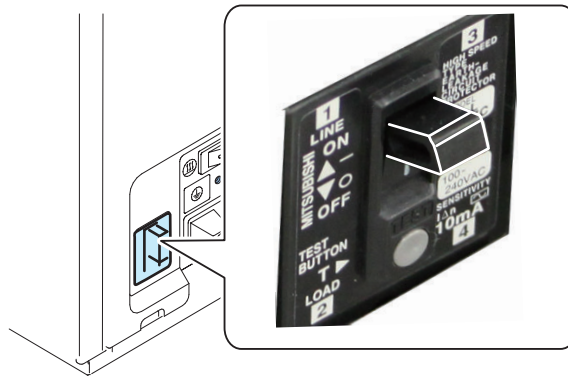
⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the Power Cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is not right, an accident causing the smoke or fire may occur.

■ Switching between Paper Sizes



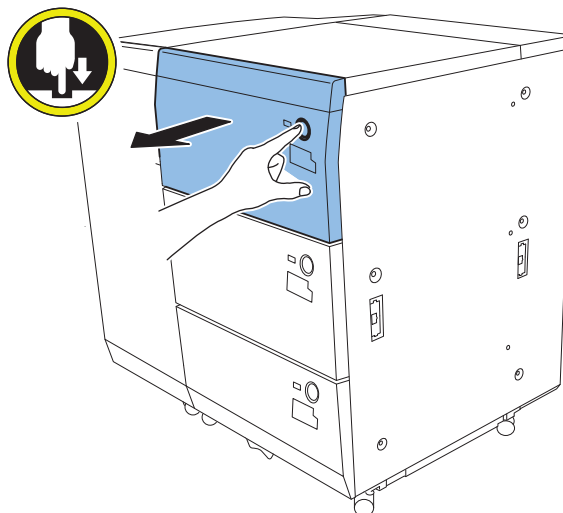
1. Make sure that the Leakage Breaker is turned on.



2. Turn on the Main Power of the Host Machine.

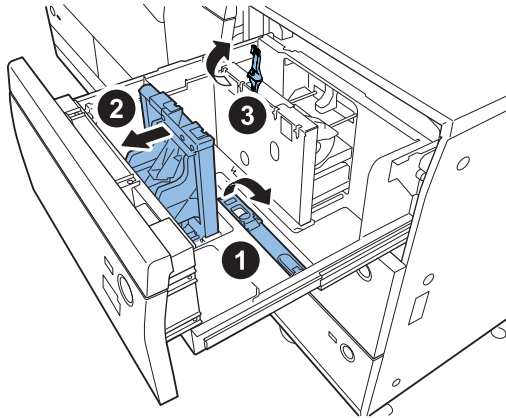


3. Press the Deck open switch to open the Upper Deck.

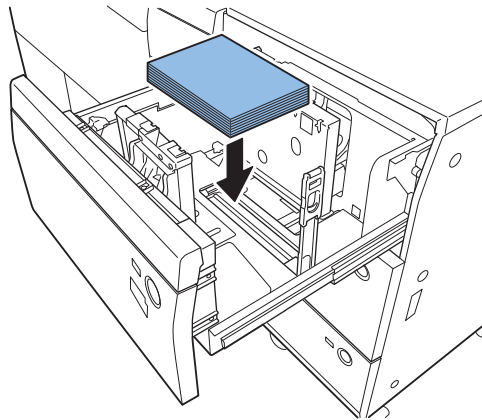




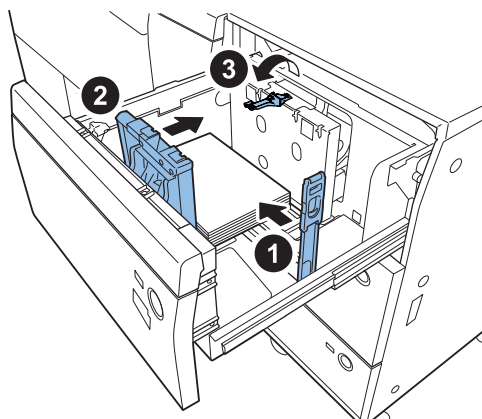
4. Raise the Rear Guide Plate in the direction of the arrow. Move the Front Side Guide Plate in the direction of the arrow while nipping its lever, and lift the Paper Weight Unit.



5. Set about 100 sheets of the paper used by the user.

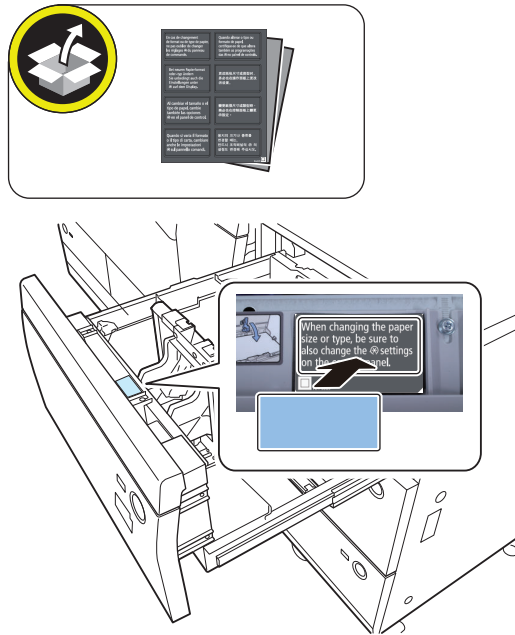


6. Adjust the positions of the Front Side Guide Plate and Rear Guide Plate to the paper size, and down the Paper Weight Unit.





7. (In the case of 230V model) Affix the Paper Size Set Label in the appropriate language.



8. Close the Upper Deck.



9. Set the paper to be used by the user in the Middle and Lower Decks, and then affix the Paper Size Set Label in the appropriate language.



10. Close the Middle and Lower Decks.

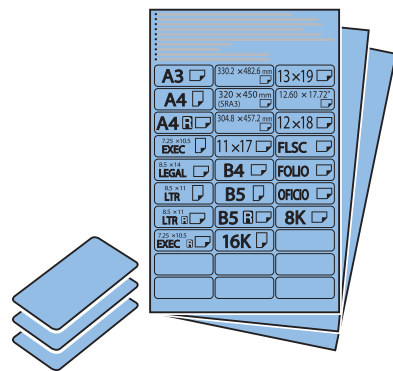
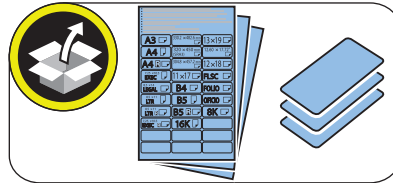
■ Affixing the Size Plate



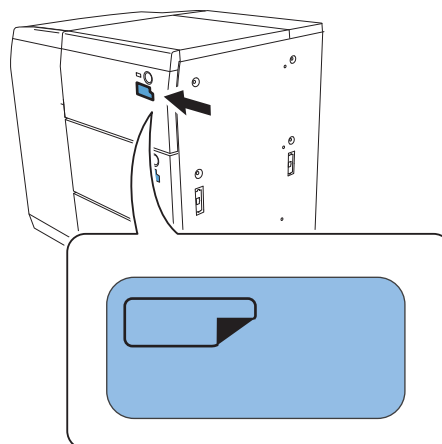
1. Affix the paper size label on the size plate.

NOTE:

Keep the paper size label for use when paper size is changed.



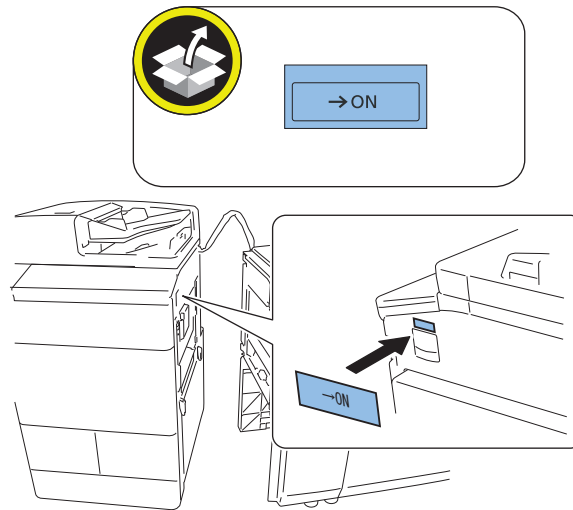
2. Insert the size plate prepared at procedure 1 to the media plate holder.



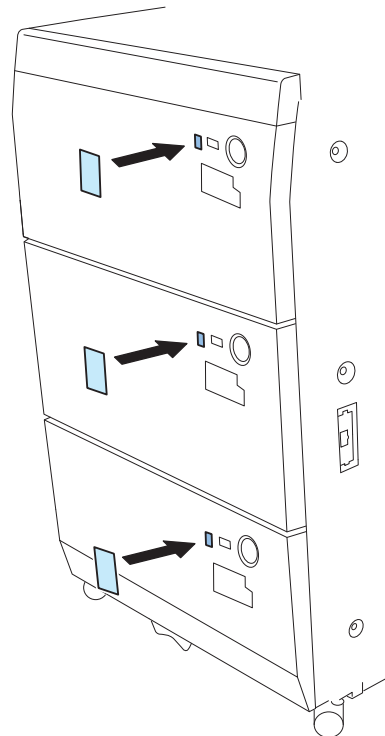
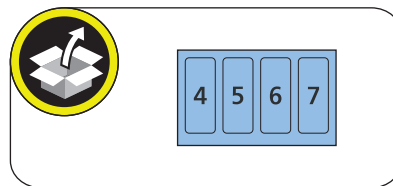
■ Affixing Labels



1. Affix the Power Switch ON Label with matching color of the Host Machine.



2. Affix the Cassette No. Label following the cassette No. of the Host Machine.



■ Checking for Operation



1. Perform pickup from each Deck to confirm if pickup is performed properly.

Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

1. Following disposal parts are remained after the installation procedure.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]	Screw (RS tightening; M4x8)	4pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]	Screw (Sems(Black); M4x8)	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]	Screw (Sems; M3x8)	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]	Screw (Binding; M4x7)	4pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[5]	Multi-purpose Tray Inner Cover	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[6]	Multi-door Switch	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[7]	Multi-door Unit	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[8]	Face Cover	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[9]	Blindfold Cover	2pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[10]	Connector Cover	1pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[11]	Lower Right Cover	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[12]	Paper Size Label (remaining label)	3pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[13]	Regin Saddle	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[14]	Small Plate	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[15]	Power Switch ON Label (remaining label)	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[16]	Cassette No. Label (remaining label)	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[17]	JAM Label	1pc
<input type="checkbox"/>	[18]	Paper Size Set Label (remaining label) (230V model only)	3pcs
<input type="checkbox"/>	[19]	Power Code (230V model only)	2pcs

Paper Positioning Check / Adjustment Procedure

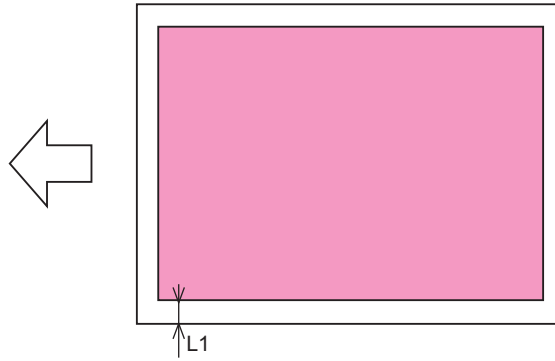
■ Checking the Left Edge Margin

1. After setting the service modes (level 1) as follows, press the Start key and output a test print.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > TYPE = 5
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-M = 1
- COPIER > TEST > PG > COLOR-Y/C/K = 0

2. Print paper from each Deck. Check that the left edge margin of the image is within 2.5 +/- 1.0 mm.

- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 17 (Upper Deck)
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 18 (Middle Deck)
- COPIER > TEST > PG > PG-PICK = 19 (Lower Deck)

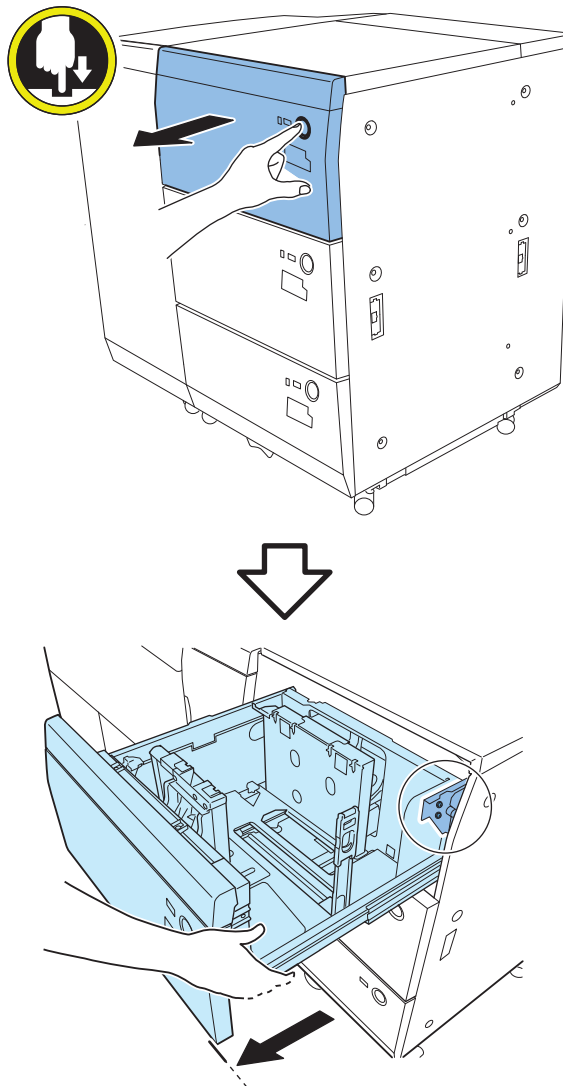


3. If it is not within the range, execute the adjustment by referring the **“Method of Adjustment”** on page 588

■ Method of Adjustment



1. Press the button of the Upper Deck and open the Upper Deck to the front all the way.

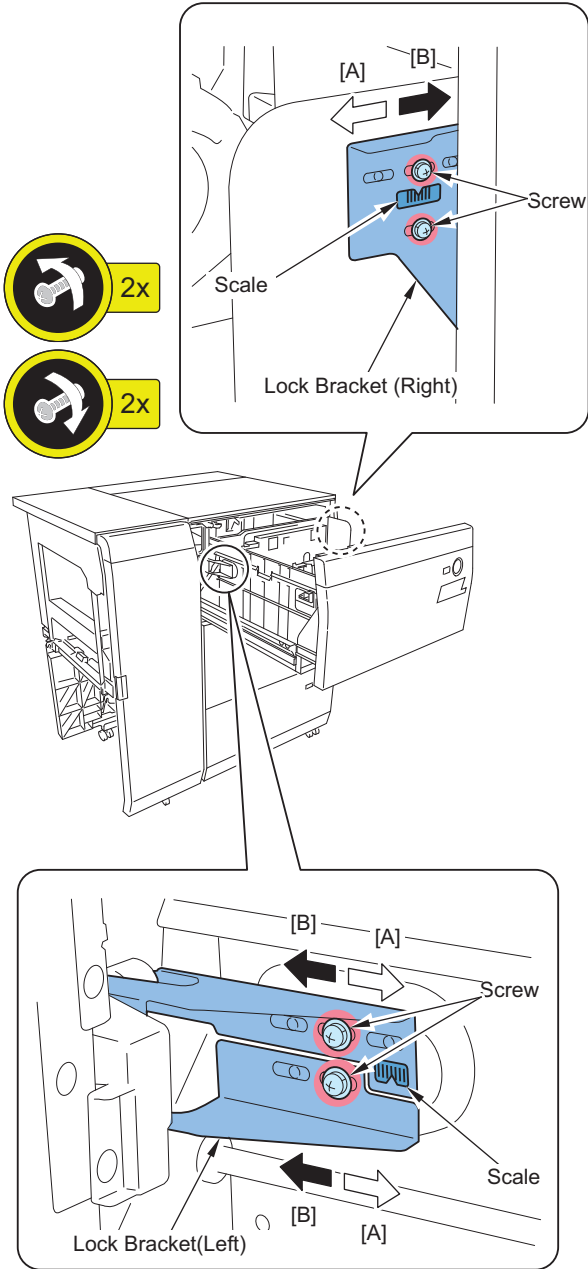




2. Adjust by sliding the Lock Bracket front and rear.

NOTE:

- 1 scale = 1 mm.
- Move the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) in the [A] direction in case the left edge margin of the image is large.
- Move the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) in the [B] direction in case the left edge margin of the image is small.



3. Loosen 1 screw for the Disengagement Cam.



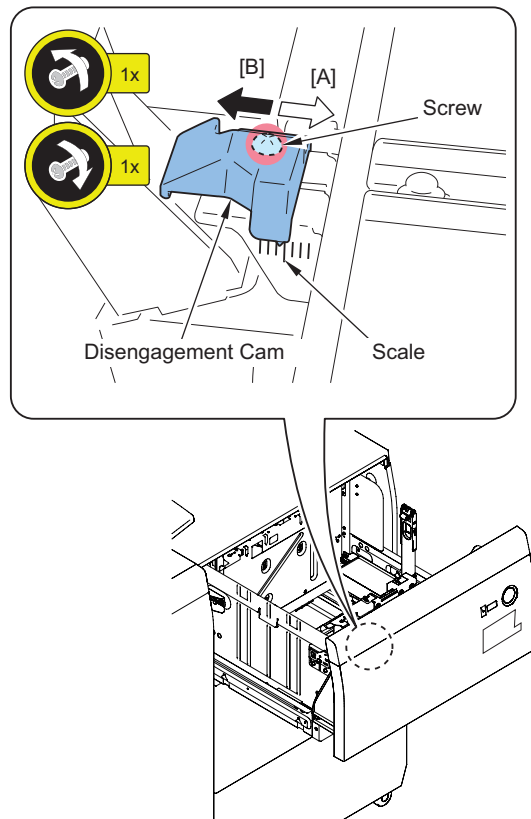
4. Move the Disengagement Cam (2) to be the same scale position as the Lock Bracket (Left,Right)

NOTE:

- 1 scale = 1 mm.
- When the position of the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) was moved in the [A] direction shown in the figure for step 2), move the Disengagement Cam in the [A] direction.
- When the position of the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) was moved in the [B] direction shown in the figure for step 5), move the Disengagement Cam (2) in the [B] direction.

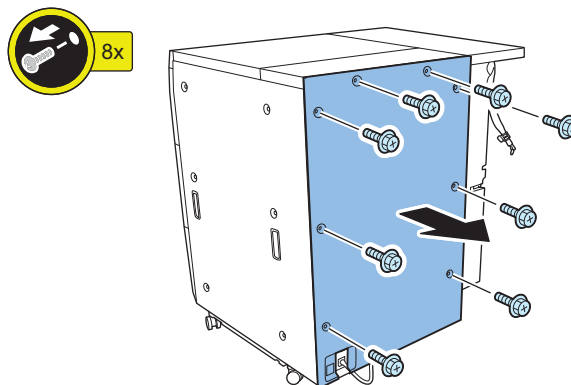


5. Re-tighten the screw, which was loosened at step 3).



6. Remove the Rear Right Cover.

- 8 Screws

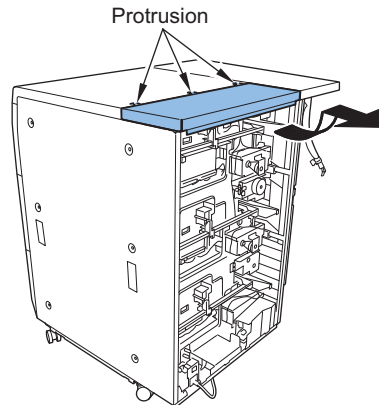


**7. Remove the Upper Rear Cover.**

- 3 Protrusions

CAUTION:

Do not drop the Upper Rear Cover because the cover is not secured with Screws.

**8. Loosen 2 Screws on the Drawer Connector Plate.****9. Move the Drawer Connector Plate in a direction opposite to the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) by the same scale.****NOTE:**

How to adjust the scale on the Drawer Connector Plate

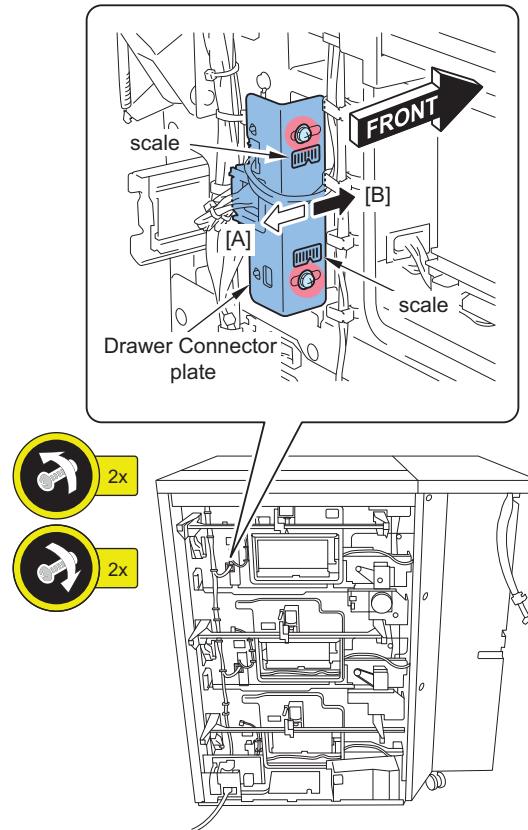
If, for instance, you move the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) position "1 scale from the center" toward the [A] direction shown in the illustration in step 2), move the Drawer Connector Plate to the position "1 scale from the center" toward the [B] direction.

NOTE:

- 1 scale = 1 mm.
- Ensure to adjust the scale positions (Upper, Lower) of the Drawer Connector Plate to be at the same position.
- When the position of the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) was moved in the [A] direction shown in the figure for step 2), move the Drawer Connector Plate in the [A] direction.
- When the position of the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) was moved in the [B] direction shown in the figure for step 2), move the Drawer Connector Plate in the [B] direction.



10. Re-tighten the screw, which was loosened at step 8).



11. Close the compartment.

NOTE:

In case that the compartment is not closed after the left edge margin adjustment, Move the front cover with referring to the following procedure "Gap adjustment of the Deck Cover".



12. Take a print out of this Equipment and check that the left edge margin of the image is within the specification value (2.5 +/- 1.0mm). In the case of out of specification, Repeat from "Method of Adjustment" step 2) to re-adjust.

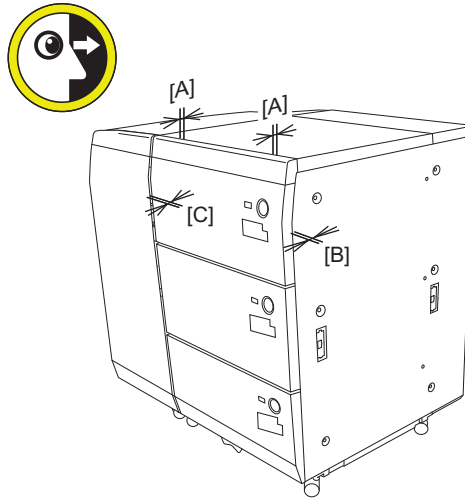
13. Return the removed covers to their original positions.

Gap adjustment of the Deck Cover

NOTE:

When the Lock Bracket is adjusted, perform the gap adjustment for the Deck Cover.

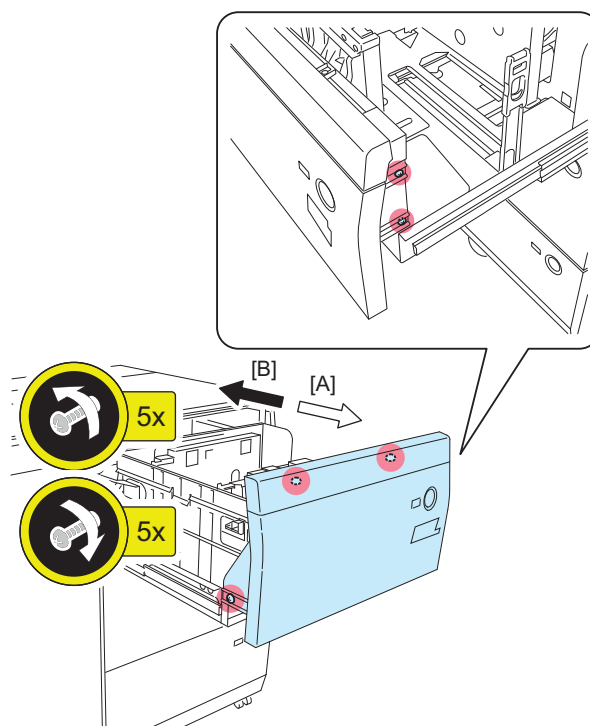
-
1. Close the deck and check the values of the gap [A], gap [B], and gap [C] are within specification. In the case of out of specification, perform the gap adjustment for the Deck Cover as the following procedures.
 - Specification value for the gap [A]: 2.5 \pm 1.0 mm (the gap on the top of the Deck Front Cover)
 - Specification value for the gap [B]: 3.0 \pm 1 mm (the gap on the side of the Deck Front Cover)
 - Specification value of the alignment [C]: \pm 1 mm (the gap between the Deck Upper Left Cover and the Deck Cover)



-
2. For the reference at adjustment, remember the scale marked around the mounting Screw of the Deck Cover.
-
3. Loosen 5 Screws and adjust by moving the Deck Front Cover front and rear.

NOTE:

- 1 scale = 1 mm.
- When the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) was moved in the [A] direction shown in the figure, move the Deck Cover in the [A] direction
- When the Lock Bracket (Left, Right) was moved in the [B] direction shown in the figure, move the Deck Cover in the [B] direction.



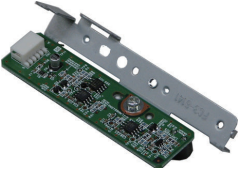
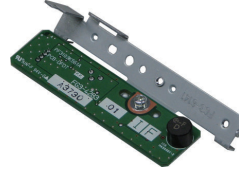


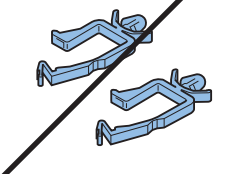

Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit-A1

Points to Note at Installation

When installing the Multi-drawer Paper Deck and the Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit simultaneously, be sure to install the Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit after completing "Making Preparations for Installing Parts on this Equipment Side" in the installation procedure of the Multi-drawer Paper Deck.

- When installing the Multi-drawer Paper Deck and the Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit simultaneously: Refer to "Installing the Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit" and later procedure.
- When installing the Paper Deck Double Feeding Detection Kit later: Refer to "Separating the Multi-drawer Paper Deck from the Host Machine".

Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Double Feeding Sensor (Reception/ FG3-4284) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Double Feeding Sensor (Transmission/ FG3-4283) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Double Feeding Sensor Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Sensor Cover X 2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Wire Saddle X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Screw (W Sems (White); M3x8) X 4 

Installation Procedure

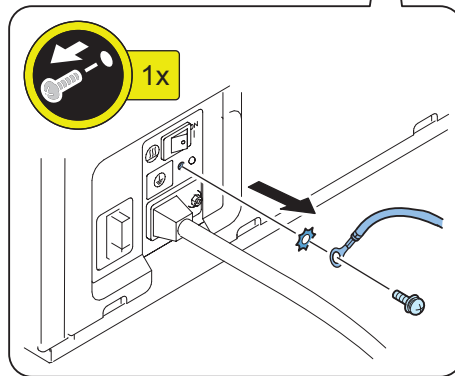
■ Separating the Paper Deck from the Host Machine

1. Unplug the Power Plug from the Multi-drawer Paper Deck.



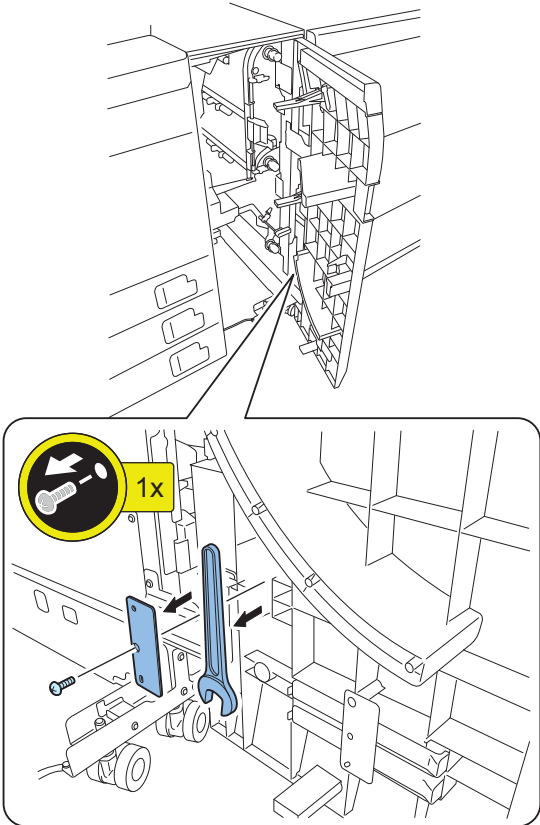
2. If the Grounding Wire is connected to the Multi-drawer Paper Deck, remove the wire.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Toothed Washer

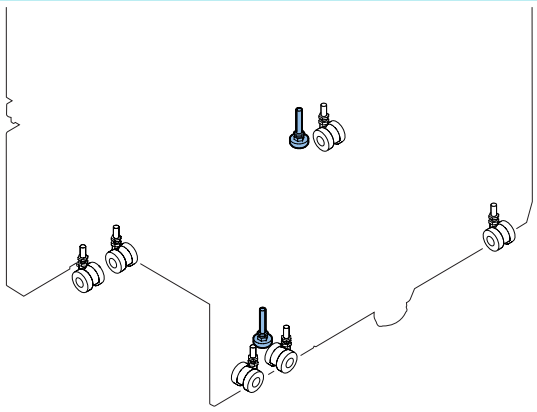




3. Remove the Face Plate inside the Deck Left Front Cover, and remove the spanner.
• 1 Screw

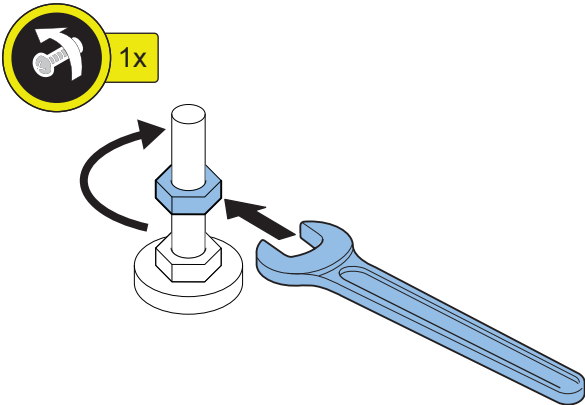


NOTE:
Lift the 2 stoppers from the floor in the following order of steps from 4 to 6.



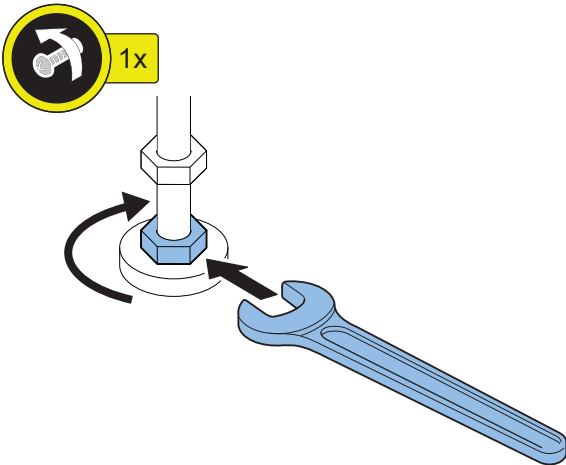
□

4. Turn the nut of the upper part of the stopper with the spanner to loosen.



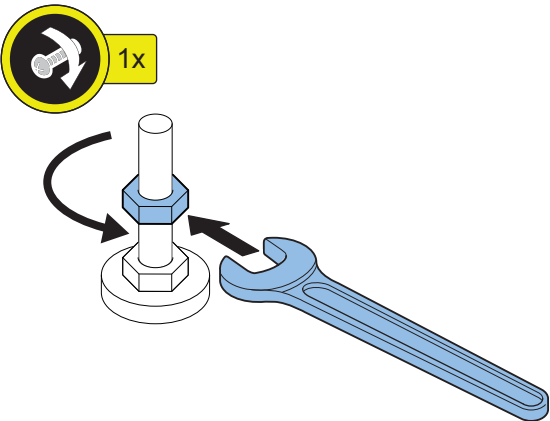
□

5. Turn the nut on the bottom with the spanner till the stopper is pulled away from the floor.



□

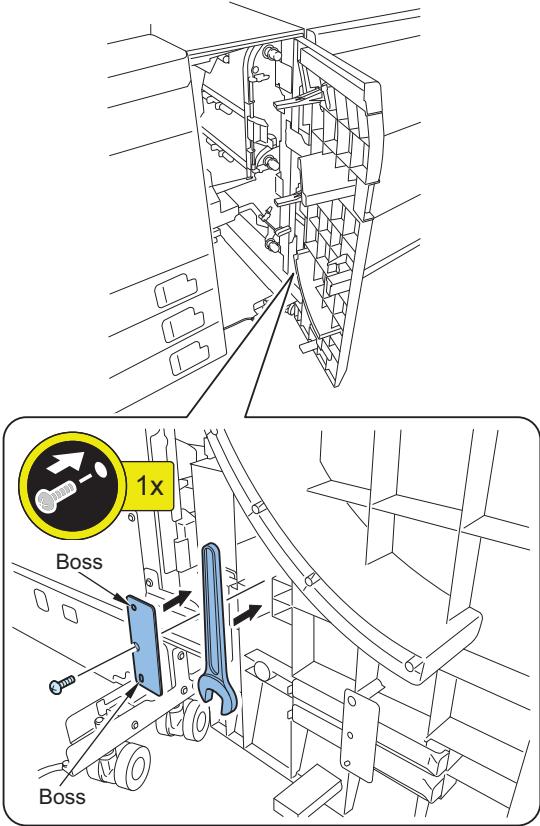
6. Re-tighten the loosened nut of the upper part.





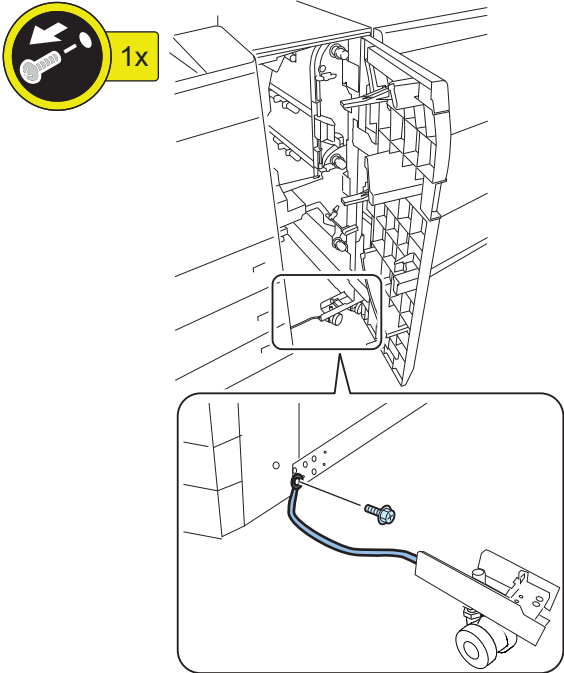
7. Secure the wrench at the original position.

- 1 Face Plate
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw



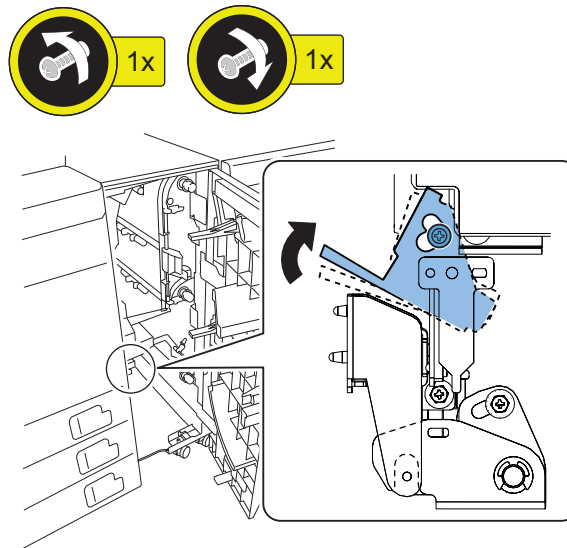
8. Remove the Shunt Cable.

- 1 Screw

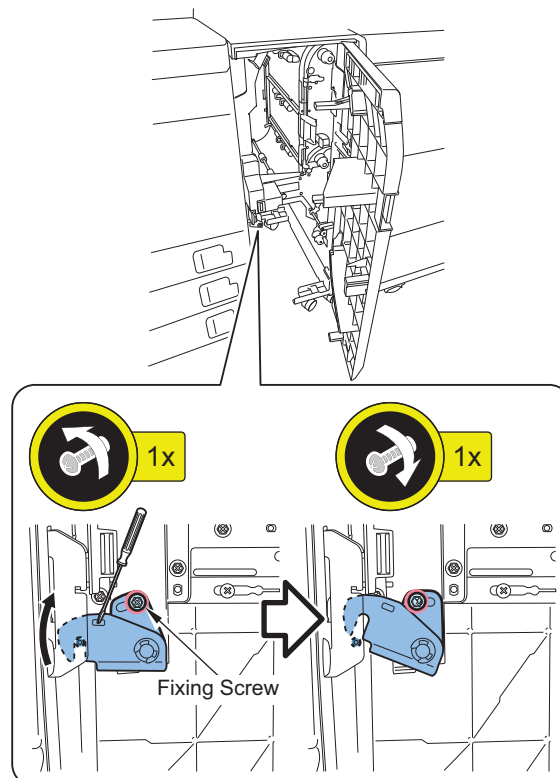


■ Separating the Multi-drawer Paper Deck from the Host Machine

-
1. Loosen the Fixing Screw of the Delivery Guide temporarily, raise the Delivery Guide and then securely tighten the Fixing Screw.

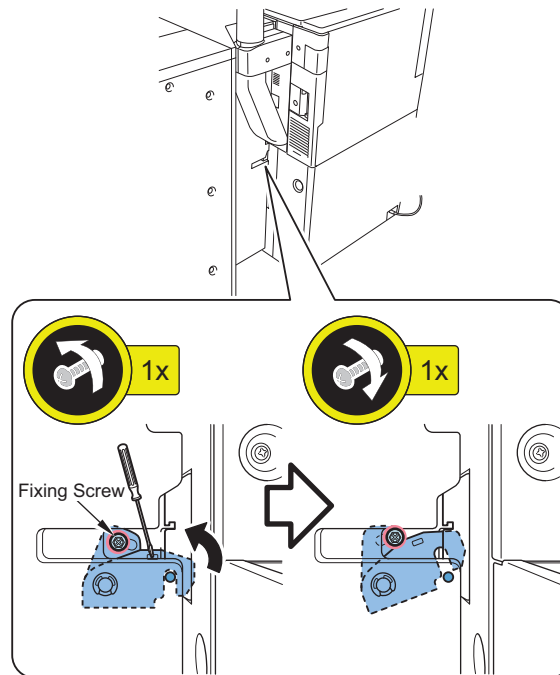


-
2. Loosen the Fixing Screw of the Latch Plate on the front side temporarily. Insert a flatblade screwdriver into a groove, raise the Latch Plate to release it from the Latch Receiver, and then securely tighten the Fixing Screw.



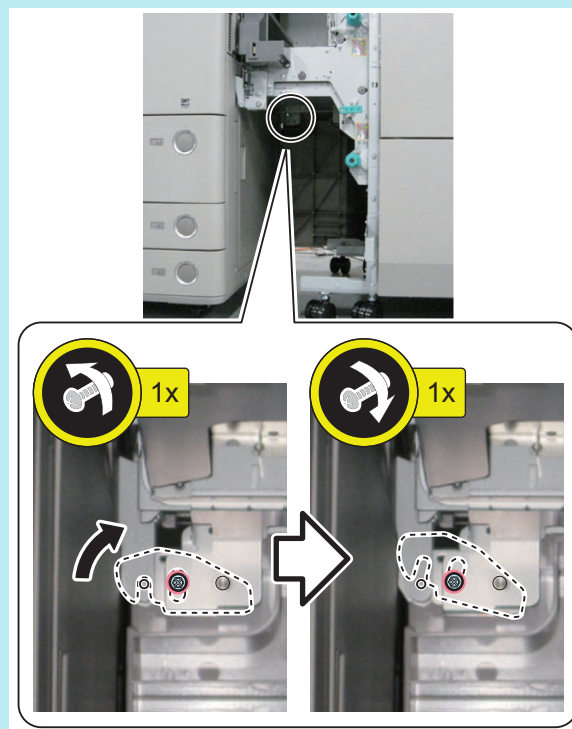


3. Loosen the Fixing Screw of the Latch Plate in the rear temporarily. Insert a flat-blade screwdriver into a groove, raise the Latch Plate to release it from the Latch Receiver, and then securely tighten the Fixing Screw.

**NOTE:**

When the screw of the Latch Plate is installed from the front side due to the work space at the back of the host machine and the Multi-drawer Paper Deck being small, be sure to perform the following work.

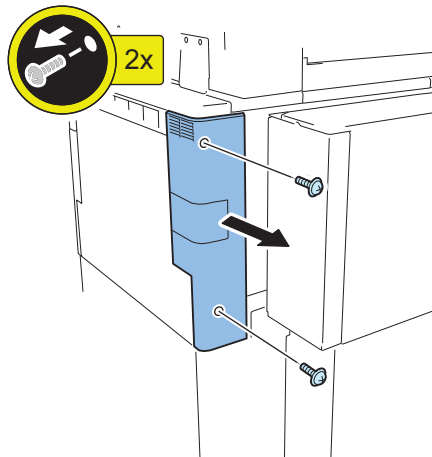
- Loosen the Fixing Screw of the Latch Plate temporarily. Raise the Latch Plate to release it from the Latch Receiver, and then securely tighten the Fixing Screw which was loosened previously.
- To make the work easier, remove the Deck Left Front Cover temporarily.





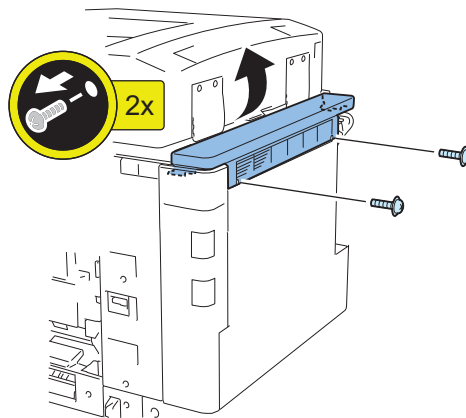
4. Remove the Main Controller Box Left Cover.

- 2 Screws



5. Remove the Main Controller Box Upper Cover.

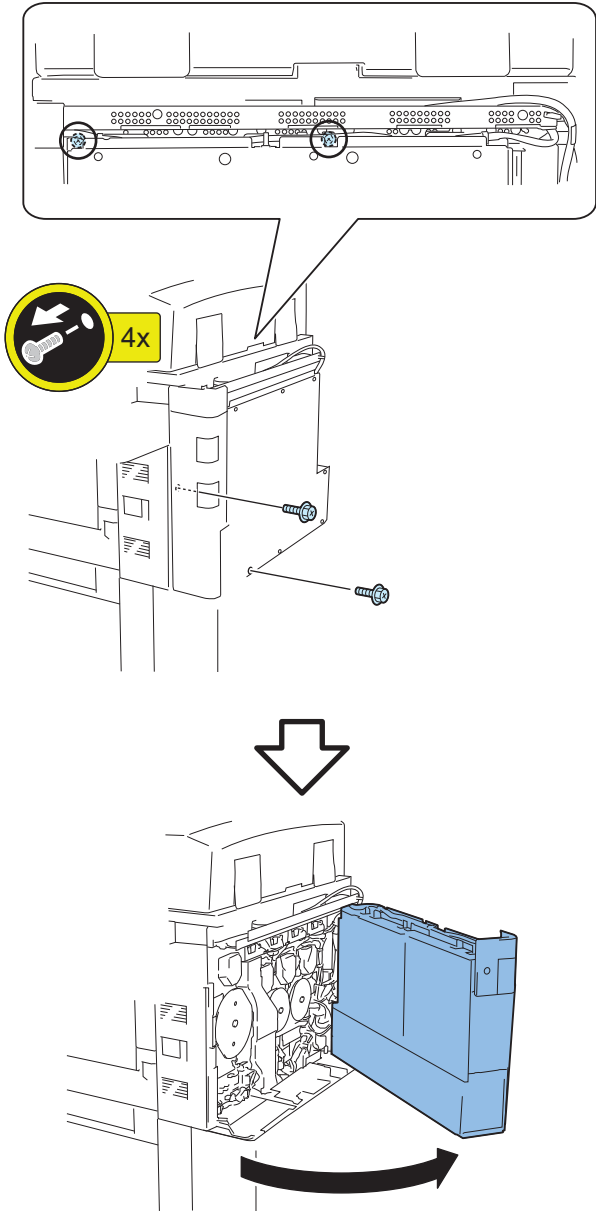
- 2 Screws





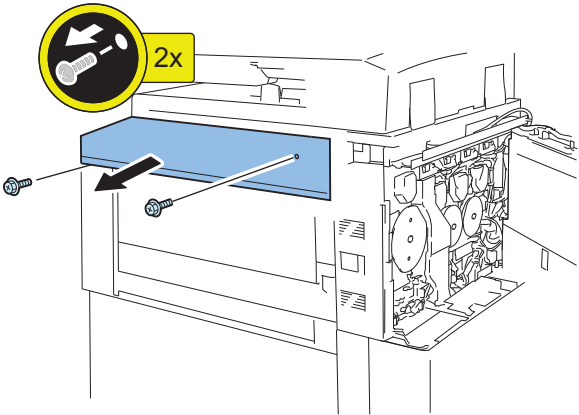
6. Open the Main Controller Box Unit.

- 4 Screws



7. Remove the Right Upper Cover.

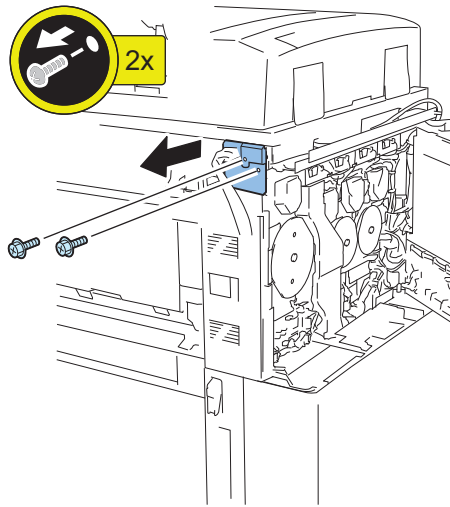
- 2 Screws





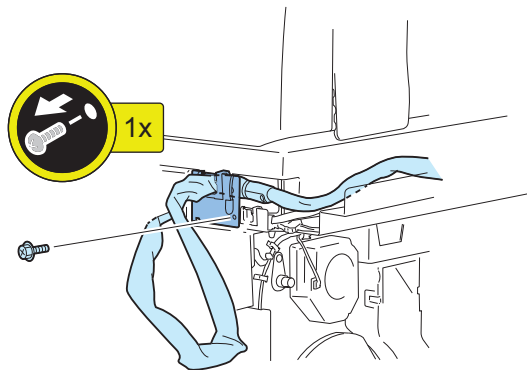
8. Remove the Left Rear Cover.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Hook



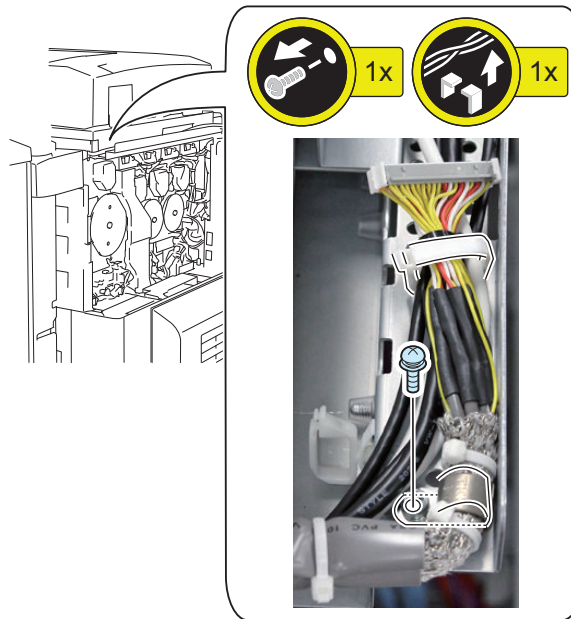
9. Remove the Fixing Plate, and remove the interface cable.

- 1 Screw

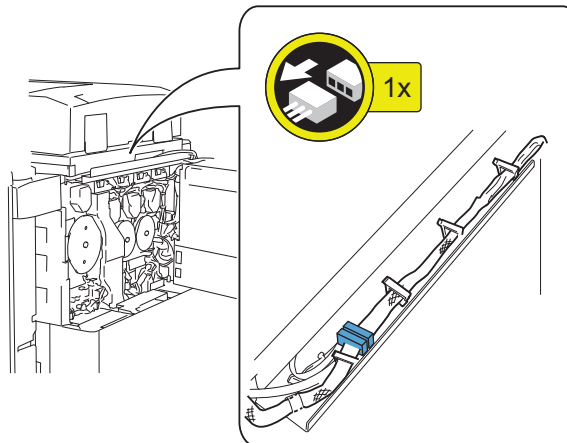


**10. Remove the Interface Cable.**

- 1 Cord Retainer
- 1 Screw (W Sems (White); M4×8)
- 1 Wire Saddle

**11. Disconnect the connection of Multi-drawer Paper Deck and Interface Cable of host machine.**

- 1 Connector

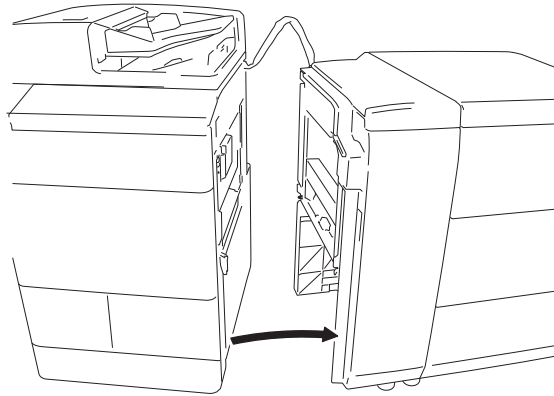




12. Remove the Multi-drawer Paper Deck from the host machine.

CAUTION:

When removing the host machine and this equipment, put the Interface Cable of the Multi-drawer Paper Deck on the top surface of the Multi-drawer Paper Deck.

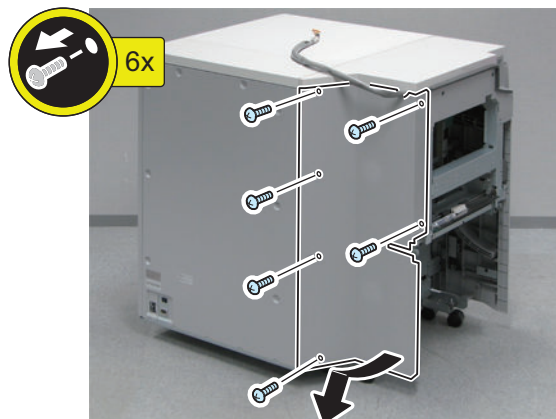


■ Preparations before the Installing Double Feeding Sensor Unit



1. Remove the Deck Rear Left Cover.

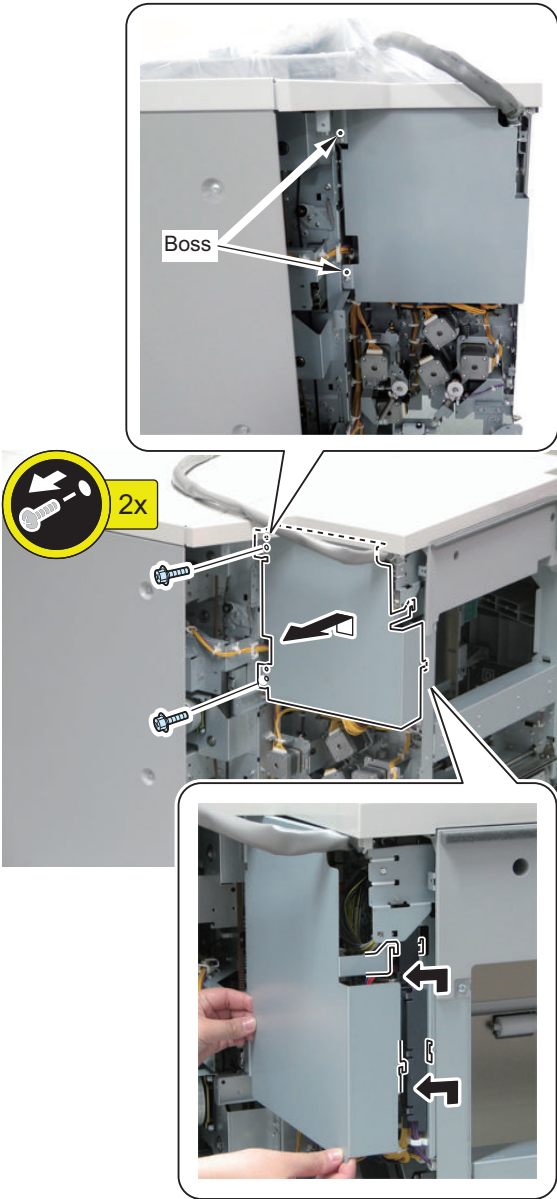
- 6 Screws



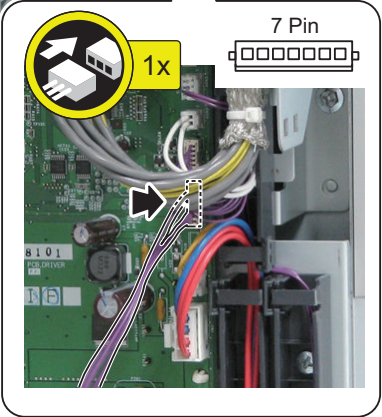
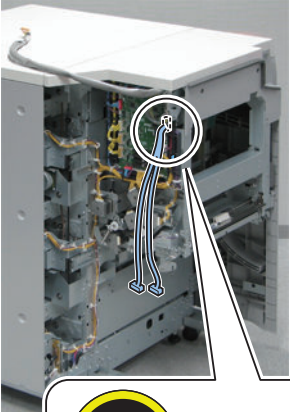


2. Remove the PCB Cover.

- 2 Screws
- 2 Hooks
- 2 Bosses



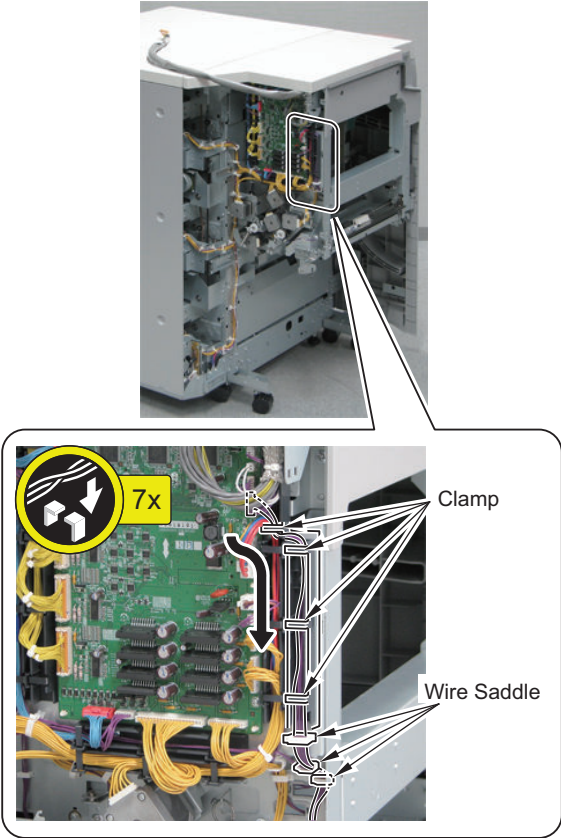
-
- 3. Connect the 7-pin connector of the supplied Double Feeding Sensor Cable to the connector CN5 on the Deck Driver PCB.
- 1 Connector





4. Secure the Double Feed Sensor Cable with the Cable Guide.

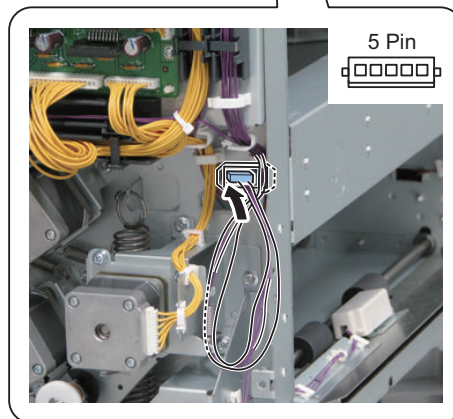
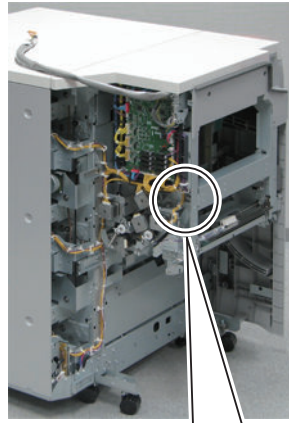
- 4 Clamps
- 3 Wire Saddles





5. Thread the 5-pin connector (Reception side) of the Double Feeding Sensor Cable through the edge saddle.

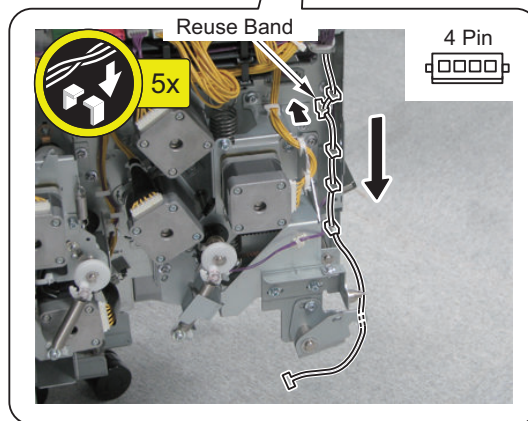
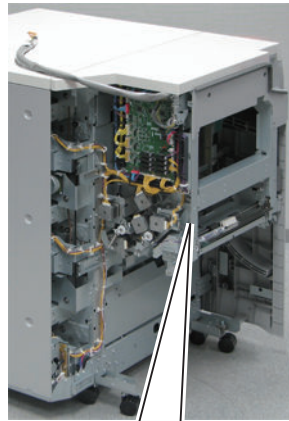
- 1 Edge Saddle



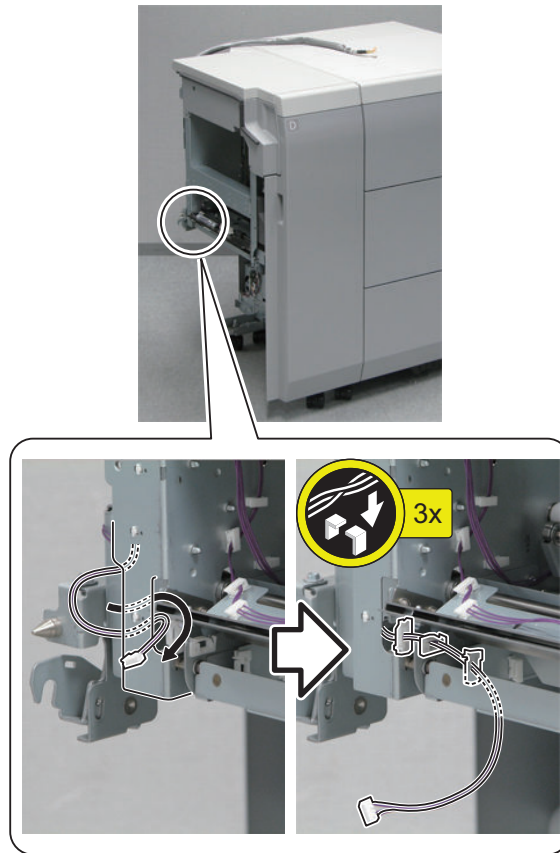


6. Secure the Double Feeding Sensor Cable on the 4-pin connector side (Transmission side) in place.

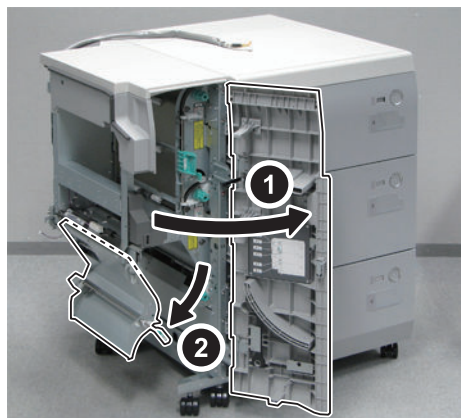
- 4 Wire Saddles
- 1 Reuse Band



-
7. Put the 4-pin connector (Transmission side) of the Double Feeding Sensor Cable through the hole of the side plate, and secure it in place using the 3 Edge Saddles.
- 3 Edge Saddles

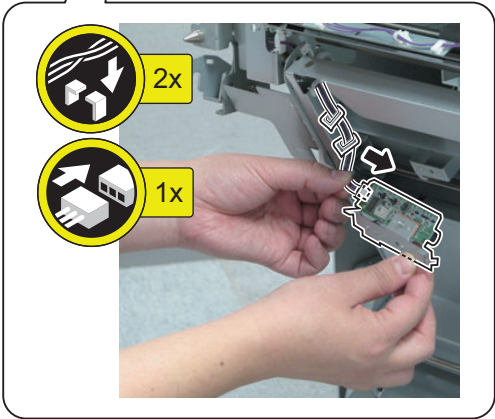
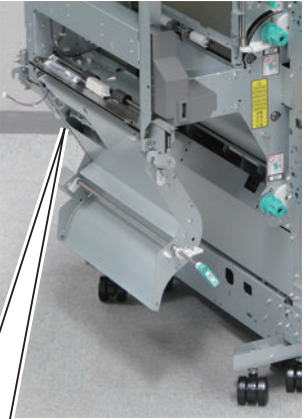


-
8. Open the Deck Left Cover, and open the Horizontal Path Guide as much as possible.



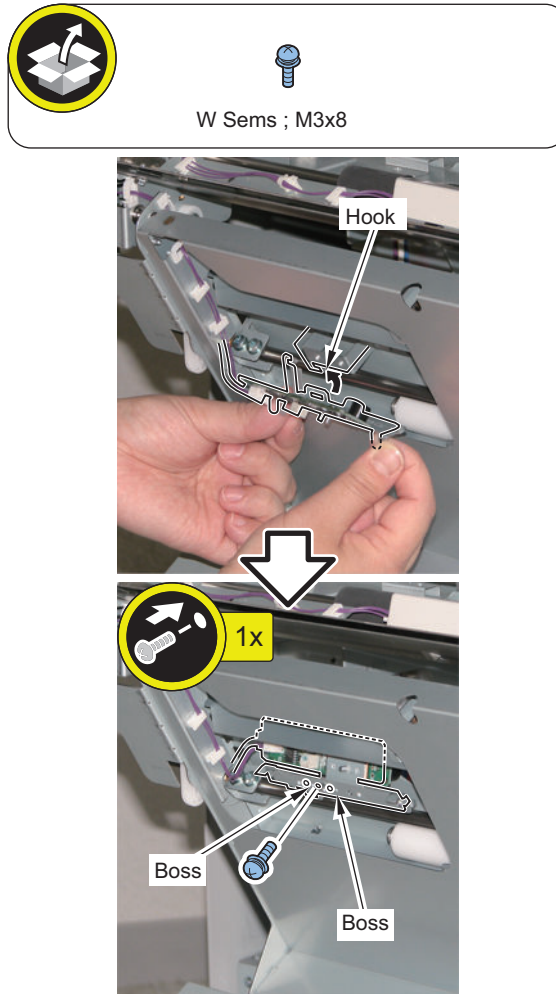
-
- 9. Secure the Double Feeding Sensor Cable on the 4-pin connector side (Transmission side) in place using the 2 Wire Saddles, and connect the Double Feeding Sensor (Transmission/FG3-4283).

 - 2 Wire Saddles
 - 1 Connector



**10. Install the Double Feeding Sensor (Transmission/FG3-4283) by hooking it on the hook.**

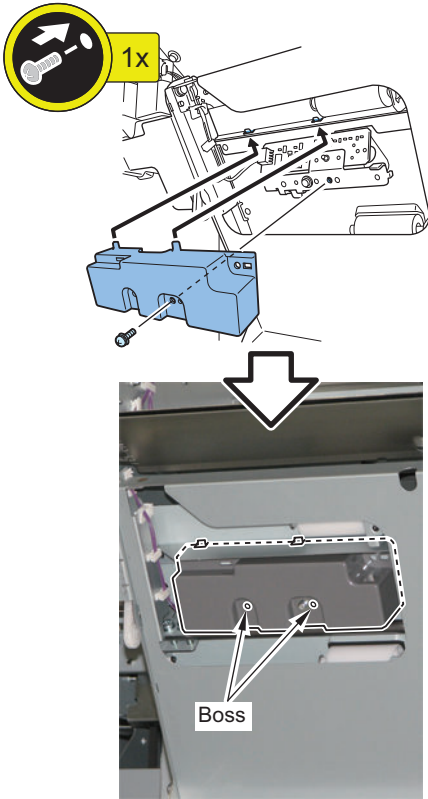
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (W Sems (White); M3x8)



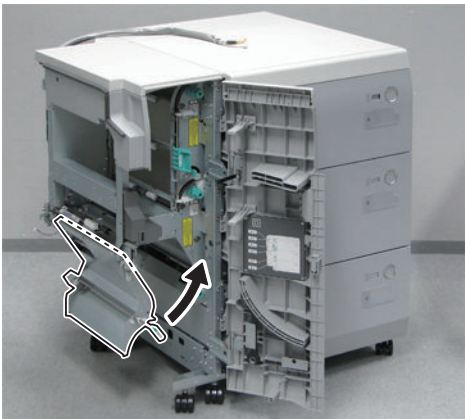


11. Install the Sensor Cover over the Double Feeding Sensor (Transmission/FG3-4283) by inserting its 2 protrusions.

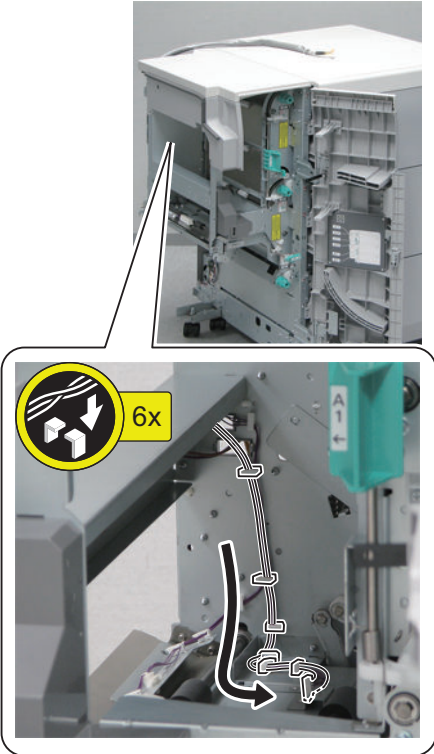
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (W Sems (White); M3x8)



12. Close the Horizontal Path Guide.



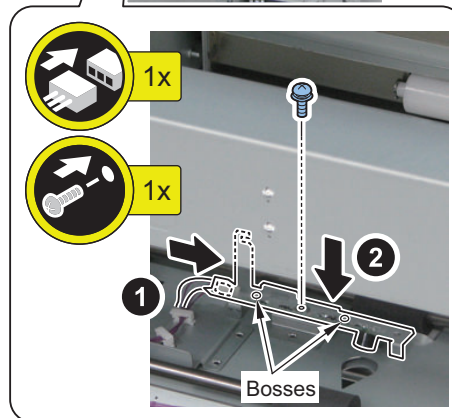
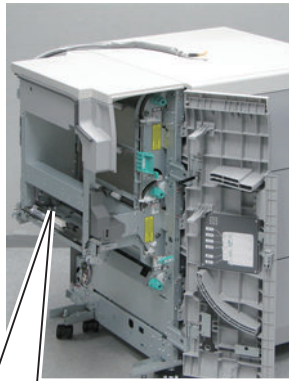
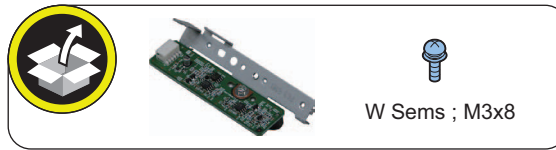
-
- 13. Secure the Double Feeding Sensor Cable on the 5-pin connector side (Reception side) in place using the 6 Wire Saddles.
 - 6 Wire Saddles





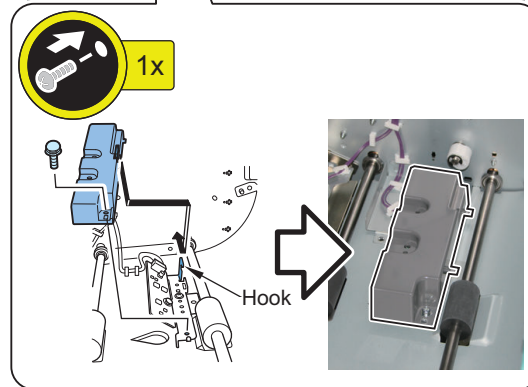
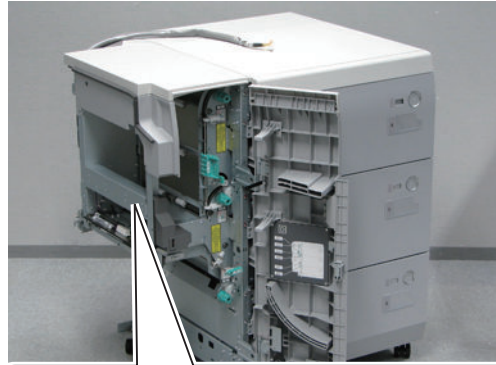
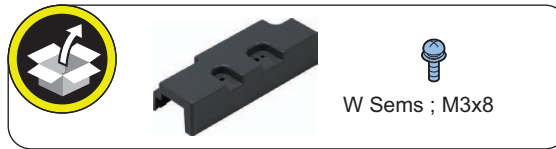
14. Connect the 5-pin connector (reception side) of the Double Feeding Sensor Cable to the Double Feeding Sensor (Reception/FG3-4284).

- 1 Connector
- 2 Bosses
- 1 Screw (W Sems (White); M3x8)



**15. Install the Sensor Cover over the Double Feeding Sensor (Reception/FG3-4284) by hooking it on the hook.**

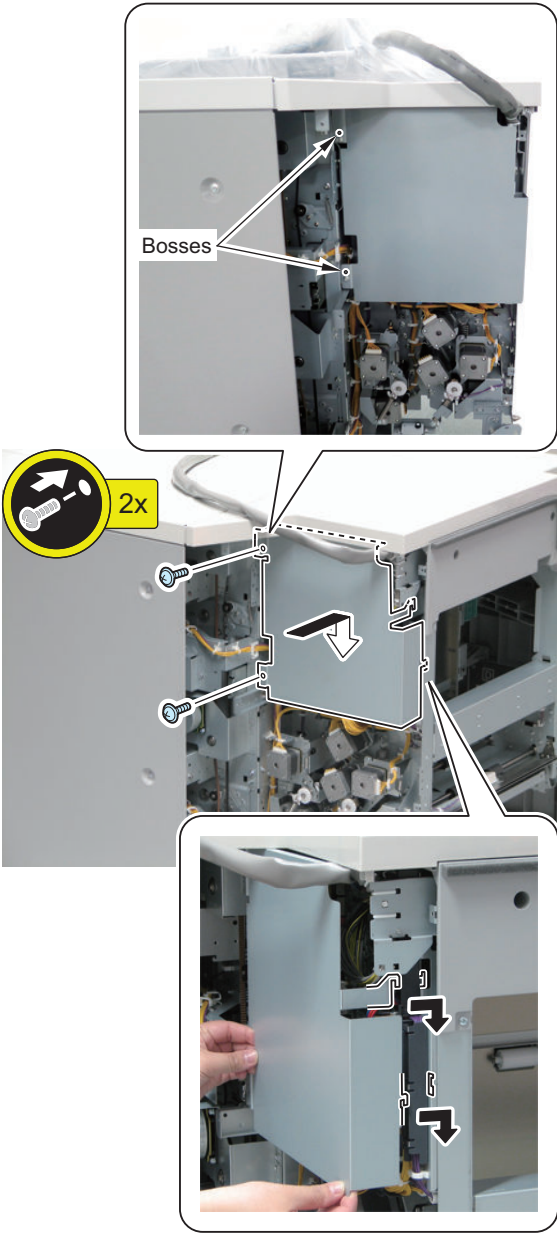
- 1 Screw (W Sems (White); M3x8)

**16. Close the Deck Left Front Cover.**



17. Install the PCB Cover.

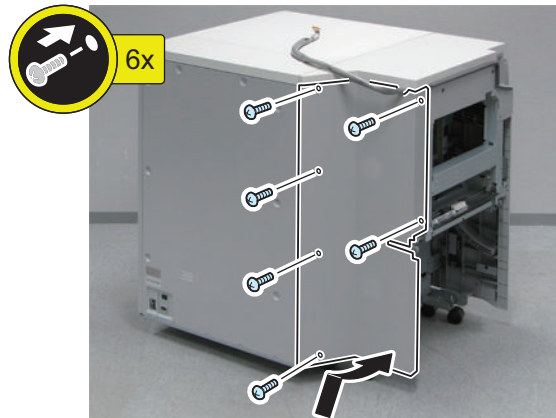
- 2 Hooks
- 2 Screws
- 2 Bosses





18. Install the Deck Rear Left Cover(6 Screws).

- 6 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)

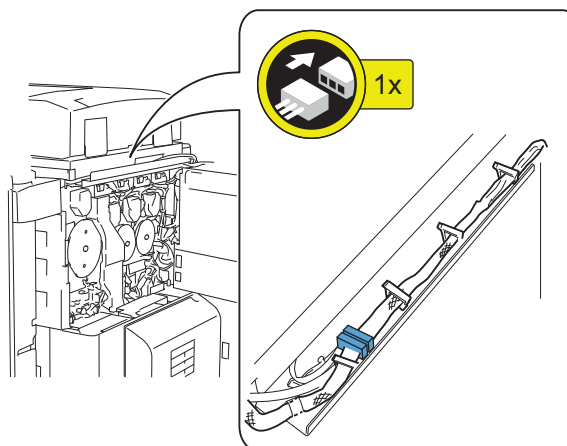


■ Installing the Double Feeding Sensor Unit



1. Connect the Interface Cable of the host machine with the Multi-drawer Paper Deck.

- 1 Connector



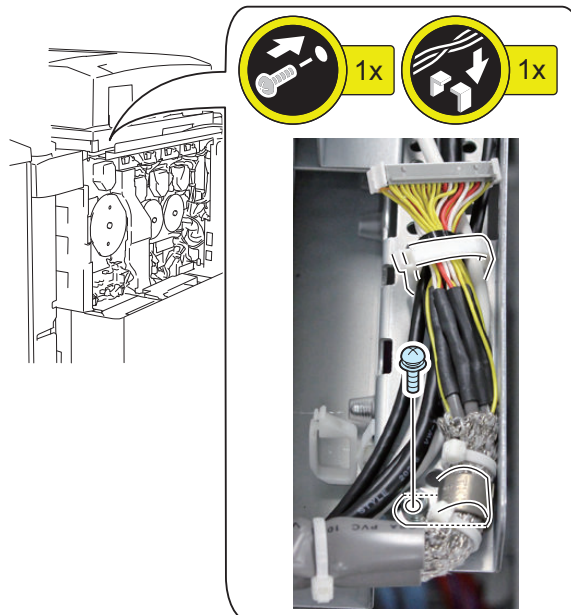


2. Secure the Interface Cable of the Multi-drawer Paper Deck with the Cord Retainer.

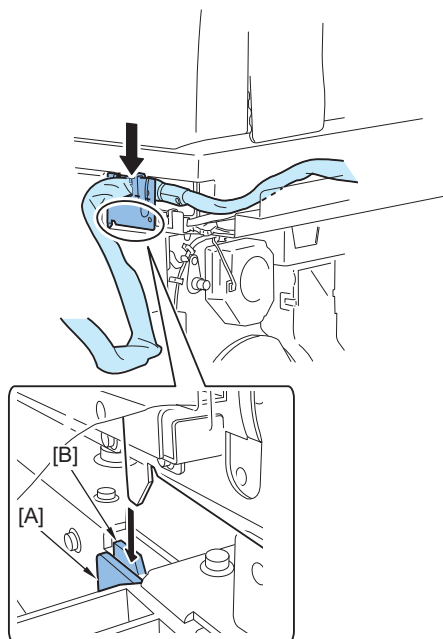
NOTE:

Attach the cord retainer between the cable ties.

- 1 Cord Retainer
- 1 Screw (W Sems (White); M4×8)
- 1 Wire Saddle



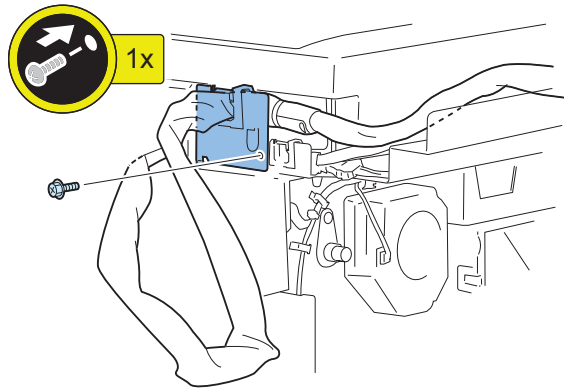
3. Pass the Interface Cable of the Multi-drawer Paper Deck through the Wire Saddle of the Fixation Plate, and insert the protrusion between [A] and [B].





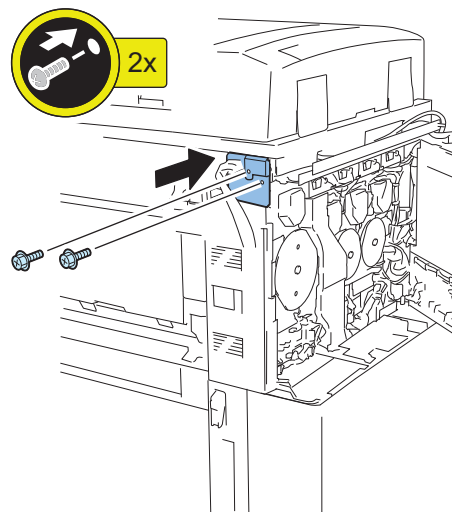
4. Install the Fixation Plate to the host machine using the screws removed in step 9 of "Separating the Multi-drawer Paper Deck from the Host Machine".

- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4×8)



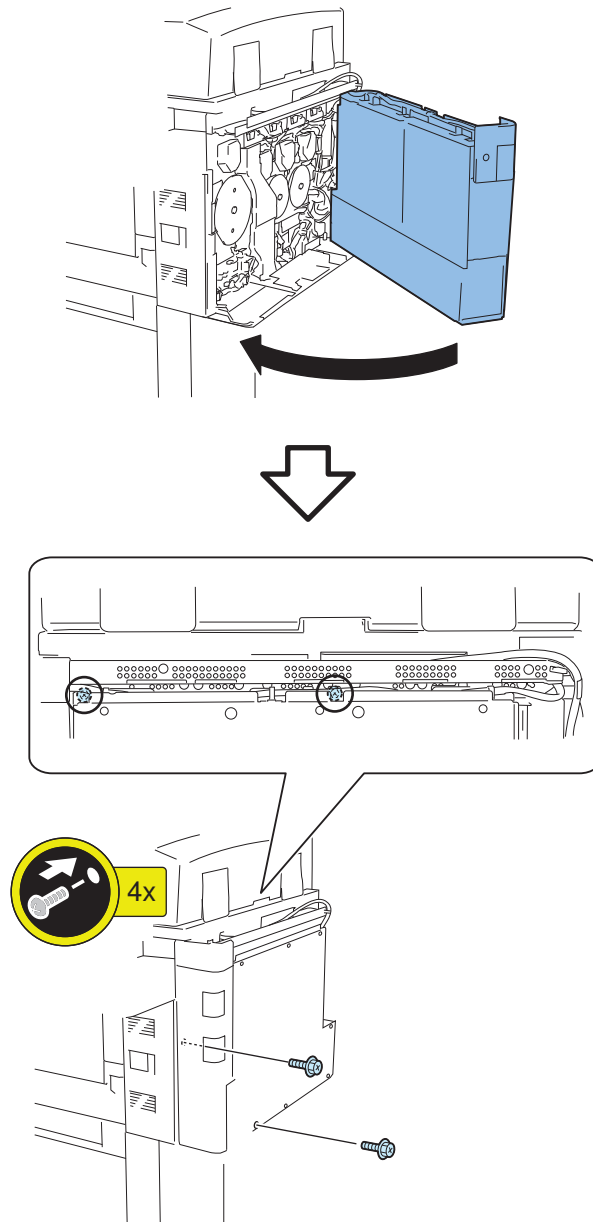
5. Install the Right Rear Cover using the screws removed in step 8 of "Separating the Multi-drawer Paper Deck from the Host Machine".

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)

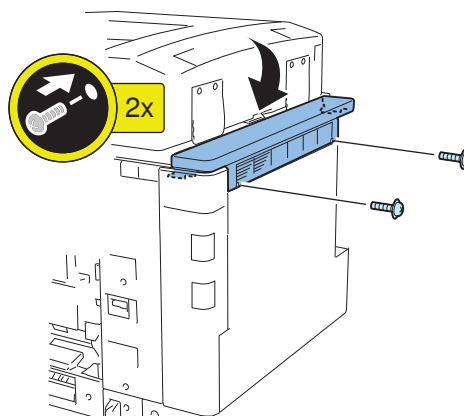


**6. Installing the Main Controller Box Unit.**

- 4 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)

**7. Installing the Main Controller Box Upper Cover.**

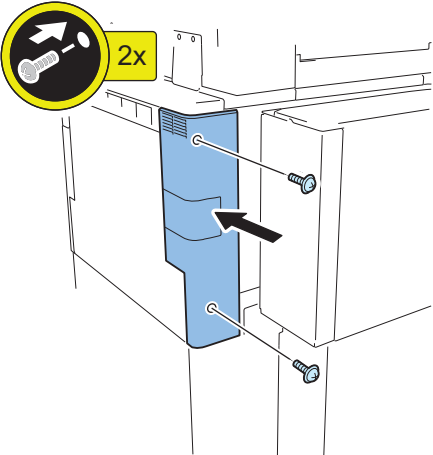
- 2 Screws (TP; M4x8)



□

8. Installing the Main Controller Box Left Cover.

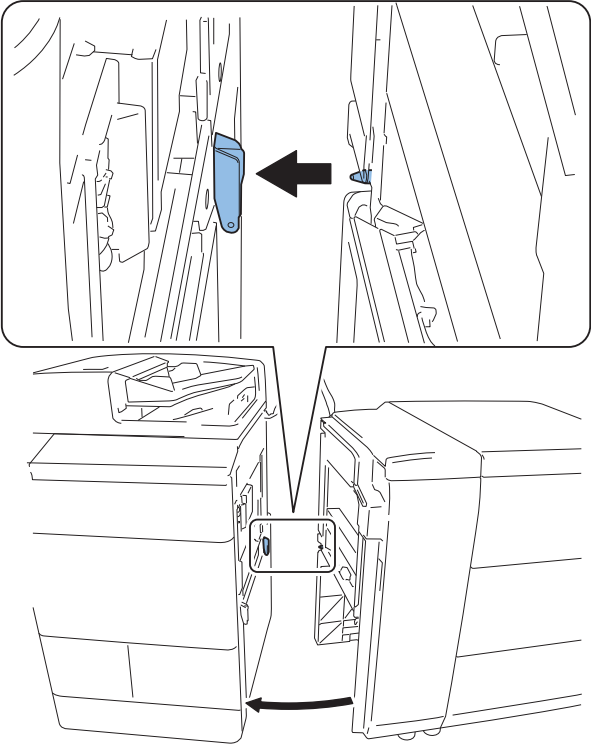
- 2 Screws (TP; M4x8)



□

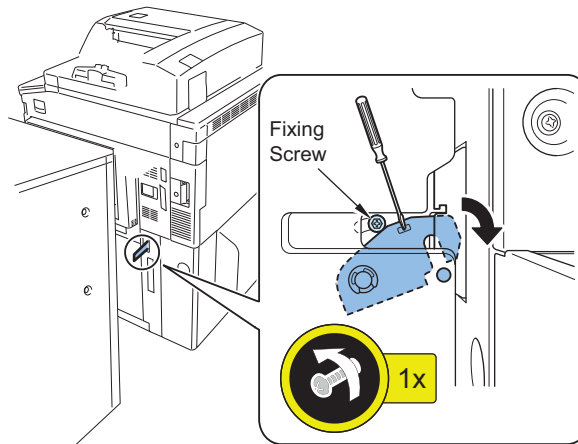
9. Fit the Host Machine Connecting Bracket (installed to the host machine) with the Pin of the host machine to connect the host machine with this equipment.

- 2 Screws (TP; M4x8)





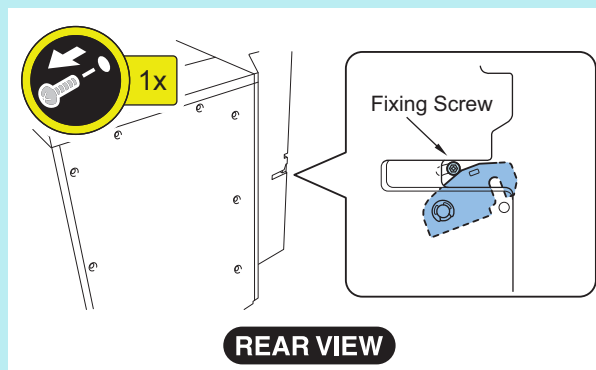
10. Loosen the Fixing Screw of rear Latch Plate once, insert the flat-blade screwdriver to push it and hook the Latch Plate to the Latch Retainer.



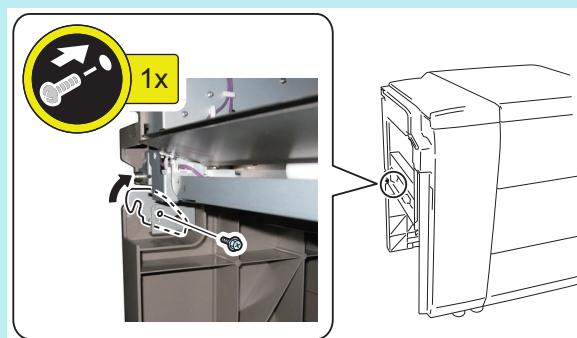
NOTE:

When the work space at the back of the host machine and this equipment is small, the Latch Receiver at the rear side can be connected from the front side. In such case, be sure to perform the following work before connecting the host machine to this equipment.

- Remove the Fixing Screw of the Latch Plate at the rear side.

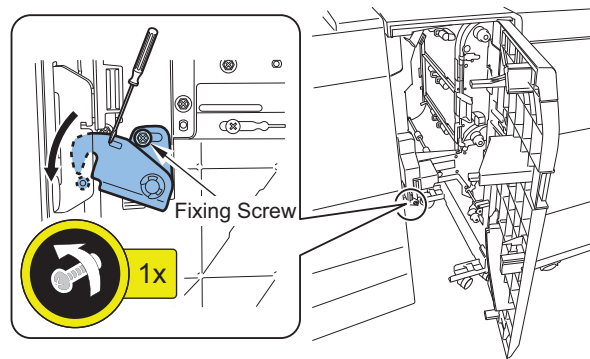


- Install the screw while lifting the Latch Plate from the front side.





11. Open the Deck Left Front Cover, loosen the Fixing Screw securing the Front Latch Plate, and then hook the Latch Plate on the Latch Support.

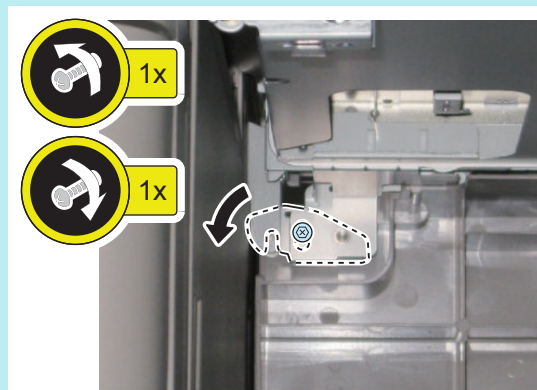


12. Tighten the Fixing Screw of front and rear Latch Plate securely.

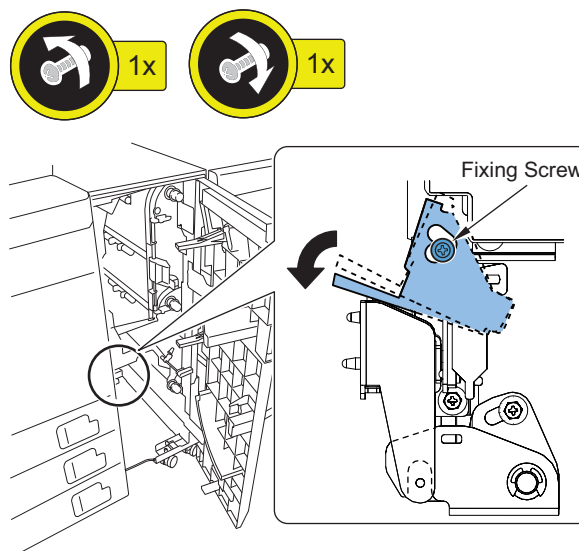
NOTE:

When the screw of the Latch Plate is installed from the front side due to the work space at the back of the host machine and this equipment being small, be sure to perform the following work.

- Loosen the Fixing Screw of the Latch Plate once, and hook the Latch Plate on the Latch Receiver. Fully tighten the Fixing Screw loosened before.
- To make the work easier, remove the Deck Left Front Cover temporarily.



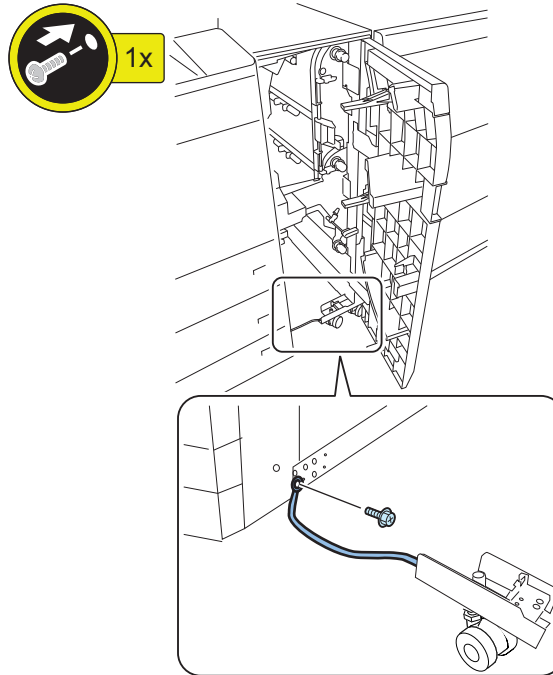
13. Loosen the Fixing Screw securing the Delivery Guide, lower the Delivery Guide, and then tighten the Fixing Screw.



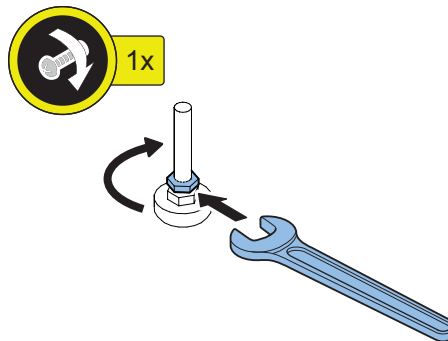


14. Open the Deck Left Front Cover of this Equipment and fix the Shunt Cable at the front bottom of the Host Machine and this Equipment.

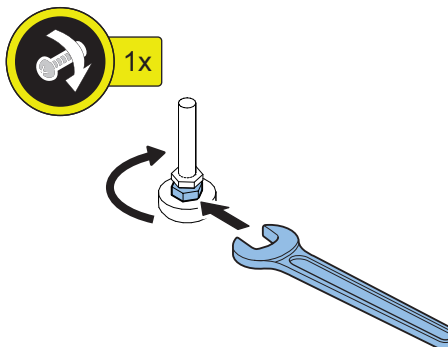
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4×8)



15. Using a wrench, loosen the upper nut on the stopper.

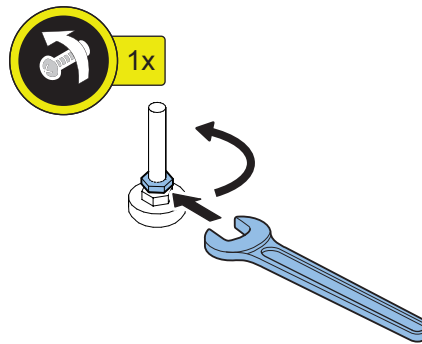


16. Using a wrench, turn the lower nut on the stopper to lower the stopper to the floor surface.



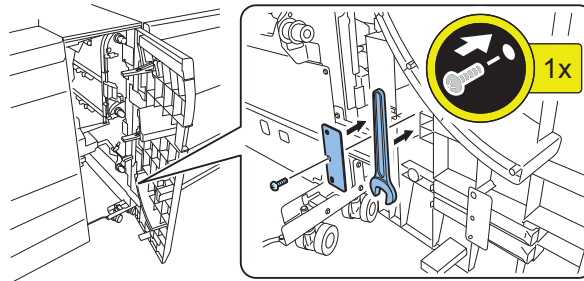


17. Tighten the upper nut.



18. Store the spanner at the original position and install the Face plate.

- 1 Screw (Tapping; M4x10)



19. Connect the Power Plugs of this equipment to the wall outlets.



20. Turn ON the main power switch.

NOTE:

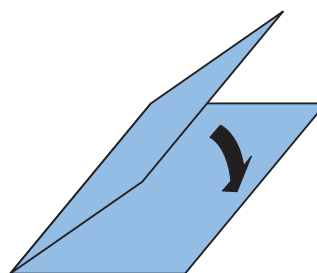
Connect the Multi-drawer Paper Deck to the host machine, and then check whether the Double Feeding Sensor detects the doubly fed paper properly. If the Double Feeding Sensor does not detect the doubly fed paper, check whether this sensor is installed properly.



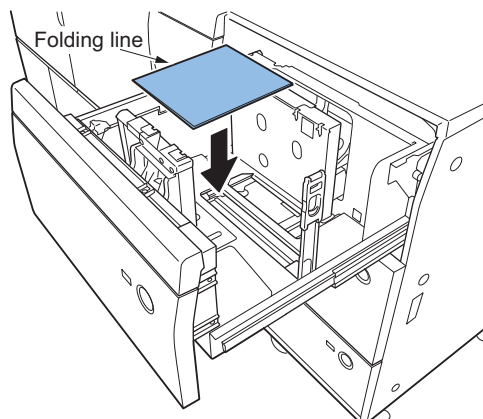
21. Fold the A3- or LDR-size paper (64 - 90 g/m²) into two.

NOTE:

To prevent a paper jam, fold the paper sharply.



22. Place the paper in the deck with the folding line of the twofold paper on the pickup side of the deck.



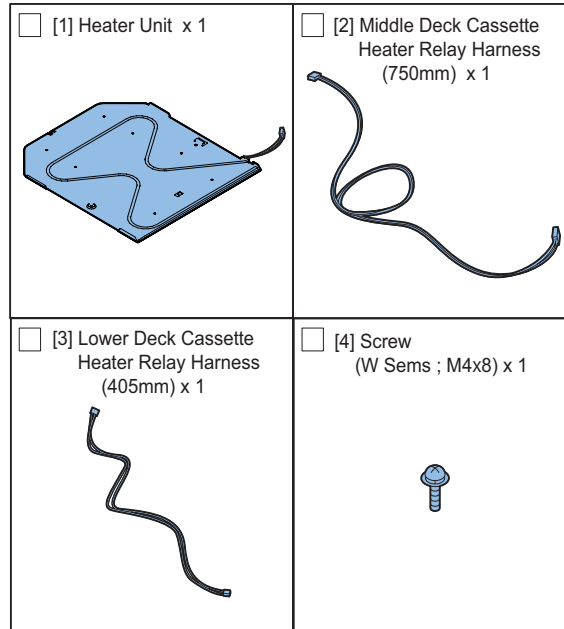
23. Execute the pickup operation by operating the host machine, and check that the Double Feed Sensor detects papers (double-fed paper) and paper jam due to double feeding occurs.

24. Open the Deck Left Front Cover, and remove papers.

Paper Deck Heater Unit for Multi-drawer Paper Deck-C1

Checking the Parts to be Installed

Each part of the Paper Deck Heater Unit for the Paper Deck is supplied as a service part, so prepare the following parts. Also, use the appropriate Paper Deck Heater Unit for each country.



No	Parts name	Parts Number	Q'ty
[1]	Heater Unit (120V)	FM3-3771-000	1pc.
	Heater Unit (230V)	FM3-3772-000	1pc.
[2]	Middle Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness (750mm)	FG3-4325-000	1pc.
[3]	Lower Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness (405mm)	FG3-4326-000	1pc.
[4]	Screw (W Sems ; M4x8)	FC7-7646-000	1pc.

*As for the change of the part number, please refer to the latest parts catalog.

Installation Procedure

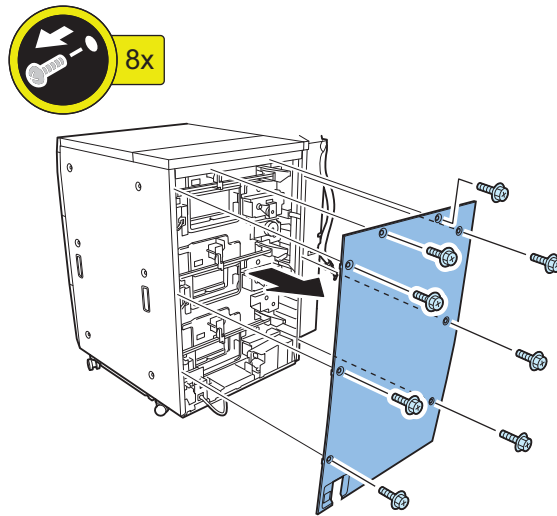
NOTE:

Following explains installation of the Paper Deck Heater Unit to the Middle Deck. Same procedure applies to installation of the Paper Deck Heater Unit to the Lower Deck.

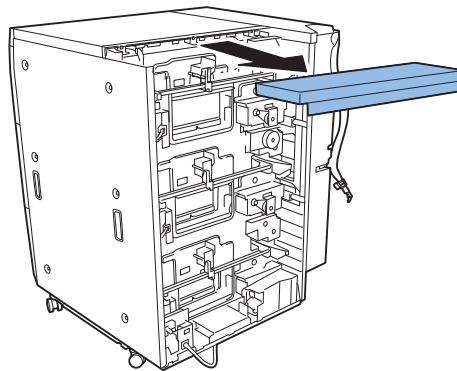


1. Remove the Deck Rear Right Cover.

- 8 Screws

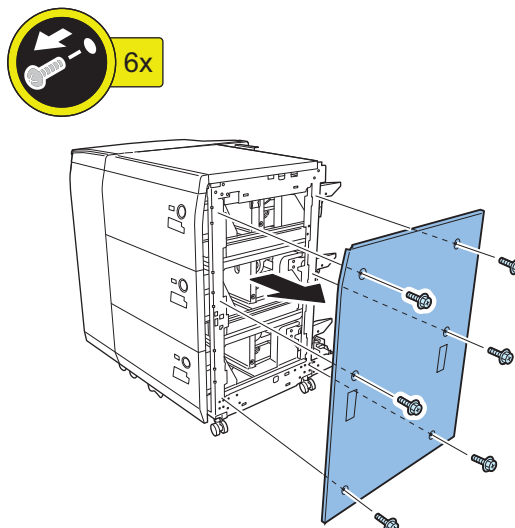


2. Remove the Deck Upper Rear Cover.



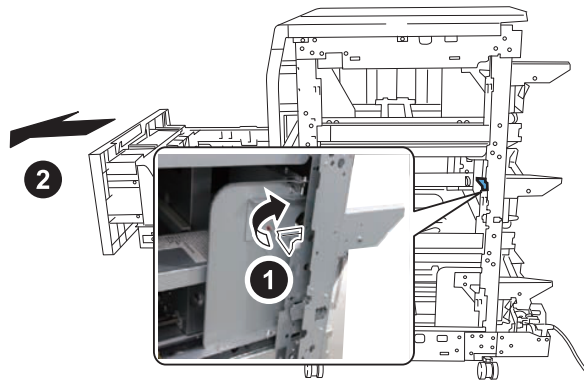
3. Remove the Deck Right Cover.

- 6 Screws



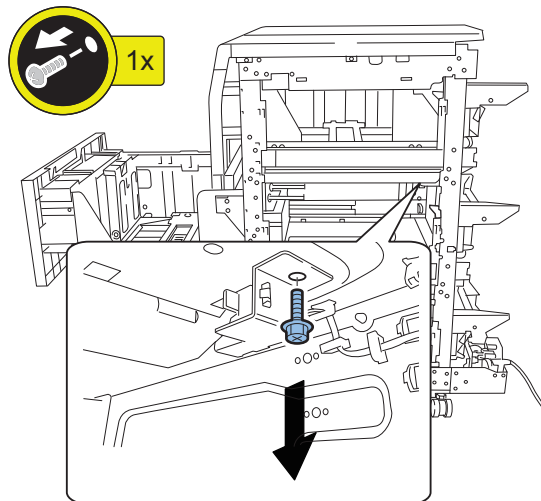


4. Open the Middle Deck manually with pressing the latch.

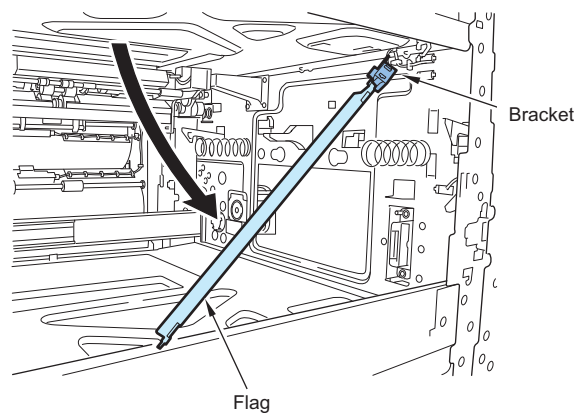


5. Remove the screw securing the Foreign Substance Sensor Bracket.

- 1 Screw



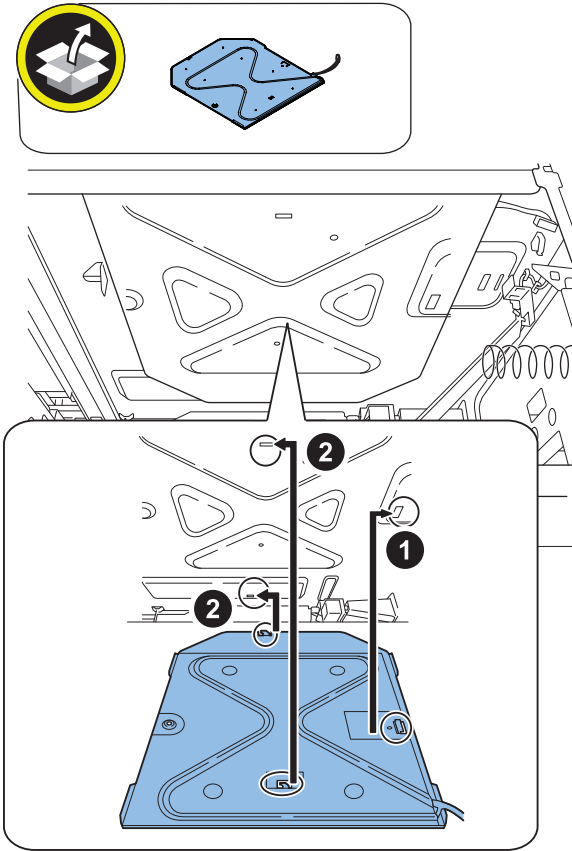
6. While the Sensor Harness is connected, remove the Foreign Substance Sensor Bracket and the Foreign Substance Sensor Flag.





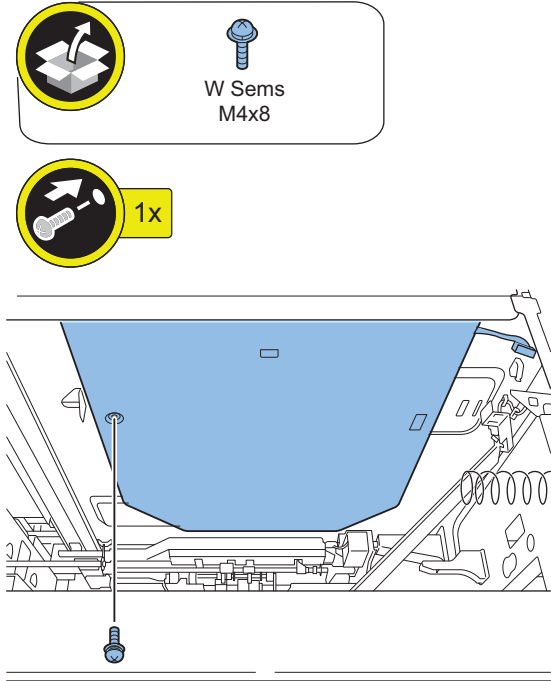
7. Install the Heater Unit.

- 3 Claws



8. Secure the Heater Unit.

- 1 Screw (W Sems; M4x8)



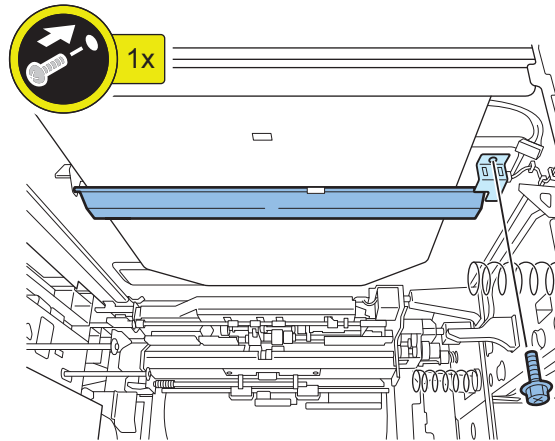


9. Install the Foreign Substance Sensor Flag and the Foreign Substance Sensor Bracket to the original position.

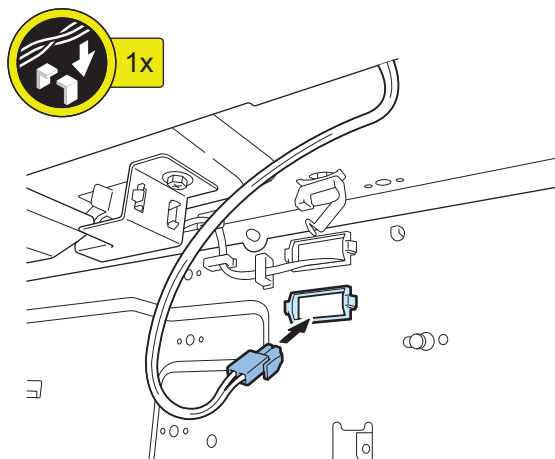
- 1 Screw ((RS Tightening; M4x8)

NOTE:

Check that the sensor and the connector are securely connected and attached to the base.

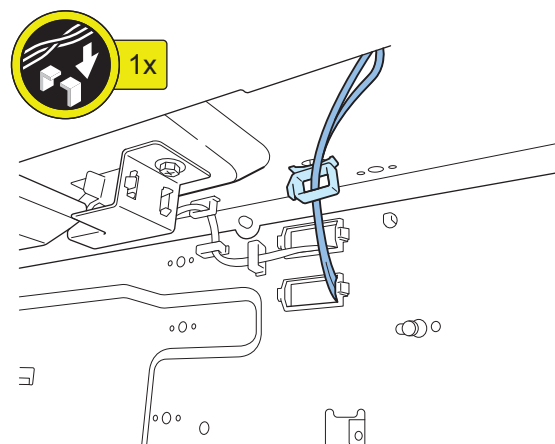


10. Pass the Heater Unit Harness through the Square Bush at the lower side.



11. Secure the Heater Unit Harness and close the Middle Deck.

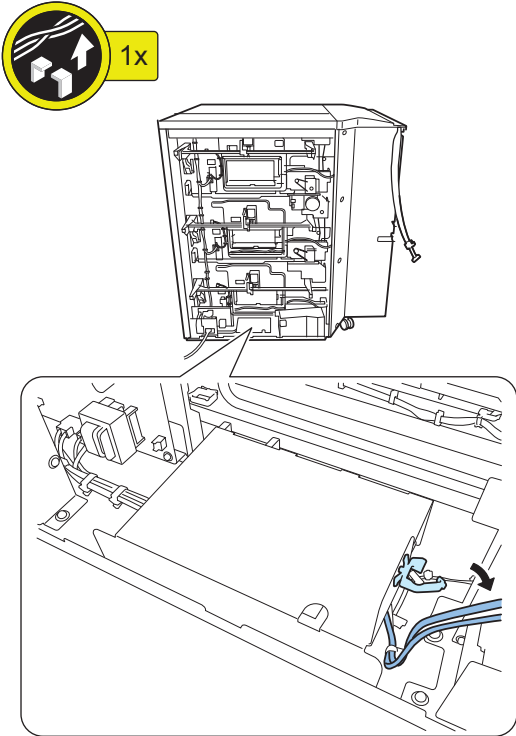
- 1 Wire Saddle





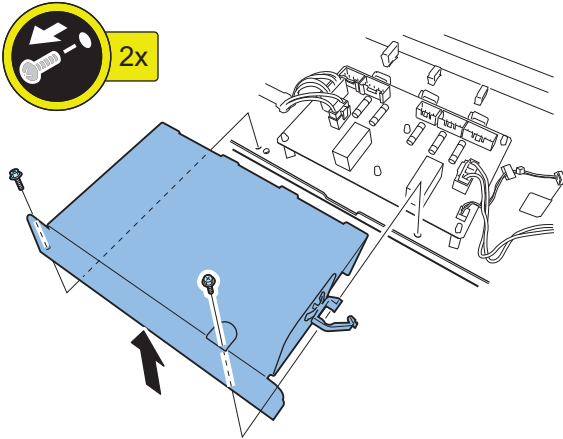
12. Release the AC Distribution PCB Harness.

- 1 Wire Saddle



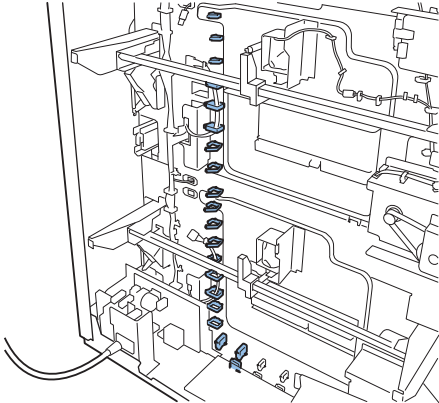
13. Remove the AC Distribution PCB Cover.

- 2 Screws



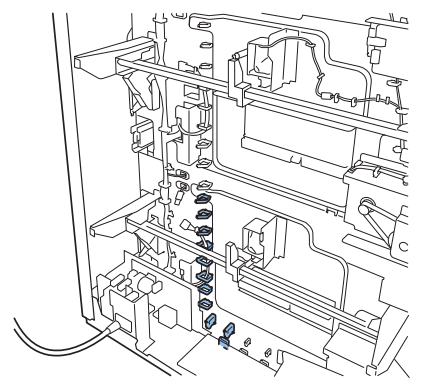


14. Open the 20 Wire Saddles.



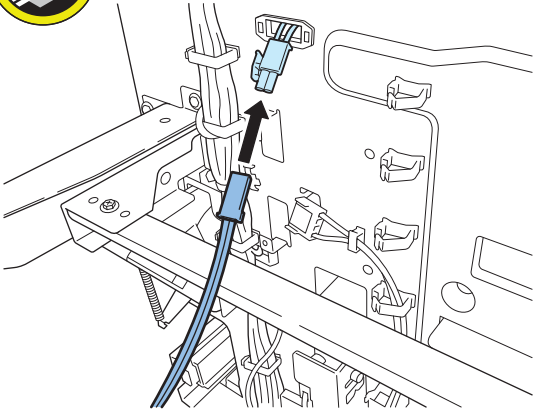
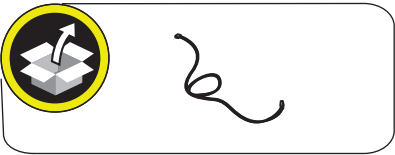
NOTE:

When installing the Paper Deck Heater Unit to the Lower Deck, open the 11 Wire Saddles.



15. Connect the 2-pin connector side of the Middle Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness to the Heater Unit Harness.

- 1 Connector

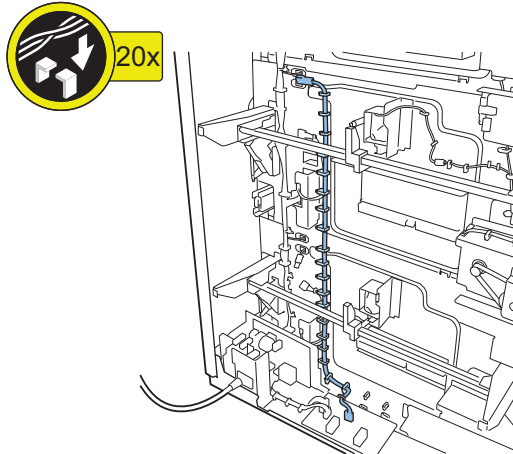


**16. Secure the Middle Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness.**

- 20 Wire Saddles

NOTE:

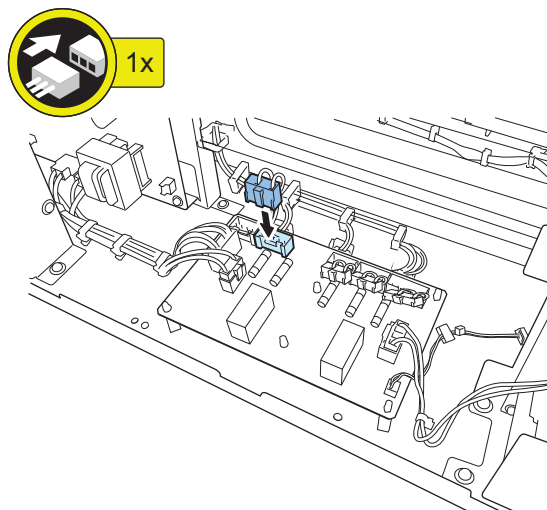
When installing the Paper Deck Heater Unit to the Lower Deck, secure the Lower Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness with the 11 Wire Saddles.

**17. Install the 5-pin connector side of the Middle Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness to CN4 on the AC Distribution PCB.**

- 1 Connector

NOTE:

When installing the Paper Deck Heater Unit to the Lower Deck, install the 4-pin connector side of the Lower Deck Cassette Heater Relay Harness to CN3 on the AC Distribution PCB.

**18. Install the AC Distribution PCB Cover.**

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)
- 1 Wire Saddle

**19. Close the Middle Deck.**



20. Install the Deck Right Cover.

- 6 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)



21. Install the Deck Upper Rear Cover.



22. Install the Deck Rear Right Cover.

- 8 Screws (RS Tightening; M4×8)



23. Turn on the Cassette Heater Switch.



24. Insert the power plug to the outlet.



25. Turn ON the main power switch.

6

Paper Output Options

Buffer Pass Unit-M1.....	639
Document Insertion Unit-N1.....	651
Multi Function Professional Puncher- B1.....	681
Paper Folding Unit-J1.....	704
Document Insertion Unit-Q1, Document Insertion/Folding Unit-K1	744
Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher- AC1.....	787
2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1.....	823
Finisher Jogger Kit-A1.....	846
Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher- X1.....	858
Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1.....	897
Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1.....	921

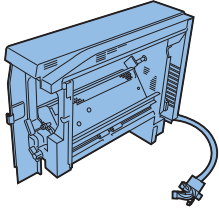
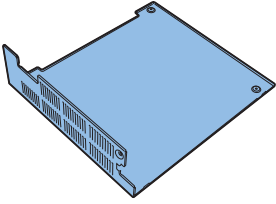
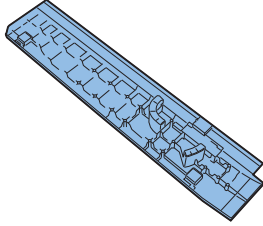
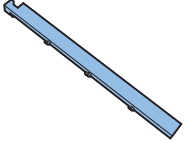
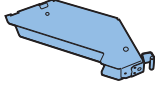
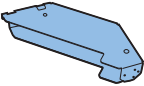




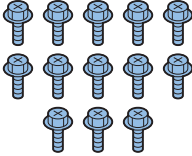


Buffer Pass Unit-M1

Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F276605

Checking the Contents

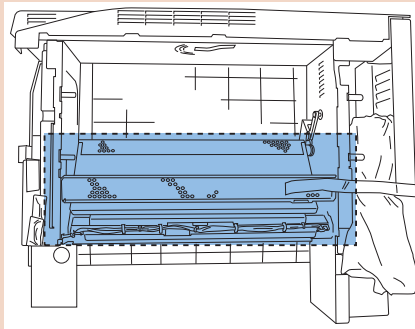
<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Buffer Path Unit X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Buffer Left Lower Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Buffer Front Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Delivery Outlet Upper Guide X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Cover Support Plate (Front) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Cover Support Plate (Rear) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Buffer Mounting Plate (Front) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Buffer Mounting Plate (Rear) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Connecting Harness Cover X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Hinge Shaft X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) X13 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Screw (P Tightening; M4x10) X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Wire Saddle X 1 			

Installation Procedure

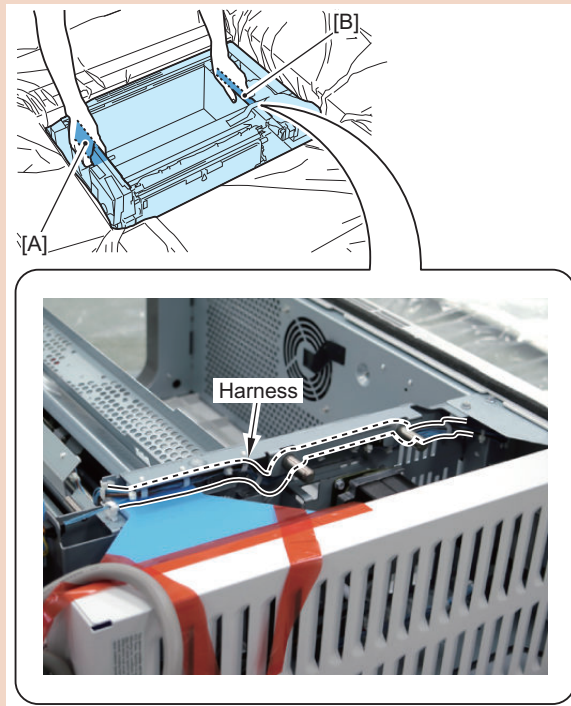
■ Unpacking

CAUTION:

- Be sure to open the plastic bag before starting the work. Holding the Buffer Path Unit without removing the plastic bag may cause slipping.
- Do not hold the area inside the dotted line of the figure; otherwise the Paper Path Guide may be deformed.



- Be sure to hold the frame [A] and the frame [B] of the Buffer Path Unit. Be sure to avoid the harness when holding the frame [B]; otherwise the harness may get damaged.

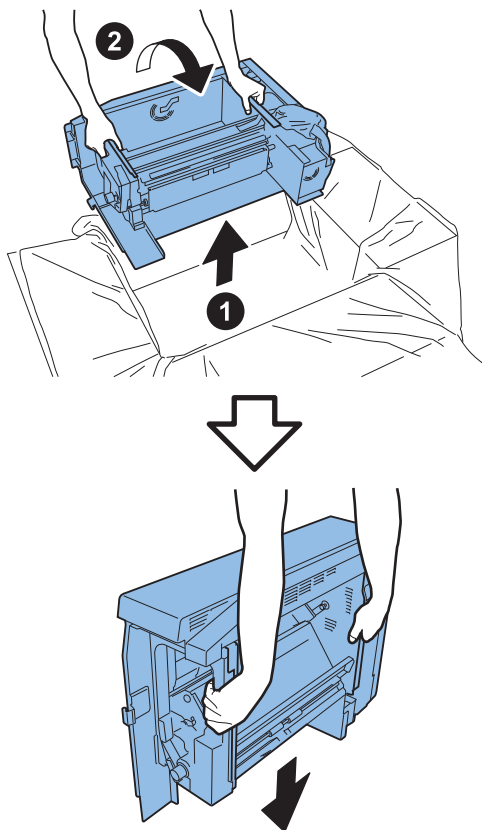
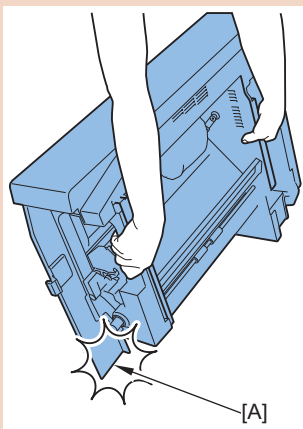




1. Lift the Buffer Path Unit directly upward and place the Buffer Path Unit with its bottom side down.

CAUTION:

Do not move it using the [A] part as the fulcrum nor place the unit on the floor while being tilted; otherwise the [A] part may be deformed.

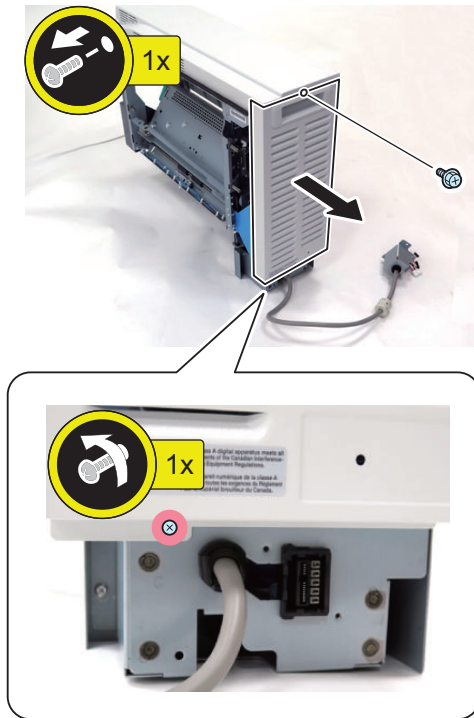


2. Remove the tapes.



3. Remove the Rear Cover.

- 1 Screw (to remove)
- 1 Screw (to loosen)



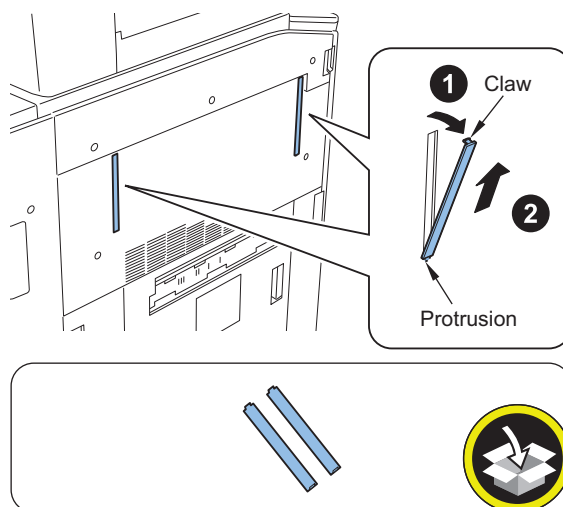
4. Remove the cushioning materials, and install the Rear Cover (2 screws).

■ Installing the Buffer Mounting Plate



1. Remove the 2 Handle Covers. (The removed Handle Cover will not be used.)

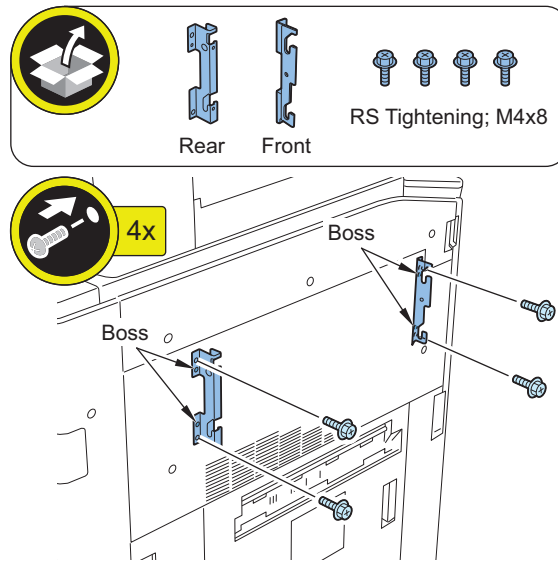
- 1 Claw each
- 1 Protrusion each





2. Install the Buffer Mounting Plate (Front and Rear).

- 2 Bosses each
- 4 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

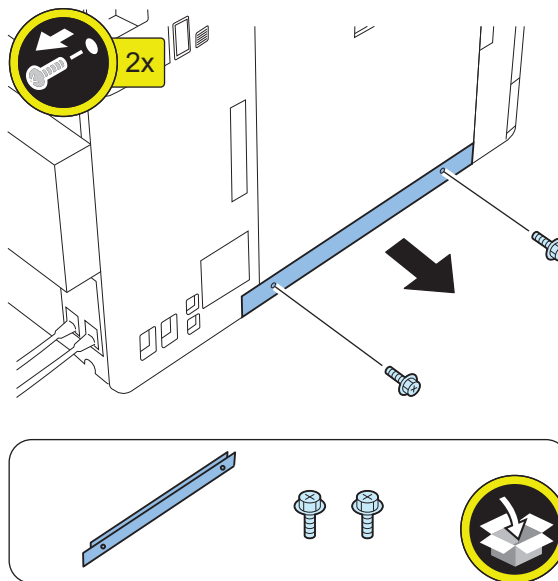


■ Installing the Buffer Path Unit



1. Remove the Left Lower Cover 1 (the removed parts will not be used).

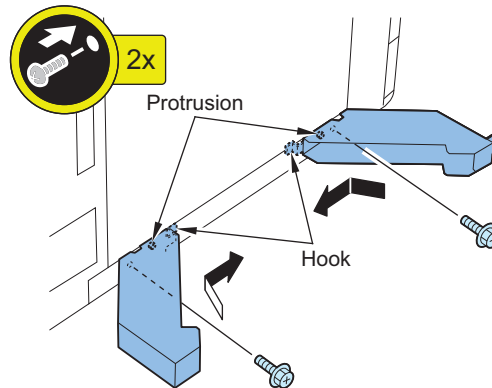
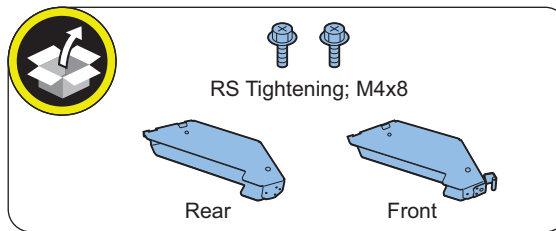
- 2 Screws





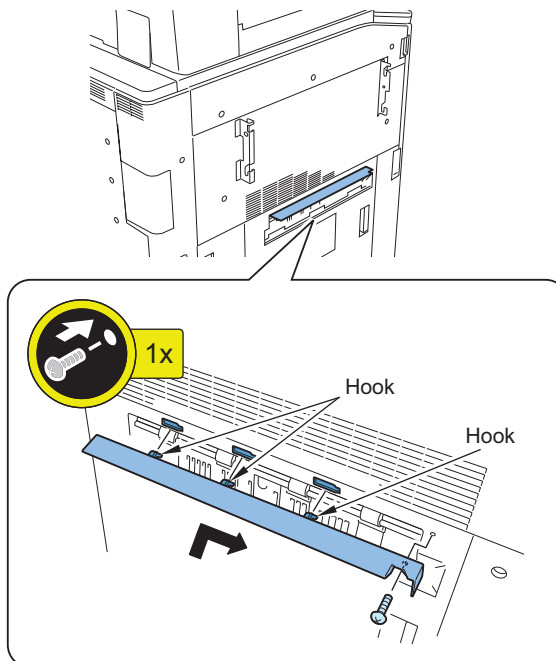
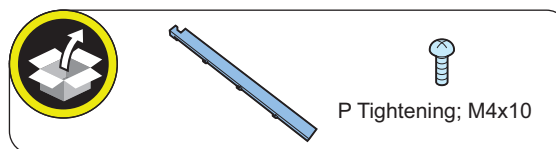
2. Install the Cover Support Plate (Front and Rear).

- 1 Hook each
- 1 Protrusion each
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)



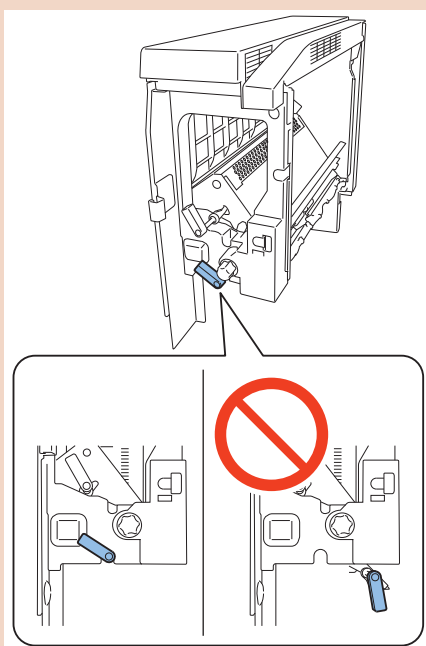
3. Install the Delivery Outlet Upper Guide to the hole on the Reverse Door Cover.

- 3 Hooks
- 1 Screw (P Tightening; M4x10)



CAUTION:

Before installing the Buffer Path Unit to the host machine, check that the Jam Removal Lever is in the location indicated in the figure.

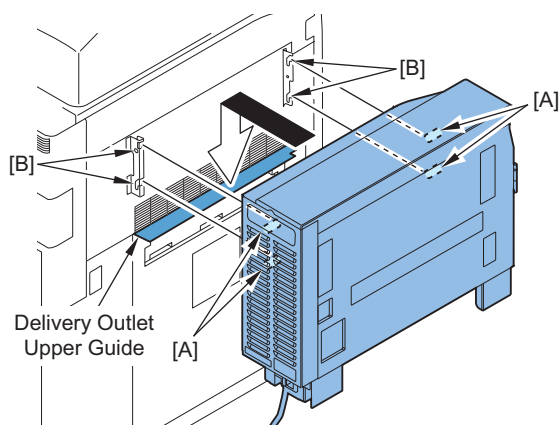


□

4. Hook the 4 shafts [A] of the Buffer Path Unit to the 4 U-shaped grooves [B] of the Buffer Mounting Plate to install the unit.

CAUTION:

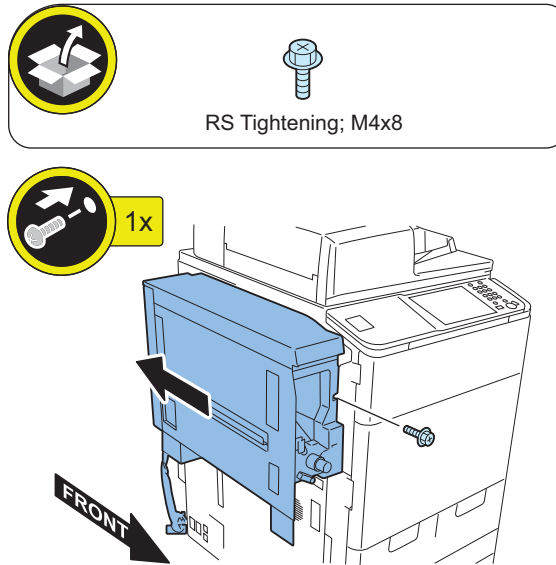
Be careful not to come into contact with the Delivery Outlet Upper Guide.





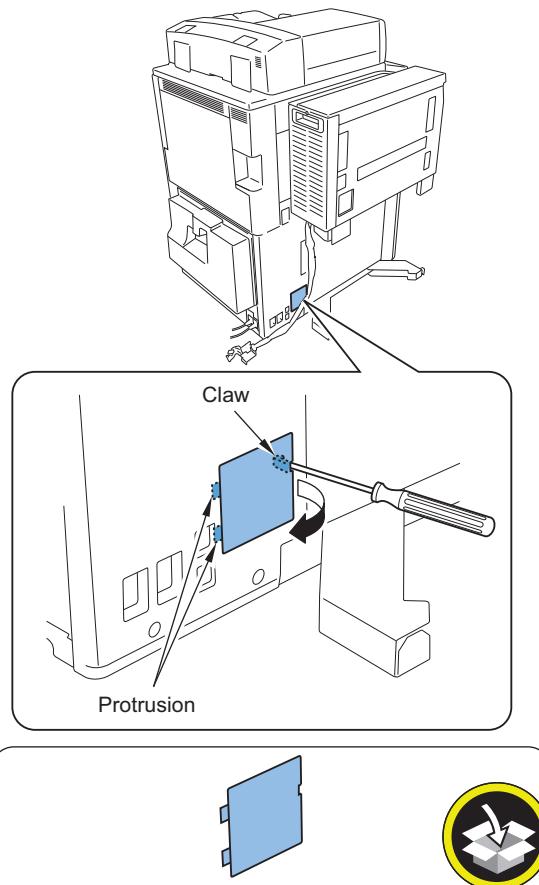
5. Move the Buffer Path Unit in the direction of the arrow, and secure it while it is pushed against the Buffer Mounting Plate (Front).

- 1 Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8)



6. Insert the flat-blade screwdriver to remove the Connector Cover (the removed Connector Cover will not be used).

- 1 Claw
- 2 Protrusions





7. Connect the 3 connectors.

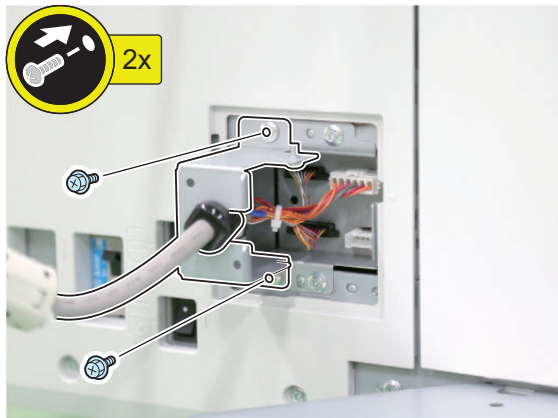
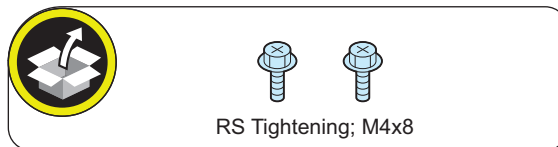


8. Secure the Connecting Harness Stopping Plate.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

NOTE:

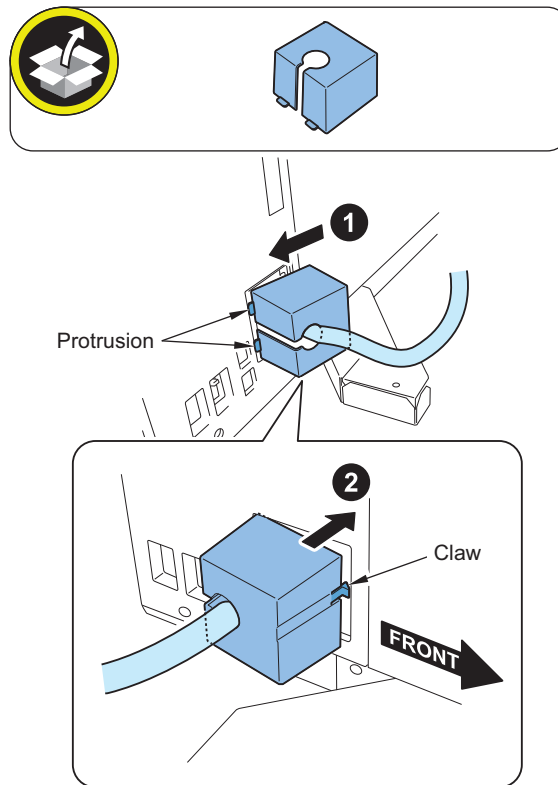
Be careful not to trap the cables with the Connecting Harness Cover.





9. Put the Buffer Cable through the groove of the Connecting Harness Cover, and install the Connecting Harness Cover to the host machine.

- 2 Protrusions
- 1 Claw

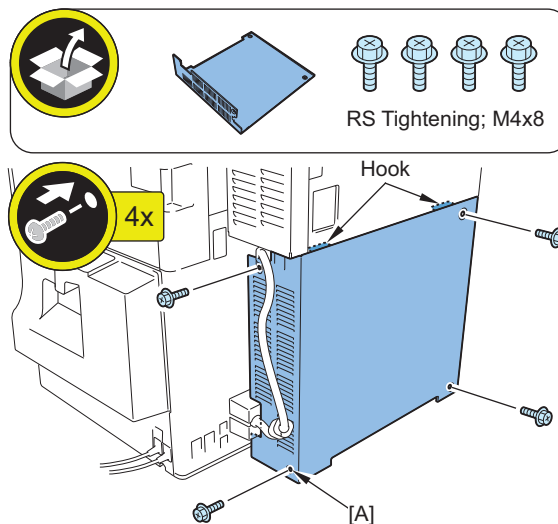


10. Install the Buffer Left Lower Cover.

- 2 Hooks
- 4 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

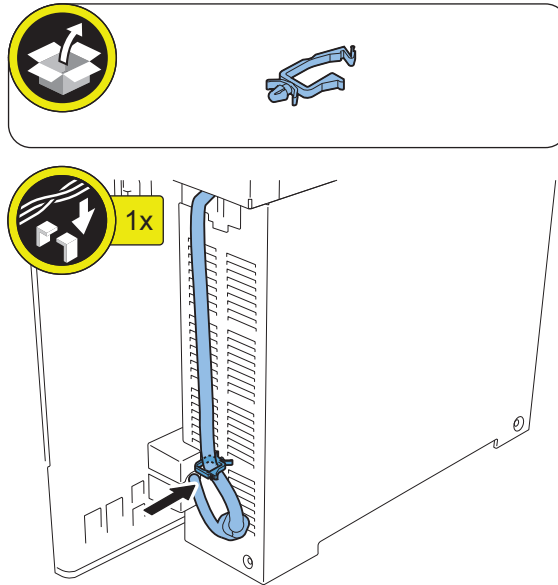
NOTE:

When connecting to the downstream equipment, secure the Shunt Cable together at the [A] part.

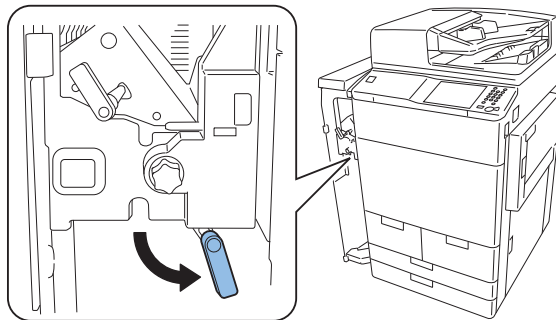




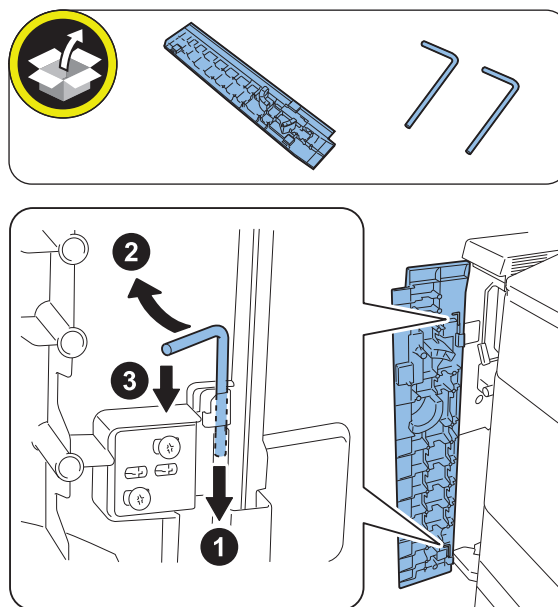
11. Install a Wire Saddle and secure the Buffer Cable with it.



12. Turn the Jam Removal Lever to the right side to allow paper feed.



13. Align the 2 hinge positions of the Buffer Front Cover with those of the Buffer Path Unit, and insert the hinge shafts in the direction of the arrow.

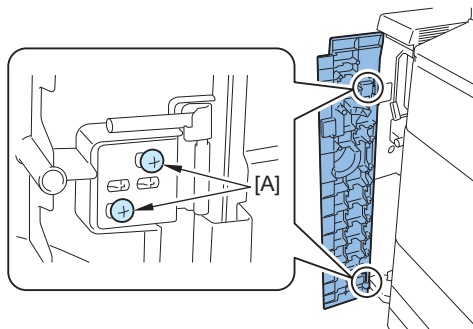
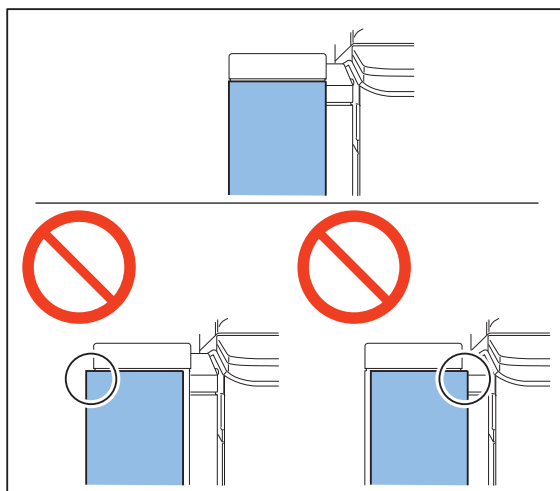




14. Close the Buffer Front Cover.



15. If the Buffer Front Cover is not aligned when viewed from the front side, loosen the 2 screws [A], adjust the left and right positions of the Buffer Front Cover, and then tighten the screws again.



Document Insertion Unit-N1

Checking before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install this equipment.
- Do not carry this equipment with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

Checking the power supply

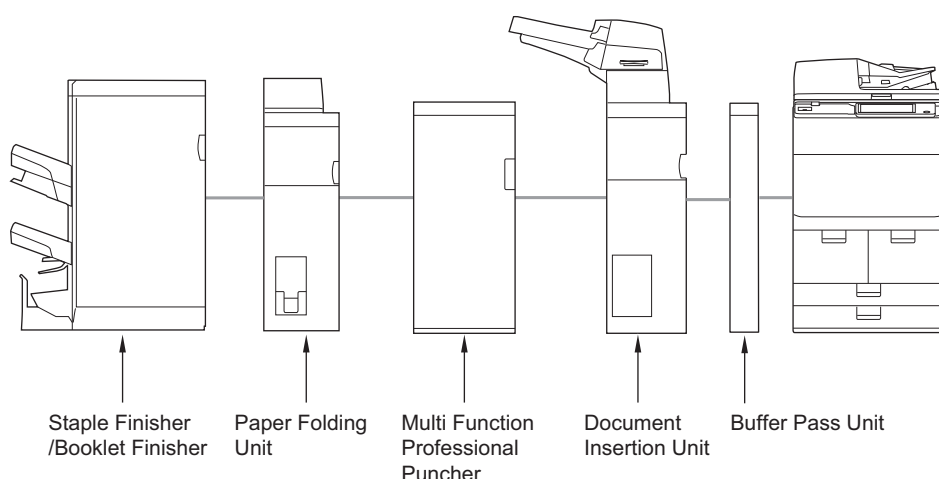
1. The equipment must be connectable to the outlet that can supply the rated voltage $\pm 10\%$ - 15% at the specified ampere or higher.
120V - 230V 1A
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this machine near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

Points to Note before Installation

When installing the machine, be sure to note the following points.

- Refer to "Order of Installation of options" when installing this Equipment.
- The weight of this equipment is approx. 61.0 kg. Be sure to work in a group of 2 persons or more.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.
- When this equipment is moved, ensure that the overturning prevention stay is drawn out before moving it.
- To connect the Document Insertion Unit and Finisher-AN1/Saddle Finisher-AN2, Staple Finisher-W1 PRO/ Booklet Finisher-W1 PRO, this Option Controller Kit is necessary.
- Be sure to install the Option Controller Kit to the Document Insertion before connecting the Document Insertion Unit to the upstream equipment.

Installation Order of Options



1. Buffer Pass Unit
2. Document Insertion Unit
3. Multi Function Professional Puncher
4. Paper Folding Unit
5. Staple Finisher / Booklet Finisher

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.
F281260

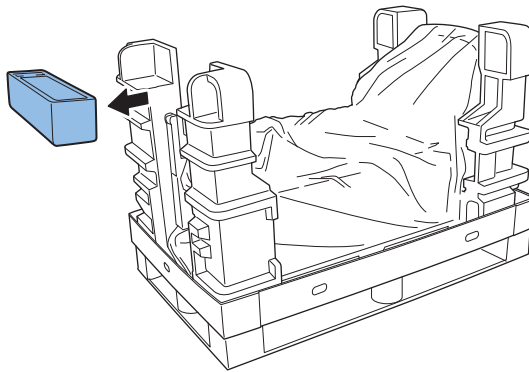
● Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

The equipment is secured by tapes, cushioning and other materials to protect it from vibration and impact during transit. Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials as instructed below before installing the equipment. Keep all fixings in a safe place for later reuse in reshipping the equipment, as for relocation and repairs.

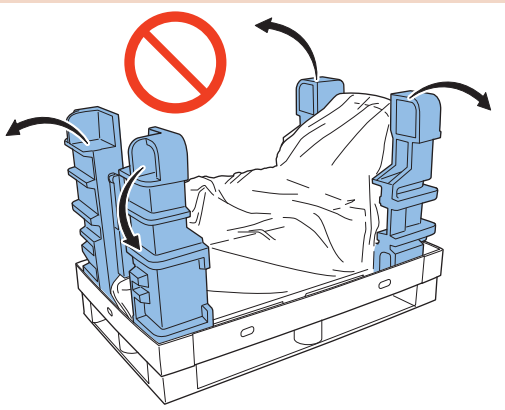


1. Take out the accessory box from the cushioning materials and the labels.



CAUTION:

Don't remove 4 cushioning materials because it may cause to deform the equipment.

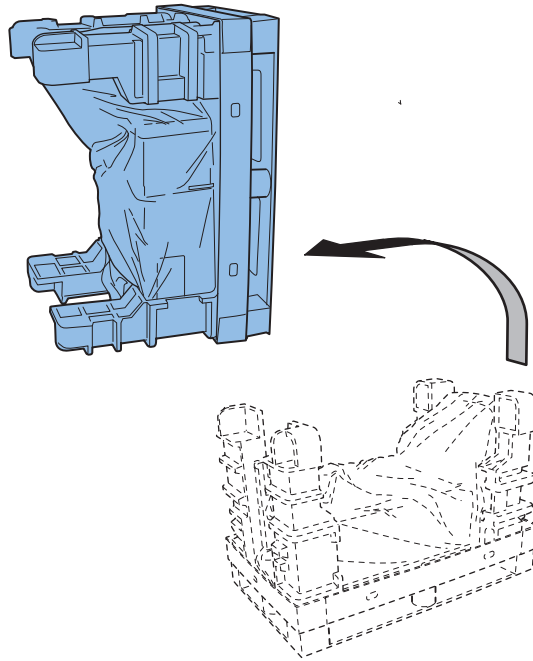




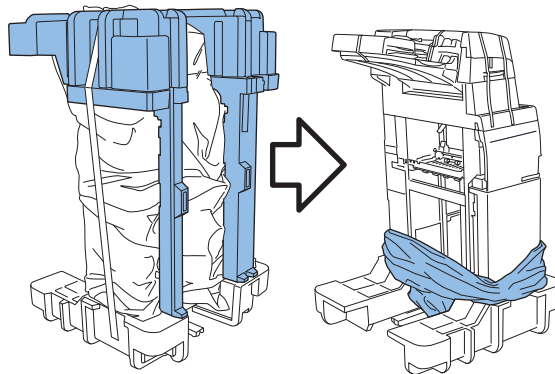
2. Left the equipment together with the pallet by working in a group of 3 persons or more.

CAUTION:

- Be sure not to have the equipment itself because it may cause to deform or damage the equipment.
- This equipment is so heavy (weighing: approx. 61.0 kg). Be sure to work in a group of 3 persons or more.

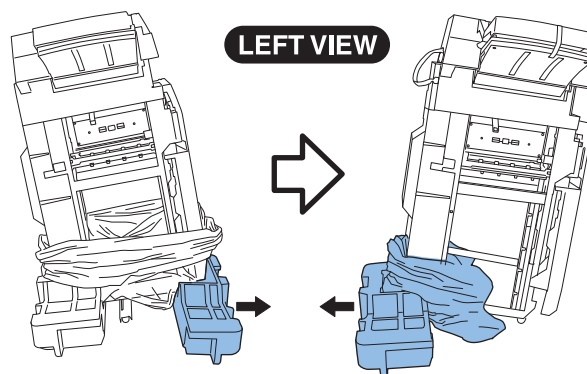


3. Remove the pallet and cushioning materials shown in the figure. Then, put the plastic cover down.





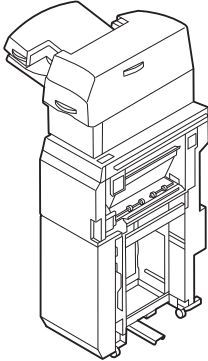
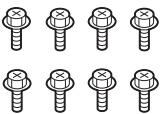


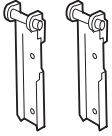


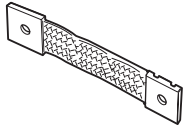

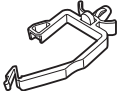
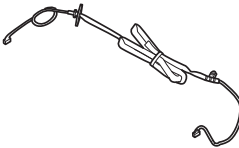





4. Lift the front and rear side lightly to remove the cushioning materials and plastic cover. Then, remove all packing tapes.



● Checking the Contents

Make sure that none of the following parts are missing.

• Parts of Document Insertion

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Document Insertion x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) x8 *1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Power Cord x1 (for 120V model) x3 (for 230V model) *6 
	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Screw (Flat Head Screw ; M3x5) x2 *4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Clamp Platex2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ground Plate x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Positioning Pin x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Shunt Cable x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (Binding; M4x10) x2 *5 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Wire Saddle x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Interface Cable x1 *2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Stopper (rear) x1 *4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Stopper (front) x1 *4 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Screw (W-Sems ; M4x12) x1 *2 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Paper Size Label x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Prohibition Paper Label (230V model only) x1 	

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

*1: The 6 screws are used for Staple Finisher-W1 /Booklet Finisher-W1.

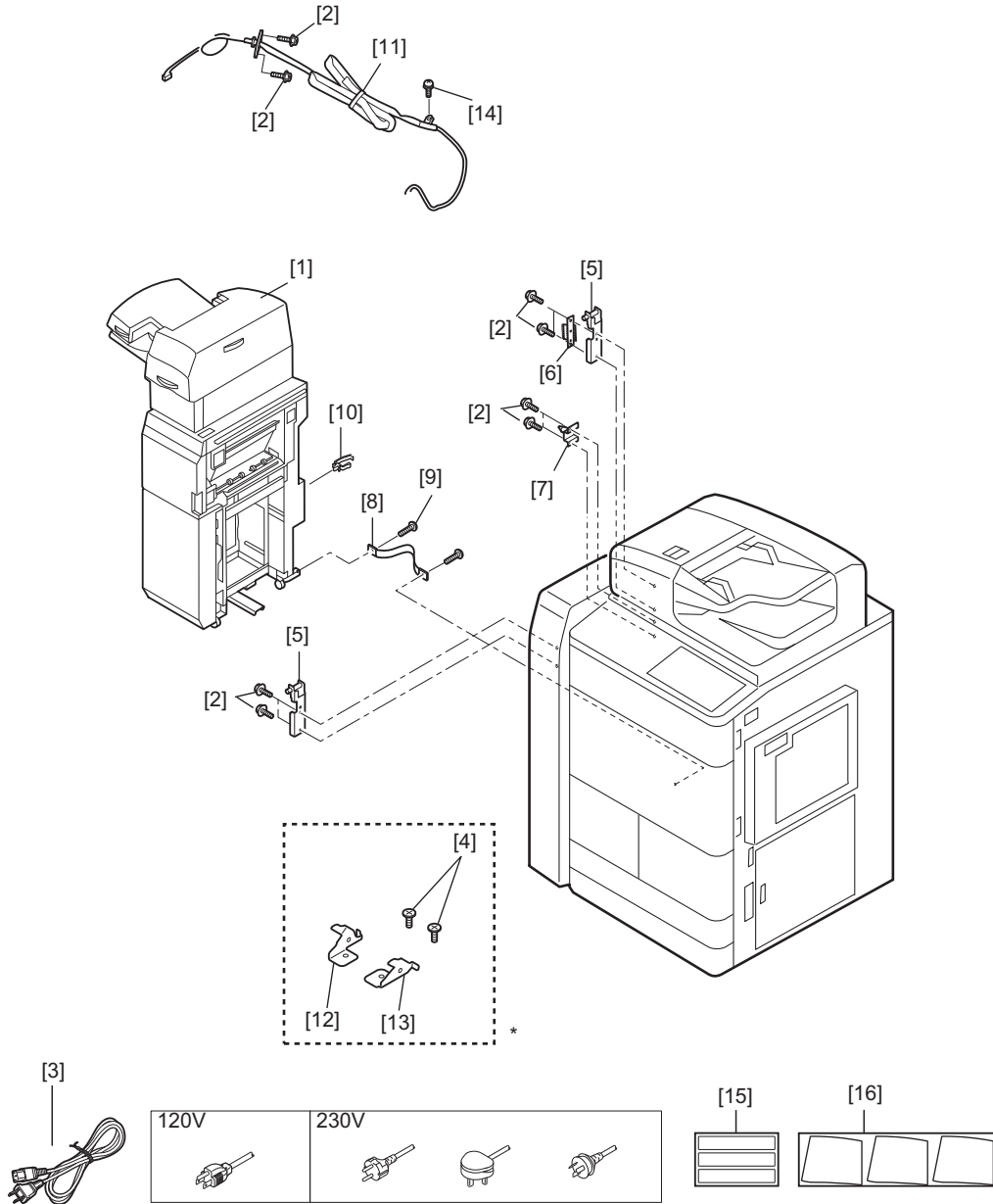
*1: The 8 screws are used for Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher- X1.

*2: These are used for connecting to Staple Finisher-X1 /Booklet Finisher- X1.

*3, *4, *5: Not used.

*6: Use the correct power cord to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

Installation Outline Drawing



* : Not used.

Installation Procedure

■ Preparation for Host Machine

● Preparation for Host Machine

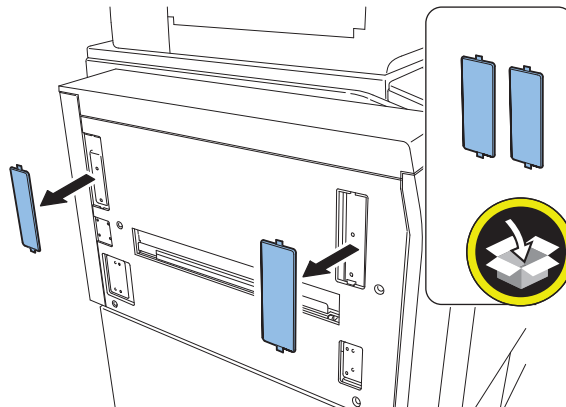


1. Remove the 2 Face Covers.

NOTE:

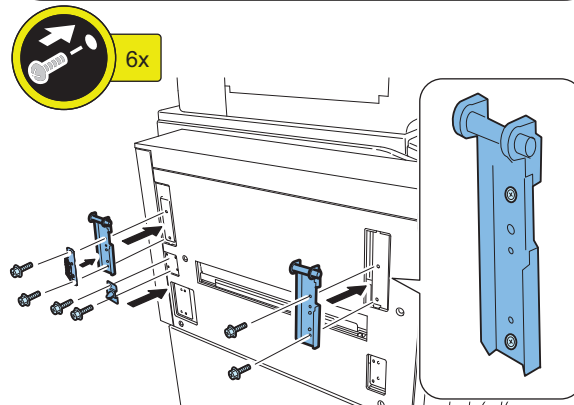
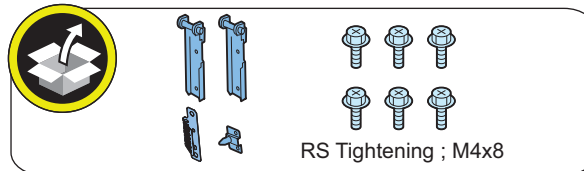
The Buffer Pass Unit must be installed before installing this equipment.

- 2 Claws



2. Fix the 2 Clamp Plates and the Positioning Pin to the host machine. At this time, fix the Supplied Ground Plate along with the rear Clamp Plate in the rear side.

- 6 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)



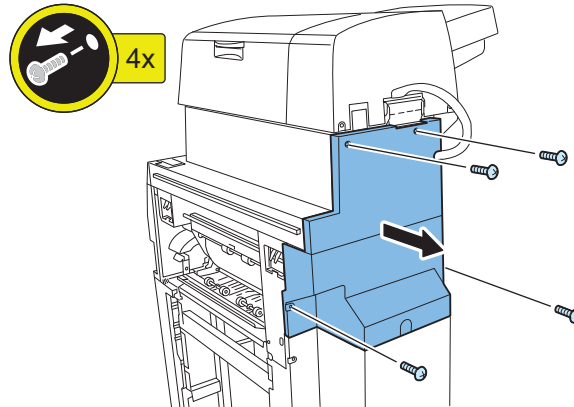
■ Preparation of this Equipment

● Change the Position of the Belt



1. Remove the Rear Upper Cover.

- 4 Screws

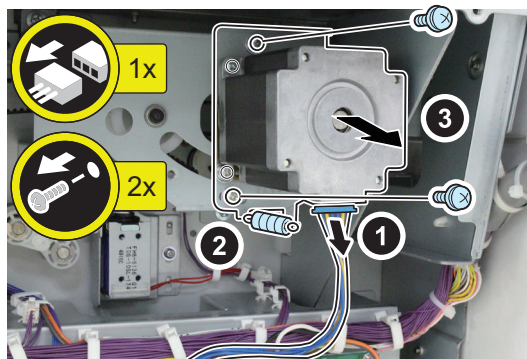


2. Remove the Motor.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Spring
- 2 Screws

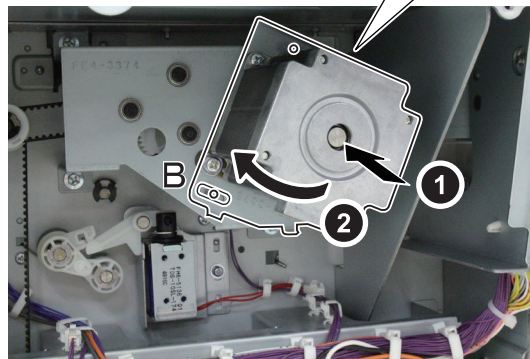
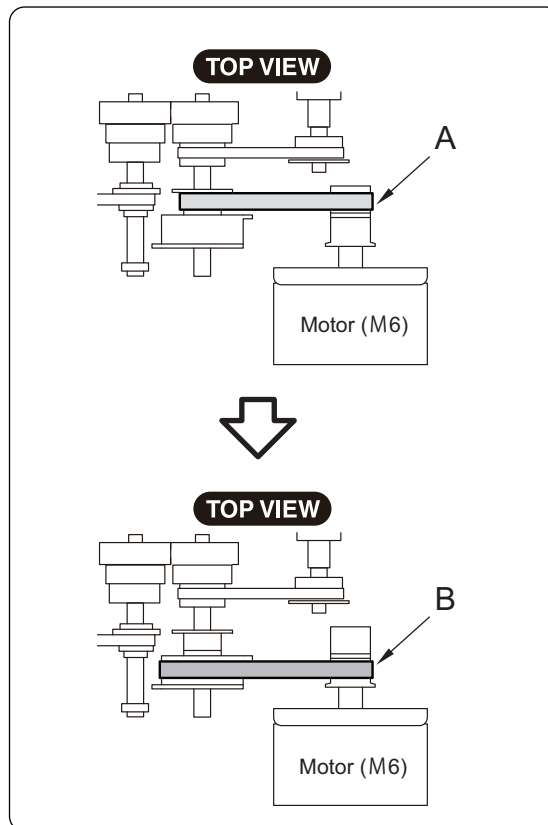
NOTE:

When removing the Spring, loosen the 2 Screws.





3. Attach the Motor to original position, and then tilt the Motor so that the screw hole of marking "B" is visible. While holding the Motor with one hand, change the position of the belt from "A" to "B" as shown in the figure.

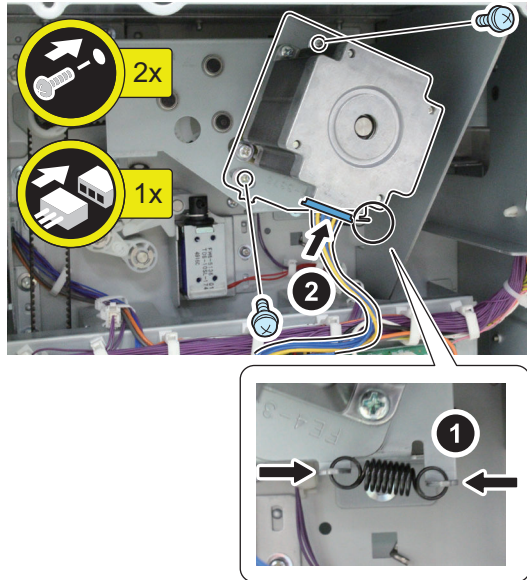


**4. Fix the Motor.**

- 1 Spring
- 2 Screws
- 1 Connector

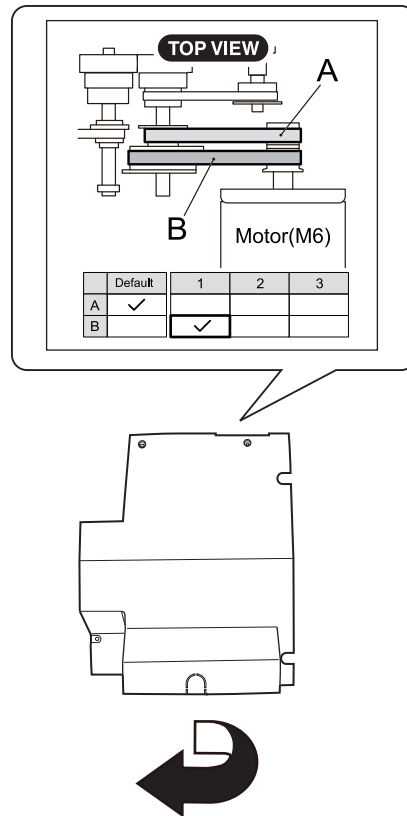
NOTE:

When removing the Spring, temporary tighten the 2 Screws.





5. Write the position of the belt in the service label. (Checking the current position (B))



NOTE:

The service label affixed to the Rear Upper Cover.

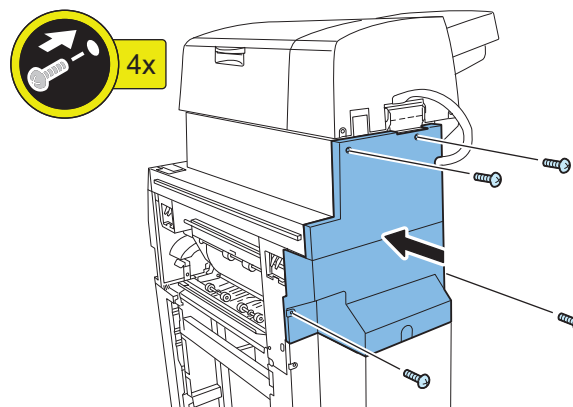


6. Install the Rear Upper Cover.

NOTE:

When installing the Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher- X1, install the Rear Upper Cover after connecting the Interface Cable to this equipment. (Refer to "Connecting the Interface Cable (for Staple Finisher-X1/ Booklet Finisher-X1)")

- 4 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)

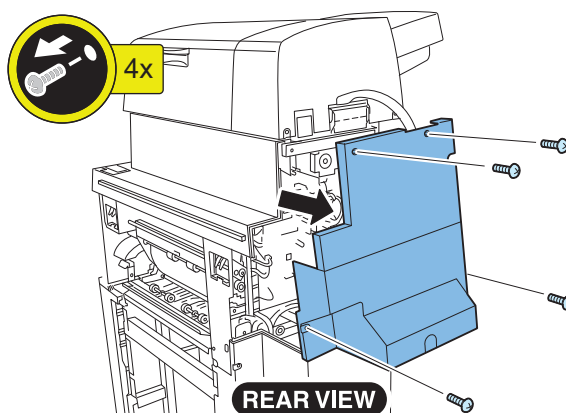


• Connecting the Interface Cable



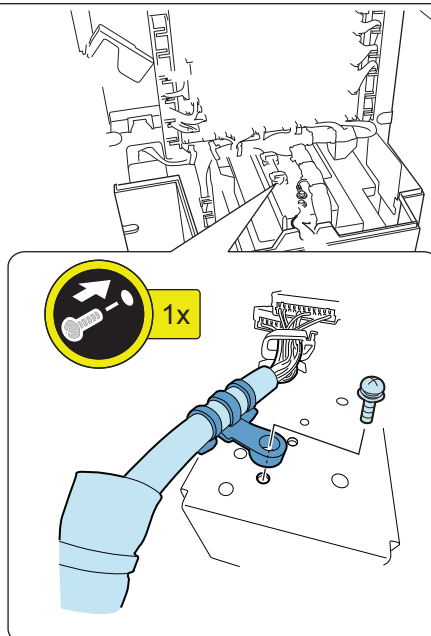
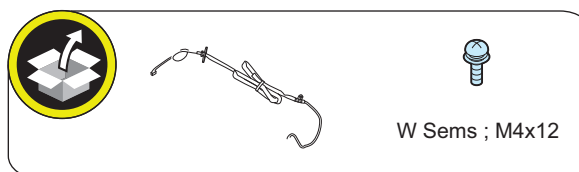
1. Remove the rear upper cover.

4 Screws



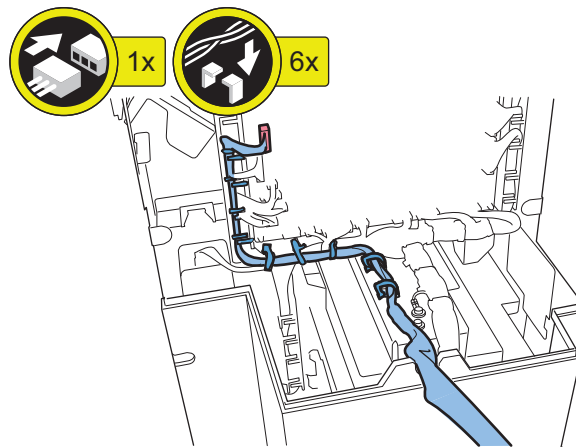
2. Fix the Interface Cable.

• 1 Screw (W Sems ; M4x12)

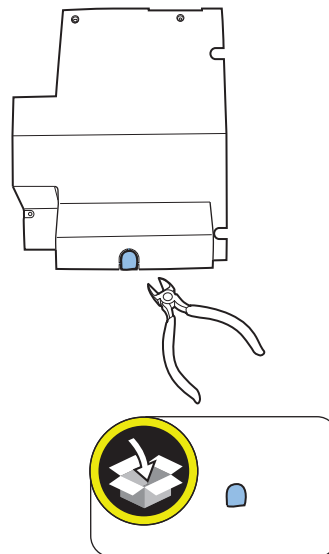


**3. Connect the Interface Cable Connector to the board.**

- 1 Connector
- 1 Guide
- 5 Wire Saddles

**4. Cut out the blindfold cover of the Rear Upper Cover with side cutters.****CAUTION:**

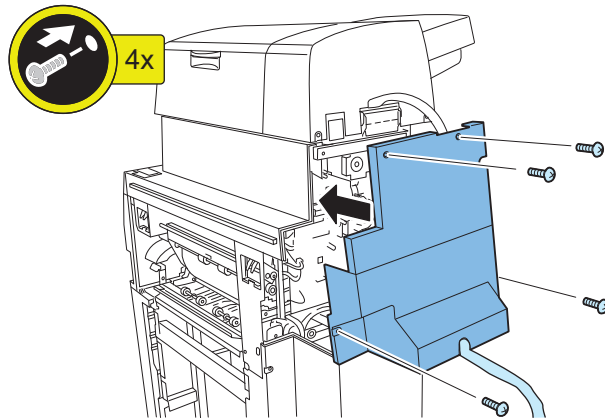
Be sure to check that there is no burr.



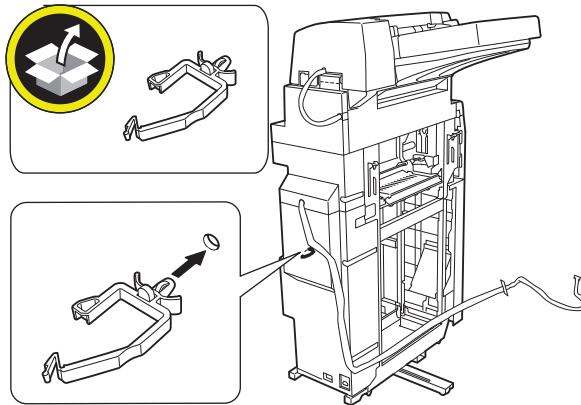


5. Put the Interface Cable through the hole which was cut in the previous step, and then restore the Rear Upper Cover.

- 4 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)



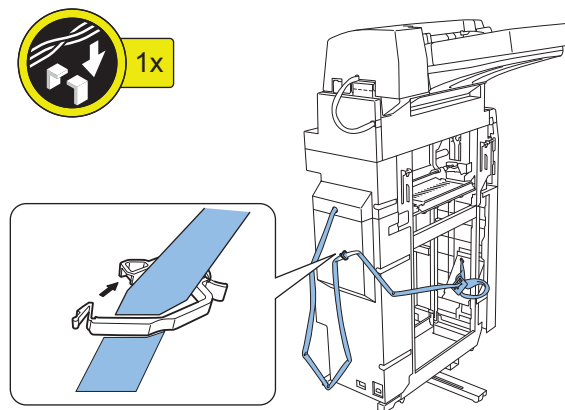
6. Fix the Wire Saddle to the Rear Lower Cover.



7. To temporarily stow the Interface Cable into the Wire Saddle.

NOTE:

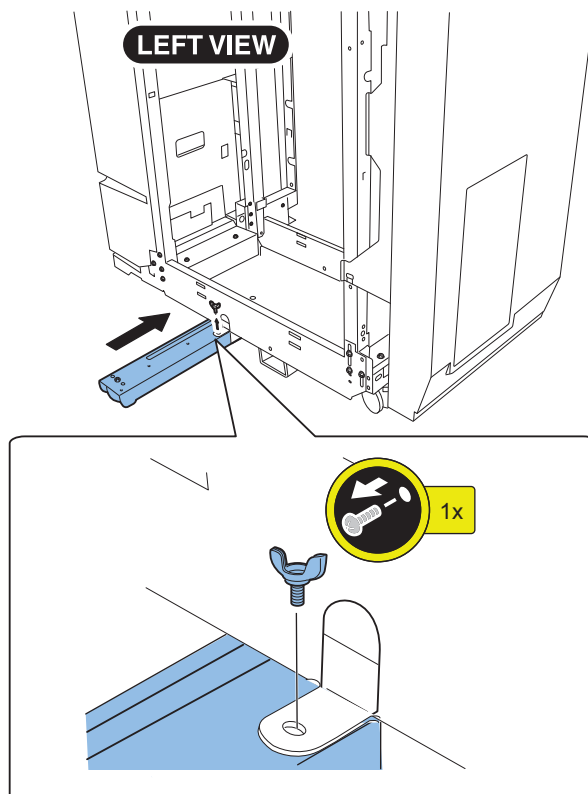
After installing the Finisher, adjust length of the Interface Cable.



■ Connecting to Connection Machine



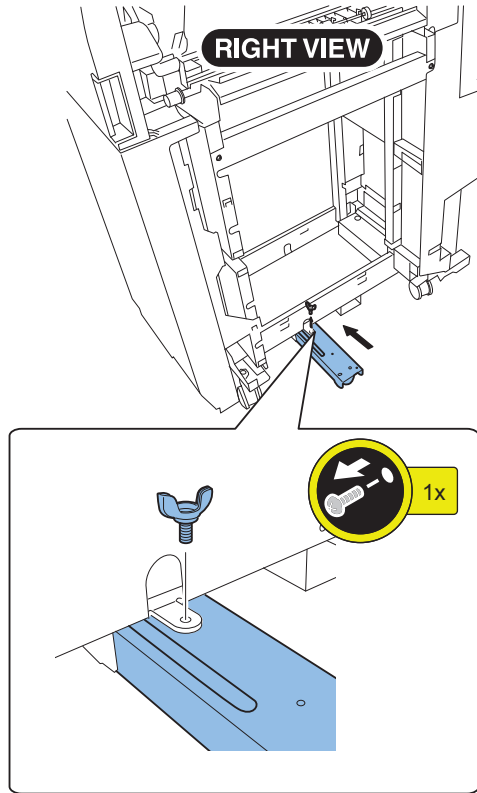
1. Stow the overturning prevention stay (left) by removing a wing screw and lifting the stay up.



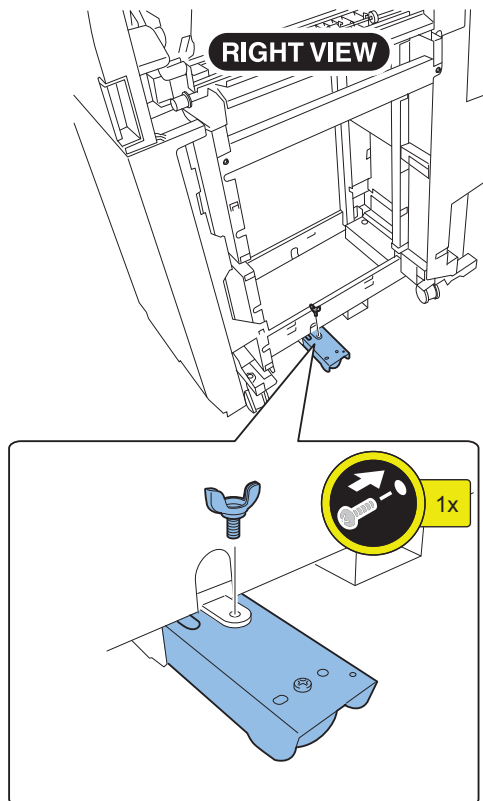
2. After stowing the overturning prevention stay (left), fix it with the removed wing screw.



3. Removing a wing screw. Then stow the overturning prevention stay (right) by lifting the stay up.

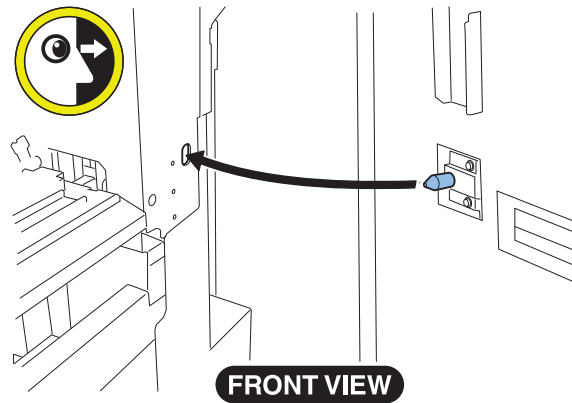


4. After stowing the overturning prevention stay (right), fix it with the removed wing screw.





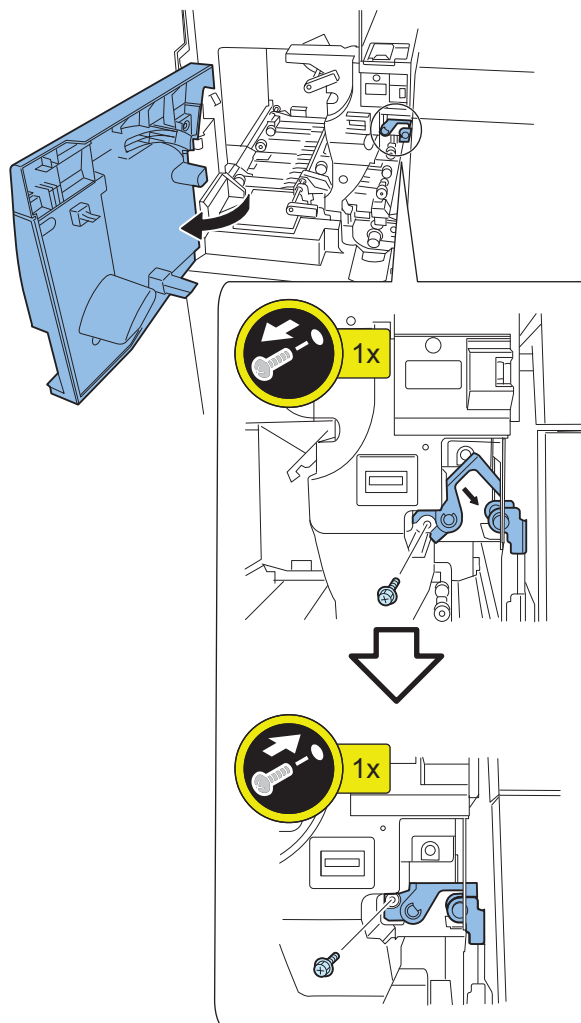
5. Fit the Document Insertion Unit to the host machine so the positioning pin gets in the hole of the Document Insertion Unit.



6. Open the front upper cover. Remove 1 screw and take down the lock lever, and hook it on the clamp plate. Fix the lock lever with removed screw.

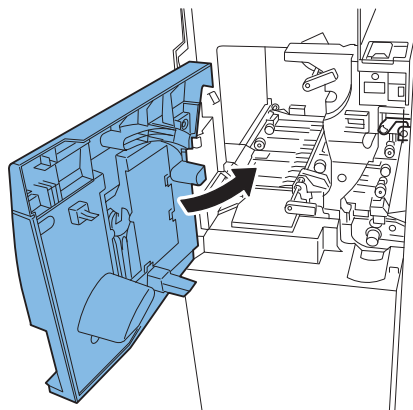
NOTE:

When it is hard to hook the lock lever to the clamp plate, use the screw driver or a like tool.





7. Close the front upper cover.



■ Connecting Communication Cable

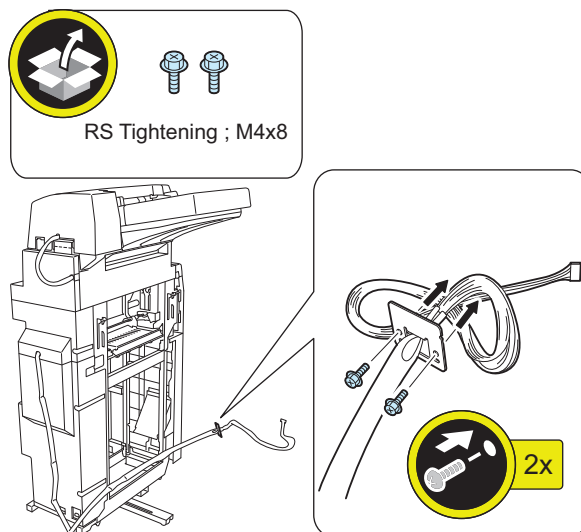


1. Connect the Interface Cable to the finisher.

- 2 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)

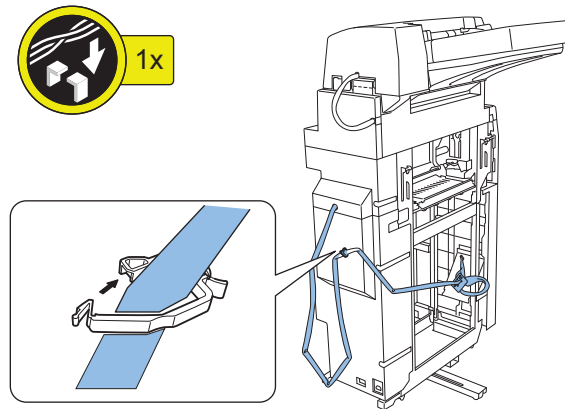
NOTE:

For connecting to the finisher, refer to the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 Installation Procedure.





2. Stow the excess length of the Interface Cable connected to the finisher into the Wire Saddle.



■ Connecting the Power Cord



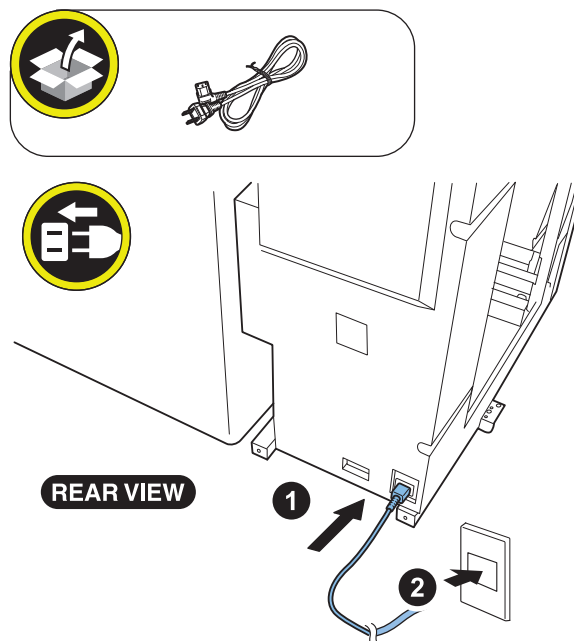
1. Insert the Power Cord into this equipment. Connect the plug end of the Power Cord into an external power outlet.

NOTE:

Illustrations used in this procedure are those of imagePRESS C10000VP series.

⚠ CAUTION:

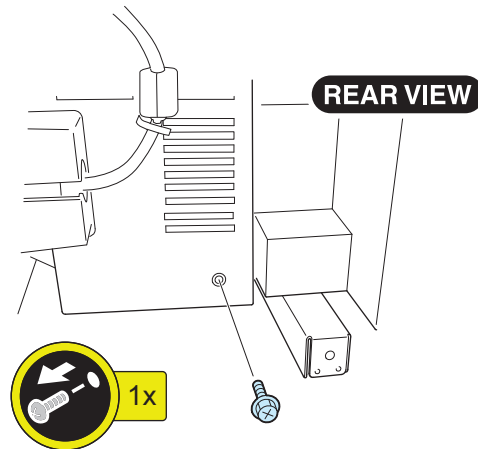
Make sure that the Intermediate power cable connects to the socket firmly. If connecting precariously, it may result in a smoke or fire.



■ Connecting the Shunt Cable



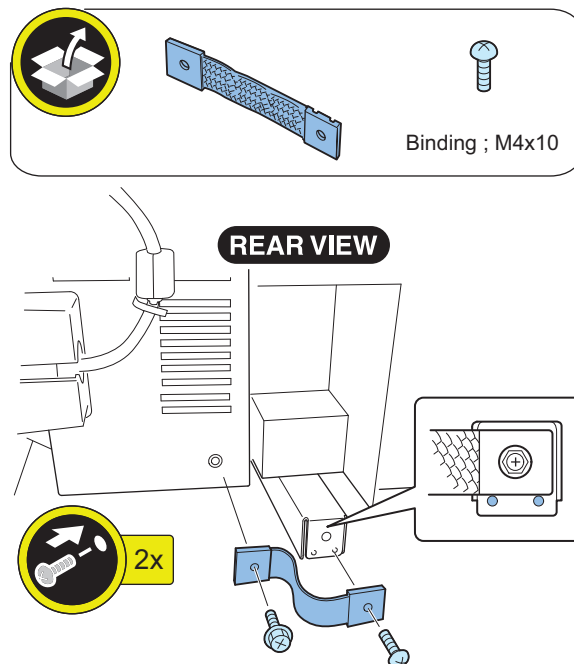
1. Remove the screw at the rear lower position of the Buffer Pass Unit.



2. Fix the Shunt Cable at the rear bottom of the Buffer Pass Unit and this equipment.
 - 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)
 - 1 Screw (RS Tightening ; M4x10) (removed in Step 1.)

NOTE:

When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



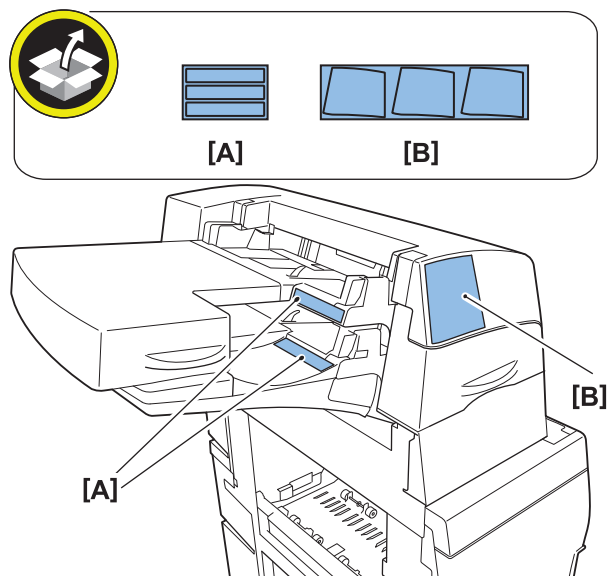
■ Labeling



1. Affix the supplied 3 labels.

[A] : Paper size label (2 sheets)

[B] : Prohibition Paper Label (1 sheet) (230V model only)



● Adjustment

■ Height/ Inclination Checking and Adjustment

NOTE:

- The illustrations of "Height/Inclination Checking and Adjustment" procedure are those of imagePRESS C10000VP series.
- An improperly adjusted height or inclination could result in jams frequently occurring at the paper folding unit inlet.

CAUTION:

If the height and inclination of the equipment and the connected host machine are not within their standards, adjust them.

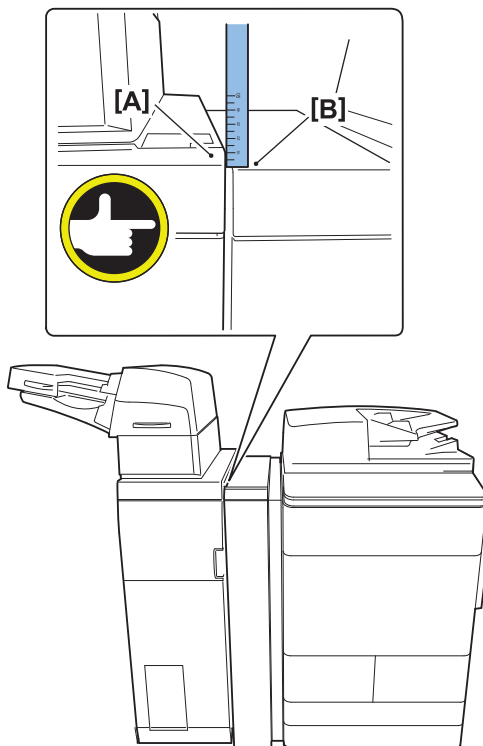
• Height Check



1. Check whether the difference of the height between [A] and [B] is 22 +/- 3mm.

[A] : Right upper surface of the inserter

[B] : Left upper surface of the Buffer Pass Unit

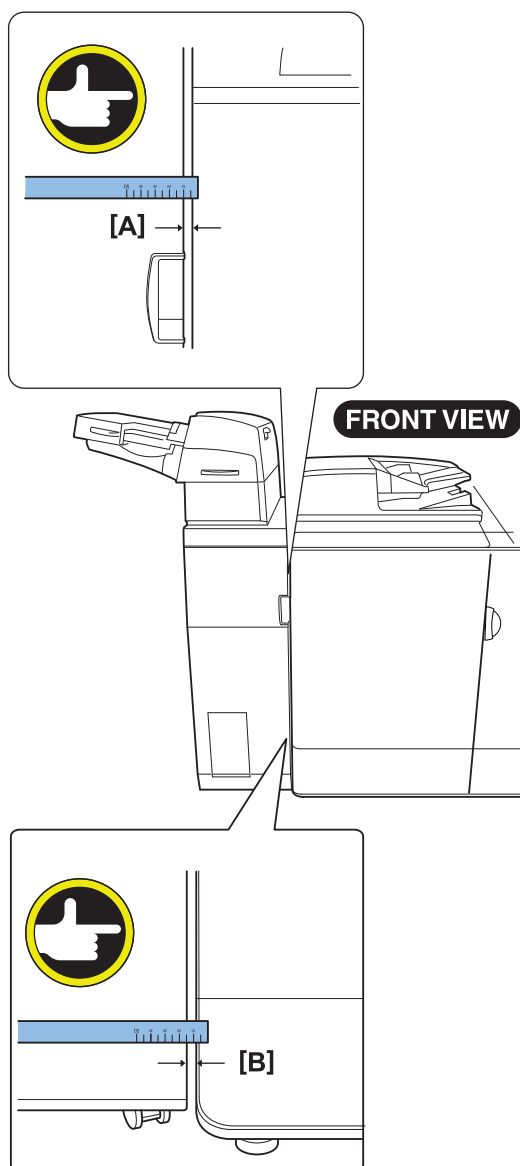


• Inclination Check



1. Check whether the difference of the gap between [A] and [B] is $0 \pm 2\text{mm}$ (front side).

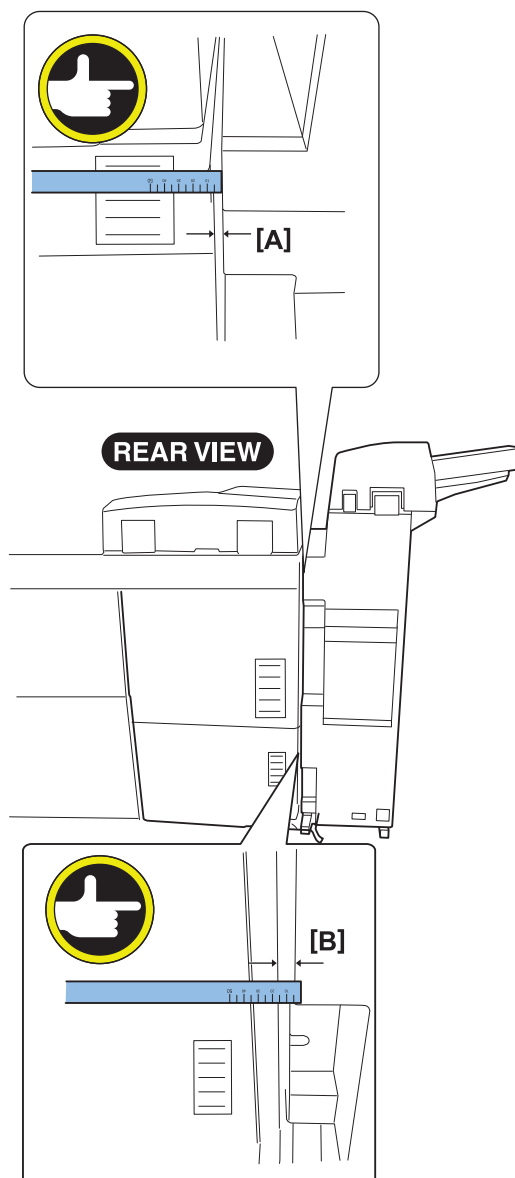
- [A]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (upper)
- [B]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (lower)





2. Check whether the difference of the gap between [A] and [B] is $0 \pm 2\text{mm}$ (rear side).

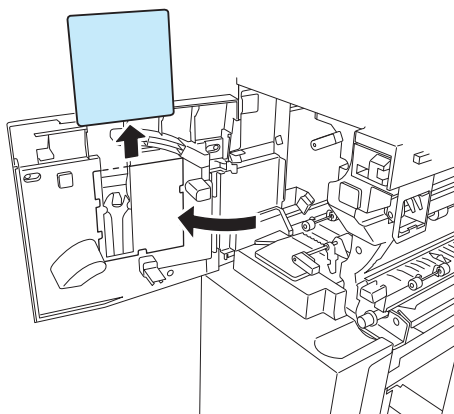
- [A]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (upper)
- [B]: Gap of the host machine and the inserter (lower)



• Height Adjustment

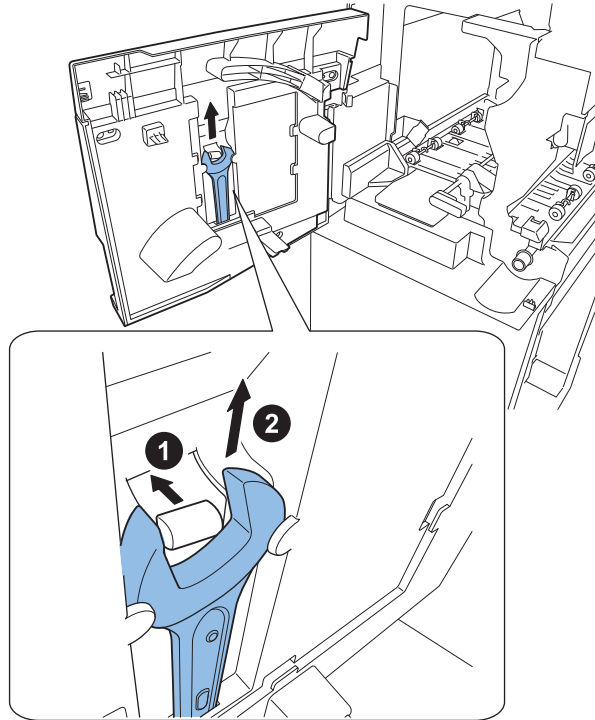


1. Open the front upper cover and remove the jam recovery map.





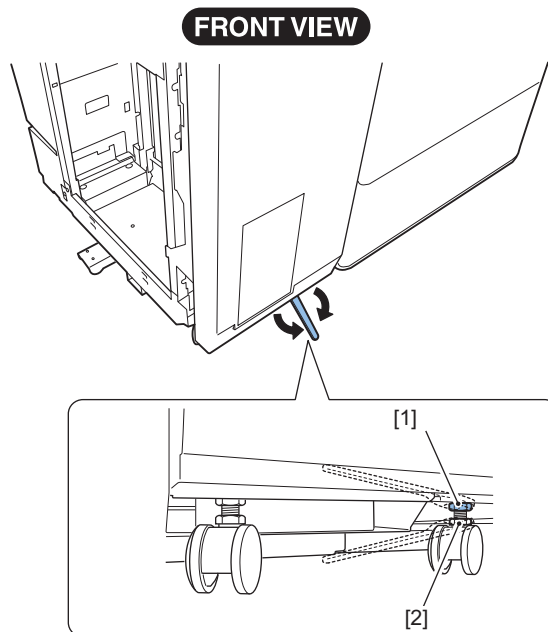
2. Remove the wrench from the front upper cover.



3. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the front side (host machine side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.

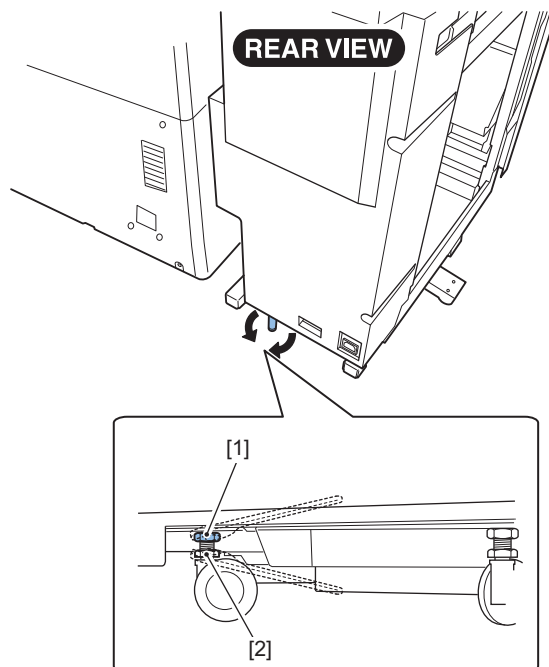




4. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the rear side (host machine side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.



5. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the inserter.

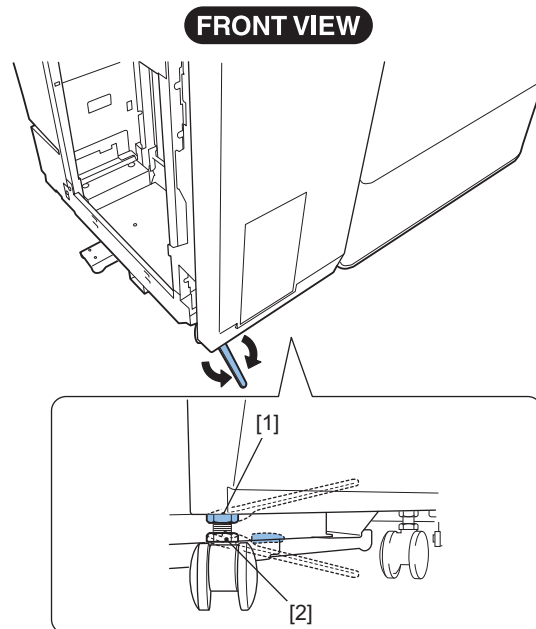
• Inclination Adjustment



1. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the front side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lean towards the paper ejection side and clockwise to lean towards the host machine side.

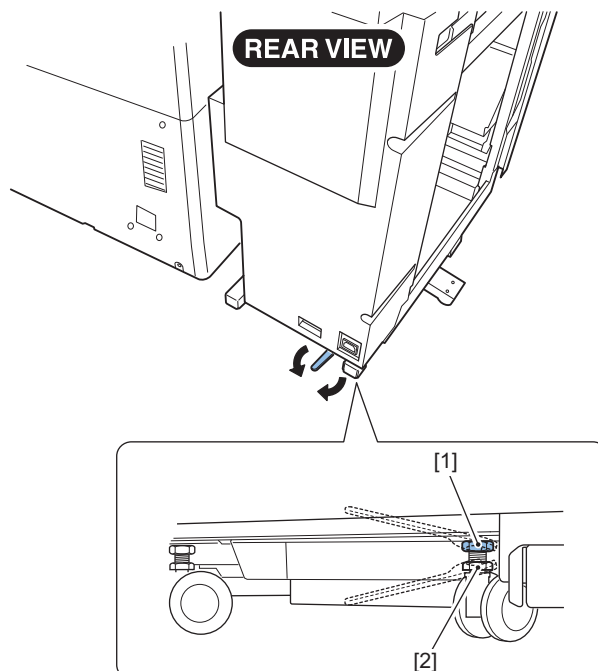




2. Loosen the nut [1] of the caster of the rear side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

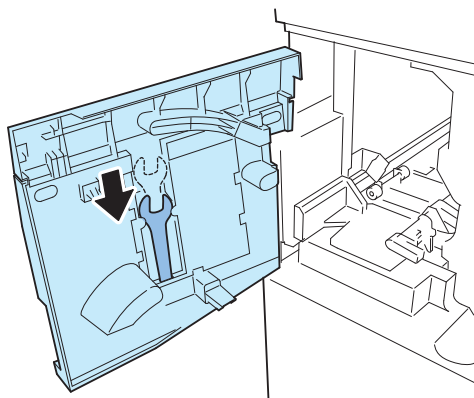
- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lean towards the paper ejection side and clockwise to lean towards the host machine side.



3. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the inserter.

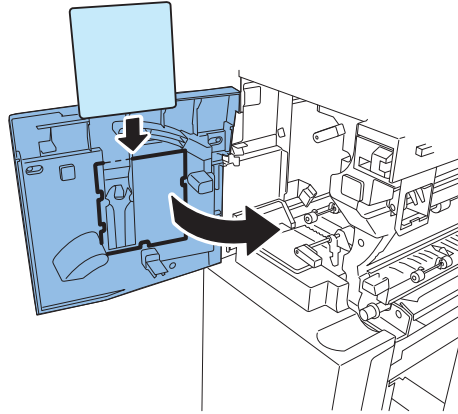


4. Return the wrench to the front upper cover.





5. Return the jam recovery map and close the front upper cover.



● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

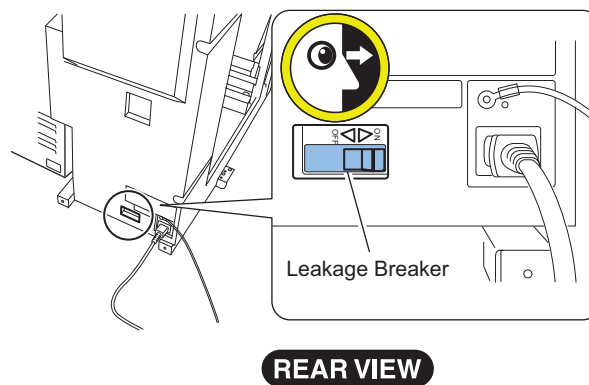
1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- [1] 2x Face Cover of the host machine
- [2] 1x Screw (Binding; M4x10)
- [3] 1x Stopper (front)
- [4] 1x Stopper (rear)
- [5] 1x Screw (Flat Head Screw; M3x5)
- [6] 1x Removed Face Cover

■ Operation Checks



1. When all the installations have completed, check that the Leakage Breaker is turned ON.



2. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. Check the insertion operation from the upper and lower trays.

Multi Function Professional Puncher-B1

Pre-checks

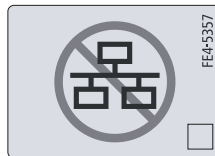
■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F713300

■ Checking before Installation

- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.
- When installing this equipment, purchase a Punch Die which is sold separately in advance.
- Prepare two wrenches (10mm and 24mm) to be used for height adjustment. Or, the wrench included in the package of the Finisher can be used.
- Before installing this equipment, check the firmware version of the host machine and this equipment. If the version is old, upgrade the version.
- The label shown below is attached to a location where connection of an Internet cable is prohibited. Do not connect the customer's network cable to the port where the connection prohibition label is affixed.



■ Check When Connecting the Power Plug to an Outlet

1. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
2. Be sure to install this equipment near an outlet so that the power plug can be disconnected right away in case of emergency, and do not put anything around the power plug.

■ Points to Note When Moving This Equipment

When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps.

If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

Unpacking

CAUTION:

When installing this equipment, note the following points.

The host machine weighs maximum 102kg.

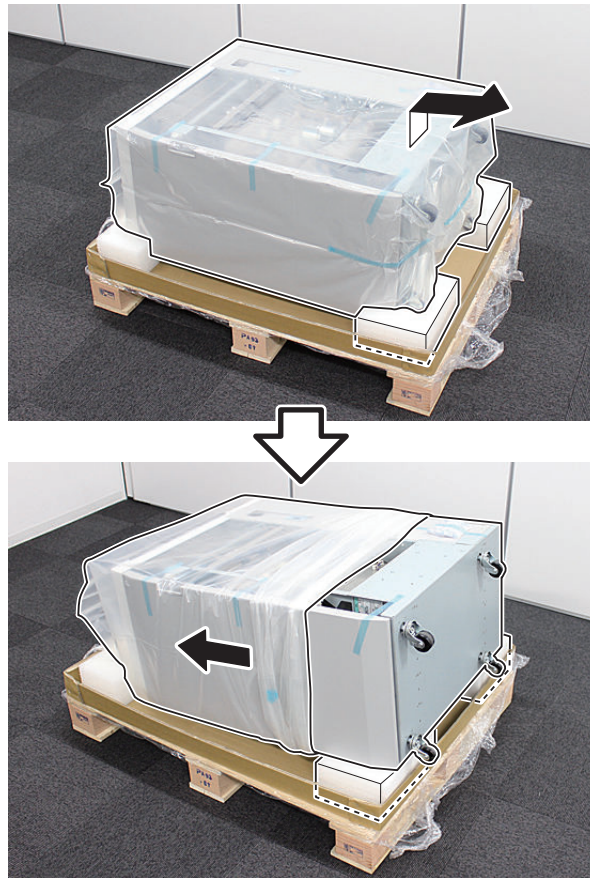
It is recommended to lift it with 4 people or more.

However, if there is a standard to handle a heavy load in each sales company, follow it for operation.



1. Cut the tapes, and remove the lid of the packaging box.
2. Remove the box containing the parts that come with the product.
3. Remove the packaging box.

-
4. Lifting the side having casters, tuck the plastic bag to the center, and shift this equipment as shown in the figure below.

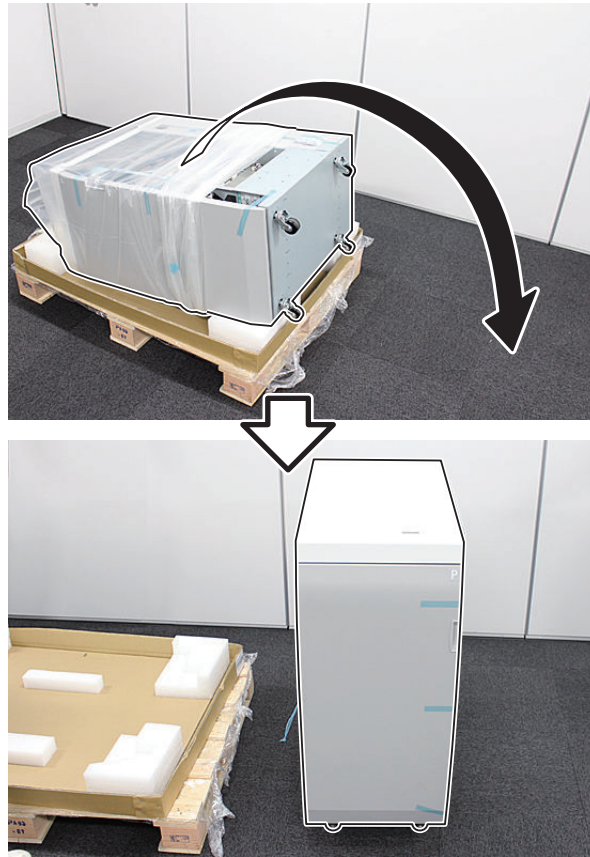




5. Make this equipment stand on its bottom, and remove the plastic bag.

CAUTION:

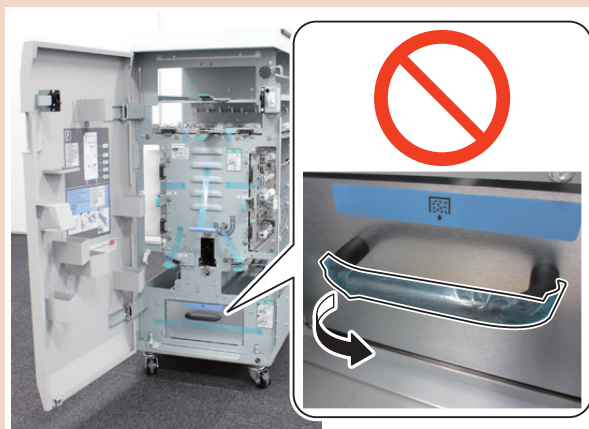
Do not lift this equipment too high.



6. Remove the packing tapes.

**7. Open the Front Cover and remove the tapes and packaging materials.****CAUTION:**

- When delivering the pre-installed machine to the user site by a truck or other means, do not remove the tape shown below in order to keep the handle of the waste box unscratched.



- Do not forget to remove the 2 tapes securing the waste box each at the bottom on the left and at the bottom on the right.








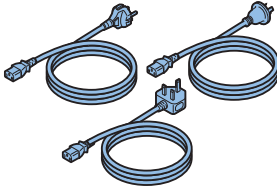

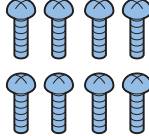


Checking the Contents

NOTE:

[6] Power Cord : Use the correct power cord to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cord at the site.

[7], [9] : These are not used with this machine.

[8] Screw (Binding; M4x10) : 6 screws of this equipment are used.

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Professional Puncher X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Latch Plate X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Positioning Pin X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Shunt Cable X 1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Power Cord (For USA model only) X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Power Cord (For Europe, Asia/Oceania models only) X 3 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] LAN Cable X 1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Screw (Binding; M4x10) X 8 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Wire Saddle X 2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Interface Cable X 1 (Lattice Connector) (D-Sub Connector) 		

Installation Procedure

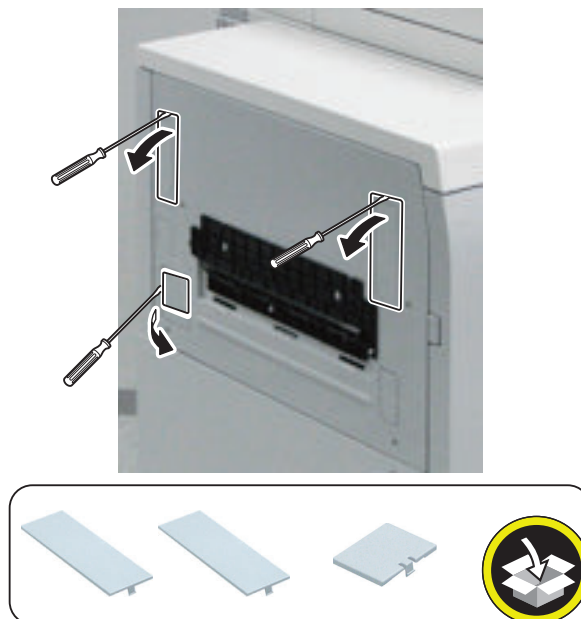
■ Installing the Host Machine

NOTE:

- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

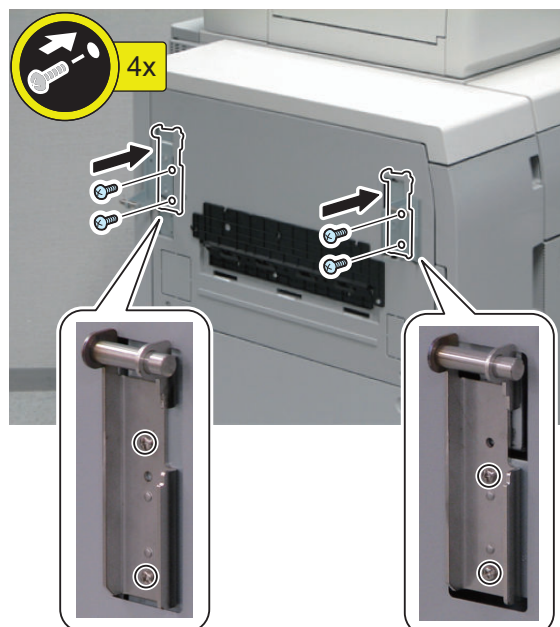


1. Remove the 3 Face Covers from the host machine (Buffer Path Unit). (The removed the covers will not be reused.)



2. Install the 2 Latch Plates to the host machine (Buffer Path Unit).

- 4 Screws (Binding; M4x10)





3. Install the Positioning Pin to the host machine (Buffer Path Unit).

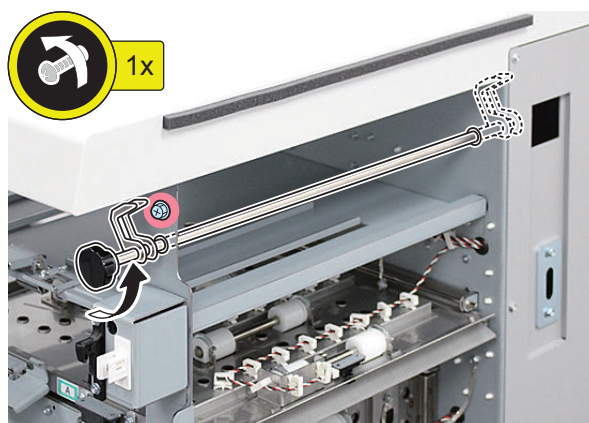
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x10)



4. Open the Front Cover of this equipment.

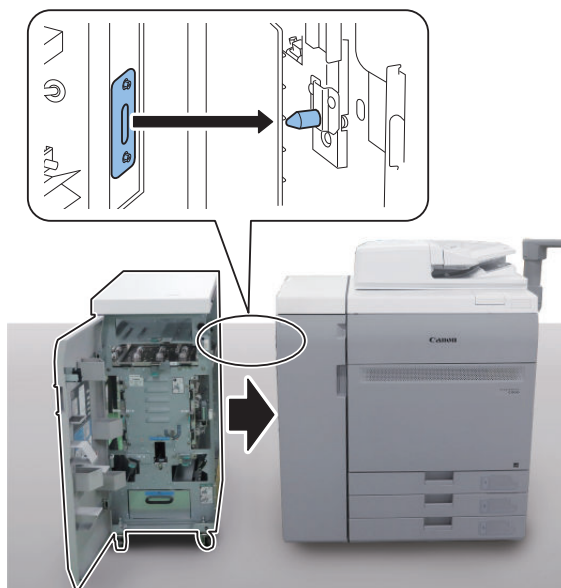


5. Loosen the screw, and turn the Connection Lever to raise the hook.





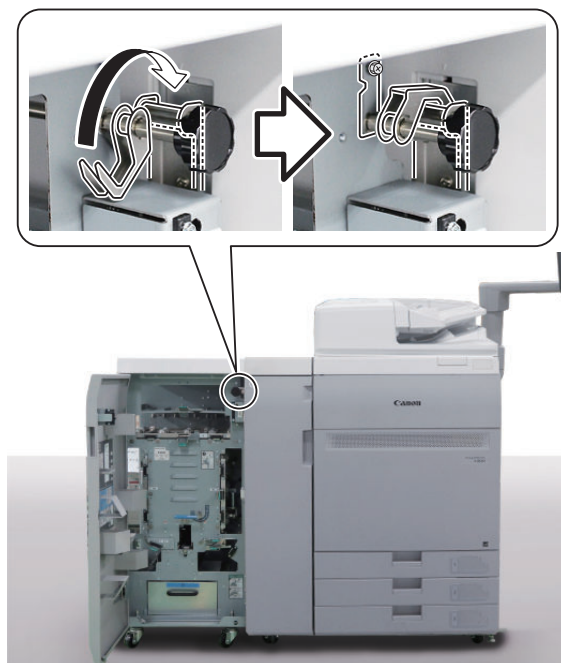
6. Align the Positioning Pin on the host machine side with the hole on this equipment where the Positioning Pin is to be fitted, and connect this equipment and the host machine.



7. Rotate the Connection Lever in the direction of the arrow to hook the hook on the screw.

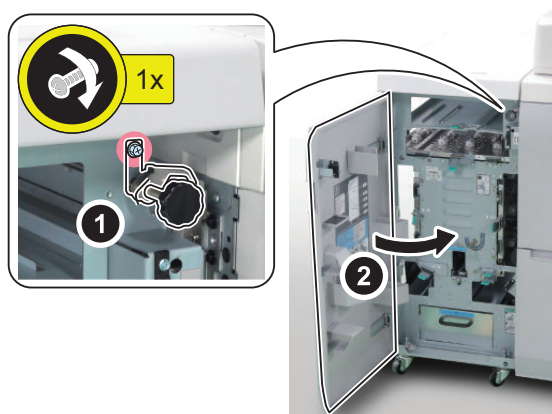
NOTE:

Do not tighten the screw in this step because the screw will be secured after the height is checked in a later step.



**8. Check the height of this equipment and that of the host machine.****NOTE:**

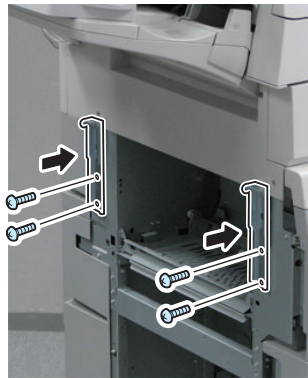
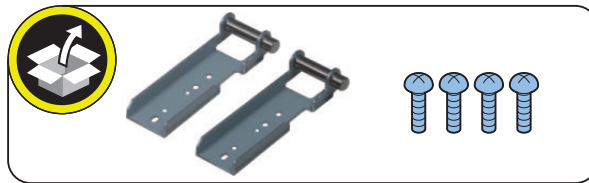
Check that the difference in height is within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference exceeds ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height" on page 693.

**9. Fully tighten the screw of the Connection Lever and close the Front Cover.**

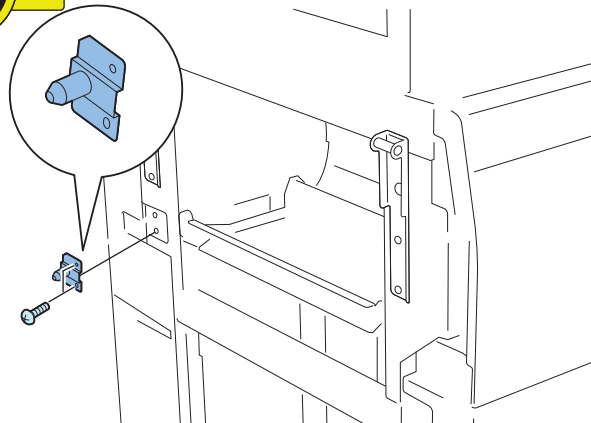
■ Connecting to the Document Insertion Unit



1. Install the 2 Latch Plates to the Document Insertion Unit.
 - 4 Screws (Binding; M4x10)

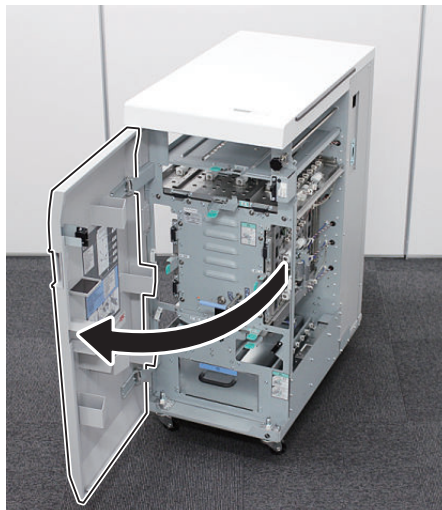


2. Install the Positioning Pin.
 - 2 Screws (Binding; M4x10)





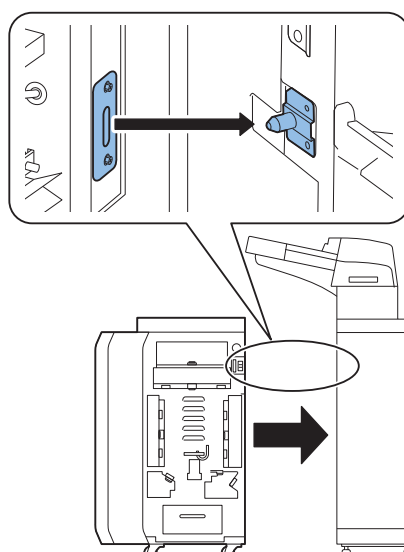
3. Open the Front Cover of this equipment.



4. Loosen the screw, and turn the Connection Lever to raise the hook.



5. Align the Positioning Pin on the Document Insertion Unit side with the hole on this equipment where the Positioning Pin is to be fitted, and connect the equipments.

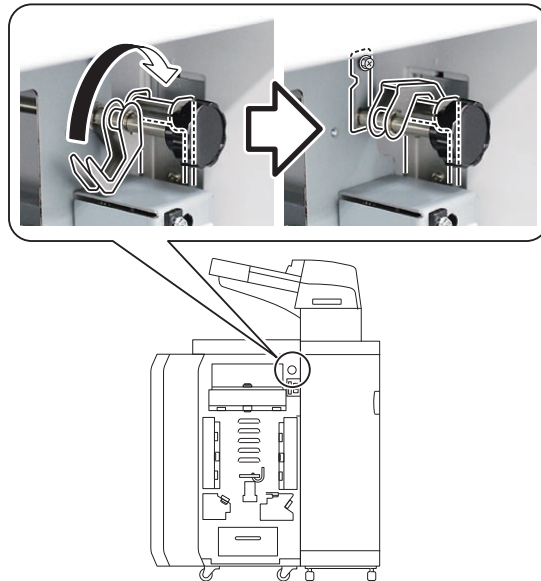




6. Rotate the Connection Lever in the direction of the arrow to hook the hook on the screw.

NOTE:

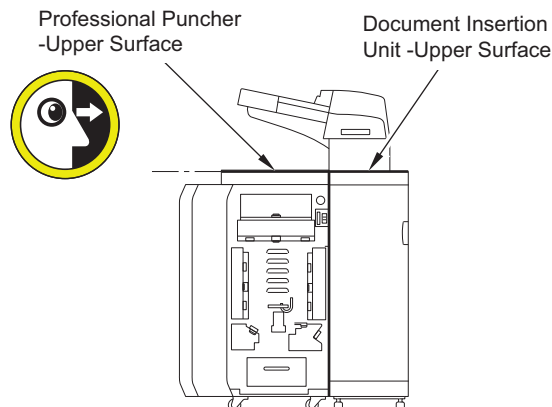
Do not tighten the screw in this step because the screw will be secured after the height is checked in a later step.



7. Check the height of this equipment and that of the Document Insertion Unit.

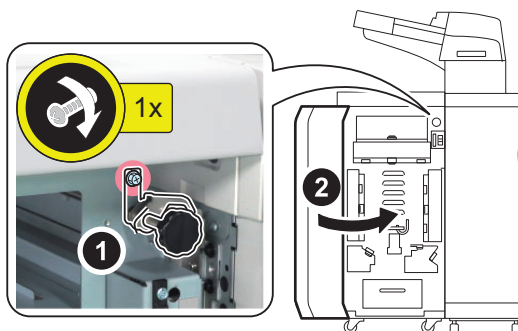
NOTE:

Check that the difference in height is within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference exceeds ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height" on page 693.





8. Fully tighten the screw of the Connection Lever, close the Front Cover.



■ Adjusting the Height

NOTE:

- Depending on the status of the floor of the installation site, the height of this equipment may need to be adjusted. If the height is not properly adjusted, trouble such as paper frequently jamming may occur. Follow the steps below to check the height and adjust it if necessary.
- When adjusting the height, prepare two wrenches (10 mm and 24 mm) in advance. Or, the wrench of the Finisher can also be used. Or, the wrench included in the package of the Finisher can be used.
- The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

● Checking the Height



1. Check the height of this equipment and that of the upstream equipment.

NOTE:

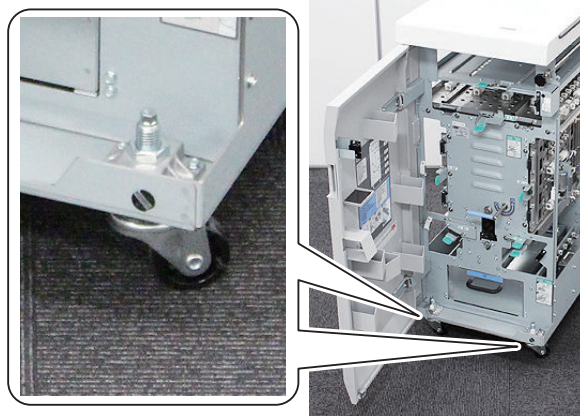
Check that the difference in height is within ± 2.0 mm. If the difference exceeds ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height" on page 693.



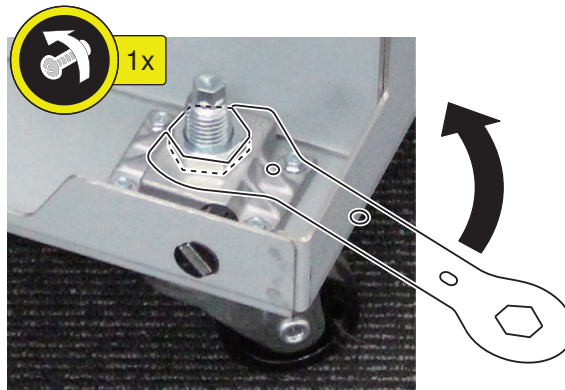
2. If the difference exceeds the range of ± 2.0 mm, perform "Adjusting the Height".

• Adjusting the Height

Adjusting the Front Casters



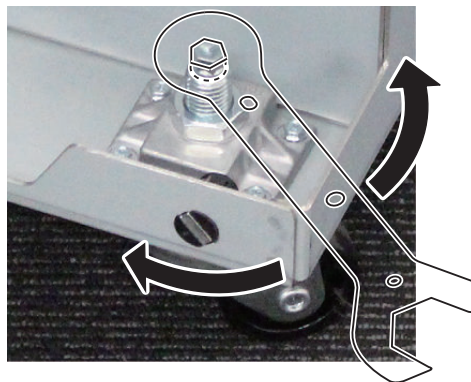
1. Open the Front Cover of this equipment, and loosen the Lock Nut with the 24 mm wrench.



2. Adjust the height by turning the end of the hexagonal shaft with the 10 mm wrench.

NOTE:

- Turn clockwise to raise the height.
- Turn counterclockwise to lower the height.



3. Tighten the Lock Nut you loosened.



4. Check the height again. If the height has been adjusted appropriately, perform "Adjusting the Rear Casters".

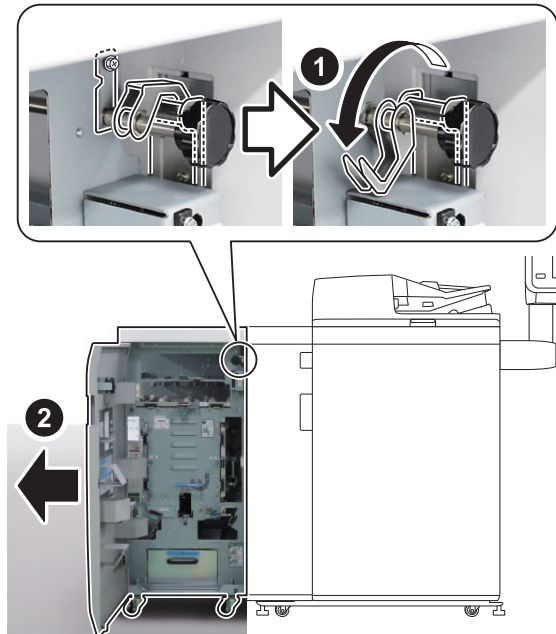
Adjusting the Rear Casters

NOTE:

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.

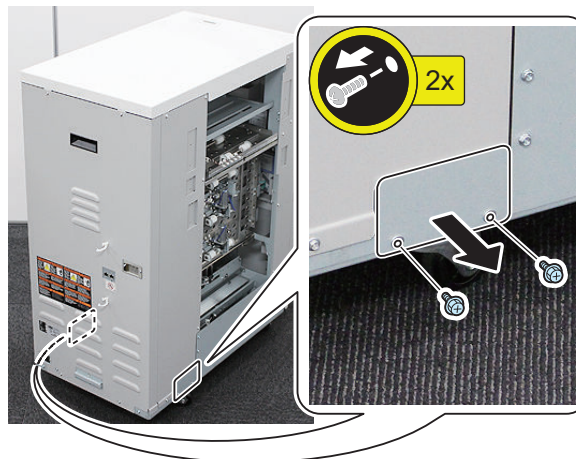


1. If the screw of the Connection Lever is secured, loosen it.
2. Turn the Connection Lever to raise the hook, and release the connection from the upstream equipment.



3. Remove the Cover Plates (Left and Right).

- 2 Screws each





4. Adjust the Rear Casters in the same way as the Front Casters.



5. Tighten the Lock Nut you loosened.

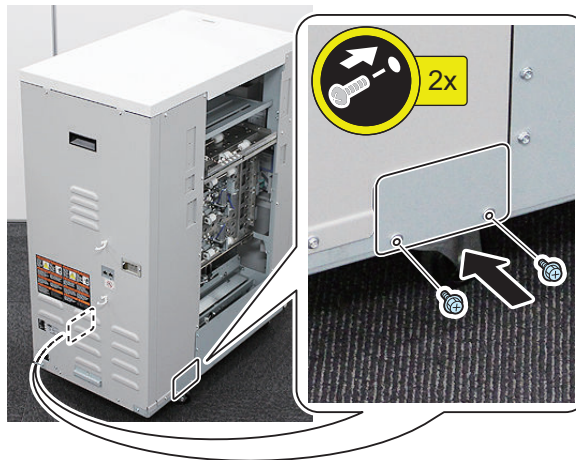


6. Connect this equipment to the upstream equipment.



7. Check the height. If the height has been adjusted appropriately, release the connection from the upstream equipment, and return the Cover Plates (Left and Right) to their original positions.

- 2 Screws each



8. Connect this equipment and the upstream equipment again, hook the Connection Lever, and secure the screw.

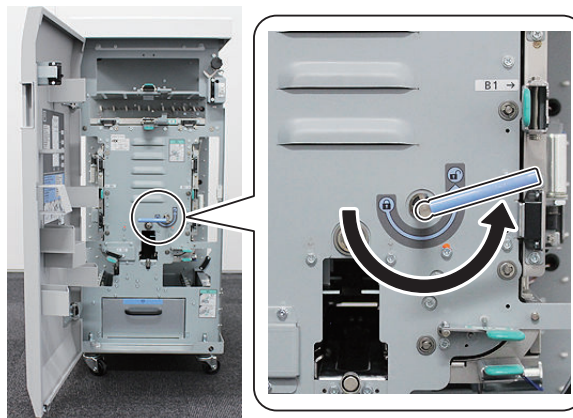
• Installing the Punch Die



1. Open the Front Cover.



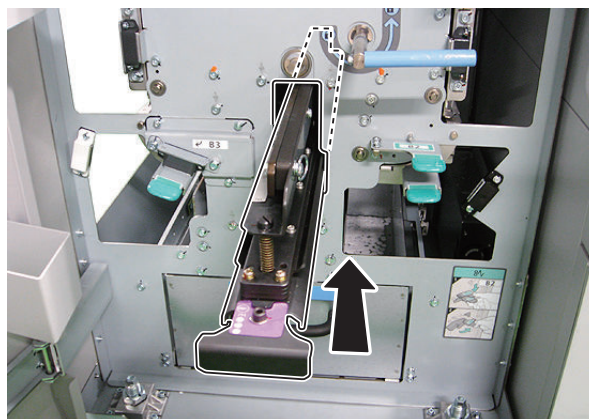
2. Hold the Punch Die Lock Handle, and turn it in the direction of the arrow to the unlock position shown on the label.



3. Hold the Punch Die with both hands, and slowly insert it until it stops.

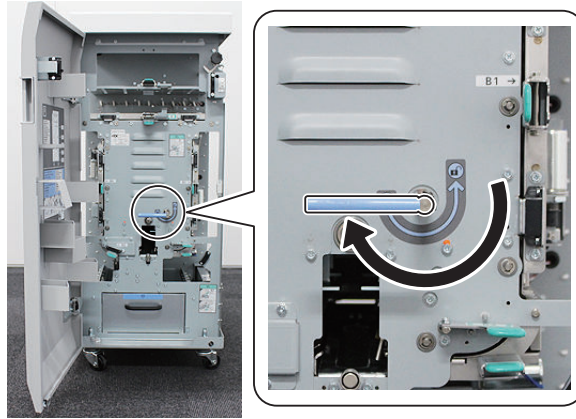
CAUTION:

Do not touch the PCB on the rear side facing the end of the Punch Die. When inserting the Punch Die into the equipment, be sure not to give a shock to the PCB.





4. Turn the handle in the direction of the arrow until it securely stops and the Punch Die is locked.



5. Close the Front Cover.



■ Connecting the Cables

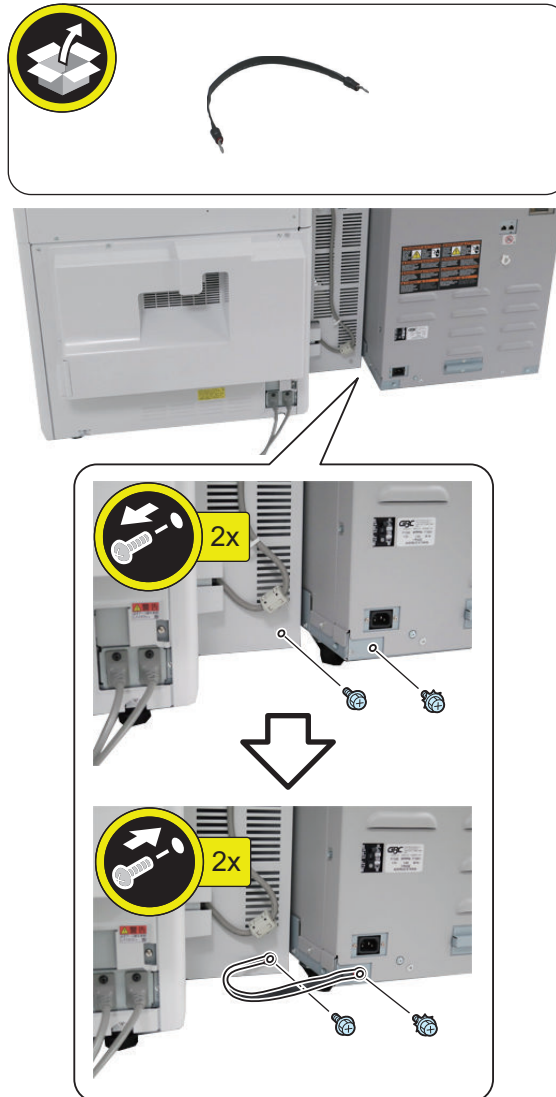
● In the Case of the Host Machine

NOTE:

The pictures and illustrations used may be different from the product in front of you, but the procedure is the same.



1. Remove the 2 screws from the Buffer Path Unit and the host machine, and connect the Shunt Cable to them with the removed 2 screws.



● **Connection of the Interface Cable (Staple Finisher-X1, Booklet Finisher-X1)**



1. **Connect the Interface Cable to this equipment.**

NOTE:

Refer to the Finisher's installation procedure for installing the Interface Cable to the finisher.

<Lattice Connector>



<D-Sub Connector>

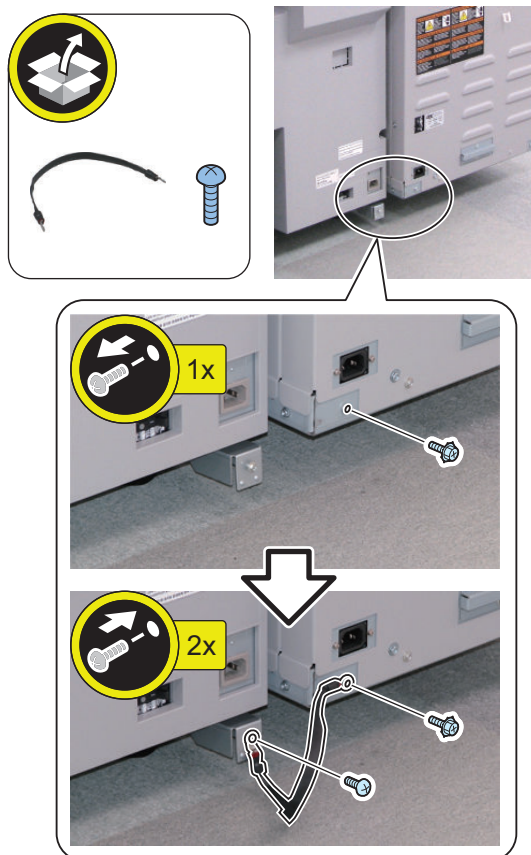


• In the Case of the Document Insertion Unit



1. Remove the screw from this equipment, and connect the Shunt Cable.

- 1 Screw (the removed screw)
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)



• Connecting the Power Cord



1. Connect the Power Cord to this equipment.

CAUTION:

Use the appropriate Power Cord according to the country/region, and bring back the remaining Power Cords.



2. Connect the downstream equipment.

CAUTION:

For details on the procedure for connecting the downstream equipment, refer to the Installation Procedure of the downstream equipment.



3. Connect the power plugs of the host machine and the options to the outlets.



4. Turn ON the main power switch of the host machine.



5. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Lv. 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.
COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



6. Check such operation as paper feed and punching.

Paper Folding Unit-J1

Checking before Installation

Following shows requirements for the installation site. Therefore, it is desirable to see the installation site in advance before bringing in this equipment to the user's site.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install this equipment.
- Do not carry this equipment with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

■ Points to Note before Installation

When installing the machine, be sure to note the following points.

- Refer to "Order of Installation of options" when installing this equipment.
- The weight of this equipment is approx. 71kg. Be sure to work in a group of 2 persons or more.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281270

Unpacking

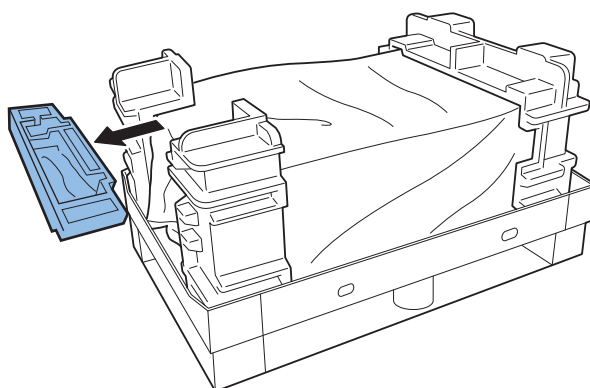
■ Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

The Equipment is secured by tapes, cushioning and other materials to protect it from vibration and impact during transit. Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials as instructed below before installing this equipment. Keep all fixings in a safe place for later reuse in reshipping this equipment, as for relocation and repairs.

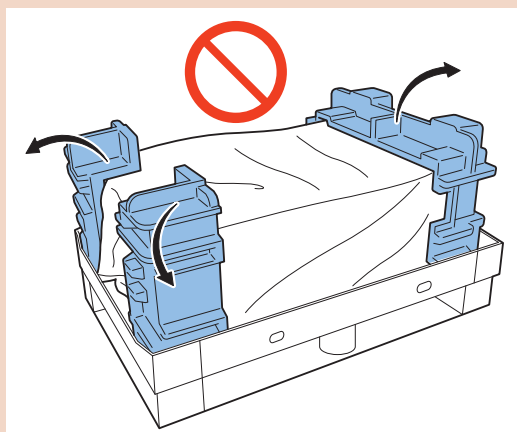


1. Take out the accessory box from the cushioning materials.



CAUTION:

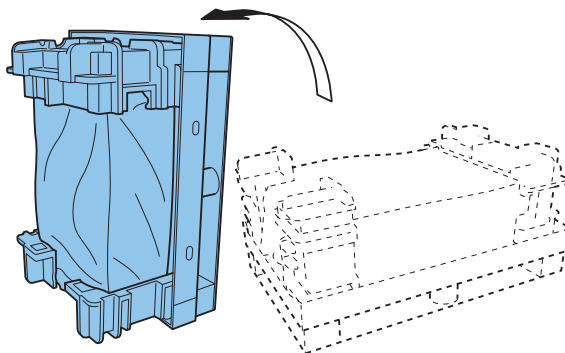
Do not remove 3 cushioning materials because it may cause to deform this equipment.



2. Lift the equipment together with the pallet.

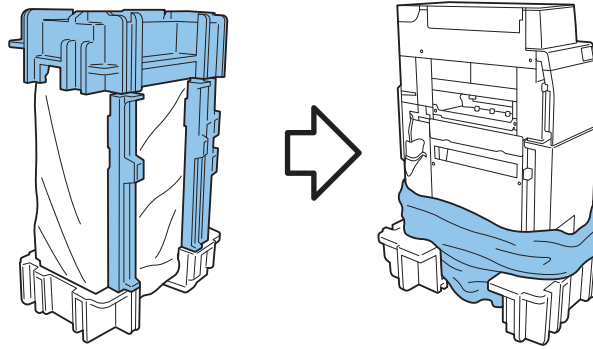
CAUTION:

- Be sure not to have the equipment itself because it may cause to deform or damage the equipment.
- This equipment is so heavy (weighing: approx. 71 kg). Be sure to work in a group of 3 persons or more.

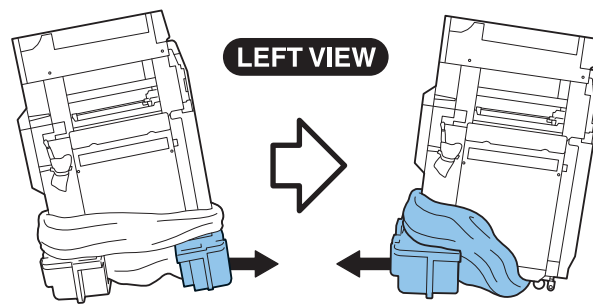




3. Remove the pallet and cushioning materials shown in the figure. Then, put the plastic cover down.



4. Lift the front and rear side lightly to remove the cushioning materials and plastic cover.



5. Remove the tapes used outside of this equipment.

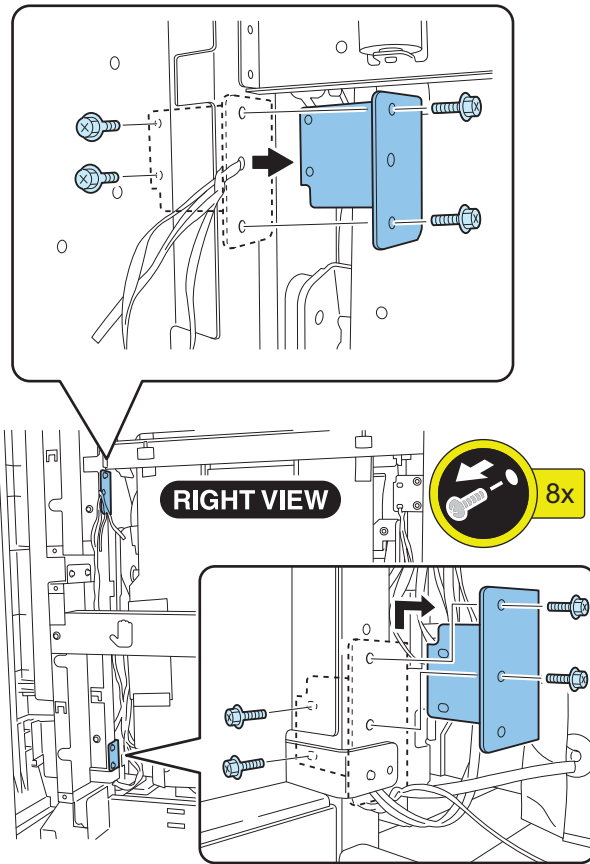
NOTE:

Be sure not to remove the tapes from the folder unit because removing them later.



6. Remove each 4 fixing screws to remove 2 fixings on the front side of Folder unit.

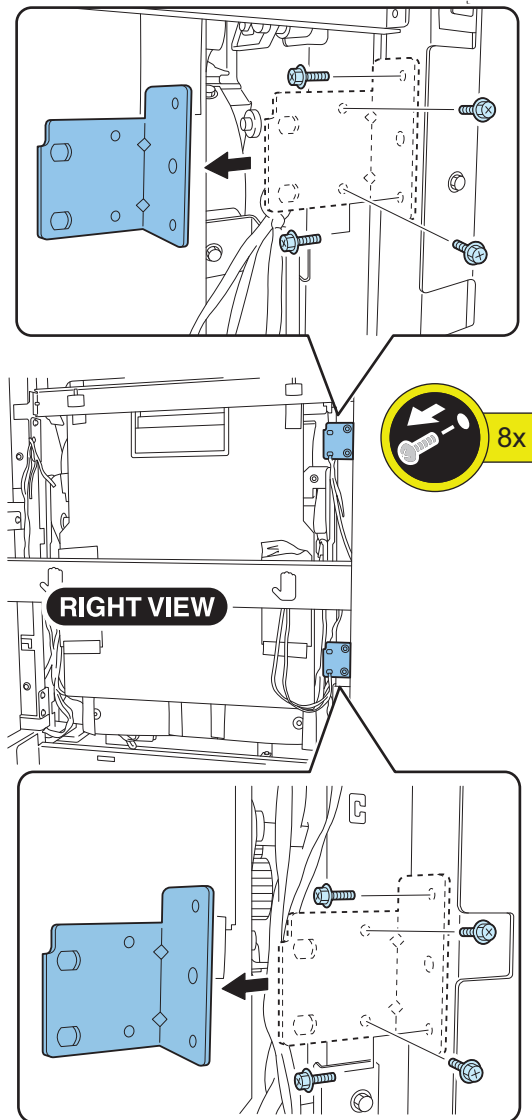
- 8 Screws



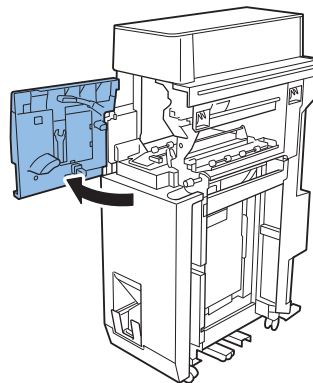


7. Remove each 4 fixing screws to remove 2 fixings on the rear side of Folder Unit.

- 8 Screws

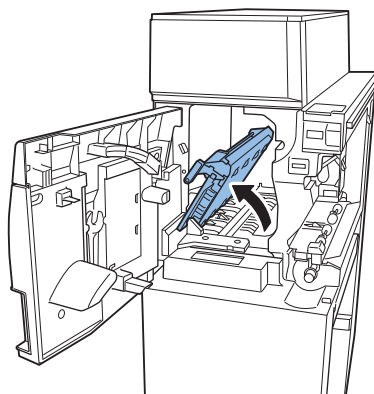


8. Open Front Upper Cover.

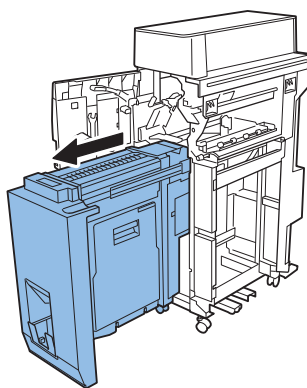




9. While holding Jam Handling Lever, open Transfer Guide.

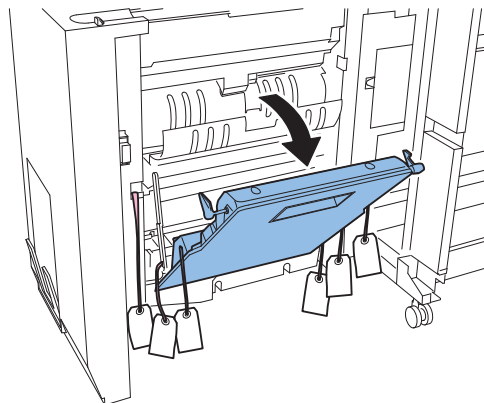


10. Pull out the folder unit.



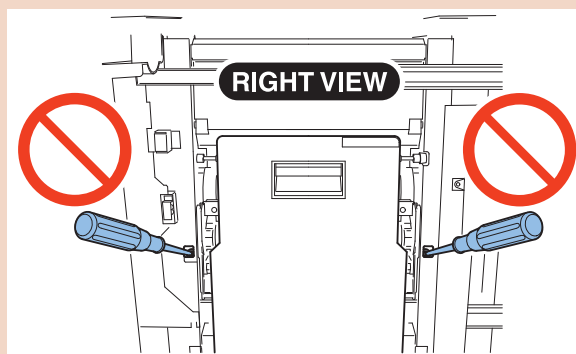


11. Remove all tapes from Folder Unit and open Folder Guide Plate (right) fully by two steps.



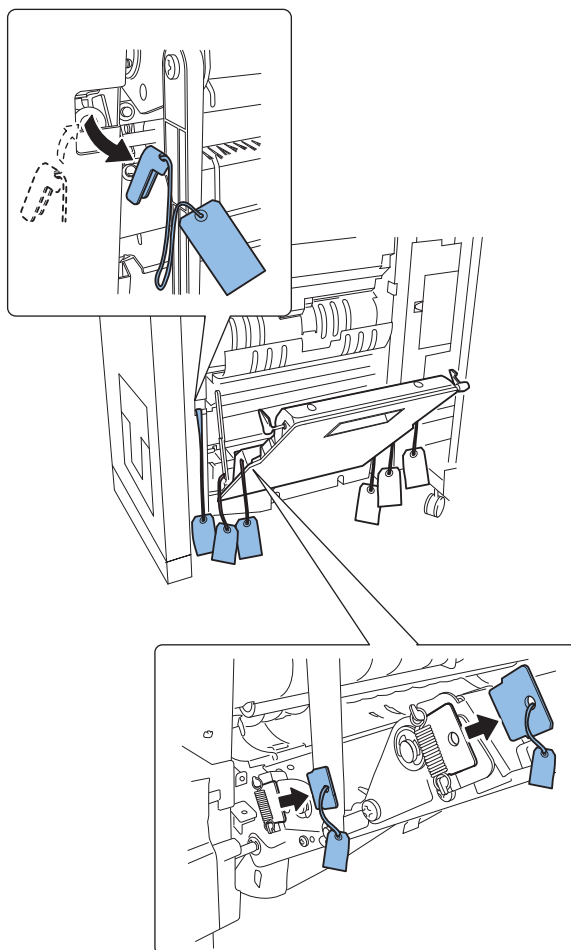
CAUTION:

The 2 screws (pointed by screwdrivers) at the front and rear are used to adjust the folding roller pressure. Never loosen these screws.



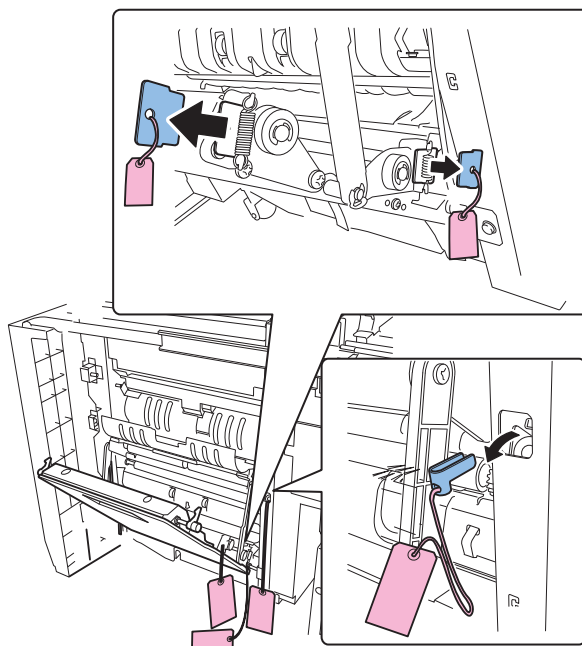
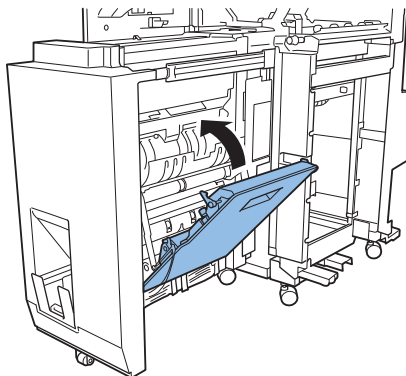
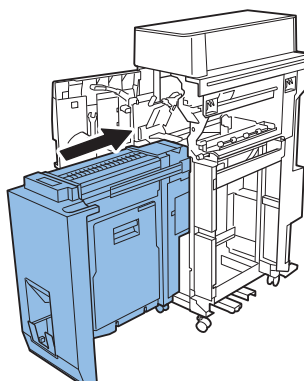
**12. Remove the 3 fixings on the front side of Folder Unit.****CAUTION:**

Folder Guide Plate (right) must be opened fully when removing the fixings. Do not pull them out forcibly.



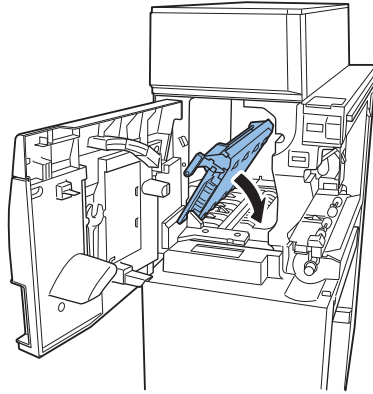
**13. Remove the 3 fixings on the rear side of Folder Unit.****CAUTION:**

Folder Guide Plate (right) must be opened fully when removing the fixings. Do not pull them out forcibly.

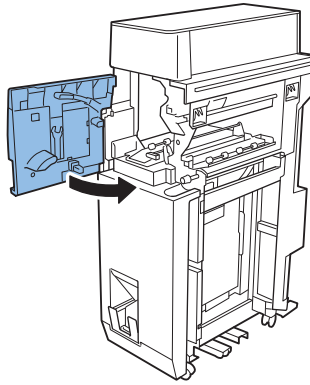
**14. Close Folder Guide Plate (right).****15. Return Folder Unit to the original position.**



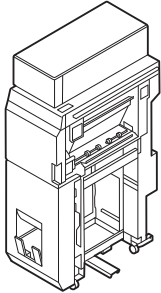


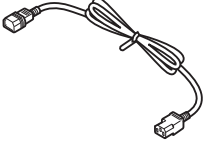
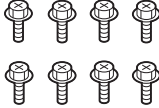

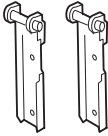


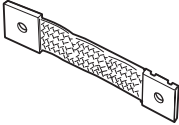

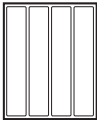



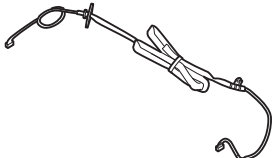

16. While holding Jam Handling Lever, lower Transfer Guide.



17. Close Front Upper Cover.



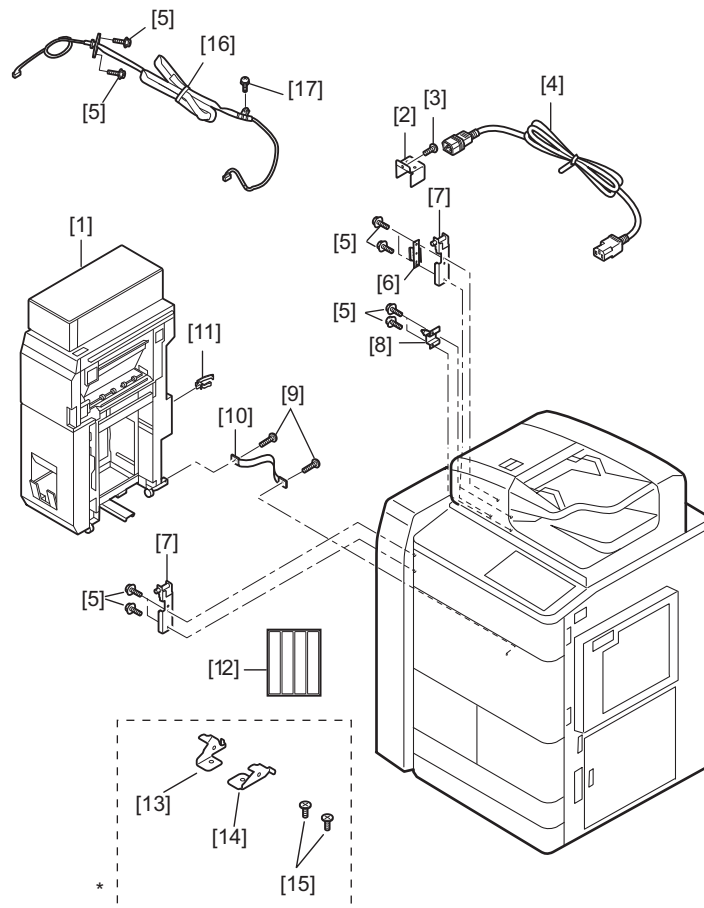
Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Paper Folding Unit x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Plug Cover x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Screw (Binding; M4x7) x1 
	<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Intermediate Power Cable x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Screw (RS Tightening; M4x8) x8 
<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Ground Plate x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Clamp Plate x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Positioning Pin x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Screw (Binding; M4x10) x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Shunt Cable x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Wire Saddle x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Jam Handling Label x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [13] Stopper (rear) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [14] Stopper (front) x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [15] Screw (Flat Head Screw; M3x5) x2 	<input type="checkbox"/> [16] Interface Cable x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [17] Screw (W-Sems; M4x12) x1 

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

■ Installation Outline Drawing



*: Not used.

Installation Procedure

■ Preparation for Installation on Upstream Equipment

● Connecting to the Host Machine

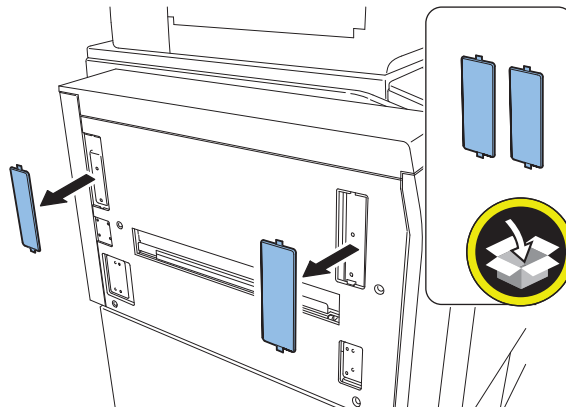


1. Remove the 2 face covers.

NOTE:

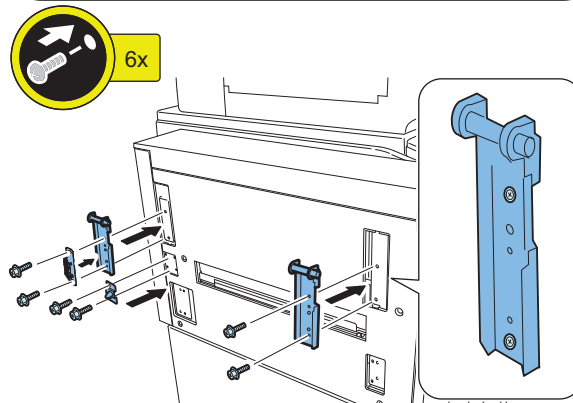
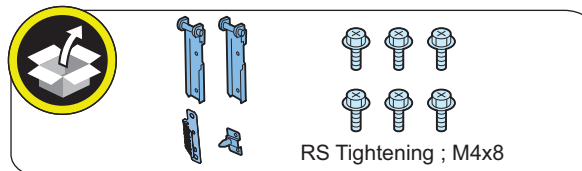
The Buffer Pass Unit must be installed before installing this Equipment.

- 2 Claws



2. Fix the 2 Clamp Plates and the Positioning Pin to the host machine. At this time, fix the supplied Ground Plate along with the rear Clamp Plate in the rear side.

- 6 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)

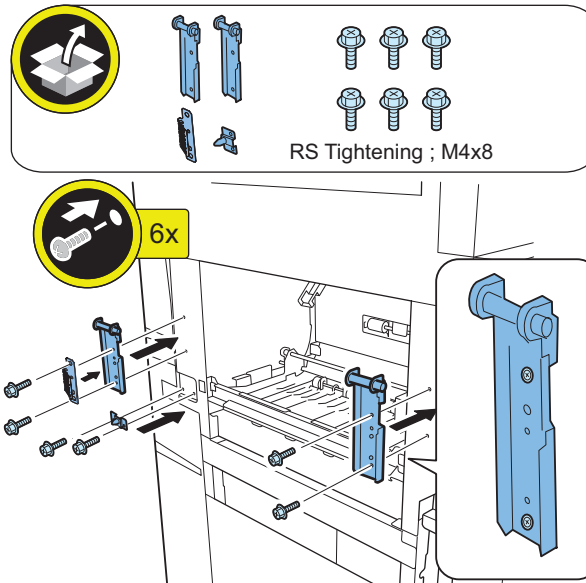


• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit



1. Fix the 2 Latch Catches and the Positioning Pin to the Document Insertion Unit. At this time, fix the Ground Plate along with the Latch Catch in the rear side.

- 6 Screws (RS Tightening; M4x8)

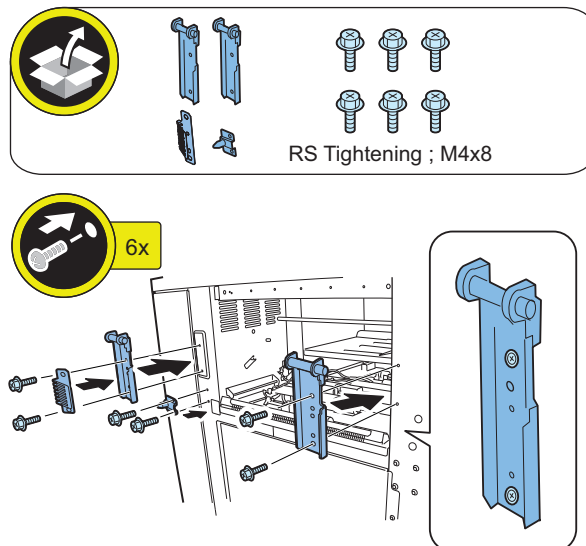


• Connecting to Multi Function Professional Puncher



1. Fix the 2 Latch Catches and the Positioning Pin to Multi Function Professional Puncher. At this time, fix the Ground Plate along with the Latch Catch in the rear side.

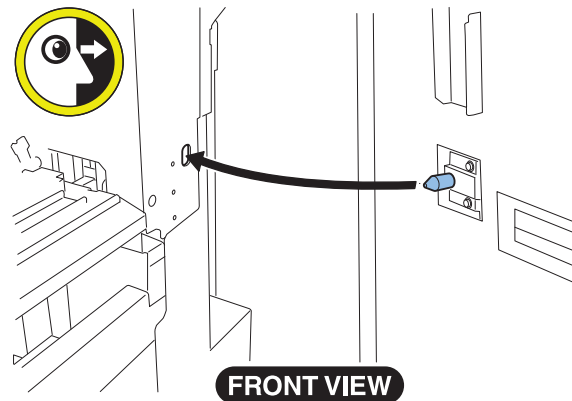
- 6 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)



■ Connecting to Upstream Equipment



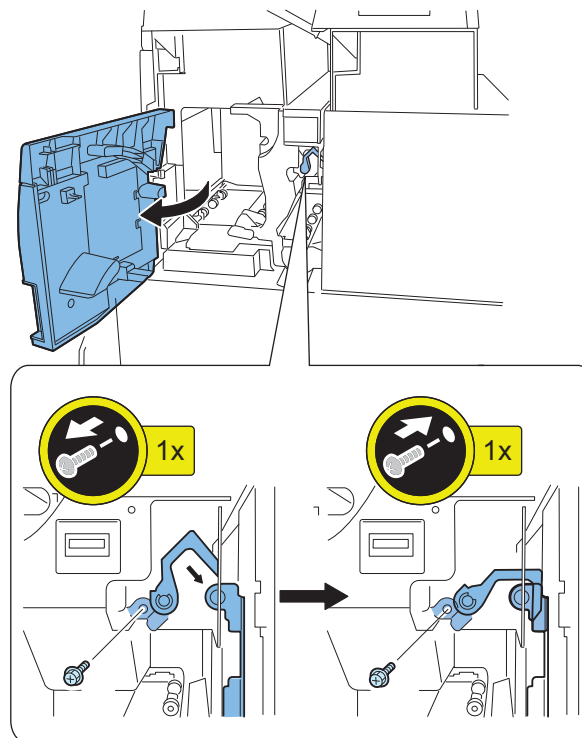
1. Fit this equipment to the upstream equipment by inserting the Positioning Pin of the upstream equipment into the hole of this equipment.



2. Open the front upper cover. Remove 1 screw and take down the lock lever, and hook it on the Latch Catch. Fix the lock lever with the removed screw.

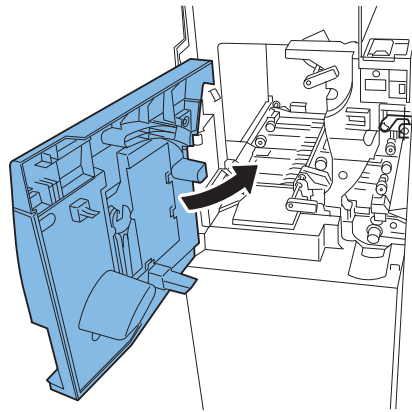
NOTE:

When it is hard to hook the lock lever to the Latch Catch, use screw drivers.





3. Close the front upper cover.

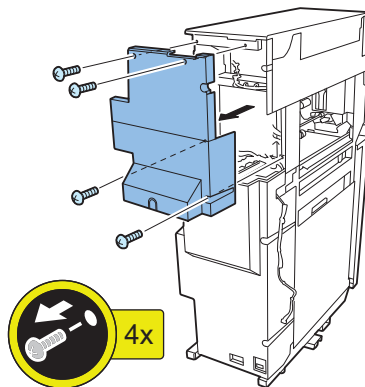


■ Connecting the Interface Cable



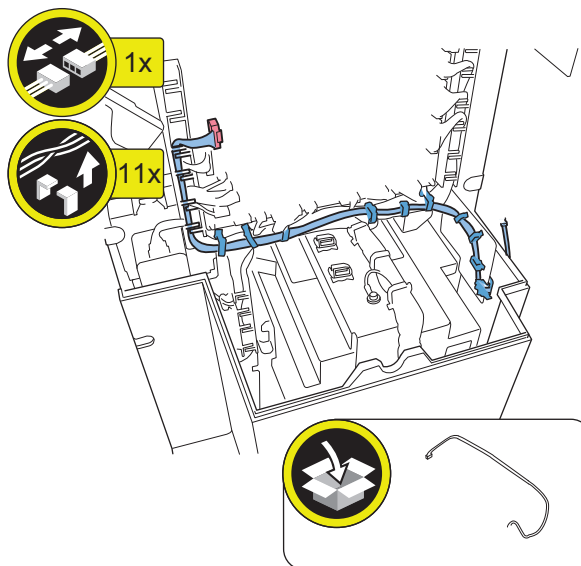
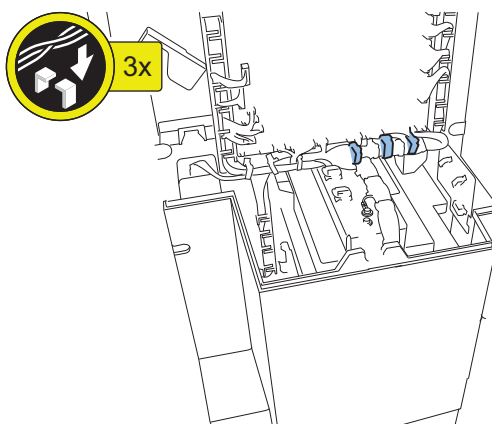
1. Remove the rear upper cover.

- 4 Screws



**2. Disconnect the Interface Cable.**

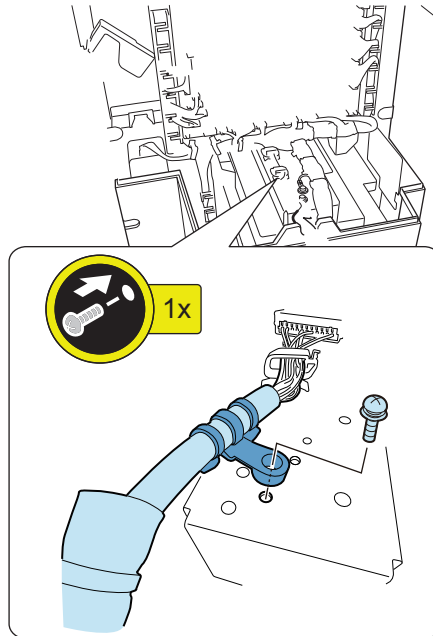
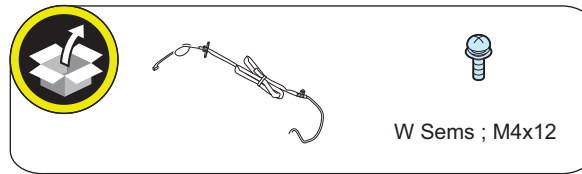
- 1 Connector
- 1 Guide
- 9 Wire Saddles
- 1 Edge Saddle

**3. Close the 3 Wire Saddle removed in Step 2.**



4. Fix the Interface Cable.

- 1 Screw (W-Sems ; M4x12)



5. Connect Interface Cable connector to the board.

- 1 Connector
- 1 Guide
- 5 Wire Saddles

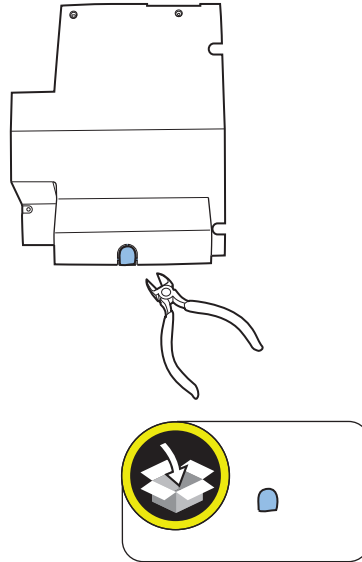




6. Cut out the face cover of the rear upper cover with the side cutters.

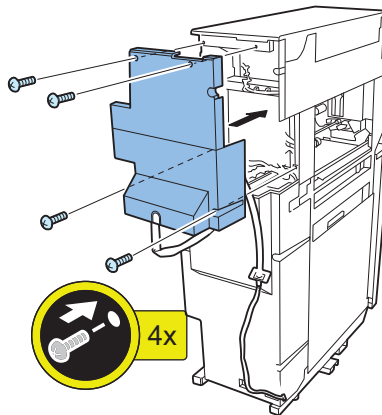
CAUTION:

Be sure to check that there is no burr.



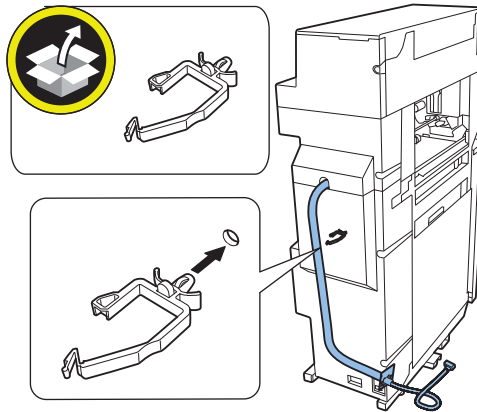
7. Put the Interface Cable through the hole which was cut in the previous step, and then restore the rear upper cover.

- 4 Screws (Binding ; M4x8)





8. Fix the Wire Saddle to the rear lower cover.

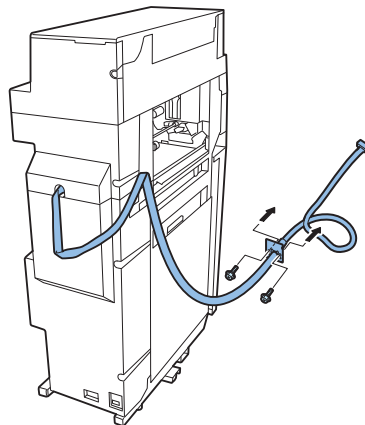


9. Connect the Interface Cable to the finisher.

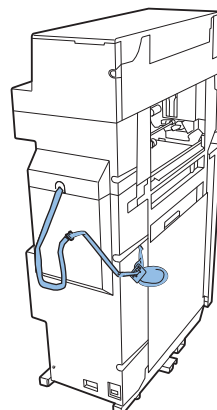
- 2 Screws (RS Tightening ; M4x8)

NOTE:

Perform this step and the next step 10 when this equipment is connected to the finisher. For connecting the Interface Cable, refer to the Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1 Installation Procedure.



10. Stow the excess length of the Interface Cable connected to the finisher into the Wire Saddle.



■ Connecting the Intermediate Power Cable

NOTE:

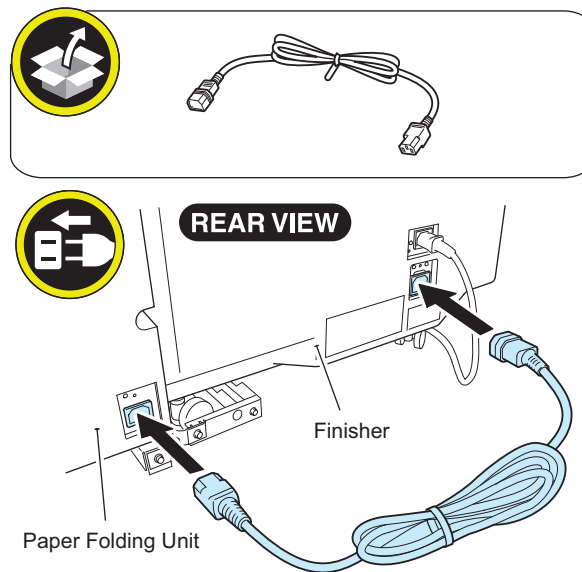
Carry out these steps after connecting this equipment and the finisher.

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the Intermediate Power Cable is fully connected to the outlet. Also, make sure to install the plug cover. If the connection is not right, an accident causing the smoke or fire may occur.

□

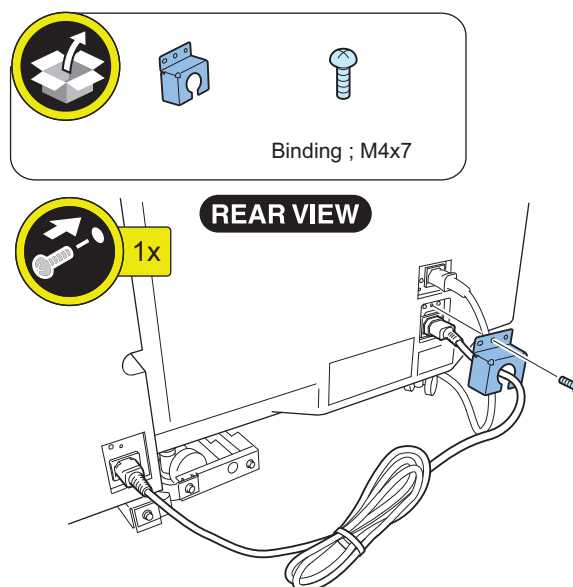
1. Connect both ends of the Intermediate Power Cable to the sockets on the equipment and the socket on the finisher.



□

2. Install the Plug Cover on the socket of the finisher.

- 1 Screw (Binding ; M4x7)

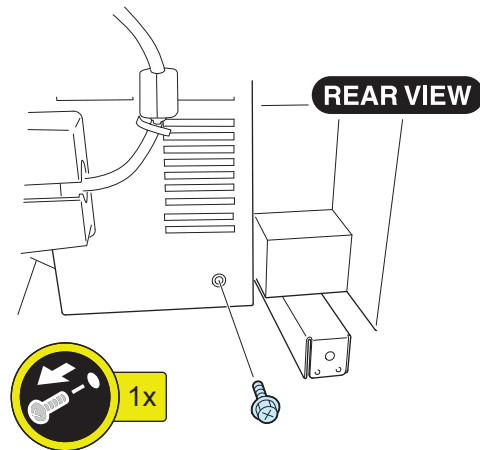


■ Connecting the Shunt Cable

● Connecting to the Host Machine



1. Remove the screw at the rear lower position of the Buffer Pass Unit.

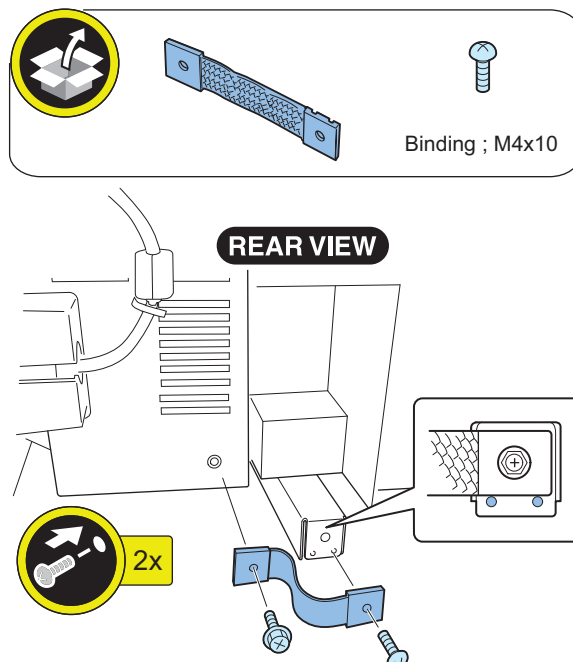


2. Fix the Shunt Cable at the rear bottom of the Buffer Pass Unit and this equipment.

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x10)
- 1 Screw (RS Tightening ; M4x10) (removed in Step1.)

NOTE:

When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit

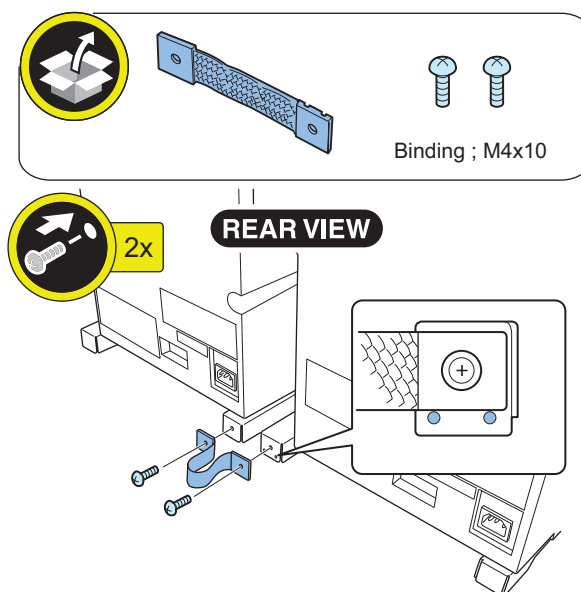


1. Fix the Shunt Cable to the rear bottom of this equipment and Document Insertion Unit.

- 2 Screws (Binding ; M4x10)

NOTE:

When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



• Connecting to Multi Function Professional Puncher

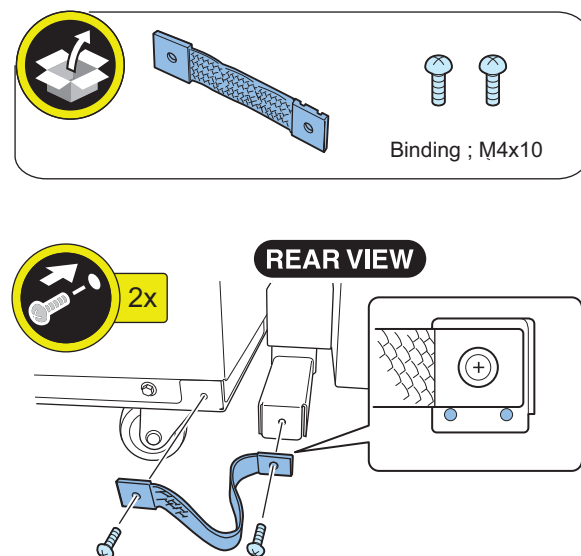


1. Fix the shunt cable to the rear bottom of this equipment and Multi Function Professional Puncher.

- 2 Screws (Binding, M4 x 10)

NOTE:

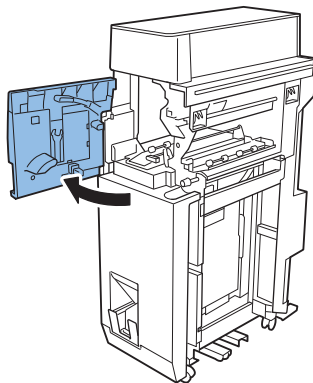
When the shunt cable is fixed, do not overlap it on the bosses of the mount plate.



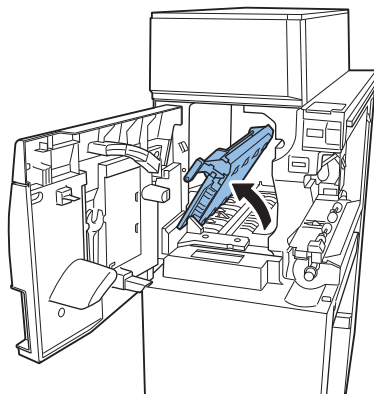
■ Attaching the Label



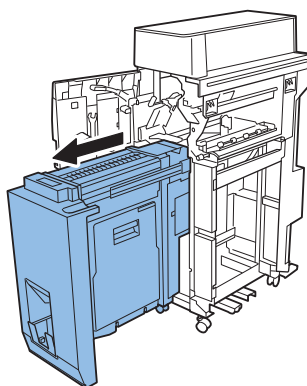
1. Open the front upper cover.



2. While holding the jam handling lever, open the transfer guide.

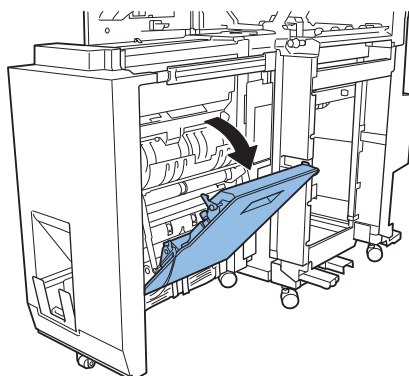


3. Pull out the folder unit.

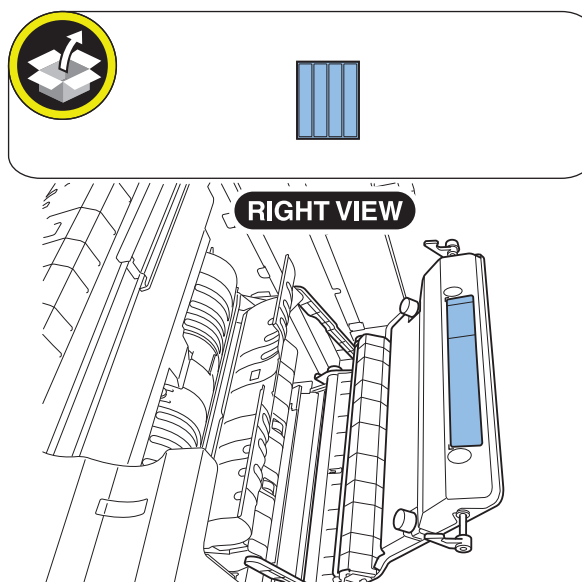




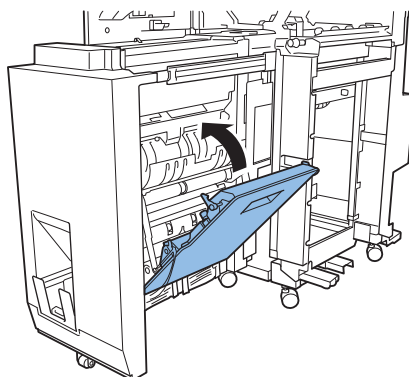
4. Open the folder guide plate (right) fully by two steps.



5. Affix the Jam Handling label fitting in the appropriate language to the notch as shown in the figure.

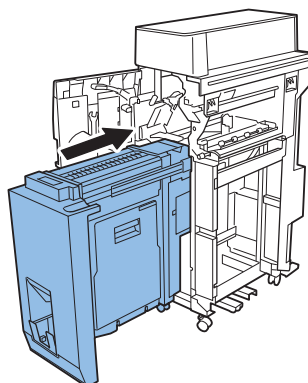


6. Close the folder guide plate (right).

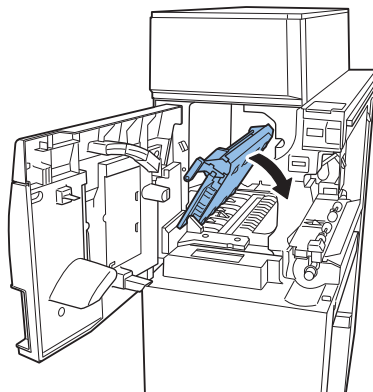




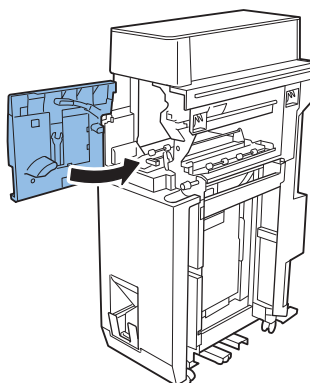
7. Return the folder unit to the original position.



8. While holding the jam handling lever, open the transfer guide.



9. Close the front upper cover.



Adjustment

■ Height/ Inclination Checking and Adjustment

NOTE:

- An improperly adjusted height or inclination could result in jams frequently occurring at the paper folding unit inlet.

CAUTION:

If the height and inclination of the equipment and the connected host machine are not within their standards, adjust them.

● Height Check

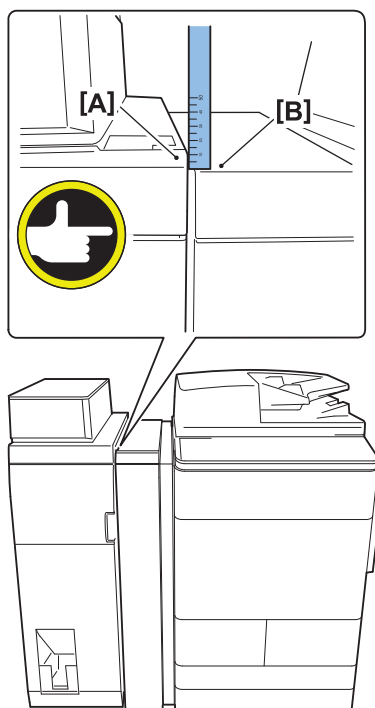
For Host Machine



1. Check whether the difference of the height between [A] and [B] is $22\pm 3\text{mm}$.

[A] : Right upper surface of this equipment

[B] : Left upper surface of the Buffer Pass Unit



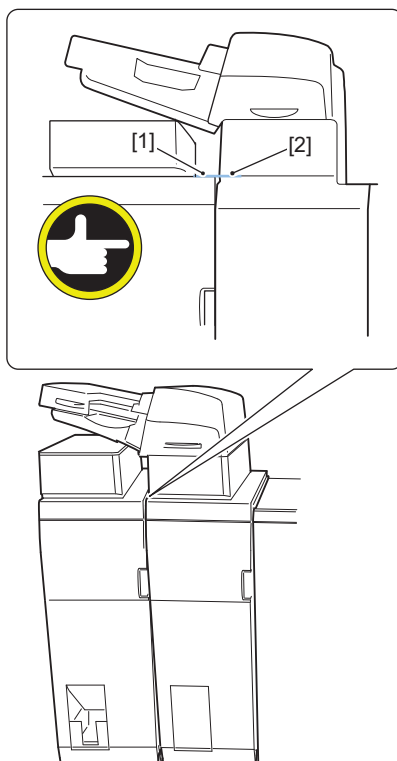
For Other Upstream Equipment



1. Check whether the difference of the height between [1] and [2] is $0 \pm 3\text{mm}$.

[1]: Right upper surface of this equipment

[2]: Left upper surface of the upstream equipment

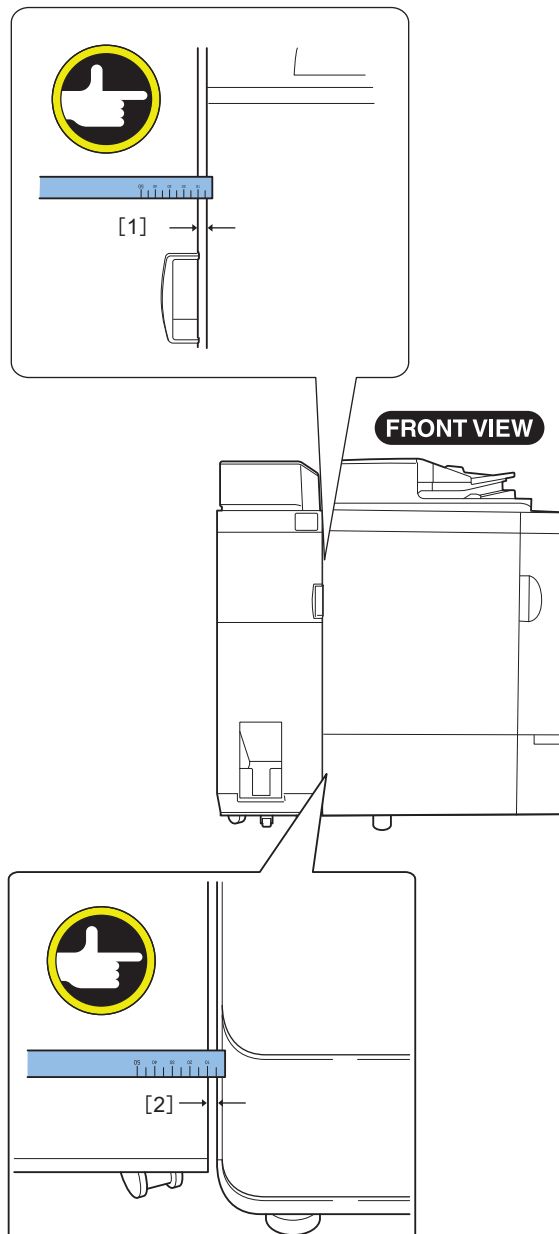


• Inclination Check



1. Check whether the difference of the gap between [1] and [2] is $0\pm 2\text{mm}$ (front side).

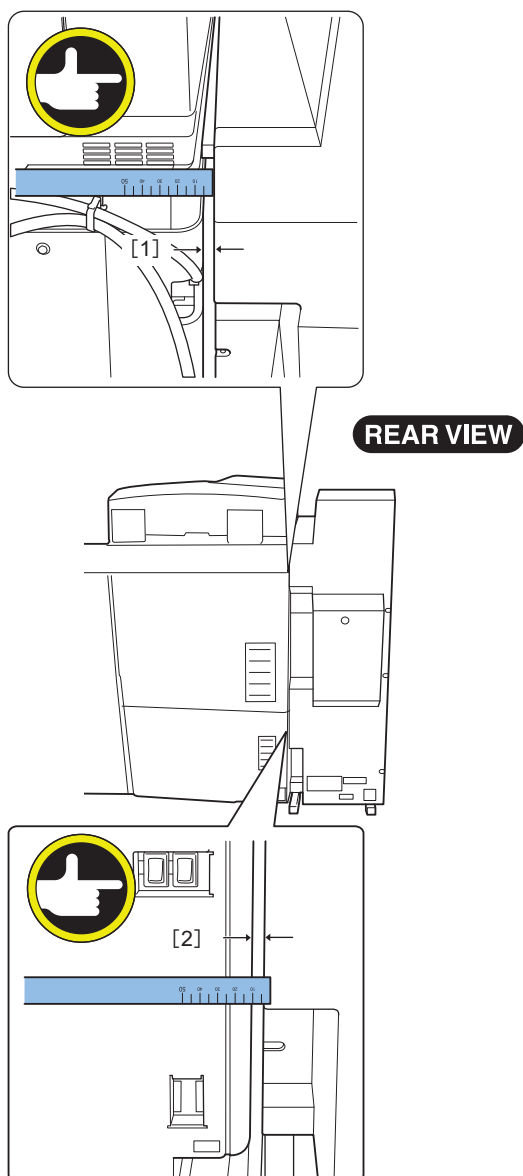
- [1]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (upper)
- [2]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (lower)





2. Check whether the difference of the gap between [1] and [2] is $0\pm 2\text{mm}$ (rear side).

- [1]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (upper)
- [2]: Gap of the upstream equipment and this equipment (lower)



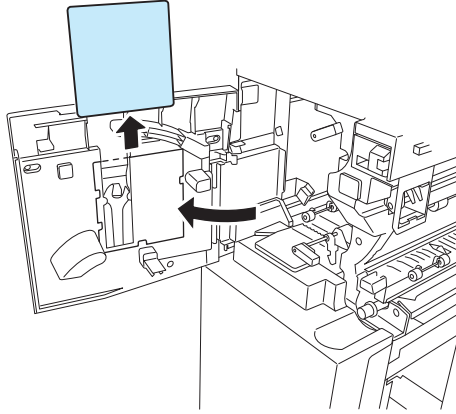
• Height Adjustment

NOTE:

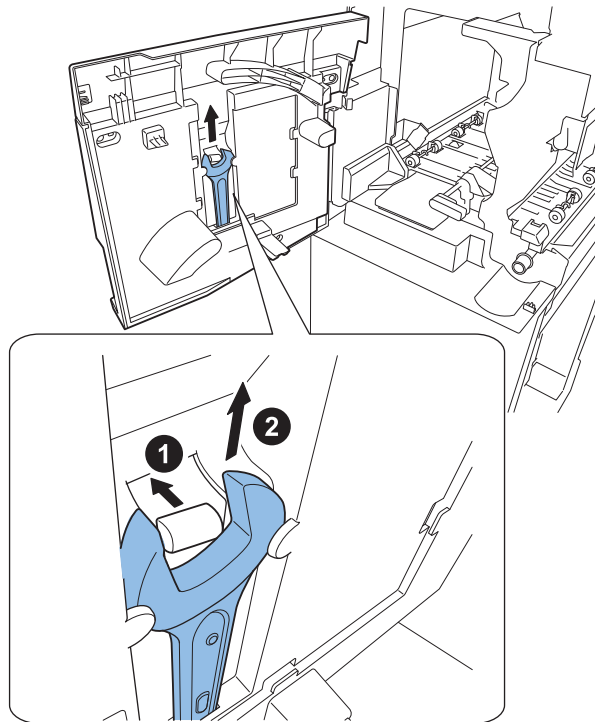
After completing this adjustment, be sure to perform the procedure of "Adjusting the Caster Roller Height of the Folder Unit".



1. Open the front upper cover and remove the jam recovery map.



2. Remove the wrench from the front upper cover.

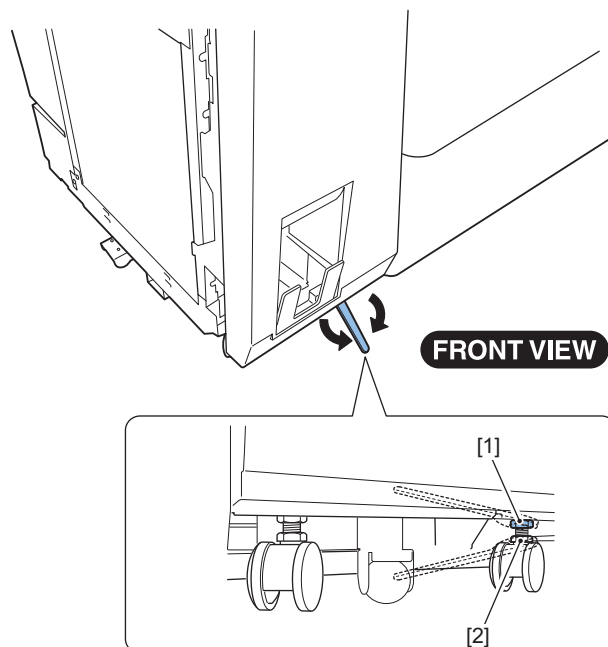




3. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the front side (upstream equipment side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

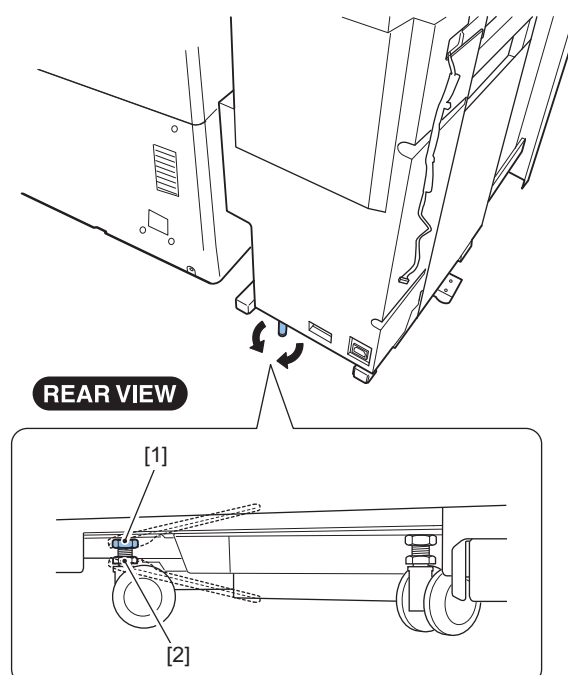
- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.



4. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the rear side (upstream equipment side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to lower and clockwise to heighten.





5. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the caster (upstream equipment side).

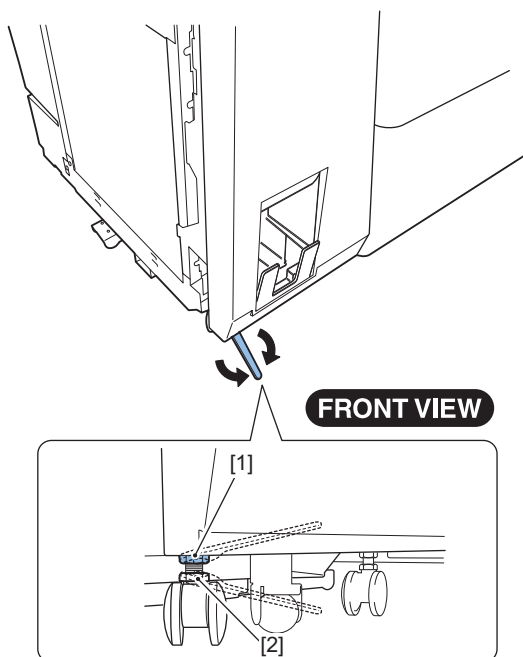
• Inclination Adjustment



1. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the front side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to incline toward the paper ejection side, and clockwise to incline toward the upstream equipment side.

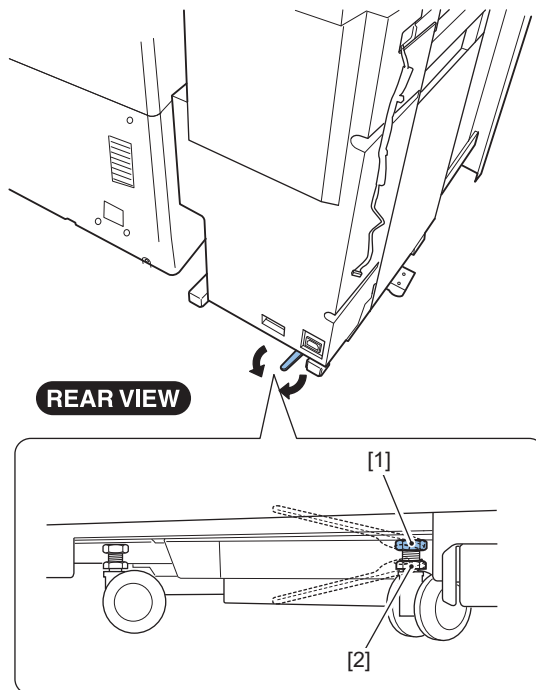




2. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the rear side(paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the inclination.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise to incline toward the paper ejection side, and clockwise to incline toward the upstream equipment side.

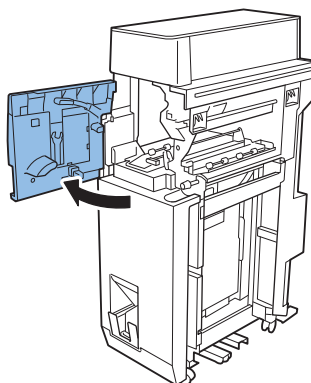


3. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the caster (paper ejection side).

• **Adjusting the Caster Roller Height of the Folder Unit**

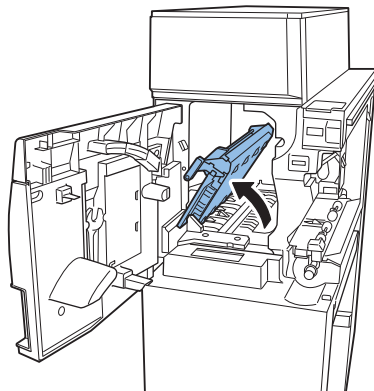


1. Open the front upper cover.

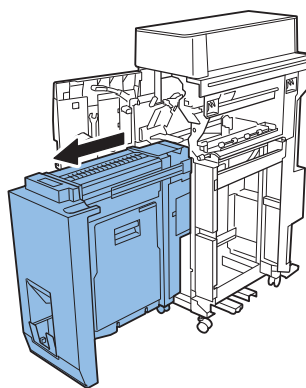




2. While holding the jam handling lever, open the transfer guide.

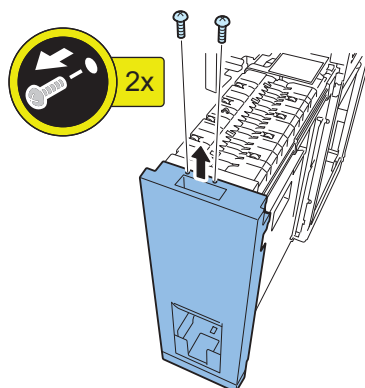


3. Pull out the folder unit.



4. Remove the folder front cover.

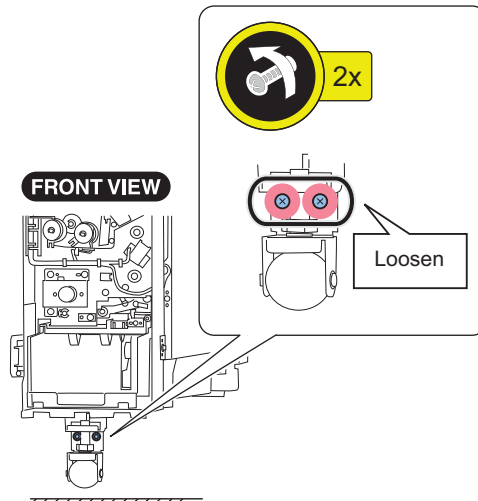
- 2 Screws



5. Return the folder unit to the original position.



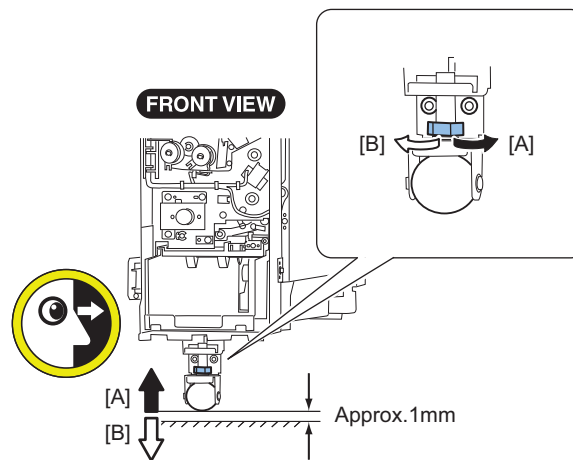
6. Loosen the 2 screws of the caster roller.



7. Adjust the height of the caster roller by turning the nut so that the space between the caster roller and the floor becomes about 1mm.

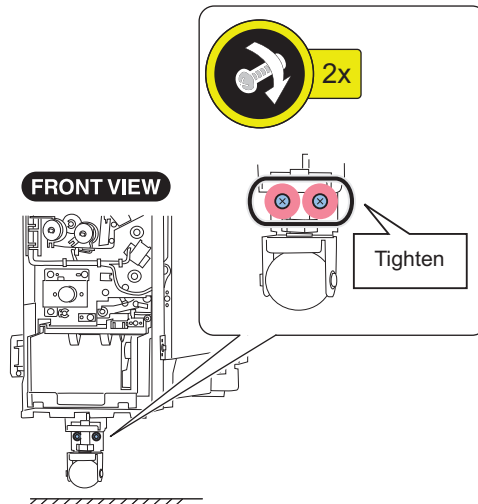
NOTE:

Turn the nut counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to increase the height of the caster roller, and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to reduce the height of the caster roller.



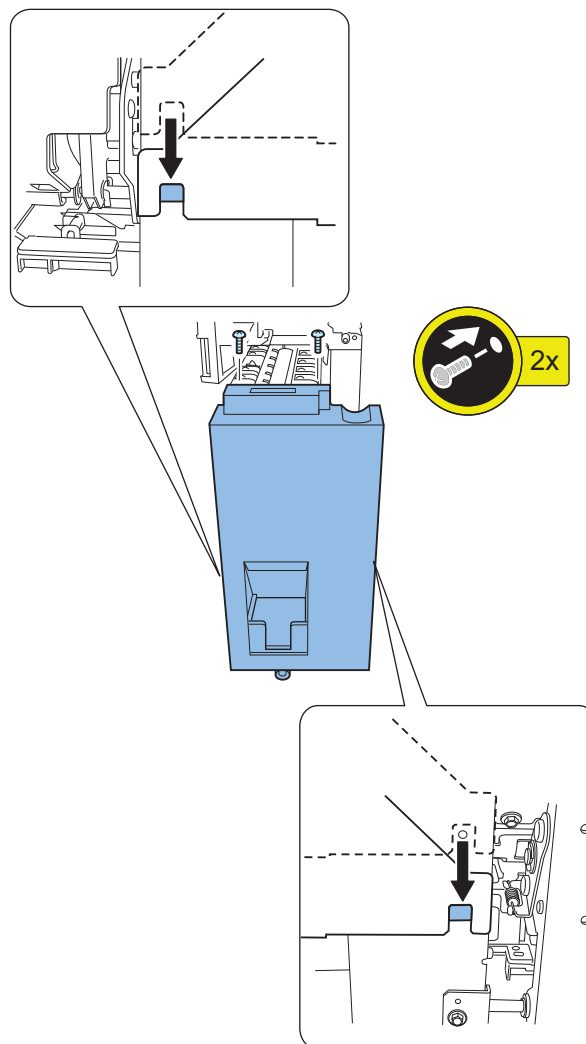


8. After adjustment, tighten the 2 screws of the caster roller.



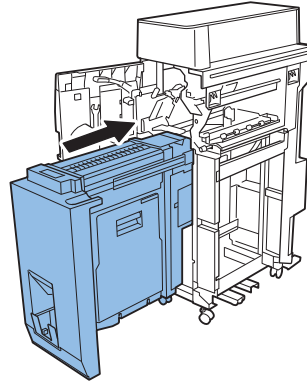
9. Pull out the folder unit. Fix the folder front cover while fitting it to both side of the hook.

- 2 Screws (Binding ; M4x7)

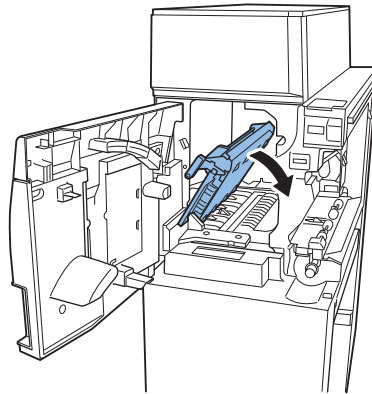




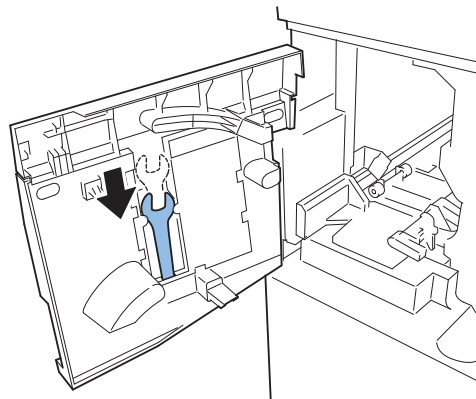
10. Return the folder unit to the original position.



11. While holding the jam handling lever, close the transfer guide.

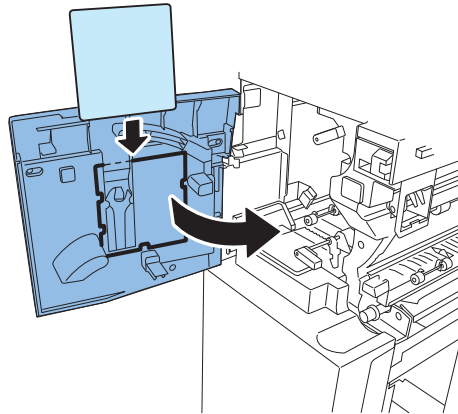


12. Return the wrench to the front upper cover.





13. Return the jam recovery map and close the front upper cover.



● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

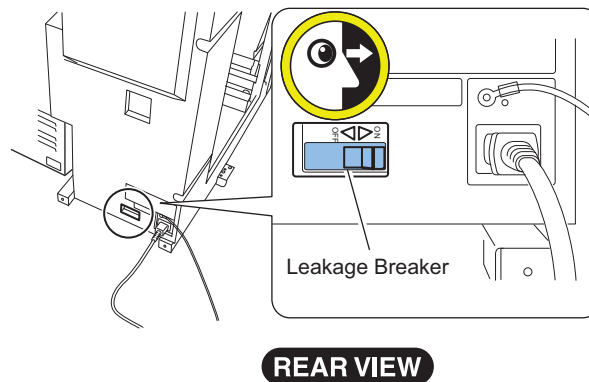
1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- When connected to the host machine (upstream equipment)
 - [1] Face cover of the host machine 2pcs.
 - [2] Screw (Binding; M4x10) 1pc.
 - [3] Stopper (front) 1pc.
 - [4] Stopper (rear) 1pc.
 - [5] Screw (Flat Head Screw; M3x5) 2pcs.
 - [6] Removed Interface Cable 1pc.
 - [7] Removed face cover 1pc.
 - [8] Remaining Language Jam label 1pc.
- When connected to the Document Insertion Unit (upstream equipment)
 - [1] Stopper (front) 1pc.
 - [2] Stopper (rear) 1pc.
 - [3] Screw (Flat Head Screw; M3x5) 2pcs.
 - [4] Removed Interface Cable 1pc.
 - [5] Removed face cover 1pc.
 - [6] Remaining Language Jam label 1pc.

■ Operation Checks



1. When all the installations have completed, check that the Leakage Breaker is turned ON.





2. Turn **ON** the main power of the host machine.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press **[Update]** to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If **[Skip]** is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- (Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. Check for **Z-fold, C-fold, outer threefold, four-fold, and two-fold operations.**

Document Insertion Unit-Q1, Document Insertion/Folding Unit-K1

Checking Before Installation

The following conditions are required for the installation site. Therefore, it is recommended to see the installation site in advance before delivering this equipment to the user's site.

■ Checking the Power Supply

1. Check that this equipment is connectable to the outlet independently which supplies the rated voltage within +10/-15% at the specified ampere or higher.
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this equipment near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

■ Points to Note on installation

Exercise following caution for installation.

- This equipment is so heavy (Document Insertion Unit: approx. 40kg, Document Insertion/Folding Unit: approx. 76kg). Be sure to work in a group of 3 persons or more.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

Document Insertion Unit: F280450

Document Insertion/Folding Unit: F280460

Unpacking

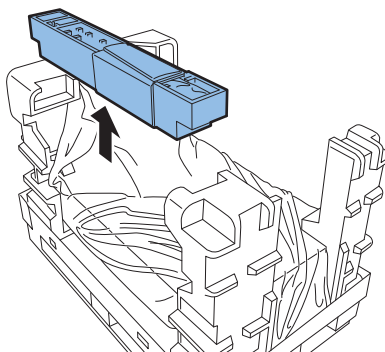
■ Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

The equipment is secured by tapes, cushioning and other materials to protect it from vibration and impact during transit. Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials as instructed below before installing the equipment. Keep all fixings in a safe place for later reuse in reshipping the equipment, as for relocation and repairs.

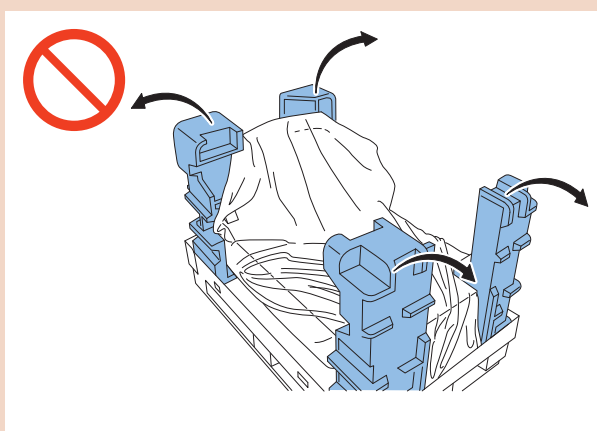


1. Take out the accessory box from the cushioning materials.



CAUTION:

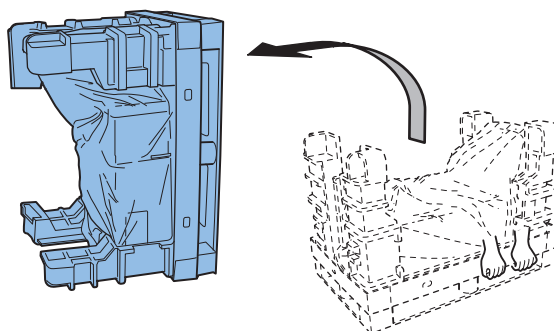
Don't remove 4 cushioning materials because it may cause to deform this equipment. Otherwise, you would likely deform some areas of this equipment.



2. Lift the equipment together with the pallet.

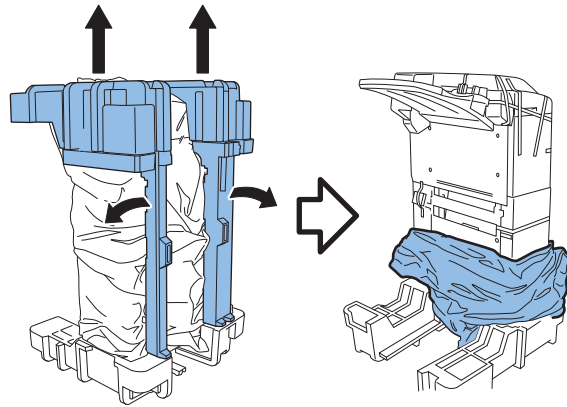
CAUTION:

- Be sure not to have the equipment itself because it may cause to deform or damage the equipment. Do not hold the tray of the Inserter.
- This equipment is so heavy (Document Insertion Unit: approx. 40kg, Document Insertion/Folding Unit: approx. 76kg). Be sure to work in a group of 3 persons or more.

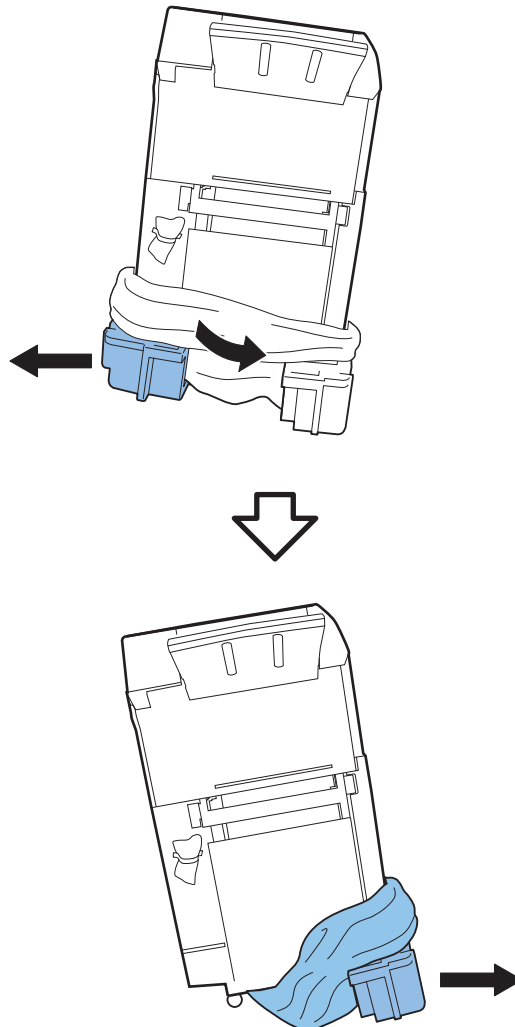




3. Remove the pallet and cushioning materials. Then, put the plastic cover down to the position shown.



4. Lift the front and rear side lightly to remove the cushioning materials and plastic cover.



5. Remove the tapes used outside of this equipment.

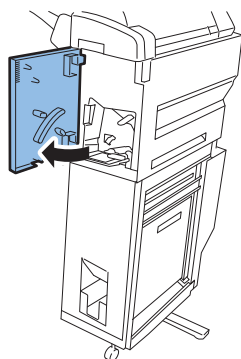
NOTE:

In the case of the Document Insertion/Folding Unit, be sure not to remove the tapes from the Folder Unit because those are removed later.

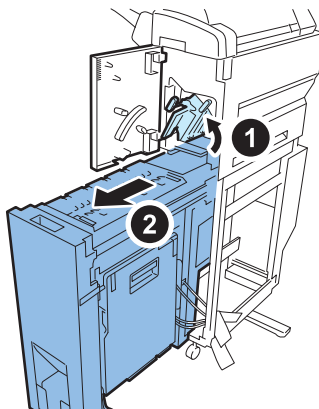
■ Unpacking Procedure on the Folder Unit (for Document Insertion/Folding Unit)



1. Open the Front Upper Cover.

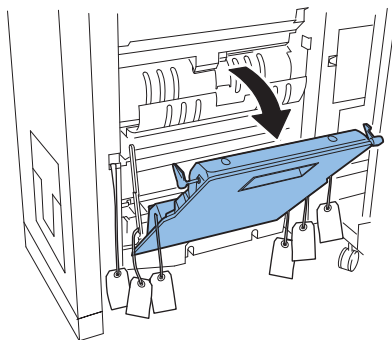


2. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide, and pull out the Folder Unit.



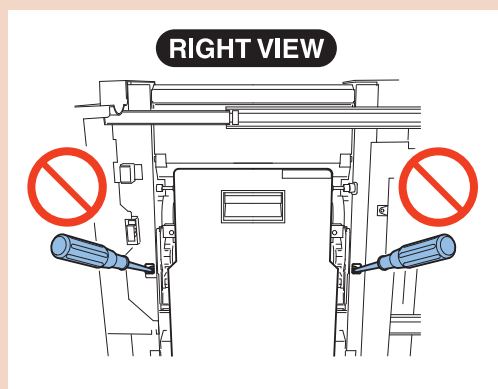


3. Remove all tapes from the Folder Unit and open the Folder Guide Plate (Right) fully (at two levels).



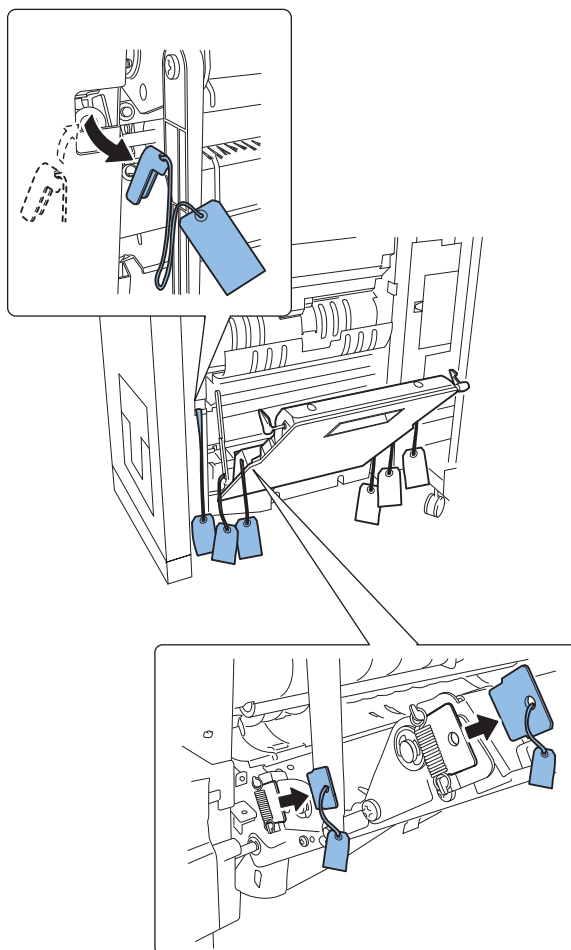
CAUTION:

The 2 screws (pointed by screwdrivers) at the front and rear are used to adjust the Folding Roller Pressure. Never loosen these screws.



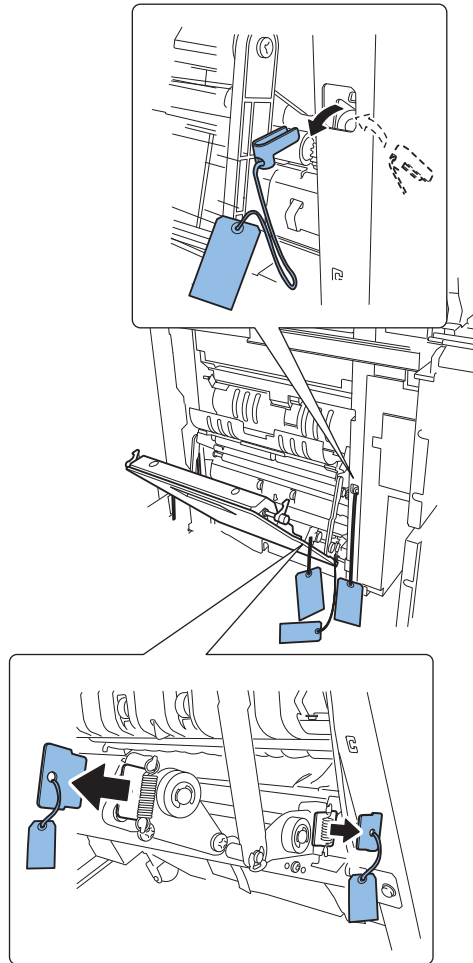
**4. Remove the 3 fixings on the front side of the folder unit.****CAUTION:**

The Folder Guide Plate (Right) must be opened fully when removing the fixings. Do not pull them out forcibly.



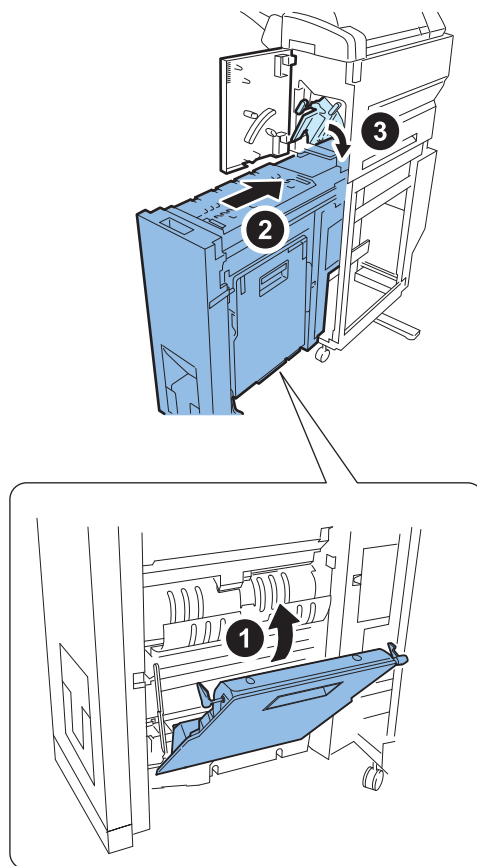
**5. Remove the 3 Fixings on the rear side of the folder unit.****CAUTION:**

The Folder Guide Plate (Right) must be opened fully when removing the Fixings. Do not pull them out forcibly.

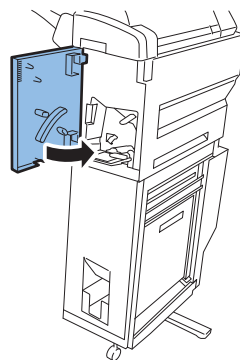




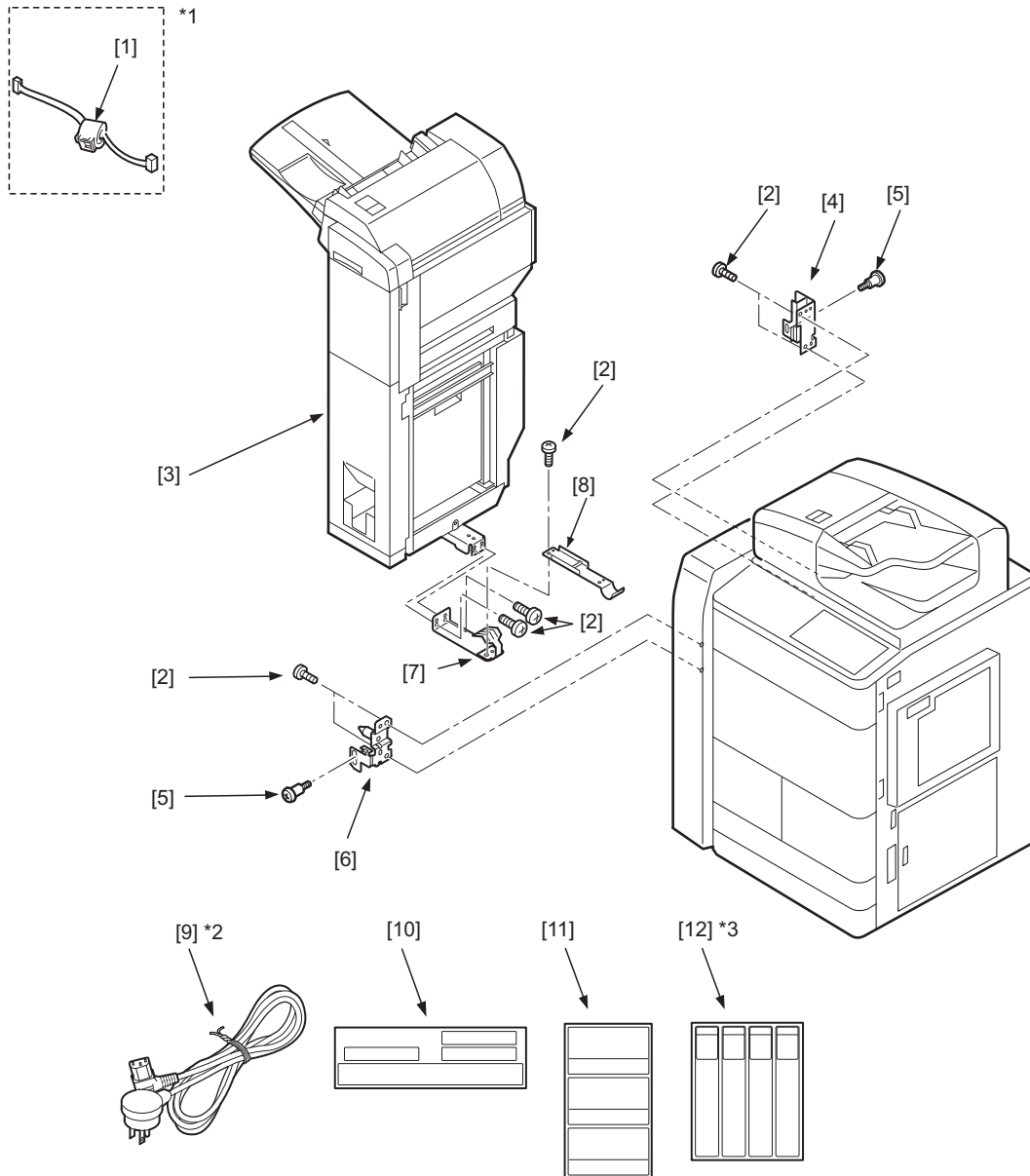
6. Close the Folder Guide Plate (Right) and return the Folder Unit to the original position. Then, holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide.



7. Close the Front Upper Cover.



Checking the Contents



- [1] Relay Connector (for Finisher) 1pc. *1
- [2] Screw (Binding; M4x7) 7pcs.
- [3] Document Insertion Unit or Document Insertion/Folding Unit 1pc.
- [4] Fixing Plate (Rear) 1pc.
- [5] Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x5) 2pcs.
- [6] Fixing Plate (Front) 1pc.
- [7] Ground Plate Unit 1pc.
- [8] Rail Extension Plate 1pc.
- [9] Power Cord 1pc. (for 120V model), 3pcs. (for 230V model) *2
- [10] Document Setting Label 1pc.
- [11] Document Prohibition Label 1pc.
- [12] Jam Removal Label 1pc. *3

*1: Use the part [1] when connecting this equipment and the Finisher. (Refer to Finisher Installation Procedure.)

*2: The package may contain several power cords intended for use in Europe. Use the correct power cord to match the location/area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

*3: The part [12] is supplied with the Document Insertion/Folding Unit only.

<Others>

Including guides

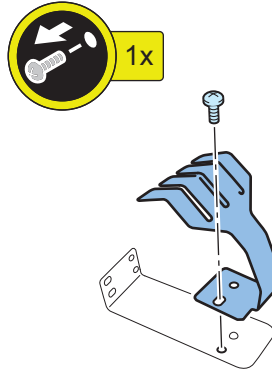
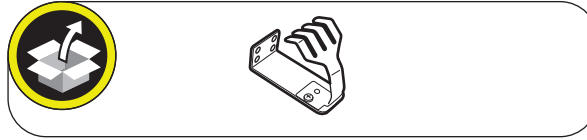
Installation Procedure

■ Preparation of this Equipment



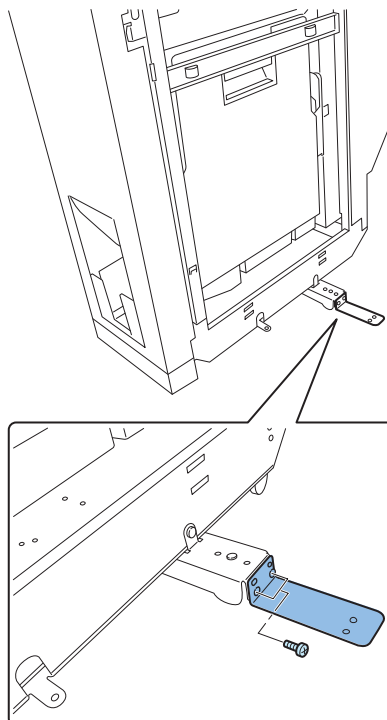
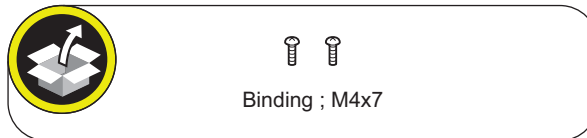
1. Remove the the Ground Plate from the Ground Plate Unit (the removed screw is used at late procedure).

- 1 Screws



2. Install the metal plate removed step 1.

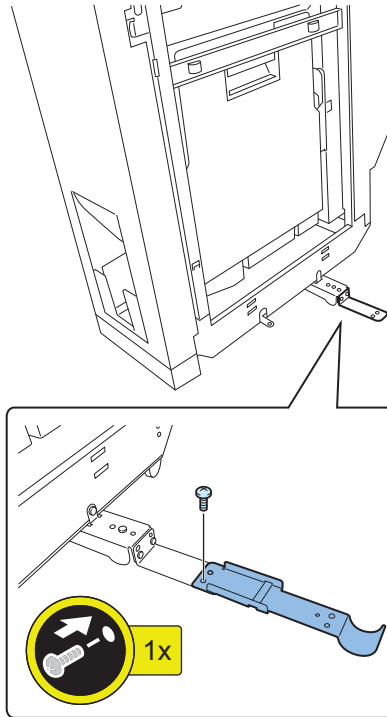
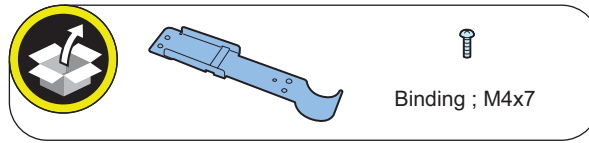
- 2 Screws (Binding; M4x7)





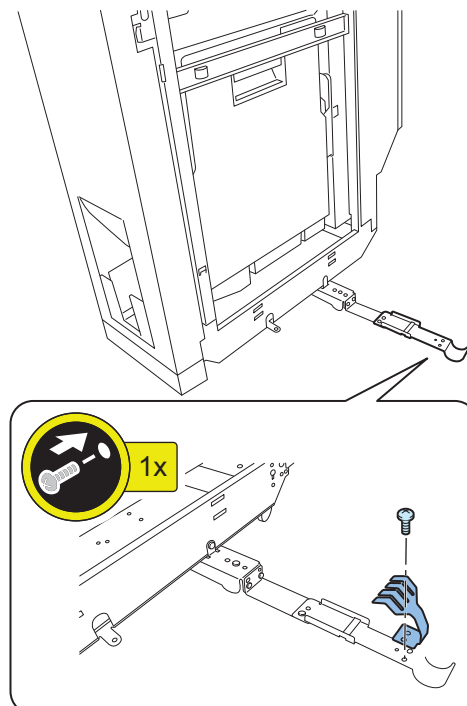
3. Install the Rail Extension Plate.

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x7)



4. Mount the Ground Plate.

- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x7) (removed in step 1)

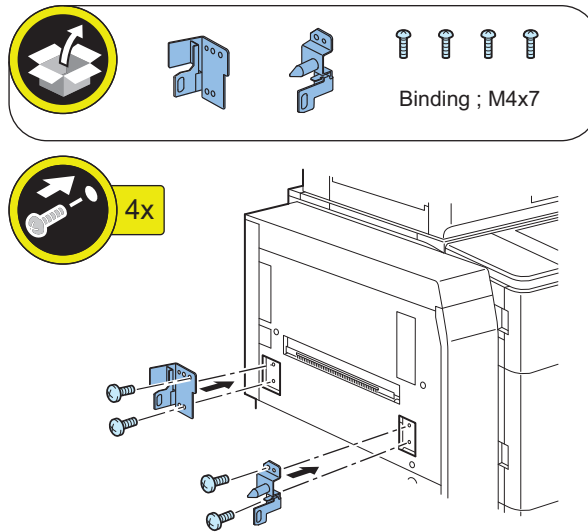


■ Preparing of the Host Machine



1. Install the Fixing Plates (Front/Rear).

- 4 Screws (Binding; M4x7)



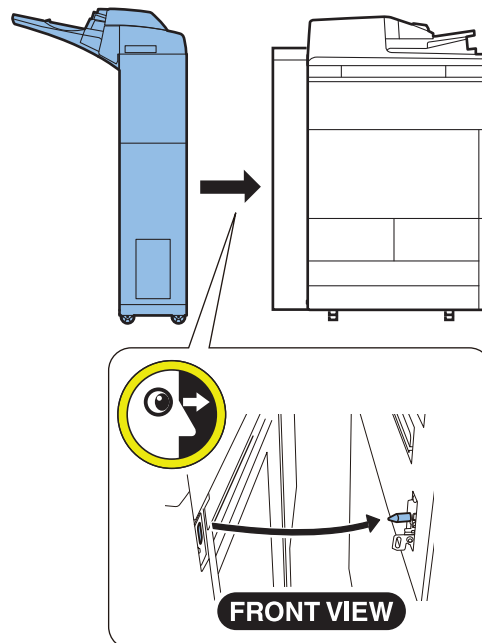
■ Connecting to the Host Machine (for Document Insertion Unit)

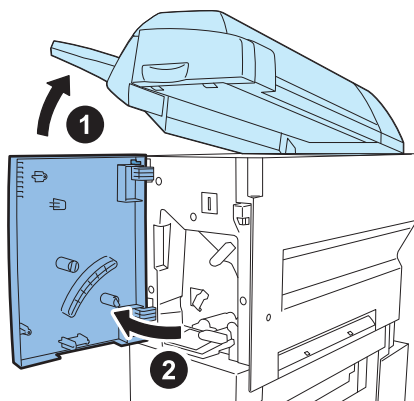
NOTE:

Install the Buffer Pass Unit before connecting to the Host Machine.

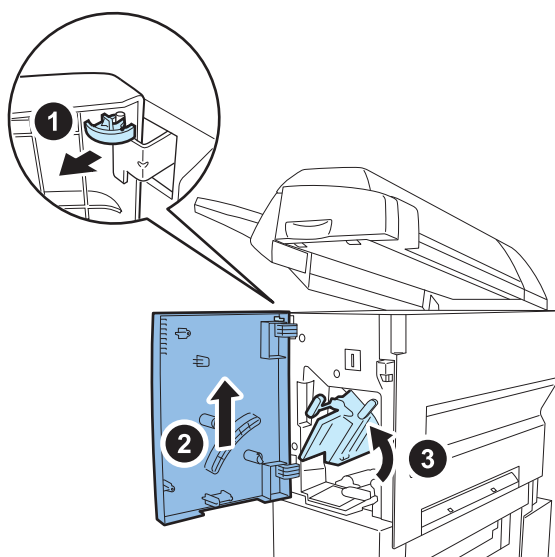


1. Fit the pin of the Fixing Plate (Front) on the Host Machine in the slot on this equipment.

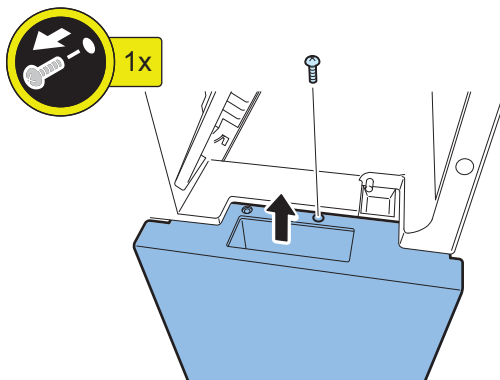


**2. Open the Inserter Pickup Unit and the Front Upper Cover.****3. Remove the Front Upper Cover, and then holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide.**

- 1 Clip

**4. Remove the Front Lower Cover.**

- 1 Screw

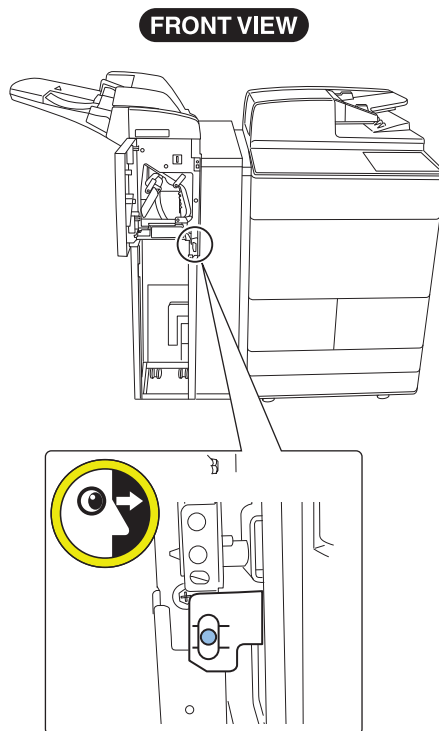




5. Check whether the screw hole is between the upper marking-off line and the lower marking-off line on the Fixing Plate (Front).

NOTE:

If the screw hole is not positioned between the marking-off lines, carry out the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Height and Tilt."

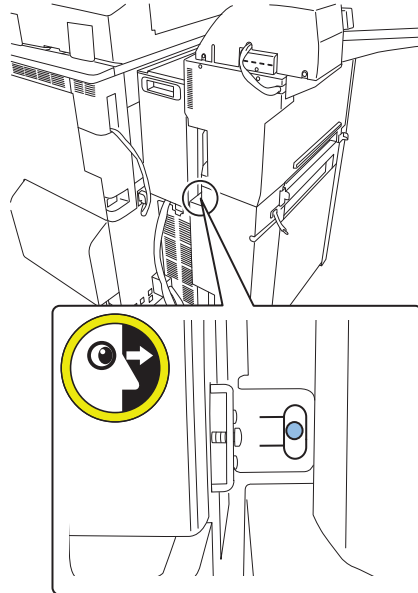




6. Check whether the screw hole is between the upper marking-off line and the lower marking-off line on the Fixing Plate (Rear).

NOTE:

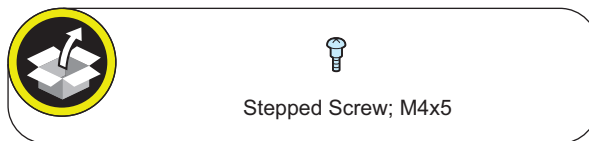
If the screw hole is not positioned between the marking-off lines, carry out the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Height and Tilt."

REAR VIEW

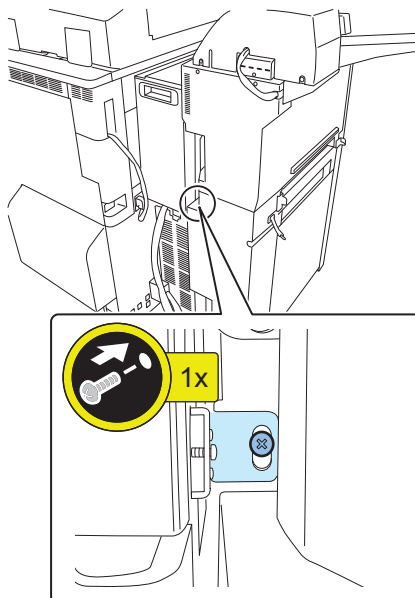


7. Fix the Fixing Plate (Rear) in place to this equipment.

- 1 Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x5)



REAR VIEW





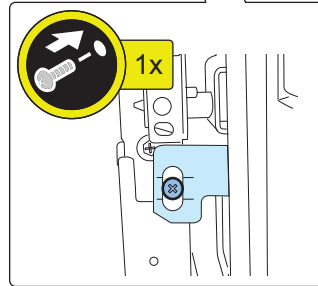
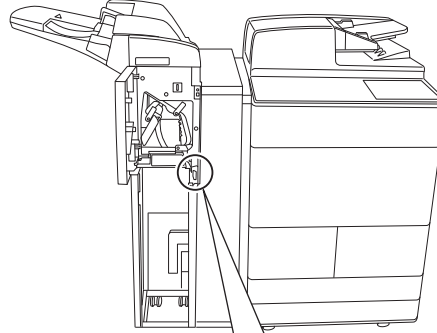
8. Fix the Fixing Plate (Front) in place to this equipment.

- 1 Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x5)



Stepped Screw; M4x5

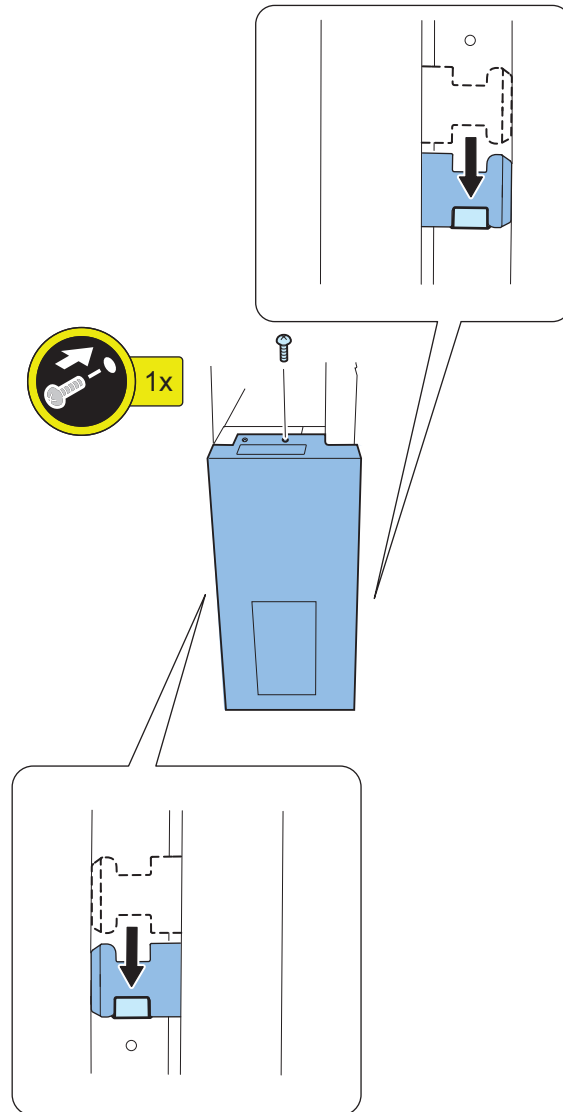
FRONT VIEW





9. Attach the Front Lower Cover by engaging to the hook.

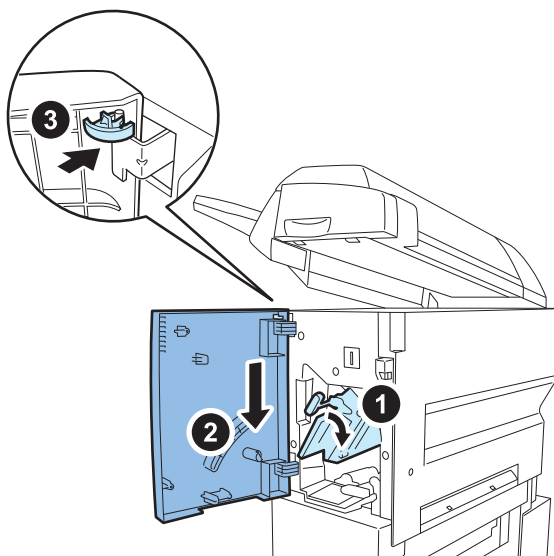
- 1 Screw (Binding; M4x7)



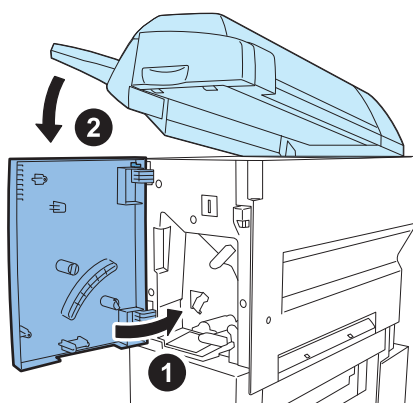


10. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide, and then install the Front Upper Cover.

- 1 Clip



11. Close the Front Upper Cover and the Inserter Pickup Unit.



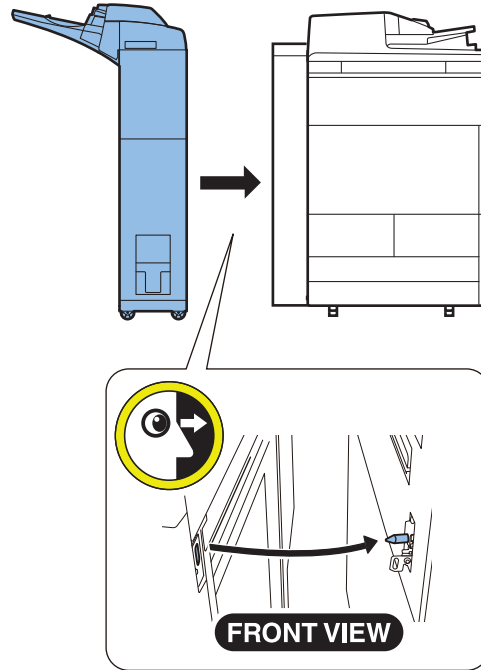
■ Connecting to the Host Machine (for Document Insertion/Folding Unit)

NOTE:

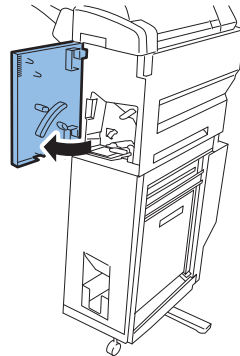
Install the Buffer Pass Unit before connecting to the Host Machine.



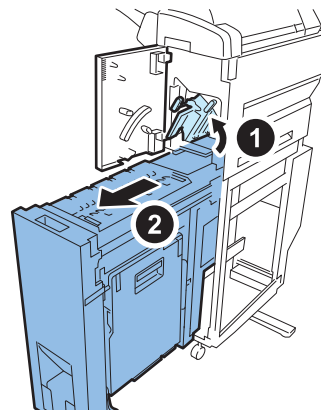
1. Fit the pin of the Fixing Plate (Front) on the Host Machine in the slot on this equipment.



2. Open the Front Upper Cover.



3. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide, and pull out the Folder Unit.

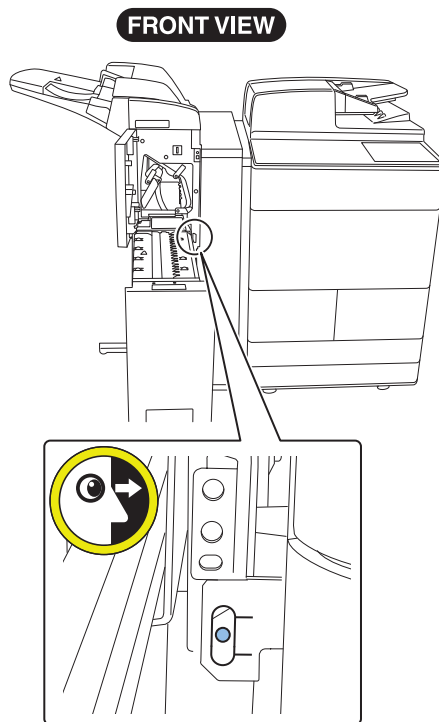




4. Check whether the screw hole is between the upper marking-off line and the lower marking-off line on the Fixing Plate (Front).

NOTE:

If the screw hole is not positioned between the marking-off lines, carry out the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Height and Tilt."

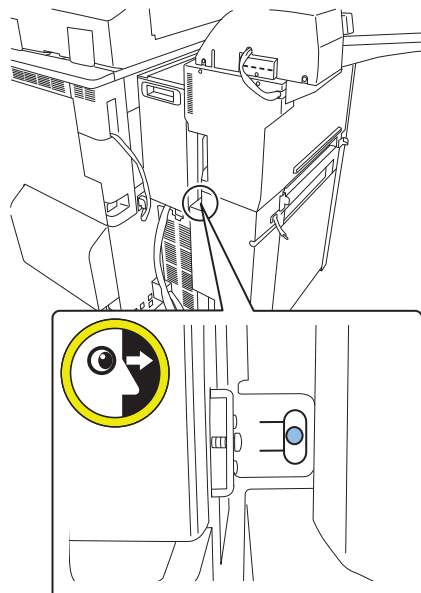




5. Check whether the screw hole is between the upper marking-off line and the lower marking-off line on the Fixing Plate (Rear).

NOTE:

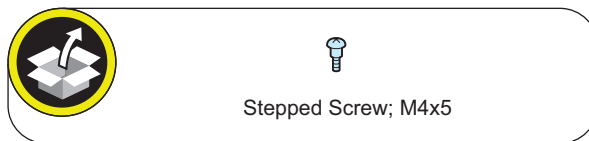
If the screw hole is not positioned between the marking-off lines, carry out the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Height and Tilt."

REAR VIEW

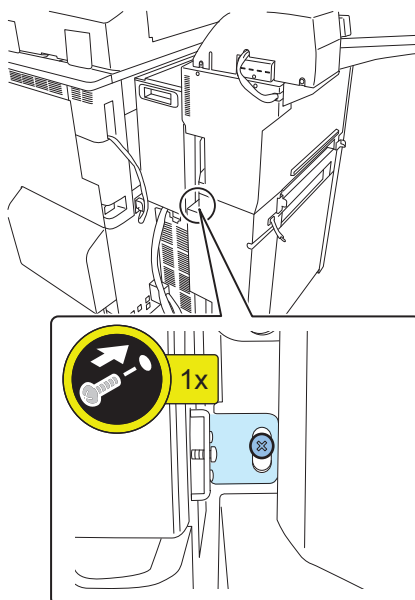


6. Fix the Fixing Plate (Rear) in place to this equipment.

- 1 Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x5)



REAR VIEW

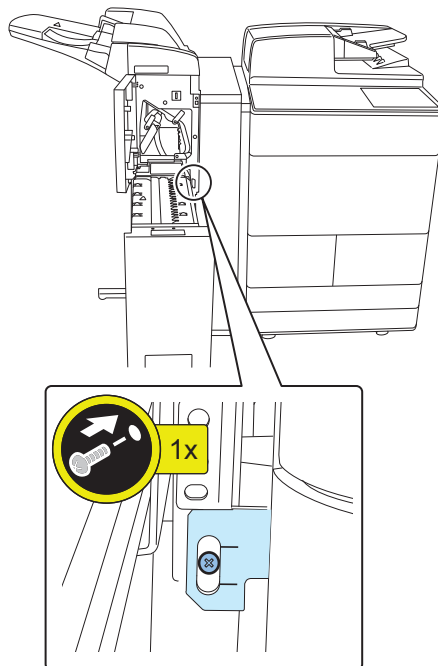
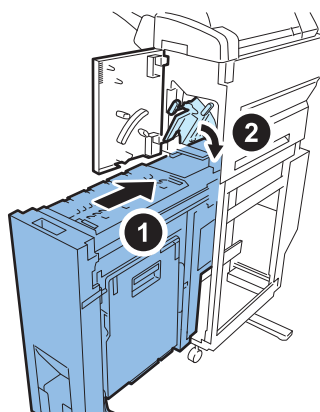


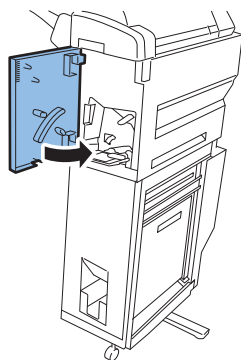
**7. Fix the Fixing Plate (Front) in place to this equipment.**

- 1 Screw (Stepped Screw; M4x5)

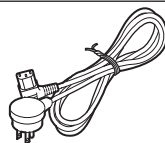
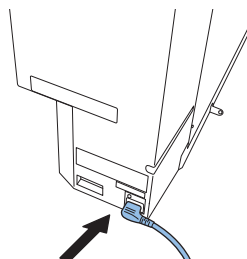


Stepped Screw; M4x5

FRONT VIEW**8. Return the Folder Unit to the original position, and then holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide.**

**9. Close the Front Upper Cover.****■ Connecting to the Power Cord****1. Insert the Power Cord into the equipment. Connect the plug end of the Power Cord into an external power outlet.****⚠ CAUTION:**

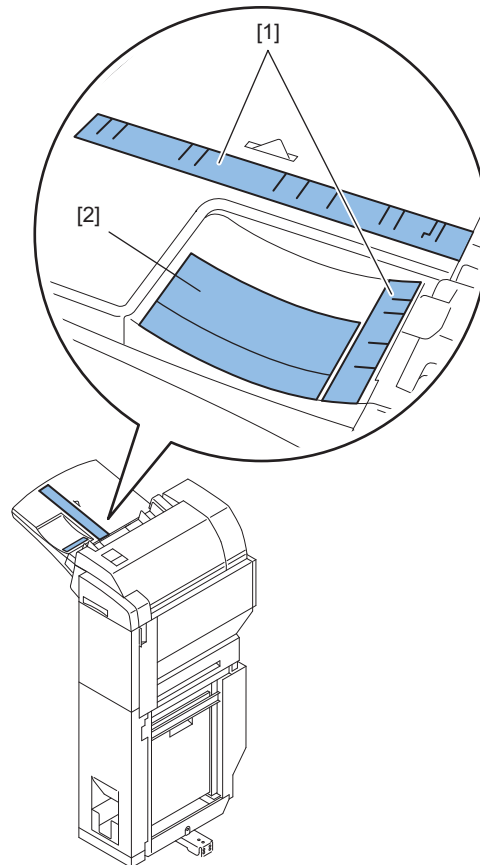
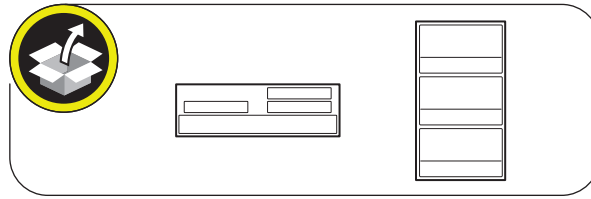
Make sure that the Power Cord is fully connected to the outlet. If the connection is not right, an accident causing the smoke or fire may occur.

**REAR VIEW**

■ Attaching the Document Setting Label and Document Prohibition Label



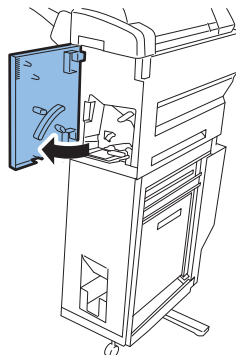
1. Affix the Document Setting Label [1] and Document Prohibition Label [2] to the Inserter.



■ Attaching the Jam Removal Label (for Document Insertion/Folding Unit)

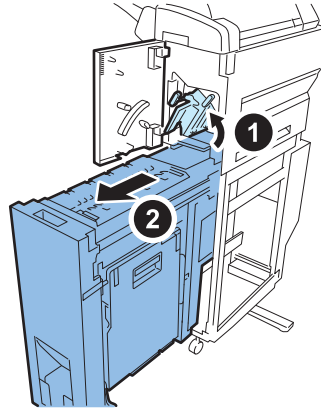


1. Open the Front Upper Cover.

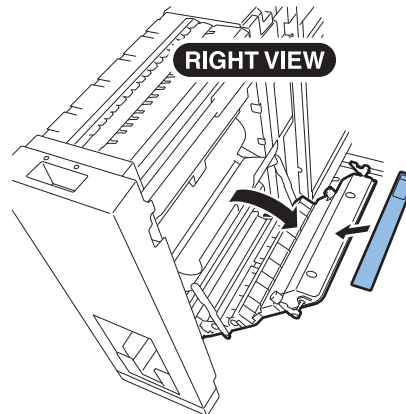
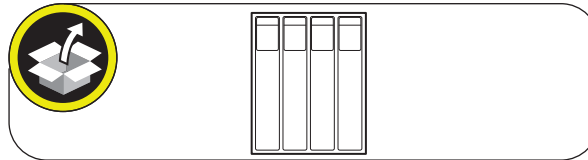




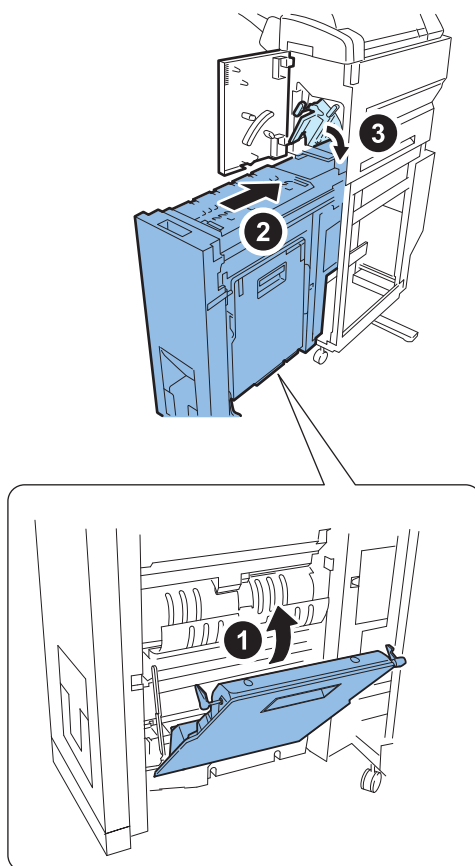
2. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide, and pull out the Folder Unit.



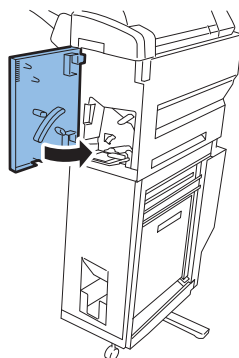
3. Open the Transfer Guide (Right), and then affix the Jam Removal Label.



-
4. Close the Folder Guide Plate (Right) and return the Folder Unit to the original position. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide.



-
5. Close the Front Upper Cover.



Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts

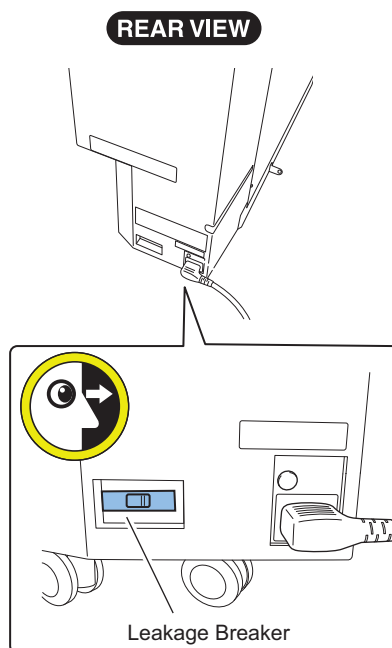
1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- [1] Remaining Document Prohibition Label 1pc.
- [2] Remaining Jam Removal Label 1pc. (for Document Insertion/Folding Unit)
- [3] Unused Power Cord 2pcs. (for 230V model)

■ Operation Checks



1. After the completion of all installations, check that the Leakage Breaker is turned ON.



2. Turn on the Host Machine.



3. Confirm that the combination of the firmware version for the Host Machine and the equipment is appropriate.



4. Check the insertion operation from the tray.



5. Check the Z-folding, C-folding operation (Document Insertion/Folding Unit only).

● Adjusting the Height and Tilt

CAUTION:

Depending on the condition of the floor of the site of installation, you may need to adjust the height and tilt of the equipment. Carry out the following procedure to adjust the height and tilt of the equipment.

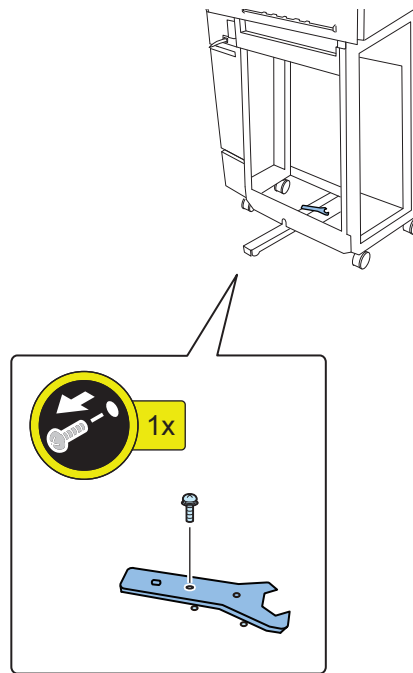
■ Removing the Wrench (for the Document Insertion Unit)

If it is necessary to use the Wrench for “Adjusting the Heights and Tilt”, remove the Wrench according to the following procedures.



1. Remove the Wrench.

- 1 Screw

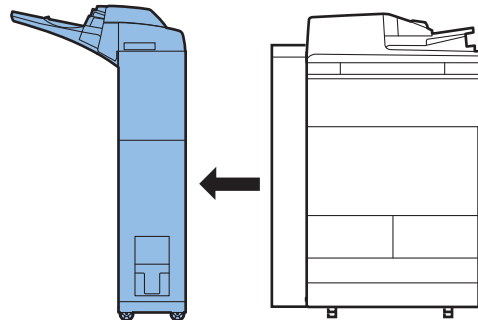


■ Removing the Wrench (for Document Insertion/Folding Unit)

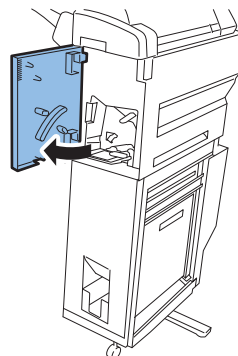
If it is necessary to use the Wrench for “Adjusting the Heights and Tilt”, remove the Wrench according to the following procedures.



1. Disconnect this equipment from the Host Machine.

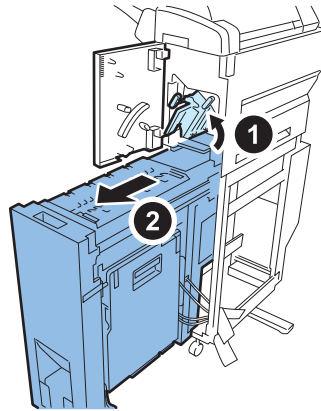


2. Open the Front Upper Cover.



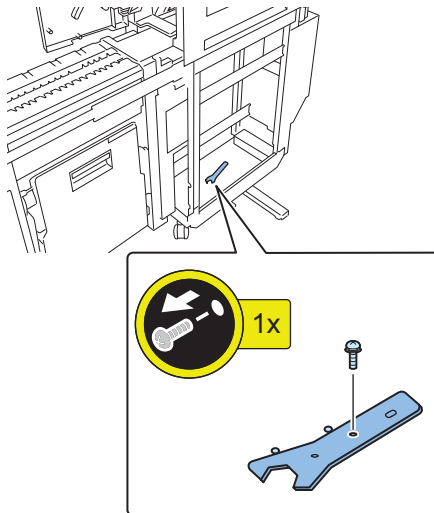


3. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide, and pull out the Folder Unit.

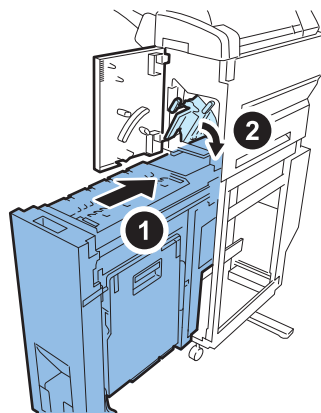


4. Remove the Wrench.

- 1 Screw

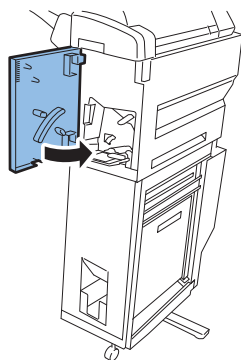


5. Return the Folder Unit to the original position, and then holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide.





6. Close the Front Upper Cover.



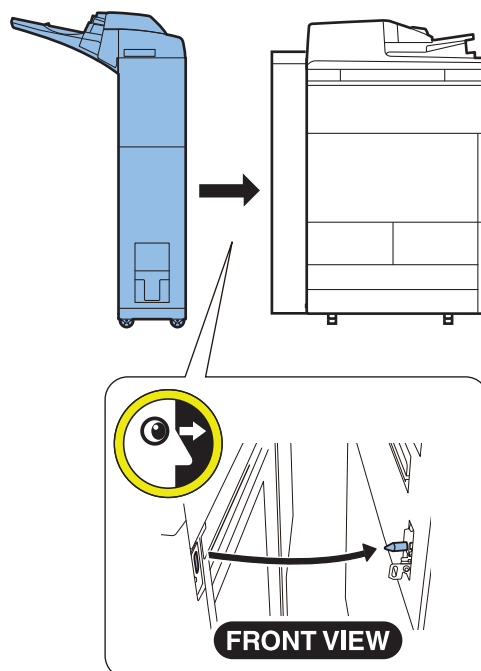
■ Adjusting the Height

CAUTION:

When have performed the procedure of "Adjusting the Height", be sure to perform the procedure of "Adjusting the Caster Roller Height of the Folding Unit". (Document Insertion/Folding Unit only)

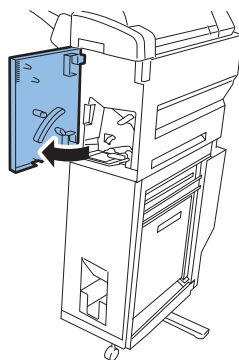


1. Fit the pin of the Fixing Plate (Front) on the Host Machine in the slot on this equipment. (Document Insertion/Folding Unit only)

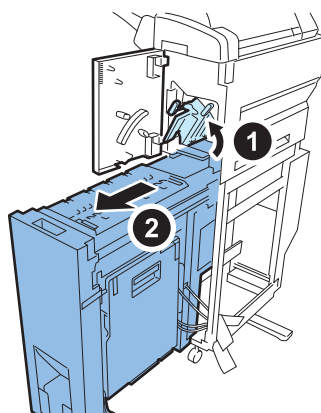




2. Open the Front Upper Cover. (Document Insertion/Folding Unit only)



3. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide. (Document Insertion/Folding Unit only)

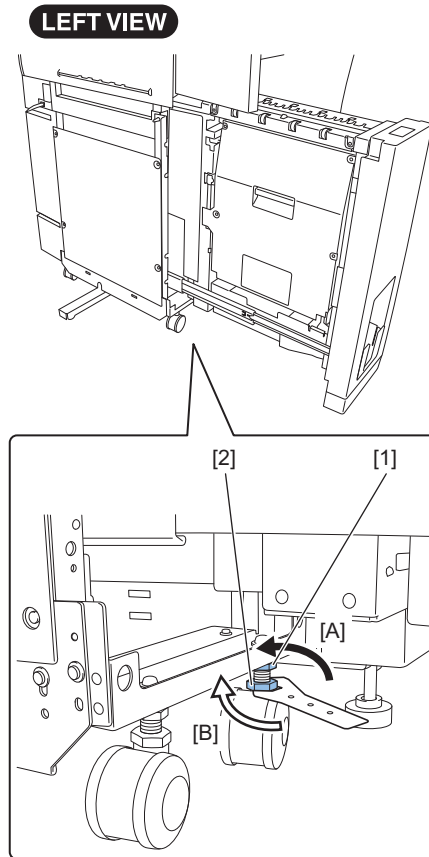




4. Loosen the nut [1] on the Caster of the front side (upstream equipment side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to reduce the height of the equipment and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to increase the height of the equipment.

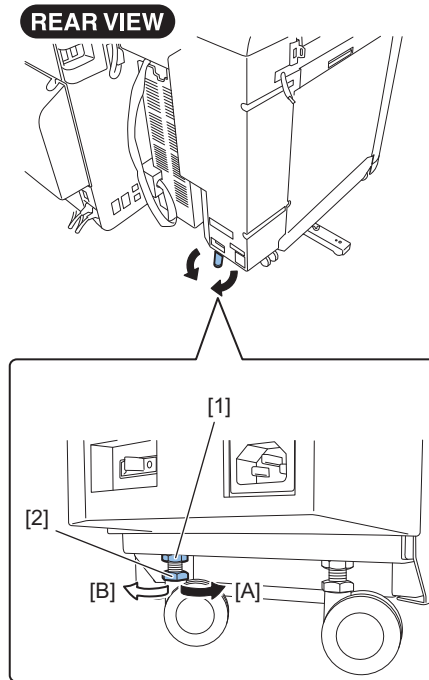




5. Loosen the nut [1] on the Caster of the rear side (upstream equipment side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the height.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to reduce the height of the equipment and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to increase the height of the equipment.



6. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the Caster (upstream equipment side).

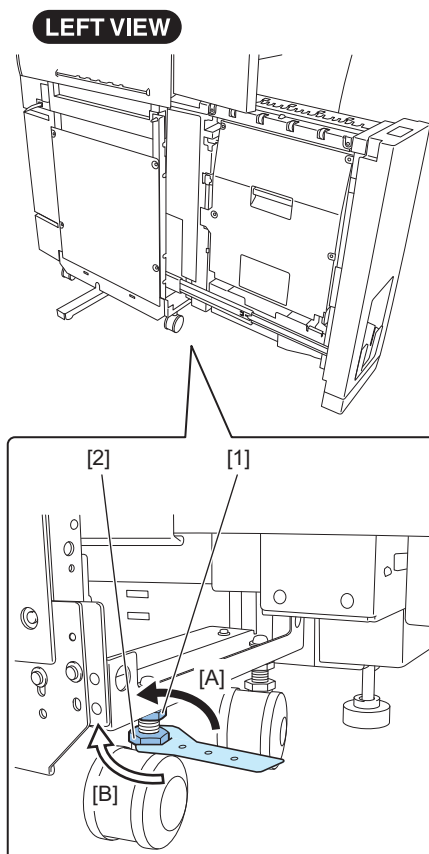
■ Adjusting the Tilt



1. Loosen the nut [1] on the Caster of the front side (paper ejection side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the tilt.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to tilt toward the paper ejection side, and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to tilt toward the upstream equipment side.

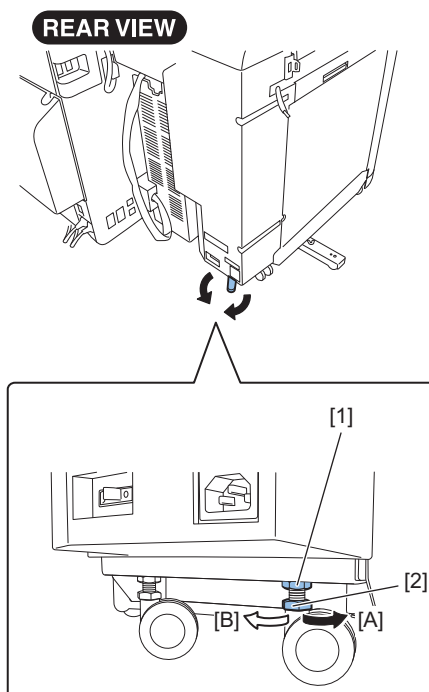




2. Loosen the nut [1] on the caster of the front side (rear side). Then turn the nut [2] to adjust the tilt.

NOTE:

- Turn the nut [1] clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to loosen.
- Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to tilt toward the paper ejection side, and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to tilt toward the upstream equipment side.



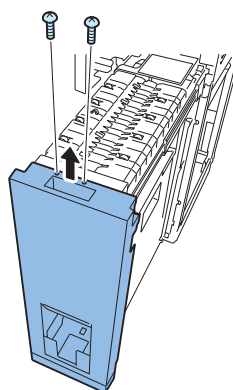
3. After adjustment, tighten the front and rear nuts [1] of the Caster (paper ejection side).

■ Adjusting the Caster Roller Height of the Folding Unit (for Document Insertion/ Folding Unit)



1. Remove the Folder Front Cover.

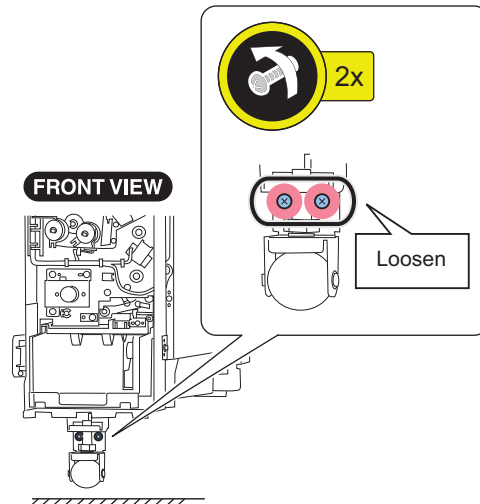
- 2 Screws



2. Return the Folder Unit to the original position.



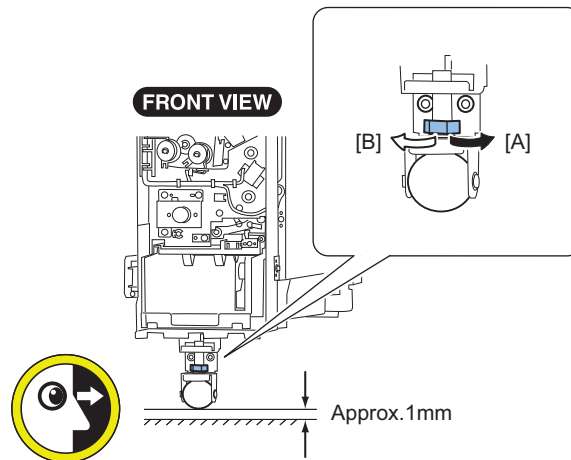
3. Loosen the 2 screws of the Caster Roller.



4. Adjust the height of the Caster Roller by turning the nut so that the space between the Caster Roller and the floor becomes about 1 mm.

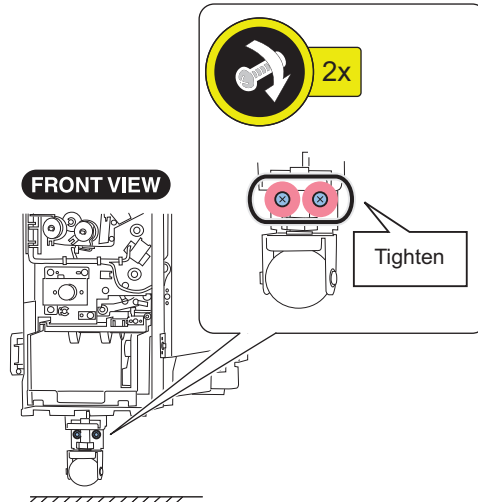
NOTE:

Turn the nut [2] counterclockwise (direction of arrow [A]) to increase the height of the Caster Roller, and clockwise (direction of arrow [B]) to reduce the height of the Caster Roller.



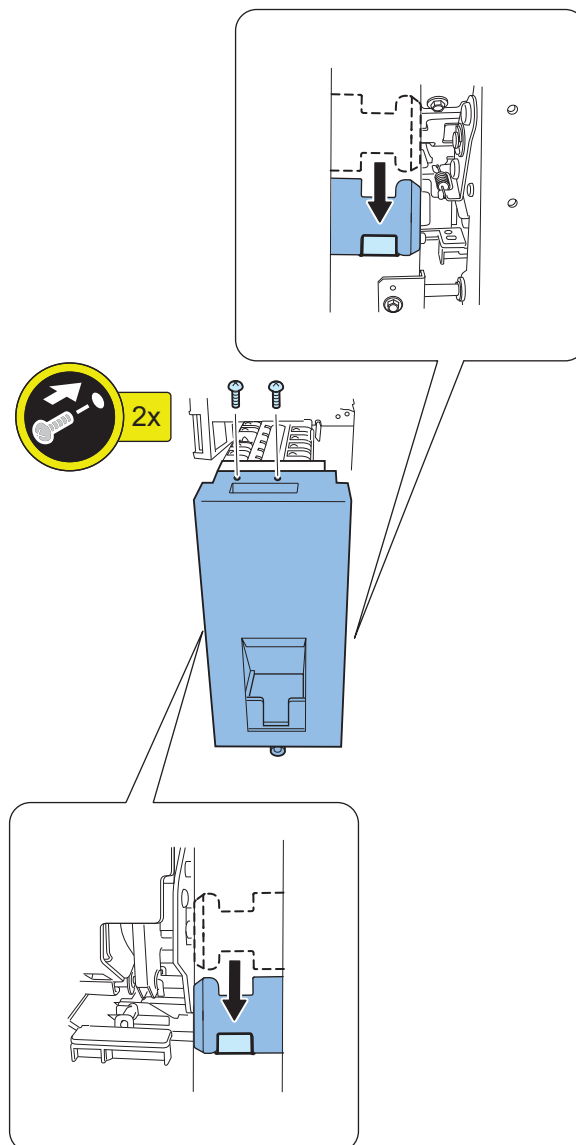


5. After adjustment, tighten the 2 screws of the Caster Roller.



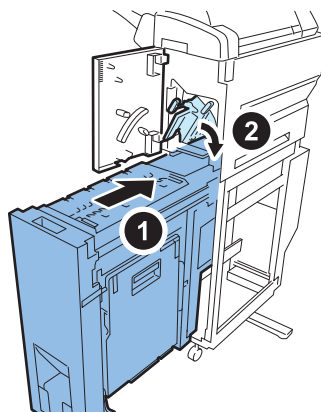
6. Pull out the Folder Unit, and then attach the Folder Unit Cover by engaging to the hook.

- 2 Screws (Binding ; M4x7)

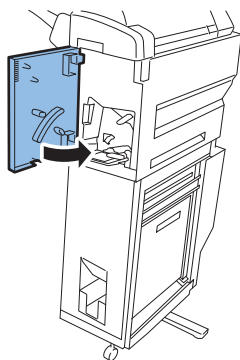




7. Return the Folder Unit to the original position, and then holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide.



8. Close the Front Upper Cover.



■ Storing the Wrench (for Document Insertion Unit)

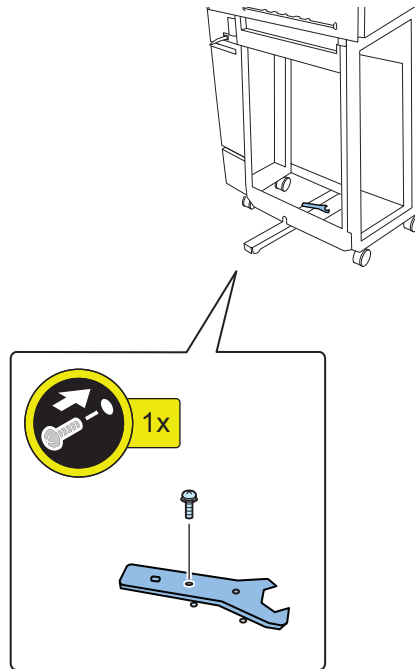
NOTE:

After store the wrench, perform “Connecting to the Host Machine” procedure.



1. Store the wrench at the original position.

- 1 Screw (W Sems; M4x8)



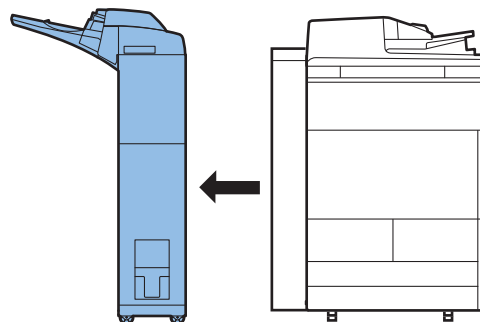
■ Storing the Wrench (for Document Insertion/Folding Unit)

NOTE:

After store the wrench, perform “Connecting to the Host Machine” procedure.

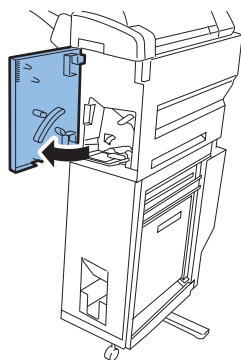


1. Disconnect this equipment from the Host Machine.

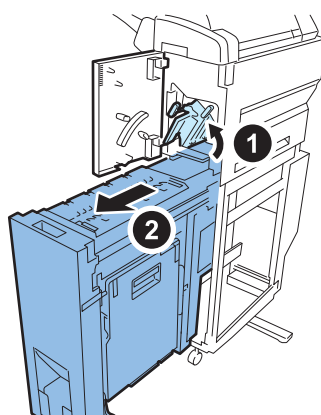




2. Open the Front Upper Cover.

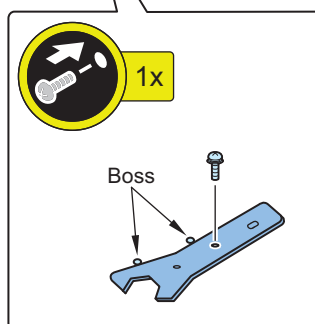
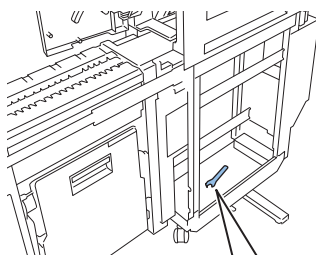


3. Holding the Jam Removal Lever, raise the Transfer Guide, and pull out the Folder Unit.



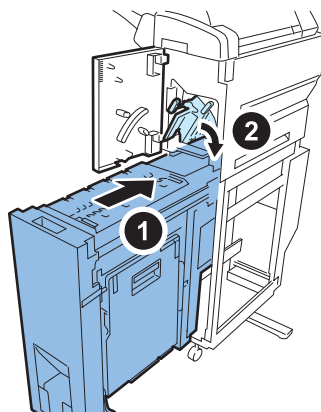
4. Store the wrench at the original position.

- 1 Screw (W Sems ; M4x8)

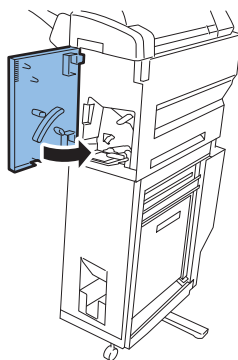




5. Return the Folder Unit to the original position, and then holding the Jam Removal Lever, lower the Transfer Guide.



6. Close the Front Upper Cover.



Staple Finisher-AC1/ Booklet Finisher-AC1

● Checking before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

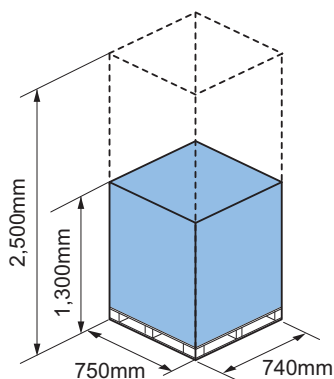
Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

CAUTION:

- Install the host machine first and then install this equipment.
- Do not carry this equipment with the host machine is installed for prevention of breakage.

■ Checking the Unpacking Space

Be sure to unpack this equipment according to the illustrations in a wide area where there is enough space around it.



■ Essential Items to Be Performed Before Installation

- Turn OFF the main power of the host machine, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.

⚠ WARNING:

- If performing work without disconnecting the power plug of the host machine, it may cause electrical shock.
 - If disconnecting the power plug without turning OFF the main power, it may cause damage of the machine.
- When turning OFF the main power, follow the below procedure.
 1. Turn OFF the main power switch of the host machine.
 2. The display in the Control Panel and the lamp of the main power are turned off.

■ Points to Note on Installation

- Illustrations used in this procedure are those of the Booklet Finisher unless otherwise specified.
- Refer to "Order of Installation of Options" when installing this equipment.
- Since this machine is heavy (Staple Finisher: approx. 36kg, Booklet Finisher: approx. 60kg), 2 or more persons are required to install it. Be sure to perform the work in accordance with the standard to handle a heavy load in each country.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

CAUTION:

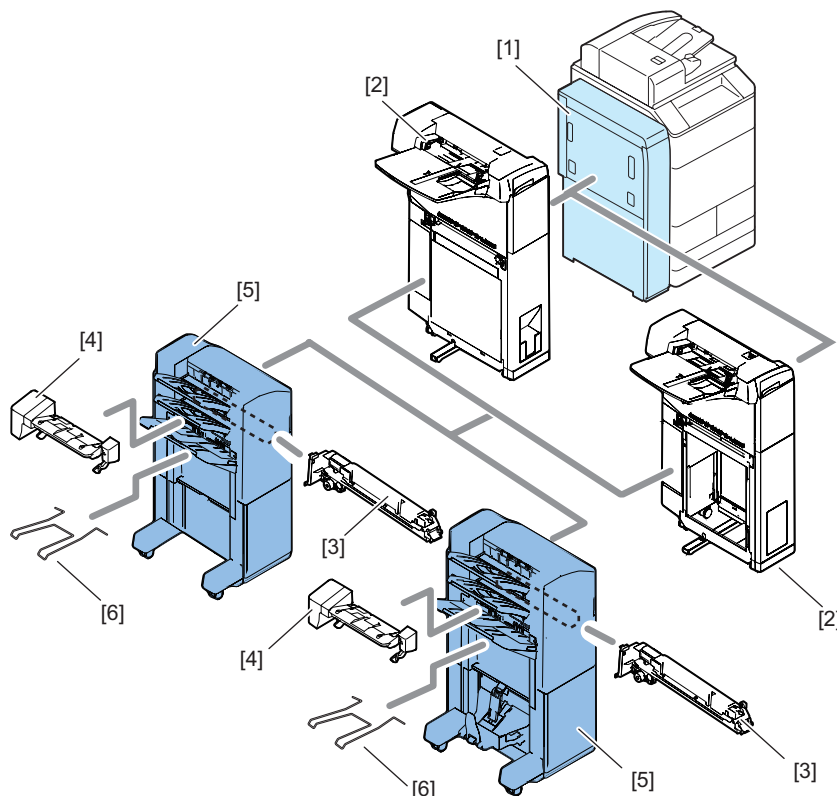
When tightening the screws, do not tighten them too tightly. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage and deformation of screw holes.



■ Order of Installation of Options

1. Buffer Pass Unit *1
2. Document Insertion Unit or Document Insertion/ Folding Unit
3. Puncher Unit
4. Jogger Kit
5. Staple Finisher or Booklet Finisher (This equipment)
6. Long Sheet Tray

*1:When installing the Finisher, it is necessary for the Buffer Pass Unit to be installed.



■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281054
- F281059

Unpacking

Unpacking Procedure

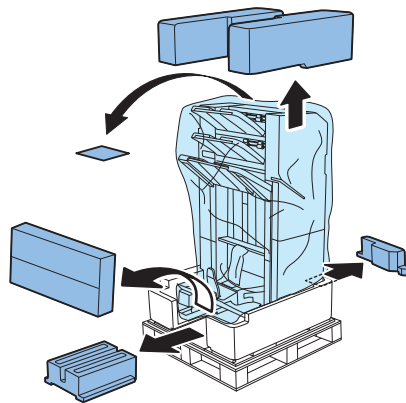
CAUTION:

This equipment is rather heavy. Be sure to work with a group of 2 or more people. Particularly when moving it over a step on the floor, be sure to take full care not to let it tumble over (Weight: Staple Finisher: approx. 36 kg, Booklet Finisher: approx. 60 kg).

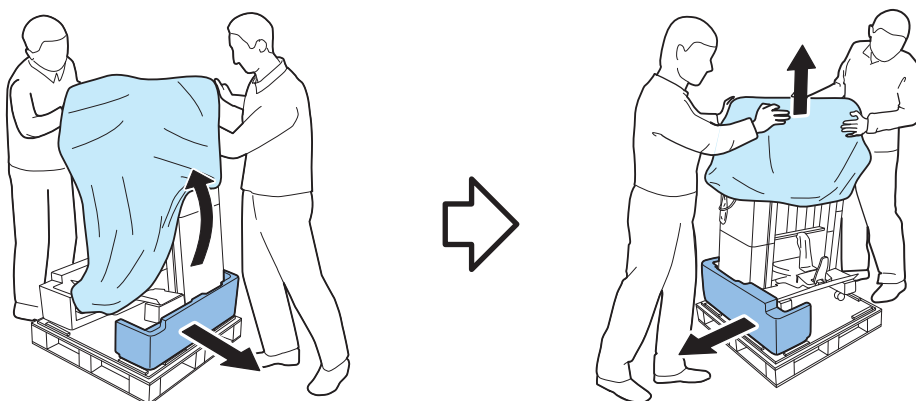
NOTE:

This equipment is packed using tapes, fixings and cushioning materials to be protected against vibration and shock during transportation. Be sure to remove them before starting to install this equipment. It is a good idea to store away the removed fixings and cushioning materials for possible relocation of this equipment, e.g., to a new site or for repairs.

□
1.

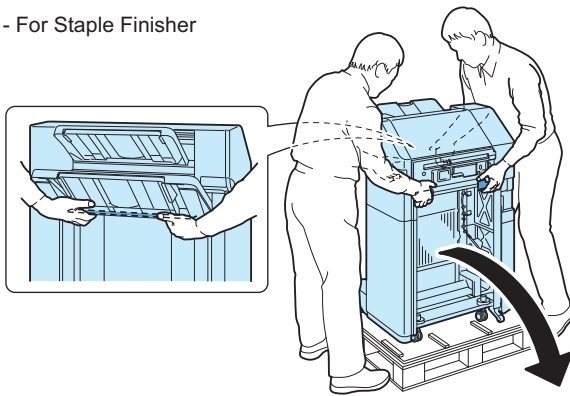


□
2.

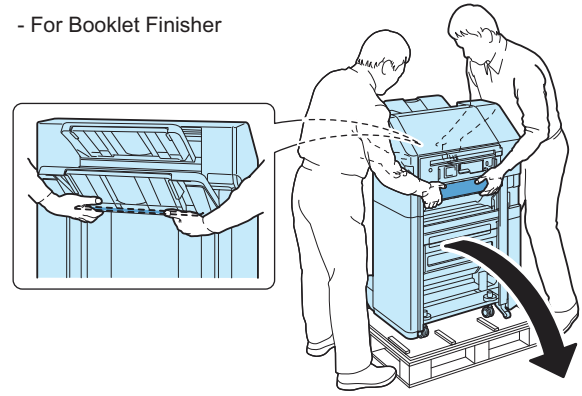


□
3. Hold the specified parts as shown and unload the finisher.

- For Staple Finisher



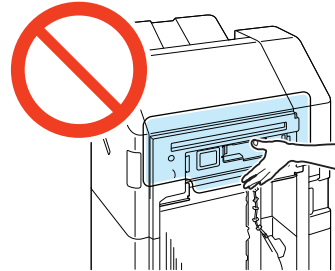
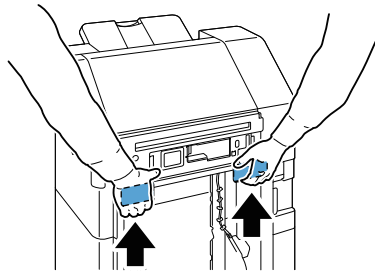
- For Booklet Finisher



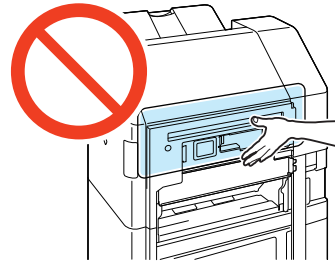
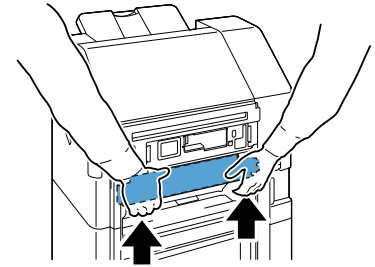
CAUTION:

Hold the specified parts as shown and do not hold the other parts to lift up the finisher.

- For Staple Finisher

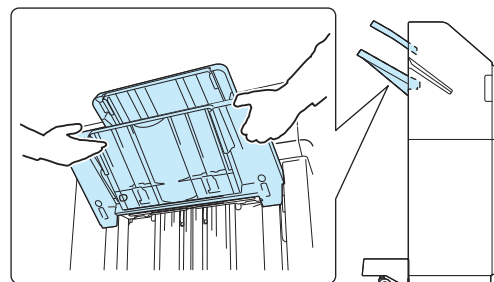
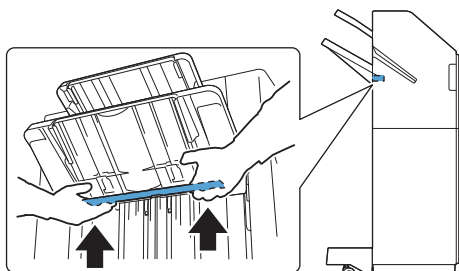


- For Booklet Finisher



CAUTION:

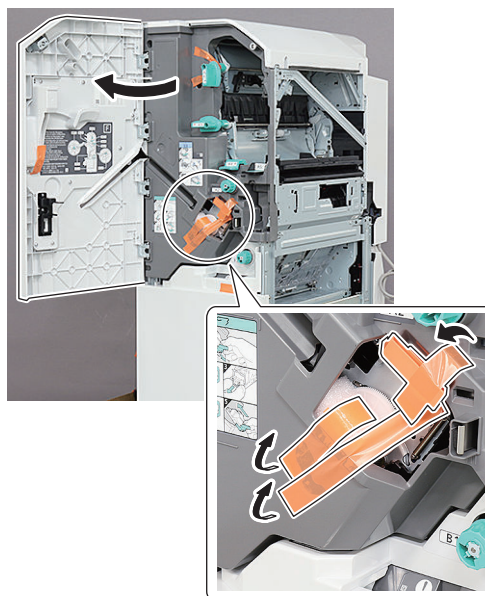
Hold the metal part as shown and do not hold the other tray parts.



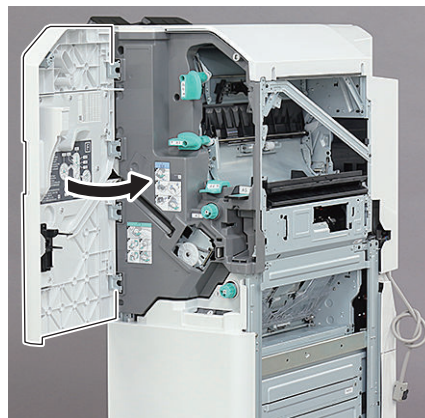
* Number of tray differs depending on the model type of finisher.

4. Remove all the tapes and cushioning materials outside this equipment.

5.

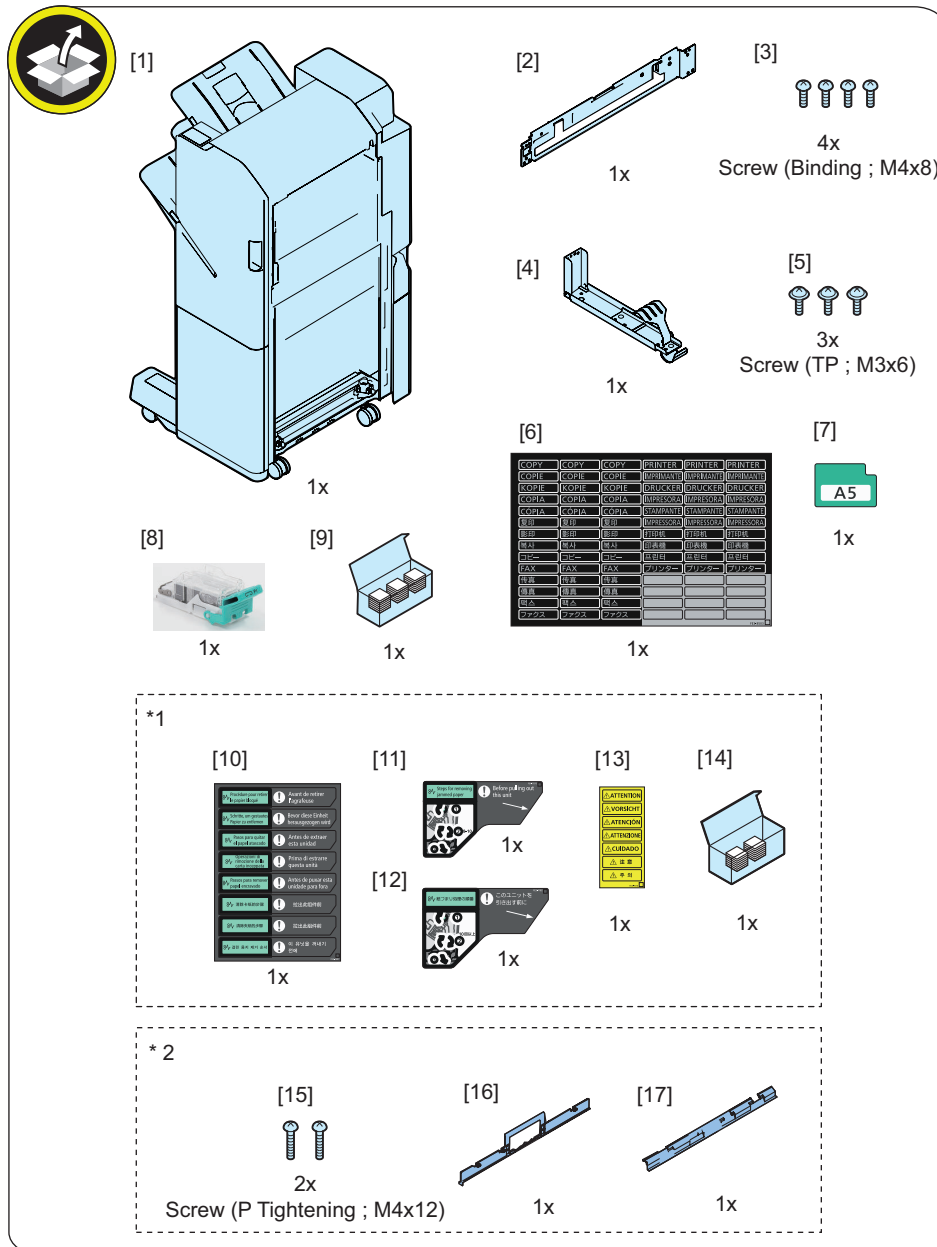


6.



Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.



NOTE:

- *1 : Booklet Finisher only
- *2 : These are not used.

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

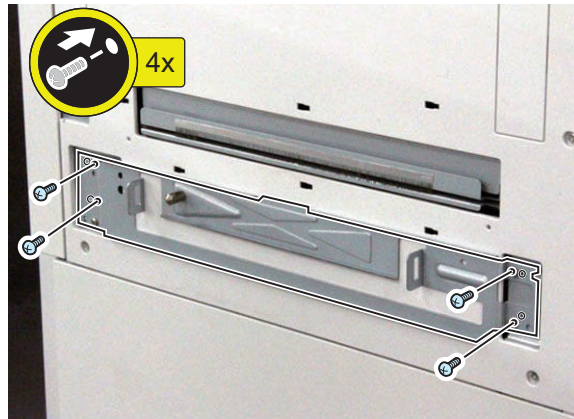
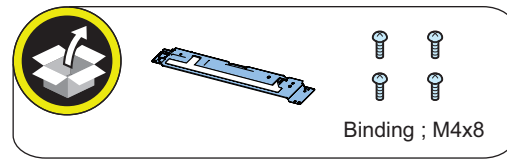
Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

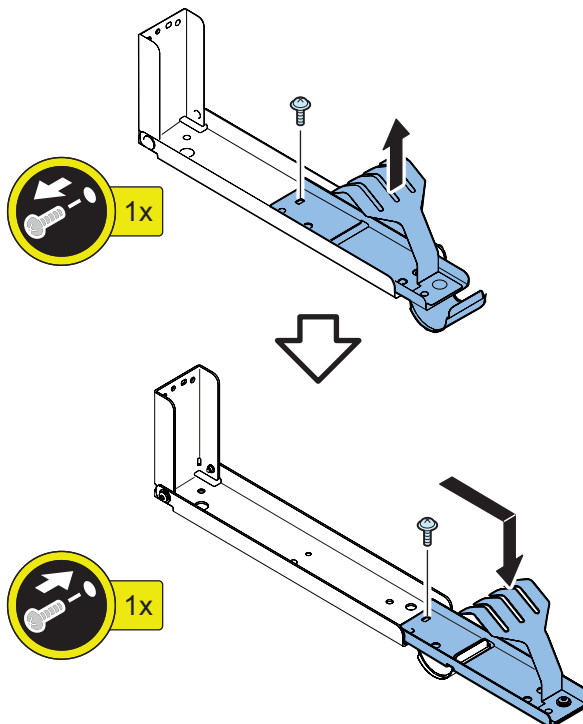
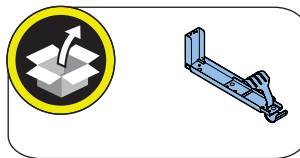
Check that the main power switch is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

■ Connecting to the Host Machine

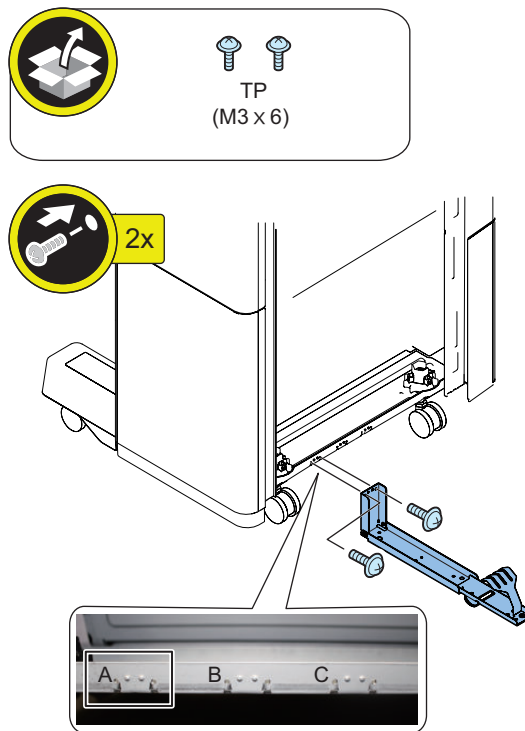
□
1.



□
2.



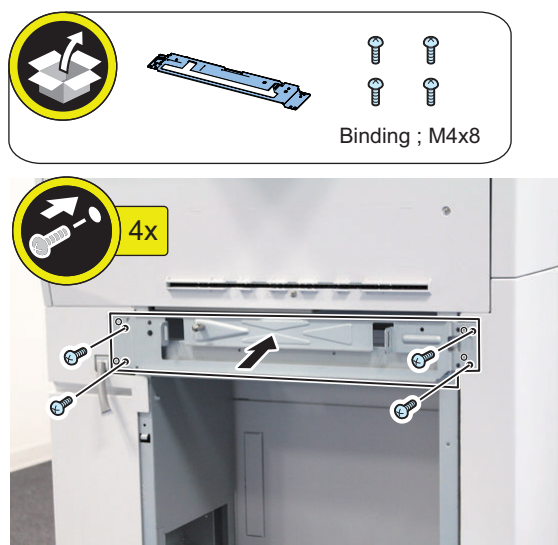
□
3.



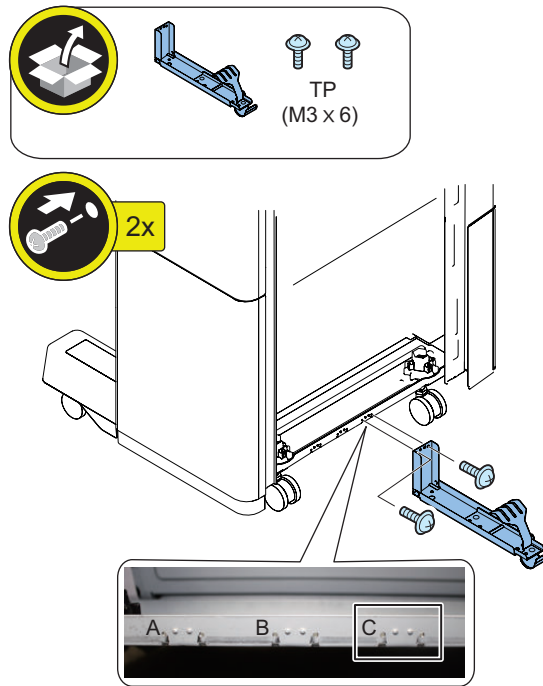
NOTE:
Install the Ground rail to the position [A].

■ Connecting to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit or Document Insertion Unit

□
1.

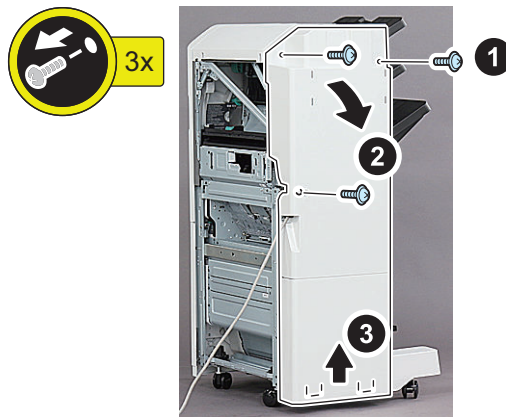


□
2.



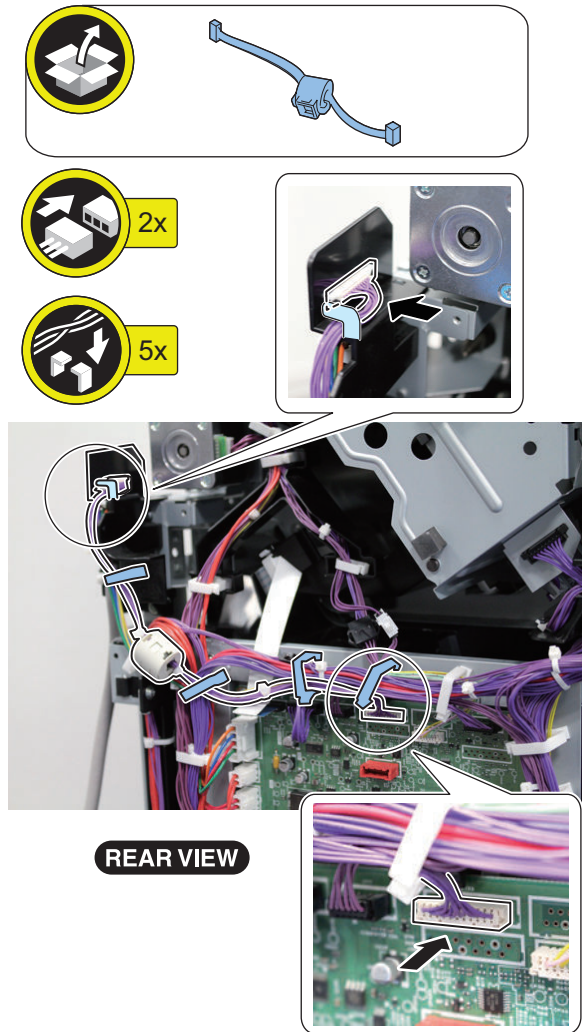
NOTE:
Install the Ground rail to the position [C].

□
3.

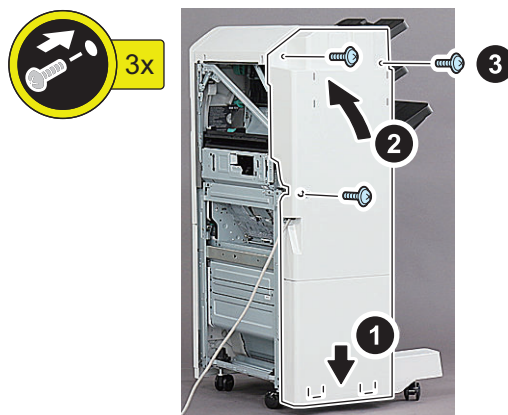




4. Install the Relay Connector supplied with the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit to the Finisher.



5.



□

- 6.** Connect the Relay connector of the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit to the Finisher.

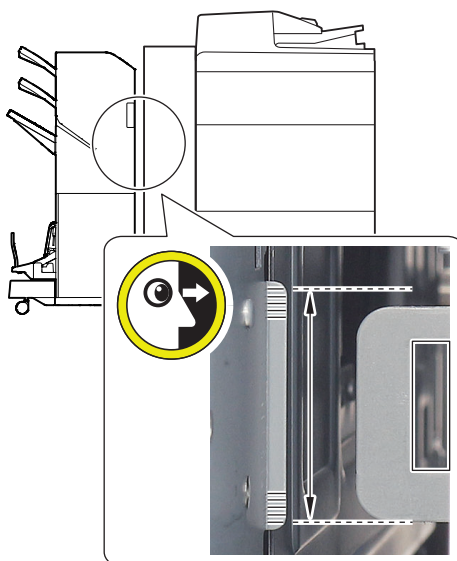


■ Connecting to the Upstream Connection Machine

□

- 1.** Check the height of the upstream connection machine and the Finisher.

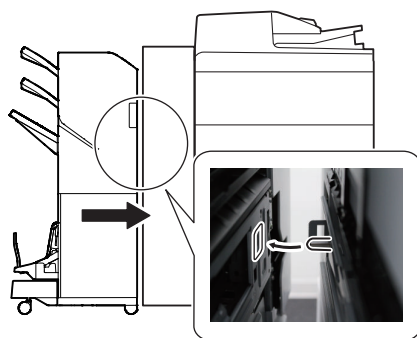
Check that the hole of the connection plate is positioned between the marking-off lines of the Finisher.



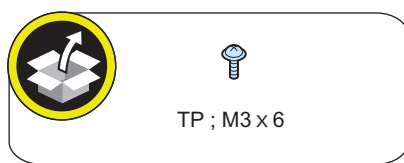
NOTE:

If the hole is not positioned between the marking-off lines, carry out the adjustment described in "Adjusting the Height."

□
2.



□
3.



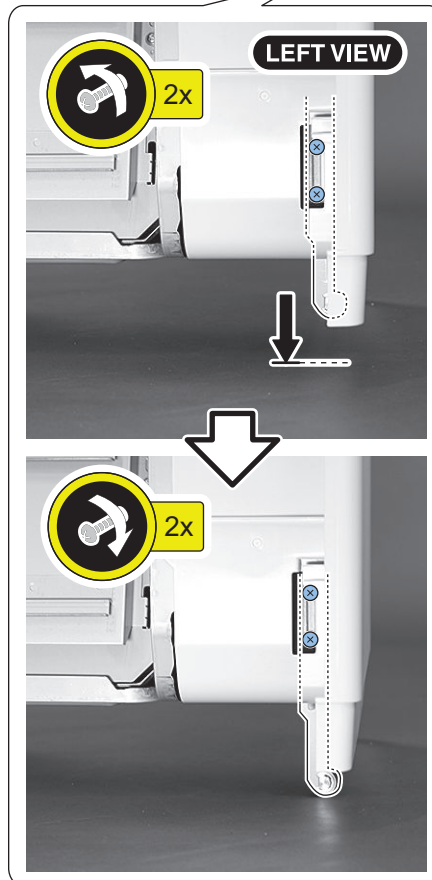


4. Pull out the saddle unit. (Booklet Finisher only)



□

- 5.** Loosen two screws, and then fix the saddle unit auxiliary caster so that its caster can touch floor. (Booklet Finisher only)



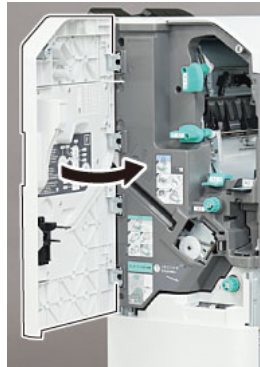
□

6. Put the saddle unit back. (Booklet Finisher only)



□

7.

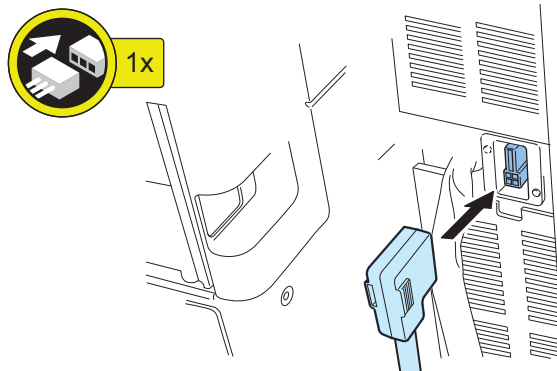


□

8.

⚠ CAUTION:

When connecting the interface cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet. If you do not do so, electric shock can result.



Affixing the Labels

■ Affixing the Jam Label / Saddle Caution Label (Booklet Finisher only)

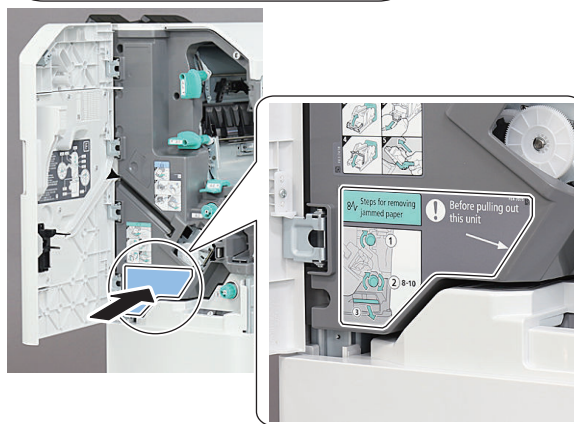
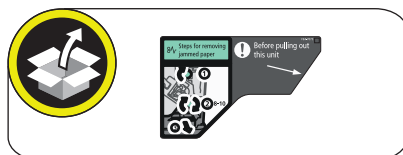
□

1.



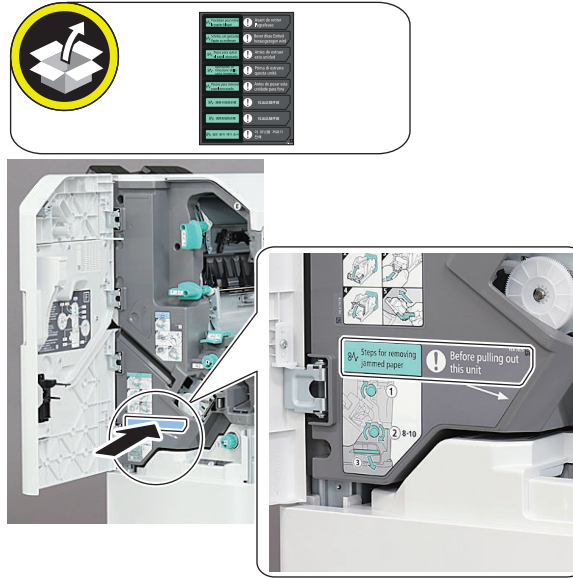
□

2. Affix the label in the appropriate language.



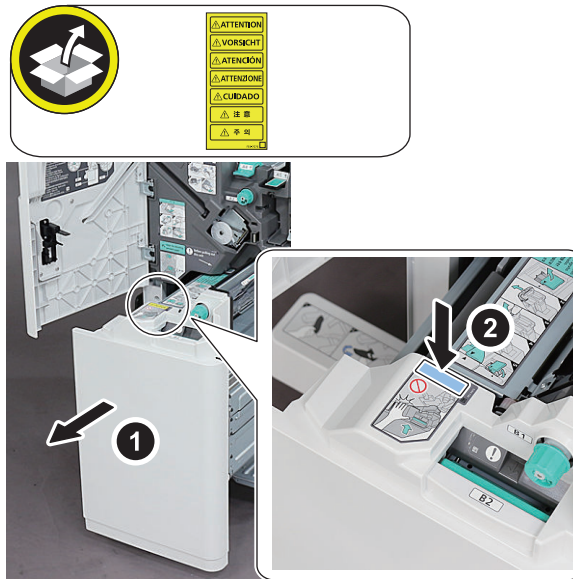
□

3. Affix the label in the appropriate language.



□

4. Affix the label in the appropriate language.



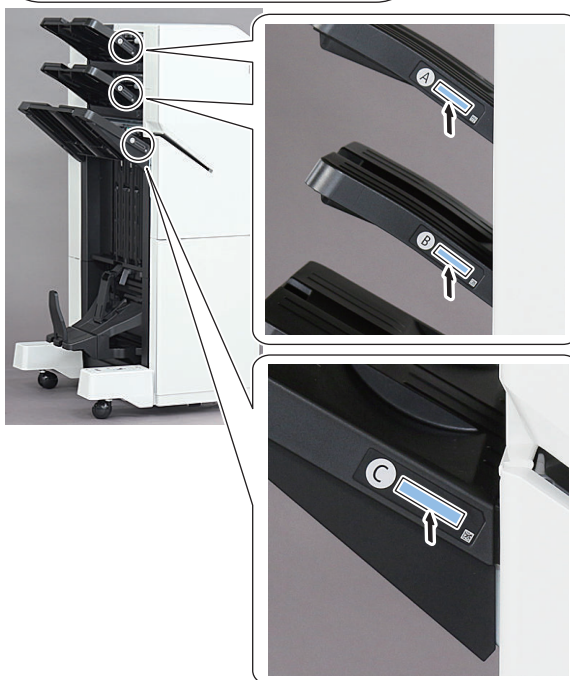
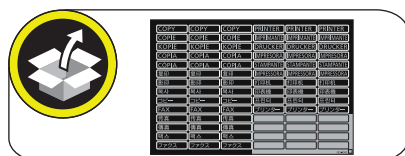
□
5.



■ Affixing the Tray Labels

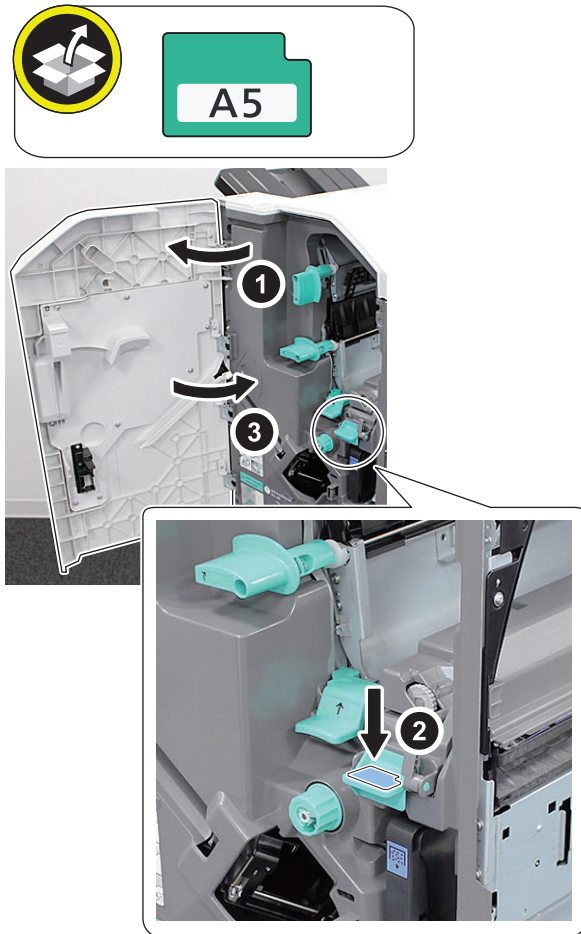
□

1. Affix the Tray labels which is specified by user.



■ Affixing the Puncher Label. (When Installing Puncher Unit.)

□
1.



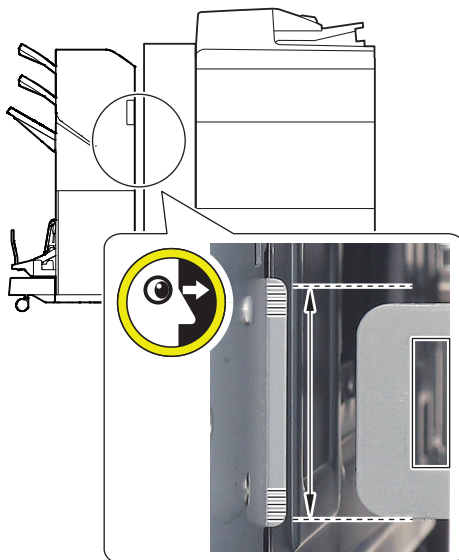
● Making Adjustments

The difference in height between the Finisher and the Host Machine and the tilt of the Finisher and the host machine need to be adjusted depending on the installation site floor condition. If the height or tilt is not adjusted properly, problems can occur (for example, a paper jam can occur frequently at the paper supply section of the Finisher). Check the height and tilt and adjust it as required. Be sure to adjust as necessary.

■ Checking the Height



1. Check that the hole of the connection guide plate is positioned between the marking-off lines of the Finisher.



2. When the adjustment of height is necessary, make adjustment by referring the "Adjusting the Height".

NOTE:

When the adjustment of height is not necessary, proceed to the "Checking the Difference in Tilt".

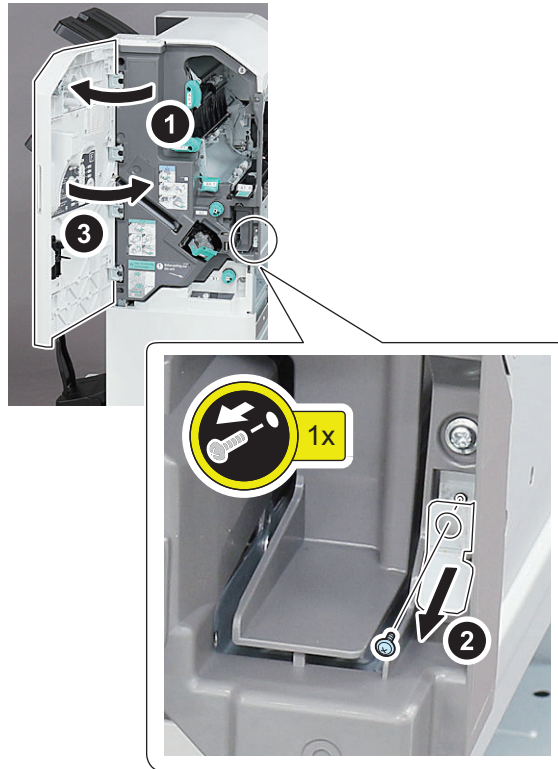
■ Adjusting the Height



1. When it is fixed to the upstream connection machine, it is detached by approx. 150 mm.

⚠ CAUTION:

Be careful with the interface cable when detaching.



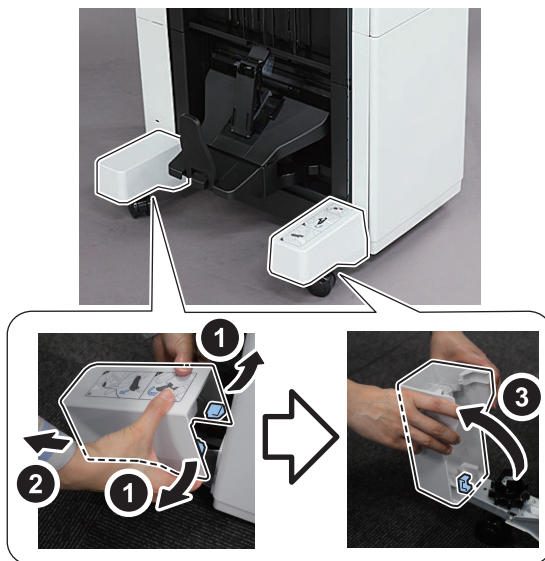
NOTE:

Disconnect the Relay connector when detaching the Finisher from the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





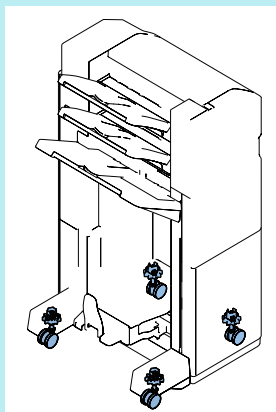
2. Remove the Caster covers (front/ rear).

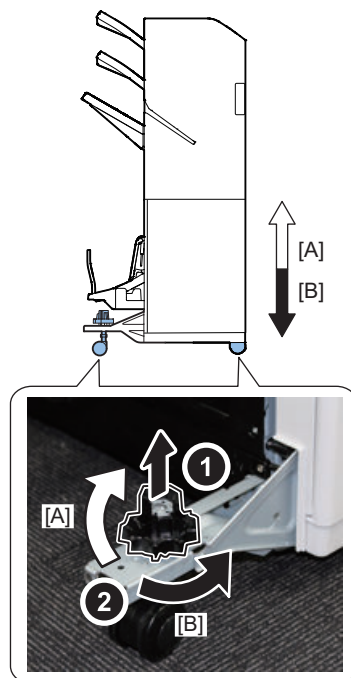


3. Turn the adjustment dial of the caster in the direction of the arrow by lifting the dial upward a little to adjust the height.

NOTE:

Adjust the height at 4 casters.

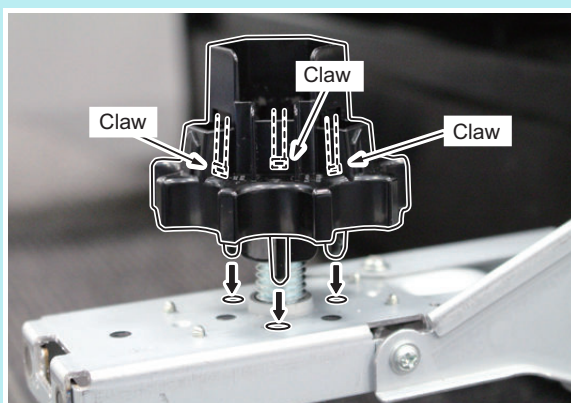




- To increase the height of the Finisher, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [A].
 - To decrease the height of the Finisher, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [B].
- A full turn of the adjustment dial changes the height of the Finisher by approx. 2.0 mm.

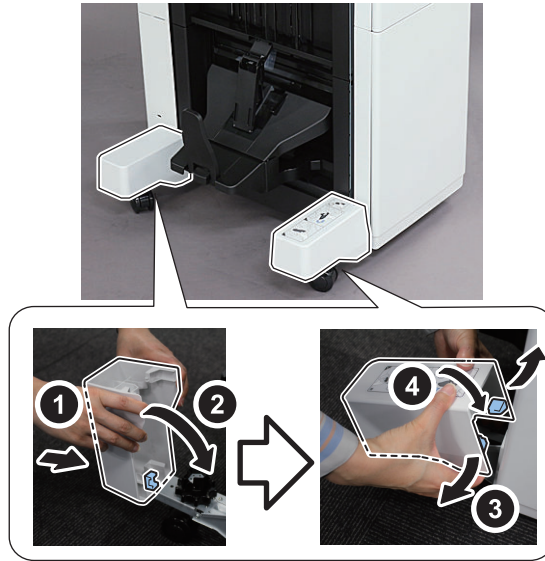
NOTE:

If the adjustment dial keeps lifting upward, lower the adjustment dial by releasing three claws. And be sure to insert the three pins of the adjustment dial to the hole of the caster support plate.

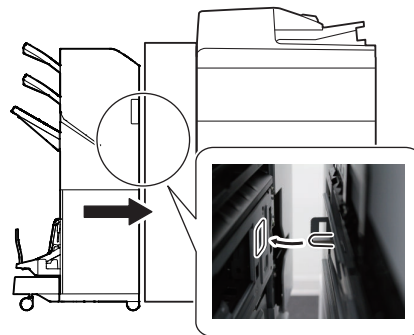




4. Install the Caster covers (Front / Rear).



5. Install the Finisher to the upstream connection machine.



NOTE:

Connect the Relay connector when installing the Finisher to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





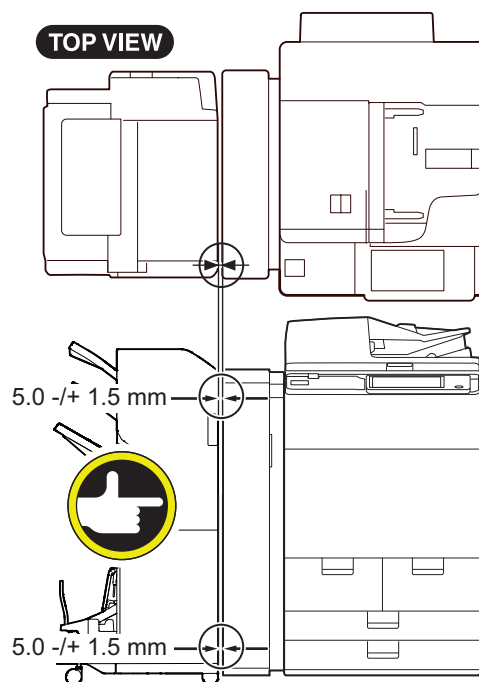
6. Fix to the upstream connection machine.

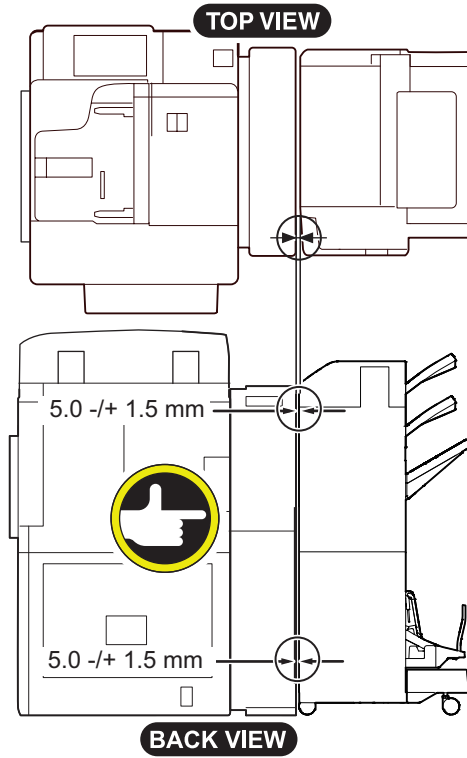


■ Checking the Difference in Tilt

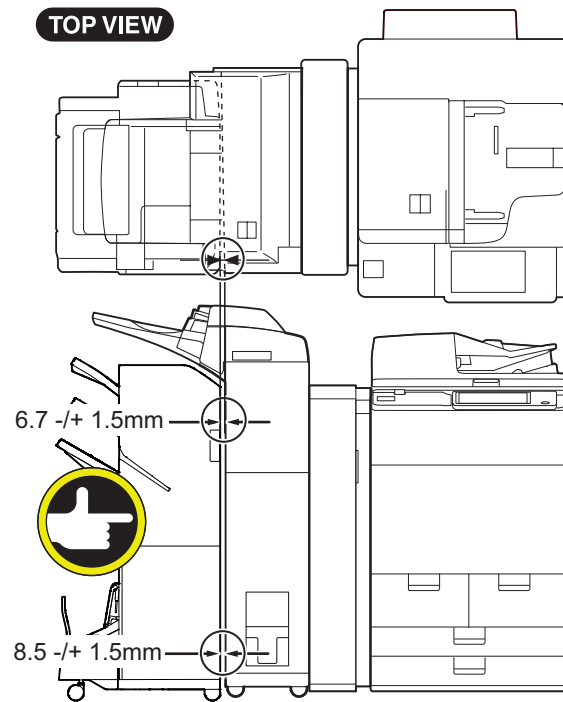
Check the relational tilting amount of the Finisher and the upstream connection machine. Make sure that the gap between the right side of the Finisher and the left side of the upstream connection machine is within the standard shown in the figure. In the case the gaps are within the specification, this adjustment is not required.

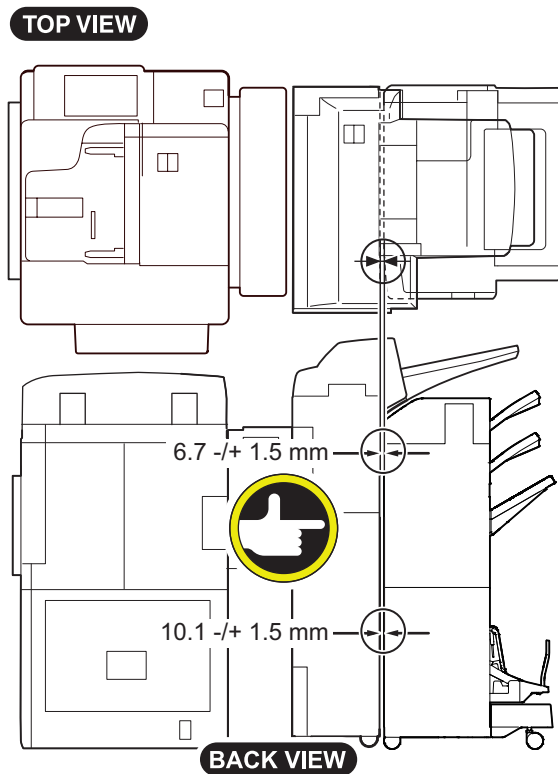
● Connecting to the Host Machine





• Connecting to the Document Insertion/Folding Unit





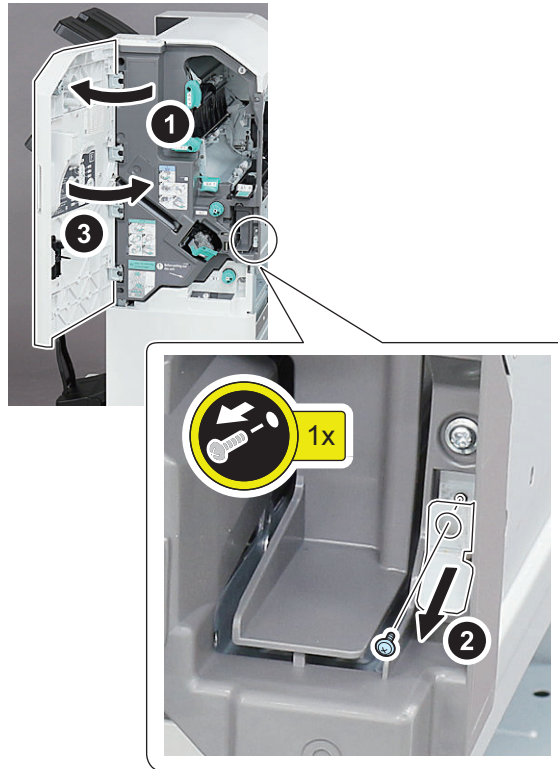
■ Adjusting the Tilt



1. When it is fixed to the upstream connection machine, it is detached by approx. 150 mm.

⚠ CAUTION:

Be careful with the interface cable when detaching.



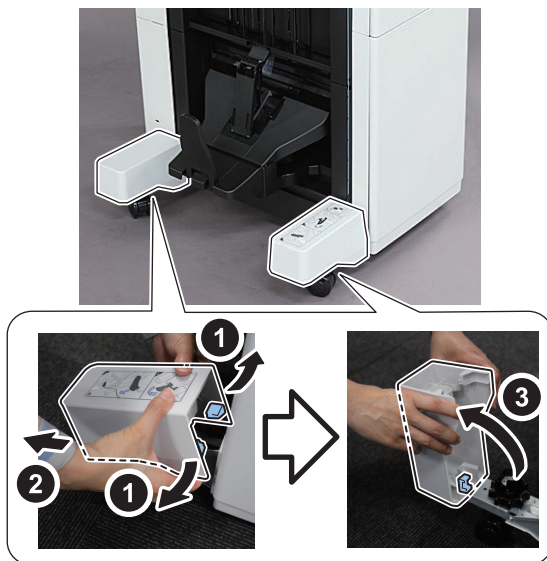
NOTE:

Disconnect the Relay connector when detaching the Finisher from the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.





2. Remove the Caster Covers (Front/ Rear).

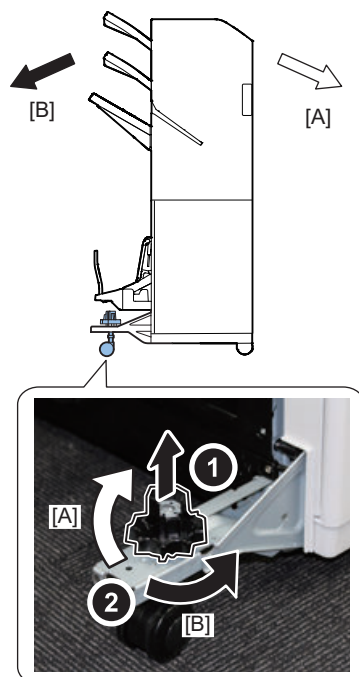
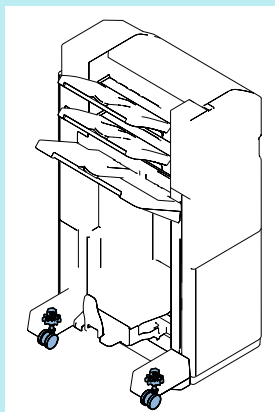




3. Turn the adjustment dial of the caster in the direction of the arrow by lifting the dial upward a little to adjust the tilt.

NOTE:

Adjust the tilt at 2 left casters.

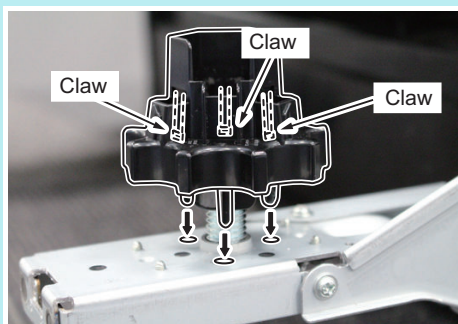
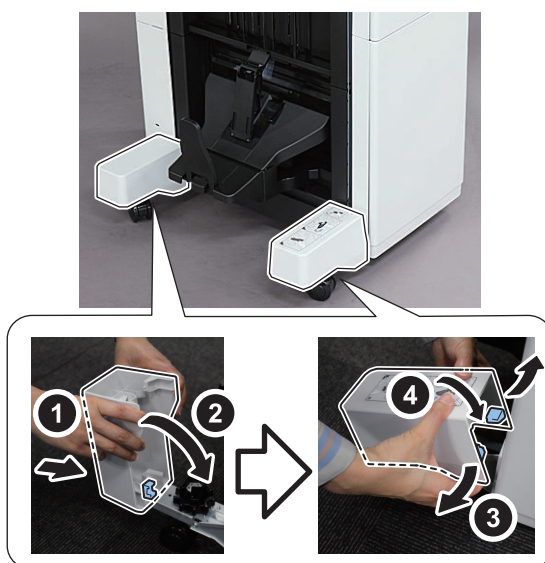


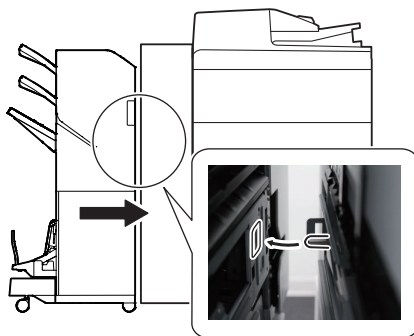
- To tilt the Finisher to the right, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [A].
- To tilt the Finisher to the left, turn the dial in the direction of arrow [B].

A full turn of the adjustment dial changes the height of the Finisher by approx. 2.0 mm.

NOTE:

If the adjustment dial keeps lifting upward, lower the adjustment dial by releasing three claws. And be sure to insert the three pins of the adjustment dial to the hole of the caster support plate.

**4. Install the Caster covers (Front / Rear).**

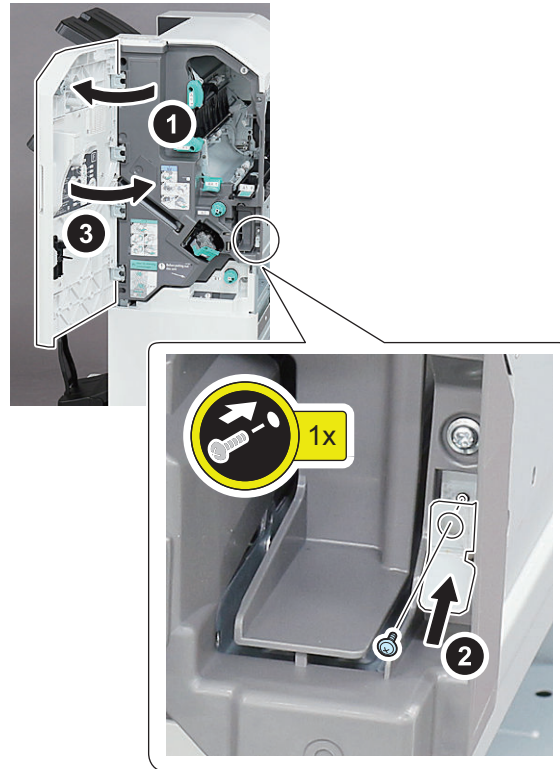
**5. Install the upstream connection machine.****NOTE:**

Connect the Relay connector when installing the Finisher to the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.






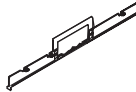
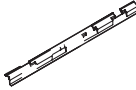

6. Fix to the upstream connection machine.



Making Checks After Completion of Installation Work

■ Disposal Parts Check

Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

<input type="checkbox"/>	[1]		1x Puncher Label (When Puncher Unit is not installed)
<input type="checkbox"/>	[2]		1x Upper Delivery Guide
<input type="checkbox"/>	[3]		1x Lower Delivery Guide
<input type="checkbox"/>	[4]		2x Screw (P Tightening ; M4x12)

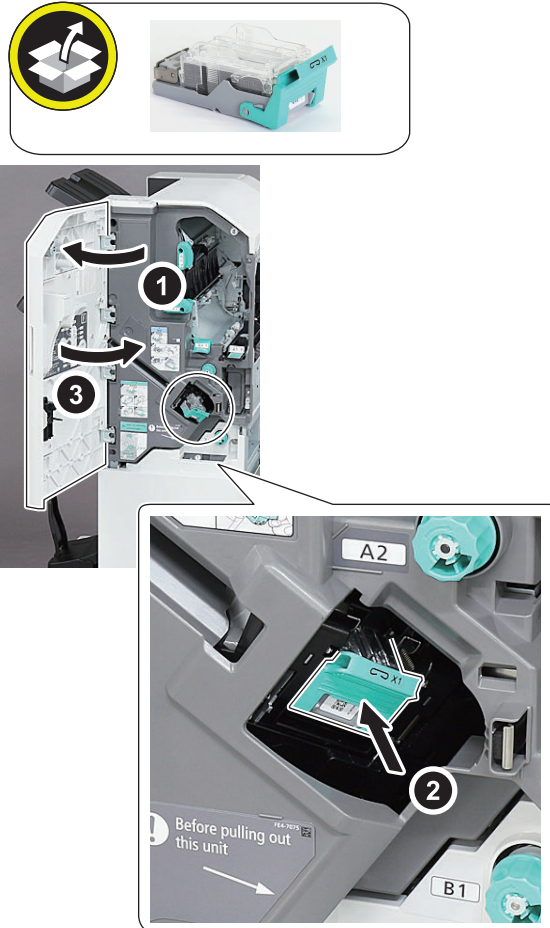
■ Operation Check



1. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.



2. Open the Front Cover, and then set the Staple Cartridge into the Stapler Unit.



3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

-
4. Check the operation such as paper feed and stapling to make sure that problems such as a jam or malfunction do not occur.

CAUTION:

Staple-free binding unit might be out of its correct position due to a mechanical shock during transportation. When the staple-free binding unit is out of the correct position, a paper stack is clinched at wrong position in the staple-free binding mode.

To avoid the above, make copies in the following condition after the installation of the finisher and correct the position of the staple-free binding unit:

- Staple mode: Stapling at rear corner
- Paper size: LTR or A4
- Number of sheet: 2
- Copy quantity: 1

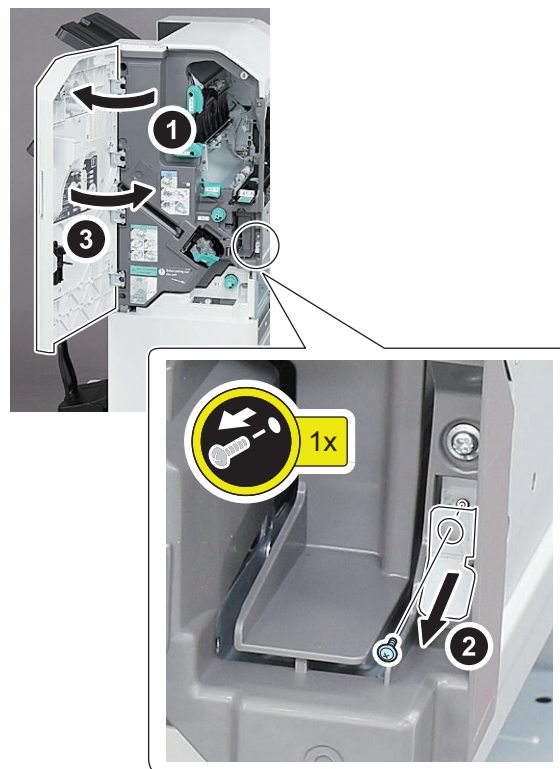
NOTE:

Mechanical drive of the staple-free binding unit is engaged with the stapler unit.

Making copies in the above condition will have the stapler unit returned to its home position and the staple-free binding unit stops at the correct position.

● Detach this Equipment from the Upstream Connection Machine

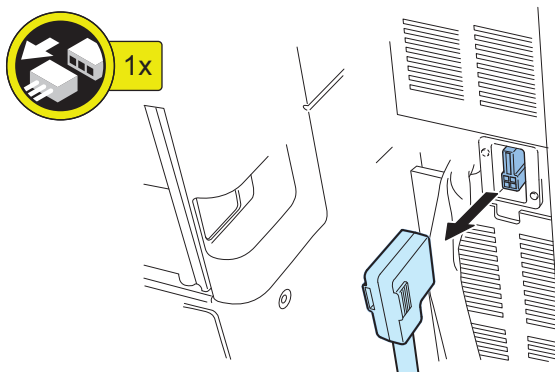
-
- 1.



□
2.

⚠ CAUTION:

When disconnecting the Interface Cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet.

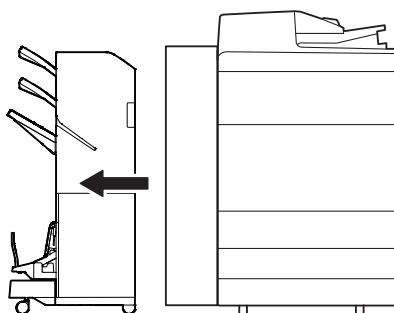


□
3.

Disconnect the Relay connector when detaching the Finisher from the Document Insertion/ Folding Unit.



□
4.



2/3 2/4 4 Hole Puncher Unit-A1

● Checking Before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

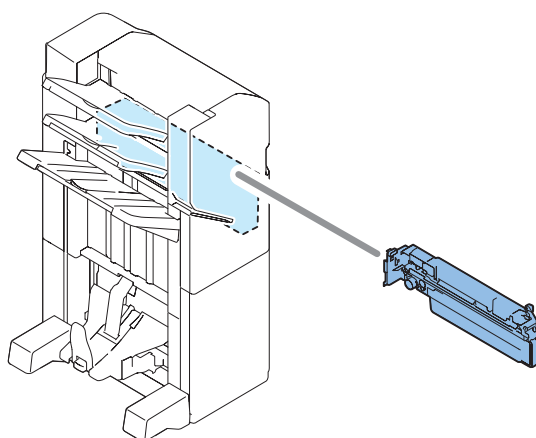
When installing this Equipment together with the Finisher, install this Equipment before installing the Finisher to the Upstream Connection Machine.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F281060

■ Installation Outline Drawing



● Unpacking Procedure

- 1. Open the container box, and then take out the Punch Unit and the contents.
- 2. Remove all cushioning materials and tapes from outside of the Punch Unit.

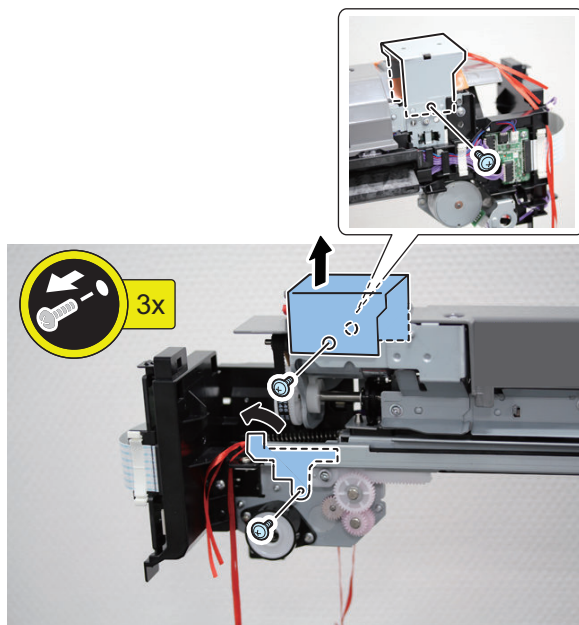


3. Remove the 2 fixtures.



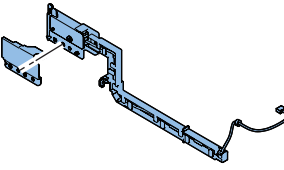





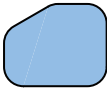


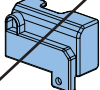
- 3 Screws

NOTE:

Removed screws are used in latter steps.



Checking the Contents

<input type="checkbox"/> [1] Punch Unit x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [2] Punch Waste Tray x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [3] Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [4] Punch Unit Open/ Close Guide x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [5] Punch Unit Fixing Pin Holder x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [6] Punch Unit Fixing Pin x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] Punch Unit Positioning Guide x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [8] Relay Harness x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [9] Face Seal x1 
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] Rear Inner Cover (small) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [11] Screw (W Sems ; M3x6) x1 	<input type="checkbox"/> [12] Punch Front Cover x1 

- Part [12] is not used for installation.

<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

Installation Procedure

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the main power switch of the host machine is turned off and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

■ Installing the Punch Unit

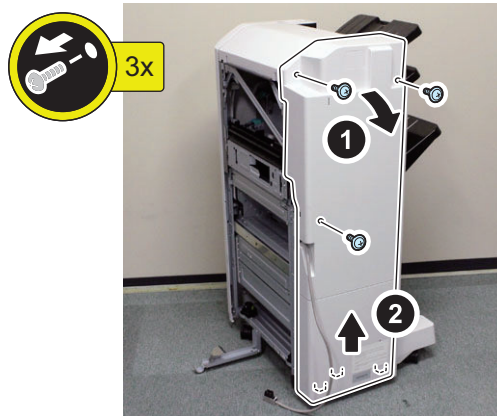


1. Open the Front Cover of the Finisher.



2. Remove the Rear Cover of the Finisher.

- 3 Screws
- 3 Claws



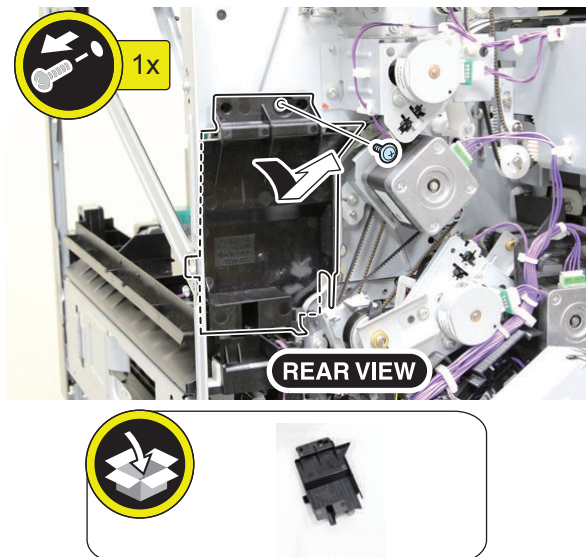


3. Remove the Rear Inner Cover.

- 1 Screw

NOTE:

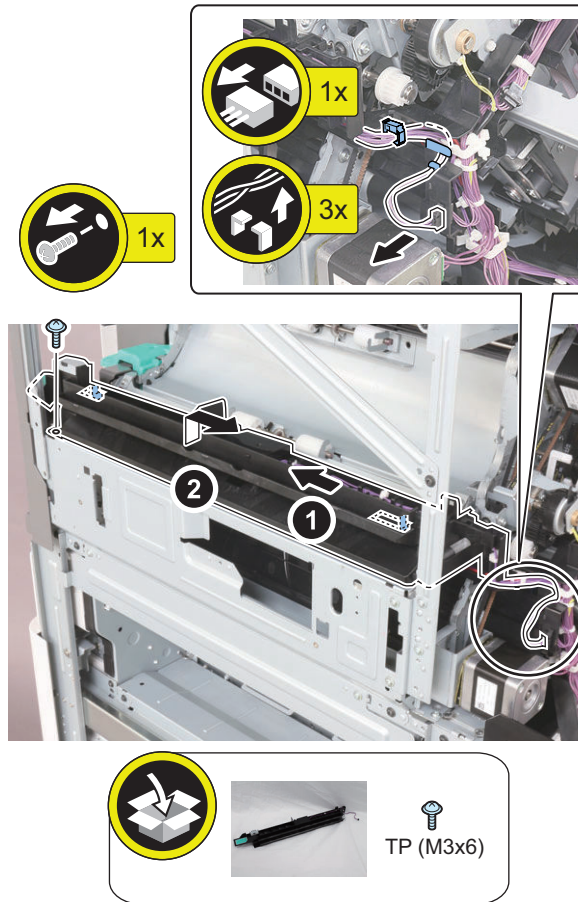
Removed screw is used in the procedure later.





4. Remove the Inlet Feed Guide.

- 1 Screw
- 1 Connector
- 1 Wire saddle
- 2 Harness guides

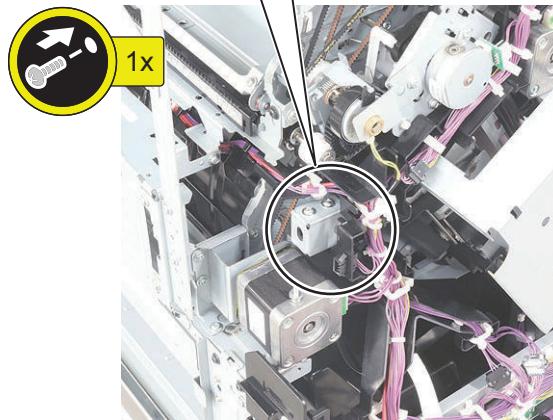
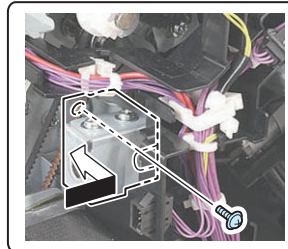




5. Install the Punch Unit Fixing Pin Holder.

- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)

NOTE:
Use the screw removed in Unpacking Procedure.



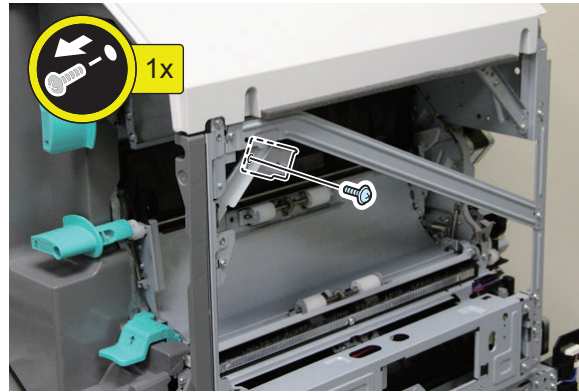


6. Remove the Magnet Unit.

- 1 Screw

NOTE:

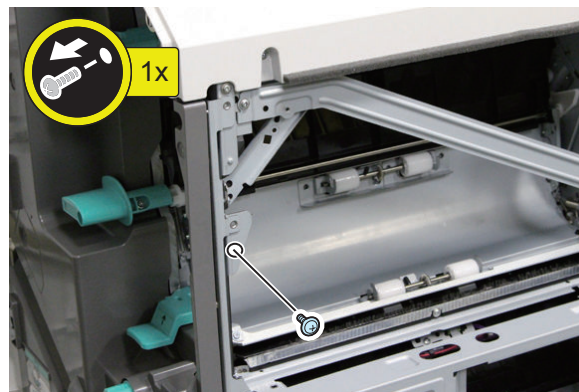
Removed screw is used in the procedure later.



7. Remove a Screw.

NOTE:

Removed screw is used in the procedure later.



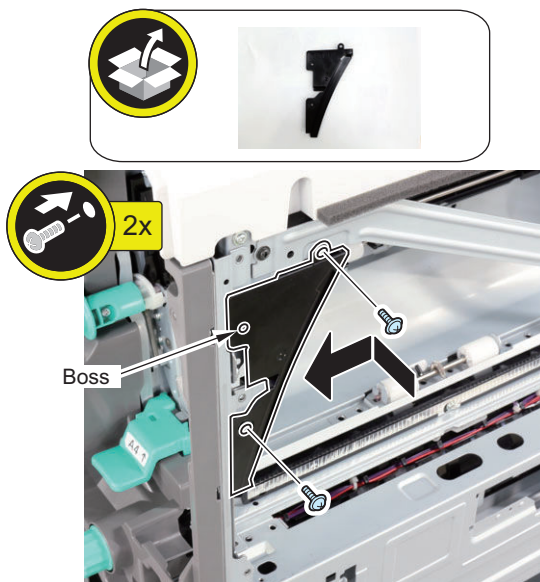


8. Install the Punch Unit Open/Close Guide.

- 2 Screws (TP ; M3x6)
- 1 Boss

NOTE:

Use screws removed in steps 6 and 7.



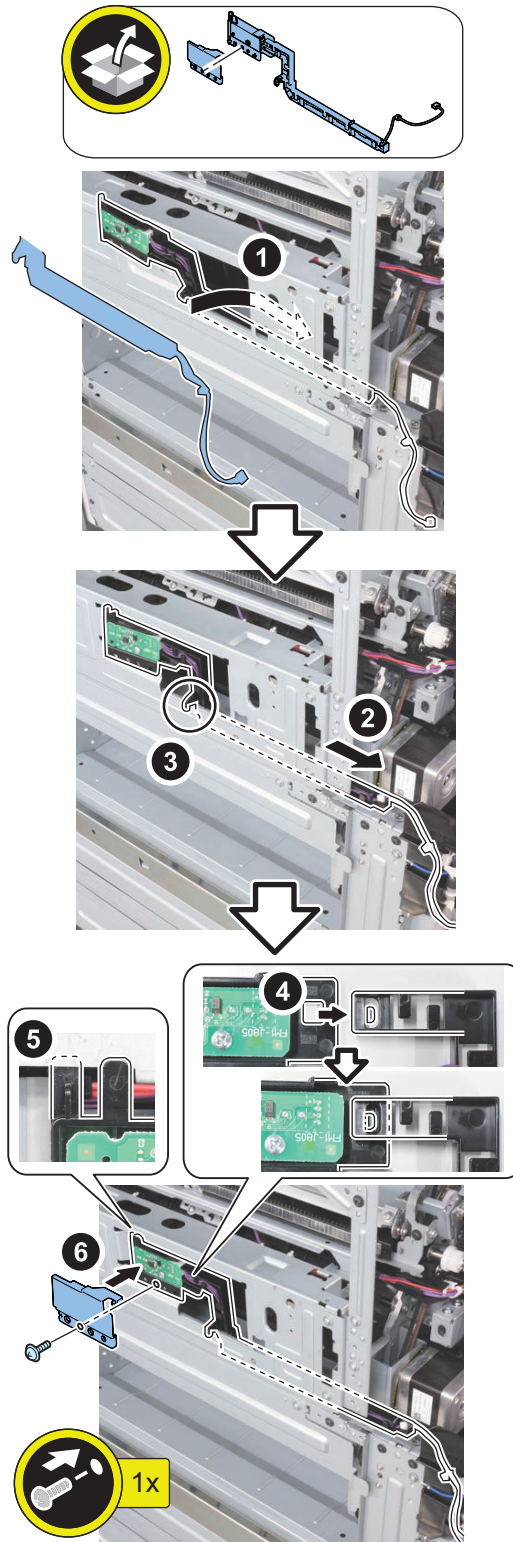


9. Install the Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit.

- 3 Hooks
- Sensor Cover
- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)

NOTE:

Use the screw removed in Unpacking Procedure.

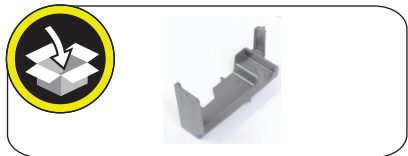
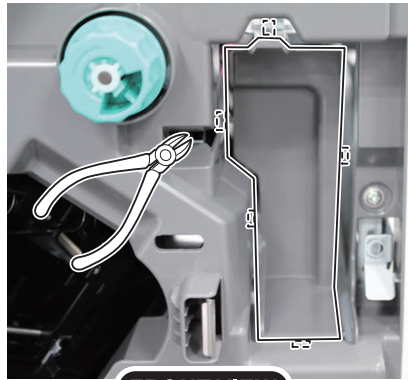




10. Cut out the face cover of the Inner Cover by using the side cutters.

CAUTION:

Be sure to remove the face cover properly so that no burr is formed.

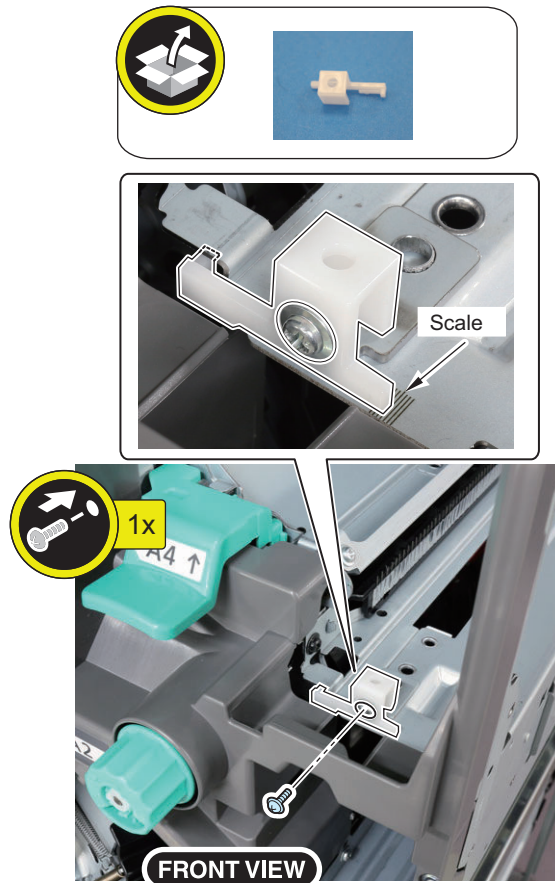


**11. Install the Punch Unit Positioning Guide so that the right edge of the guide can match the center of scale.**

- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)

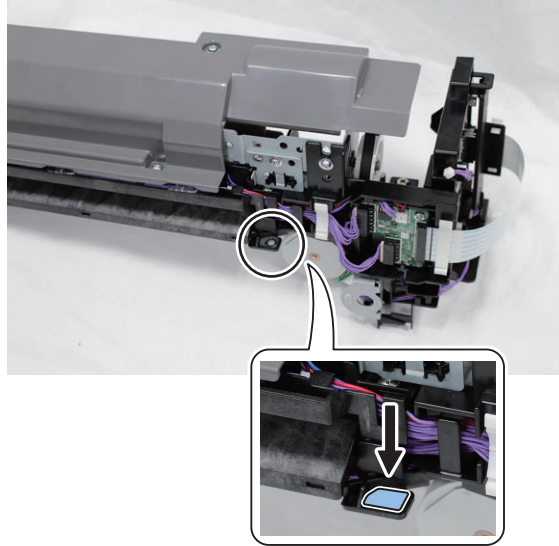
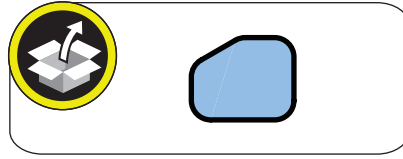
NOTE:

Use the screw removed in Unpacking Procedure.





12. Affix the Face Seal to the Punch Unit.

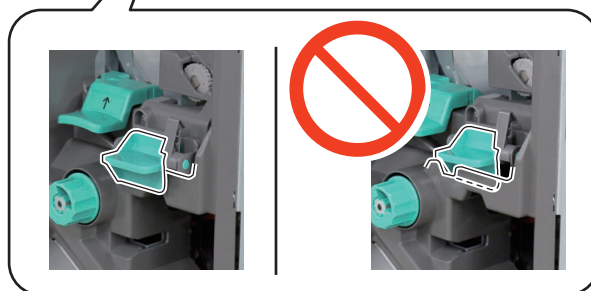
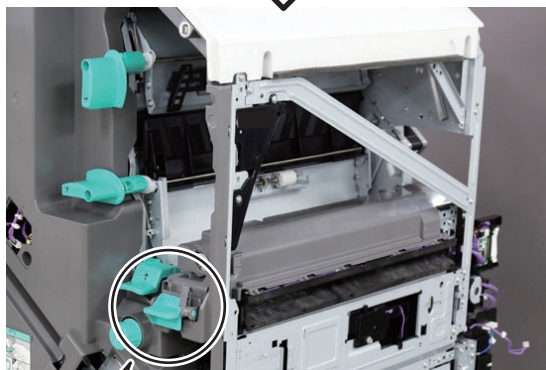
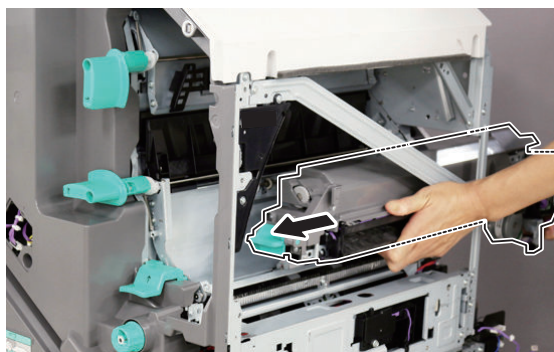




13. Install the Punch Unit from the back of the Finisher as shown in the figure.

CAUTION:

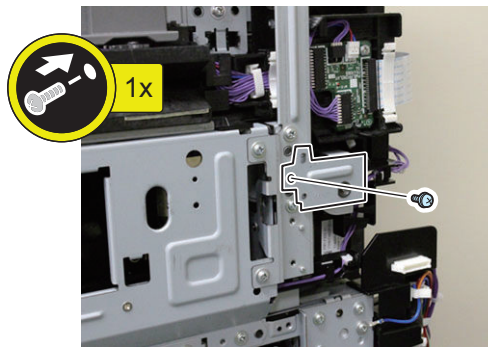
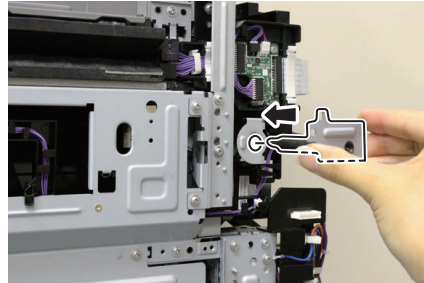
When having the Punch Unit, be careful not to have the PCB unit and its surrounding area.





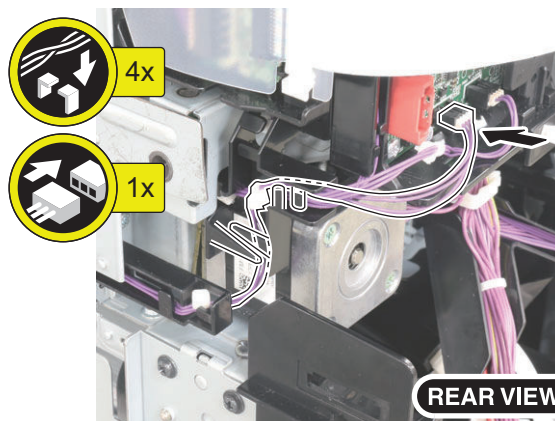
14. Install the Punch Unit Fixing Pin.

- 1 Screw (W Sems ; M3x6)



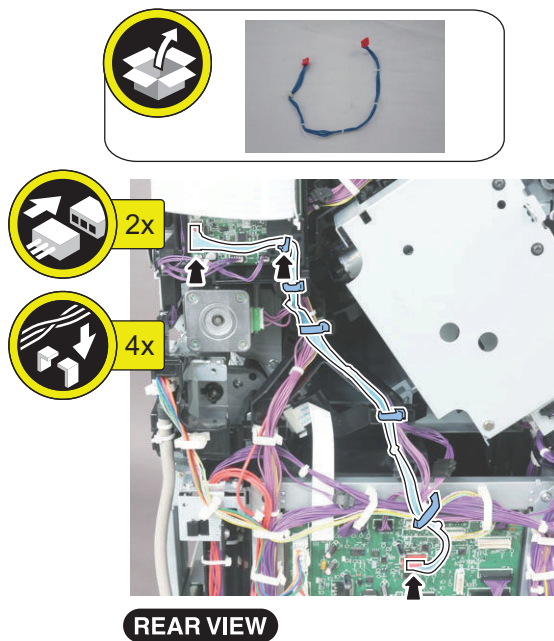
15. Connect the connector of the Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit to the Punch Unit.

- 4 Cable guides
- 1 Connector



**16. Connect the Relay Harness as shown in the figure.**

- 2 Connectors
- 1 Reuse band
- 4 Wire saddles

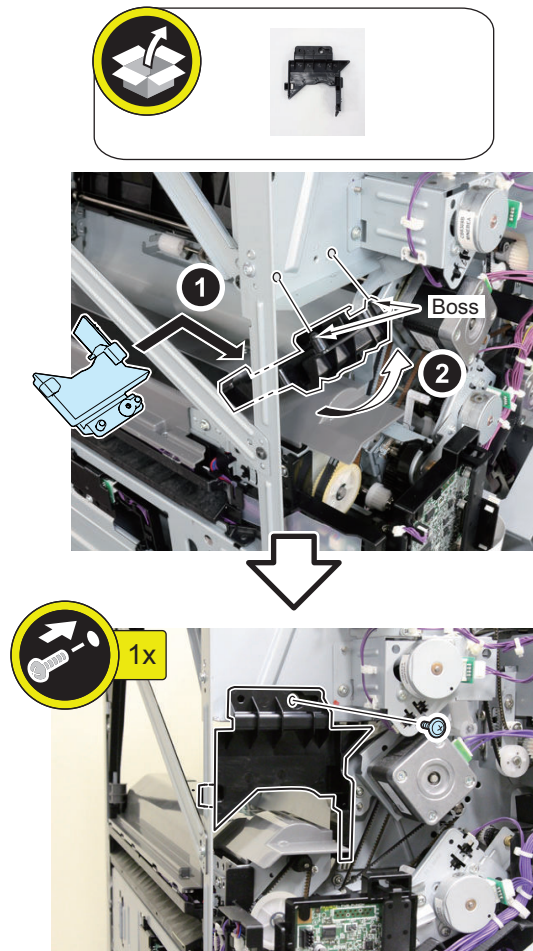


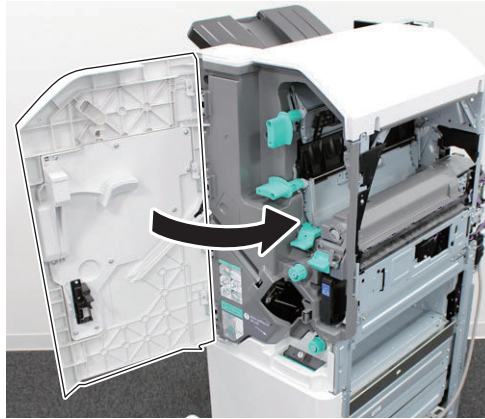
**17. Install the Rear Inner Cover (small).**

- 1 Screw (TP ; M3x6)
- 2 Bosses

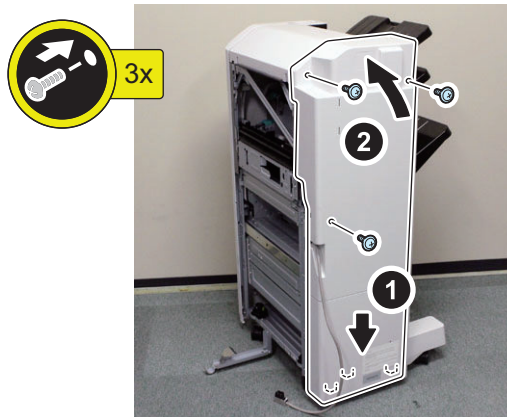
NOTE:

Use the screw removed in step 3.

**18. Insert the Punch Waste Tray in the direction of the arrow from the front.**

**19. Close the Front Cover of the Finisher.****20. Install the Rear Cover of the Finisher.**

- 3 Screws
- 3 Claws

**21. Refer to the installation procedure of the Finisher to Install the Finisher in the Upstream Connection Machine.**

Disposal Parts Check

1. Following disposal parts are remained after completion of the installation work.

- [1] Inlet Feed Guide 1pc.
- [2] Rear Inner Cover 1pc.
- [3] Magnet Unit 1pc.
- [4] Screw (TP ; M3x6) 1pc.
- [5] Punch Cover (Front) 1pc.
- [6] Face Cover 1pc.

Operation Check

**1. Turn ON the main power of the Host Machine.**

-
2. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this Equipment.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the Host Machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

(Level2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

-
3. Check the operation such as paper feed and punch operation to make sure that problems such as a jam or malfunction do not occur.

NOTE:

If the punch hole position of this Equipment needs to be adjusted, go to the "Checking and Adjusting the Punch Hole Position".

Adjusting the Output Level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor

After installing this Equipment, adjust the output level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor as follows.

-
1. Select the following item in the Service Mode and then press the OK button on the screen.
Service Mode (Level1) > SORTER > FUNCTION > FN-SENS2

-
2. When completing the output level adjustment successfully, the "OK" is indicated on the screen.

NOTE:

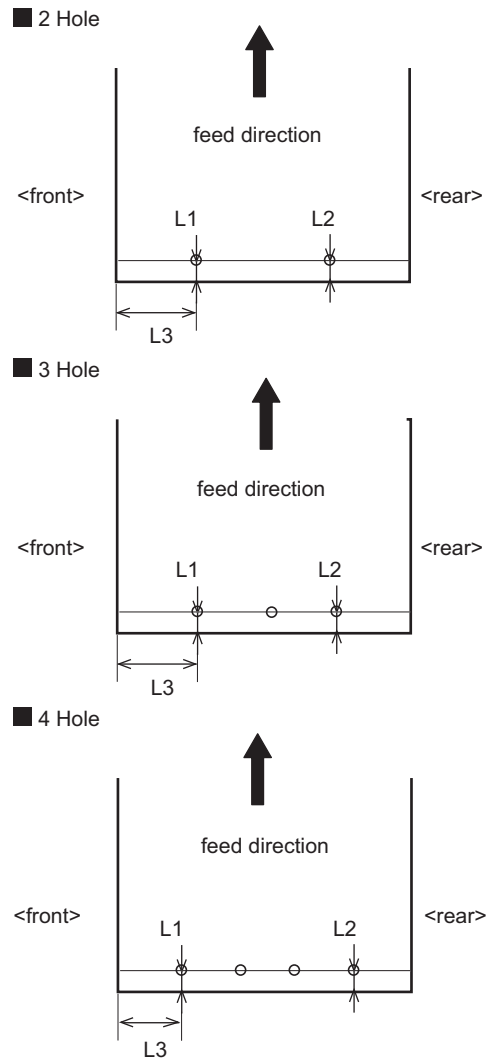
If the "NG" is indicated on the screen at the step 2, retry the adjustment by repeating the step 1. If the "NG" is indicated after retrying the adjustment, check whether there is not the malfunction in attachments and connections of the Punch Waste Full Sensor Unit and the surrounding area.

● Checking and Adjusting the Punch Hole Position

■ Checking the Punch Hole Position



1. Make a print with the punch mode and check whether the skew and side registration and the paper stop position are within the standard.



<Standard>

- 2/3 Hole Puncher Unit

L1 , L2	12 ± 1.5 mm
L3	2 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 73 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTRR) 3 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 31.5 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR) • 40.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4)

- 2/4 Hole Puncher Unit

L1 , L2	12 ± 1.5 mm
L3	2 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 108.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4) • 99.7 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR) 4 holes : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 28.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4) • 19.7 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR)

- 4 Hole Puncher Unit

L1 , L2	12 ± 1.5 mm
L3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 92.5 ± 1.5 mm (A3/ A4) • 83.7 ± 1.5 mm (11"x17"/ LTR)

■ Skew Adjustment (Mechanical adjustment)

When the punch hole position is skew (when L1 is not equal to L2), make the adjustment according to the following procedure.

● Adjustment Procedure

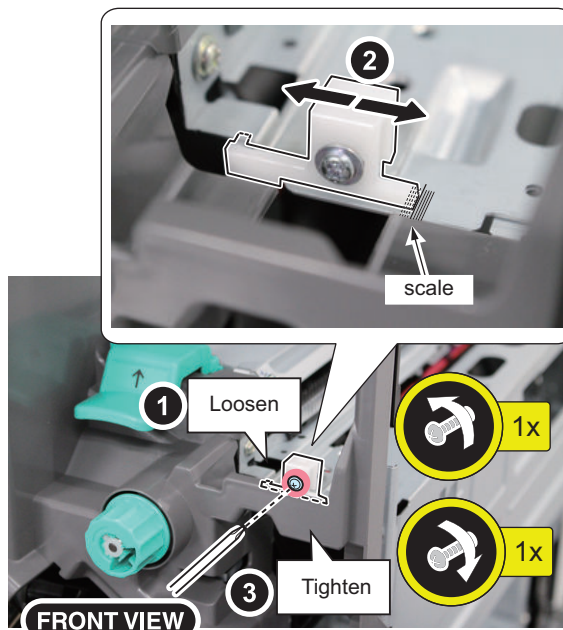


1. Open the Front Cover of the Finisher.

-
2. Lift the Punch Unit. Loosen the screw fixing the Punch Unit Positioning Guide, and then move the guide to adjust by referring the scale. After adjusting, tighten the screw.

NOTE:

When $L1 > L2$: Move the guide to the right.
 When $L1 < L2$: Move the guide to the left.



-
3. Lower the Punch Unit, and then close the Front Cover of the Finisher.

■ Side Registration Adjustment (Service mode adjustment)

When the side registration is not within the standard (when $L3$ is not within the standard), make the adjustment according to the following procedure.

-
1. Enter the following service mode to adjust the side registration.
 Service Mode (Level 1) > SORTER > ADJUST > PNCH-Y

NOTE:

When the setting value is increased by 1, $L3$ increases by 0.1mm.
 +: $L3$ increases. (The punch holes shift to the rear.)
 -: $L3$ decreases. (The punch holes shift to the front.)

-
2. Exit the service mode.

■ Paper Stop Position Adjustment (Service mode adjustment)



1. Enter the following service mode to adjust the paper stop position.

Service Mode (Level 1) > SORTER > ADJUST > PNCH-X

NOTE:

When the setting value is increased by 1, L1 and L2 increase by 0.1mm.

+: L1 and L2 increase. (The punch holes shift to the delivery direction.)

-: L1 and L2 decrease. (The punch holes shift to the inlet direction.)

-Settings/ Registration menu> Adjustment/ Maintenance> Adjust Action> Switch Finisher Puncher Mode



2. Exit the service mode.

Finisher Jogger Kit-A1

Checking Before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

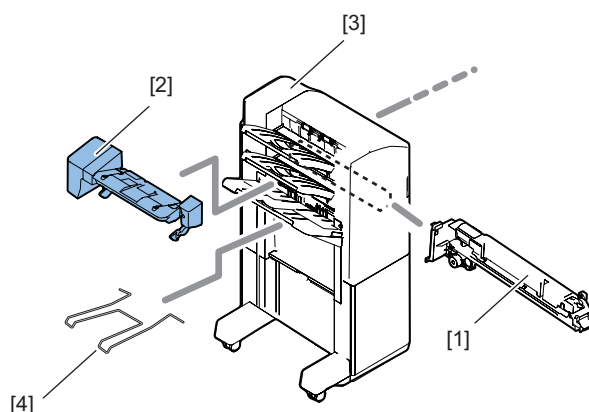
■ Points to Note on Installation

- Refer to "Order of Installation of Options" when installing this equipment.
- This equipment weighs approx. 3 kg.

■ Order of Installation of Options

When installing this equipment together with the other options, first install the host machine and then install options in the following order:

1. Puncher Unit
2. Jogger Kit (This equipment)
3. Staple Finisher / Booklet Finisher
4. Long Sheet Tray



■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following names may be registered instead.

- F281370

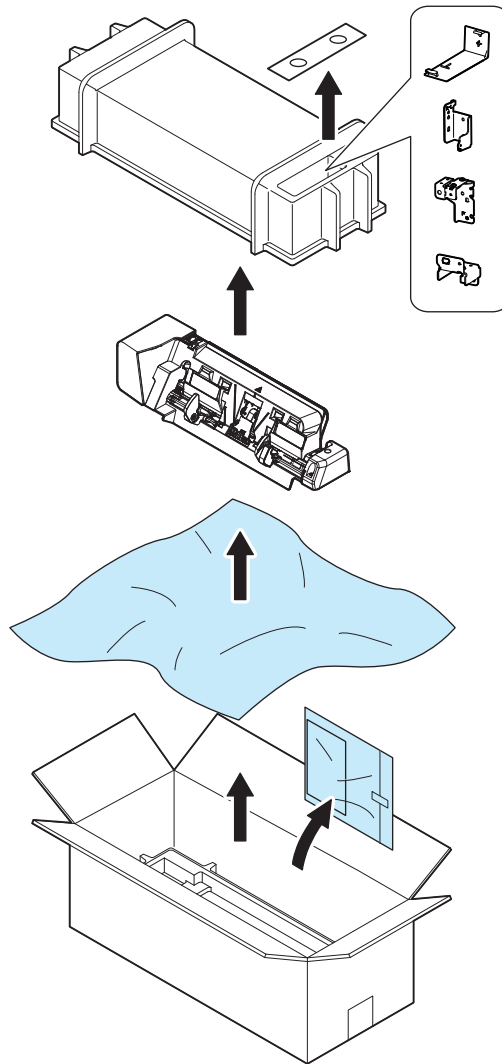
Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

This equipment is packed using tapes, fixings and cushioning materials to be protected against vibration and shock during transportation.

Remove all such tapes and cushioning materials before installing this equipment.

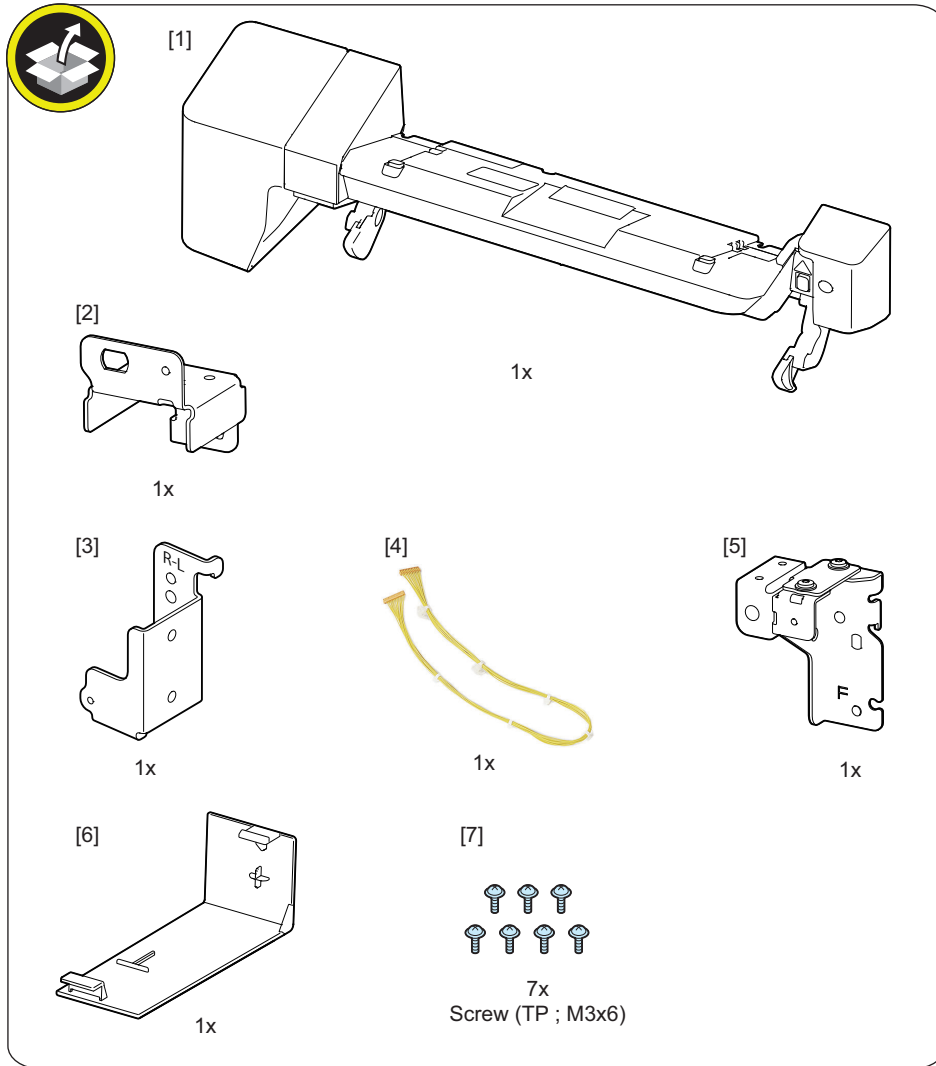
□
1.



□
2. Remove all the tapes and cushioning materials outside this equipment.

Checking the Contents

Check that none of the included parts is missing.



<Others>

Other bundled items such as Installation Procedure, leaflets, etc.

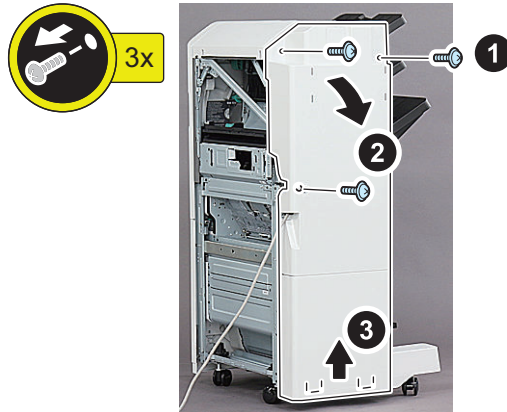
Installation Procedure

CAUTION:

Check that the main power switch is OFF and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

■ Preparing the Finisher for Installation

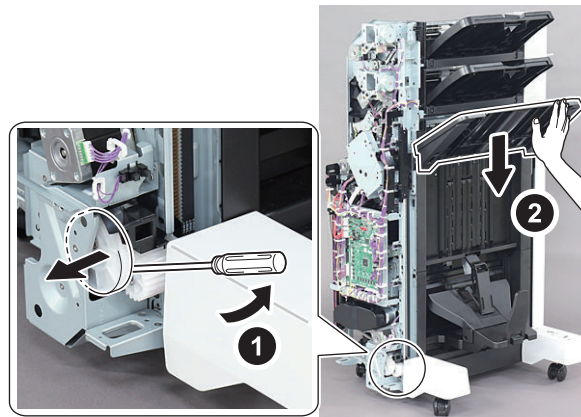
□
1.



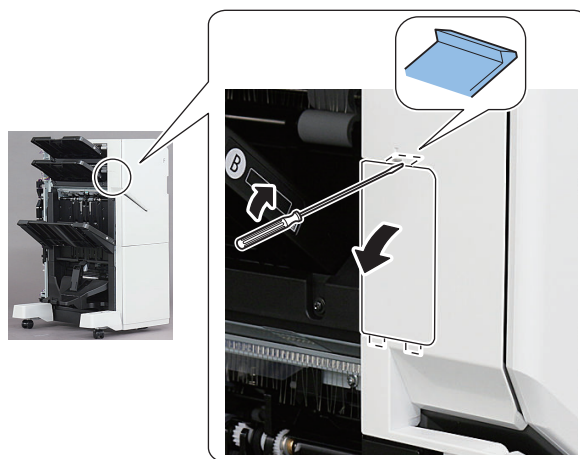
□
2. Disengage the ratchet gear to lower the Stack Tray by approx. 150mm for securing the room for the Jogger Kit.

CAUTION:

Hold the Stacking Tray by hand while disengaging the ratchet gear to avoid its free-fall.

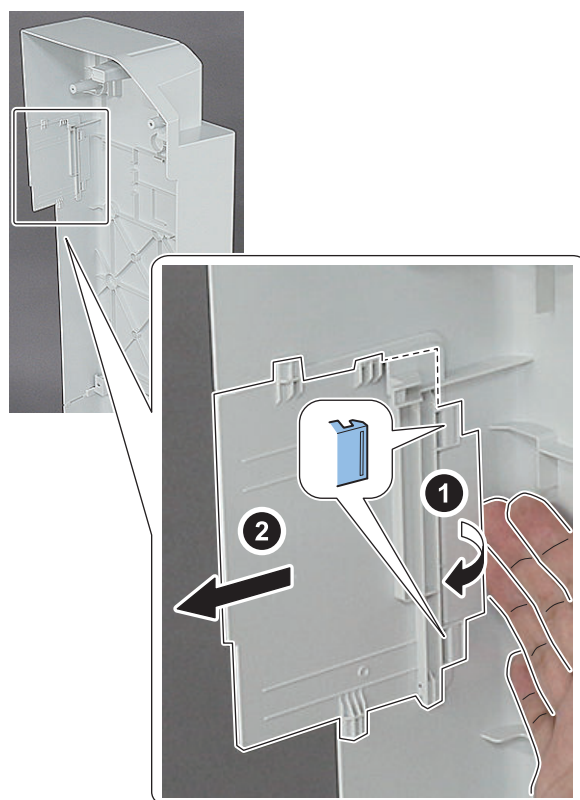


□
3.



NOTE:
The removed face cover is stored in Rear Cover in a later step.

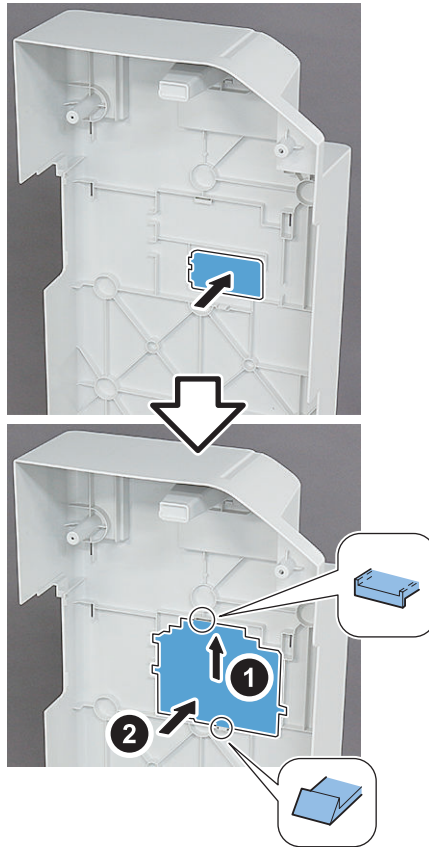
□
4.



NOTE:
The removed face cover is stored in Rear Cover in a later step.



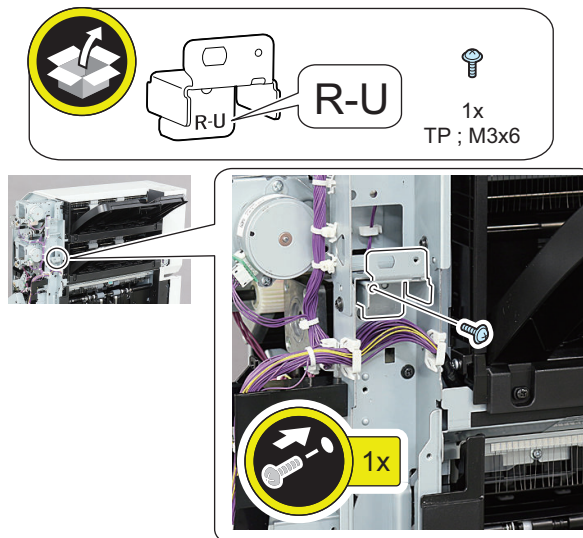
5. Store the removed face covers (2 pcs.) in the Rear Cover.



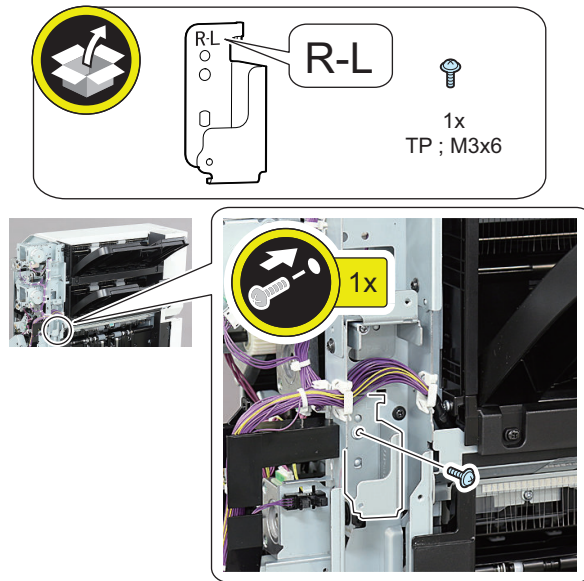
■ **Installation Procedure**



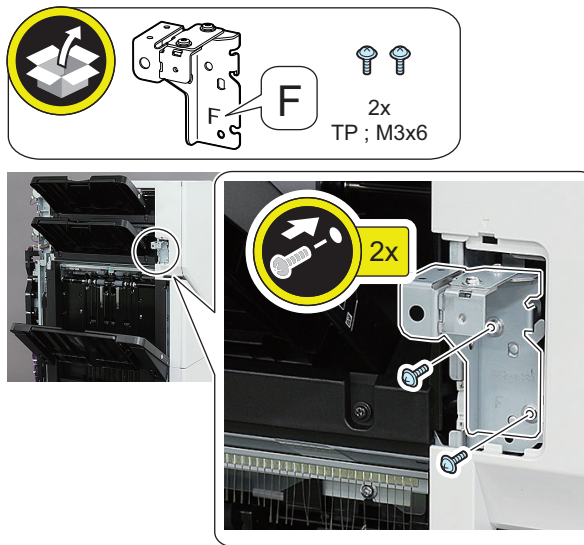
1.



□
2.

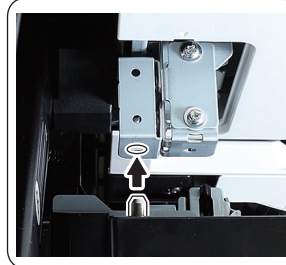
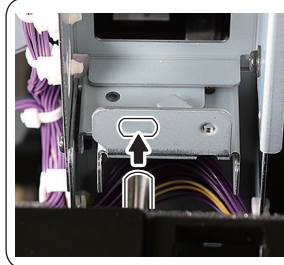
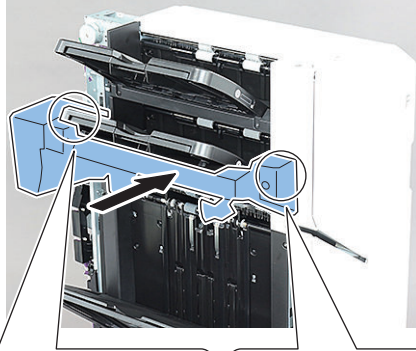
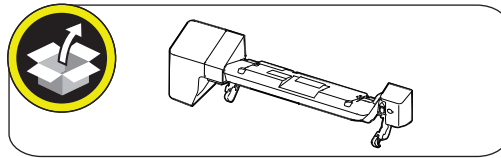


□
3.





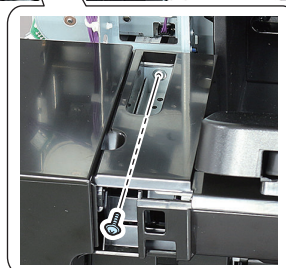
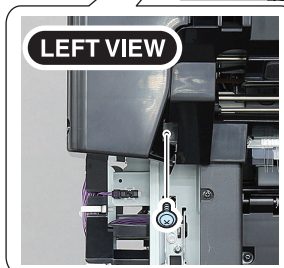
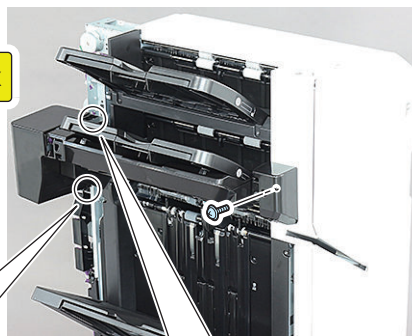
4. Place the Jogger Kit on Finisher.



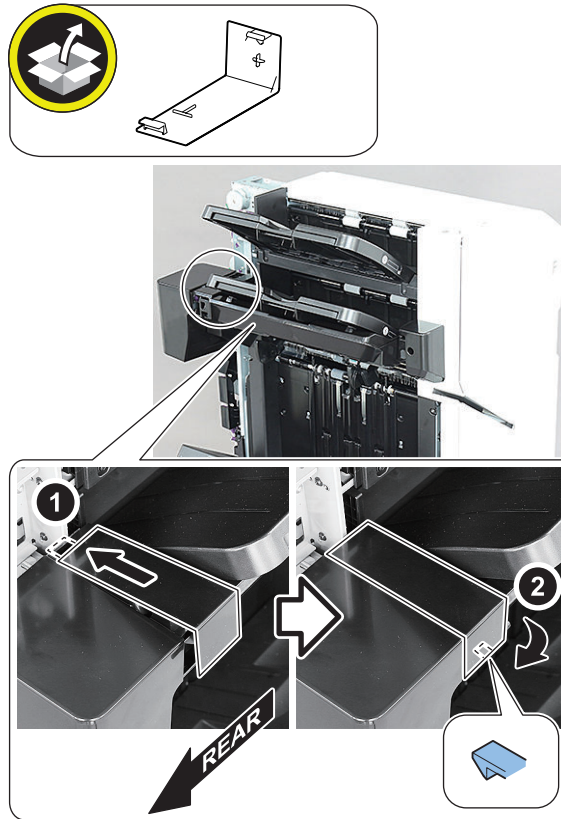
5.



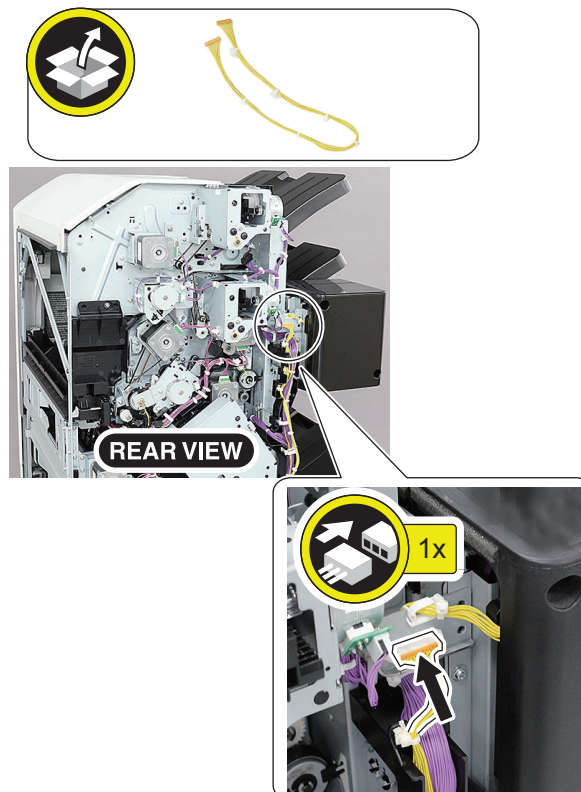
3x
TP ; M3x6



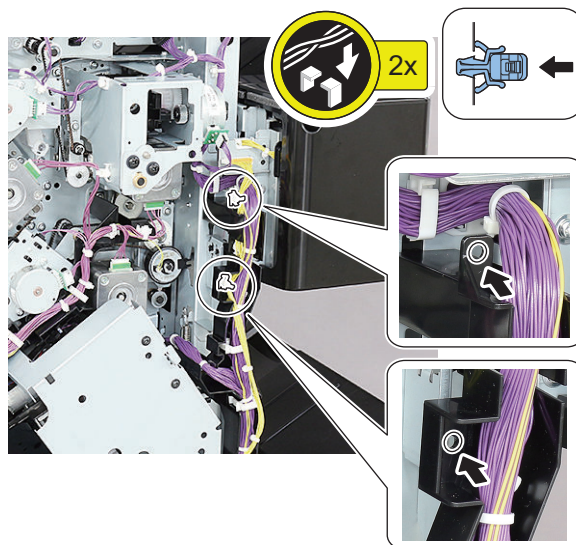
□
6.



□
7.



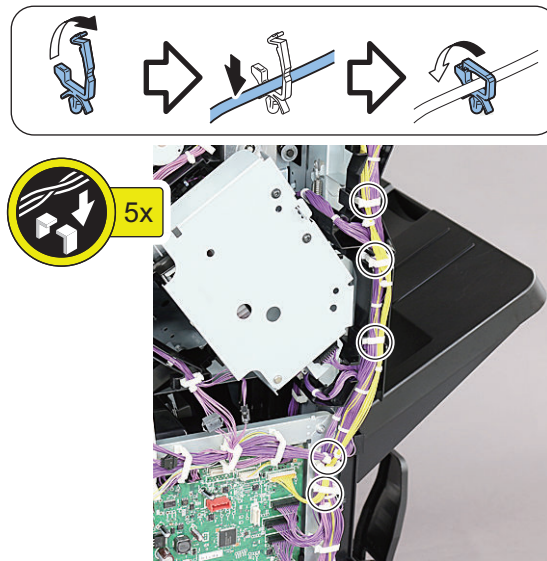
□
8.



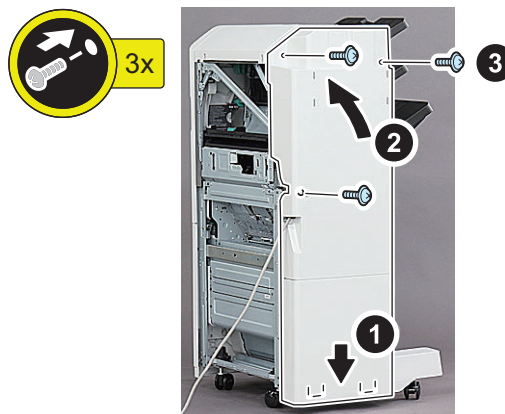
□
9.



10.



11.



Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts Check

There are no parts left after installation work.

■ Operation Check

1. Install the Finisher.

2. Turn ON the main power of the host machine.

-
- 3. If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

(Lv.2) COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG

-
- 4. Perform function checks for jogging operation, etc.**

Staple Finisher-X1/Booklet Finisher-X1

Checking Before Installation

The installation site must satisfy the conditions given below.

Therefore, it is recommended that the installation site be looked over before delivering this equipment to the customer.

Checking the Power Supply

1. Check that this equipment is connectable to the outlet independently which supplies the rated voltage within +10/-15% at the specified ampere or higher.
2. When connecting the power plug of this equipment to an outlet, be sure to use an outlet of a system different from that of the host machine.
3. Install this equipment near the power outlet and leave sufficient space around the power plug so that it can be unplugged easily in an emergency.

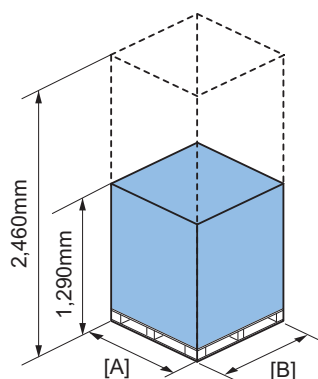
Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

- F281240
- F281250

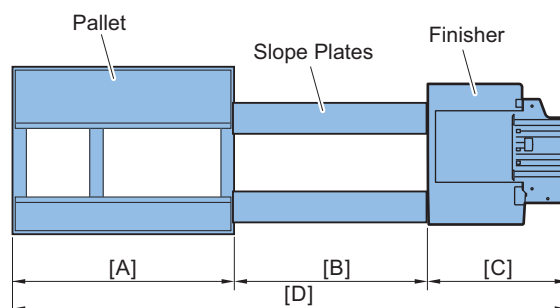
Checking the Unpacking Space

Be sure to unpack this equipment according to the figures in a wide area where there is enough space around it.



[A] Staple Finisher: Approx. 845mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 970mm

[B] Staple Finisher: Approx. 900mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 900mm



[A] Staple Finisher: Approx. 845mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 970mm

[B] Staple Finisher: Approx. 760mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 840mm

[C] Staple Finisher: Approx. 655mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 768mm

[D] Staple Finisher: Approx. 2,260mm / Booklet Finisher : Approx. 2,578mm

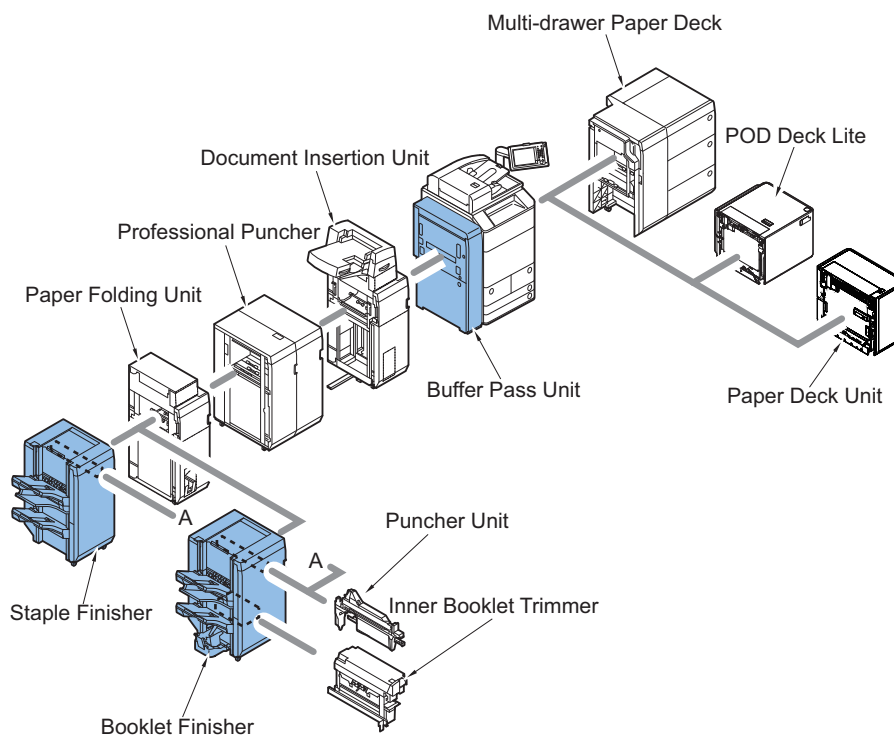
Points to Note on Installation

- Refer to "Order of Installation of options" when installing this Equipment.

- Staple Finisher weighs about 64 kg and Booklet Finisher weighs about 110 kg. 2 more persons are required to install it.
- When moving this equipment after having unpacked it, be careful by placing a plate, etc. on areas with steps to prevent the casters from hitting those steps. If the casters hit a step, the casters or the base plate may be deformed.

■ Order of Installation of Options

When installing this equipment together with other options, first install the host machine and then install options in the following order:



1. Multi-drawer Paper Deck/POD Deck Lite/Paper Deck Unit
2. Buffer Pass Unit *1
3. Document Insertion Unit
4. Professional Puncher
5. Paper Folding Unit
6. Staple Finisher/Booklet Finisher
7. Puncher Unit *2
8. Inner Booklet Trimmer *2/*3

*1:When installing the finisher, it is necessary for the Buffer Pass Unit to be installed.

*2:The Puncher Unit and Inner Booklet Trimmer are to be installed in the finisher. Install these units together with the finisher or after installing the finisher.

*3:Booklet Finisher only

● Unpacking

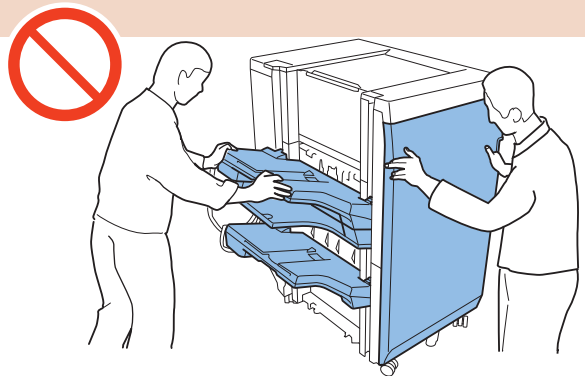
■ Unpacking Procedure

NOTE:

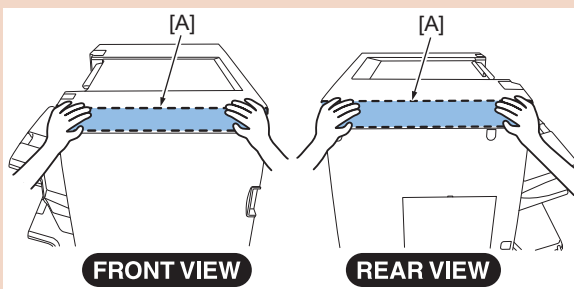
This equipment is packed using tapes, fixings and cushioning materials to be protected against vibration and shock during transportation. Be sure to remove them before starting to install this equipment. It is a good idea to store away the removed fixings and cushioning materials for possible relocation of this equipment, e.g., to a new site or for repairs.

CAUTION:

- Staple Finisher weighs about 64 kg and Booklet Finisher weighs about 110 kg. 2 more persons are required to install it.
- When unpacking this equipment, you can deform or damage it depending on the parts you hold. Do not hold the front cover or upper output tray unit or lower output tray unit.

**CAUTION:**

When removing the cushioning materials in steps 2 and 3 or moving this equipment from the pallet down to the floor along the slope boards in step 6, hold the top [A] of this equipment.

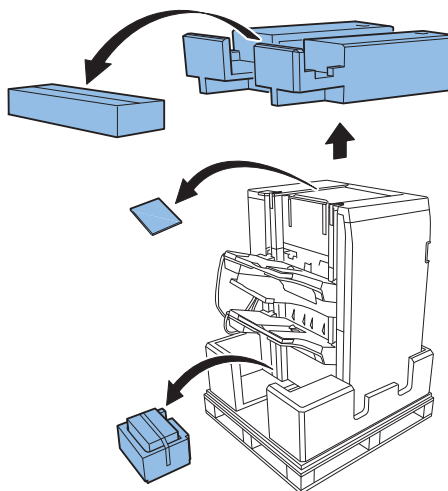


□

1. Open the container box, and then take out the accessory box and included parts, cushioning materials.

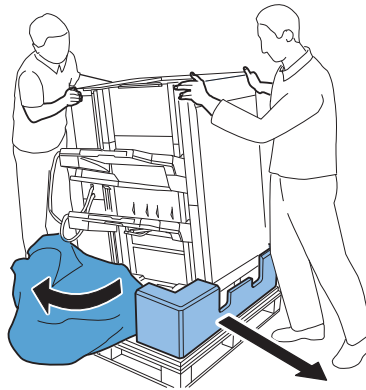
NOTE:

The Tray label and Tray setting label are attached to the plastic bag with the adhesive tape.

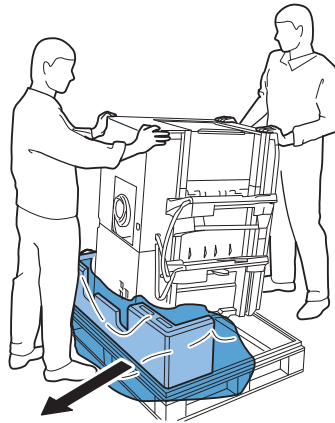




2. Pull down the plastic bag. While holding the top of this equipment, raise one side of this equipment to remove the cushioning material. Be sure to pull the plastic bag toward the other cushioning material completely.



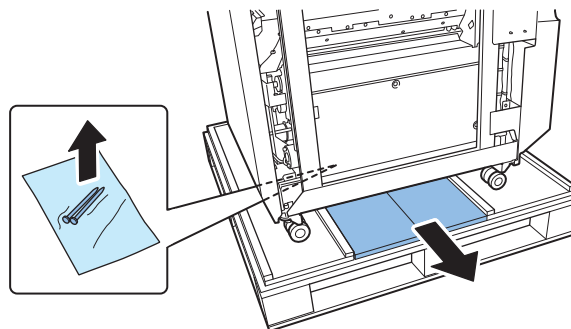
3. While holding the top of this equipment, raise the other side to remove the cushioning material and plastic bag.



4. Remove two slope boards and two fixing pins.

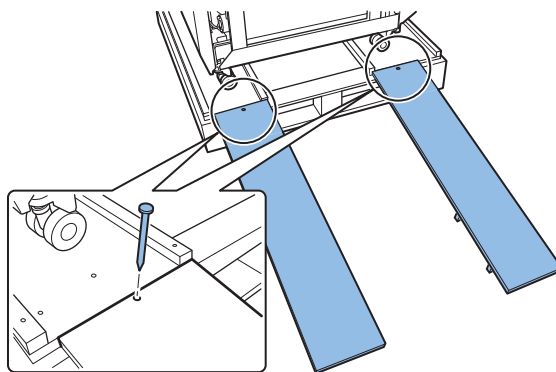
NOTE:

The fixing pins are attached to the slope board with the adhesive tape.

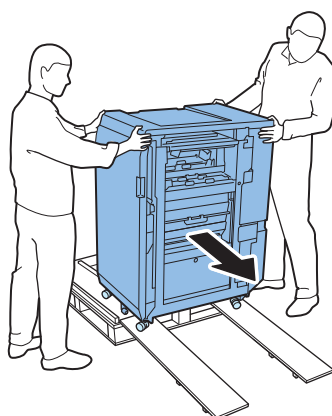




5. Using two fixing pins, secure the slope boards to the pallet.

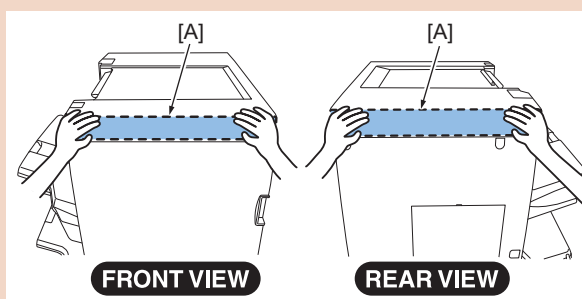


6. Place the casters of this equipment on the slope boards, and then move this equipment slowly from the pallet down to the floor.



CAUTION:

- Move this equipment down to the floor carefully so that the casters do not slip off the slope boards.
- Be sure to hold the top [A] of this equipment when moving this equipment from the slope boards down to the floor.



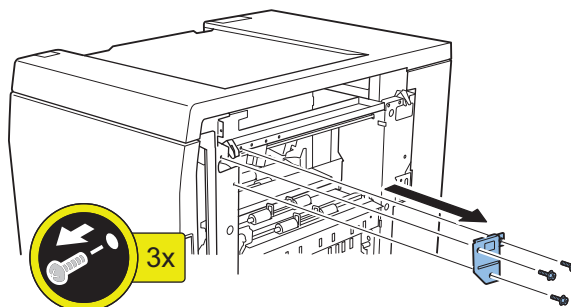
7. Remove all pieces of packing tape used outside this equipment.



8. For Booklet Finisher, remove the fixing.

- Screw 3pcs.

<Booklet Finisher>

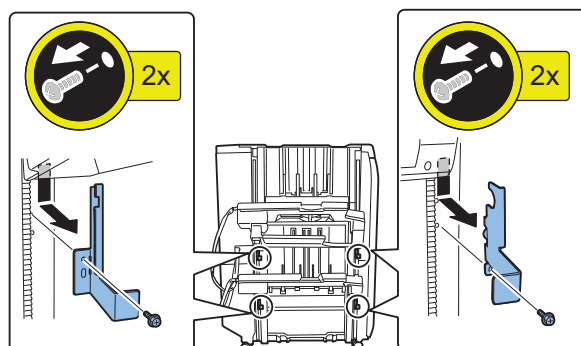
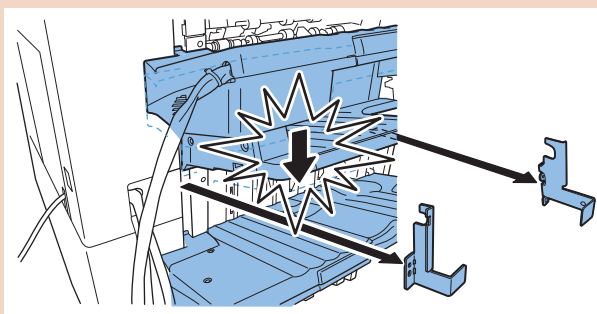


9. Remove four fixings of the upper output tray and lower output tray.

- Screw 4pcs.

CAUTION:

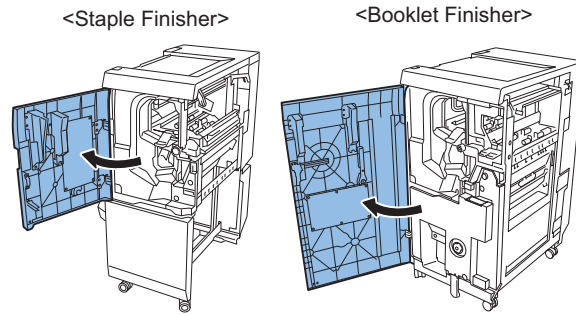
Hold the output tray while removing the fixings lest the output tray jerks.



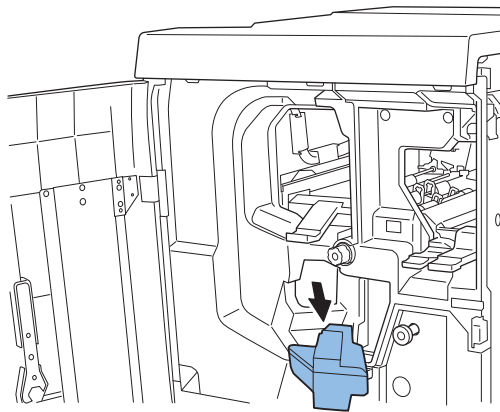
10. Refer to "Unpacking and Checking the Contents" to check that none of the included parts is missing.



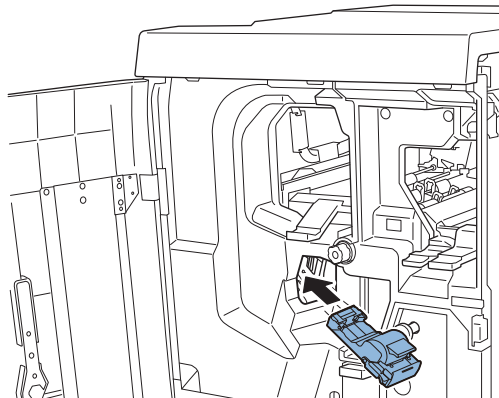
11. Open the front cover.



12. Remove all pieces of packing tape used inside this equipment, and then remove the cushioning material from the stapler unit.

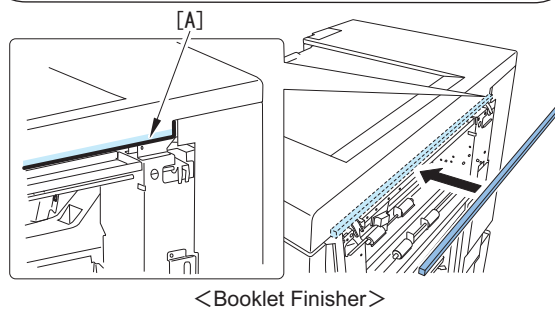
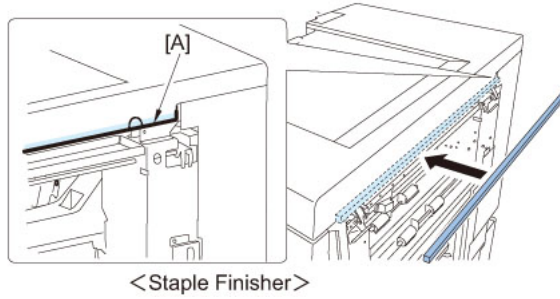


13. Attach the stapler unit staple case by pushing until it clicks.



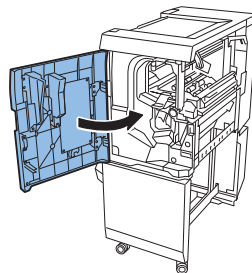


14. Take off the release paper from the spacer, and put the spacer on the upper cover of the finisher's right side (paper feeding inlet side), along the inside edge [A] of the upper cover.



15. For Staple Finisher, close the front cover and proceed to Section “Installation Procedure”.

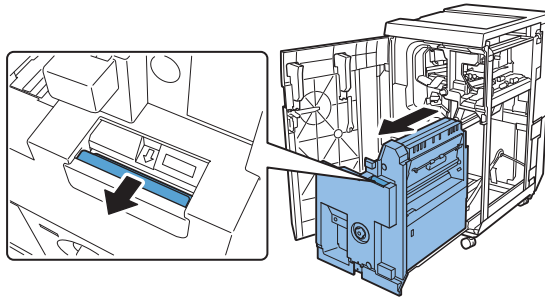
<Staple Finisher>



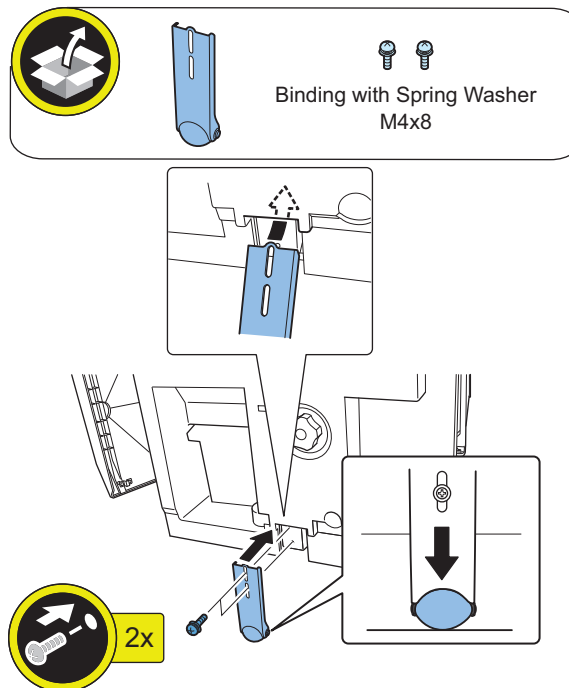
■ Unpacking Procedure of the Saddle Unit [Booklet Finisher Only]



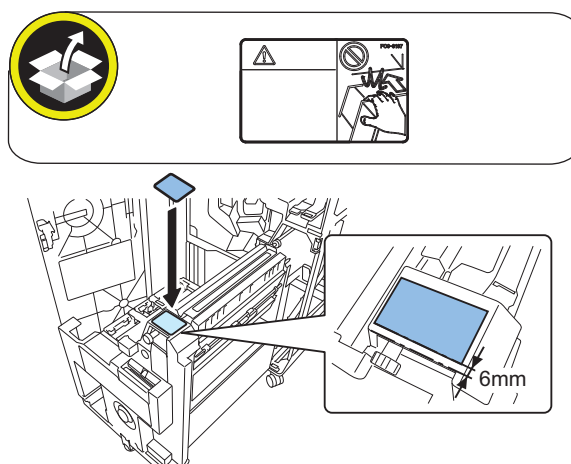
1. Gripping the hook of the handle, pull out the saddle stitcher unit gently until it stops, and then remove all pieces of packing tape.



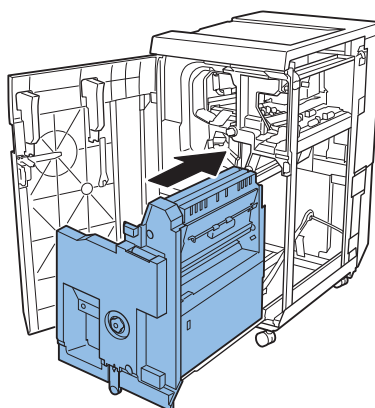
2. Attach the saddle stitcher unit auxiliary caster so that its caster can touch the floor.
 - Screw (Binding with Spring Washer ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



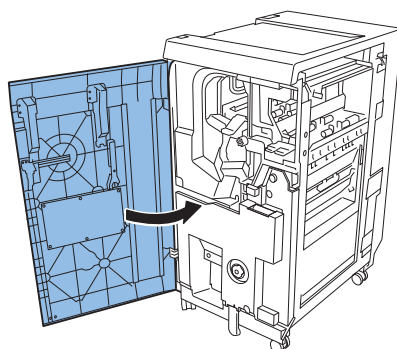
-
3. Affix the Saddle caution label (written in the language used by the customer) to the top of the saddle stitcher unit cover.



-
4. Push back the saddle stitcher unit gently into this equipment until it stops.



-
5. Close the front cover.

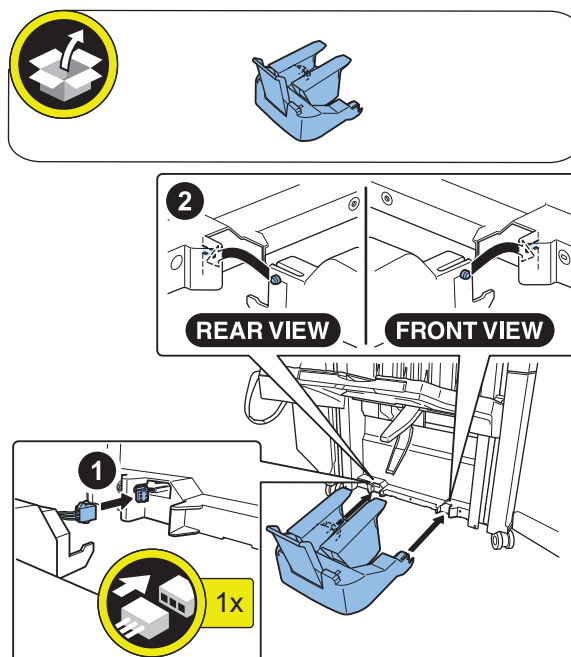




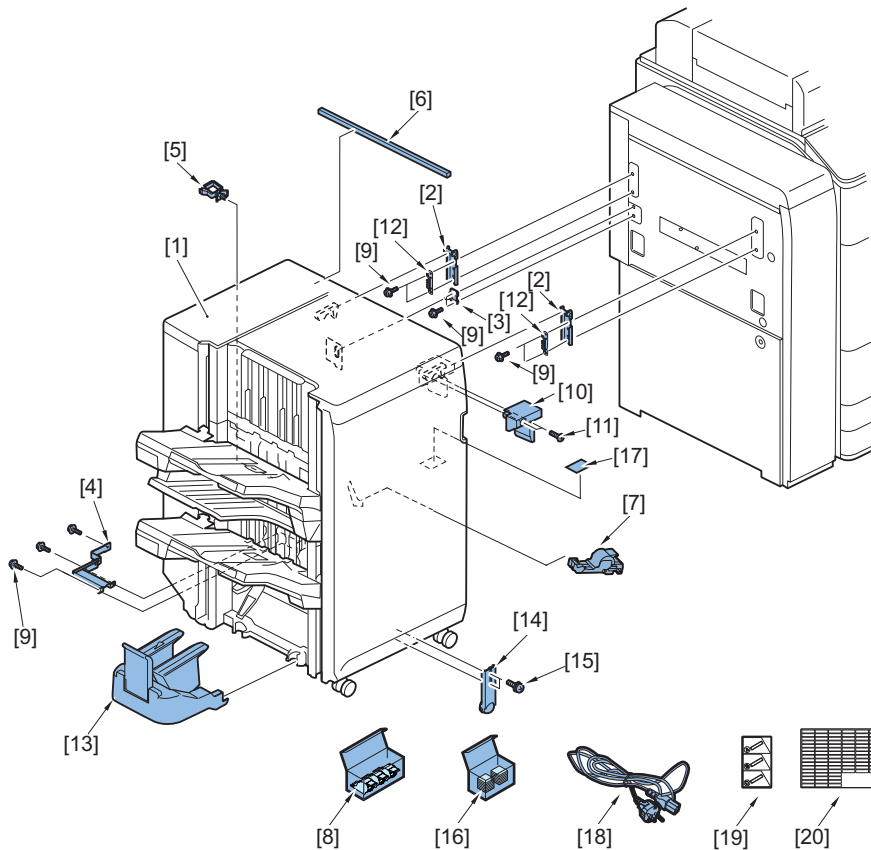
6. Remove the packing tape from the booklet tray. Connect the connector of the booklet tray to the connector on the lower left side, and then attach the booklet tray using its two hooks.

CAUTION:

When attaching the booklet tray, be careful not to pinch or damage the connector and the cable harness. After attaching the booklet tray, put the connector and the cable harness inside of this equipment. Do not put the connector and cable harness at outside of this equipment.



Checking the Contents



<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	Finisher	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [11]*1	Screw (Binding ; M4 x 6)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	Latch catch	2pcs.	<input type="checkbox"/> [12]*2	Ground plate	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [3]	Positioning pin	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [13]*2	Booklet tray	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [4]	Shunt cable unit	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [14]*2	Saddle stitcher unit auxiliary caster	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [5]	Wire saddle	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [15]*2	Screw (Bind with Spring Washer ; M4 x 8)	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [6]	Spacer	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [16]*2	Staple cartridge for saddle stitcher	2pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [7]	Stapler unit staple case	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [17]*2	Saddle caution label	
<input type="checkbox"/> [8]	Staple cartridge	3pcs.	<input type="checkbox"/> [18]*3	Power cord	
<input type="checkbox"/> [9]	Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8)	9pcs.	<input type="checkbox"/> [19]	Tray label	1pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [10]*1	Latch cover	1pc.	<input type="checkbox"/> [20]	Tray setting label	1pc.

*1:Staple Finisher only

*2:Booklet Finisher only

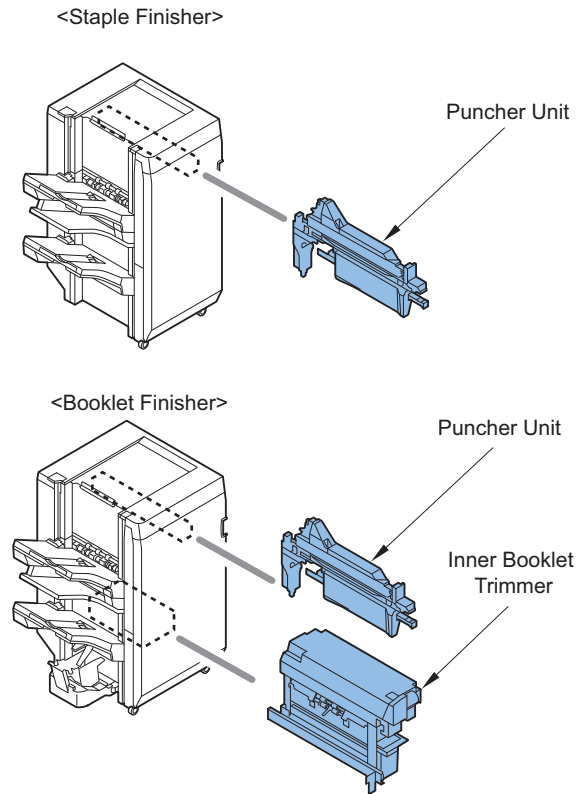
*3:The package may contain several power cords intended for use in Europe. Use the correct power cord to match the location/ area of installation. Make sure not to leave unused power cords at the site.

Installation Procedure

■ Installing Options

When installing the puncher unit and inner booklet trimmer together with this equipment, install them before connecting this equipment to the upstream connection machine.

For the procedures for installing the puncher unit and inner booklet trimmer, refer to their installation procedure manuals.

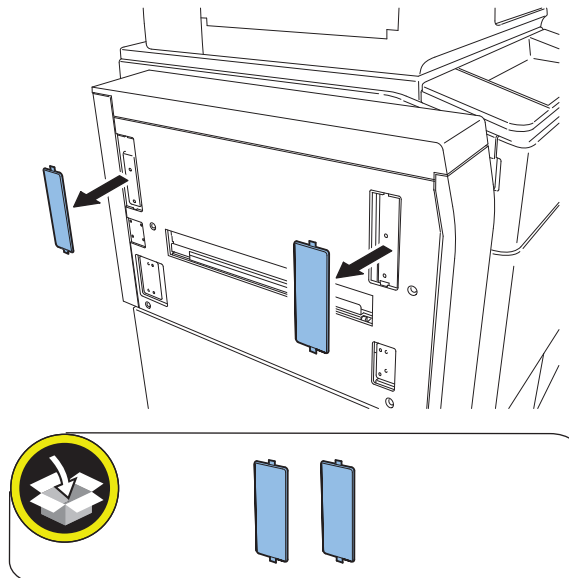


■ Preparation for Installation on Upstream Connection Machine Side [Staple Finisher only]

● Connecting to the Host Machine



1. Remove two covers on the left side of the buffer pass unit.

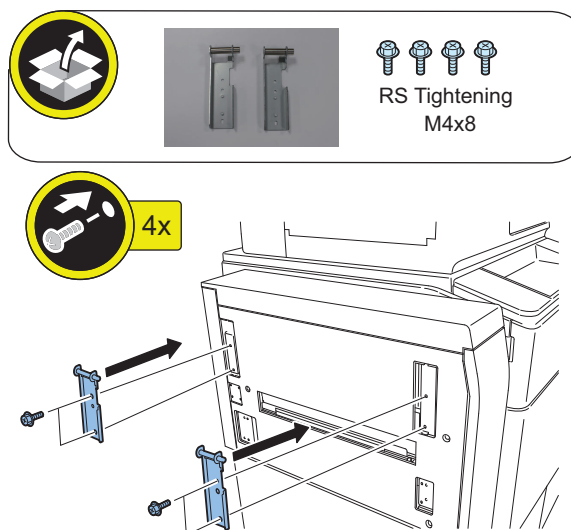


**2. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the buffer pass unit.**

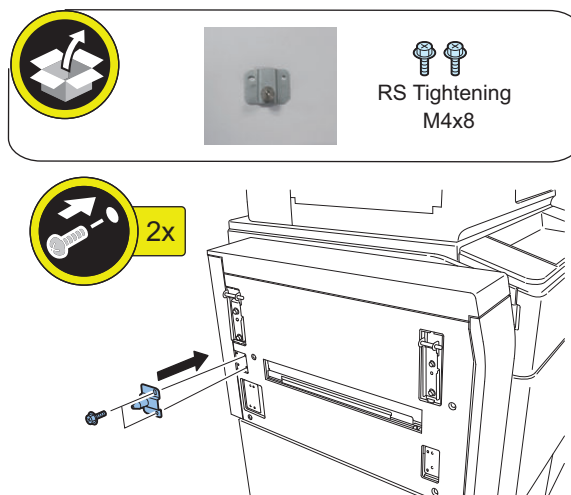
- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the buffer pass unit.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.

**3. Attach the positioning pin.**

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



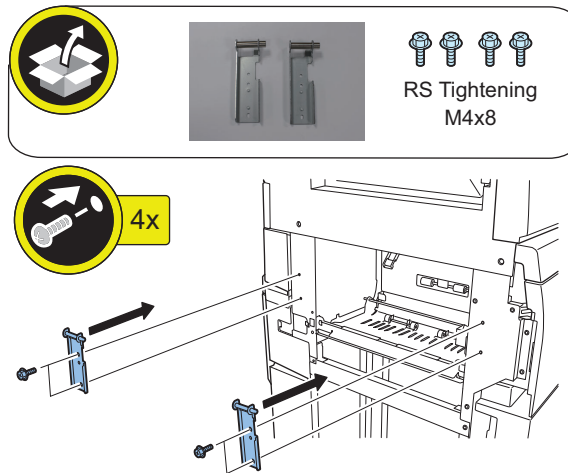
• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit



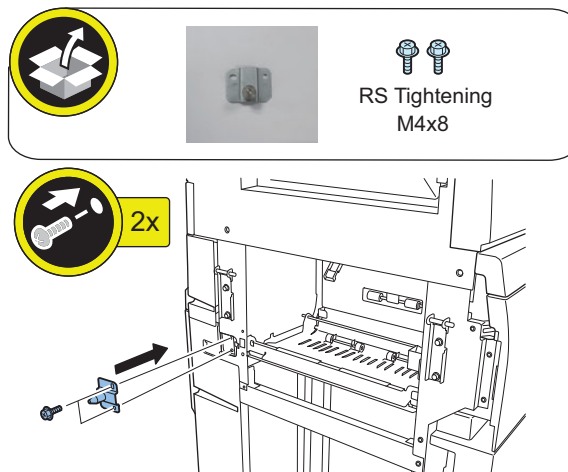
1. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the document insertion unit.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the document insertion unit.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.



2. Attach the positioning pin.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



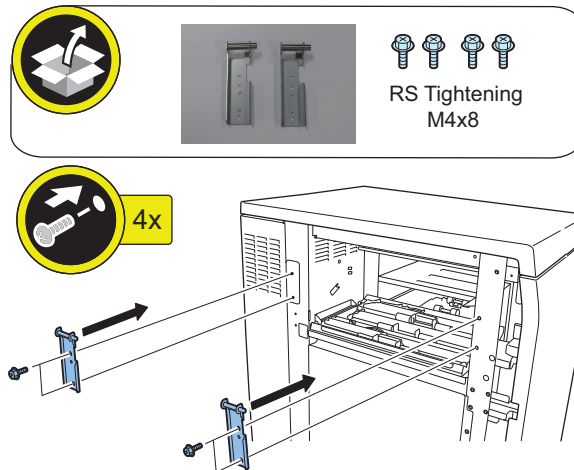
• Connecting to Professional Puncher



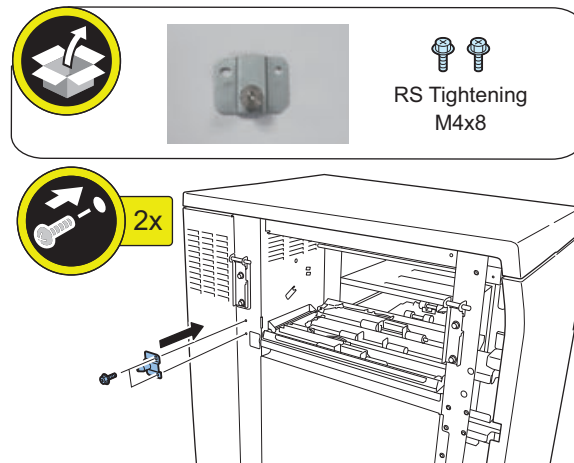
1. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the professional puncher.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the professional puncher.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.



2. Attach the positioning pin.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



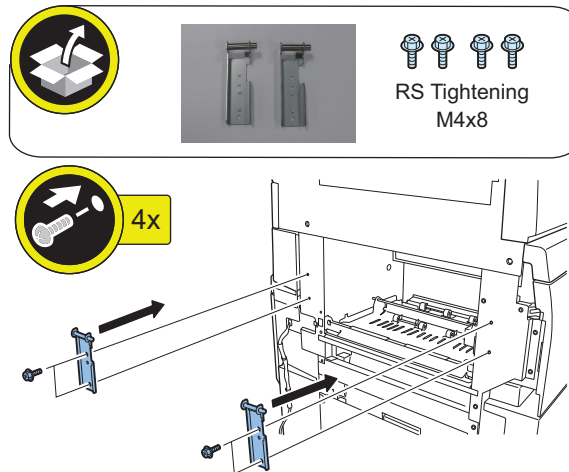
• Connecting to Paper Folding Unit



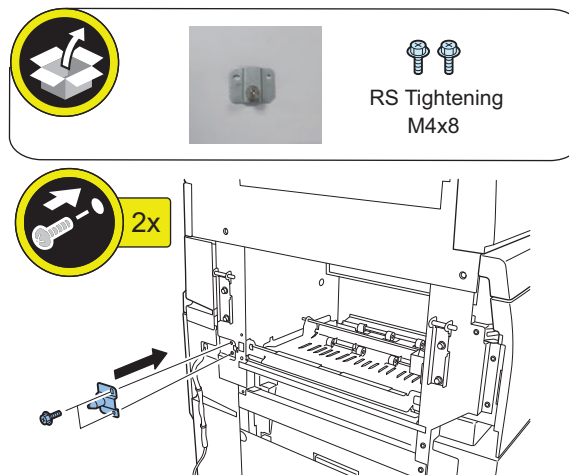
1. Attach two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the paper folding unit.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

- The latch catch has three screw holes. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the paper folding unit.
- The two latch catches are identical to each other.



2. Attach the positioning pin.
 - Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.

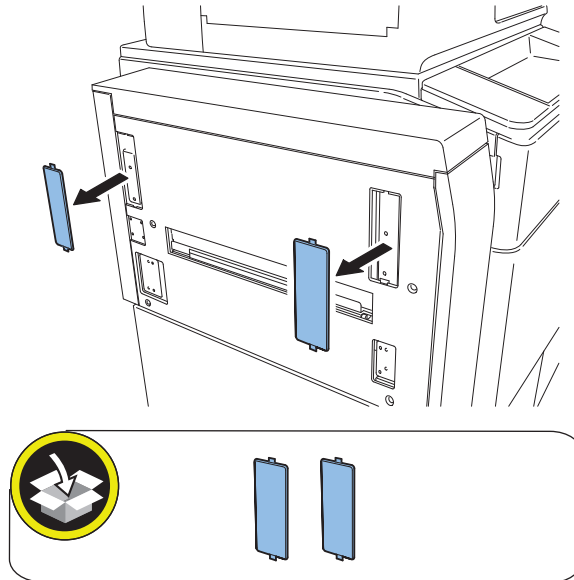


■ Preparation for Installation on Upstream Connection Machine Side [Booklet Finisher only]

• Connecting to the Host Machine



1. Remove two covers (front and rear) on the left side of the buffer pass unit.

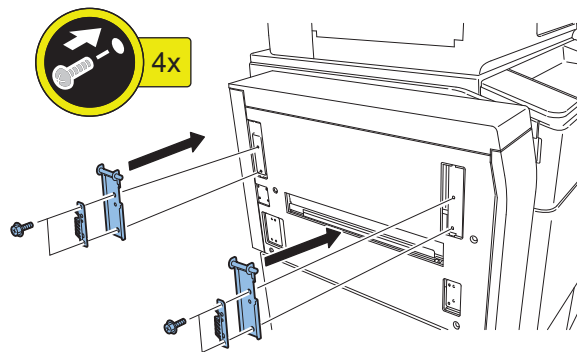


2. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the buffer pass unit together.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

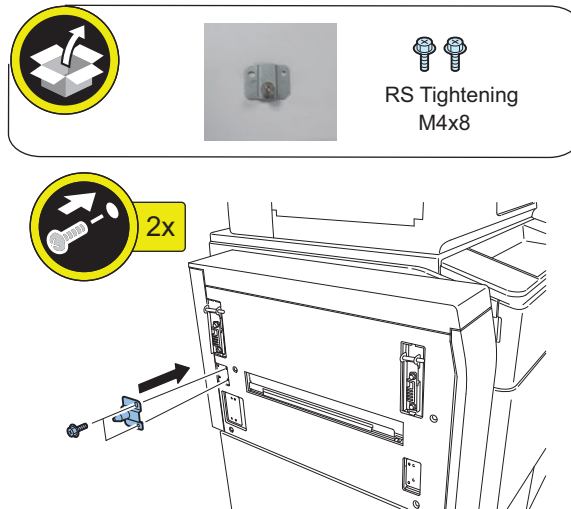
- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the buffer pass unit.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.





3. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Document Insertion Unit

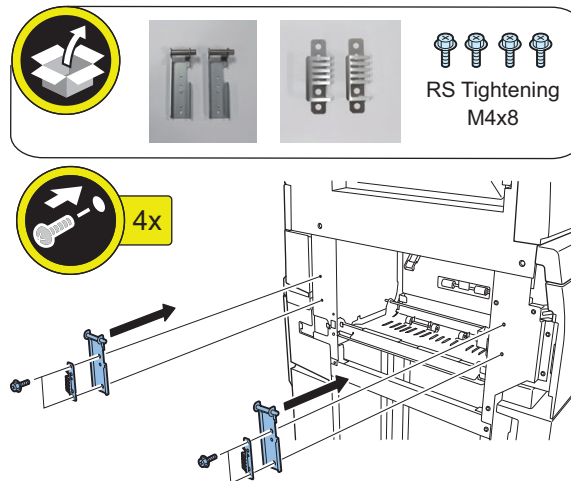


1. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the document insertion unit together.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

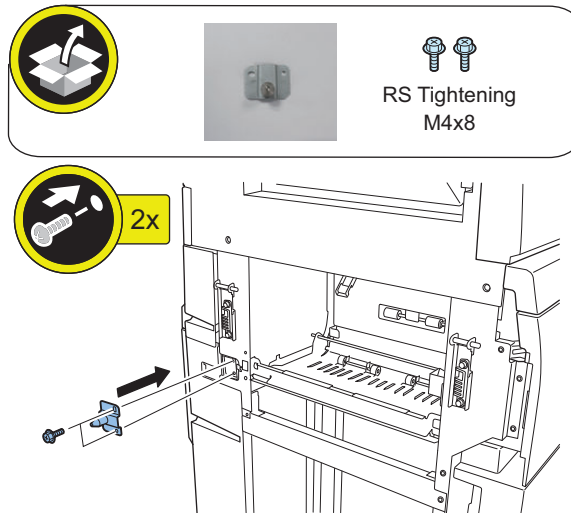
- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the document insertion unit.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.





2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Professional Puncher

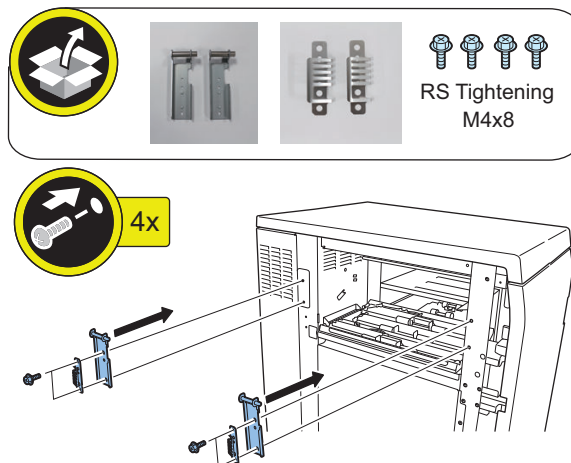


1. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the professional puncher together.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

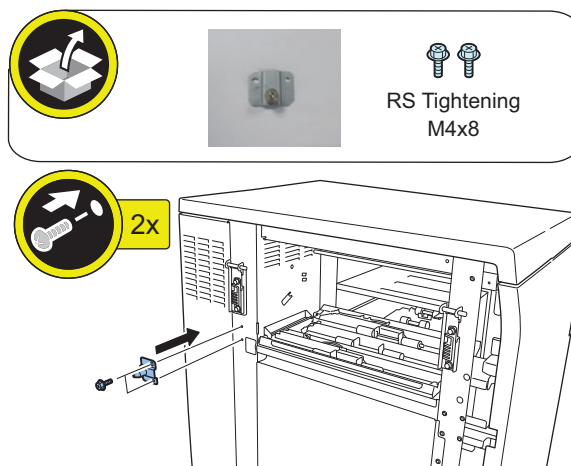
- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the professional puncher.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.





2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



• Connecting to Paper Folding Unit

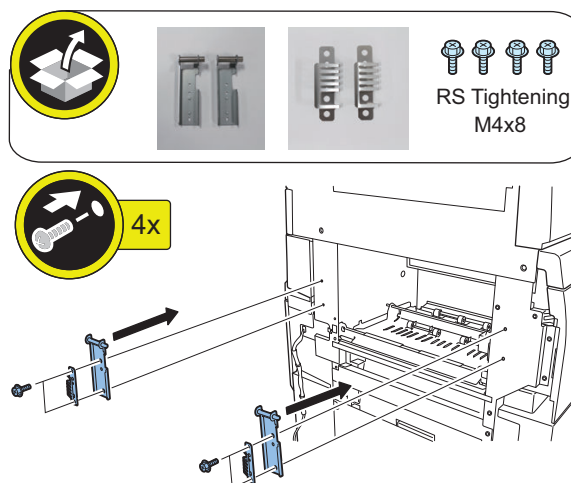


1. Attach two ground plates and two latch catches (front and rear) on the left side of the paper folding unit together.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 4pcs.

NOTE:

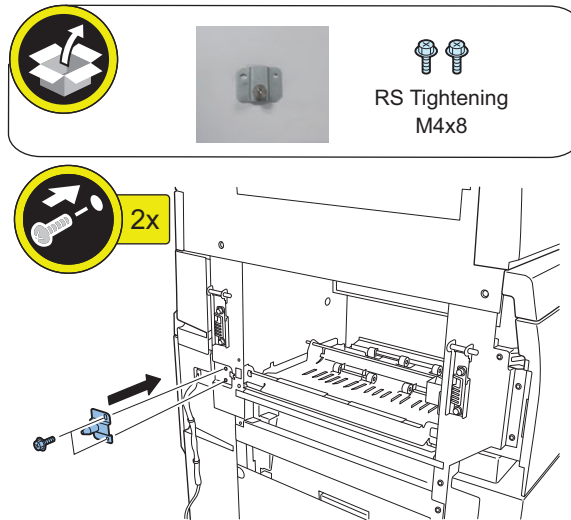
- The ground plate and latch catch have three screw holes each. Use two screw holes according to the mounting position on the paper folding unit.
- A pair of the ground plates and the latch catches are identical to each other.





2. Attach the positioning pin.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.



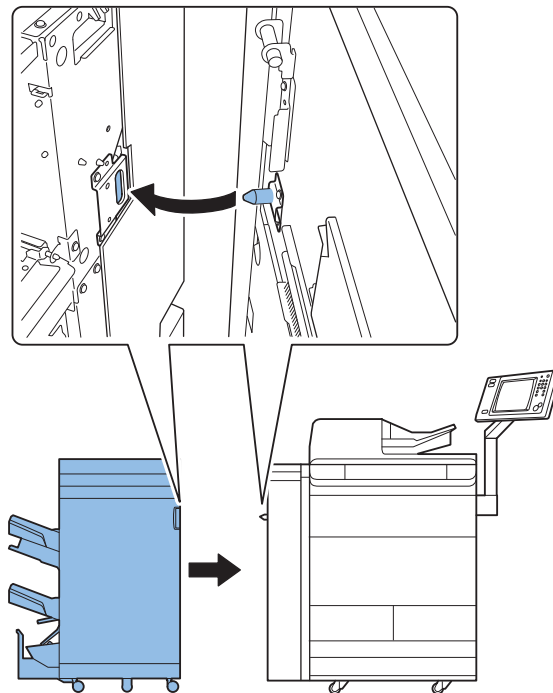
■ Connecting to the Upstream Connection Machine

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the host machine is turned off and the power plug is disconnected from the outlet.

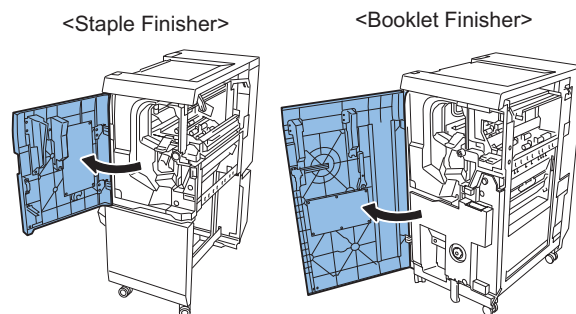


1. Fit the positioning pin installed on the upstream connection machine in the positioning hole on this equipment to connect this equipment to the upstream connection machine fittingly.

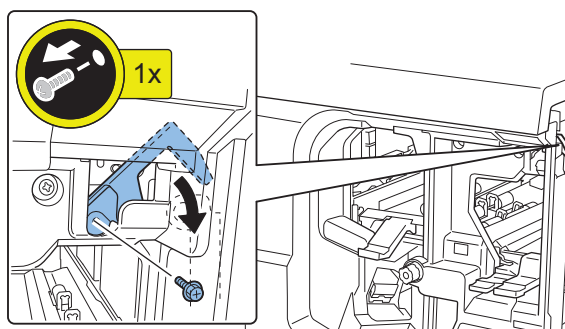




2. Open the front cover of this equipment.

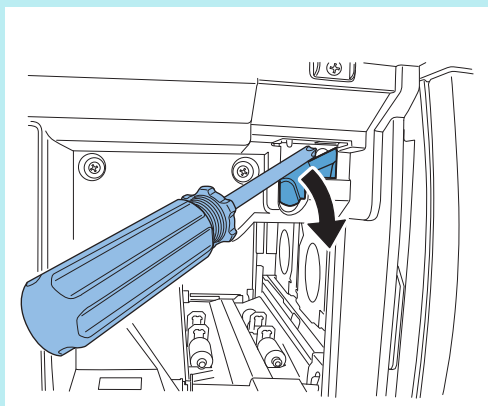


3. Remove the latch fixing screw, and then hang the latch (front and rear) on the latch catch.



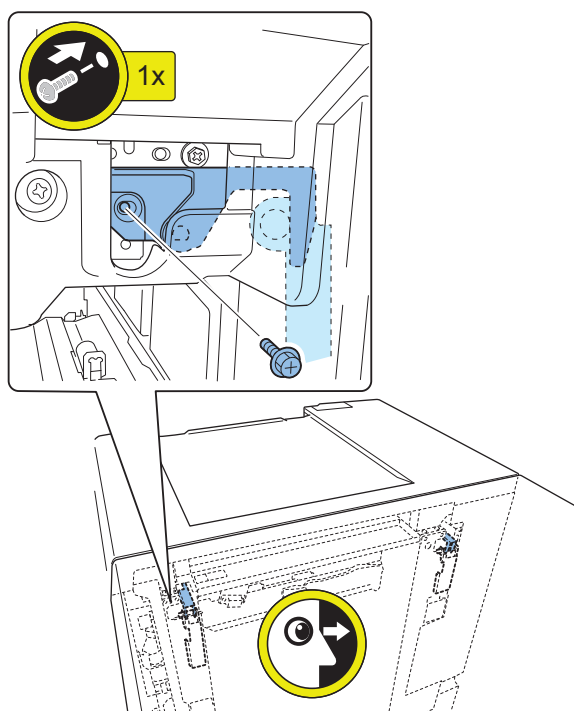
NOTE:

If the latch cannot be hung on the latch catch smoothly, use a screwdriver or the like as shown by the figure.



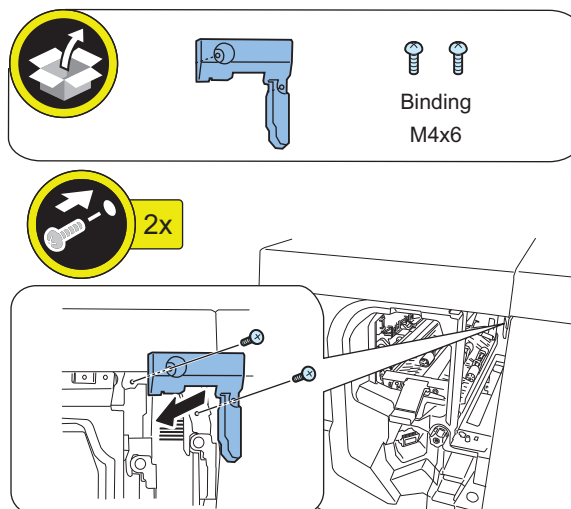


4. After making sure that the latch is firmly engaged with the latch catch, secure the latch using the latch fixing screw removed in step 3.



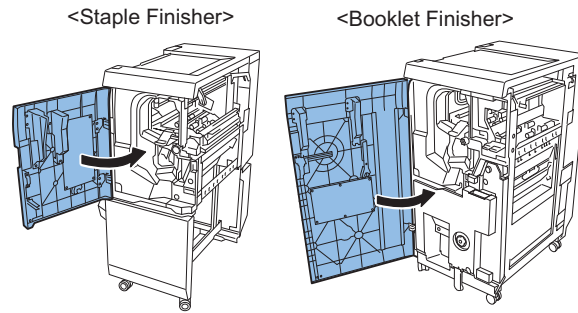
5. For Staple Finisher, attach the latch cover to the latch.

- Screw (Binding ; M4 x 6) 2pcs.



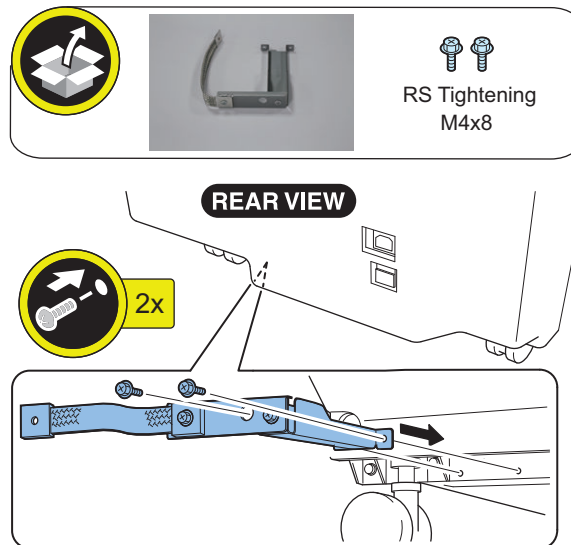


6. Close the front cover of this equipment.



7. Attach the shunt cable unit on the lower rear side.

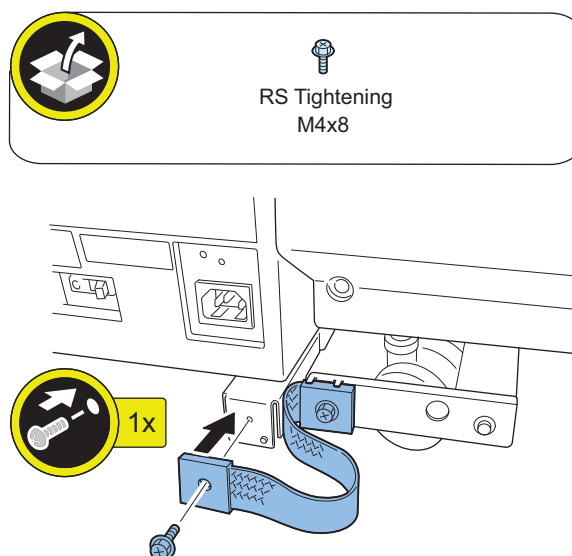
- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 2pcs.





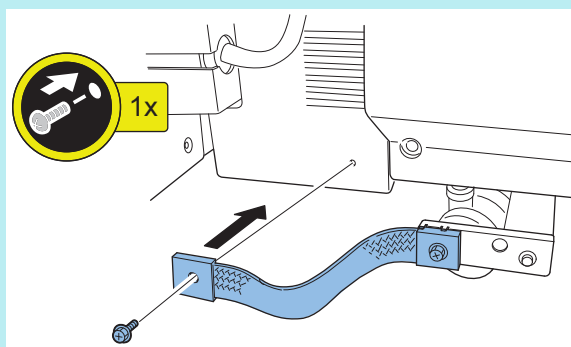
8. Secure the shunt cable to the upstream connection machine.

- Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 1pc.



NOTE:

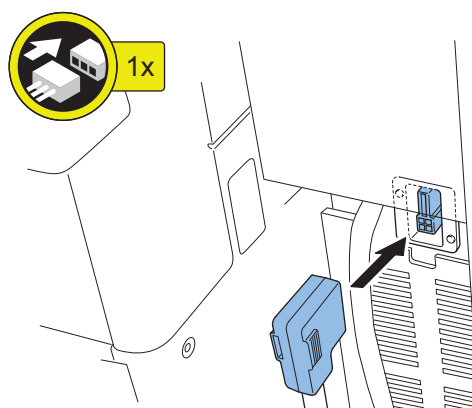
When attaching the shunt cable to the buffer pass unit, remove the screw from the buffer pass unit, then attach the shunt cable by using the removed screw. In this case, the supplied screw remains.



9. Connect the interface cable to the buffer pass unit.

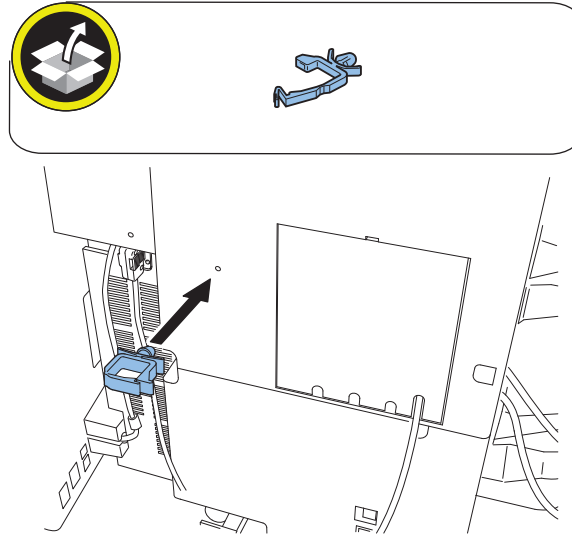
⚠ CAUTION:

When connecting the interface cable, be sure to turn off the host machine and disconnect its power cable from the outlet. If you do not do so, electric shock can result.





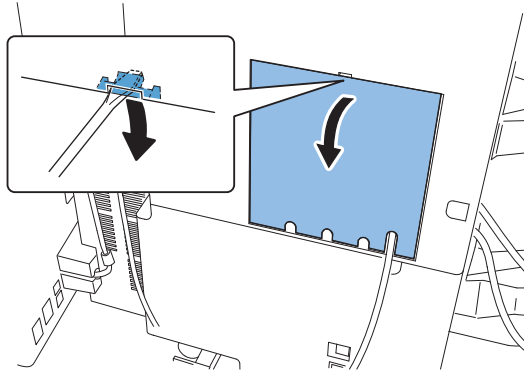
10. Attach the wire saddle to the upper rear cover.



11. When an optional paper folding unit, professional puncher, or document insertion unit is connected, follow the procedure below. If such an option is not connected, proceed to step 18.



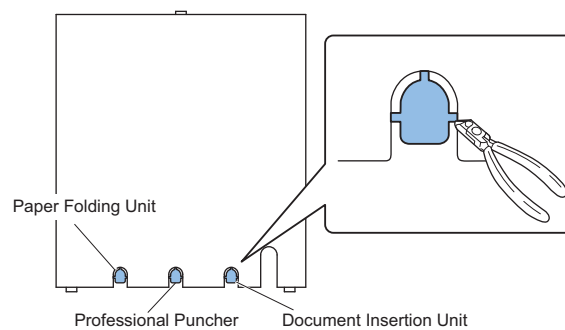
12. Release the hook with the flat head screwdriver, and then remove the PCB cover.



13. Using a side cutter, cut the PCB cover to make a cable groove for lacing the cable of the connected option.

CAUTION:

Be sure to cut the PCB cover properly so that no burr is formed.

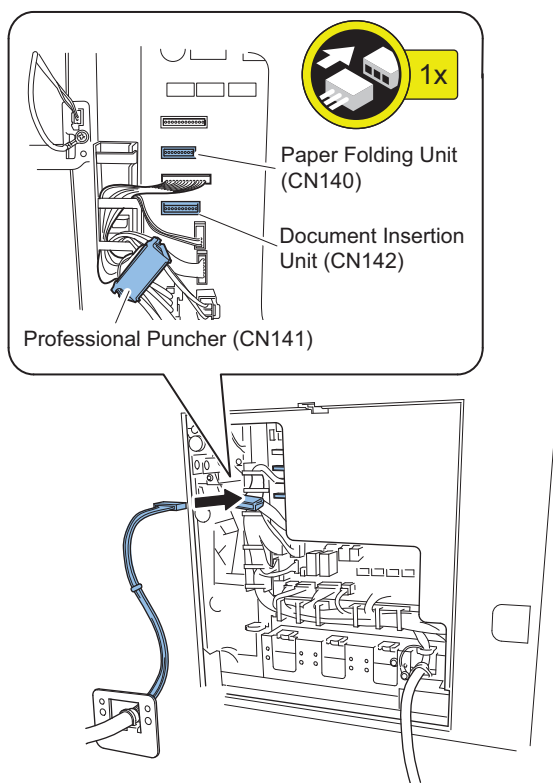




14. Connect the interface cable of the connected option to the connector on this equipment controller PCB.

NOTE:

Use the interface cable that included with the option.





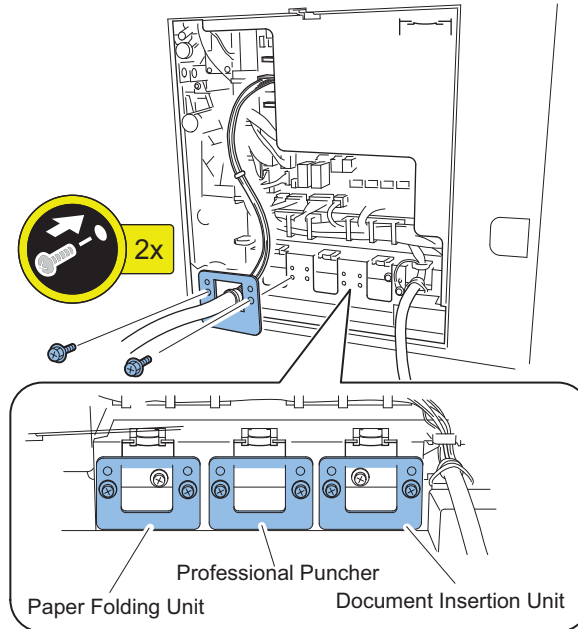
15. Attach the cable fixing plate.

(The figure shows the case where the interface cable of the paper folding unit is installed.)

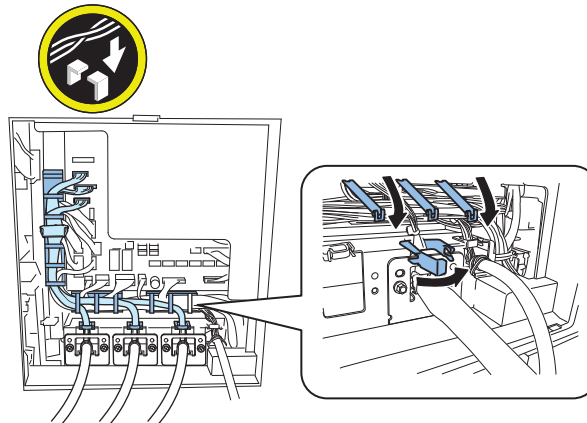
- Screw 2pcs.

NOTE:

Use the screws that included with the option.

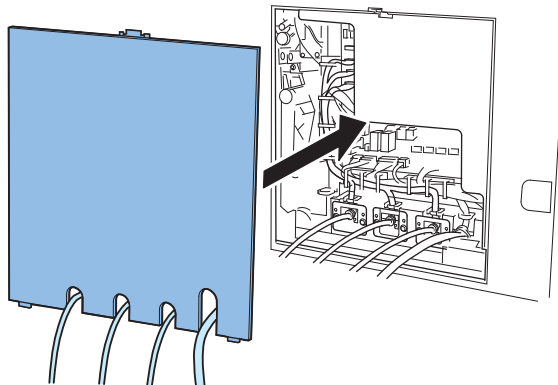


16. Put the interface cable in the harness guide so that it does not touch the PCB and cover.





17. Lace the interface cable in the groove, and then attach the PCB cover.

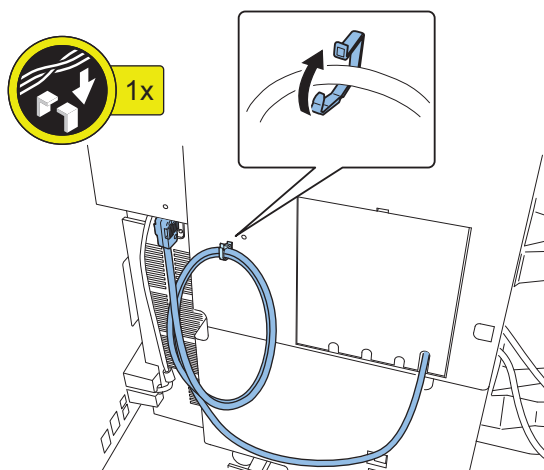


18. Secure the interface cable connected in step 9 using the wire saddle.

(The figure shows the case where bundle the interface cable forming the 2 loops.)

NOTE:

- Do not bundle the interface cable to form three or more loops.
- The interface cable connected to the option secures to the wire saddle of the option.



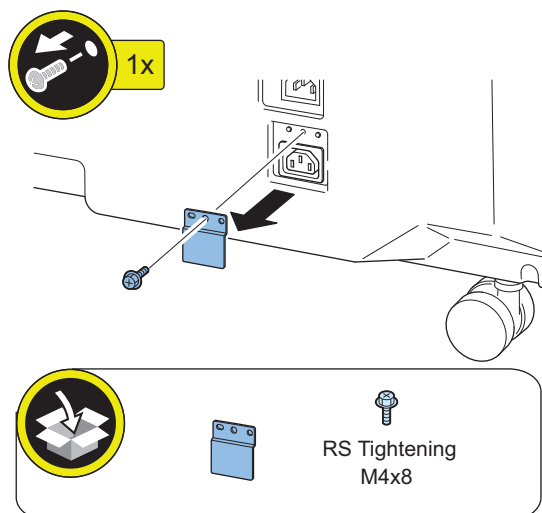


19. When connecting the power cord of the option to the connector on the finisher, and then remove the connector cover.

- Screw 1pc.

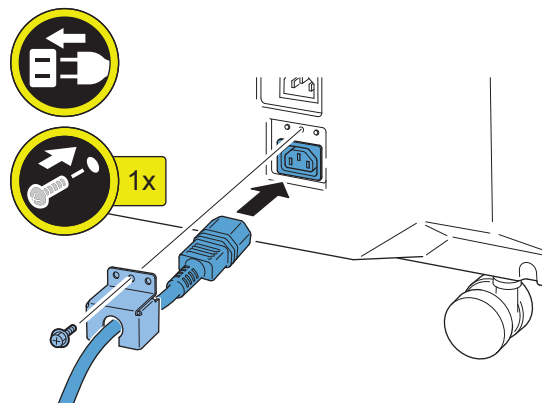
⚠ CAUTION:

Don't connect the power cord of the machine except the optional paper folding unit (Model: F281270).



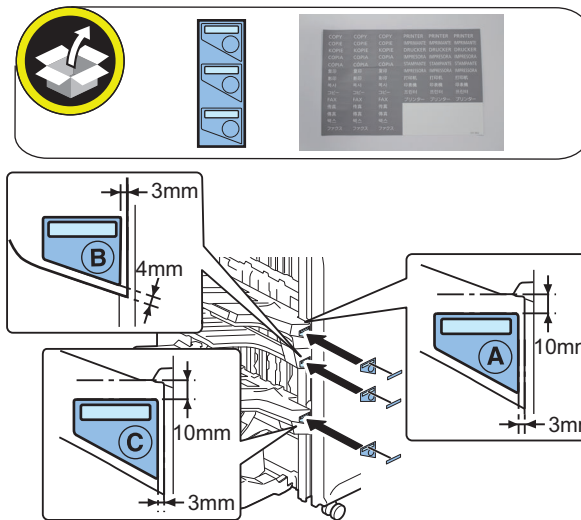
20. After connecting the power cord of the option to the connector, attach the plug cover which included with the option.

- Screw 1pc. (included with the option)





21. Affix the Tray labels to the each tray as shown in the figure. Affix the Tray setting labels which is specified by user on the frame line of tray labels.



Adjustment

Adjusting the Height and Tilt

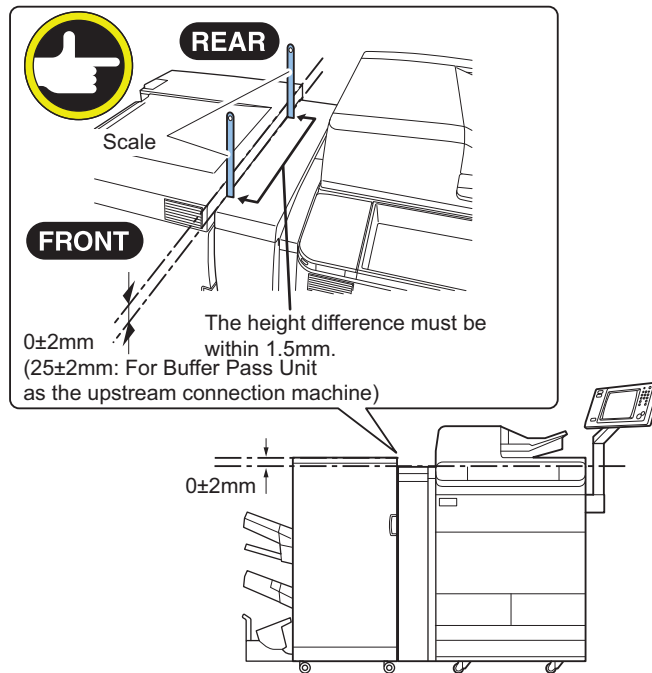
The difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine and the tilt of this equipment and the upstream connection machine need to be adjusted depending on the installation site floor condition. If the height or tilt are not adjusted properly, problems can occur (for example, a paper jam can occur frequently at the paper supply section of this equipment). Check the height and tilt and adjust it as required.

• Checking the Difference in Height and the Tilt



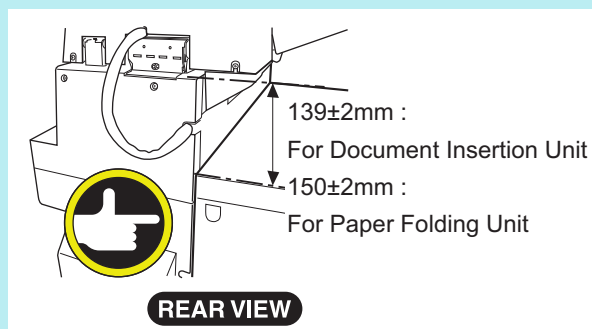
1. Check the difference in height between the finisher and the upstream connection machine. Make sure that the difference in height between the top surface of the finisher and the top surface of the upstream connection machine is within $0\pm 2\text{mm}$. However, when the buffer pass unit has been installed as the upstream connection machine, check that the difference in height is within $25\pm 2\text{mm}$.

Measure the difference in height at two points (at the front and rear), and then check that the difference in height between the front and rear is within 1.5mm.

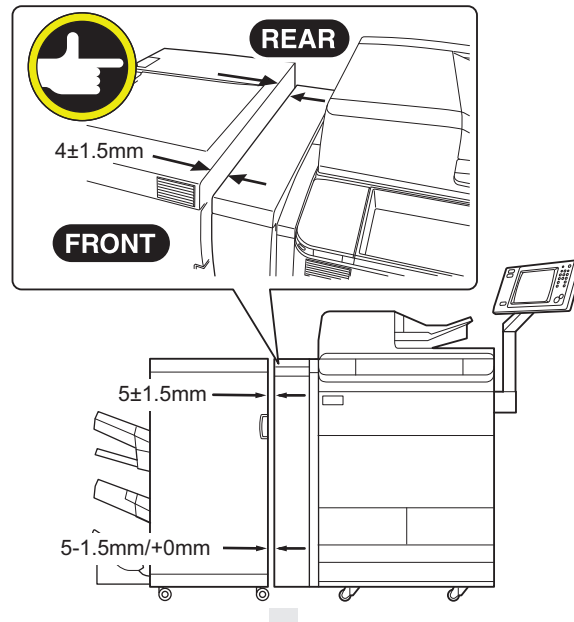


NOTE:

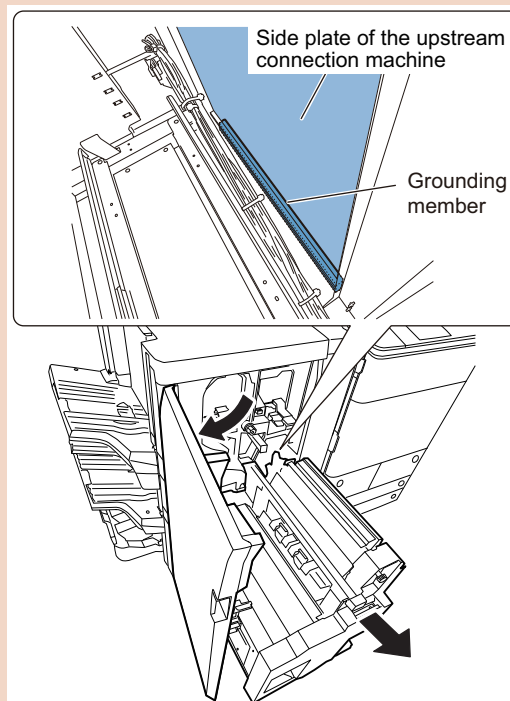
As for the difference in rear height between the finisher and the document insertion unit, make sure that it is within $139\pm 2\text{mm}$, or as for the difference in rear height between the finisher and the paper folding unit, make sure that it is within $150\pm 2\text{mm}$.



-
2. Check the relational tilting amount of the finisher for the upstream connection machine. Make sure that the gap between the right side of the finisher and the left side of the upstream connection machine is the range shown in the figure.

**CAUTION:**

In case of the Booklet Finisher, open the front cover and pull out the saddle stitcher unit. Then make sure the grounding member which is attached on the finisher right lower stay touches the side plate of upstream connection machine from the front side to the rear side. If it does not touch properly, make the adjustment according to the "Adjusting the Height and Tilt."



-
3. If the height and tilt of this equipment must be adjusted, go to "Adjusting the Height and Tilt".

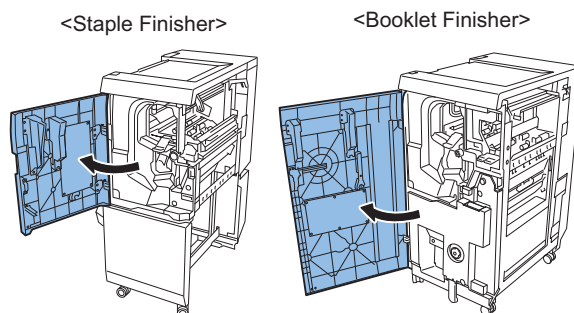
• Adjusting the Height and Tilt

CAUTION:

If either of the difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine or the tilt of this equipment is not within the specifications, adjust them following the procedure explained below. Be sure to adjust the height before adjusting the tilt.



1. Open the front cover.

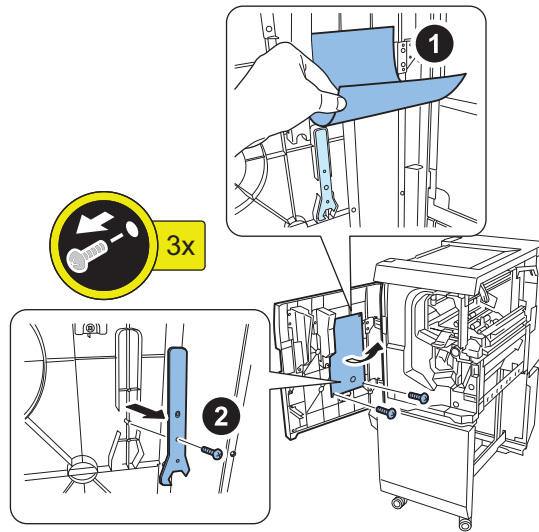




2. Remove the wrench as shown in the figure.

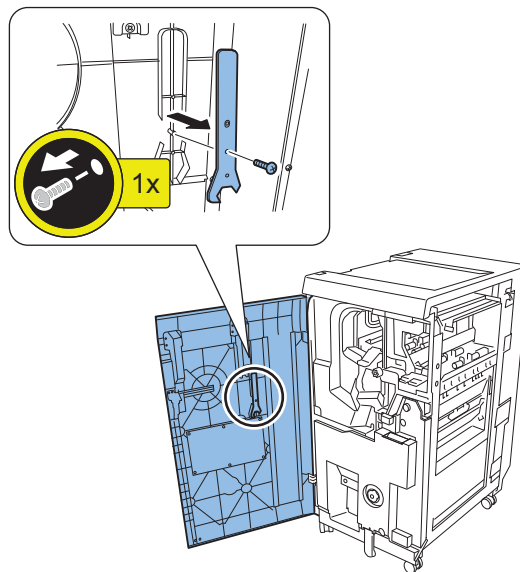
[Staple Finisher only]

- Screw 3pcs.

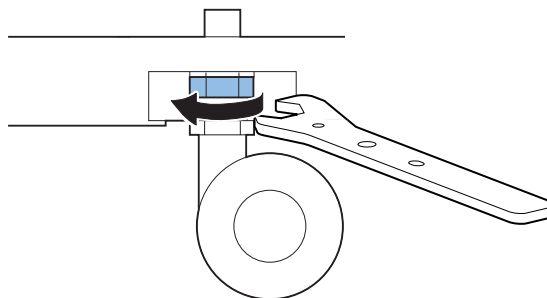


[Booklet Finisher only]

- Screw 1pc.



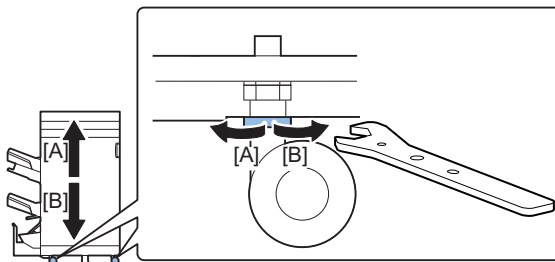
3. Using the wrench, turn the caster lock nut in the direction of the arrow to loosen the nut.



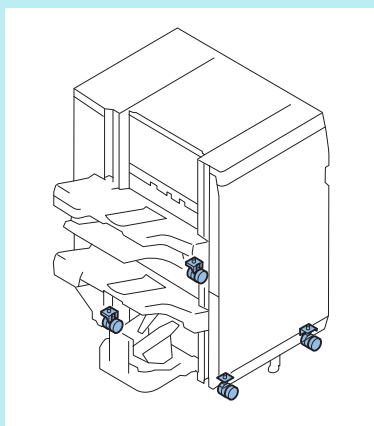
**4. Using the wrench, turn the height adjusting nut of the caster in the direction of the arrow.**

(A full turn of the adjusting nut changes this equipment height by 1.75 mm.)

- To increase the height of this equipment, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [A].
- To decrease the height of this equipment, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [B].

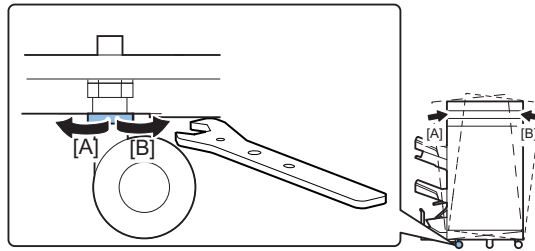
**NOTE:**

Adjust the height at four casters.

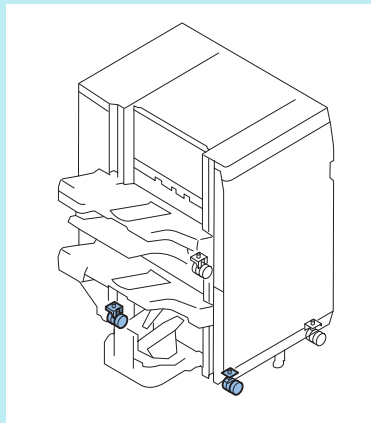


**5. Using the wrench, turn the tilt adjusting nut of the caster in the direction of the arrow.**

- To tilt this equipment to the right, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [A].
- To tilt this equipment to the left, turn the nut in the direction of arrow [B].

**NOTE:**

Adjust the tilt at two left casters.



■ Making Checks after Completion of Adjustments



1. Check to see that the difference in height between this equipment and the upstream connection machine and the tilt are within the specifications. If they are not within the specifications, make adjustments again with reference to Section "Adjusting the Height and Tilt".



2. After making adjustments, attach the wrench to the back of the front cover and then close the front cover.

● Checking after Installation

■ Disposal Parts



1. Take back the following parts which are no longer necessary.

- [1] Face cover of the host machine 3pcs.
- [2] Connector cover 1pc.
- [3] Screw (RS Tightening ; M4 x 8) 1pc.
- [4] Tray setting label (remaining label) 1pc.
- [5] Saddle caution label (remaining label)(Booklet Finisher only)

■ Operation Check

CAUTION:

Make sure that all pieces of packing tape, cushioning materials and fixings have been removed. Operating this equipment without removing them can cause machine troubles.



1. **Connect the power plugs of the option and host machine to the outlets.**

⚠ CAUTION:

Make sure that the power plug is connected to the outlet firmly. If connecting precariously, it may result in smoke or fire.



2. **Turn ON the main power of the host machine.**



3. **If a message prompting the user to update the version appears, press [Update] to automatically update the version of this equipment.**

CAUTION:

The firmware for iR-ADV DX 8700 Series/iR-ADV 8500 Series is written in this equipment at the time of shipment. Be sure to update the version when connecting to the iR-ADV DX C7700 Series or iR-ADV C7500 Series. If the version is not updated, this machine does not operate normally.

NOTE:

If [Skip] is selected, a message prompting the user to update the version will appear every time the host machine is started. In the service mode (Level 2) shown below, it is possible to set not to display the message.

- COPIER > OPTION > FNC-SW > VER-CHNG



4. **Check the operation such as paper feed and stapling to make sure that problems such as a jam or malfunction do not occur.**

Puncher Unit-BF1/BG1/BH1

● Checking before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

When installing this Equipment together with the Finisher, install this Equipment before installing the Finisher to the Upstream Connection Machine.

■ Product Name

Safety regulations require the product's name to be registered. In some regions where this product is sold, the following name may be registered instead.

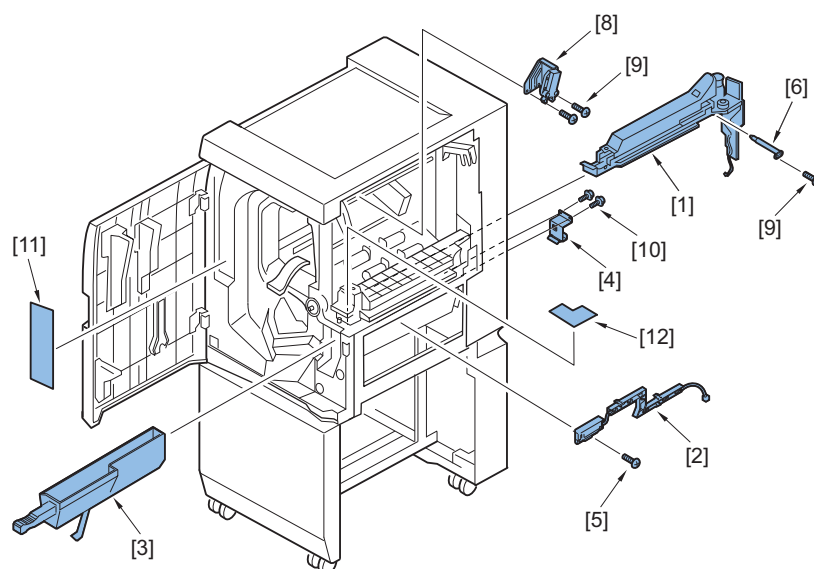
- F280260

● Unpacking and Checking the Contents

■ Checking the Contents

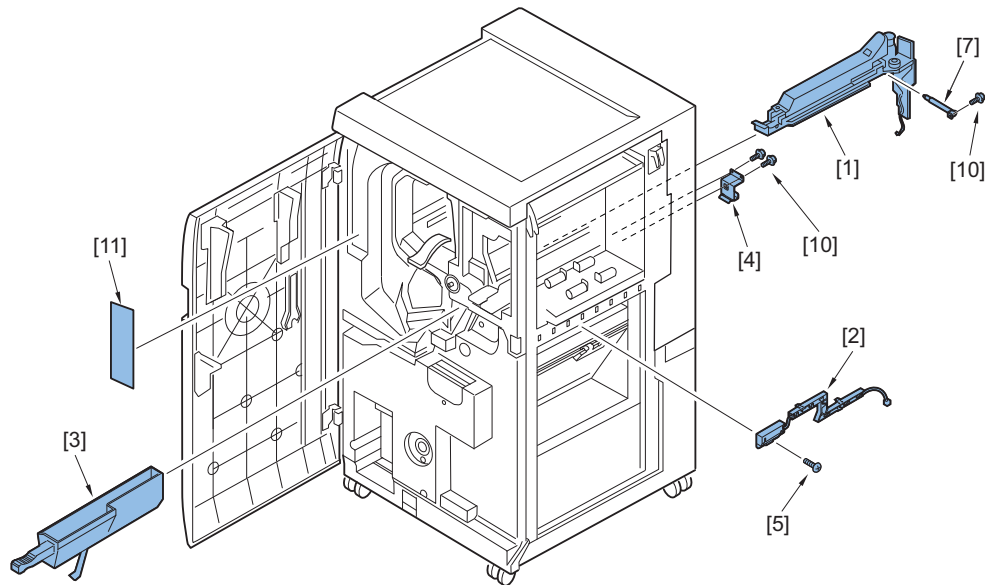
Open the container box and check that none of the included parts is missing.

● When installing to the finisher



<input type="checkbox"/> [1]	Punch unit	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [2]	Punched waste paper full sensor unit	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [3]	Punched waste paper box	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [4]	Punched waste paper box stopper	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [5]	Screw (Bind, M3 x 6)	1 pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [6] *1	Punch unit fixing pin (for finisher)	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [7] *2	Punch unit fixing pin (for saddle finisher)	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [8] *1	Punch latch unit	1 pc.

• When installing to the saddle finisher



<input type="checkbox"/> [9] *1	Screw (Bind, M4 x 7)	3 pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [10] *3	Screw (TP, M3 x 6)	3 pcs.
<input type="checkbox"/> [11]	Punch jam label	1 pc.
<input type="checkbox"/> [12] *1	Punch lever caution label	1 pc.

*1: These are used only when installing this unit to the finisher.

*2: These are used only when installing this unit to the saddle finisher.

*3: Only two screws are used when installing this unit to the finisher, and three screws are used when installing this unit to the saddle finisher.

● Installation Procedure

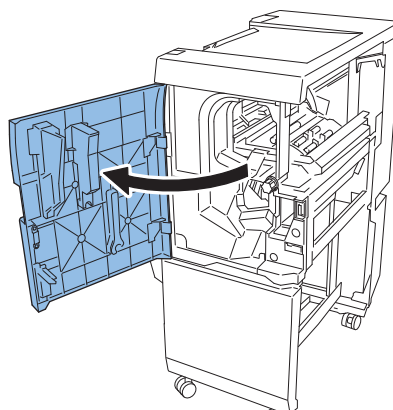
■ When installing to the finisher

NOTE:

- The equipment is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials before installing the equipment.
- When installing to the saddle finisher, refer to "When installing to the saddle finisher"

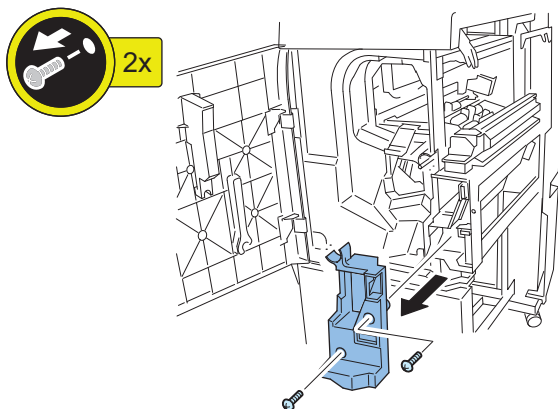


1. Open the front cover of the finisher.

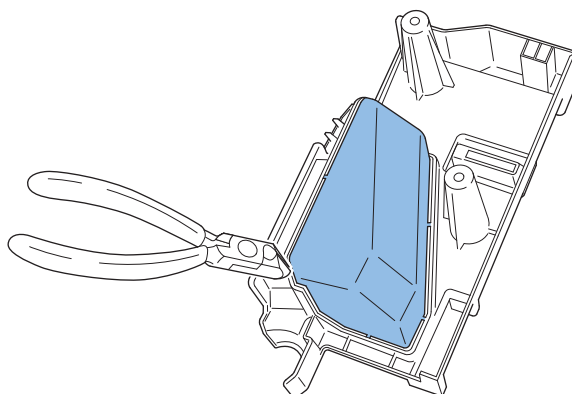




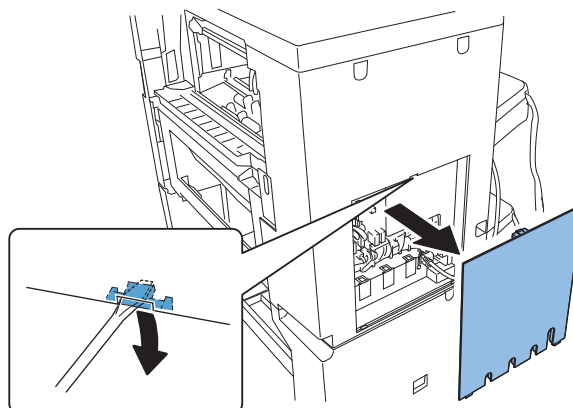
2. Remove two screws, and then remove the right inner cover of the finisher.



3. Using the nipper, cut out the face cover of the punched waste paper box from the right inner cover.

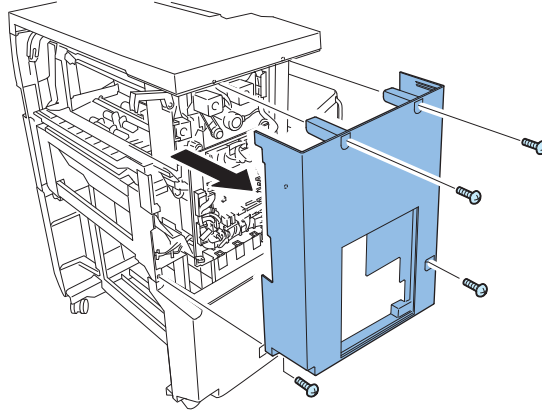


4. Release the hook with the flat head screwdriver, and then remove the PCB cover of the finisher.

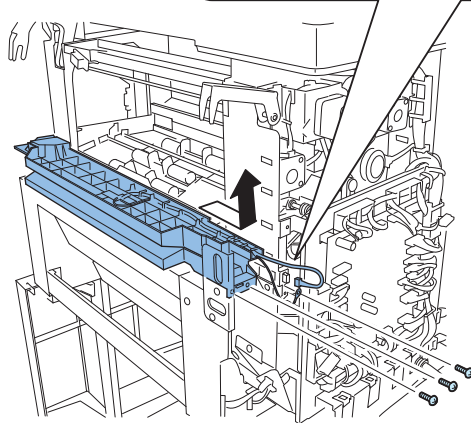
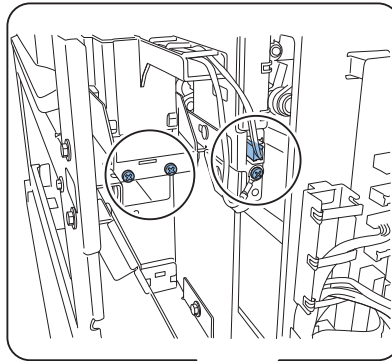




5. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover of the finisher.

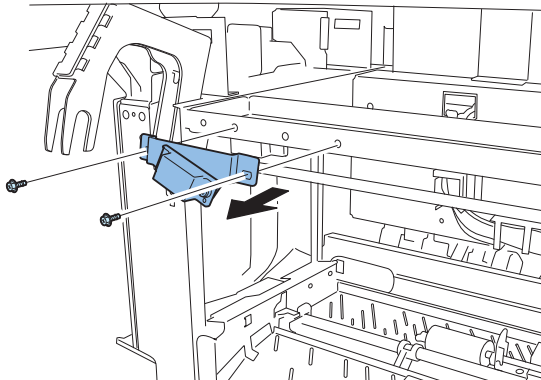


6. Disconnect a connector and remove three screws, and then remove the feed unit. (The removed feed unit and screws are no longer required.)

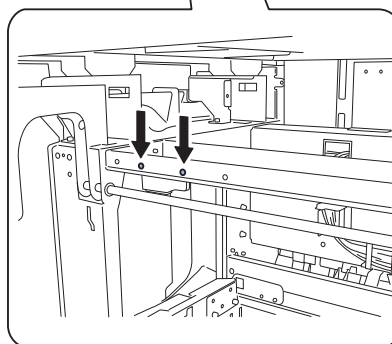
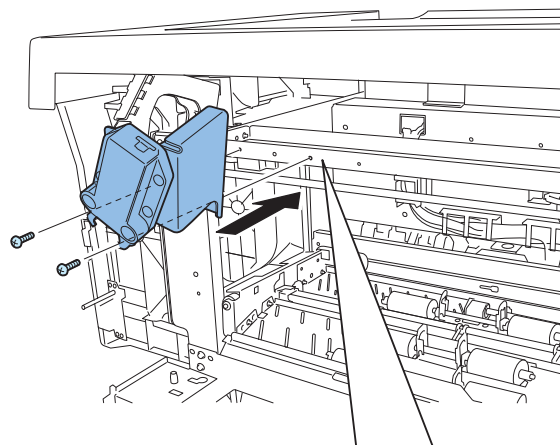




7. Remove two screws, and then remove the magnet unit. (The removed magnet unit and screws are no longer required.)

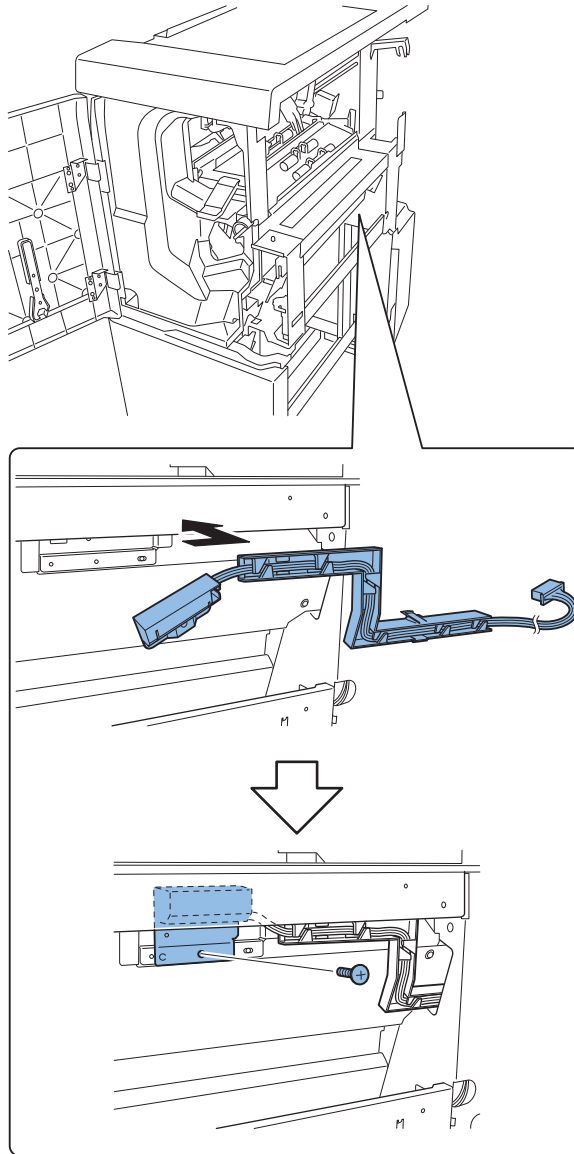


8. Using two supplied screws (Bind, M4 x 7), attach the included punch latch unit.



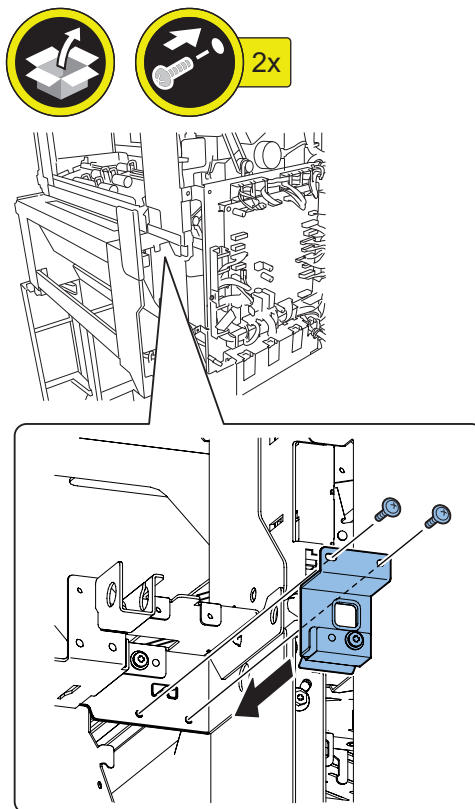


9. Using a supplied screw (Bind, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper full sensor unit.



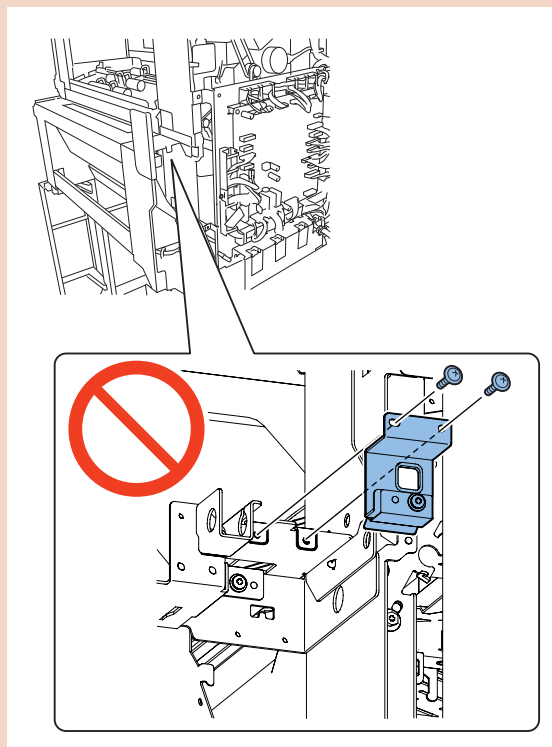


10. Using two supplied screws (TP, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper box stopper.



CAUTION:

If the attached location of the stopper is wrong, the punched waste paper box will be not secured by the stopper. This may result in the alarm of "Punched chips full or No waste paper box".

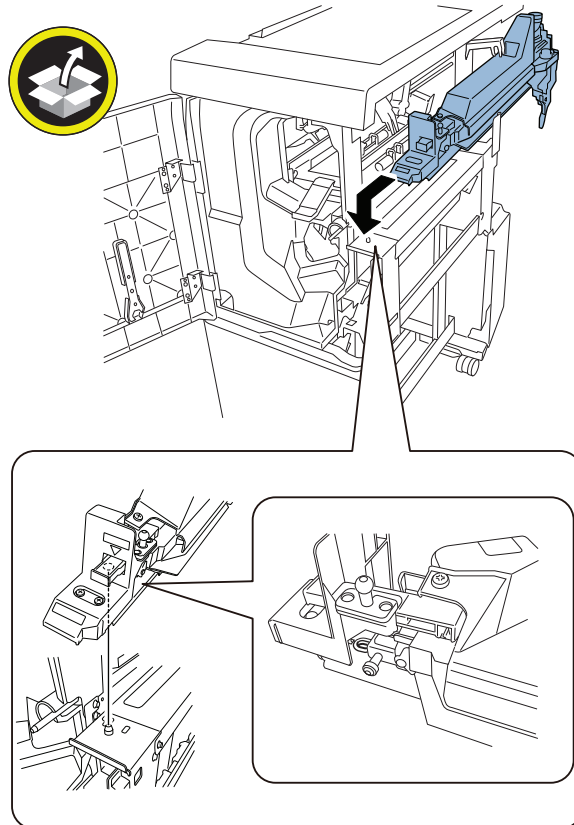
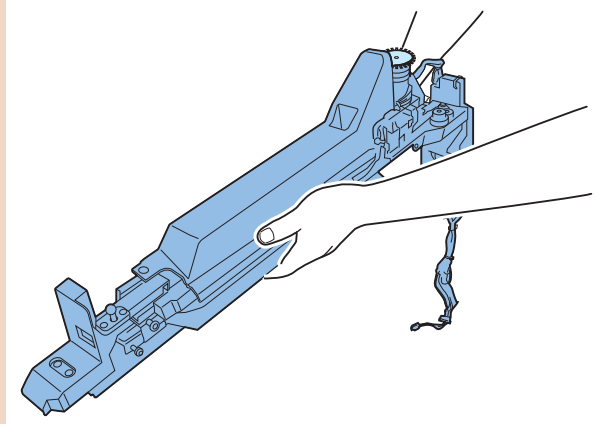




11. Attach the supplied punch unit to the finisher by matching the hole on the front side of the punch unit with the pin on the finisher.

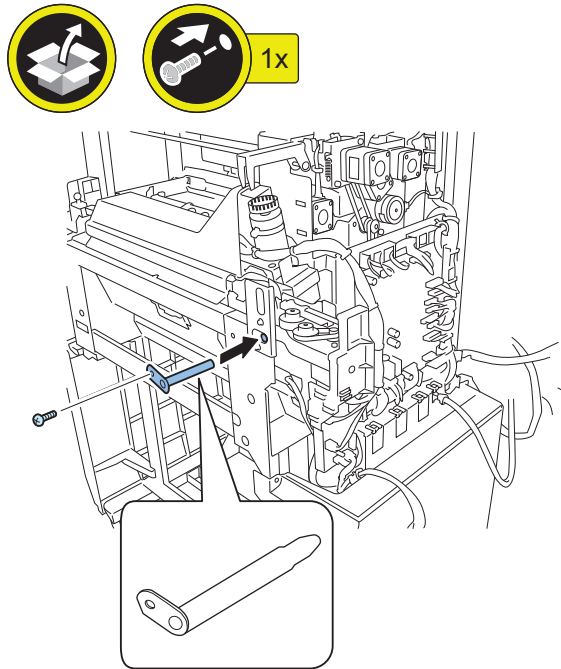
CAUTION:

Hold the punch unit as shown by the following illustration. Do not hold the motor gear assembly.

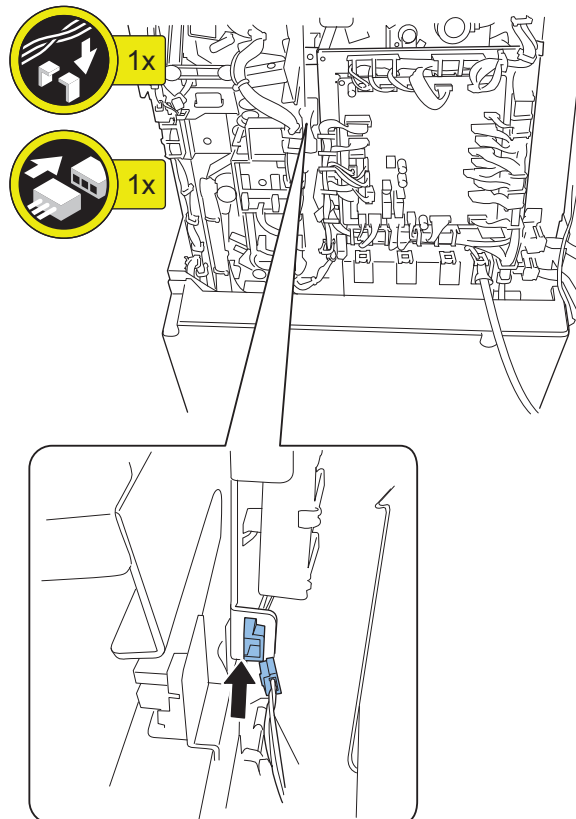




12. Attach the supplied punch unit fixing pin (for finisher), and then secure it with the supplied screw (Bind, M4 x 7).

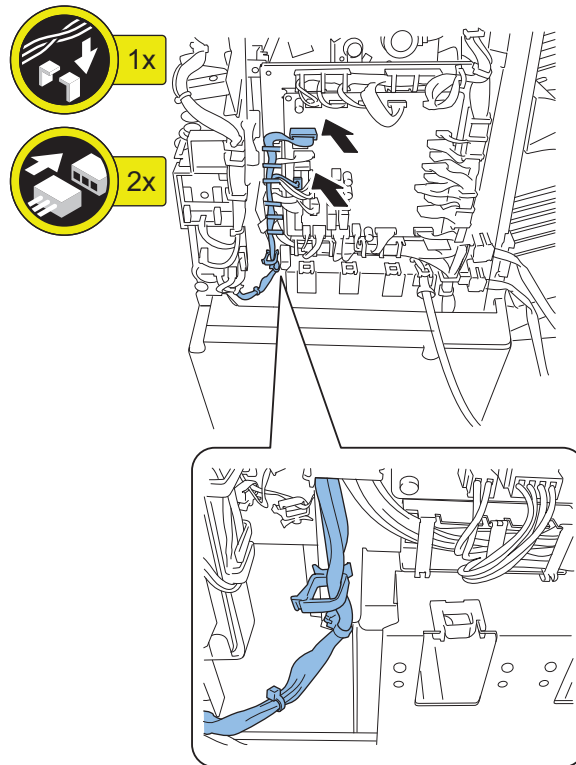


13. Connect a connector of the punch unit.



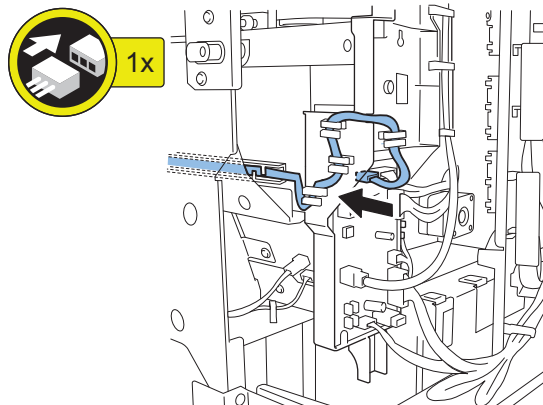
14. Put the harness of the punch unit in the harness guides, and then attach the re-use band.

Connect two connectors of the punch unit to the two connectors (CN127 and CN128) on the finisher controller PCB.



□

15. Connect a connector of the punched waste paper full sensor to the connector (CN4) on the puncher driver PCB.

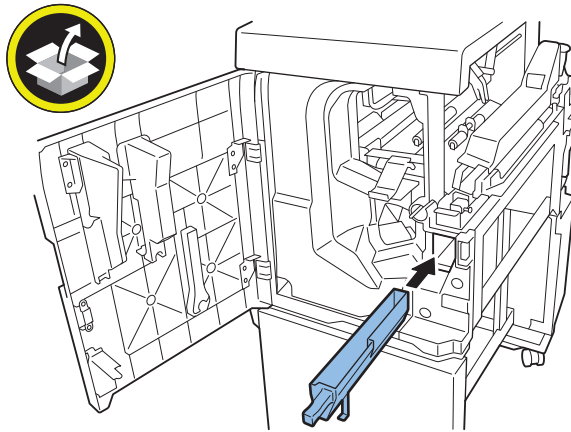


□

16. Using four screws, attach the rear cover of the finisher removed in step 5).
17. Attach the PCB cover of the finisher removed in step 4).
18. Using two screws, attach the right inner cover of the finisher removed in step 2).



19. Attach the supplied punch waste paper box.

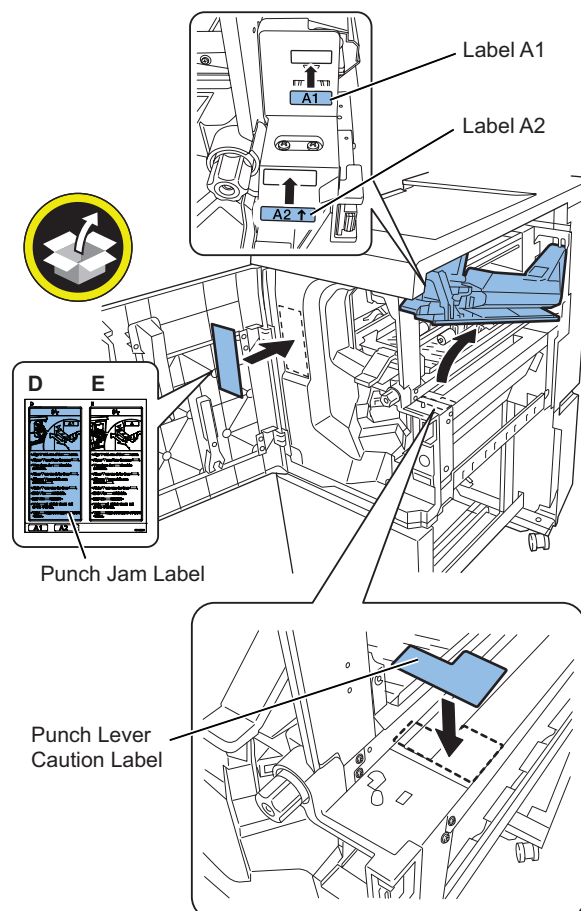


20. When the punch jam label is not supplied with the finisher, affix the supplied labels. And then lift up the punch unit to affix the supplied punch lever caution label.

- Affix the punch jam label of which "D" is printed on the label sheet to the left inner cover of the finisher. And then affix the label A1 and label A2 to the punch unit. (The punch jam label "E" is not used.)
- Affix the punch lever caution label having the language specified by user under the punch unit.

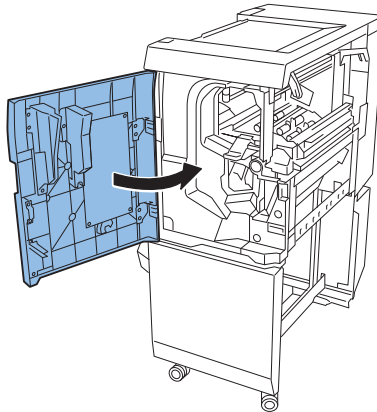
NOTE:

When the similar punch jam label is supplied with the finisher, do not use the punch jam label supplied with the puncher unit and follow the finisher installation procedure.





21. Close the front cover of the finisher.



22. The following parts will be no longer needed once the puncher unit has been installed.

<Included parts>

- Punch unit fixing pin (for saddle finisher): 1 pc.
- Screw (TP, M3 x 6): 1 pc.

<Removed parts from the finisher>

- Screw: 5 pcs.
- Magnet unit: 1 pc.
- Feed unit: 1 pc.
- Face cover of the right inner cover: 1 pc.

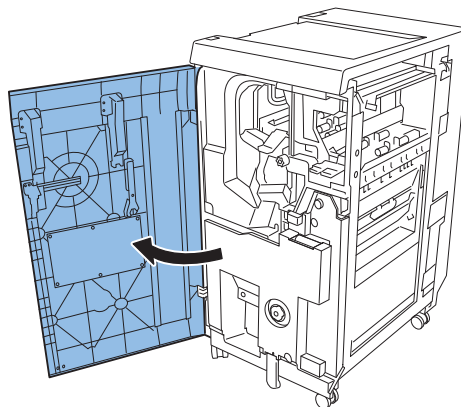
■ When installing to the saddle finisher

NOTE:

The equipment is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials before installing the equipment.

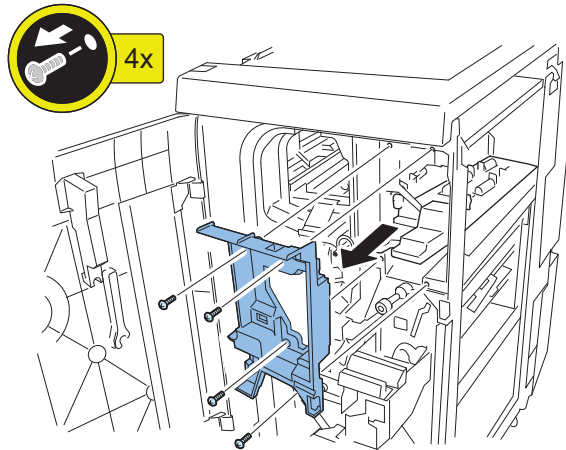


1. Open the front cover of the saddle finisher.

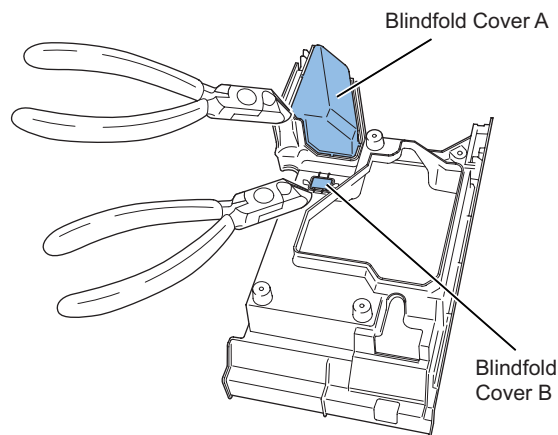




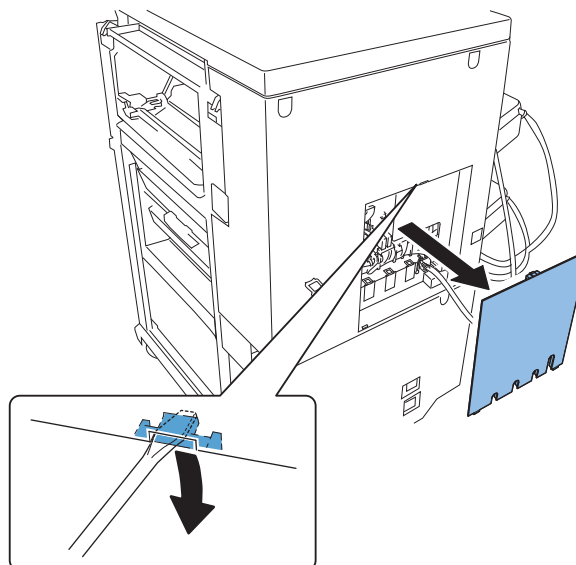
2. Remove four screws, and then remove the right inner cover of the saddle finisher.



3. Using the nipper, cut out the blindfold cover A of the right inner cover. And then cut out the blindfold cover B if the blindfold cover B exists in the right inner cover.

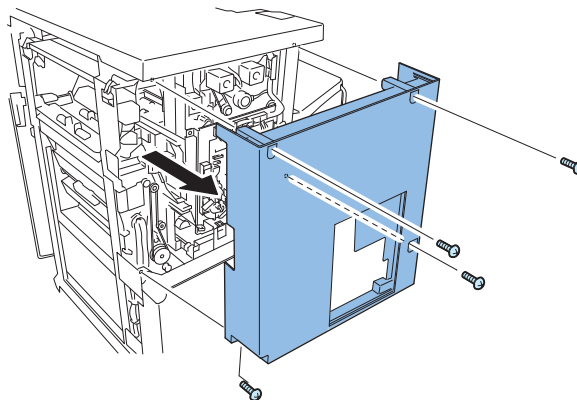


4. Release the hook with the flat head screwdriver, and then remove the PCB cover of the saddle finisher.

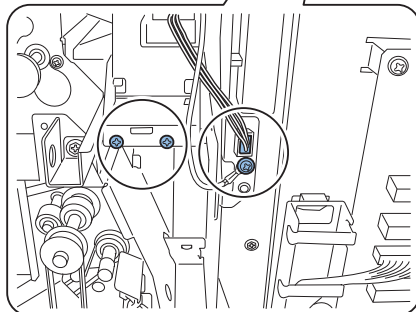
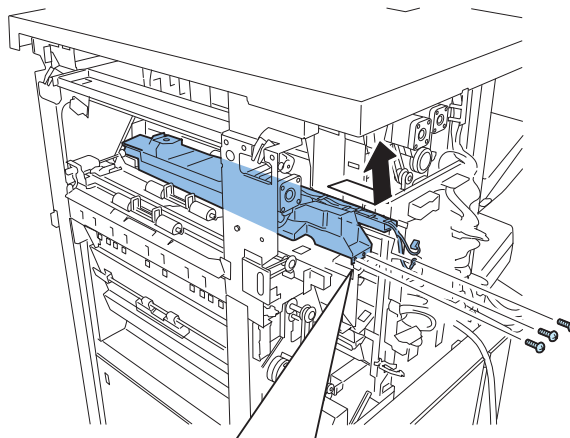




5. Remove four screws, and then remove the rear cover of the saddle finisher.

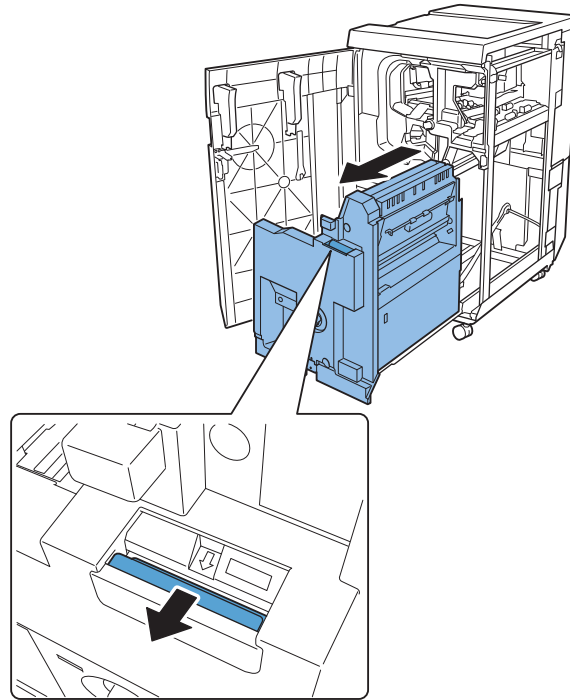


6. Disconnect a connector and remove three screws, and then remove the feed unit. (The removed feed unit and screws are no longer required.)



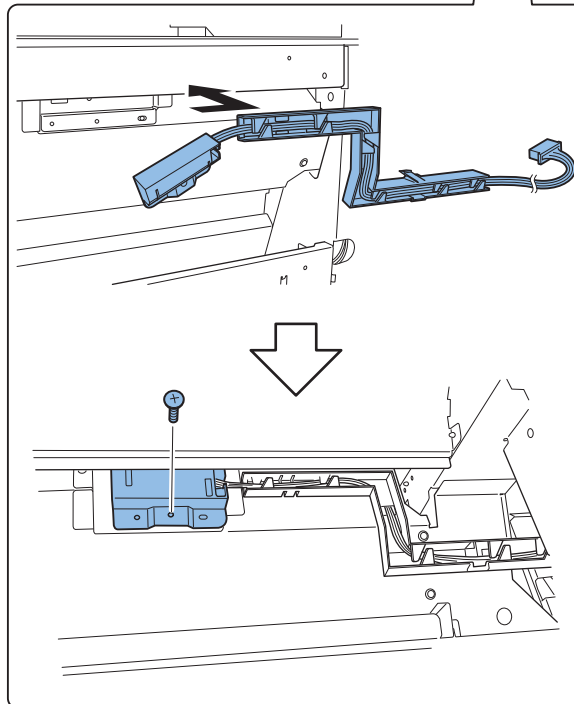
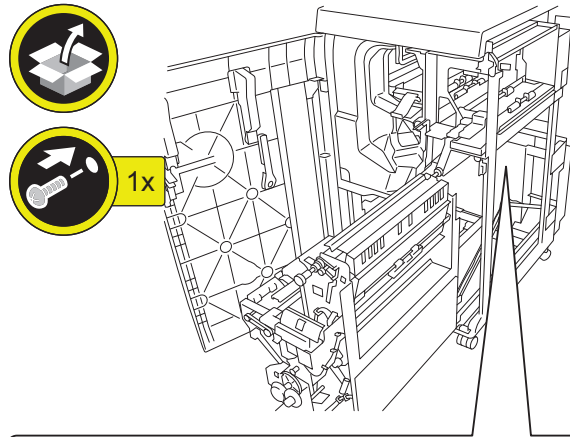


7. Gripping the hook of the handle, pull out the saddle stitcher unit gently until it stops.



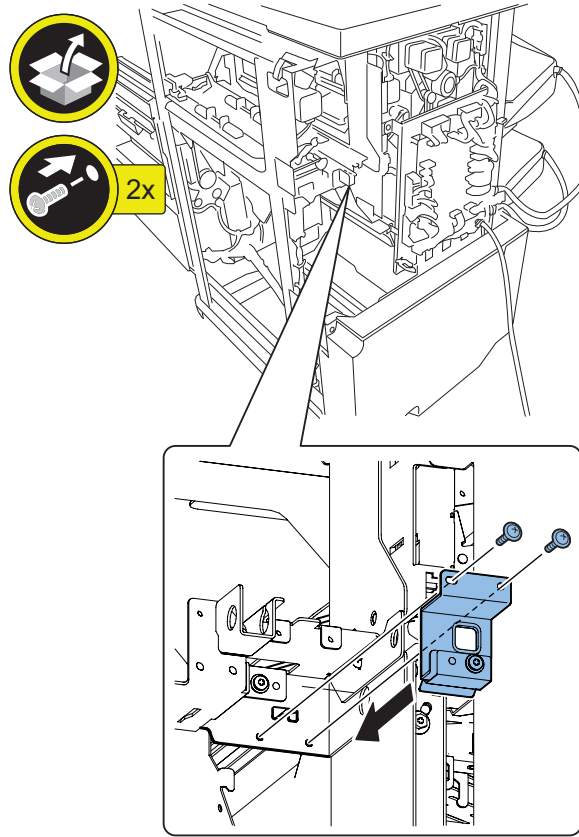


8. Using a supplied screw (Bind, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper full sensor unit.



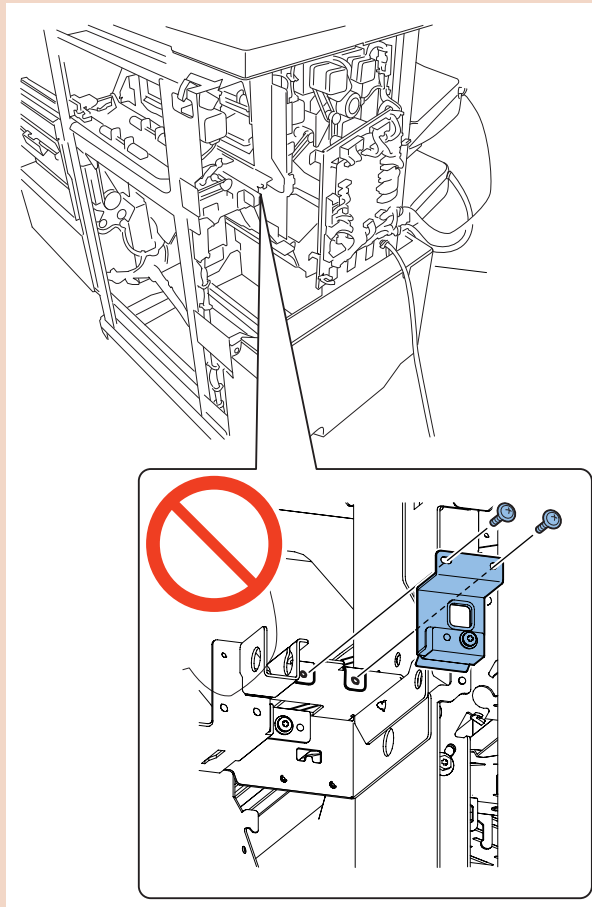


9. Using two supplied screws (TP, M3 x 6), attach the included punched waste paper box stopper.



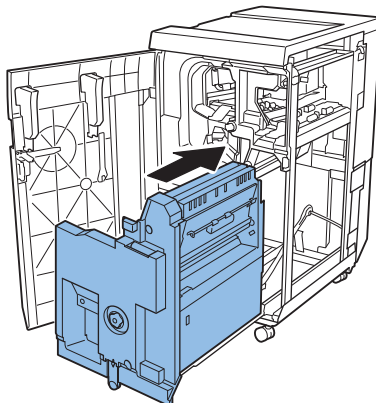
CAUTION:

If the attached location of the stopper is wrong, the punched waste paper box will be not secured by the stopper. This may result in the alarm of "Punched chips full or No waste paper box".



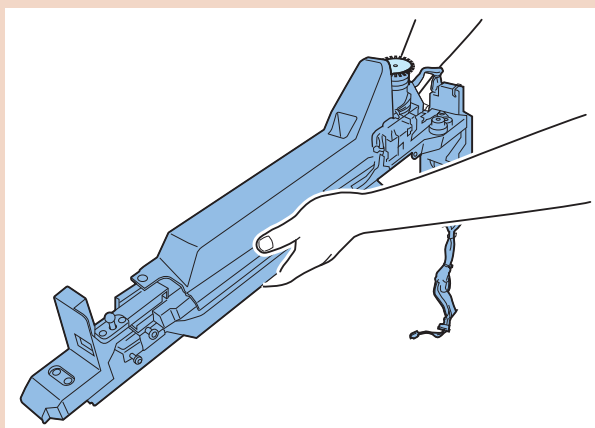


10. Push back the saddle stitcher unit gently into the finisher until it stops.

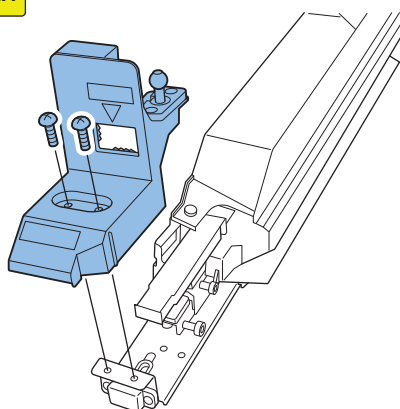


CAUTION:

Hold the punch unit as shown by the following illustration. Do not hold the motor gear assembly.

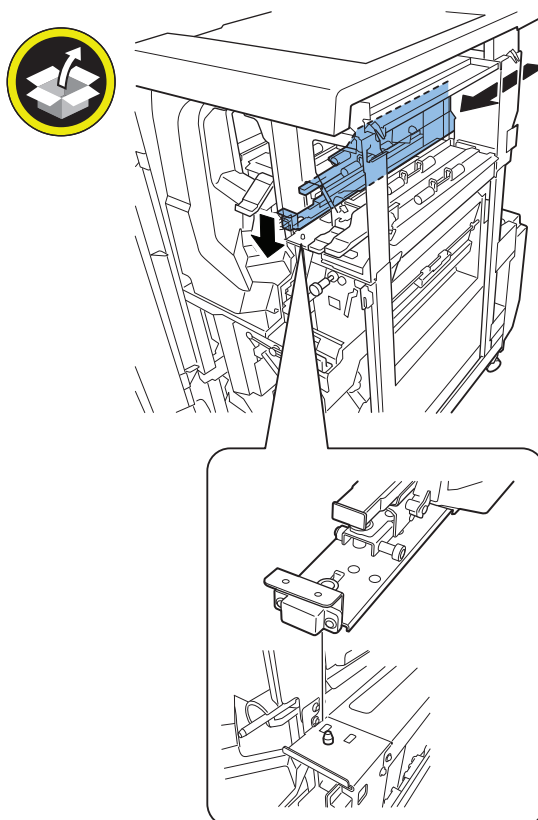


11. Remove the two screws of the supplied punch unit, and then remove the punch front cover. (The removed screws and the punch front cover are no longer required.)

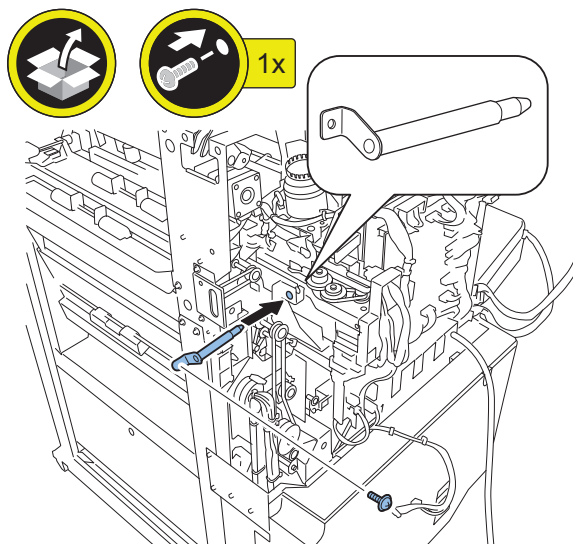




12. Attach the supplied punch unit to the saddle finisher by matching the hole on the front side of the punch unit with the pin on the finisher.

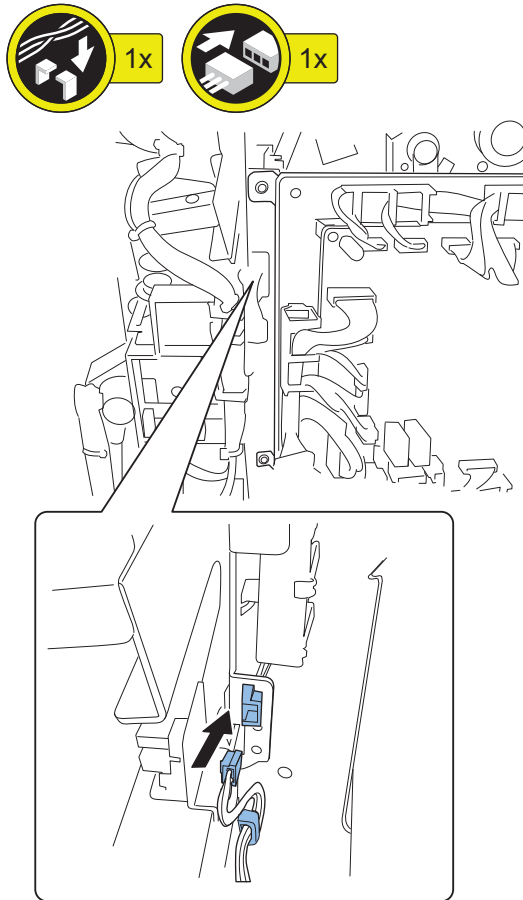


13. Attach the supplied punch unit fixing pin (for saddle finisher), and then secure it with the supplied screw (TP, M3 x 6).



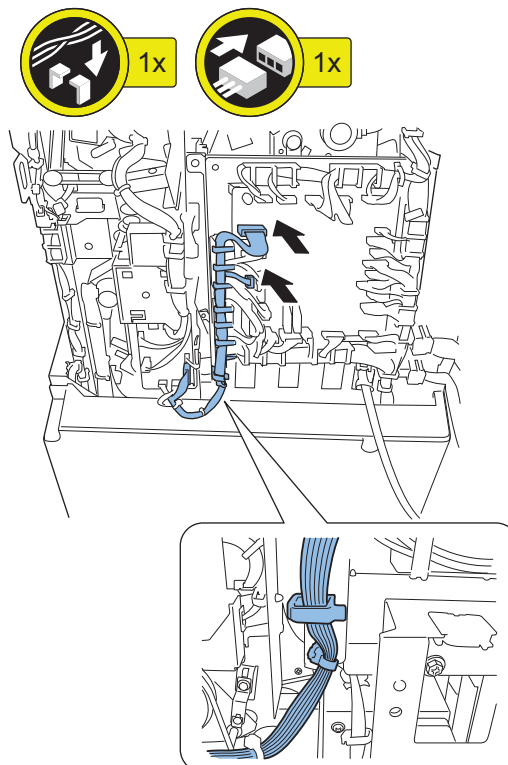


14. Connect a connector of the punch unit.



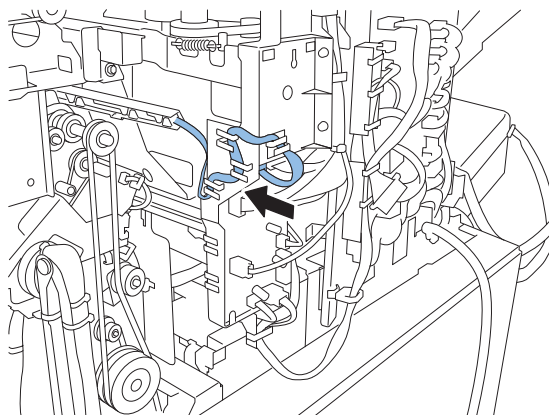
15. Put the harness of the punch unit in the harness guides, and then attach the re-use band.

Connect two connectors of the punch unit to the two connectors (CN127 and CN128) on the finisher controller PCB.





16. Connect a connector of the punched waste paper full sensor to the connector (CN4) on the puncher driver PCB.



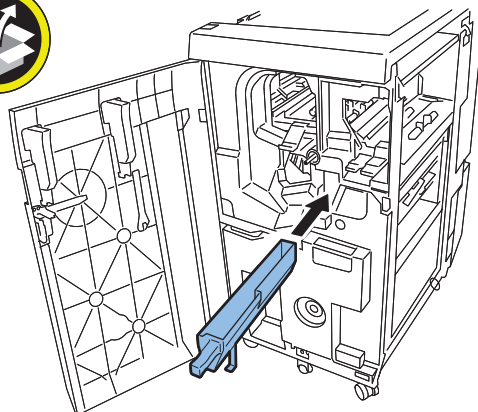
17. Using four screws, attach the rear cover of the saddle finisher removed in step 5).

18. Attach the PCB cover of the saddle finisher removed in step 4).

19. Using four screws, attach the right inner cover of the saddle finisher removed in step 2).



20. Attach the supplied punch waste paper box.

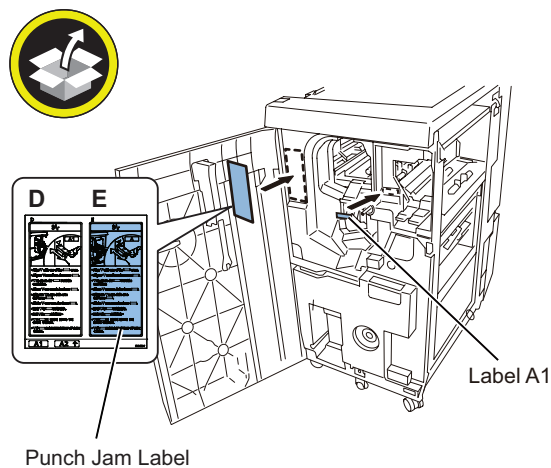




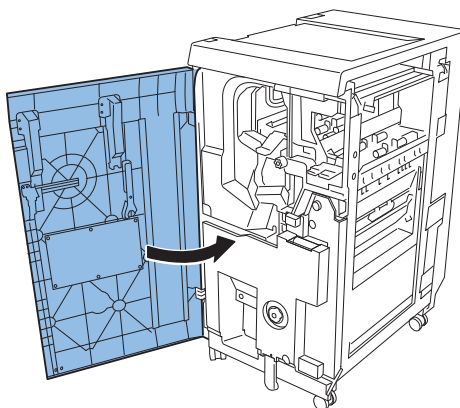
21. Affix the punch jam label of which “E” is printed on the label sheet to the left inner cover of the finisher, and also affix the label A1 to the right inner cover. (The punch jam label “D” and the label A2 are not used.)

NOTE:

When the similar punch jam label is supplied with the finisher, do not use the punch jam label supplied with the punch unit and follow the finisher installation procedure.



22. Close the front cover of the saddle finisher.



23. The following parts will be no longer needed once the puncher unit has been installed.

<Included parts>

- Punch unit fixing pin (for finisher): 1 pc.
- Punch latch unit: 1 pc.
- Screw (Bind, M4 x 7): 3 pcs.
- Punch lever caution label: 1 pc.
- Punch front cover and two screws removed from punch unit

<Removed parts from the saddle finisher>

- Screw: 3 pcs.
- Feed unit: 1 pc.
- Face cover of the right inner cover: 1 pc.

Adjustment

■ Adjusting the Output Level of the Punch Waste Full Sensor

After installing this unit, adjust the output level of the punched waste paper full sensor unit as follows.

**1. Perform the following item in the Service mode.**

- Service mode > SORTER > FUNCTION > FN-SENS2 Press the OK button on the screen.

2. When completing the output level adjustment successfully, indicate the "OK" show up on the screen. When indicated "OK" on the screen, adjustment is finished.**NOTE:**

If "NG" shows up on the screen at the step 2), retry the adjustment repeating the step 1) . Should "NG" be still indicated though retrying the adjustment, check the relative parts of the punched waste full sensor such as its attaching or connectors, etc.

Operation Check

After completion of installation, check whether punch unit operates normally by performing the punch operation from the operation panel of the host machine.

Inner Booklet Trimmer-A1

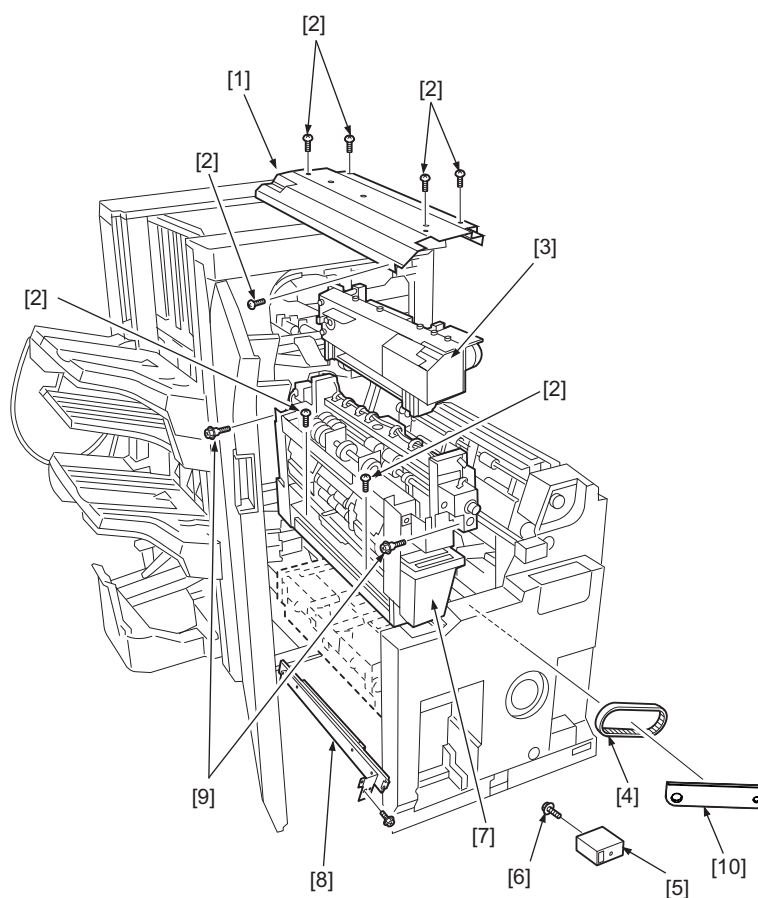
● Checking before Installation

■ Checking Before Installation

When installing this Equipment together with the Finisher, install this Equipment before installing the Finisher to the Upstream Connection Machine.

● Checking the Supplied Parts

■ Checking the Supplied Parts



- [1] Upper cover 1 pc.
- [2] Screw (bind-head, M4 x 6) 7 pcs.
- [3] Cutter unit 1 pc.
- [4] Drive belt 1 pc.
- [5] Dust box retainer 1 pc.
- [6] Screw (P tightening, M4 x 6) 1 pc.
- [7] Trimmer unit frame 1 pc.
- [8] Accride rail 1 pc.
- [9] Stepped screw (M4 x 6) 2 pcs.
- [10] Metal plate 1 pc.

⚠ CAUTION:

The weight of cutter unit is approximately 16.0 kg. Be careful enough of handling.

Installation Procedure

■ Making Preparations for Installing the Finisher

NOTE:

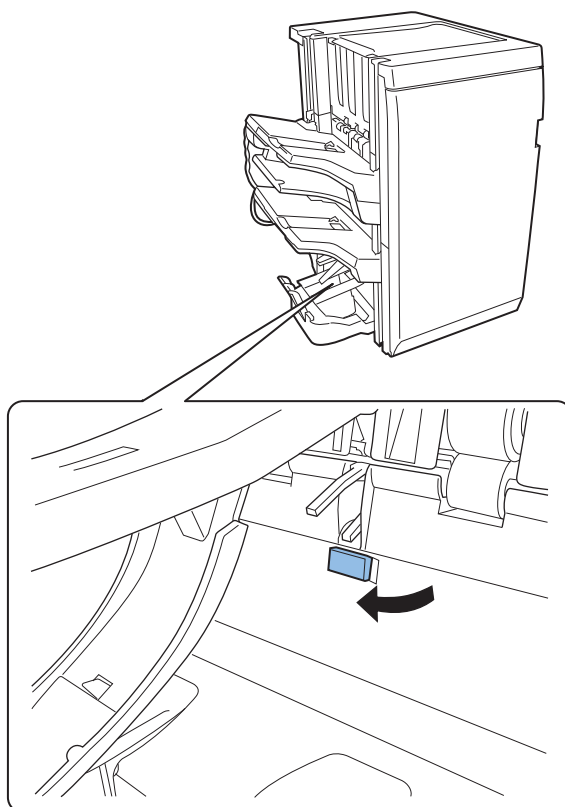
- When installing this machine after installing the finisher to the host machine, install this machine after releasing the finisher from the host machine.
- The equipment is secured with packaging tapes and cushioning materials to protect it against vibration and shock during transportation. Remove all packaging tapes and cushioning materials before installing the equipment.



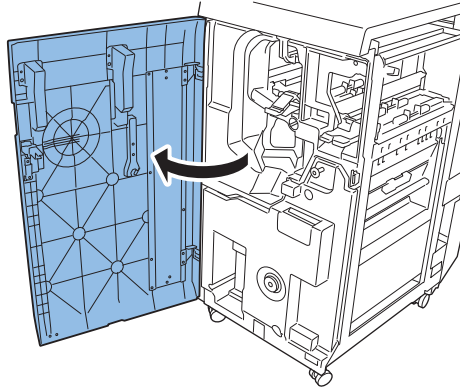
1. Before installing this equipment, pick up the plastic tab and peel off the sponge from the saddle delivery block of the finisher.

CAUTION:

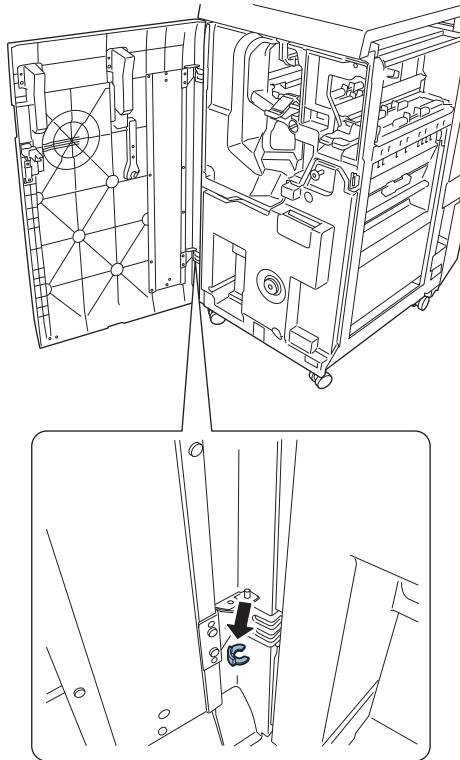
Peel off the sponge together with the plastic sheet completely in such a manner that the double-stick tape does not remain on the finisher surface. If you forget to peel off the sponge or the double-stick tape is remaining, the paper delivered to the saddle delivery block may get stuck with the sponge or the tape, resulting in a stacking failure.



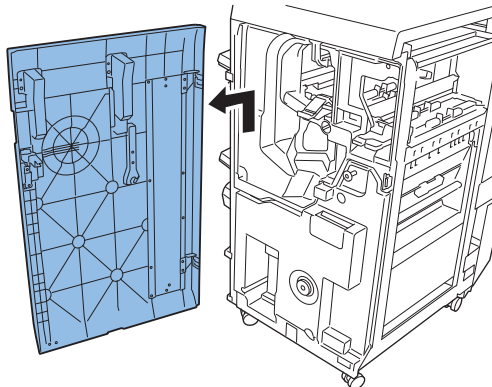
2. Open the front door of the finisher.



3. Remove the resin ring.

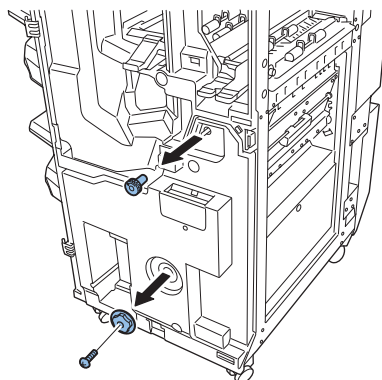


4. Remove the front door of the finisher in the direction of the arrow.

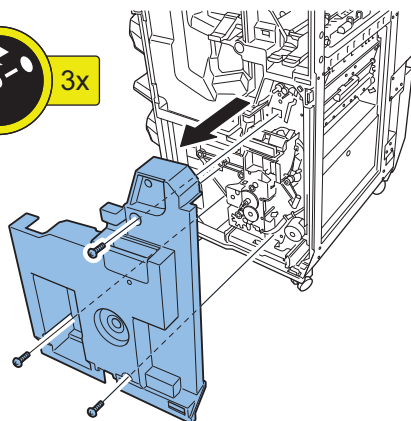




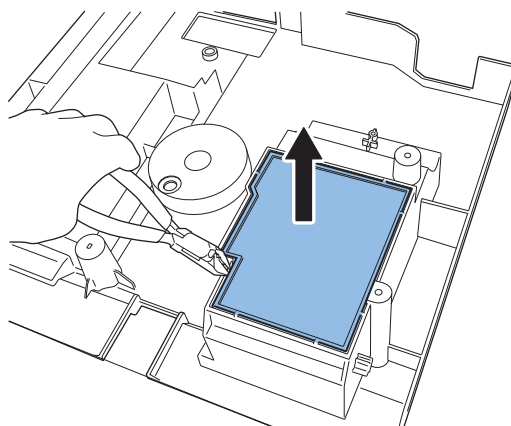
5. Remove the jam dial (upper). Remove one screw, and then remove the jam dial (lower).



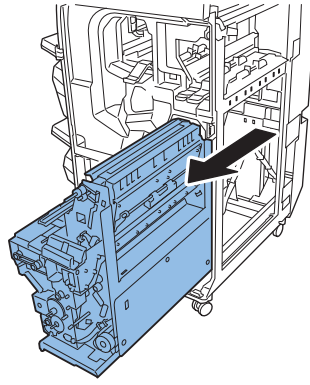
6. Remove three screws, and then remove the inner cover.



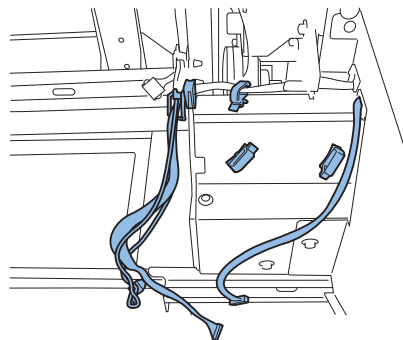
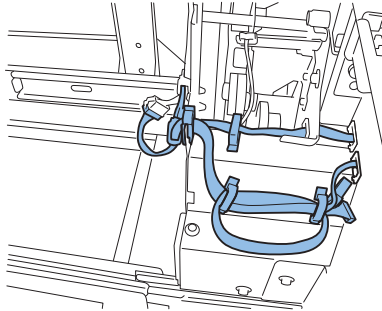
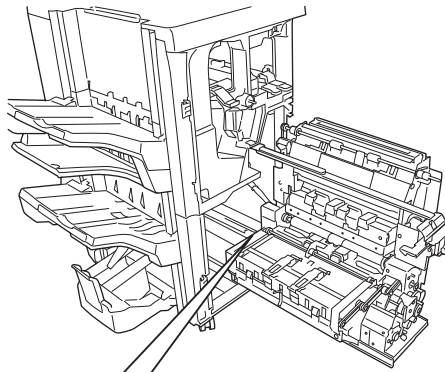
7. Using a nipper, cut out the face part of the waste paper box on the inner cover.



8. Draw out the saddle unit.

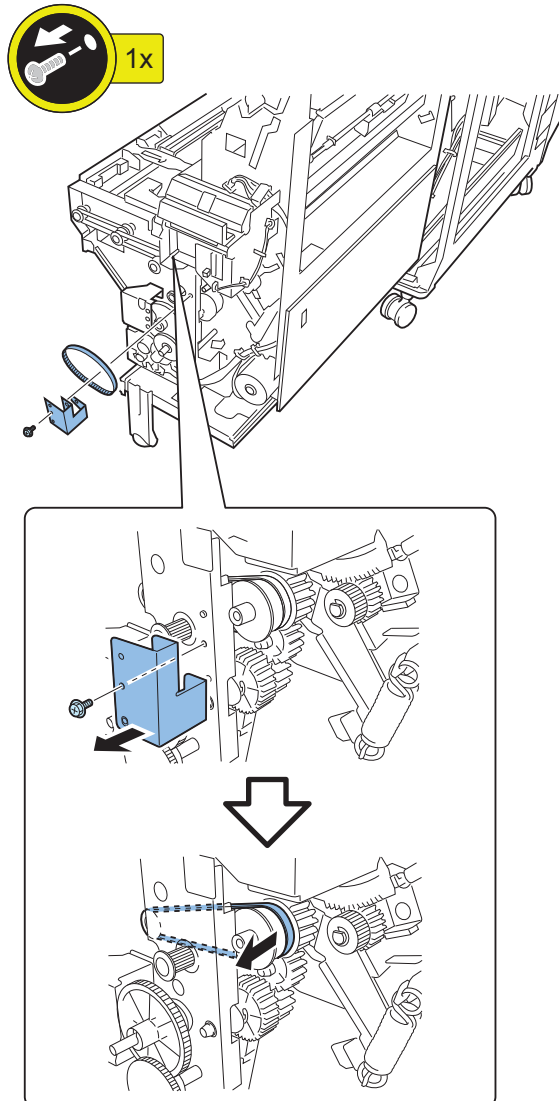


9. At the back of the saddle unit, pull out one connector, and then remove the harness from the harness guide. And then, close the five harness guides. (The closed five harness guides are no longer required.)

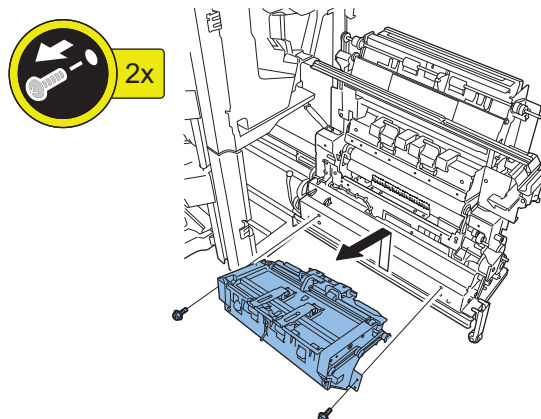


**10. Remove one screw, and then remove the metal plate.**

After removing the metal plate, move the pulley to the front and remove the belt.
The removed screw/metal plate are attached again at the rear step.
(The belt is no longer required.)

**11. Remove two screws, and then remove the feed unit.**

(The feed unit/the two screws are no longer required.)

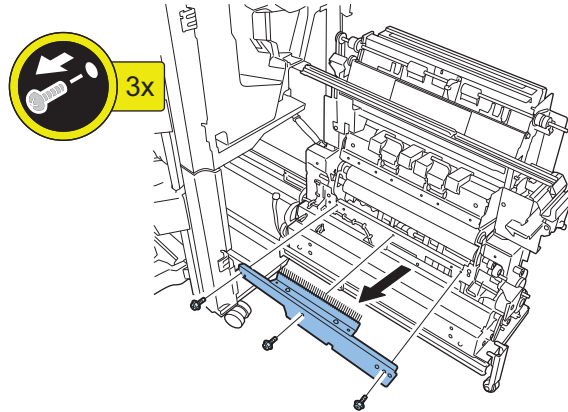




12. Remove three screws, and then remove the static eliminator unit.

The removed screw is used next step.

(The static eliminator/the two screws are no longer required.)



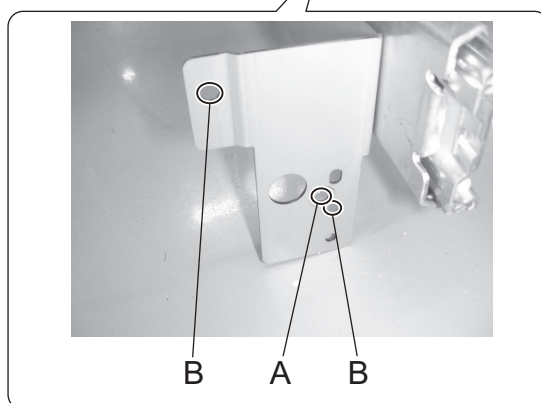
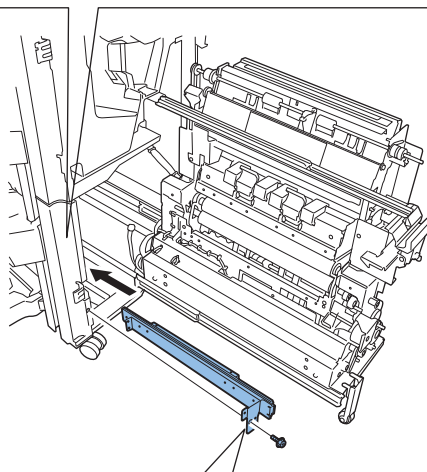
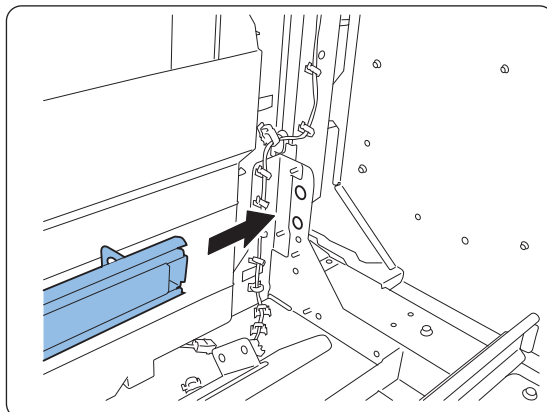
■ Installing the Trimmer Unit



1. Insert the pins at the back of the supplied accride rail to the hole at the back side of the finisher.

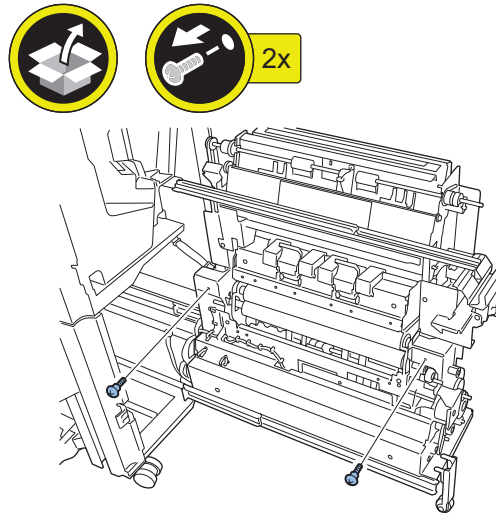
Install the accride rail the screw removed in step 12 discussed in "Making Preparations for Installing the Finisher".

(When there are screw holes "A" and "B" in the rail plate, use the "A" hole for fixing screw. Do not use the "B" holes.)

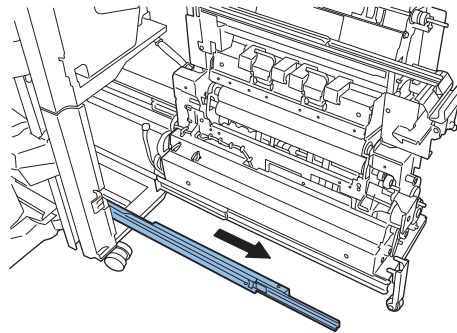




2. Install the supplied two stepped screws (M4 x 6).



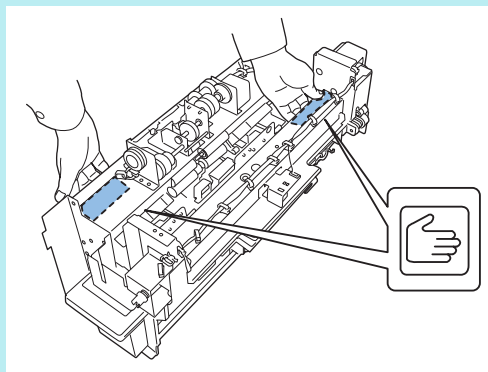
3. Draw out the Accride rail (installed in step 1) until it stops.

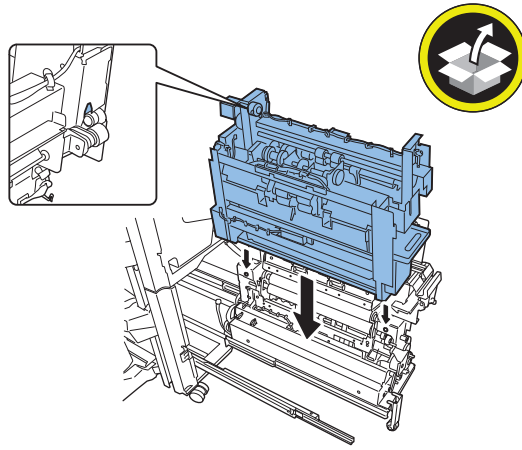


4. Hang the trimmer unit frame on the stepped screws installed in step 2.

NOTE:

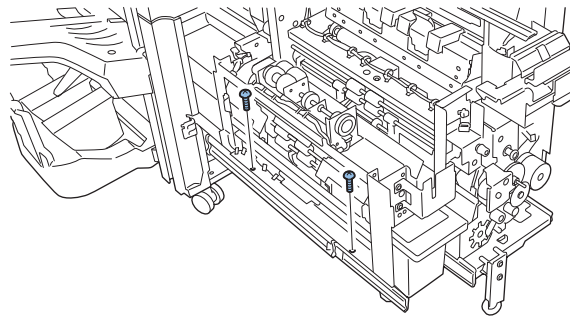
Hold the trimmer unit frame as shown below.





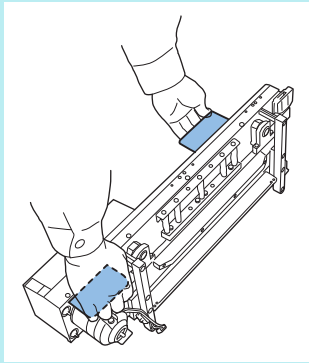
□

5. Using the two supplied screws (bind-head, M4 x 6), secure the trimmer unit frame to the accride rail.

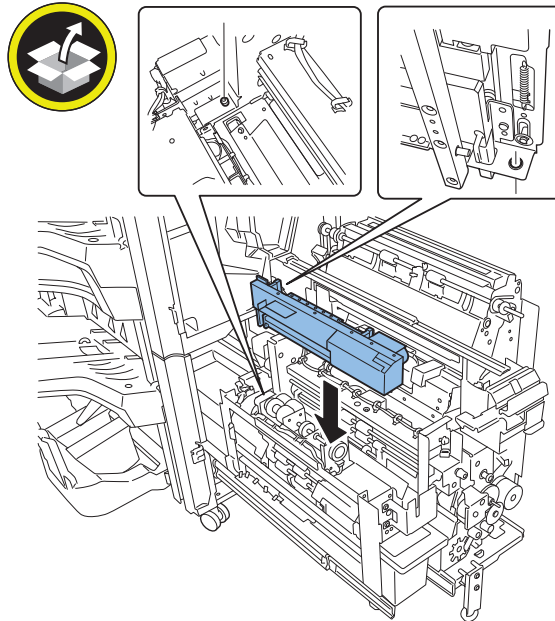


**6. Place the cutter unit on the trimmer unit frame.****NOTE:**

Hold the cutter unit as shown below

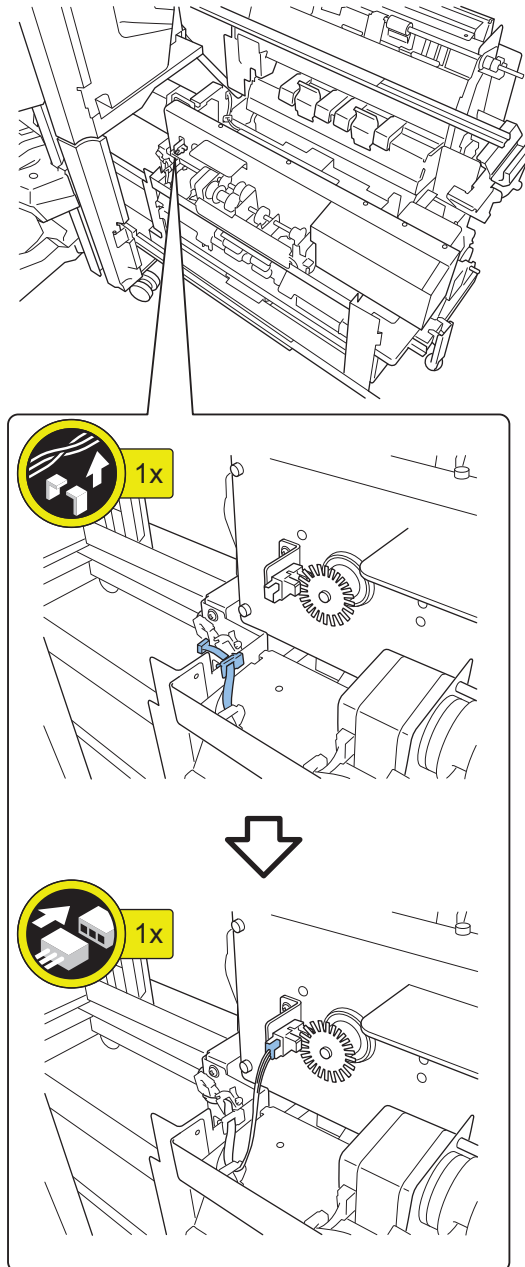
**NOTE:**

Align the hole at the back of the cutter unit with the pin at the back of the trimmer unit frame.



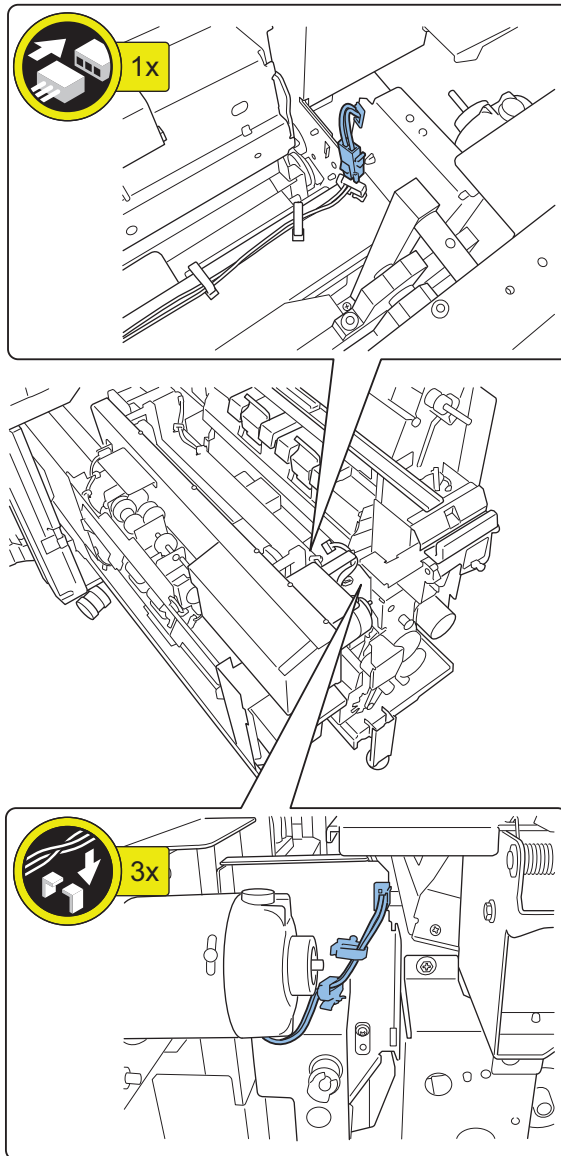


7. Remove the harness from the harness guide, and then connect one connector.

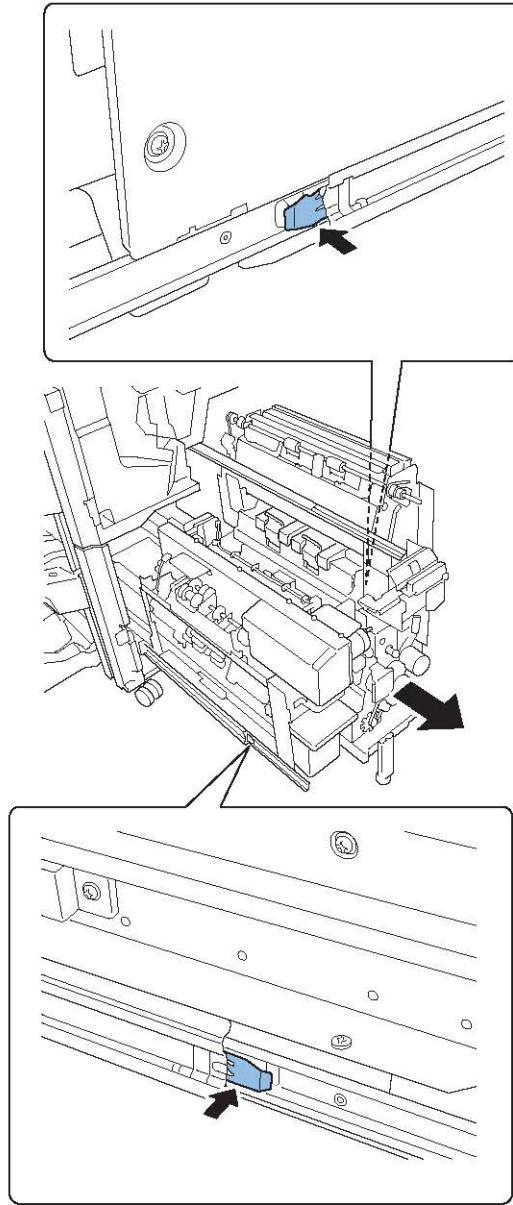




8. Connect one connector, and then put the harness in three wire saddles.

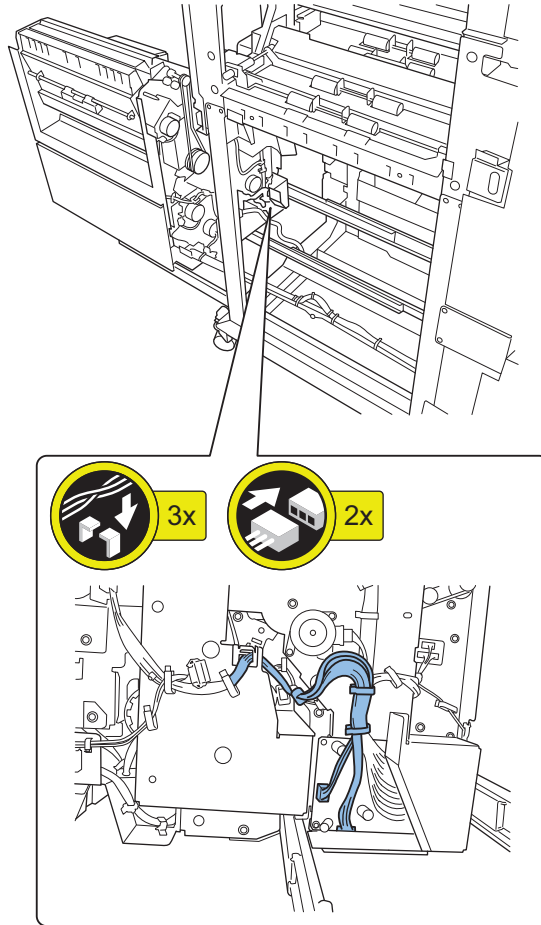


9. Push both stopper of the accride rail in the direction of the arrow to draw out the saddle unit as far as possible.



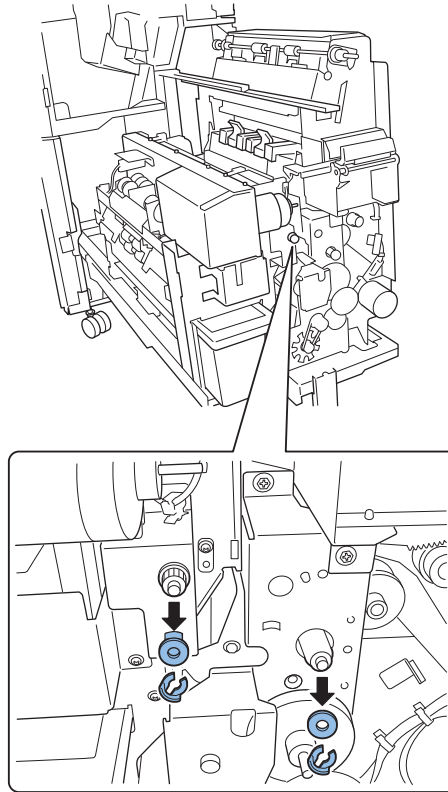


10. Put the harness in three wire saddles, and then connect two connectors.

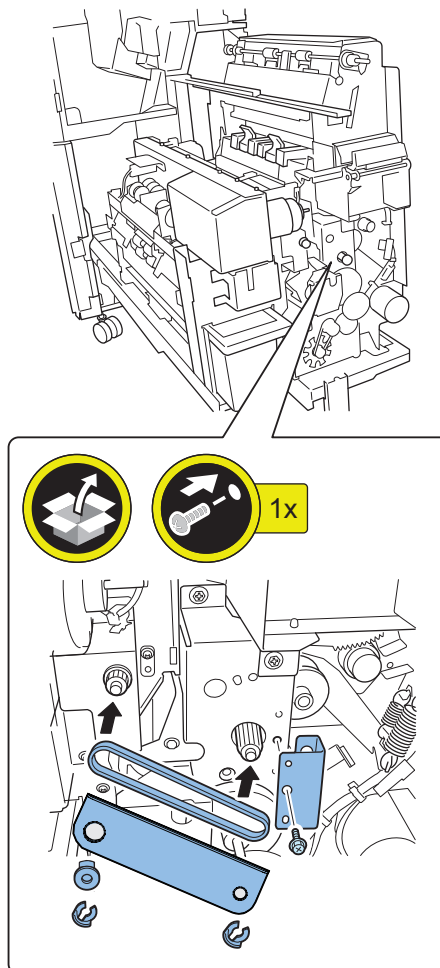


11. At the trimmer unit, remove one resin ring and one bushing not to drop the pin inside the gear. At the saddle unit, remove one resin ring and one resin washer.

(The resin washer is no longer required.)

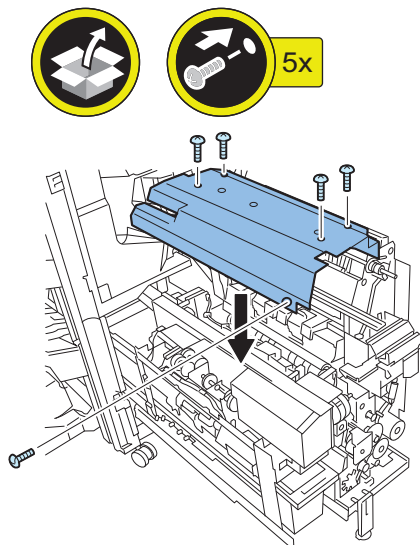


12. Install the supplied drive belt and the supplied metal platte. Then, attach the bushing and two resin rings removed in step11. Install the metal plate removed in step 10 discussed in " Making Preparations for Installing the Finisher" using one screw.



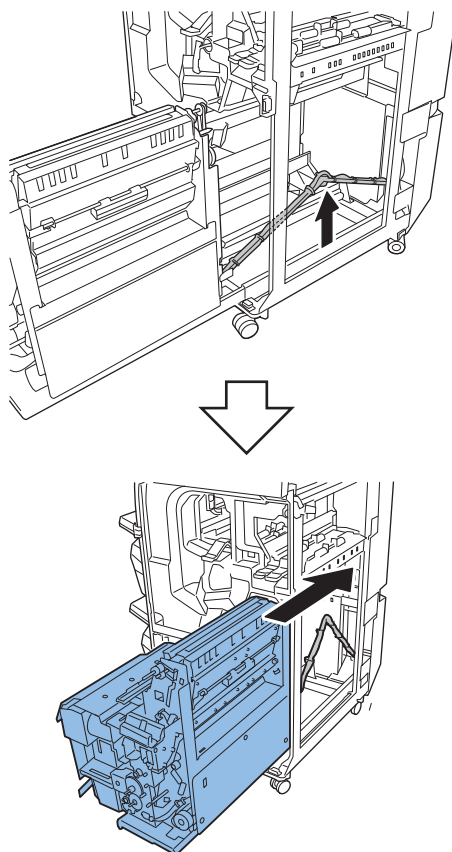


13. Attach the supplied upper cover using the supplied five screws (bind-head, M4 x 6).





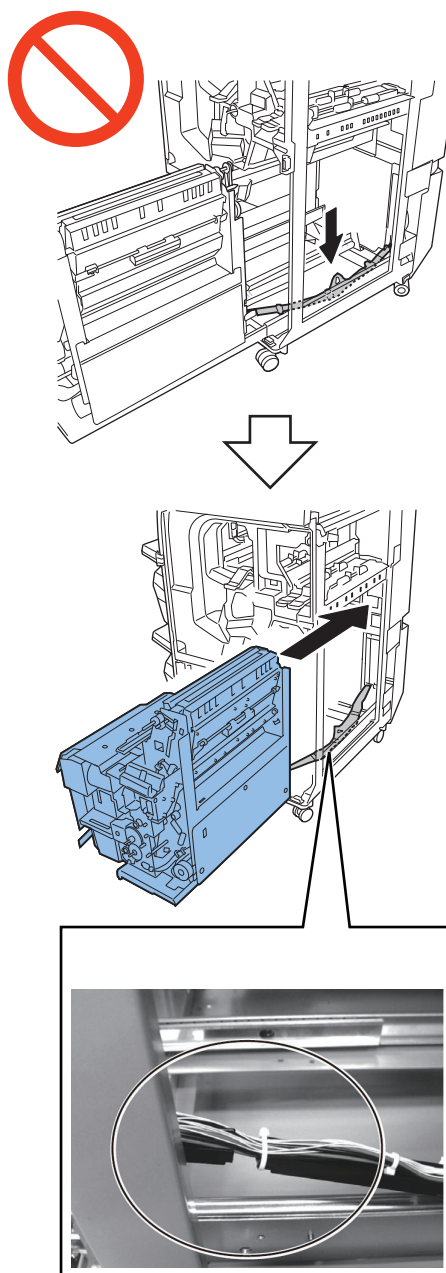
14. Lift up the joint part of the saddle unit - finisher communication cable, and then install the saddle unit at the original position.



CAUTION:

When installing the inner trimmer, pay full attention to the following notification:

When drawing out the saddle unit with releasing the rail stoppers as the saddle unit is required to be fully drawn out at installation, the cable guide may tense, which interferes housing the saddle unit. In such the case, the cable guide may break at its joint, if the saddle unit is forcibly slid in the finisher.



15. Install the inner cover using three screws.



16. Install the jam dial (lower) using one screw. Then, install the jam dial (upper).



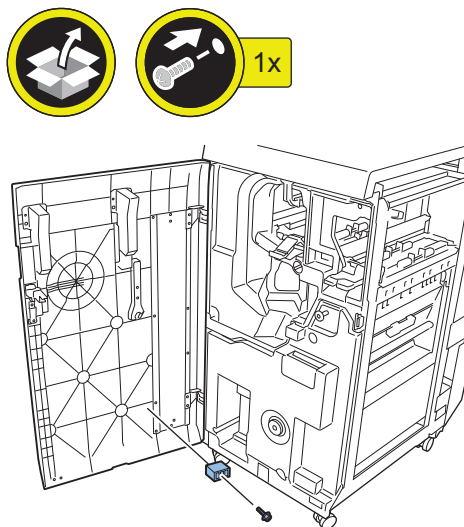
17. Attach the front door of the finisher.



18. Secure the front door of the finisher with one resin ring.



19. Attach the dust box retainer using one screw.

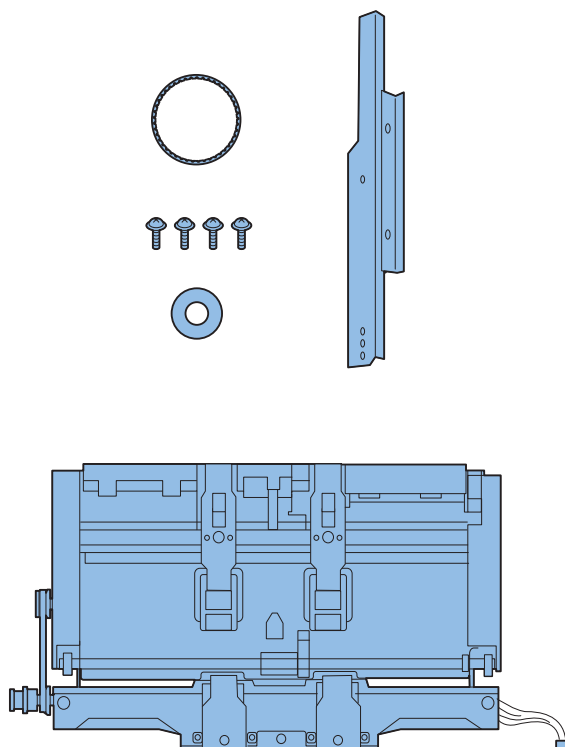


20. Close the front door of the finisher.



21. The following parts will be no longer needed once the inner trimmer has been installed.

- Belt
- Four screws (RS tightening)
- Resin washer
- Static eliminator
- Feed unit



Operation Check



1. After completion of installation, cut the fore edge by operating the console panel to see whether the trimmer unit operates normally.

Revision

Rev	Chapter		Category	Product Name	Reference	Remarks
1.0	-		First Edition	-	-	-
2.0	2	Host Machine	Add Con- tents	Installing the Scanner	-	-